

тос

Cha	apter 1: Getting Started	24
	Welcome	24
	Getting Started	24
	Program Setup	24
	Activating the Program	24
	Starting a New Project	25
	Starting New Projects from a Specific Template	26
	Starting New Projects Without Using Templates	26
	Enabling Template Selection at Project Startup	26
	Opening a Project from an Older Version	27
	Viewing Sample Projects	27
	Adjusting Your Display Settings	27
	Learning Resources	27
	Videos and Tutorials	27
	Video Tutorials	28
	Quick Start Guide	28
	Getting Help	28
	Online Help	29
	Context-sensitive Help	29
	Tutor	29
	Glossary of Terms	30
	User's Guide	30
	Technical Support	30
	Technical Support	30
Cha	apter 1: Touring the Workspace	31
	Touring the Workspace	31
	Menus	32
	Toolbars and Toolbar Tabs	32
	Building Toolbar	32
	Interiors Toolbar	32
	Landscape Toolbar	33
	Terrain Toolbar	33
	Analyze Toolbar	33
	Help Toolbar	33
	View Control Toolbar	33
	Zoom and Navigate Toolbar	33
	Navigator	34
	Commander	34
	View Tabs	34
	Model View vs. Worksheet View	34
	Scroll Bars	34
	Catalog Panel	34

Searching the Catalog	35
Status Bar	36
Menu Bar	36
Toolbars and Toolbar Tabs	36
Building Toolbar	37
Interiors Toolbar	37
Landscape Toolbar	. 37
Terrain Toolbar	37
Analyze Toolbar	37
Help Toolbar	38
View Control Toolbar	38
Zoom and Navigate Toolbar	38
Catalog Panel	38
Searching the Catalog	39
Commander	39
View Tabs	39
Scroll Bars	40
Auto Scroll	40
Status Bar	40
Worksheet View	40
Using Keyboard Shortcuts	41
Default Quick Key Shortcuts	41
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics	45
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics	45 45
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure	45 45 45
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure	45 45 45 45
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements	45 45 45 46
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs	45 45 45 45 46 47
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements	45 45 45 45 46 47 47
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset	45 45 45 45 46 47 47 47
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements	45 45 45 45 46 47 47 47
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements	45 45 45 46 47 47 47 47 48
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements	45 45 45 45 45 45 45 45 47 47 47 47 47 48
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements	45 45 45 46 47 47 47 47 48
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements Repeating the Insertion of a Line-Drawn Element	45 45 45 45 46 47 47 47 - 47 - 48 - 48
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements Repeating the Insertion of a Line-Drawn Element Using Space as Enter	45 45 45 45 46 47 47 47 47 - 48 48 48 . 49
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements Repeating the Insertion of a Line-Drawn Element Using Space as Enter Auto Scroll	45 45 45 45 46 47 47 47 47 47 47 - 47 48 48 . 49 49
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements Repeating the Insertion of a Line-Drawn Element Using Space as Enter Auto Scroll Going into Selection Mode for Editing	45 45 45 45 45 45 45 47 47 47 47 47 - 47 - 47 - 4
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements Repeating the Insertion of a Line-Drawn Element Using Space as Enter Auto Scroll Going into Selection Mode for Editing Enabling/Disabling Screen Tips	45 45 45 45 46 47 47 47 47 47 47 - 48 48 48 49 49 50 50
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements Repeating the Insertion of a Line-Drawn Element Using Space as Enter Auto Scroll Going into Selection Mode for Editing Enabling/Disabling Screen Tips Selecting Elements for Editing	45 45 45 45 46 47 47 47 47 47 47 47 48 48 48 48 49 49 50 50
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements Repeating the Insertion of a Line-Drawn Element Using Space as Enter Auto Scroll Going into Selection Mode for Editing Enabling/Disabling Screen Tips Selecting Elements	45 45 45 45 45 45 47 47 47 47 47 - 47 - 48 48 48 48 49 49 49 50 50
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements Selecting an Insertion of a Line-Drawn Element Using Space as Enter Auto Scroll Going into Selection Mode for Editing Enabling/Disabling Screen Tips Selecting Elements on All Locations Selectable in 21	45 45 45 45 46 47 47 47 47 47 47 47 48 48 48 48 49 49 49 50 50 50 D 51
Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics Drawing & Editing Basics Units of Measure Selecting a Unit of Measure Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs Inserting Elements Specifying an Insertion Offset Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements Repeating the Insertion of a Line-Drawn Element Using Space as Enter Auto Scroll Going into Selection Mode for Editing Enabling/Disabling Screen Tips Selecting Elements on All Locations Selectable in 21 Accessing Edit Tools	45 45 45 45 46 47 47 47 47 47 47 47 48 48 48 48 48 50 50 50 51

Chapter 3: Building Locations	53
Building Locations	53
Defining Building Locations	53
Adding a Building Location	54
Editing a Building Location	55
Deleting a Building Location	55
Making a Building Location Current	. 55
Allowing a Different Current Location Per View Win	n-
dow	56
Location Dimming	56
Chapter 4: House Builder Wizard	1
House Builder Wizard	1
Using the House Builder Wizard	1
Launching the House Builder Wizard Automatically	at
Startup	3
Creating a Custom House Builder Wizard Con-	
figuration	3
Chapter 5: Walls	5
Walls	5
Drawing Walls	5
Drawing Walls	5
Drawing Walls from an Offset Baseline	7
Adding a Story	7
Using the Floor and Foundation Builder Wizard \dots	7
Editing Walls	9
Editing Dynamic Dimension Settings	. 10
Resizing a Wall Layout	10
Lengthening and Shortening Walls	. 11
Editing the Width of a Wall	11
WhatEditing the Height of a Wall	. 12
Defining a Wall's Components	12
Lowering or Raising the Exterior Face of a Wall \ldots	14
Making a Wall Invisible in 2D	14
Raising or Lowering a Wall	14
Sloping a Wall	15
Stepping a Wall	15
Extending Walls to the Roof	15
Making Walls Level	16
Moving Walls	16
Rotating a Wall	17
Curving a Wall	17
Offsetting a Wall	17
Breaking a Wall	18
Breaking a Wall into Specific Lengths	. 18

	Moving Wall Breaks	18
	Deleting a Wall	19
	Paint & Trim	19
	Applying Different Materials to Walls	19
	Adding Paint and Wallpaper	19
	Adding Trim to Walls	20
	er fApplying a Profile to Trim	23
	Corner Details	23
	Adding Corner Details to Walls	23
	Editing Corner Details	23
	Deleting Corner Details	24
Cha	apter 6: Footings, Columns & Mem-	
ber	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	25
	Footings, Columns & Members	25
	Strip Footings	25
	Attaching Strip Footings to Walls	25
	Inserting Strip Footings by Picking Points	25
	Editing the Shape of a Strip Footing	26
	Editing the Size of Strip Footings	26
	Moving/Stretching Strip Footings	26
	Lengthening and Shortening Strip Footings	26
	Breaking Strip Footings	27
	Curving Strip Footings	27
	Deleting Strip Footings	27
	Mono Footings	27
	Attaching Mono Footings to Columns	27
	Inserting Mono Footings by Picking Points	28
	Editing the Mono Footing Type	28
	Editing the Size of Mono Footings	28
	Moving Mono Footings	28
	Rotating Mono Footings	28
	Deleting Mono Footings	28
	Columns	29
	Inserting Columns	29
	Editing the Shape of a Column	29
	Available Profiles for Members, Columns and Foot-	
	ings	29
	Editing the Dimensions of a Column	30
	Editing the Elevation of a Column	30
	Moving a Column	30
	Deleting a Column	30
	Members	30
	Inserting Members	31
	Inserting Members with Custom Settings	31

Inserting a Horizontal Member	32
Inserting a Sloping Member	. 32
Inserting a Member by Matching a Plane	33
Inserting Multiple Members Simultaneously	33
Inserting Trusses and Portal Frames	. 34
Editing Truss and Portal Frame Properties	35
Editing a Member's Insertion Reference Point	36
Moving a Member	36
Rotating a Member in the 2D Plane	. 37
Rotating a Member's Profile	. 37
Lengthening or Shortening a Member	37
Extending/Trimming Members to a Cutting Edge .	37
Breaking a Member	38
Breaking Members at Other Elements	38
Offsetting a Member	38
Adjusting a Member to a Plane	. 38
Extending a Member to a Plane	. 38
Raising or Lowering a Member	. 39
Editing the Shape of a Member	. 39
Available Profiles for Members, Columns and Foot-	
ings	39
Editing the Dimensions of a Member	. 40
Defining the Ends of a Member	. 40
Mitering Members	40
Specifying Purchased Lengths for Members and Columns	40
Converting Framing to Members	43
Displaying a Member as a Line in 2D	43
Deleting a Member	43
Chapter 7: Doors, Windows & Open-	
ings	.45
Doors, Windows & Openings	. 45
Doors	45
Inserting Doors	45
Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Center	46
Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Edge	46
Moving a Door	46
Flipping a Door	46
Flipping a Door Swing	46
Editing Door Swing Properties	. 47
Specifying the Definition of a Right-hand vs Left-	A 17
nand Door	47
	. 4/
Editing Door Types	48

Editing the Size of a Door	48
Stretching Doors, Windows and Openings	48
Editing the Shape of a Door	48
Displaying a Highlite or Sidelites on a Door	48
Editing a Door's Sidelites and Highlites	49
Editing a Door's Energy Properties	49
Editing a Door's Leaf	49
Editing Door Details	50
Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Door Opening	50
Deleting a Door	50
Corner Doors	51
Windows	51
Inserting Windows	51
Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Center	52
Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Edge	52
Moving a Window	52
Flipping a Window	52
Raising or Lowering a Window	53
Editing Window Types	53
Editing a Window's Size Properties	53
Stretching Doors, Windows and Openings	54
Displaying a Highlite, Lowlite or Sidelites on a Win-	
dow	54
Editing a Window's Sidelites, Highlites and Lowlites	54
	54
Editing Window Details	54 55
Editing Window Details Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening	54 55 55
Editing Window Details Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening Deleting a Window	55 55 56
Editing Window Details Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening Deleting a Window Controlling the Display of Window Opening Symbols	55 55 56 56
Editing Window Details Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening Deleting a Window Controlling the Display of Window Opening Symbols Corner Windows	55 55 56 56 56
Editing Window Details Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening Deleting a Window Controlling the Display of Window Opening Symbols Corner Windows Openings	55 55 56 56 56 56
Editing Window Details Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening Deleting a Window Controlling the Display of Window Opening Symbols Corner Windows Openings Inserting Wall Openings	55 55 56 56 56 56 56 57
Editing Window Details Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening Deleting a Window Controlling the Display of Window Opening Symbols Corner Windows Openings Inserting Wall Openings Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Center	55 55 56 56 56 56 56 56 57 57
Editing Window Details Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening Deleting a Window Controlling the Display of Window Opening Symbols Corner Windows Openings Inserting Wall Openings Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Center Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Edge	55 55 56 56 56 56 56 56 57 57 57
Editing Window Details	55 55 56 56 56 56 56 56 57 57 57 58
Editing Window Details Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening Deleting a Window Controlling the Display of Window Opening Symbols Corner Windows Openings Inserting Wall Openings Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Center Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Edge Creating a Niche Flipping a Niche	55 55 56 56 56 56 56 57 57 57 57 58 58
Editing Window Details Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening Deleting a Window Controlling the Display of Window Opening Symbols Corner Windows Openings Inserting Wall Openings Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Center Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Edge Creating a Niche Flipping a Niche Editing the Appearance of a Niche	55 55 56 56 56 56 56 57 57 57 57 58 58 58
Editing Window Details Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening Deleting a Window Controlling the Display of Window Opening Symbols Corner Windows Openings Inserting Wall Openings Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Center Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Edge Creating a Niche Flipping a Niche Moving a Wall Opening	55 55 56 56 56 56 56 56 57 57 57 57 57 58 58 58 58
Editing Window Details	55 55 56 56 56 56 56 57 57 57 57 58 58 58 58 58 58
Editing Window Details	55 55 56 56 56 56 56 56 57 57 57 57 58 58 58 58 58 59 59
Editing Window Details	55 55 56 56 56 56 56 57 57 57 57 58 58 58 58 58 58 59 59
Editing Window Details	55 55 56 56 56 56 57 57 57 57 57 57 58 58 58 58 58 59 59 59 59
Editing Window Details	55 55 56 56 56 56 57 57 57 57 57 58 58 58 58 58 59 59 59 59 59
Editing Window Details	55 55 56 56 56 57 57 57 57 57 58 58 58 58 58 58 59 59 59 59

Deleting a Wall Opening	60
Shutters	60
Inserting Shutters	60
Editing Shutters	61
Deleting Shutters	61
Chapter 8: Floors & Ceilings	63
Floors & Ceilings	63
Structural Floors	63
Inserting a Structural Floor Throughout a Building	
Location	63
Inserting a Structural Floor in a Room	. 64
Inserting a Structural Floor by Picking Points	64
Inserting a Bearing Line in a Structural Floor	64
Stretching or Moving a Bearing Line in a Structural	
Floor	65
Removing a Bearing Line	65
Moving the Framing Base Point in a Structural Floo	r 65
Adding Members to a Structural Floor	65
Removing a Member from a Structural Floor	66
Cutting an Opening in a Structural Floor	66
Editing Structural Floor Properties	. 66
Floors	67
Automatic Floors	67
Disabling or Enabling Automatic Floor Insertion	68
Inserting a Floor Throughout a Building Location	68
Inserting a Floor in a Room	68
Inserting a Floor by Picking Points	. 68
Defining the Extents of Floors to be Inserted in	60
Dividing a Deem	69
Maying Defined Flace Edges	70
Moving Defined Floor Edges	. 70
Posizing of Poshening of Elect	70
Adding a Node to a Floor	70
Removing a Node from a Floor	70
Curving a Floor Edge	70
Paising or Lowering a Floor	70
Editing the Thickness of a Floor	71
Applying Different Materials to Eleors	. 71
Converting a Floor to a Structural Floor	71
Deleting a Floor	. 71
Floor Openings	72
Cutting an Opening in an Automatic Floor	72
Cutting an Opening in a Manually Insorted Floor	72 72
Cutting an Opening in a Manually inserted Floor	

Resizing or Reshaping a Floor Opening	. 73
Curving a Floor Opening	73
Removing an Opening from an Automatically Inser-	
ted Floor	73
Removing an Opening from a Manually Inserted	
Floor	. 73
Ceilings	73
How Ceilings are Created	74
Inserting a Ceiling Throughout a Building Location	74
Inserting a Ceiling in a Room	74
Inserting a Ceiling By Picking Points	. 74
Defining the Extents of Ceilings to be Inserted in	
Rooms	. 75
Creating a Tray Ceiling	75
Creating a Cathedral Ceiling	76
Moving a Ceiling	76
Resizing or Reshaping a Ceiling	76
Adding a Node to a Ceiling	77
Removing a Node from a Ceiling	77
Curving a Ceiling Edge	77
Raising or Lowering a Ceiling	77
Applying Different Colors and Materials to Ceilings	.77
Deleting a Ceiling	78
Ceiling Openings	78
Cutting Openings in Ceilings	78
Resizing or Reshaping Ceiling Openings	. 78
Curving a Ceiling Opening	78
Removing an Opening from a Ceiling	. 78
Chapter 9: Stairs, Ramps & Railings	81
Stairs, Ramps & Railings	81
Stairs	81
Inserting Stairs and Ramps	81
Moving a Staircase or Ramp	81
Rotating a Staircase or Ramp	81
Parts of a Staircase	82
Editing Stair Size Properties	82
Editing a Staircase Layout	82
Editing Stair Details	83
Editing the Appearance of a Stair Cut Line	. 84
Deleting a Staircase or Ramp	84
Cutting an Opening in an Automatic Floor	. 84
Cutting Openings in Ceilings	85
Ramps	85
Inserting Stairs and Ramps	85

	Moving a Staircase or Ramp	85
	Rotating a Staircase or Ramp	85
	Editing General Ramp Properties	86
	Editing the Layout of a Ramp	86
	Deleting a Staircase or Ramp	87
	Railings	87
	Inserting Railings on Both Sides of a Staircase or	
	Ramp	87
	Inserting a Railing on the Left Side of a Staircase or	
	Ramp	87
	Inserting a Railing on the Right Side of a Staircase or	~~~
		88
	Inserting a Kalling Along the Center of a Staircase or Ramp	88
	Inserting a Horizontal Bailing	88
	Parts of a Railing	89
	Editing Railing Properties	80
	Changing the Length of a Railing	90
	Stretching a Railing	90
	Poteting a Pailing	90
	Deleting a Railing	90
Ch	antar 10: Poofo	90 24
CI	Page Systems	01
	Roof Systems	91
	Roots	91
	Inserting a Roof Py Disking Doints	91
	Selecting a Roof for Editing	91 02
	Changing the Way a Levyer Story Poof is Created	92 02
	Converting a Hin Boof to a Cable Boof	92
	Extending Walls to the Deef	90 02
	Extending wans to the Root	90
	Defining the Material at Cable Ends	04
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends	94 04
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends	94 94 05
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof	94 94 95
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof Rotating a Roof	94 94 95 95
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof Rotating a Roof Stretching a Roof Matching Roof Plance	94 94 95 95 95
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof Rotating a Roof Stretching a Roof Matching Roof Planes Pashaping a Roof	94 94 95 95 95 96 96
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof Rotating a Roof Stretching a Roof Matching Roof Planes Reshaping a Roof Breaking a Roof Surface	94 94 95 95 95 96 97 97
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof Rotating a Roof Stretching a Roof Matching Roof Planes Reshaping a Roof Breaking a Roof Surface Creating Cables Mid Fascia	94 95 95 95 96 97 97
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof Rotating a Roof Stretching a Roof Matching Roof Planes Reshaping a Roof Breaking a Roof Surface Creating Gables Mid-Fascia Editing the Basic Properties of a Roof Surface	94 95 95 95 97 97 97
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof Rotating a Roof Stretching a Roof Matching Roof Planes Reshaping a Roof Breaking a Roof Surface Creating Gables Mid-Fascia Editing the Basic Properties of a Roof Surface Editing the Height of a Roof Surface	94 95 95 95 97 97 97 97 98
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof Rotating a Roof Stretching a Roof Matching Roof Planes Reshaping a Roof Breaking a Roof Surface Creating Gables Mid-Fascia Editing the Basic Properties of a Roof Surface Editing the Height of a Roof Surface Applying a Different Roofing Material	94 95 95 95 96 97 97 97 98 98
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof Rotating a Roof Stretching a Roof Matching Roof Planes Reshaping a Roof Breaking a Roof Surface Creating Gables Mid-Fascia Editing the Basic Properties of a Roof Surface Editing the Height of a Roof Surface Applying a Different Roofing Material	94 95 95 95 97 97 97 98 98 98
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof Rotating a Roof Stretching a Roof Matching Roof Planes Reshaping a Roof Breaking a Roof Surface Creating Gables Mid-Fascia Editing the Basic Properties of a Roof Surface Editing the Height of a Roof Surface Applying a Different Roofing Material Converting a Roof to Surfaces	94 95 95 95 97 97 97 97 98 98 99
	Defining the Material at Gable Ends Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends Moving a Roof Rotating a Roof Stretching a Roof Matching Roof Planes Reshaping a Roof Breaking a Roof Surface Creating Gables Mid-Fascia Editing the Basic Properties of a Roof Surface Editing the Height of a Roof Surface Applying a Different Roofing Material Converting a Roof to Surfaces Deleting a Roof	94 95 95 95 97 97 97 97 98 98 99 99 99

Dormers99Creating Dormer Roof101Stretching a Dormer Roof101Deleting a Dormer101Deleting a Dormer101Skylights101Inserting Skylights101Moving a Skylight102Rotating a Skylight102Editing the Properties of a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Noving a Roof Accessories102Inserting Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface108Joining Surface Together108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surface112Deleting a Opening in a Surface112D	Removing a Roof Opening	99
Creating Dormers100Moving a Dormer Roof101Stretching a Dormer101Deleting a Dormer101Skylights101Inserting Skylights101Moving a Skylight102Rotating a Skylight102Deleting a Dormer solution102Deleting a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Noving a Roof Accessories102Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or Upper Point107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Deleting a Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Deleting a Surface112<	Dormers	99
Moving a Dormer Roof101Stretching a Dormer Roof101Deleting a Dormer101Skylights101Inserting Skylights101Moving a Skylight102Rotating a Skylight102Editing the Properties of a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Roof Accessories102Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface<	Creating Dormers	100
Stretching a Dormer Roof101Deleting a Dormer101Skylights101Inserting Skylights101Moving a Skylight102Rotating a Skylight102Editing the Properties of a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Roof Accessories102Inserting Roof Accessories102Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or Upper Point107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting	Moving a Dormer Roof	101
Deleting a Dormer101Skylights101Inserting Skylights101Moving a Skylight102Rotating a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Noving a Roof Accessories102Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface's Lower or Upper Point107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surface112Deleting a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112 </td <td>Stretching a Dormer Roof</td> <td>101</td>	Stretching a Dormer Roof	101
Skylights101Inserting Skylights101Moving a Skylight102Rotating a Skylight102Editing the Properties of a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Noof Accessories102Inserting Roof Accessories102Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface's Lower or UpperPoint107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112 <td>Deleting a Dormer</td> <td>101</td>	Deleting a Dormer	101
Inserting Skylights101Moving a Skylight102Rotating a Skylight102Editing the Properties of a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Roof Accessories102Inserting Roof Accessories102Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Surfaces106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Joining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Details110Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening in a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Removing an Opening from a Surface112	Skylights	101
Moving a Skylight102Rotating a Skylight102Editing the Properties of a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Roof Accessories102Inserting Roof Accessories102Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Surfaces106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Adding a Surface Edge107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or UpperPoint107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surface Edge Properties108Converting a Roof Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface113Framing113Displaying Fram	Inserting Skylights	101
Rotating a Skylight102Editing the Properties of a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Roof Accessories102Inserting Roof Accessories102Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface113Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Moving a Skylight	102
Editing the Properties of a Skylight102Deleting a Skylight102Roof Accessories102Inserting Roof Accessories102Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface in Upper107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface113Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framin	Rotating a Skylight	102
Deleting a Skylight102Roof Accessories102Inserting Roof Accessories102Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Surfaces105Moving a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface's Lower or Upper Point107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113Displaying Framing113	Editing the Properties of a Skylight	102
Roof Accessories102Inserting Roof Accessories103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface's Lower or UpperPoint107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surface Edge Properties108Converting a Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Displaying Framing113Framing113Displaying Framing113	Deleting a Skylight	102
Inserting Roof Accessories102Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface113Framing113Sipplaying Framing113	Roof Accessories	102
Moving a Roof Accessory103Rotating a Roof Accessory103Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or UpperPoint107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Details111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting Surface112Surface Togethy113Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Inserting Roof Accessories	102
Rotating a Roof Accessory103Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103 Chapter 11: Surfaces105 Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface's Lower or UpperPoint107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or UpperPoint107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Details110Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface113Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Moving a Roof Accessory	103
Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory103Deleting a Roof Accessory103 Chapter 11: Surfaces105 Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface's Lower or UpperPoint107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surface108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface113Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Rotating a Roof Accessory	103
Deleting a Roof Accessory103Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or UpperPoint107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Framing113Framing113Framing113Framing113Displaying Framing113	Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory	103
Chapter 11: Surfaces105Surfaces105Creating a Surface106Moving a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or UpperPoint107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Deleting a Roof Accessory	103
Surfaces105Creating a Surface105Moving a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or Upper Point107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface113Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Chapter 11: Surfaces	105
Creating a Surface105Moving a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or Upper107Point107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface113Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Surfaces	105
Moving a Surface106Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or UpperPoint107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Creating a Surface	105
Resizing or Reshaping a Surface106Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or Upper Point107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Deleting a Surface112Framing a Surface113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Moving a Surface	106
Adding a Node to a Surface106Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or Upper Point107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surface Edge Properties108Defining Roof Surface Edge Details110Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Resizing or Reshaping a Surface	106
Curving a Surface Edge107Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or Upper Point107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface113Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Adding a Node to a Surface	106
Editing the Slope of a Surface107Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or Upper107Point107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Curving a Surface Edge	107
Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or Upper Point107Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Editing the Slope of a Surface	107
Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface108Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing Roof Surface Edge Details110Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Deleting a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or Upper Point	107
Joining Surfaces Together108Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing Roof Surface Edge Details110Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface	. 108
Converting a Roof to Surfaces108Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing Roof Surface Edge Details110Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Deleting a Surface112Chapter 12: Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Joining Surfaces Together	108
Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties108Editing Roof Surface Edge Details110Editing Roof Surface Edge Details111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Converting a Roof to Surfaces	108
Editing Roof Surface Edge Details110Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Chapter 12: Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties	108
Editing the Thickness of a Surface111Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Editing Roof Surface Edge Details	110
Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces111Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Chapter 12: Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Editing the Thickness of a Surface	111
Applying Different Materials to Surfaces111Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Chapter 12: Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces	. 111
Cutting an Opening in a Surface112Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Chapter 12: Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Applying Different Materials to Surfaces	. 111
Editing Surface Openings112Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Chapter 12: Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Cutting an Opening in a Surface	112
Removing an Opening from a Surface112Deleting a Surface112Chapter 12: Framing113Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Editing Surface Openings	112
Deleting a Surface112Chapter 12: Framing113Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Removing an Opening from a Surface	112
Chapter 12: Framing 113 Framing 113 Framing Display 113 Displaying Framing 113	Deleting a Surface	112
Framing113Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Chapter 12: Framing	113
Framing Display113Displaying Framing113	Framing	113
Displaying Framing 113	Framing Display	113
	Displaying Framing	113
	Displaying Framing	113

	Returning to a Non-Framed View	114
	Wall Framing	114
	Selecting a Framing Member for Walls	114
	Specifying Whether Walls are Load-bearing or Non-	
	load-bearing	115
	Defining Wall Framing Options for Building Loca-	
	tions	115
	Going into Framing Mode	116
	Editing the Infill Configuration for Individual Walls	116
	Editing the Framing Rule for Individual Walls	117
	Editing the Span Table Selection for Individual	
	Walls	118
	Editing the Head/Sill/Jamb Configuration for Indi-	
	vidual Openings	118
	Editing Intersection Framing	119
	Creating Custom Intersection Framing Con-	
	figurations	119
	Floor Framing	122
	Specifying Floor Framing Options	123
	Converting Framing to Members	124
	Ceiling Framing	124
	Specifying Ceiling Framing Options	124
	Roof Framing	125
	Specifying Roof Framing Options	126
	Editing a Roof's Frame Details	128
	Inserting Truss Profiles Under a Roof Surface	128
	Editing Truss Run Properties	129
	Surface Framing	130
	Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces	130
	Convert Framing to Members	131
	Converting Framing to Members	131
Ch	apter 12: Wall Panels 1	31
	Wall Panels	131
	Setting Up a Wall Panel Tagging System	132
	Displaying/Hiding Wall Panel Tags	133
	Defining Wall Panel Settings	133
	Previewing Wall Panels	137
	Viewing and Editing the Properties of Individual	
	Wall Panels	138
	Flipping a Wall Panel's View Side	139
	Moving Wall Panel Tags	140
	Editing Wall Panel Numbering	140
	Re-ordering Wall Panels Manually	142
	Editing Wall Panel Names	142
	Applying Name Changes to Wall Panels	143

	Editing Content Display in Wall Panel Diagrams \dots	144
	Editing Wall Panel Dimension Settings	145
	Editing the Dimension Style Used in Wall Panels	146
	Editing Wall Panel Schedule Settings	146
	Editing the Text Styles Used for Wall Panels	147
	Editing Wall Panel Insertion Settings	147
	Specifying Default Print Settings for Wall Panel Dia-	
	grams	149
	Inserting Wall Panels onto Worksheets	149
	Regenerating Wall Panels	150
	Editing Inserted Wall Panels Manually	150
	Deleting Unreferenced Wall Panels	151
	Exporting Wall Panel Data to a CSV File	152
Cha	apter 13: Interiors 1	53
	Interiors	153
	Kitchen Builder Wizard	153
	Creating a Kitchen with the Kitchen Builder Wizard	153
	Creating a Custom Kitchen Wizard Configuration	155
	Launching the Kitchen Builder Wizard Auto-	
	matically at Startup	155
	Bathroom Builder Wizard	155
	Creating a Bathroom with the Bathroom Builder	
	Wizard	156
	Creating a Custom Bathroom Wizard Configuration	157
	Launching the Bathroom Builder Wizard Auto-	150
	Calificate	158
	Laboration of California	158
	Maring Cabinets	158
	Deteting a Cabinet	158
	Rotating a Cabinet	158
	Raising or Lowering a Cabinet	159
	Editing Cabinet Properties	159
	Applying Different Finishes to Cabinets	160
	D Liting a Sink	160
	Deleting a Cabinet	160
	Countertops	161
	Inserting a Countertop	161
	Moving a Countertop	161
	Stretching a Countertop	161
	Curving a Countertop	162
	Eatting the Properties of a Countertop	162
	Deleting a Countertop	162
	Appliances	162
	Inserting Appliances	163
	Moving Appliances	163

Rotating Appliances	163
Raising or Lowering Appliances	163
Editing Appliance Size Properties	163
Applying Colors and Materials to Appliances	. 164
Deleting an Appliance	164
Furniture, Electronics & Accessories	164
Inserting Interior Furniture	164
Inserting Electronics	164
Inserting Interior Accessories	165
Moving Furnishing Elements	165
Rotating Furnishing Elements	165
Raising or Lowering Furnishing Elements	. 165
Editing the Size of Furnishing Elements	. 165
Applying Different Colors, Fabrics and Finishes to Furnishing Elements	166
Deleting Furnishing Elements	166
Equipment	166
Inserting Equipment	166
Moving Equipment	166
Rotating Equipment	166
Raising or Lowering Equipment	166
Editing the Size of Equipment	167
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip-	
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- ment	. 167
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- ment	. 167 167
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting	167 167 167
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting Inserting Interior Lighting	167 167 167 167
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting Inserting Interior Lighting Changing the Way a Light Snaps Upon Insertion	167 167 167 167 . 168
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- ment	167 167 167 167 . 168 168
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- ment	167 167 167 167 . 168 168 168
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- ment	167 167 167 167 . 168 168 168
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equipment ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting Inserting Interior Lighting Changing the Way a Light Snaps Upon Insertion Moving a Light Fixture Rotating a Light Fixture Raising or Lowering a Light Fixture Editing the Size of a Light Fixture	167 167 167 . 168 168 168 168
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equipment ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting Inserting Interior Lighting Changing the Way a Light Snaps Upon Insertion Moving a Light Fixture Rotating a Light Fixture Raising or Lowering a Light Fixture Editing the Size of a Light Fixture Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source	167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equipment ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting Inserting Interior Lighting Changing the Way a Light Snaps Upon Insertion Moving a Light Fixture Rotating a Light Fixture Raising or Lowering a Light Fixture Editing the Size of a Light Fixture Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source Turning a Light On or Off	167 167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168 169
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- mentDeleting EquipmentInterior LightingInserting Interior LightingChanging the Way a Light Snaps Upon InsertionMoving a Light FixtureRotating a Light FixtureRaising or Lowering a Light FixtureEditing the Size of a Light FixtureEditing a Light Fixture's Light SourceTurning a Light On or OffChanging the Way a Light Fixture Looks	167 167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168 169 169
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- mentDeleting EquipmentInterior LightingInserting Interior LightingChanging the Way a Light Snaps Upon InsertionMoving a Light FixtureRotating a Light FixtureRaising or Lowering a Light FixtureEditing the Size of a Light FixtureEditing a Light Fixture's Light SourceTurning a Light On or OffChanging the Way a Light Fixture LooksDeleting a Light Fixture	167 167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168 168 169 169 169 . 170
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equipment ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting Inserting Interior Lighting Changing the Way a Light Snaps Upon Insertion Moving a Light Fixture Rotating a Light Fixture Raising or Lowering a Light Fixture Editing the Size of a Light Fixture Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source Turning a Light On or Off Changing the Way a Light Fixture Looks Deleting a Light Fixture	167 167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168 169 169 169 170 170
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- mentDeleting EquipmentInterior LightingInserting Interior LightingChanging the Way a Light Snaps Upon InsertionMoving a Light FixtureRotating a Light FixtureRaising or Lowering a Light FixtureEditing the Size of a Light FixtureEditing a Light Fixture's Light SourceTurning a Light On or OffChanging the Way a Light Fixture LooksDeleting a Light Fixture	167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168 169 169 169 170 170 170
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equipment ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting Inserting Interior Lighting Changing the Way a Light Snaps Upon Insertion Moving a Light Fixture Rotating a Light Fixture Raising or Lowering a Light Fixture Editing the Size of a Light Fixture Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source Turning a Light On or Off Changing the Way a Light Fixture Looks Deleting a Light Fixture Inserting Electrical Elements Inserting Outlets Throughout a Room Automaticall	167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168 169 169 169 170 170 170 170 170 9
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equipment ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting Inserting Interior Lighting Changing the Way a Light Snaps Upon Insertion Moving a Light Fixture Rotating a Light Fixture Raising or Lowering a Light Fixture Editing the Size of a Light Fixture Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source Turning a Light On or Off Changing the Way a Light Fixture Looks Deleting a Light Fixture Inserting Electrical Elements Inserting Outlets Throughout a Room Automaticall Moving an Electrical Element	167 167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168 169 169 170 170 170 170 170 171
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equip- mentDeleting EquipmentInterior LightingInserting Interior LightingChanging the Way a Light Snaps Upon InsertionMoving a Light FixtureRotating a Light FixtureRaising or Lowering a Light FixtureEditing the Size of a Light FixtureEditing a Light Fixture's Light SourceTurning a Light On or OffChanging the Way a Light Fixture LooksDeleting a Light FixtureInserting Electrical ElementsInserting Outlets Throughout a Room Automaticall Moving an Electrical Element	167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168 169 169 170 170 170 170 170 170 171 171
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equipment ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting Inserting Interior Lighting Changing the Way a Light Snaps Upon Insertion Moving a Light Fixture Rotating a Light Fixture Raising or Lowering a Light Fixture Editing the Size of a Light Fixture Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source Turning a Light On or Off Changing the Way a Light Fixture Looks Deleting a Light Fixture Inserting Electrical Elements Inserting Outlets Throughout a Room Automaticall Moving an Electrical Element Raising or Lowering an Electrical Element	167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168 169 169 170 170 170 170 170 171 171
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equipment ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting Inserting Interior Lighting Changing the Way a Light Snaps Upon Insertion Moving a Light Fixture Rotating a Light Fixture Raising or Lowering a Light Fixture Editing the Size of a Light Fixture Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source Turning a Light On or Off Changing the Way a Light Fixture Looks Deleting a Light Fixture Inserting Electrical Elements Inserting Outlets Throughout a Room Automaticall Moving an Electrical Element Raising or Lowering an Electrical Element Different Color or Material to an Electrical Element	167 167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168 169 169 170 170 170 170 170 170 171 171 171
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equipment ment Deleting Equipment Interior Lighting Inserting Interior Lighting Changing the Way a Light Snaps Upon Insertion Moving a Light Fixture Rotating a Light Fixture Raising or Lowering a Light Fixture Editing the Size of a Light Fixture Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source Turning a Light On or Off Changing the Way a Light Fixture Looks Deleting a Light Fixture Inserting Electrical Elements Inserting Outlets Throughout a Room Automaticall Moving an Electrical Element Raising or Lowering an Electrical Element Different Color or Material to an Electrical Element Deleting an Electrical Element	167 167 167 168 168 168 168 168 169 169 170 170 170 170 170 171 171 171 171

	Inserting Electrical Wiring	172
	Stretching and Reshaping Wiring	172
	Editing the Line Style of Wiring	172
	Selecting a Default Line Style for Wiring	172
	Deleting Wiring	173
	Plumbing	173
	Inserting Plumbing Fixtures	173
	Moving Plumbing Fixtures	173
	Rotating Plumbing Fixtures	173
	Raising or Lowering Plumbing Fixtures	173
	Editing the Size of a Plumbing Fixture	174
	Applying a Different Color or Finish to a Plumbing Fixture	174
	Deleting Plumbing Fixtures	174
	HVAC	174
	Inserting HVAC Elements	174
	Moving HVAC Elements	174
	Rotating HVAC Elements	175
	Raising or Lowering HVAC Elements	175
	Editing the Size of HVAC Elements	175
	Deleting HVAC Elements	175
Cha	apter 14: Landscaping 1	77
	Landscaping	177
	Europeuping	1//
	Plants	177
	Plants	177 177 177
	Plants Inserting Plants Moving a Plant	177 177 177 177
	Plants Inserting Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant	177 177 177 177 177
	Plants Inserting Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View	177 177 177 177 177 177
	Plants Inserting Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant	177 177 177 177 177 178 178
	Plants Inserting Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size	177 177 177 177 177 178 178 178
	Plants Inserting Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size Deleting a Plant	177 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178
	Plants Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size Deleting a Plant Seeing Plant Growth Over Time	177 177 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178
	Plants Plants Inserting Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size Deleting a Plant Seeing Plant Growth Over Time Applying Seasonal Changes to Plants	177 177 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178
	Plants Inserting Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size Deleting a Plant Seeing Plant Growth Over Time Applying Seasonal Changes to Plants Inserting Plants from the Encyclopedia	177 177 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178
	Plants Inserting Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size Deleting a Plant Seeing Plant Growth Over Time Applying Seasonal Changes to Plants Inserting Plants from the Encyclopedia Adding Plants to the Catalog from the Encyclopedia	177 177 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178
	Plants Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size Deleting a Plant Seeing Plant Growth Over Time Applying Seasonal Changes to Plants Inserting Plants from the Encyclopedia Adding Plants to the Catalog from the Encyclopedia Plant Encyclopedia	177 177 177 177 177 177 177 177 178 178
	Plants Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size Deleting a Plant Seeing Plant Growth Over Time Applying Seasonal Changes to Plants Inserting Plants from the Encyclopedia Adding Plants to the Catalog from the Encyclopedia Plant Encyclopedia Using the Plant Encyclopedia	 177 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178 178 178 179 180 180 180 180
	Plants Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size Deleting a Plant Seeing Plant Growth Over Time Applying Seasonal Changes to Plants Inserting Plants from the Encyclopedia Adding Plants to the Catalog from the Encyclopedia Plant Encyclopedia Using the Plant Encyclopedia Encyclopedia Main Page	 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178 178 178 178 178 178 179 180 180 180 180 181
	Plants Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size Deleting a Plant Seeing Plant Growth Over Time Applying Seasonal Changes to Plants Inserting Plants from the Encyclopedia Adding Plants to the Catalog from the Encyclopedia Plant Encyclopedia Using the Plant Encyclopedia Encyclopedia Main Page Selecting a Plant to View	 177 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178 178 178 178 179 180 180 181 182
	Plants Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size Deleting a Plant Seeing Plant Growth Over Time Applying Seasonal Changes to Plants Inserting Plants from the Encyclopedia Adding Plants to the Catalog from the Encyclopedia Plant Encyclopedia Using the Plant Encyclopedia Encyclopedia Main Page Selecting a Plant to View Viewing Plant Information	 177 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178 178 178 178 178 179 180 180 180 180 181 182 182 182
	Plants	177 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178 178
	Plants Plants Moving a Plant Editing the Elevation of a Plant Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View Changing the Age of a Plant Changing the Age of a Plant Forcing a Custom Plant Size Deleting a Plant Seeing Plant Growth Over Time Applying Seasonal Changes to Plants Inserting Plants from the Encyclopedia Adding Plants to the Catalog from the Encyclopedia Plant Encyclopedia Using the Plant Encyclopedia Encyclopedia Main Page Selecting a Plant to View Viewing Plant Information Plant Care Calendar World Map Page	 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178 178 178 178 179 180 180 181 182 182 182 183 184
	Plants	 177 177 177 177 177 178 178 178 178 178 178 178 179 180 180 180 180 180 181 182 182 183 184 185

Diseases Page	186
Filtering the Plant List	186
Inserting Plants from the Encyclopedia	188
Adding Plants to the Catalog from the Encyclopedia	188
Garden Beds, Ponds & Fills	189
Creating Fills	189
Moving a Filled Area	189
Rotating a Filled Area	189
Resizing a Filled Area	189
Reshaping a Filled Area	190
Curving a Filled Area	190
Changing the Fill Material	190
Deleting a Filled Area	190
Edging	190
Inserting Edging	191
Cleaning Up the Corners of Edging	191
Moving Edging	191
Rotating Edging	192
Changing the Length of Edging	192
Breaking Edging	192
Curving Edging	192
Editing the Height and Width of Edging	192
Changing the Edging Material	192
Deleting Edging	193
Fences & Gates	193
Inserting a Fence	193
Stretching a Fence Layout	193
Changing the Length of a Fence	193
Creating a Break in a Fence	193
Parts of a Fence	194
Editing the Properties of a Fence	194
Applying Different Materials to a Fence	195
Deleting a Fence	195
Inserting a Gate	195
Moving a Gate	195
Flinning a Gate	196
Flinning a Gate's Swing	196
Editing the Properties of a Gate	196
Deleting a Gate	196
Sheds	196
Building a Shed with the Shed Builder Wizard	197
Moving a Shed	198
Rotating a Shed	199
Editing a Shed	100
Luting a oncu	177

Launching the Shed Builder Wizard Automatically	
at Startup	199
Creating a Custom Shed Builder Wizard Con-	
figuration	199
Decks	200
Decks	200
Building a Deck with the Deck Builder Wizard \ldots .	200
Building a Deck with the Deck Tool	202
Launching the Deck Builder Wizard Automatically	
at Startup	202
Moving a Deck	202
Rotating a Deck	202
Changing the Direction of Deck Boards	203
Stretching a Deck	203
Reshaping a Deck	203
Adding a Node to a Deck	203
Removing a Node from a Deck	203
Curving a Deck Edge	203
Changing the Height of a Deck	204
Editing Deck Post Properties	204
Editing Deck Footings	204
Editing the Deck Frame	204
Controlling the Display of Deck Railings	205
Changing the Style of a Deck Railing	205
Controlling the Display of Deck Skirting	205
Changing the Skirting Material on a Deck	205
Deleting a Deck	206
Deck Openings	206
Inserting an Opening in a Deck	206
Resizing a Deck Opening	206
Reshaping a Deck Opening	206
Curving a Deck Opening Edge	206
Removing Deck Openings	207
Deck Stairs	207
Adding Stairs to a Deck	207
Moving Deck Stairs	207
Editing the Size of Deck Stairs	207
Controlling the Display of Railings on Deck Stairs	208
Editing Stringers, Treads and Risers on Deck Stairs	208
Deleting Deck Stairs	209
Irrigation	209
Inserting Irrigation	209
Moving a Sprinkler	210
Rotating a Sprinkler	210
0 r	

Editing the Height of a Sprinkler	. 210
Editing a Sprinkler's Spray Properties	210
Deleting a Sprinkler	210
Exterior Structures	210
Inserting Exterior Structures	210
Inserting a House Template	211
Moving Exterior Structures	211
Rotating Exterior Structures	211
Editing the Size of an Exterior Structure	212
Applying Different Colors or Materials to Exterior Structures	212
Deleting an Exterior Structure	212
Exterior Furniture & Accessories	212
Inserting Exterior Furniture	212
Inserting Exterior Accessories	213
Moving Furnishing Elements	213
Rotating Furnishing Elements	213
Raising or Lowering Furnishing Elements	213
Editing the Size of Europshing Elements	213
Applying Different Colors, Fabrics and Finishes to	··· _ 0
Furnishing Elements	214
Deleting Furnishing Elements	. 214
Exterior Lighting	214
Inserting Exterior Lighting	214
Moving a Light Fixture	214
Editing the Size of a Light Fixture	. 214
Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source	215
Turning a Light On or Off	215
Changing the Way a Light Fixture Looks	216
Deleting a Light Fixture	216
Chapter 14: Terrain	216
Terrain	216
Terrain Modeling	216
Terrain Settings	217
Cutting the Terrain Around the Building	217
Defining the Size of the Terrain	. 217
Defining the Grade Level of the Terrain	217
Defining the Terrain Mesh Spacing	218
Controlling the Display of Terrain Contours	218
Selecting a Material for the Terrain	218
Specifying Line Style Settings for the Terrain	219
Displaying/Hiding the Terrain Boundary Line	219
Turning the Terrain On and Off	. 219
Hills & Valleys	219

Creating Hills and Valleys	219
Moving a Hill	220
Editing the Height or Shape of a Hill	220
Deleting a Hill	220
Berms and Trenches	220
Creating Berms and Trenches	220
Moving a Berm	221
Rotating a Berm	221
Stretching a Berm	221
Editing the Height or Shape of a Berm	221
Deleting a Berm	221
Plateaus	221
Creating Plateaus	221
Moving a Plateau	222
Stretching a Plateau	222
Reshaping a Plateau	222
Editing the Height or Peak Shape of a Plateau	222
Deleting a Plateau	222
Slopes	222
Creating Slopes	223
Moving a Slope	223
Stretching a Slope	223
Editing the Height of a Slope	223
Editing the Angle of a Slope	224
Deleting a Slope	224
TIN Mesh	224
Importing Site Data	224
Converting the Terrain to a TIN Mesh	228
Adding Spot Level Points to a TIN Mesh	228
Editing the Elevation of Spot Level Points	229
Adjusting the Smoothness of Mesh Contours	229
Controlling the Display of Terrain Contour Labels .	230
Resetting the Terrain	230
Paths & Driveways	230
Creating Paths, Sidewalks and Driveways	231
Moving a Path Element	231
Stretching a Path Element	231
Curving a Path Element	232
Editing the Thickness or Width of a Path Element	232
Applying Different Materials to Path Elements	232
Deleting a Path Element	232
Pads	232
Creating a Pad	232
Disabling the Hug Terrain Option	233

	Moving a Pad	233
	Rotating a Pad	233
	Resizing a Pad	233
	Reshaping a Pad	233
	Curving a Pad	233
	Editing the Thickness of a Pad	234
	Applying a Different Material to a Pad	234
	Deleting a Pad	234
	Retaining Walls	234
	Drawing Retaining Walls	234
	Moving Walls	234
	Rotating a Wall	236
	Lengthening and Shortening Walls	236
	Curving a Wall	236
	Breaking a Wall	237
	Editing the Width of a Wall	237
	WhatEditing the Height of a Wall	238
	Sloping a Wall	238
	Stepping a Wall	238
	Applying Different Materials to Walls	238
	Deleting a Wall	239
	Property Lines	239
	Creating a Site Boundary Using the Reference Angle	
	Method	239
	Creating a Site Boundary Using the Angle Bearing	240
	Merring - Cite Devendence	240
	Stratching a Site Boundary	241
	Edition the Longth on Direction of City Boundary	241
	Editing the Length of Direction of Site Boundary Edges	241
	Defining Setback Distances	242
	Clipping the Terrain to the Site Boundary	242
	Curving a Site Boundary Edge	242
	Editing a Site Boundary's Line. Text and Peg Styles	243
	Selecting a Method of Measurement When Drawing	-10
	a Site Boundary	243
	Deleting a Site Boundary	244
Ch	apter 15: Editing Elements in Model	
Vie		245
	Editing Elements in Model View	245
	Accessing Edit Tools	245
	Undoing the Previous Action	245
	Redoing an Undo	245
	Moving Elements	245
	Nudging Elements	246

Editing Nudge Distances	246
Raising and Lowering Elements	246
Rotating Elements	247
Curving Elements	248
Changing an Element's Orientation	. 248
Copying Elements on the Same Location	. 249
Copying Objects to Other Locations	. 249
Cutting and Pasting Elements	249
Arraying Elements	250
Mirroring Elements	250
Replacing Elements	250
Editing the Size and Composition of an Element .	251
Editing an Element's Layer Assignments	. 251
Editing an Element's Material Settings	. 252
Editing an Element's Pattern Settings	. 253
Solid Filling Walls and Other Elements	. 253
Editing Solid Fill Colors	253
Disabling Solid Fill for Individual Elements	254
Applying Colors and Materials with the Materials	
Paintbrush	254
Undoing a Material Application	. 255
Sampling Materials with the Eyedropper	255
Viewing Recently Used Materials	255
Setting the Maximum Size for the Material History	,
List	255
Matching the Appearance of Elements	. 256
Querying Elements	256
Deleting Elements	256
Chapter 16: 2D and 3D Viewing	257
2D and 3D Viewing	257
The Navigator	257
Using the Navigator	257
Moving the Navigator	258
Turning the Navigator On or Off	. 259
2D Viewing	259
Viewing the 2D Plan	259
Viewing a 2D Designer's Plan	259
3D Viewing	259
Quick 3D Viewing	259
Displaying 3D Camera Views	260
Creating a New 3D Camera View	261
Creating Dynamic Cutaway Views	. 261
Changing a 3D Camera View	261
Displaying the Camera Properties Panel	. 262

Panel	2
Closing the Camera Properties Panel	. 2
Turning Cameras On and Off	2
Changing Your Viewpoint	2
Changing the Camera Height	2
Changing the Target of a 3D Camera View	. 2
Changing the Target Height in a 3D Camera View	. 2
Changing the Viewing Field Angle	. 2
Viewing in Presentation/Virtual Reality Mode	2
Stereoscopic VR Viewing	2
Scene Properties	2
Specifying the Properties of a 3D Scene	. 2
Using Physically Accurate Lighting in a Scene	2
Defining the Time of Day in a Scene	. 2
Selecting a Background for a Scene	. 2
Changing the Sun and Sky Settings in a Scene	2
Enabling Reflections and Shadows in a Scene	2
Specifying the Exposure in a Scene	. 2
Navigating in 3D	2
Walking Around in a 3D Camera View	. 2
Flying Around Your 3D Model	. 2
Spinning the View with the Look Around Tool	2
Resetting the Camera	2
Zooming and Panning	2
Zooming In	2
Zooming Out	2
Zooming in Realtime	2
Zooming With a Scroll Wheel Mouse	2
Zooming a Selected Area (Zoom Window)	2
Zooming to Fit the Drawing Area	. 2
Panning	2
Zooming Back to the Previous View	2
Zoom & Navigation Settings	. 2
Zooming and Navigating with the Mouse	2
Assigning a Navigation Action to the Middle Mou	
Button	2
Inverting the Orbit when Navigating in 3D	2
Using Arrow Keys to Pan and Navigate	2
Adjusting Zoom and Navigation Speed	2
Setting the Zoom and Navigation Motion Response	e 2
Elevations	2
Viewing Elevations	2
<u> </u>	

	Displaying the Elevation Properties Panel	276
	Zooming and Panning in the Elevation Properties	
	Panel	276
	Closing the Elevation Properties Panel	277
	Turning Elevation Marks On and Off	277
	Moving Elevation Marks	277
	Changing the Target of an Elevation	278
	Editing Elevation Properties	278
	Detailing Elevations	278
	Deleting an Elevation	278
	Sections	279
	Creating a Section	279
	Viewing Sections	280
	Displaying the Section Properties Panel	280
	Zooming and Panning in the Section Properties	
	Panel	280
	Closing the Section Properties Panel	281
	Turning Section Marks On and Off	281
	Changing Your Viewpoint in a Section	281
	Changing the Depth of a Section	282
	Detailing Sections	282
	Editing Section Properties	282
	Deleting a Section	283
	Stereo Vision	283
	What is Stereo Vision?	283
	Displaying a 3D Stereo View	283
	Adjusting Stereo Vision Settings	283
	Changing the Display Mode	283
	Displaying a Wireframe View	284
	Displaying a Hidden Line View	285
	Displaying a Rendered View	285
	Displaying a Rendered Outline View	285
	Displaying a Patterned View	285
	Displaying a Realistic View	286
Ch	apter 17: View Filters 2	287
	View Filters	287
	Display Filter	287
	Filtering the Display	288
	Displaying/Hiding Elements on Locations	288
	Displaying/Hiding Building Locations	289
	Displaying/Hiding Elements on the Terrain	289
	Displaying/Hiding Notation Objects	290
	Displaying/Hiding Viewing Aids	290
	Displaying/Hiding Framing Mode Components	290

	Displaying/Hiding Text	290
	Displaying/Hiding Dimensions	290
	Displaying/Hiding Drafting Objects	291
	Displaying/Hiding Electrical Wiring	291
	Displaying/Hiding Project Trace Images	291
	Displaying/Hiding Schedules	291
	Displaying/Hiding Schedule Marks	291
	Selection Filter	292
	Selection Filtering	292
	Making Elements on Locations Selectable or Non-	
	Selectable	292
	Making Building Locations Selectable or Non-Select-	
	able	293
	Making Elements on the Terrain Selectable or Non-	203
	Making Natation Objects Salastable or Non Salast	293
	able	294
	Making Viewing Aids Selectable or Non-Selectable	294
	Making Framing Mode Components Selectable or	
	Non-Selectable	.294
	Making Text Selectable or Non-Selectable	294
	Making Dimensions Selectable or Non-Selectable	295
	Making Drafting Objects Selectable or Non-Select-	
	able	295
	Making Electrical Wiring Selectable or Non-Select-	
	able	295
	Making Project Trace Images Selectable or Non-	205
	Making Schedules Scleetable or Nep Scleetable	295
	Making Schedule Marks Selectable or Non-Selectable	293
	able	296
	Point-and-Click Filters	296
	Hiding Items by Picking in Your Drawing	296
	Hiding All Except What Is Picked	296
	Making Items Non-Selectable by Picking in Your	
	Drawing	296
	Making All Non-Selectable Except What Is Picked	296
	View Filter Templates	297
	Creating a View Filter Template	297
	Applying a View Filter Template	297
	Editing a View Filter Template	297
	Deleting a View Filter Template	297
Ch	apter 17: Managing View Windows .2	98
	Managing View Windows	298
	Adding a Group to the View Manager	298

	Renaming a Group in the View Manager	298
	Deleting a Group in the View Manager	299
	Expanding and Collapsing Groups in the View Man	-
	ager	299
	Creating a New View Window	299
	Copying a View Window	300
	Renaming a View Window	300
	Opening View Windows	300
	Closing View Windows	301
	Deleting a View Window	301
	Re-ordering Views in the View Manager	301
	Displaying/Hiding the View Tabs	302
	Making a View Window the Current View Window	302
	Switching Between View Windows	302
	Allowing a Different Current Location Per View	
	Window	302
	Tiling View Windows	302
	Cascading View Windows	303
	Returning to a Maximized View	303
	Restoring the Previous Arrangement of View Win-	
	dows	.303
•••	Dratting & Documentation	303
('h		
CII	apter 18: Dratting in Model view 3	000
CII	Drafting in Model View 3	305
CII	Drafting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View 5 Text (Model View) 5	305 305
GI	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	305 305 305
CII	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	305 305 305 305 305
CII	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View 5 Text (Model View) 5 Text tool (Model View) 5 Adding Text in Model View 5 Customizing the Labels Library 5	305 305 305 305 305 306
CII	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	305 305 305 305 305 306 307
CII	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	305 305 305 305 305 306 307 307
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	305 305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307 307
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	 305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307 307 307 307
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	 305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307 307 307 307 307 308
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	 305 305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307 307 308 308 308
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View 7 Text (Model View) 7 Text tool (Model View) 7 Adding Text in Model View 7 Customizing the Labels Library 7 Moving Text in Model View 7 Rotating Text in Model View 7 Customizing the Labels Library 7 Moving Text in Model View 7 Rotating Text Content in Model View 7 Changing the Style of Text in Model View 7 Updating a Text Style Globally 7 Customizing the Text Styles Library 7 Changing the Justification of Multi-line Text 7 Finding and Replacing Text in Model View 7	 305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307 307 307 308 308 308 308
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	 305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307 307 308 308 308 308 309
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	 305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307 307 307 308 308 308 309 309
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View 7 Text (Model View) 7 Text tool (Model View) 7 Adding Text in Model View 7 Customizing the Labels Library 7 Moving Text in Model View 7 Rotating Text in Model View 7 Changing the Style of Text in Model View 7 Changing the Style of Text in Model View 7 Updating a Text Style Globally 7 Customizing the Text Styles Library 7 Changing the Justification of Multi-line Text 7 Finding and Replacing Text in Model View 7 Deleting Text in Model View 7 Text with Leader tool (Model View) 7 Adding Text with a Leader in Model View 7	 305 305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307 307 307 307 308 308 308 309 309 309
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	 305 305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307 307 307 307 308 308 309 309 310
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307 307 307 307 307 308 308 308 308 309 309 309
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	 305 305 305 305 306 307 307 307 307 307 307 308 308 308 309 309 309 310 310
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View	 305 305 305 305 305 307 307 307 307 307 307 307 307 307 308 308 309 309 310 310 310
	apter 18: Dratting in Model View 3 Drafting in Model View 7 Text (Model View) 7 Adding Text in Model View 7 Customizing the Labels Library 7 Moving Text in Model View 7 Rotating Text in Model View 7 Rotating Text in Model View 7 Rotating Text in Model View 7 Changing the Style of Text in Model View 7 Updating a Text Style Globally 7 Customizing the Text Styles Library 7 Changing the Justification of Multi-line Text 7 Finding and Replacing Text in Model View 7 Deleting Text in Model View 7 Deleting Text with a Leader in Model View 7 Adding Text with a Leader in Model View 7 Moving and Stretching a Leader 7 Changing the Style of Text with a Leader in Model View 7 Woving the Style of Text with a Leader Globally 7 Woving Leader Text in Model View 7 Woving Leader Text in Model View 7	 305 305 305 305 305 307 307 307 307 307 307 307 307 308 308 309 309 309 310 310 310 310

Deleting Text with a Leader in Model View	310
Dimensions (Model View)	311
Setting the Current Dimension Style in Model View	311
Specifying Exterior Dimension Settings	311
Specifying Interior Dimension Settings	313
Creating Automatic Exterior Dimensions	315
Creating Automatic Interior Dimensions	315
Creating Linear Dimensions in Model View	316
Creating Aligned Dimensions in Model View	316
Creating Angular Dimensions in Model View	. 316
Creating Continuous Dimensions in Model View	317
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Model View	318
Creating Overall Dimensions in Model View	319
Creating Room Dimensions	320
Moving a Dimension Line in Model View	320
Stretching Dimensions in Model View	320
Aligning Dimensions in Model View	321
Joining Dimensions in Model View	321
Splitting Dimensions in Model View	321
Overriding Dimension Text in Model View	321
Changing the Style of a Dimension in Model View .	322
Updating a Dimension Style Globally	322
Dimension Style Properties	322
Deleting a Dimension in Model View	324
Element Marks	324
Specifying How Elements are Marked	324
Specifying Settings for Element Marks	324
Displaying/Hiding Element Marks	325
Lines & Shapes (Model View)	325
Lines (Model View)	325
Drawing Lines in Model View	325
Moving a Line in Model View	326
Rotating a Line in Model View	326
Stretching a Line in Model View	326
Extending a Line to Another Object (Model View) .	. 326
Trimming a Line to Another Object (Model View)	326
Breaking a Line in Model View	327
Offsetting a Line in Model View	327
Editing the Style of a Line in Model View	327
Deleting a Line in Model View	328
Arcs (Model View)	328
Drawing Arcs in Model View	328
Moving an Arc in Model View	329
Rotating an Arc in Model View	329

Stretching an Arc in Model View	9
Editing the Curve of an Arc in Model View	9
Extending an Arc to Another Object (Model View) . 329	9
Trimming an Arc to Another Object (Model View) . 330	0
Offsetting an Arc in Model View	0
Editing the Line Style of an Arc in Model View 330	0
Deleting an Arc in Model View	1
Circles (Model View)	1
Drawing Circles in Model View	1
Moving a Circle in Model View	2
Rotating a Circle in Model View	2
Stretching a Circle in Model View	2
Editing the Line Style of a Circle in Model View 332	2
Deleting a Circle in Model View	2
Ellipses	2
Creating Ellipses in Model View	2
Creating Elliptical Arcs in Model View	3
Moving an Elliptical Object in Model View	4
Rotating an Elliptical Object in Model View	5
Stretching an Elliptical Object in Model View 333	5
Editing the Line Style of an Elliptical Object 333	5
Deleting an Elliptical Object in Model View	5
Rectangles	5
Drawing Rectangles in Model View	5
Moving a Rectangle in Model View	6
Rotating a Rectangle in Model View	6
Stretching a Rectangle in Model View	6
Editing the Line Style of a Rectangle in Model View 336	6
Deleting a Rectangle in Model View	6
Polygon Hatch (Model View)	6
Drawing Hatched Polygons in Model View	6
Moving a Polygon in Model View	7
Rotating a Polygon in Model View	7
Stretching a Polygon in Model View	7
Editing the Style of a Polygon's Boundary Line	
(Model View)	7
Editing a Polygon's Hatch Pattern in Model View 332	7
Deleting a Polygon in Model View	8
Revision Clouds	8
Drawing Revision Clouds in Model View	8
Moving a Revision Cloud in Model View	8
Stretching a Revision Cloud in Model View	8
Editing Revision Cloud Properties in Model View 339	9
-	

Converting 2D to 3D	339
Converting 2D Lines and Shapes to 3D Building Elements	- . 339
Details (Model View)	339
Batt Insulation (Model View)	339
Drawing Batt Insulation in Model View	339
Moving Batt Insulation in Model View	340
Stretching Batt Insulation in Model View	340
Editing the Line Style of Batt Insulation in Model View	. 340
Deleting Batt Insulation in Model View	340
Rigid Insulation (Model View)	340
Drawing Rigid Insulation in Model View	340
Moving Rigid Insulation in Model View	341
Stretching Rigid Insulation in Model View	341
Editing the Line Style of Rigid Insulation in Model	
View	.341
Deleting Rigid Insulation in Model View	341
Wood Sections (Model View)	341
Drawing a Wood Section in Model View	341
Moving a Wood Section in Model View	342
Rotating a Wood Section in Model View	342
Stretching a Wood Section in Model View	342
Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Model	342
Deleting a Wood Section in Model View	342
Masonry Sections (Model View)	342
Drawing a Masonry Section in Model View	343
Moving a Masonry Section in Model View	3/3
Rotating a Masonry Section in Model View	3/3
Stretching a Masonry Section in Model View	343
Editing Masonry Section Properties in Model View	344
Editing the Line Style of a Masonry Section in	
Model View	.344
Deleting a Masonry Section in Model View	344
Cut Lines (Model View)	344
Drawing a Cut Line in Model View	344
Moving a Cut Line in Model View	345
Rotating a Cut Line in Model View	345
Stretching a Cut Line in Model View	345
Editing the Line Style of a Cut Line in Model View	.345
Deleting a Cut Line in Model View	345
Insert View	345
Inserting Views in Model View	345
Moving a Model View Image (in Model View)	347

Resizing a Model View Image (in Model View)	. 348
Deleting a Model View Image (in Model View)	. 348
Import CAD File (Model View)	348
Importing CAD Files in Model View	348
Resizing a CAD Image in Model View	350
Moving a CAD Image in Model View	350
Rotating a CAD Image in Model View	351
Deleting a CAD Image in Model View	351
Specifying a Default Drafting Objects Directory	. 351
Import PDF File	351
Importing a PDF File in Model View	351
Resizing a PDF Image	354
Moving a PDF Image	354
Rotating a PDF Image	354
Deleting a PDF Image	355
Chapter 19: Drafting in Worksheet	
View	357
Drafting in Worksheet View	357
Worksheet View	357
Switching to Worksheet View	357
The Worksheet View Environment	358
Controlling the Display of the Paper Shadow in	
Worksheet View	.359
Controlling the Display of Page Margin Lines in Worksheet View	.360
Lavers	360
Layer Control	360
Selecting a Layer to Draw On	360
Making a Layer Current	361
Creating a New Layer for the Current Project	. 361
Editing Layer Properties	361
Deleting a Layer	363
Transferring an Object to Another Layer	363
Overriding Color, Line Type and Line Weight	. 363
Controlling the Visibility of Layers	364
Controlling the Ability to Select and Edit Objects or	ı
Layers	. 364
Controlling Whether or Not a Layer is Plotted	. 365
Controlling the Display Order Priority of Layers	.365
Object Snaps (Worksheet View)	365
Using Object Snaps in Worksheet View	366
Selecting the Objects Snaps You Want to Use	366
Using a Specific Object Snap (Snap Override)	. 366
Turning Object Snaps On and Off	367

SmartViews	367
Inserting a Saved SmartView	367
Enabling/Disabling Polygon Consolidation When	
Inserting a SmartView	. 367
Defining the Appearance of Datum Lines in Elev-	
ations and Sections	.368
Editing a SmartView	369
Redefining a SmartView's Settings	369
Updating a SmartView with Changes to your Mode	1370
Updating SmartViews Globally	370
Deleting Unreferenced SmartViews from Memory .	. 370
Moving a SmartView	371
Rotating a SmartView	371
Deleting a SmartView	371
Borders & Title Blocks	371
Customizing the Default Title Block	371
Deleting the Default Drawing Border and Title Block	k371
Importing CAD Files in Worksheet View	371
Moving a CAD Image in Worksheet View	373
Rotating a CAD Image in Worksheet View	373
Deleting a CAD Image in Worksheet View	373
Specifying a Default Drafting Objects Directory	. 374
Import CAD File (Worksheet View)	374
Importing CAD Files in Worksheet View	374
Moving a CAD Image in Worksheet View	376
Rotating a CAD Image in Worksheet View	376
Deleting a CAD Image in Worksheet View	376
Specifying a Default Drafting Objects Directory	. 376
Import PDF File	377
Importing a PDF File in Worksheet View	377
Moving a PDF Image	379
Rotating a PDF Image	379
Deleting a PDF Image	379
Import Image	379
Importing an Image in Worksheet View	379
Moving an Inserted Image	381
Rotating an Inserted Image	381
Scaling an Inserted Image	381
Deleting an Inserted Image	381
Text (Worksheet View)	381
Adding Text in Worksheet View	381
Adding a Description	382
Moving Text in Worksheet View	383
Rotating Text in Worksheet View	383
5	

Editing Text in Worksheet View	383
Finding and Replacing Text in Worksheet View	383
Controlling the Quality of Text Through Antiali-	384
Deleting Text in Worksheet View	38/
Taxt with Leader tool (Worksheet View)	284
Leaders (Marksheet View)	204
	204
Adding Text with a Leader in Worksneet View	384
Adding a Description with a Leader (Worksheet View)	385
Editing the Style or Content of Leader Text in Work- sheet View	386
Moving Leader Text in Worksheet View	386
Moving and Stretching a Leader	386
Changing the Style of a Leader in Worksheet View	387
Scaling Leader Arrows in Worksheet View	387
Deleting Text with a Leader in Worksheet View	387
Dimensions (Worksheet View)	387
Sotting the Current Dimension Style in Worksheet	507
View	387
Creating Linear Dimensions in Worksheet View	388
Creating Aligned Dimensions in Worksheet View	388
Creating Angular Dimensions in Worksheet View	388
Creating Angular Dimensions in Worksheet View	566
View	389
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View	390
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View	390 391
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View	390 391 392
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet	390 391 392
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View	390 391 392 392
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 392
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 392 392
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 392 392 392 392 392
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Joining Dimensions in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 392 392 392 393
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 392 392 393 393
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Joining Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet	 390 391 392 392 392 392 392 393
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Joining Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 392 393 393 393
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Joining Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet View Overriding Dimension Text in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 392 393 393 393 393
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Joining Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet View Overriding Dimension Text in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 392 393 393 393 394
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Joining Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet View Overriding Dimension Text in Worksheet View Scaling a Dimension Values in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 393 393 393 393 394 394
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet View Overriding Dimension Text in Worksheet View Scaling a Dimension Values in Worksheet View Deleting a Dimension in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 392 393 393 393 394 394 394
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Joining Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet View Overriding Dimension Text in Worksheet View Scaling a Dimension in Worksheet View Scaling a Dimension in Worksheet View Deleting a Dimension in Worksheet View Lines & Shapes (Worksheet View)	 390 391 392 392 392 393 393 393 393 394 394 394 394
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Joining Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet View Overriding Dimension Text in Worksheet View Scaling a Dimension in Worksheet View Scaling Dimension in Worksheet View Deleting a Dimension in Worksheet View Lines & Shapes (Worksheet View) Lines (Worksheet View)	 390 391 392 392 392 393 393 393 393 394 394 394 394 394 394 394 394 394
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet View Overriding Dimension Text in Worksheet View Scaling a Dimension in Worksheet View Scaling Dimension in Worksheet View Lines & Shapes (Worksheet View) Lines (Worksheet View) Drawing Lines in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 393 393 393 394
Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet View Overriding Dimension Text in Worksheet View Scaling a Dimension in Worksheet View Deleting a Dimension in Worksheet View Lines & Shapes (Worksheet View) Drawing Lines in Worksheet View Moving a Line in Worksheet View	 390 391 392 392 392 393 393 393 394 394 394 394 394 394 394 395 395

Rotating a Line in Worksheet View	395
Stretching a Line in Worksheet View	395
Extending a Line to Another Object (Worksheet	
View)	395
Trimming a Line to Another Object (Worksheet	
View)	395
Filleting Lines in Worksheet View	396
Breaking a Line in Worksheet View	397
Editing the Style of a Line in Worksheet View	397
Deleting a Line in Worksheet View	397
Polylines	397
Drawing Polylines in Worksheet View	397
Moving a Polyline in Worksheet View	397
Rotating a Polyline in Worksheet View	398
Stretching a Polyline in Worksheet View	398
Extending a Polyline to Another Object (Worksheet	
View)	398
Trimming a Polyline to Another Object (Worksheet	
View)	398
Joining Objects to a Polyline	399
Curving a Polyline (Worksheet View)	399
Decurving a Polyline	399
Closing a Polyline (Worksheet View)	399
Breaking a Polyline (Worksheet View)	400
Editing the Line Style of a Polyline (Worksheet	
View)	400
Deleting a Polyline (Worksheet View)	400
Arcs (Worksheet View)	400
Drawing Arcs in Worksheet View	400
Moving an Arc in Worksheet View	401
Rotating an Arc in Worksheet View	401
Stretching an Arc in Worksheet View	402
Editing the Curve of an Arc in Worksheet View	402
Earting the curve of an the in worksheet view	
Extending an Arc to Another Object (Worksheet View)	402
Extending an Arc to Another Object (Worksheet View) Trimming an Arc to Another Object in Worksheet View	402
Extending an Arc to Another Object (Worksheet View) Trimming an Arc to Another Object in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of an Arc in Worksheet View	402 402 402
Extending an Arc to Another Object (Worksheet View) Trimming an Arc to Another Object in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of an Arc in Worksheet View Deleting an Arc in Worksheet View	402 .402 402 403
Extending an Arc to Another Object (Worksheet View) Trimming an Arc to Another Object in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of an Arc in Worksheet View Deleting an Arc in Worksheet View Ellipses (Worksheet View)	. 402 . 402 . 402 . 403 . 403
Extending an Arc to Another Object (Worksheet View) Trimming an Arc to Another Object in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of an Arc in Worksheet View Deleting an Arc in Worksheet View Ellipses (Worksheet View) Drawing an Ellipse in Worksheet View	402 402 402 403 403 403
Extending an Arc to Another Object (Worksheet View) Trimming an Arc to Another Object in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of an Arc in Worksheet View Deleting an Arc in Worksheet View Ellipses (Worksheet View) Drawing an Ellipse in Worksheet View Drawing Elliptical Arcs in Worksheet View	. 402 . 402 402 403 403 403 403
Extending an Arc to Another Object (Worksheet View) Trimming an Arc to Another Object in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of an Arc in Worksheet View Deleting an Arc in Worksheet View Ellipses (Worksheet View) Drawing an Ellipse in Worksheet View Drawing Elliptical Arcs in Worksheet View	. 402 402 403 403 403 403 403 405
Extending an Arc to Another Object (Worksheet View) Trimming an Arc to Another Object in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of an Arc in Worksheet View Deleting an Arc in Worksheet View Ellipses (Worksheet View) Drawing an Ellipse in Worksheet View Moving an Elliptical Arcs in Worksheet View Rotating an Elliptical Object in Worksheet View	402 402 403 403 403 403 405 405
Extending an Arc to Another Object (Worksheet View) Trimming an Arc to Another Object in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of an Arc in Worksheet View Deleting an Arc in Worksheet View Ellipses (Worksheet View) Drawing an Elliptical Arcs in Worksheet View Drawing an Elliptical Object in Worksheet View Rotating an Elliptical Object in Worksheet View Stratching an Elliptical Object in Worksheet View	402 402 403 403 403 403 403 405 405

Editing the Line Style of an Elliptical Object in Work-	
sheet View	05
Deleting an Elliptical Object in Worksheet View 40	05
Circles (Worksheet View) 40	05
Drawing Circles in Worksheet View 40	06
Moving a Circle in Worksheet View 40	06
Rotating a Circle in Worksheet View 40	06
Stretching a Circle in Worksheet View 40	07
Editing the Line Style of a Circle in Worksheet View 40	07
Deleting a Circle in Worksheet View 40	07
Rectangles 44	07
Drawing Rectangles in Worksheet View 44	07
Moving a Rectangle in Worksheet View 44	07
Rotating a Rectangle in Worksheet View 44	08
Stretching a Rectangle in Worksheet View 4	08
Editing the Line Style of a Rectangle in Worksheet	
View	08
Deleting a Rectangle in Worksheet View 40	08
Polygons (Worksheet View) 40	08
Drawing Polygons in Worksheet View 40	08
Moving a Polygon in Worksheet View 40	09
Rotating a Polygon in Worksheet View 40	09
Stretching a Polygon in Worksheet View 40	09
Deleting a Polygon in Worksheet View 40	09
Polygon Hatch (Worksheet View) 40	09
Drawing Hatched Polygons in Worksheet View 4	10
Moving a Polygon in Worksheet View 42	10
Rotating a Polygon in Worksheet View 42	10
Stretching a Polygon in Worksheet View 4	10
Editing a Polygon's Hatch Pattern Line Properties in	10
Elitic Dila i Hali Dita i Malala i	10
View	10
Deleting a Polygon in Worksheet View	11
Povision Clouds	11
Drawing Pavision Clouds in Workshoet View	11
Maxing a Davision Clouds in Worksheet View	11
Stratching a Revision Cloud in Worksheet View4.	11
Elitic de la contra de la contr	12
sheet View	12
Editing a Revision Cloud's Hatch Pattern in Work-	
sheet View	12
Deleting a Revision Cloud in Worksheet View 4	12
Boundary Hatch (Worksheet View) 4	12
Creating Hatching Using Boundary Hatch 4	12

Moving Hatching in Worksheet View	414
Rotating Hatching in Worksheet View	414
Stretching Hatching in Worksheet View	414
Editing Hatch Pattern Line Properties in Worksheet	
View	. 414
Editing an Object's Hatch Pattern in Worksheet	
View	. 414
Deleting Hatching	414
Details (Worksheet View)	415
Batt Insulation (Worksheet View)	415
Drawing Batt Insulation in Worksheet View	415
Moving Batt Insulation in Worksheet View	415
Stretching Batt Insulation in Worksheet View	415
Editing the Line Style of Batt Insulation in Work-	
sheet View	415
Deleting Batt Insulation in Worksheet View	416
Rigid Insulation (Worksheet View)	416
Drawing Rigid Insulation in Worksheet View	416
Moving Rigid Insulation in Worksheet View	416
Stretching Rigid Insulation in Worksheet View	416
Editing the Line Style of Rigid Insulation in Work-	
sheet View	416
Deleting Rigid Insulation in Worksheet View	417
Wood Sections (Worksheet View)	417
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View	417 417
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View	417 417 417
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Wood Section in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Wood Section in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Work-	417 417 417 417 417 417
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Wood Section in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Work- sheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 417 418
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Wood Section in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Work- sheet View Deleting a Wood Section in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418
Wood Sections (Worksheet View)Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewRotating a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewEditing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewSheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewMasonry Sections (Worksheet View)	417 417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418
Wood Sections (Worksheet View)Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewRotating a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewEditing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewSheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewMasonry Sections (Worksheet View)Drawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418
Wood Sections (Worksheet View)Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewRotating a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewEditing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDrawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Masonry Section in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418 418 419
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Wood Section in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Work- sheet View Deleting a Wood Section in Worksheet View Masonry Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Masonry Section in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418 418 419 .419
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Wood Section in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Work- sheet View Deleting a Wood Section in Worksheet View Masonry Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418 418 419 .419
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Work- sheet View Deleting a Wood Section in Worksheet View Masonry Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Editing Masonry Section in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418 418 419 .419
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Wood Section in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Work- sheet View Deleting a Wood Section in Worksheet View Masonry Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Editing Masonry Section in Worksheet View Editing Masonry Section in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418 418 419 .419 .419 .419
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Wood Section in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Work- sheet View Deleting a Wood Section in Worksheet View Masonry Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Editing Masonry Section in Worksheet View Editing Masonry Section in Worksheet View Editing Masonry Section Properties in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418 418 418 419 .419 .419 .419 .419
Wood Sections (Worksheet View)Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewRotating a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewEditing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDasonry Sections (Worksheet View)Drawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewEditing Masonry Section Properties in WorksheetViewEditing the Line Style of a Masonry Section in WorksheetViewDeleting a Masonry Section in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418 418 418 419 .419 .419 .419 .419
Wood Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Wood Section in Worksheet View Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Work- sheet View Deleting a Wood Section in Worksheet View Masonry Sections (Worksheet View) Drawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Stretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Rotating a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Editing Masonry Section in Worksheet View Editing Masonry Section in Worksheet View Deleting a Masonry Section in Worksheet View Cut Lines (Worksheet View)	417 417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418 418 418 419 .419 .419 .419 .419 .419 - .419 419
Wood Sections (Worksheet View)Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewRotating a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewEditing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDasonry Sections (Worksheet View)Drawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewEditing Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewEditing Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewEditing Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewCut Line Style of a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewEditing the Line Style of a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewDrawing a Cut Line in Worksheet ViewDrawing a Cut Line in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418 418 418 419 .419 .419 .419 .419 419 419 420
Wood Sections (Worksheet View)Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewRotating a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewEditing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDawony Sections (Worksheet View)Drawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewEditing the Line Style of a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewEditing the Line Style of a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewCut Lines (Worksheet View)Drawing a Cut Line in Worksheet ViewMoving a Cut Line in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418 418 418 418 419 .419 .419 .419 .419 .419 419 419 420 420
Wood Sections (Worksheet View)Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewRotating a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewEditing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Wood Section in Worksheet ViewDawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewMoving a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewStretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewBelting Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewCut Line Style of a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewBelting Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewCut Line Style of a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Masonry Section in Worksheet ViewDeleting a Cut Line in Worksheet ViewMoving a Cut Line in Worksheet ViewMoving a Cut Line in Worksheet View	417 417 417 417 417 417 417 418 418 418 418 418 418 419 .419 .419 .419 .419 .419 .419 420 420 420

Stretching a Cut Line in Worksheet View	420
Editing the Line Style of a Cut Line in Worksheet View	420
Deleting a Cut Line in Worksheet View	421
Roof Symbol (Worksheet View)	421
Inserting a Roof Symbol	421
Moving a Roof Symbol	421
Deleting a Roof Symbol	421
Member Spacing Note (Worksheet View)	422
Inserting a Member Spacing Note	422
Editing a Member Spacing Note	422
Blocks	423
Creating a Block	423
Inserting a Block	423
Inserting a Block from Another Project	424
Moving a Block	424
Rotating a Block	424
Scaling a Block	424
Editing a Block	424
Deleting a Block	425
Deleting Unreferenced Blocks	425
Defining Attributes	425
Editing an Attribute Before it is Captured in a Block	426
Creating a Block with Attributes	426
Inserting a Block with Attributes	426
Editing Block Attribute Values	420
Editing Objects in Workshoot View	420
Salecting Objects in Worksheet View	427
Moving Objects in Workshoet View	427
Nudging Elements	420
Poteting Objects in Workshoet View	420
Duplicating Objects in Worksheet View	420
Cutting/Conving/Desting Objects in Worksheet View	429
Arraying Objects in Worksheet View	429
Offactting Objects in Worksheet View	427
Stratching Objects in Worksheet View	431
Stretching Objects in Worksheet View	431
Mirroring Objects in Worksheet View	431
Procling Objects in Worksheet View	431
Enter die z Objects in Worksheet View	432
Extending Objects in Worksheet View	432
Trimming Objects to Other Objects (Worksheet View)	432
Chamfering Objects in Worksheet View	433
Eillating Objects in Worksheet View	433
MALLYNTATAYT I UTATYNYTY ATA YNY ANDYNY TO TOTT A TATYNY A	1133

	Exploding Objects in Worksheet View	434
	Deleting Objects in Worksheet View	434
	Measuring Distance and Angle in Worksheet View	434
	Drafting Settings	434
	Selecting a Default Line Style for Drafting Objects	434
	Selecting a Default Layer for Details	435
	Specifying Default Revision Cloud Settings	435
	Specifying Default Polygon Hatch Settings	435
	Assigning Layers to Objects in Model View	436
Ch	apter 20: Estimating and Analysis 4	37
	Estimating and Analysis	437
	Area & Perimeter	437
	Calculating Area and Perimeter	437
	Room Measurements	438
	Defining the Extents of Room Regions to be Inserted	
	in Rooms	439
	Editing Room Region Properties	439
	Resizing or Reshaping a Room Region	439
	Moving Room Region Text	439
	Deleting a Room Region	439
	Estimating	440
	Quantitative Data	440
	Pricing and Other Data	440
	Editing the Quantitative Properties of Elements	440
	Editing Material Pricing	443
	Exporting the Quantitative Properties of all Catalog	
	Elements to a Text File	443
	Assemblies	444
	Accessing Assemblies	444
	Attaching Assemblies to Elements	444
	Removing an Assembly from an Element	446
	Replacing an Element with its Assemblies in Quant-	
	ity Reports	446
	Quantity Report	446
	Viewing a Quantity Report	446
	Selecting a Report Template	447
	Filtering Locations from an Estimate	447
	Ignoring Assemblies Attached to Materials	448
	Printing a Quantity Report	448
	Saving a Quantity Report	448
	Opening a Quantity Report in its Associated Editor	448
	Closing the Generate Project Estimate Dialog	449
	Excluding Elements from a Quantity Report	449
	Cut List	449

Printing a Cut List
Specifying How Members and Columns are Repor-
ted in the Quantity Report
Specifying Purchased Lengths for Members and
Columns
Optimizing a Cut List 454
Disabling or Enabling Cut List Generation
Report Templates
Creating a New Report Template 456
Opening a Report Template 457
Copying a Report Template 457
Editing a Report Template 457
Deleting a Report Template 457
Report Template Properties 458
Editing the Name of a Report Template 460
Editing the File Extension of Generated Quantity
Reports
Controlling the Display of the Currency Symbol in a
Quantity Report
Using Optimized Results for Members and Columns in the Quantity Report
Specifying the Sort Order of Materials in a Quantity
Report
Filtering Elements from the Quantity Report 462
Specifying How Information is Displayed in a
Quantity Report
Editing Headers and Footers in a Report Template . 463
Editing Element Entries in a Report Template 465
Editing Fields in a Record
Specifying Formulas
Adding Fields to a Record
Deleting Fields from a Record 471
Quote
Generate Quote
Generating a Quote (QG) 472
Quote Generator Overview
Overview of Quote Generator (QG) 473
Overview of a Quote (QG)
Product Database (QG)
Preparing a Product Database for Import into Quote
Generator
Importing Products from a CSV or TXT File (QG) 477
If the product records in the Quote Generator data-
base have been exported to an XML file, you can useImporting Product Records from an XML File478

Exporting Product Records to a CSV File (QG)	479
Exporting Product Records to an XML File (QG)	. 479
Backing Up the Quote Generator Database	480
Loading a Saved Database in Quote Generator	480
Customer Database (QG)	480
Importing Customer Records into Quote Generator	481
Viewing the Customer Database in Quote Generator	481
Records (QG)	481
Adding a Product Record to a Quote (QG)	482
Adding a Stock Item to a Quote (QG)	482
Replacing Products with Stock Items in a Quote	
(QG)	483
Replacing Products with Custom Items (QG)	484
Adding a Comment Record (QG)	484
Editing Cells in a Quote (QG)	485
Unmapping a Record in a Quote (QG)	486
Deleting a Record from a Quote (QG)	486
Disabling/Enabling Product Records in a Quote	
(QG)	486
Locking/Unlocking Product Records (QG)	487
Price Controls (QG)	487
Working in Admin Mode (QG)	487
Adjusting Price Levels (QG)	488
Editing Prices in a Quote (QG)	489
Applying Current Pricing to Products in a Quote	
(QG)	490
Adjusting Margin and Markup Rates (QG)	490
Applying Tax to Items in a Quote (QG)	491
Entering Discounts in a Quote (QG)	492
Adjusting the Grand Total in a Quote (QG)	492
Categories (QG)	492
Setting Up Categories in Quote Generator	493
Changing the Category in a Record (QG)	493
Construction Phases (QG)	493
Setting Up Construction Phases in Quote Generator	494
Changing the Construction Phase in a Record (QG)	.494
Usages (QG)	494
Setting Up Usages in Quote Generator	495
Changing the Usage in a Product Record (QG)	. 495
Manufacturers and Suppliers (QG)	495
Setting Up Manufacturers and Suppliers in Quote	
Generator	495
Specifying Manufacturer Information for Products	
in Quote Generator	496
Quote Generator Settings and Options	496

Specifying Company Information in Quote Gen-	
erator	497
Creating a Default External Text File for Use in	
Quote Generator Reports	499
Specifying a Selection Method for Stock Items (QG)	499
Specifying Price Level Names (QG)	499
Specifying Default Margin and Markup Rates (QG)	.500
Allowing or Preventing Cost Price Editing in Quote	
Generator	500
Setting the Grand Total Adjustment Rate (QG)	500
Setting Price Update Options in Quote Generator \dots	501
Specifying Tax Rates in Quote Generator	501
Using the Type Ahead Feature in Quote Generator .	501
Adding Estimators to Quote Generator	502
Verifying Customer Information in Quote Generator	502
Verifying Product Information (QG)	503
Viewing and Managing the Quote Generator Pro-	
gram Log (QG)	504
Reports (QG)	505
Specifying Customer Information in Quote Gen-	
erator	506
Specifying Quote and Estimator Information in	
Quote Generator	506
Viewing Reports in Quote Generator	507
Printing Reports in Quote Generator	509
Creating a PDF of a Report in Quote Generator	509
Customizing Reports in Quote Generator	510
Quote Files (QG)	514
Saving a Quote (QG)	514
Specifying a Default Save Location for Quotes (QG)	515
Setting the Auto Save in Quote Generator	515
Opening a Saved Quote (QG)	515
Exporting a Quote (QG)	515
Setting Export Options in Quote Generator	518
Viewing the Quote Log (QG)	518
Viewing a Quote Summary (QG)	519
Ouote Generator Program Settings	519
Using a Different Version of Ouote Generator	519
Using a Custom Ouote Generator Template	520
Upload to ERP	520
Unloading Data to an ERP System	520
Schedules	523
Generating a Door Schedule	523
Generating a Window Schedule	523
Concrating a Window Schedule	524
	524

Converting Framing to Members	524
Generating a Room Region Schedule	524
Moving a Schedule	525
Rotating a Schedule	525
Printing a Schedule	525
Defining the Field Layout of a Schedule	525
Defining the Text Styles in a Schedule	526
Defining the Line Styles in a Schedule	526
Defining Schedule Marks	526
Removing Schedule Marks	527
Deleting a Schedule	527
Energy Analysis	527
Green 3D Home.com	527
REScheck Export	527
Exporting Model Data to REScheck	527
Chapter 22: Rendering & Animation 5	29
Rendering & Animation	529
3D RealViewTM Rendering	529
How Rendering Works	529
Setting the Viewpoint for a Rendering	530
Setting the Lighting for a Rendering	530
Defining Your Location	530
Calculating True North from Magnetic North	531
Setting the Season	531
Creating a 3D RealViewTM Rendering	532
Rendering a Panoramic View for VR Viewing	533
Setting the Rendering Quality	535
Using Antialiasing in Rendering	535
Adjusting the Noise Reduction Level When Ren-	
dering	536
Controlling the Intensity of Trees and Billboards	536
Allowing the Background Brightness to Adjust	
when Rendering	.536
Using the Background Texture as a Light Source	E 2 7
Adjusting the Light Coming from Light Fixtures	527
Editing the Surface Properties of Materials	537
Troublochooting a 2D RoalViewTM Rendering	538
Animations	538
Drawing an Animation Path	520
Drawing Senarate Camera and Target Paths	540
Previewing an Animation	541
Repeating an Animation During the Provider	542
Changing the Path Order in an Animation	542
changing the rath Order in an Alimiatori	574

Choosing the Paths to Include in an Animation	542
Moving an Animation Path's Control Points	542
Adding Control Points to an Animation Path	543
Removing a Control Point from an Animation P	ath .543
Editing the Elevation of a Control Point	543
Editing the Elevation of the Target in an Animat	ion 543
Adding Sounds to an Animation	544
Removing Sounds from an Animation	544
Saving an Animation to a File	544
Editing the Default Name or Save Location of A	nim-
ation Files	545
Saving Individual Animation Frames	545
Changing the Speed of an Animation	546
Compressing Animation Files	546
Specifying an Output Size for Animation Files .	547
Specifying a Frame Rate for Animations	547
Ray Tracing an Animation	547
Turning Animation Paths On and Off	548
Deleting an Animation Path	548
Sounds	548
Attaching Sounds to Elements in Your Drawing	548
Attaching Sounds to Elements in the Catalog	548
Playing Sounds	549
Removing Sounds from Elements in Your Draw	ing 549
Removing Sounds from Elements in the Catalog	549
Selecting a Default Sounds Directory	549
Chapter 23: Drawing Aids	551
Drawing Aids	551
Drawing Aids	551
Setting Up a Drawing Grid	551
Turning the Drawing Grid On and Off	552
Using the Grid Snap	552
Turning the Grid Snap On and Off	552
Using Object Snaps in Model View	552
Using Angle Snap	553
Setting the Snap Priority	. 553
Object Snap Tracking	553
Using Ortho	554
Collision Control	554
Commander	554
Turning the Commander On or Off	555
Using the Commander	555
Displaying the Coordinate Icon	555
Specifying the Insertion Height of an Element Be	efore 555

	Inserting It	
	Selecting a Reference Point When Inserting and Edit	-
	ing Elements	556
	Entering Values in the Commander	556
	Specifying Distance and Direction in the Com-	
	mander	556
	Defining X, Y and Z Coordinates	556
	Direction and Angle of Rotation	557
	Rotating Elements Using the Commander	557
	Curving Elements Using the Commander	557
	Measure/Query	558
	Measuring Distance in Model View	558
	Measuring Distance and Angle in Worksheet View .	558
	Querying Elements	558
Ch	apter 24: Project Management 5	61
	Project Management	561
	Opening and Saving	561
	Opening a Saved Project	561
	Changing the Number of Files on the Recently Used	
	File List	562
	Repairing Damaged Projects	562
	Saving Projects	562
	Sharing Projects	562
	Setting the Automatic Save	563
	Setting the Number of Backups	563
	Specifying a Default Save Location for Projects	563
	Saving a Project as a Template	563
	Setting the Path to the Templates Directory	565
	Selecting a Directory for Temporary Files	565
	Closing Projects	565
	Printing	565
	Defining a View's Print Properties	566
	Printing Drawings	567
	Printing Across Multiple Sheets of Paper	569
	Editing the Print Scale of a View	569
	Printing to a File	570
	Creating a PDF File	570
	Batch Printing	571
	Vector Printing vs. Raster Printing	571
	Disabling Vector Printing in Worksheet View	572
	Importing	572
	Import PDF File	572
	Importing a PDF File in Model View	572
	Resizing a PDF Image	575
	5 6	

Moving a PDF Image	575
Rotating a PDF Image	575
Deleting a PDF Image	576
Import CAD File (Model View)	576
Importing CAD Files in Model View	576
Resizing a CAD Image in Model View	578
Moving a CAD Image in Model View	578
Rotating a CAD Image in Model View	579
Deleting a CAD Image in Model View	579
Specifying a Default Drafting Objects Directory	579
Importing an Image to Trace	579
Resizing a Project Trace Image	580
Tracing the Imported Floor Plan	581
Displaying/Hiding Project Trace Images	581
Deleting a Project Trace Image	581
Importing a Photo Board	581
Saving Imported Photo Boards to the Catalog	583
Inserting a Photo Board from the Catalog	583
Moving a Photo Board	583
Rotating a Photo Board in 2D	583
Changing the Elevation of a Photo Board	583
Changing a Photo Board from Stationary to Rotating	5
and Vice Versa	583
Editing the Size of a Photo Board	584
Deleting a Photo Board	584
Creating Transparency in Photo Board Images	584
Importing Custom Objects into Your Drawing	585
Importing Custom Objects into Your Catalog	586
Importing a 20-20 Design Project	588
Importing BIM Files	589
Importing Catalog Content from a BIM File	589
Importing Project Content from a BIM File	589
Import IFC File	589
Importing an IFC File	590
Exporting	590
Exporting the Current View to a 2D Image File	590
Exporting the 2D Drawing to a 2D AutoCAD File	591
Exporting the 3D Model	591
Exporting to Weyerhaeuser Javelin®	591
Exporting to CSD iStruct TM	591
Exporting to MiTek® SAPPHIRE Structure TM	592
Exporting to Boise BC Framer®	592
Exporting to Keymark® GS Software Suite	592
Exporting to Simpson Component Solutions $\mbox{$\mathbb{B}$}$	592

Exporting to 20-20 Design	592
Exporting to Sketchfab	592
Exporting Project Content to a BIM File	593
Project Manager	594
Accessing the Project Manager	. 594
Specifying Project Information	. 594
Keeping Track of Revisions	594
Customization	595
Chapter 25: Catalogs	597
Catalogs	597
Adding a Group or Subgroup to a Catalog	597
Moving a Subgroup to the Root	. 597
Renaming a Group in a Catalog	. 598
Changing the Order of Groups in a Catalog	598
Deleting a Group from a Catalog	. 598
Creating a New Catalog	599
Locking a Catalog	599
Unlocking a Catalog	599
Downloading Manufacturer Content	600
Opening a Catalog	600
Selecting a Default Catalog Directory	600
Viewing Catalog Properties	600
Saving a Catalog	601
Creating a Copy of a Catalog	601
Exporting Catalog Content to a Text File	601
Importing Catalog Content from a Text File	601
Exporting Catalog Content to a BIM File	602
Chapter 25: Elements	602
Elements	602
Using the Element Manager	603
Searching for Elements in the Element Manager .	603
Viewing Element Properties	604
Adding Elements to a Catalog	604
Saving Edited Elements in Your Drawing to a Cat	a-
log	605
Editing Elements in a Catalog	. 605
Tracing and Replacing Elements in a Catalog	606
Deleting Elements from a Catalog	607
Working with Property Pages	. 607
Using Automatic Name Generation	. 607
Modifying the Name Generation Formula	607
Editing the Size and Composition of an Element	608
Changing an Element's Orientation	608
Controlling What Parts of an Element are Display	ed 608

Simplifying an Element	609
Editing an Element's Insertion Point	609
Editing an Element's Snap Edge	609
Editing an Element's Insertion Height	609
Editing an Element's Layer Assignments	610
Editing an Element's Material Settings	610
Editing an Element's Pattern Settings	611
Adding Notes to an Element's Properties	611
Adding a Hyperlink to an Element's Properties	. 611
Opening an Element's Hyperlink	612
Making a Hyperlink Current	612
Grouping Elements in Your Drawing to Create a Single Element	.612
Inserting Grouped Elements	613
Editing Grouped Elements	613
Chapter 26: Libraries	615
Libraries	615
Using the Library Manager	615
Materials Library	616
Customizing the Materials Library	616
Editing Material Properties	617
Editing Texture Mapping Properties	619
Using Textures from Outside Sources	620
Specifying the Location of the Textures Directory	. 620
Material Usages Library	621
Enforcing Material Usages	621
Customizing the Material Usages Library	621
Material Filters Library	622
Filtering or Sorting the Materials Library	622
Customizing the Material Filters Library	622
Patterns Library	623
Customizing the Patterns Library	623
Editing a Pattern	623
Manufacturers Library	624
Setting Up the Manufacturers Library	624
Attaching Manufacturer Information to an Element	.625
Attaching Manufacturer Information to a Material .	. 625
Displaying Manufacturer Logos in the Catalog and Property Pages	625
Text Styles Library	625
Customizing the Text Styles Library	626
Dimension Styles Library	626
Customizing the Dimension Styles Library	626
Dimension Style Properties	627

Setting the Current Dimension Style in Model View	628
Line Styles Library	628
Customizing the Line Styles Library	628
Line Types Library	630
Customizing the Line Types Library	630
Line Weights Library	630
Customizing the Line Weights Library	631
Enabling/Disabling Line Weights	631
Layers Library	631
Customizing the Layers Library	631
Light Source Library	632
Customizing the Light Source Library	632
Specifying the Location of the Light Source Dir-	
ectory	634
Profiles Library	634
Customizing the Profiles Library	634
Creating Custom Profiles	635
Exporting a Polyline to the Profile Library	636
Editing a Custom Profile	637
Door Leafs Library	637
Customizing the Door Leafs Library	637
Importing a Custom Door Leaf	638
Editing Door Leaf Properties	639
Assembly Library	640
Customizing the Assemblies Library	640
Defining an Assembly	641
Specifying Formulas	642
Usages Library	645
Customizing the Usages Library	646
Phases Library	646
Customizing the Phases Library	647
Categories Library	647
Customizing the Categories Library	648
Units of Measure Library	648
Customizing the Units of Measure Library	649
Wizard Configurations	650
Creating a Custom House Builder Wizard Con-	
figuration	651
Creating a Custom Kitchen Wizard Configuration	651
Creating a Custom Shed Builder Wizard Con-	
figuration	652
Creating a Custom Bathroom Wizard Configuration	652
Framing Libraries	653
Wall Span Table Library	653

Customizing the Wall Span Table Library	653
Defining a Wall Opening Span Table	654
Head/Sill/Jamb Library	655
Customizing the Head/Sill/Jamb Library	655
Defining a Head/Sill/Jamb Configuration	656
Wall Infill Library	660
Customizing the Wall Infill Library	660
Defining a Wall Infill Configuration	662
Intersection Lookup Table Library	666
Customizing the Intersection Lookup Table Library	666
End Condition Library	667
Customizing the End Condition Library	667
Defining an End Condition Configuration	668
Chapter 27: Workspace Settings 6	571
Workspace Settings	671
Interface Settings	671
Displaying/Hiding Toolbars	671
Displaying Toolbars in a Tabbed Format	671
Displaying Toolbars in a Non-Tabbed Format	. 672
Changing the Color of Toolbar Areas	672
Customizing Toolbar Colors and Effects	672
Saving a Toolbar Color Theme	672
Loading a Toolbar Color Theme	673
Moving Toolbars	673
Displaying/Hiding the Information Panel	673
Resizing the Information Panel	673
Moving the Information Panel	674
Displaying/Hiding the Status Bar	674
Changing the Color of the Drawing Area	674
Displaying/Hiding the Scroll Bars	675
Enabling a Virtual Keyboard	675
Controlling the Launch of the Startup Screen	675
Viewing the Startup Screen	675
Keyboard Shortcuts	675
Customizing Keyboard Shortcuts	676
Graphics	676
Improving Graphics Display	676
Performing a Graphics System Check	677
Changing the Quality Level of Interactive Lighting	. 677
Disabling Interactive Lighting	677
Stereoscopic VR Viewing	677
Glossary	679
Tool Guide	694
Index	699

Chapter 1: Getting Started

Welcome

Envisioneer is for anyone who wants to design, renovate, decorate or landscape a home. It can be used on a desktop, laptop, or touch-screen device. This multi-functional tool is easy to use and delivers professional and accurate results.

Possible uses include:

- Home design
- Floor plans
- Interior design
- Exterior design
- Remodeling
- Framing
- Panelization
- Landscaping
- 3D visualization & animations
- Photorealistic renderings
- Project estimate
- Cut list
- Quote generation
- Export to other file formats

Whether you are just experimenting with different design ideas, or preparing drawings for an actual building project, *Envisioneer* makes it quick and easy.

Getting Started

Once you have installed and started the program, you are prompted to activate it. If you do not want to activate the program at this time, you can run a trial version instead. During the 30-day trial period you have full access to all features of the program (except Print and Export). One of the best ways to get to know Envisioneer is to view videos and tutorials.

When you're ready to start working with the software, we recommend going through the Quick Start Guide, which steps you through the completion of an actual project, and teaches you how to view and navigate.

When you are ready to start a project, you will probably want to select a unit of measure to work in, and set the level of precision you want in your measurements. Before inserting any elements, make sure you properly define your building locations according to your project requirements. You may also want to learn how to insert and select elements.

Program Setup

Once you have installed and started the program, you are prompted to activate it. If you do not want to activate the program at this time, you can run in Demo Mode instead. Demo Mode is a 30-day evaluation mode that provides full access to all features of the program (except Print and Export).

When you start the program, a Startup screen appears. Here you can click **New** to start a new project, or **Open Existing** to open an existing project. Before beginning a design, we recommend that you select a unit of measure to work in, and set the level of precision you want in your measurements. Before inserting any elements, make sure you properly define your building locations according to your project requirements.

When the program is running, you can start a new project and open saved projects at any time. You can also view sample projects.

Activating the Program

The Activation window appears when you start Envisioneer for the first time, and will keep appearing at startup until you have activated the program.



If you do not want to activate the program right away you can click the **Run Trial** button to run a trial version of the software. During the 30-day trial period you have full access to all features of the program except Print and Export. Once the trial period has ended, you need to activate the program to be able to run it. You can activate the program at any time during the trial period.

To activate the program:

- Click Activate at the bottom of the Activation dialog. If the Activation dialog is currently not open, select Help > Software Activation.
- 2. In the **Software Activation** dialog, enter the software's **Serial Number**, then click



Software Activation		X
Serial Number:		Automatic Activate
License Info		
Current Product:	Trial Version	
License Type:	Trial 25 of 30 days remaining	
		OK

If the activation is successful, the following dialog appears:

Software Activation	
Serial Number:	
	ATION SUCCEEDED
Current Product:	
License Type:	Purchased
License Type: Software Activation Secial Number:	Purchased
License Type: Software Activation Seial Number: Control ACTIVATION SUCCEE	Purchased
License Type: Software Activation Serial Number Comparison ACTIVATION SUCCEE License Info	Purchased
License Type: Software Activation Setial Number Correct Product: License Type: Purchesed	Purchased

J. CHCK ON.

Starting a New Project

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Every time you start the program, the Startup screen appears. You can start a new project directly from this screen by clicking **New** in the *Projects* pane. When the program is running, you can also start a new project using the **New** tool on the **File** menu.

By default, the **New** dialog box is displayed when you select the New tool, allowing you to select a drawing template on which to base your new project. Templates contain settings such as Building Location definitions, view window configurations, and program preferences such as units of measure and precision. The program ships with a variety of predefined templates for your convenience. You can edit these templates to suit your needs, or create new ones.

To start a new project from the Startup screen:

1. On the Startup screen, click **New** in the *Projects* pane.

2. In the **New** dialog, select the template on which you want to base your new project, then click **Create**. A new project is opened.

To start a new project if the program is already running:

- Select File > New or click and and toolbar.
- 2. In the **New** dialog, select the template on which you want to base your new project, then click **Create**. A new project is opened.

If the **Launch Wizard when Starting New Project** option is enabled in your program settings, the Wizard that is selected in your program settings (e.g. House Builder Wizard) launches automatically when you start a new project.

Tip: You can change your startup settings so that the New tool launches new projects based on a specific template every time, or no template at all. Selecting either of these options prevents the New dialog box from appearing and starts new projects right away.

Tip: You can create your own template by simply setting up a drawing with the desired settings and saving it in your Templates folder.

Starting New Projects from a Specific Template

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, every time you select the New tool, the New dialog box appears, allowing you to select the template that you want to use for your new project. If you tend to use the same template all the time, you can change your startup settings so that new projects are automatically based on that specific template. This prevents the New dialog box from appearing and starts your new project right away when you select the New tool.

To start new projects from a specific template every time:

Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.

- On the General page, click the top drop box in the *Startup* area and select Use Specific Template.
- 3. Click next to the edit box that is below the Use Specific Template option. In the **Open** dialog, locate and select the template that you want to use when starting new projects, then click **Open**. The template name is displayed in the edit box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Tip: You can create your own template by simply setting up a drawing with the desired settings and saving it in your Templates folder.

Starting New Projects Without Using Templates

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, every time you select the New tool, the New dialog box appears, allowing you to select the template that you want to use for your new project. If you do not want to use a template when starting new projects, you can change your startup settings so that new projects have no pre-defined settings. This prevents the New dialog box from appearing and starts your new project right away when you select the New tool.

To start new projects without using templates:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. On the **General** page, click the top drop box in the *Startup* area and select **Use No Template**.
- 3. Click **OK**.

Enabling Template Selection at Project Startup

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you want to be able to select any template you want when starting a new project, you must enable the Prompt for Template option in your startup settings. When you enable this option, the **New** dialog box appears every time that you select the New tool, allowing you to select a template to use for your new project.

To enable template selection at project startup:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. On the **General** page, click the top drop box in the *Startup* area and select **Prompt for Template**.
- 3. Click **OK**.

Tip: If you use the same template all the time, you can start new projects that are automatically based on that template. See Starting New Projects from a Specific Template on page 26.

Opening a Project from an Older Version

You can open projects from any previous version of Envisioneer in the new version. When you open an older project, you have the option of converting it to a current-version project, or you can make a copy to work with, leaving the original intact.

To open a project from an older version:

- If the Startup screen is currently displayed, click **Open Existing**. If the Startup screen is not currently displayed, select **File > Open**, or click a context of the Standard toolbar.
- 2. In the **Open** dialog, select the project to open, then click **Open**.
- To make a copy of the project and work with the copy instead of the original (recommended), enable the **Convert a Copy** radio button, and then click **Continue**. In the **Save As** dialog, type a name for the copy that is different from the original, then click **Save**. The copy is opened.
- To convert the project to the current version, select Convert the Original, and then click Continue. The project is converted and opened. Note that when you convert a project, the original is overwritten and cannot be opened in older versions of the program.
- To cancel the task without converting or opening anything, select the Cancel option and then click Continue.

Viewing Sample Projects

To give you an idea of the things you can do with Envisioneer, you may want to view some sample projects. These projects are located in the program's Samples directory.

To view sample projects:

- Select File > Open Samples, or click a solution on the Standard toolbar.
- 2. In the **Open** dialog, select the project you would like to view, then click **Open**.

Adjusting Your Display Settings

To ensure proper performance you should set your screen resolution to at least 1024 x 768 pixels. Consult the documentation for your *Windows* operating system for information on changing your screen resolution.

Learning Resources

What better way to familiarize yourself with Envisioneer than to watch an introductory video that gives you a tour through the interface, explains its features, and shows you how to use it.

Another great way to get started with the software is to go through the **Quick Start Guide**. This hands-on tutorial steps you through the completion of an actual project, giving you good practice before you start your own design projects. If you purchased a boxed version of the product, you can find a Quick Start Guide booklet inside the DVD case. If you purchased a downloadable version, select **Help > Quick Start Guide** in Envisioneer to open the guide in PDF format.

When you want to learn about a specific feature, just visit Cadsoft's online Learning Center and browse through an extensive list of informative videos.

Videos and Tutorials

Go to https://www.cadsoft.com/learningcenter/support-learning to view an extensive list of informative videos and tutorials that will help you familiarize yourself with the Envisioneer workspace and learn about its features.

To access the videos and tutorials from Envisioneer:

- Select Help > Customer Care or click on the Help menu.
- 2. On the **Learning Center** page, click **Support**.

Tip: There are a number of "getting started" and support resources available on the Startup screen that appears when you start the program.

Video Tutorials

Various online videos are available to help you learn about the Envisioneer workspace its features.

To access online videos:

- 1. Select Help > Launch Startup Screen.
- 2. On the startup screen, select **View Online Video Tutorials**.

Quick Start Guide

The Quick Start Guide is a short, step-by-step tutorial that teaches you the basics of the program through hands-on exercises. It is a great way to get up and running with the software as quickly as possible.

The Quick Start Guide can be found in the box or inside the DVD case if you have purchased a boxed version.

The Quick Start Guide is also available in PDF format, which can be read in Adobe® Reader®. Two versions are available: Imperial and Metric. The guide is also available in video format.

To view a PDF of the Quick Start Guide:

- Select Help > Quick Start Guide > Quick Start Guide (Imperial - PDF) or Quick Start Guide (Metric - PDF).
- Click the down arrow next to \$\vec{y}_2\$ \$\vec{y}_2\$ on the Help toolbar and select either Quick Start Guide (Imperial PDF) or Quick Start Guide (Metric PDF).
- Click the **View the Quick Start Guide** link on the Startup screen, then select the version that you would like to view (Imperial or Metric).

Getting Help

Online Help. Press **F1** or select **Help > Program Help** to access a comprehensive online help system that provides an overview of the program as well as detailed information about each tool and feature.

Context-Sensitive Help. This form of help is specific to a selected element or dialog. To display help for a specific element, select the element and then rightclick and select the Tool Help option at the bottom of the editing menu (e.g. Walls Help). To view information about the contents of a dialog displayed on the screen, click the help button in the dialog.

Tutor. The Tutor pops up when you select a tool to use from a menu or toolbar. It displays instant video and "how-to" information about the tool as well as tips and related links.

Glossary. If you come across a term that you are not familiar with, try searching the Glossary for a definition. To access it, select **Help > Glossary of Terms**.

User Guide. You can view a PDF of the User Guide by selecting **Read User Guide** from the **Help** menu, or by clicking **Read User Guide** on the Startup screen.

User Guide. You can view a PDF of the User Guide by selecting **User's Guide** from the **Help** menu, or by clicking **Find Documentation** on the Startup screen.

User's Guide. You can view a PDF of the Envisioneer User's Guide by clicking **Find Documentation** on the Startup screen.

User's Guide. You can view a PDF of the Envisioneer User's Guide by clicking **Read User Guide** on the Startup screen.

Online Support 24/7. Visit

http://www.cadsoft.com/support.php any time to view a variety of FAQs, white sheets, and videos, and post questions or browse topics on the Cadsoft Forum.

Online Support 24/7. Visit

http://www.personalarch.com/faqs.php any time to view a variety of FAQs and white sheets.

Technical Support. If you are not able to find an answer through the above-mentioned help options, please contact Cadsoft's technical support team. Technical Support. If you are not able to find an answer through the above-mentioned help options, please contact the TURBOFloorPlan technical support team.

Technical Support. Call 1-888-722-4431, or visit the Technical Support page for all available support options.

Technical Support. If you are not able to find an answer through the above-mentioned help options, please contact our technical support staff.

Technical Support. If you are not able to find an answer through the above-mentioned help options, please contact a Hyne technical support representative.

Technical Support. If you are not able to find an answer through the above-mentioned help options, please contact the Envisioneer technical support team.

Online Help

The comprehensive online help system includes information about every feature in Envisioneer. The system includes Index and Keyword Search features so that you can quickly find what you're looking for.

To access the online help file:

- Select Help > Program Help, or
- Press **F1**, or
- Click ? ? on the Standard toolbar or Help toolbar

Context-sensitive Help

Context-sensitive help is help for a specific dialog or element in your drawing.

To get help for a specific part of your drawing:

- 1. Select the element you want help with.
- Right-click and select the Tool Help option for that element (e.g. Walls Help). A list of topics related to the element is displayed just click the topic you want to learn more about. You can also access the Tool Help from the Edit > Modify Elements menu.

To get help in a dialog:

1. Click **?** in the dialog. A window is displayed that describes the content of the dialog.

Tutor

The Tutor is a context-sensitive help feature that displays "how-to" information about a tool when you select it. For example, if you select the Walls tool, the Tutor window displays a video and information on how to draw walls, handy tips and tricks, and links to other topics that may be of interest.



Walls Tool

Draw exterior and interior walls.

How To

- Select a wall type from the catalog.
- Click in the drawing area to start the wall.
- Move the cursor in the desired direction.
- When the wall is the correct length, dick to finish the wall.
- Continue adding segments, or right-click and select Finish.

Don't show the Tutor again



You can turn the Tutor on and off as needed. If the Tutor is currently displayed you can turn it off by enabling the **Don't show the Tutor again** check box at the bottom of the Tutor window.

To turn the Tutor on or off:

 Select Help > Tutor or click r on the Help toolbar.

Glossary of Terms

You can instantly access a glossary of technical and construction terms from the Help menu.

To view the Glossary of Terms:

Select Help > Glossary of Terms, or click
 Ø Ø on the Help toolbar.

User's Guide

You can access information about all of Envisioneer's features in the User's Guide. The User's Guide is available in PDF format, which can be read in Adobe® Reader®.

To view the User's Guide:

- 1. Select Help > Launch Startup Screen.
- 2. On the startup screen, select **Read User Guide**.

Note: To view the user guide, you need to have Adobe Reader installed on your computer. You can download it for free at www.adobe.com.

Technical Support

Online Support 24/7

Before contacting Technical Support, check out the Cadsoft web site, where you can find a variety of FAQs, white sheets, and videos.

To access the Learning Center, visit https://www.cadsoft.com/learning-center/knowledgenetwork/. You can also access the site directly by selecting **Help > Customer Care** in Envisioneer or clicking **?**? **?**? on the Help toolbar.

You can also post questions on the Cadsoft Forum 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Go to https://www.cadsoft.com/community-posts/.

Technical Support

If you cannot find the answers you need in the Online Help or on the Cadsoft Support site, please contact Cadsoft's technical support team. Please remember that technical support cannot answer specific questions about your business project, only questions related to the features of your Envisioneer software. When you contact technical support, be prepared to provide information about your computer name and model, and the brand name of the video card you are using. If possible, sit at your computer with the program running when you call. Be prepared to provide a detailed description of what happens when you try to run the program.

Cadsoft Customer Support

Hours: Monday to Friday, 8:30 AM - 5:00 PM, EST Toll-Free in North America: 1-888-CADSOFT (223-7638)

Corporate Phone: (519) 836-3990

Fax: (519) 823-8821

E-mail: support@cadsoft.com

Customer Support Australia

Phone: (07) 3202-6366

Fax: (07) 3202-6311

E-mail: support@cadsoft.com.au

Technical Support

Customer Care

To access information about the services offered by Digital Canal, go to https://digitalcanal.com/services/. You can also access customer care by selecting **Help > Customer Care** in Envisioneer or clicking 22 on the Help toolbar.

Technical Support

If you cannot find the answers you need in the Online Help, please contact the Envisioneer technical support team by visiting https://digitalcanal.com/contact/.

To access technical support from the product:

- 1. Select **Help > Launch Startup Screen**.
- 2. On the startup screen, select **Technical Support**.

Please remember that technical support cannot answer specific questions about your business project, only questions related to the features of your Envisioneer software.

When you contact technical support, be prepared to provide information about your computer name and model, and the brand name of the video card you are using. If possible, sit at your computer with the program running when you call. Be prepared to provide a detailed description of what happens when you try to run the program.

Chapter 1: Touring the Workspace

Touring the Workspace

The Envisioneer interface contains a variety of userfriendly features that make it easy to create complete home designs. Depending on the product you have, your layout may appear slightly different than the one shown below. This chapter describes everything you see on the screen so you can become familiar and comfortable with your work environment.





Menus

The menu bar is located directly below the title bar. You can select menu items using either the mouse or keyboard.

🗗 E	ile	<u>E</u> dit	⊻ie	ωĮ	nsert	<u>T</u> ools	Sel	ttings	<u>W</u> indow	<u>H</u> elp
🗗 Eile	Edit	⊻iew	Insert	Tools	<u>S</u> ettings	<u>W</u> indow	Help			

- To select items with your mouse:
- To select items with your mouse:

Click a menu name, then select an item from the menu that pops down. Menu items that have an arrow to the right display cascading menus when you place your pointer over them. When you highlight a menu item, a brief description is displayed on the status bar.

To select items using keyboard shortcuts:

To select items using keyboard shortcuts:

Type the underlined letter in the menu name, then type the underlined letter in the menu item name. If the menu item has a cascading menu, you need to type an additional letter. For example, to select the Walls tool you would type I (for the<u>I</u>nsert menu) and then **W** (for the<u>W</u>alls sub-menu) and then **W** (for the<u>W</u>alls tool). Pressing the **Alt** key on your keyboard toggles the underlining in the menu bar on and off.

You can also use the arrow keys on your keyboard to move through menu items and press ENTER to select one. You can use the ESC key to back out of the menu items one level at a time.

The most commonly used commands have quick key shortcuts assigned to them in your Program Settings, such as **CTRL + P** for Print, and **W**, **A** for Walls. You can specify custom keyboard shortcuts for any command in the program. Select **Settings > Program Settings > Keyboard** to view or edit keyboard shortcut assignments.

Toolbars and Toolbar Tabs

A number of tabs are located just below the menu bar. Examples are Building, Interiors, Landscape, Terrain, Analyze and Help. These are actually toolbars displayed in tabbed format.

The view in the drawing window does not change when you switch to a different toolbar tab. The tabs simply provide you with instant access to the specific toolbars you need, when you need them. In addition to the toolbar tabs, there are two floating toolbars displayed just below the drawing area: View Control and Zoom and Navigate. Floating toolbars can be moved around on the screen.

There are more toolbars available for display in your program settings. Each one can be displayed in tabbed or non-tabbed format — the choice is yours. Note that you still have access to a complete set of Insert features on the Insert menu regardless of what toolbar tab you are on.

Some toolbar buttons have a down arrow next to them. When you click this down arrow, a list of tools is displayed. For example, if you click the down

arrow next to the Walls button **Provide State**, two options are displayed: *Walls* and *Walls by Baseline*. Just select the one you want to use. Most toolbar buttons with drop lists display the button of the last tool used from the list. This can come in handy when you have a specific tool that you like to use repeatedly.

Building Toolbar

The Building toolbar contains the tools you need to build a home or any architectural structure. It includes tools such as Walls, Doors, Windows, and Roofs.

Building	Interiors	Land	lscape	Terrain	An
	🎆 - 🔚	-	<u>i</u> 🗄	1	-
Building Inte	riors Landscap	oe Terrain	Analyze	Help	

Interiors Toolbar

The Interiors toolbar contains the tools you need to furnish, decorate and equip the interior of your home. It contains tools such as Cabinets, Countertops, Appliances, Furniture, Lighting and Plumbing Fixtures.



Landscape Toolbar

The Landscape toolbar contains all the tools you need to create a complete landscape plan for the exterior of your home. Tools include Plants, Fences/Gates, Decks, and Irrigation.



Terrain Toolbar

The Terrain toolbar contains tools that you can use to design a realistic terrain for your model, which is especially important in 3D views. Tools include Hills/Valleys, Slopes, Paths, Retaining Walls, and Site Boundary. Alternatively you can import data from a site recorder file to create a TIN mesh, or convert the standard terrain to a TIN mesh and add spot points to it to create contours.



Analyze Toolbar

The Analyze toolbar provides instant access to a variety of tools that help you estimate or calculate information. You can view a project estimate, generate a customizable quote, view schedules (door, window and member), and perform area and perimeter calculations for different levels, areas or rooms in your model. You can also upload data to an ERP system.



Help Toolbar

The Help toolbar contains instant links to the Program Help, Glossary of Terms, Quick Start Guide, the Cadsoft web site, the Customer Care site, and more. You can also control the display of the Tutor, which pops up when you use program tools, and the Start Page that you see when the program is started.



View Control Toolbar

The View Control toolbar contains several essential view-related tools. The toolbar's building location drop box displays the current building location, which is important when inserting elements in your drawing. The toolbar also lets you quickly switch between 2D view and 3D view, and view and create elevations and sections. A display mode button lets you choose the current display type for the view (wireframe, hidden line, etc.). The View Control toolbar also provides instant access to the View Manager, where you can create new view windows if you want. Clicking the View Properties button displays the scale and print properties of the current view window.



Zoom and Navigate Toolbar

Zoom tools on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar include Zoom In, Zoom Out, Zoom Realtime, Zoom Window, and Pan. The navigation features on the toolbar (Walk Around, Fly Around, Look Around, Reset Camera) are only active when you are in a 3D view. These tools let you change the view in real time using your mouse.



Navigator

The Navigator contains the most common viewing and navigation tools. Resembling a video game controller, it lets you switch between 2D and 3D, zoom and pan, and navigate in 3D. Motion is controlled by clicking and dragging the central trackball.



Commander

The Commander lets you enter precise values when inserting or editing elements. Initially the Commander will look grayed out because it is inactive. It will become active when you insert or edit elements.



View Tabs

By default, each project has a number of pre-defined view tabs displayed below the drawing area. The *Model* view window is where you build and edit your 3D model. There are some numbered view tabs beside the Model view tab, such as *1 Floor Plan* and *2 Elevations*. These are Worksheet View windows, where you can create your construction documents. View tabs help you easily switch between view windows. If you create new view windows, the tab display updates automatically.



Model View vs. Worksheet View

When you open a new project, the *Model* view window is displayed. This is where you build, edit and view your 3D model. There are some numbered view tabs beside the Model view tab, such as *1 Floor Plan* and *2 Elevations*. These are Worksheet View windows. When you switch to a Worksheet View window, you go directly into 2D drafting mode. The Worksheet View interface contains a number of different drafting tools that help you create professional-looking working drawings.

Scroll Bars

There are scroll bars on the right side and bottom of the drawing area. They let you scroll back and forth and up and down in the drawing area. The program also contains an Auto Scroll feature. If you are inserting elements in Model View, and hover near the edge of the drawing area, your cursor changes to a multi-directional arrow, and the drawing area will automatically scroll.

Catalog Panel

The catalog panel, located on the right side of the screen, displays the elements contained in the program's Master Catalog, or whatever catalog is currently open. This is where you select elements to insert into your drawing. The content of the catalog panel changes depending on which Insert tool is currently selected, or was last selected. For example, if you select the Doors tool, you will see doors



The top pane of the catalog panel displays a list of groups specific to the currently selected tool. For example, if Doors is the current tool, you will see groups such as *Hinged*, *Entry* and *Bi-Fold*. Listed under each group are all the element types and sizes available in the currently selected group. For example, if the Hinged door group is currently selected, you will see a long list of hinged door sizes. You can expand or collapse a group by double-clicking it.

The lower pane of the catalog panel displays a 3D rendered preview of the currently selected element. You can rotate the image around by clicking and dragging with your mouse. Note, however, that the preview is for viewing purposes only within the catalog panel. The orientation of the element in the preview window has no effect on the orientation of the element when you insert it in your plan.

You can also right-click in the preview window and select a different display mode for the image, such as wireframe, or switch the preview to a 2D plan view.

You can use the catalog panel's *Search* feature to find a specific element in the catalog. You can search by keyword or Part Number.

You can add and edit elements in the catalog using the Element Manager. You can also download content from the Green3DHome web site by clicking the Download More link in the catalog panel.

Searching the Catalog

The catalog panel includes a Search feature that you can use to quickly find a specific element in the catalog. You can search by keyword or by part number. If you do a keyword search, the feature will look at element names. If you do a part number search, it will look at the Part No. values assigned to elements on their Quantity property page. Search terms are saved for your convenience so that you can activate them again in the future.

To search the catalog:

 At the top of the catalog panel, click the drop box in the **Search** area and select either **Description** to search by keyword, or **Part No.** to search by part number. An edit box appears next to the drop box.
🧝 Element Manager
File Edit
Search:
Description 🔻
🙀 Element Manager
File Edit
Search:
Description 🔻 🔎

2. In the edit box, enter the keyword(s) or part number to search for, then press Enter or

click click

Note that if you enter two or more keywords, the keywords must appear consecutively in an element's name in order for the element to appear in the search results. For example, if you enter the keywords "wood edging", an element named Wood Rail Edging would not appear in the search results.

Once search results are obtained they are displayed in the main window of the catalog panel.

- To return the catalog to its default state, where all elements are displayed, select Show All from the Search drop box.
- 4. Search terms that you have used are saved in the **Search** window. To activate a search that you performed previously, select the desired search term from the search drop box.

Status Bar

The Status bar is located at the bottom of the screen. It displays helpful prompts while you are working on

your design project. For example, if you are inserting a wall, it may display "Pick first insertion point". The Status bar also includes a selection of drawing aid buttons such as ORTHO and OBJSNAP.

Menu Bar

The menu bar is located directly below the title bar. You can select menu items using either the mouse or keyboard.

File Edit View Insert Tools Settings Window Help Ele Edit View Insert Tools Settings Window Help

To select items with your mouse:

Click a menu name, then select an item from the menu that pops down. Menu items that have an arrow to the right display cascading menus when you place your pointer over them. When you highlight a menu item, a brief description is displayed on the status bar.

To select items using keyboard shortcuts:

Type the underlined letter in the menu name, then type the underlined letter in the menu item name. If the menu item has a cascading menu, you need to type an additional letter. For example, to select the Walls tool you would type **I** (for Insert) and then **W** (for Walls) on your keyboard.

You can also use a number of standard Windows shortcuts, such as CTRL+P for Print.

Here is a quick list of standard shortcuts:

CTRL+S = Save CTRL+P = Print CTRL+C = Copy CTRL+V = Paste CTRL+X = Cut CTRL+Z = Undo CTRL+Z = Redo

You can also use the arrow keys on your keyboard to move through menu items and press ENTER to select one. You can use the ESC key to back out of the menu items one level at a time.

Toolbars and Toolbar Tabs

There are a number of tabs located just beneath the menu bar — tabs such as Building, Interiors, Landscape and Terrain.

These are actually toolbars displayed in tabbed format. The view in the drawing window does not change when you switch to a different toolbar tab. The tabs simply provide you with instant access to the specific toolbars you need, when you need them. In addition to the toolbar tabs, there are two floating toolbars displayed just below the drawing area: View Control and Zoom and Navigate. Floating toolbars can be moved around on the screen.

There are more toolbars available for display in your program settings. Each one can be displayed in tabbed or non-tabbed format — the choice is yours. Note that you still have access to a complete set of Insert features on the Insert menu regardless of what toolbar tab you are on.

Some toolbar buttons have a down arrow next to them. When you click this down arrow, a list of tools is displayed. For example, if you click the down

arrow next to the Walls button *For an exact set of the Walls with and Walls by Baseline.* Just select the one you want to use. Most toolbar buttons with drop lists display the button of the last tool used from the list. This can come in handy when you have a specific tool that you like to use repeatedly.

Building Toolbar

The Building toolbar contains the tools you need to build a home or any architectural structure. It includes tools such as Walls, Doors, Windows, and Roofs.



Interiors Toolbar

The Interiors toolbar contains the tools you need to furnish, decorate and equip the interior of your home. It contains tools such as Cabinets, Countertops, Appliances, Furniture, Lighting and Plumbing Fixtures.



Landscape Toolbar

The Landscape toolbar contains all the tools you need to create a complete landscape plan for the exterior of your home. Tools include Plants, Fences/Gates, Decks, and Irrigation.



Terrain Toolbar

The Terrain toolbar contains tools that you can use to design a realistic terrain for your model, which is especially important in 3D views. Tools include Hills/Valleys, Slopes, Paths, Retaining Walls, and Site Boundary. Alternatively you can import data from a site recorder file to create a TIN mesh, or convert the standard terrain to a TIN mesh and add spot points to it to create contours.



Analyze Toolbar

The Analyze toolbar provides instant access to a variety of tools that help you estimate or calculate information. You can view a project estimate, generate a customizable quote (in some products), view schedules (door, window, member and room region), and perform area and perimeter calculations for different levels, areas or rooms in your model. You can also output your model to Autodesk® Green Building Studio® and perform an energy analysis.





Help Toolbar

The Help toolbar contains instant links to the Program Help, Glossary of Terms, Quick Start Guide, Technical Support, the **Cadsoft** web site, and other helpful resources. You can also control the display of the Tutor, which pops up when you use program tools, and the Startup Screen that you see when the program is started.



View Control Toolbar

The View Control toolbar contains several essential view-related tools. The toolbar's building location drop box displays the current building location, which is important when inserting elements in your drawing. The toolbar also lets you quickly switch between 2D view and 3D view, and view and create elevations and sections. The View Filter lets you temporarily hide elements from view, and a Display Mode button lets you choose the current display type for the view (wireframe, hidden line, etc.). The View Control toolbar also provides instant access to the View Manager, where you can create new view windows if you want. Clicking the View Properties button displays the scale and print properties of the current view window.



Zoom and Navigate Toolbar

Zoom tools on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar include Zoom In, Zoom Out, Zoom Realtime, Zoom Window, and Pan. The navigation features on the toolbar (Walk Around, Fly Around, and Look Around) are only active when you are in a 3D view. These tools let you change the view in real time using your mouse.



Catalog Panel

The catalog panel, located on the right side of the screen, displays the elements contained in the program's Master Catalog, or whatever catalog is currently open. This is where you select elements to insert into your drawing. The content of the catalog panel changes depending on which Insert tool is currently selected, or was last selected. For example, if you select the Doors tool, you will see door types displayed in the catalog panel.

Catalog





The top pane of the catalog panel displays a list of groups specific to the currently selected tool. For example, if Doors is the current tool, you will see groups such as *Hinged*, *Entry* and *Bi-Fold*.

Listed under each group are all the element types and sizes available in the currently selected group. For example, if the Garage door group is currently selected, you will see a list of garage door sizes. You can expand or collapse a group by double-clicking it. alyze



The lower pane of the catalog panel displays a 3D rendered preview of the currently selected element. You can rotate the image around by clicking and dragging with your mouse. Note, however, that the preview is for viewing purposes only within the catalog panel. The orientation of the element in the preview window has no effect on the orientation of the element when you insert it in your plan.

You can also right-click in the preview window and select a different display mode for the image, such as wireframe, or switch the preview to a 2D plan view. You can use the catalog panel's Search tab to find a specific element in the catalog.

You can add and edit elements in the catalog using the Element Manager. You can also download content from the Green3DHome web site by clicking the Download More link in the catalog panel.

Searching the Catalog

The catalog panel includes a Search feature that you can use to quickly find a specific element in the catalog. You can search by keyword or by part number. If you do a keyword search, the feature will look at element names. If you do a part number search, it will look at the Part No. values assigned to elements on their Quantity property page. Search terms are saved for your convenience so that you can activate them again in the future.

To search the catalog:

 At the top of the catalog panel, click the drop box in the **Search** area and select either **Description** to search by keyword, or **Part No.** to search by part number. An edit box appears next to the drop box.



2. In the edit box, enter the keyword(s) or part number to search for, then press Enter or

click solution click cli

element names throughout the catalog for the specified text string. The search is not specific to any one type of element, and will display any match that contains the specified text string, even if the string is part of a word. For example, if you enter "wood" in the search field, you may see results such as Wood Siding, Wood Rail Edging, Solid Wood Door, Hardwood Floor, and Japanese Dogwood.

Note that if you enter two or more keywords, the keywords must appear consecutively in an element's name in order for the element to appear in the search results. For example, if you enter the keywords "wood edging", an element named Wood Rail Edging would not appear in the search results.

Once search results are obtained they are displayed in the main window of the catalog panel.

- To return the catalog to its default state, where all elements are displayed, select Show All from the Search drop box.
- 4. Search terms that you have used are saved in the **Search** window. To activate a search that you performed previously, select the desired search term from the search drop box.

Commander

The Commander lets you enter precise values when inserting or editing elements. Initially the Commander will look grayed out because it is inactive. It will become active when you insert or edit elements.



View Tabs

View tabs displayed below the drawing area represent open view windows. When you open a new project, the *Model* view tab is the current view tab, meaning that the *Model* view window is current. This is where you build, edit and view your 3D model. If your product includes Worksheet View (the 2D drafting mode), there may be additional tabs beside the Model tab.



View tabs help you easily switch between view windows. If you create new view windows, the tab display updates automatically.

Scroll Bars

There are scroll bars on the right side and bottom of the drawing area. They let you scroll back and forth and up and down in the drawing area. The program also contains an Auto Scroll feature. If you are inserting elements in Model View, and hover near the edge of the drawing area, your cursor changes to a multi-directional arrow, and the drawing area will automatically scroll.

Auto Scroll

When an insertion tool is active in in Model View, the Auto Scroll feature will automatically scroll the drawing when you hover your cursor near the edge of the drawing area. When the Auto Scroll feature is active, your cursor changes to a multi-directional arrow at drawing area edges. The drawing will scroll in the direction in which you move your cursor.

Auto Scroll is particularly useful when you are drawing an element such as a wall and discover that you need to scroll the drawing area to be able to continue drawing it. Auto Scroll permits uninterrupted drawing and is an excellent alternative to using scroll bars.

Auto Scroll settings are defined in your program settings. You can choose to have it active all the time, or active only when you press the CTRL key on your keyboard. You can also adjust the scrolling speed so that it is slower or faster. You can also disable Auto Scroll completely if you want.

Note: By default, the **Active with CTRL key** option is enabled in your program settings. This means that you must press and hold the CTRL key on your keyboard to activate and use Auto Scroll while inserting elements. If you disable this option in your program settings and simply have the **Enable** option selected, it will be active all the time and you do not have to press any other keys to activate it.

To adjust Auto Scroll settings:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Drawing Aids** in the left column.
- 3. To turn Auto Scroll on or off, check or uncheck the **Enable** check box in the *Auto Scroll* area.
- 4. If you would like Auto Scroll to be active only when you choose to use it (instead of all the time), enable the **Active with CTRL key** check box. If this option is enabled, Auto Scroll will only be active if you press and hold the CTRL key while inserting an element. This gives you precise control over its use and prevents unwanted scrolling.
- To adjust scrolling speed, click and drag the Speed slider in the *Auto Scroll* area. To decrease the speed, slide left. To increase the speed, slide right.
- 6. Click **OK**.

To use Auto Scroll when inserting an element:

- To scroll up, hover your cursor near the top edge of the drawing area.
- To scroll down, hover your cursor near the bottom edge of the drawing area.
- To scroll left, hover your cursor near the left edge of the drawing area.
- To scroll right, hover your cursor near the right edge of the drawing area.

Status Bar

The Status bar is located at the bottom of the screen. It displays helpful prompts while you are working on your design project. For example, if you are inserting a wall, it may display "Pick first insertion point". The Status bar also includes a selection of drawing aid buttons such as ORTHO and OBJSNAP.

Worksheet View

When you open a new project, a Model View window is displayed. This is where you build, edit and view your 3D model.

When you switch to a Worksheet View window, you go directly into 2D drafting mode. The Worksheet View interface is different than the Model View interface. It offers a number of different drafting tools that help you create professional-looking working drawings. You can start by inserting a view of your model with the Define SmartView tool, such as a floor plan or elevation. You can then edit and annotate the drawing to suit your documentation needs.

Using Keyboard Shortcuts

Keyboard shortcuts let you access tools quickly without having to make selections from menus or toolbars. A keyboard shortcut can be a single button on your keyboard (such as the F1 key), or a sequence of buttons that you press to invoke a command.

Menu Shortcuts

In the interface, each menu name and item has one underlined letter. For example, the "F" is underlined in the File menu name (<u>File</u>). These underlined letters are the ones you use for keyboard shortcuts. You can toggle the underlining on an off in the menu bar by pressing the **Alt** key on your keyboard.

To launch a command using the keyboard, type the underlined letter in the menu name, then type the underlined letter in the menu item name. If the menu item has a cascading menu, you need to type an additional letter. For example, to select the Walls tool you would type I (for the Insert menu) and then **W** (for the Walls sub-menu) and then **W** (for the Walls tool).

You can also use the arrow keys on your keyboard to move through menu items and press ENTER to select one. You can use the ESC key to back out of the menu items one level at a time.

Function Keys

There is a row of F-keys at the top of your keyboard. These keys have the following functions:

Key	Function
F1	Online Help
F4	Grid Snap
F5	Object Snap
F6	Angle Snap
F7	Grid
F8	Ortho
F9	Collision
	Control

Customizable Keyboard Shortcuts

The Keyboard page in your Program Settings contains a list of all commands in the program. The most commonly used commands have keyboard shortcuts assigned to them. For example, the shortcut for Zoom Window is Z,W. You can customize keyboard shortcuts by editing or specifying key sequences for each command.

For a list of default quick key combinations, click here. You can edit these shortcuts as well as specify shortcuts for other commands that currently do not have shortcuts assigned to them.

Default Quick Key Shortcuts

2D Plan	V, 2
3D QuickView	V, Q
Aligned Dimensions	D, A, L
Angular Dimensions	D, A, N
Appliances	I, F
Arc – 3 Points	A, 3
Area/Perimeter	Α, Ρ
Array (Worksheet View)	A, R
Auto Interior Dimensions	D, A, I
Boundary Hatch	В, Н
Break (Worksheet View)	B, R
Cabinets	I, C
Ceiling by Room	C, R
Circle – Center, Radius	C, I

Define Block	В, В	Insert Block	I, B
Define SmartView	S, V, D	Insert SmartView	S, V, I
Delete (Worksheet View)	E, R	Insert View	Ι, V
Delete Unreferenced Blocks	P, U	Interior Accessories	I, A
Doors	W, D	Interior Lighting	I, L
Dunlicate (Worksheet		Library Manager	C, L
View)	С, Р	Line	L
Edit Block Attributes	Α, Τ, Ε	Linear Dimensions	D, L, I
Element Manager	С, Е	Measure	D, I
Exit	CTRL + Q	Mirror (Worksheet View)	M, I
Explode (Worksheet View)	x	Move (Worksheet View)	M, M
		,	
Extend (Worksheet View)	Е, Х	New	CTRL + N
Extend (Worksheet View) Exterior Accessories on Location	E, X E, A	New Offset (Worksheet View)	CTRL + N O
Extend (Worksheet View) Exterior Accessories on Location Fillet (Worksheet View)	E, X E, A F	New Offset (Worksheet View) Open	CTRL + N O CTRL + O
Extend (Worksheet View) Exterior Accessories on Location Fillet (Worksheet View) Find and Replace (Model	E, X E, A F CTRL + F	New Offset (Worksheet View) Open Openings	CTRL + N O CTRL + O W, O
Extend (Worksheet View) Exterior Accessories on Location Fillet (Worksheet View) Find and Replace (Model View)	E, X E, A F CTRL + F	New Offset (Worksheet View) Open Openings Plants	CTRL + N O CTRL + O W, O P
Extend (Worksheet View) Exterior Accessories on Location Fillet (Worksheet View) Find and Replace (Model View) Floor by Room	E, X E, A F CTRL + F F, R	New Offset (Worksheet View) Open Openings Plants Plumbing Fixtures	CTRL + N O CTRL + O W, O P I, T
Extend (Worksheet View) Exterior Accessories on Location Fillet (Worksheet View) Find and Replace (Model View) Floor by Room Framing Mode On/Off	E, X E, A F CTRL + F F, R CTRL + D	New Offset (Worksheet View) Open Openings Plants Plumbing Fixtures Polygon Hatch (Model	CTRL + N O CTRL + O W, O P I, T
Extend (Worksheet View) Exterior Accessories on Location Fillet (Worksheet View) Find and Replace (Model View) Floor by Room Framing Mode On/Off Import CAD File (Work- sheet View)	E, X E, A F CTRL + F F, R CTRL + D	New Offset (Worksheet View) Open Openings Plants Plumbing Fixtures Polygon Hatch (Model View)	CTRL + N O CTRL + O W, O P I, T B, H
Extend (Worksheet View) Exterior Accessories on Location Fillet (Worksheet View) Find and Replace (Model View) Floor by Room Framing Mode On/Off Import CAD File (Work- sheet View)	E, X E, A F CTRL + F F, R CTRL + D I, C	New Offset (Worksheet View) Open Openings Plants Plumbing Fixtures Polygon Hatch (Model View) Print	CTRL + N O CTRL + O W, O P I, T B, H CTRL + P
Extend (Worksheet View) Exterior Accessories on Location Fillet (Worksheet View) Find and Replace (Model View) Floor by Room Framing Mode On/Off Import CAD File (Work- sheet View) Import PDF File	E, X E, A F CTRL + F F, R CTRL + D I, C	New Offset (Worksheet View) Open Openings Plants Plumbing Fixtures Polygon Hatch (Model View) Print Program Settings	CTRL + N O CTRL + O W, O P I, T B, H CTRL + P S, S

Room Region by Room	R, R
Rotate (Worksheet View)	R
Save	CTRL + S
Scale (Worksheet View)	S, C
Select All	CTRL + A
Stretch (Worksheet View)	S, T
Strip Footings Attached to Walls	W, F
Text	т, т
Text with Leader	T, L
Trim	T, R
Undo	CTRL + Z
Update SmartView (Global)	S, V, U
View Eilter	
view Filler	V, F
View Manager	V, F V, M
View Manager Walls	V, F V, M W, A
View Manager Walls Windows	V, F V, M W, A W, W
View Manager Walls Windows Zoom Previous	V, F V, M W, A W, W Z, P
View Manager Walls Windows Zoom Previous Zoom Realtime	V, F V, M W, A W, W Z, P Z, R
View Manager Walls Windows Zoom Previous Zoom Realtime Zoom to Fit	V, F V, M W, A W, W Z, P Z, R Z, E
View Pilter View Manager Walls Windows Zoom Previous Zoom Realtime Zoom to Fit Zoom Window	V, F V, M W, A W, W Z, P Z, R Z, E Z, W

Chapter 2: Drawing & Editing Basics

Drawing & Editing Basics

There are three types of elements that you can insert — single-click elements, line-drawn elements, and area-drawn elements. Before starting a design, it may be helpful to familiarize yourself with the methods of inserting each of these element types.

By default, when you insert a single-click element, such as a door, you remain in Insertion mode until you right-click and select **Finish**. You then go into Selection mode, which means you can select elements for editing. If you prefer you can select the Single Insertion Only option in your program settings so that you automatically go into Selection mode after inserting an element, eliminating the need to rightclick and **Finish**.

By default, when you insert line-drawn elements such as walls, you simply pick points to define the element's end points. If you are more familiar with "clicking and dragging", you can select the Pick and drag option in your program settings.

If you want to edit an element that you have inserted, you need to select the element. When an element is selected it is highlighted. For many elements, editing grips are also displayed that let you move, rotate or stretch the element. Right-clicking your mouse when an element is selected displays a menu that contains editing commands specific to that element. You can also view this menu by selecting **Edit > Modify Elements** when an element is selected.

Units of Measure

Before you start drawing, it is a good idea to specify the unit of measure that you would like to use, and the precision of your measurements.

You can also choose to suppress trailing zeros, and suppress the display of metric units.

Selecting a Unit of Measure

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Units of measure determine how length, area and volume measurements are specified when you are creating your project, and how dimensions are displayed on the screen. You can select the units of measure that you want to use in your Program Settings, and select the level of precision that you want to use for each one.

To set the units of measure for the current project:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click



- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Units of Measure** in the left column.
- 3. Select either **Imperial** or **Metric** units.
- 4. To select a unit for distance measurement, make a selection from the Units drop box. Choices for Imperial units are *Feet-Inches*, *Inches*, *Feet*, and *Feet-Inches-Sixteenths*. Choices for Metric units are *Millimeters*, *Centimeters* and *Meters*. Note that this setting does not apply to site boundary measurements.

If using Imperial measurement, it is important to understand the difference between the available options and how to enter measurements correctly.

Feet-Inches. Displays measurements in feet and inches. When entering a measurement, you must include the feet symbol (') after a value that you want to be in feet. Otherwise, it will be taken as inches. For inch values, you do not need to enter the inches symbol (") because inches are already assumed. For example, to enter a value of 6 feet 6 inches, you would type **6'6**. When entering values in inches, you can use decimals or fractions to specify the value if you want. For example, 6 feet 6 inches could be entered as **6.5'** or **6' 1/2**. Regardless of the method you use, the displayed result will be the same: **6'-6"**.

Inches. Displays measurements in inches. When entering measurements you do not need to include the inches symbol (") because inches are already assumed. You can still enter values in feet and inches when specifying measurements (e.g. 6' instead of 72"), but the displayed result will always be in inches. You can use decimals and fractions when specifying values. For example, to enter 4 and a half inches you would type either **4.5** or **4 1/2**.

Feet. Displays measurements in feet. When entering measurements you do not need to include the feet symbol (') because feet are already assumed. For example, typing **6** would mean 6 feet. You can use decimals and fractions when entering measurements. For example, to enter the value 6 feet 6 inches, you would type **6.5** or **6 1/2**. The decimal or fraction applies to 'feet value', and will appear in the displayed result if the level of precision permits it.

Feet-Inches-Sixteenths. Displays measurements in feet, inches, and sixteenths of an inch (e.g. **20-06-04**). The two rightmost digits represent sixteenths of an inch. The two digits to the left of that represent whole inches. All digits to the left of the first four represent feet. So, for example, entering **201108** or **20-11-08** would specify a measurement of twenty feet eleven and one half inches.

- 5. To select a unit for area measurements, make a selection from the **Area** drop box. Area measurements appear in the Area/Perimeter Calculator as well as room region calculations. Imperial choices are *Square Feet* and *Square Yards*. In Metric, area is measured in *Square Meters*.
- To select a unit for volume measurements, make a selection from the Volume drop box. Volume measurements appear in room region calculations. Imperial choices are *Cubic Feet*

and *Cubic Yards*. In Metric, volume is measured in *Cubic Meters*.

- Select a level of precision for each unit of measure by making a selection from the appropriate **Precision** drop box. For example, selecting a unit precision of #'-# #/16" sets the level of precision to 1/16th of an inch when measuring distances in feet and inches.
- To remove zeros from measurements that end in zero, enable the Suppress trailing zeros check box. For example, a measurement of 12'-0" would be displayed as simply 12'.
- If you are working in Metric units and would like to hide the units for length/distance, volume, and area measurements shown in dimensions and dialogs, enable the Suppress display of metric units check box. For example, 1200 mm would appear as simply 1200.
- To change the level of precision for angle measurements, which are displayed in decimal degrees, make a selection from the **Precision** drop box in the *Angles* area. The selection you make determines the number of decimal places used.
- Once you've set your units of measure, click OK.

Note: The units of measure selected in your Program Settings are used for drawing and creating dimensions. They are not the units used for calculating and reporting material quantities in the project estimate. Each element has a unit of measure setting on its Quantity property page that determines how the element is quantified and reported in the estimate.

Suppressing Trailing Zeros in Measurements

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can specify that you want to suppress trailing zeros in measurements by editing your program settings. For example, 12'-0" would be displayed as simply 12' in both onscreen and inserted dimensions. This setting applies to both Metric and Imperial units of measure.

To suppress trailing zeros in the current project:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

📶 🐼 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click *Units of Measure* in the left column.
- 3. Enable the **Suppress trailing zeros** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Suppressing Metric Units in Dialogs

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have chosen to work in Metric units, you can choose to suppress units for length/distance, volume, and area measurements shown in dialogs. For example, 1200 mm would appear as simply 1200.

To suppress units in the current project:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click *Units of Measure* in the left column.
- 3. With *Metric Units* selected, enable the **Suppress display of metric units** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Inserting Elements

When you select a tool from the **Insert** menu or one of the insertion toolbars, you are in Insertion mode. To insert an element, you select it in the catalog panel, then click in your drawing area.

Many elements can be inserted with a single mouse click. *Single-click elements* include doors, windows and stairs, and objects such as cabinets and furniture. *Linedrawn elements* such as walls and railings require that you select two points to define the element's start point and end point. The points you pick determine the element's length and angle. *Area-drawn elements*, such as manually inserted floors and ceilings, and fills and plateaus, are drawn by picking a series of points to define their outline.

In many cases, on-screen dimensions are displayed as you draw, making it easy to create line-drawn and area-drawn elements at the correct length or size, and insert elements like doors and windows precisely where you want them in a wall.

Once you insert an element in your drawing area, you can:

- Continue inserting the same element
- Select a different element in the catalog to insert
- Right-click and select **Finish** to end the command and return to Selection mode

Tip: When an Insert tool is active, double-clicking inserts the element and finishes the command at the same time. Note, however, that double-clicking after you've already inserted an element will, in most cases, insert another element.

Tip: If you are in Selection mode, you can insert any element currently accessible in the catalog by simply selecting the element in the catalog, then moving your pointer into the drawing area.

Specifying an Insertion Offset

When you are inserting single-click elements such as doors, columns, cabinets, toilets, and furniture, you can use the **Insertion Offset** tool to offset the element a specific distance from other elements in the drawing. This helps you position elements precisely where you want them.

Once you have selected the element in the catalog, prior to inserting it, right-click in the drawing area and select **Insertion Offset**.

• If the element is a door, window or opening, enter the distance that you want to offset the element from the end of the wall:

Enter insertion offset	? >	×
Enter Distance:		
OK	Cancel	

When you click **OK** and position the element in the receiving wall, the element will snap inside the wall at the correct position.

• For elements that can be freely placed inside the model, such as toilets and furniture, you can specify an offset distance for each side of the element. For example, if you specify a right-hand insertion offset of 12" for a toilet, and then position the toilet near a right-hand wall, the right side of the toilet will snap 12" away from the wall, or any other elements that appear to the right of the toilet.



Selecting an Insertion Method for Line-Drawn Elements

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Line-drawn elements, such as walls, are elements that are drawn by picking two or more points. By default, line-drawn elements use the **Pick Points** insertion method. With this method you do not have to keep your mouse button depressed to draw the element (i.e. you do not have to click and drag the mouse). Once you've selected the first point, you can simply move your mouse in the direction you want the element to run, then click to select the next point.

If you are more comfortable with the "click-and-drag" method, you can select the **Pick and drag** insertion method. With this method, you keep the mouse button depressed after clicking the first point, drag

the mouse to draw the element, then release your mouse button to select the next point.

To select an insertion method for line-drawn elements:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Drawing Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Model View Insertion Method* area, select either **Pick Points** or **Pick and drag**.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Selecting an Insertion Method for Single-Click Elements

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Single-click elements are things like doors, windows and staircases. By default, Insertion mode remains active after inserting a single-click element. This means you can keep inserting elements without having to re-select an Insert tool or element in the catalog. You can disable this behavior if you want to. If you do choose the Single Insertion Only option, you do not need to select *Finish* after inserting a singleclick element. You will go directly into Selection mode.

To select an insertion method for single-click elements:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Drawing Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Model View Insertion Method* area, select either **Single Insertion Only** or **Repeat Inser-tion**.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Repeating the Insertion of a Line-Drawn Element

When drawing elements such as walls, new segments are continually added as you pick more points. You can use the Repeat tool to finish drawing the current line-drawn element and start a new one if you want, without having to restart the tool.

To repeat the insertion of a line-drawn element:

- When you are ready to finish the current element and start a new one, right-click and select Repeat, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Repeat. The current element is finished.
- 2. Pick a start point for the new element and continue drawing.

Note: The Repeat tool is available for line-drawn elements only.

Using Space as Enter

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can specify that you want the spacebar on your keyboard to act like the Enter key. This can speed up the way you work.

To specify that you want to use the spacebar as Enter:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Drawing Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Model View Insertion Method* area, enable the **Use Space as Enter** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Auto Scroll

When an insertion tool is active in in Model View, the Auto Scroll feature will automatically scroll the drawing when you hover your cursor near the edge of the drawing area. When the Auto Scroll feature is active, your cursor changes to a multi-directional arrow at drawing area edges. The drawing will scroll in the direction in which you move your cursor.

Auto Scroll is particularly useful when you are drawing an element such as a wall and discover that you need to scroll the drawing area to be able to continue drawing it. Auto Scroll permits uninterrupted drawing and is an excellent alternative to using scroll bars.

Auto Scroll settings are defined in your program settings. You can choose to have it active all the time, or active only when you press the CTRL key on your keyboard. You can also adjust the scrolling speed so that it is slower or faster. You can also disable Auto Scroll completely if you want.

Note: By default, the Active with CTRL key option is enabled in your program settings. This means that you must press and hold the CTRL key on your keyboard to activate and use Auto Scroll while inserting elements. If you disable this option in your program settings and simply have the **Enable** option selected, it will be active all the time and you do not have to press any other keys to activate it.

To adjust Auto Scroll settings:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Drawing Aids** in the left column.
- 3. To turn Auto Scroll on or off, check or uncheck the **Enable** check box in the *Auto Scroll* area.
- 4. If you would like Auto Scroll to be active only when you choose to use it (instead of all the time), enable the **Active with CTRL key** check box. If this option is enabled, Auto Scroll will only be active if you press and hold the CTRL key while inserting an element. This gives you precise control over its use and prevents unwanted scrolling.
- To adjust scrolling speed, click and drag the Speed slider in the *Auto Scroll* area. To decrease the speed, slide left. To increase the speed, slide right.
- 6. Click **OK**.

To use Auto Scroll when inserting an element:

- To scroll up, hover your cursor near the top edge of the drawing area.
- To scroll down, hover your cursor near the bottom edge of the drawing area.
- To scroll left, hover your cursor near the left edge of the drawing area.
- To scroll right, hover your cursor near the right edge of the drawing area.

Going into Selection Mode for Editing

When you have finished using an insertion tool, either by double-clicking or selecting **Finish** from the rightclick menu, you automatically go into Selection mode. When in Selection mode, you can select elements in your drawing area and edit them.

You can also go into Selection mode by clicking \searrow on any insertion toolbar, or by selecting **Select/Edit** from the **Edit** menu.

Enabling/Disabling Screen Tips

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, screen tips are displayed when you hover over elements in Model View telling you what the elements are. In 3D view, the element's building location is also displayed. This can help you when selecting elements, as it lets you know what you are about to select. On some systems, disabling screen tips can help improve program speed.

To enable or disable screen tips:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Visual Aids* area, check or uncheck the **Enable Screen Tips in Model Views** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Selecting Elements for Editing

When in Selection mode, you can select elements for editing. You can select individual elements, a group of elements, or all elements.

When an element is selected, it is highlighted in a different color (usually light green). One or more grips are also displayed on the element.

When you are in 3D view, all elements on all locations are selectable. When you are in 2D plan view, only elements on the current building location are selectable. However, you can change this if you want. See Making Elements on All Locations Selectable in 2D Plan View. If multiple elements share the same edge, such as floors and ceilings, you can cycle through the different elements that share that edge so that you can accurately pick the one that you want to edit. To do this, select one of the element edges, and then hold down the Shift key while using the scroll wheel on your mouse.

If you are having trouble selecting the element you want, you may want to use the View Filter to make other elements non-selectable. This makes selection of the element much easier.

Note: Automatic floors cannot be selected in 2D Plan view unless the display mode is set to Rendered or Rendered Outline. They can be selected in 2D Designer's View, or in 3D view.

To select a single element:

1. Click on the element.

To select multiple elements by clicking:

- 1. Click the first element you want to select.
- 2. Hold down the Shift key and click on the rest of the elements you want to select. The most recent selection is green and prior selections are blue.

To select a group of elements by creating a selection window:

 Going from either left to right, or right to left, drag a selection window around the elements you want to select. Any elements touching the selection window will be selected (they do not need to be totally enclosed).

To select all instances of a specific element:

- 1. Select one instance of the element in your project.
- 2. Right-click and select **Select All Similar**. All elements in the project that have the same definition as the chosen element become selected.
- To select all elements on the current location:
- 1. Select **Edit > Select All**.
- To re-select the elements you last selected:
- 1. Select Edit > Select Previous.

Deselecting Elements

When you select elements, you can remove individual elements from your selection set. You can also

deselect everything that is currently selected.

To deselect individual elements:

- 1. Hold down your Shift key.
- 2. Click the element you want to deselect.

To deselect everything in your selection set:

 Select Edit > Deselect All, or right-click in the drawing area and select Deselect All, or simply click in a blank spot somewhere else in the drawing area.

Making Elements on All Locations Selectable in 2D

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, only elements on the current building location can be selected in 2D plan view, even if elements on other locations are visible. If you want to make elements on all locations selectable, you need to change one of your program settings.

To make elements on all locations selectable in 2D plan view:

1. Select **Settings > Document Settings** or click

on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Drawing Assistance* area, uncheck the **Select elements on current location only while in plan view** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Accessing Edit Tools

Most elements in Model View can be moved once they are selected by simply clicking and dragging them. Some can also be stretched or rotated. You can access a full menu of edit tools in Model View by right-clicking in the drawing area, or by selecting **Edit > Modify Elements**.

Menus vary depending on the element selected. Typical tools are Properties, Move, Rotate, Duplicate, and Delete. If two types of elements are selected (such as a floor and a wall), only tools that are common to both element types are available.

Building

The first thing you should always do before building a model is define your building locations. This sets up the different levels in the structure (foundation, first floor, second floor, etc.) and ensures that elements are inserted at the correct height.

For a quick start you may want to use the House Builder Wizard. This handy tool builds a basic house for you automatically using size and style settings that you specify. You can then modify and add to the structure to suit your needs.

To start a new design from scratch, you will likely want to start by drawing walls — first the perimeter walls, and then the interior walls.

Once the walls are drawn you can easily insert support structures such as columns, members (such as beams), strip footings and mono footings.

The next design elements are usually doors, windows and openings, which you can insert with a click of your mouse. You can use the onscreen dimensions to position them in the wall, center them automatically, or define a specific offset.

If automatic floor insertion is enabled in your Program Settings, a floor is automatically created when you draw a closed wall layout. You can replace the floor with another type if you want using the Replace tool, or change the flooring material with the handy Materials Paintbrush. You can also insert a floor manually using the Floor by Room, Floor by Perimeter, or Floor by Picking Points tool.

You can insert ceilings using any of the handy Ceiling tools — Ceiling by Room, Ceiling by Perimeter, or Ceiling by Picking Points. Ceilings can be converted to tray or cathedral ceilings very easily.

For multi-level designs you will obviously need to insert stairs. You can apply a railing to the left side, right side or both sides of a staircase, and draw horizontal railings where needed.

To finish off the main structure you can insert a roof automatically over perimeter walls, and edit the roof's properties to create the exact design you want. To create secondary roofs, such as porch roofs, you can use the Roof by Picking Points tool. To enhance your roof system you can add dormers, skylights and roof accessories such as solar panels and roof vents.

Chapter 3: Building Locations

Building Locations

When you insert an element in your drawing, it is inserted on the current building location. It is important to define your building locations before inserting elements, since building locations are the key to organizing elements and inserting them at the correct height in your model.

If you are drawing from scratch, the program's default drawing templates have a few pre-defined building locations. You can change the settings for existing building locations as well as add and delete locations.

If you use the House Builder Wizard to start your project, your main building locations are set up for you when you run the House Builder Wizard.

This chapter describes how to define your building locations, and identify the current building location when adding elements to your design.

Defining Building Locations

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you insert an element in your drawing, it is inserted on the current building location. It is important to define your building locations before inserting elements, since building locations are the key to organizing elements and inserting them at the correct height in your model.

The program's default drawing templates have a few pre-defined building locations. You can change the settings for existing building locations as well as add and delete locations. When you define building locations, you are basically doing two things:

- setting the wall height for each floor (level) in your model
- specifying where each floor is positioned relative to grade or another location

To define building locations:

- 1. Select **Settings > Building Locations**, or
 - click 📰 🏭 on the View Control toolbar.

·	Building	Locations
	building	Locations

	Number	Name	Floor Level	Head Hei
	1	Foundation	-7'-6"	6'-8"
~	2	Ground Floor	1'-5 1/2"	6'-8"
	3	Second Floor	10'-4 5/8"	6'-8"
		1		

2. You can add, edit and delete locations.

Below is a brief description of each building location property.

Number. A reference number for the location.

Name. The location's name (e.g. Ground Floor).

Floor Level. The level of the new location's floor relative to grade, and the level at which the wall bottoms will sit.

Head Height. Height of tops of windows and wall openings relative to the floor level.

Ceiling Height. Height of underside of ceiling surface relative to the floor level.

Wall Height. Physical height of the walls on the location.

3D Cut Height. The height off the floor where floor plans are viewed.

Framing Options. Determines how the walls on the location are framed. More...

Floor levels are relative to the ground. As an example, if the Foundation location has a **Floor Level** of -8' (or -2440 mm), the base of the foundation is positioned 8' (2440 mm) below ground level. (In other words, it is a full basement.) In this case, if the **Wall Height** of the Foundation location is 8' (2440 mm), the top of the foundation wall will be situated at ground level.

To change the properties of a building location:

- In the **Building Locations** dialog, click on the property you want to change. You can change location names or any of the numerical settings.
- 2. Type the value you want.
- 3. Press Enter.

To add a new building location:

1. In the **Building Locations** dialog, click the **Add Location** button, then follow the steps in *Adding a Building Location* on page 54.

To delete a building location:

- In the **Building Locations** dialog, click on one of the location's fields to make it the current location.
- 2. Click Delete Location.

Note: You cannot delete a location if it contains any elements. Also, you cannot delete a location if it is the only one in the list.

Adding a Building Location

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can set up all building locations before starting a drawing, or you can add locations as needed.

To add a building location:

- Select Settings > Building Locations, or click and on the on the View Control toolbar.
- In the Building Locations dialog, click the Add Location button.
- 3. In the **New Location** dialog, specify where you want to calculate the new location from by selecting either **Calculate from existing location** or **Calculate from grade**. Typically, the foundation and ground- or first-level locations are calculated from grade, while upper floors are calculated from existing locations.

 If you selected Calculate from existing location, specify the following settings in the Location Calculator (From Existing) dialog: Location Name. The name of the location as it will appear in the Building Locations dialog and drop box.

Top of Wall from Grade. This value is calculated automatically based on the values you specify for the walls and floor, and the levels defined for the existing building location. It indicates the level at which the new location's wall tops will sit relative to grade.

Wall Height. How tall you want the walls to be on the new location.

Ceiling Height. Height of the underside of the ceiling surface relative to the floor.

Head Height. Height of tops of windows and wall openings relative to the floor.

Sheathing. The thickness of the floor sheathing.

Structural. The height of the floor's structural material (e.g. joists).

Sill Plate. The thickness of the sill plate.

Floor Level. The level of the new location's floor relative to grade. The new location's wall bottoms will sit at this level. This value is calculated automatically by adding the total thickness of the new location's floor structure (sill plate + joists + sheathing) to the existing location's **Top of Wall from Grade** height value.

Top of Wall from Grade. The level at which the existing location's wall tops currently sit relative to grade.

Calculate from Location. The existing building location from which the new one will be calculated. Typically this is the location on which the new location will sit.

 If you selected Calculate from grade, specify the Wall Height, Ceiling Height and Head Height in the Location Calculator (From Grade) dialog as described in the previous step. Additionally, specify the location's Floor Level from Grade to determine where the top of the floor (and base of the walls) will sit relative to grade.

The **Top of Wall from Grade** will be automatically calculated based on the specified wall height and floor level.

 Click **OK** to add the location to the list. To determine how walls on the location are framed, see *Defining Wall Framing Options for Building Locations* on page 115.

Note: When you add a location to your list, it does not become the current location unless you select it in the list or edit its properties.

Editing a Building Location

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can edit a building location's settings even if there are elements already inserted on it. The elements will update to reflect your changes.

To edit a building location:

- Select Settings > Building Locations, or click and on the on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **Building Locations** dialog, click on the property that you want to change. You can change location names or any of the numerical settings.

Number. A reference number for the location.

Name. The location's name (e.g. Ground Floor).

Floor Level. Height of floor base above ground level (0).

Head Height. Height of tops of windows and wall openings relative to the floor level.

Ceiling Height. Height of underside of ceiling surface relative to the floor level.

Wall Height. Physical height of the walls on the location.

Framing Options. Determines how the walls on the location are framed. For more information see *Defining Wall Framing Options for Building Locations* on page 115.

- 3. Type the value you want.
- 4. Press Enter.

Deleting a Building Location

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can delete a building location from the locations list as long as it does not contain any elements, and is not the only one in the list.

To delete a building location:

- Select Settings > Building Locations, or click and on the on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **Building Locations** dialog, click on any of the values of the location you want to delete.
- 3. Click **Delete Location**. The location is removed.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Making a Building Location Current

Before inserting an element in your drawing you should make sure that the building location you want to insert the element on is the current building location.

To make a building location current:

• Click on the building locations drop box on the View Control toolbar and select the desired location.



OR

In the **Building Locations** dialog, click in the far left field of the location you want to make current. A check mark indicates the location is now current.



Allowing a Different Current Location Per View Window

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the location you select in one view window will be the one displayed when you switch to other view windows. By changing your program settings you can allow a different location to be current in each view window.

To allow a different current location per view window:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Model View Behavior* area, disable the **Maintain Current Location Per View** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Location Dimming

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When a particular location is current, elements on all other visible locations are dimmed. This makes it easier to insert and edit elements on the current location because it is more obvious which elements are part of the current location.

By default, elements on other locations are dimmed by 90%. You can adjust the dimming so that it is lighter or darker according to your preference.

To change the dimming percentage:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. Type the desired dimming percentage in the **Dimming Percentage** edit box, or use the arrows to scroll up or down through a list of values.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Chapter 4: House Builder Wizard

House Builder Wizard

The first question many people ask when they sit down with a new piece of software is, "Where do I start"? The House Builder Wizard is the perfect way to start a project, because it builds a house for you instantly! All you need to do is specify how many stories you want to create, select a general house shape, define the building dimensions, then select the general style for the walls, roof, floors and foundation. In a few mouse clicks, you'll have a basic structure that you can edit and add to.

Once your basic model is built you can add things like interior walls, doors, windows and stairs. If you would prefer to start your project from scratch, you may want to start by drawing walls. (See *Drawing Walls* on page 5.)

Using the House Builder Wizard

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The House Builder Wizard is the perfect way to start a project, because it builds a house for you instantly! All you need to do is specify how many stories you want to create, select a general house shape, define the building dimensions, then select the general style for the walls, roof, floors and foundation. The resulting house includes exterior walls, footings and foundation walls (or concrete slab), a roof, and a floor. In a few mouse clicks, you'll have a basic structure that you can edit in every way to suit your needs.

To use the House Builder Wizard:

 Select Insert > Design Wizards > House Builder, or click S S on the Building toolbar.

<u> </u>	Running the House Builder wizard will erase any building(s) in the current document. Do you wish to proceed?	23
	Yes No	

Note: Running the House Builder Wizard will delete all existing building elements in the current project. It will not, however, remove the terrain or any landscaping elements you have inserted.

2. Click Yes in the warning dialog to proceed.

Network Builder Weard	How do you get started? Creating a house can be a long task. You need to create the basic shape, add a garage of necessary), add additional floors, build a roof, and so much more. A simple House Builder Wizard has been created to help you with these tasks. You will be lead through serveral easy tage to help give you the basic structure which can then be adjusted to suit your needs. To get started, click Need. If you would like to design from scratch, simply click Cancel.
	<pre>< Back Next > Cancel</pre>

3. On the House Builder screen, click Next.

Roors Number of Roors: a. Ground Roor Height above Terrain: 1 b. Roor to Ceiling Height: 8' Foundation Type ® Concrete Slab © Full Basement © Foundation Walls w/ Crawl Space	
--	--

- 4. From the **Number of Floors** drop box, select the number of floors you would like the house to have (not including the basement level).
- 5. In the **Floor to Ceiling Height** edit box, type the desired wall height for each floor level.

- 6. In the *Foundation Type* area, select the type of foundation you want to create. Choose from Concrete Slab, Full Basement, or Foundation Walls w/ Crawl Space.
- If you selected the Full Basement or Foundation Walls w/Crawl Space, specify the elevation of the ground floor relative to the ground in the Ground Floor Height above Terrain edit box.
- 8. Click Next.



- 9. Select the general house shape by clicking one of the graphics in the *House Shape* pane.
- 10. Once you've selected a house shape, make a selection in the *Garage Position* pane to specify where you want to put the garage. If you don't want a garage, select the first option.
- 11. Click Next.

Building Dimensions	Building Size	
	Area =	600.0 ft ²
	a. Length:	30-0
Ь		
	Garage	
	Size: Do	uble 👻
	0	0"

- 12. In the *Building Size* area, specify the desired dimensions for the house by entering values in the edit boxes. The edit box labels correspond to the labels on the image in the left pane.
- 13. In the *Garage* area, select either Single, Double or Triple from the **Type** drop box. Then, using the dimensioned graphic as an aid, specify the desired offset of the garage from the exterior wall corner.
- 14. Click Next.

🙆 House Builder Wizard		? X
Select the Build	ing Element	5
Building Configuration: Building Elements	Contemporary	•
	Roof	6/12 Slope Hip Roof - Shingles
	Ceiling Walls	1/2" Drywall Ceiling 2x4 Stone Wall
	Floors	Wool Level Loop Carpet
	Foundation	12" Concrete Wall 1' X 1'-6" Rect. Solid Strip Footing
		< Back Next > Cancel

15. From the **Building Configuration** drop box, select the general style for your home (contemporary, country or traditional). The pre-

set material selections for the elements in your house are displayed in the lower pane. You can select different materials if you want — just click the button of the element you want to change and make a selection from the catalog. **NOTE:** For Building Essentials and Construction Suite products, the Floors option will allow for a Structural Floor or a Floor Surface.

16. Click Next.



17. Click **Finish** to build the house.

Launching the House Builder Wizard Automatically at Startup

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you want you can choose to launch the House Builder Wizard automatically every time you start a new project, instead of opening a blank drawing.

To launch the House Builder Wizard automatically at startup:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **General** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Startup* area, check the **Launch wizard** when starting new project check box.
- 4. Select House Builder from the drop box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Creating a Custom House Builder Wizard Configuration

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A House Builder Wizard configuration determines what elements are used for exterior walls, roofs, floors, ceilings, foundation walls and footings. You are asked to select a configuration for your house when you run the House Builder Wizard.

You can edit any of the existing configurations that are available in the House Builder Wizard, or create your own. Customized configurations are saved automatically and will be available when you run the House Builder Wizard in the current project, or any other project.

To access the building configuration library:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button is on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Building Configuration.

To add a new configuration to the list:

- Select Edit > Add Configuration, or rightclick in the Building Configurations window and select Add Configuration. An entry named 'New Configuration' is added to the list.
- Select the new configuration in the list. If you want to rename it, select Edit > Rename Configuration, or right-click and select Rename Configuration. Then, type the new name and press ENTER.

To edit a building configuration:

- Select the configuration in the list. The element selections for the configuration are listed in the center pane.
- 2. In the center pane, select an element type you want to specify a style for (e.g. Main Wall).
- 3. Click the Select button.
- In the Catalog Access dialog, select the specific style you want to apply to the selected element type, then click OK.
- 5. Continue selecting styles for the remaining element types.

To delete a configuration from the list:

- 1. Select the configuration in the list.
- Select Edit > Delete Configuration, or rightclick and select Delete Configuration, or simply press the Delete key on your keyboard.

Chapter 5: Walls

Walls

In most cases you will probably want to start your design by drawing the exterior walls, and then adding interior walls. Drawing walls is easy — just point and click!

Drawing walls is easy — just point and click. Envisioneer automatically displays dimensions as you draw, and connects corners for you. If the Object Snap is turned on, interior walls snap to other existing walls and create clean intersections with them.

Once inserted, any wall can be moved, rotated, lengthened, shortened, elevated, lowered, curved, deleted, and more. This lets you create the exact wall layout that you want.

There are two different tools available for drawing walls: the Walls tool, and the Walls by Baseline tool. The Walls tool draws walls on center. The Walls by Baseline tool lets you draw walls on any baseline, such as the exterior or interior wall line.

The catalog contains exterior, interior and foundation wall types. Once your walls are drawn, you can add paint, wallpaper, baseboards and other types of trim for a truly customized look. Walls also have a framing configuration in their properties which you can customize if you want.

Drawing Walls

Drawing walls with the Walls tool is easy — just click to select a start point, move your pointer away from the start point in the desired direction, and then click to define the wall's end point. You can use the onscreen dimensions or the Commander to define the wall's length while drawing the wall. Walls drawn with the Walls tool are drawn on center, which means they are drawn along each wall's center line. You can choose to draw them on a different wall line using the Walls by Baseline tool. By drawing walls on different building locations, you can create a design with multiple stories.

Floor plans often display walls with a solid fill. You can do this too by turning solid fill on in your program settings.

If you would like to have two different floor finishes in the same room, you can divide the room into two separate areas (without inserting a wall).

Drawing Walls

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can draw walls by simply pointing and clicking with your mouse.

By default, every exterior wall in the catalog is defined as a composite wall. A composite wall is a structural wall (e.g. stud wall) and veneer wall (e.g. brick or stone wall) put together, with an air space in between.

Perimeter walls drawn with the Walls tool are drawn *on center*. If you want to draw walls with a different offset (such as on the outer face of the veneer), use the Walls by Baseline tool instead.

If automatic floors are turned on in your program settings, a floor is automatically inserted when you create a closed wall layout. You can change the floor properties after it has been inserted if you want.

Once you've created your exterior walls, you can start drawing interior walls. Walls snap to other walls automatically, creating clean corners and intersections.

To draw walls:

- 1. Make sure the current location is the location that you want to insert walls on.
- Select Insert > Walls > Walls, or click the down arrow next to the Walls button on the Building toolbar and select Walls.
- 3. In the catalog, select the wall type that you want to insert.
- 4. Select a start point for the first wall.

Note: When selecting a start point for an interior wall, the on-screen dimensions measure from the inside face of the exterior walls to the adjacent face of the

interior wall you are drawing.



5. Without dragging, move your cursor in the direction you want your wall to run. Its length is shown as you draw the wall.

Note: By default, drawing is constrained to 15° angles. To release this constraint, turn off Angle Snap.

- 6. When the wall is the length you want, click to set its endpoint.
- 7. To add another wall to the one you have just drawn, move the mouse in the direction you want the new wall to run. When it is the right length, click to set its endpoint.
- 8. When you are finished drawing walls, rightclick and select **Finish**.

If drawing exterior walls with a composite wall definition, you will see both the structural wall and veneer.





Note: If drawing composite walls, the veneer appears only if the walls connect to form a closed layout. Otherwise, only the structural wall is displayed.

Drawing Walls from an Offset Baseline

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you use the Walls tool to draw perimeter walls, the walls are drawn on center, which means they are drawn on a center baseline. You may prefer to draw your walls on a different baseline. For example, you may want your baseline to represent the inner or outer edge of the wall core. You can then offset the walls from that baseline in either direction by a specified distance, or have no offset at all.

You can draw walls from an offset baseline using the *Walls by Baseline* tool. Once you've drawn the perimeter baseline you can specify how you want to offset the walls from that baseline.

To draw walls from an offset baseline:

- Select Insert > Walls > Walls by Baseline, or click the down arrow next to the Walls button
 on the Building toolbar and select
 Walls by Baseline.
- 2. In the catalog, select the wall type you want to insert.
- Pick points to draw the outline of your exterior wall layout, then right-click and select **Finish**. When considering your measurements, keep in mind that the walls will be offset from this outline.

If you make a mistake while drawing the outline you can undo the last segment drawn by right-clicking and selecting **Step Back**.

- In the Walls by Baseline dialog, select the wall face that you would like to serve as the offset baseline. You can choose either Outer Face of Veneer, Outer Face of Wall Core or Stud, or Inner Face of Wall Core or Stud.
- 5. In the *Offset* area, specify an offset distance in the **Distance** edit box, if desired.
- 6. If you have specified an offset distance, select the direction in which you want to offset the walls from the baseline, either **Towards outside** or **Towards inside**.
- 7. Click **OK**. The walls are created.

Note: When drawing the layout, do not select the start point again to create the last segment. The last point picked is continually connected to the start point.

Adding a Story

Once you have created one level, such as the Ground Floor level, adding more levels to your design is easy. You can create a new story in one of the following ways:

- Use the Floor and Foundation Builder Wizard to automatically create perimeter walls on another location (see page 7)
- Use the Duplicate to Locations tool to copy the walls from an existing location to a new location (see page 249)
- Use the Walls tool to draw walls on a new building location using the walls on the previous location as a tracing footprint (see page 5)

Using the Floor and Foundation Builder Wizard

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Once you have created a perimeter wall layout for one level in your design, you can use the Floor and Foundation Builder Wizard to automatically create a foundation level or additional stories. When stepping through the Wizard you define the element configuration and materials you want to use, and the relative position of elements. The Wizard then builds the new level for you automatically using the existing layout on another location as a tracing footprint.

To create a new level with the Floor and Foundation Builder:

- Make sure you have drawn a perimeter wall layout for one building location in your model. The Wizard will use these walls as a tracing footprint for the new level.
- Select Insert > Design Wizards > Floor and Foundation Builder, or click the down arrow next to the Design Wizards button in the Building toolbar and select Floor and

Foundation Builder.

Sloor and Foundation Builder Wizard Weicome to the Floor	and Foundation Builder
	This wizard allows you to create a new floor or foundation level automatically using a few simple steps. You will be asked to choose different elements of the level you wish to create and how they will be positioned relative to the current floor location. You must have a current floor location drawing in order to use this wizard correctly.
	< Back Next > Cance

3. On the Welcome screen, click Next.

🎉 Floor and Foundation Builder Wiza	ard		?
Choose your Level	Гуре		
	 Floor Level Choose Location Foundation Foundation Level Choose Location Foundation 		
	< Back	Next >	Cance

4. Select the type of level you want to create. To create a new story (comprising walls and a floor), enable the Floor Level radio button, then select a building location for the new level from the location drop box (e.g. Second Floor). To create a foundation level (which can include footings, or can be just a slab), enable the Foundation Level radio button, then select a building location for the foundation elements (e.g. Foundation). The building location you select determines the height

of the new level's walls as well as the floor level.

5. Click Next.

🔉 Floor and Foundation Builder Wizard	? 🔀
Select Floor Style and Building Elements	
Type Cavity Stacked Suspended	
Walls No Element Selected	
< Back Next >	Cancel

6. In the *Type* area, select the type of element configuration you want to create. For a floor level, this determines how the floor intersects with the walls. For a foundation level, this dictates what type of foundation will be created and what it will include.



Foundation Level Options

 If you selected a configuration that includes walls, click the **Walls** button, then select the type of wall you want created on the new level in the **Catalog Access** dialog.

- 8. If the configuration you selected includes a floor, click the **Floors** button. **NOTE:** For Building Essentials and Construction Suite products, the Floors option will allow for a Structural Floor or a Floor Surface. Select either then select the type of floor you want the new level to have.
- 9. If you are creating a *Slab on Grade* or *Monolithic* foundation level but already have a floor slab in the drawing, you will probably want to enable the **I already have a floor slab, do not include another** check box. This prevents the creation of an additional floor slab.
- 10. If you are creating a foundation level, click the **Footings** button, then select the type of footing you want to use.
- 11. Click Next.



12. The Adjust Position of Elements screen lets you move the walls, floor or footing toward the inside or toward the outside of the layout. If you want to adjust any of these elements, select the element to adjust from the Adjust Element drop box, then enter the distance you want to move the element in the Distance edit box. Then, specify the direction in which you want to move the element by enabling either the Towards Inside or Towards Outside radio button.

The point from which the move distance is measured depends on the type of element you are adjusting and the floor style or foundation type you have selected. For more detailed information on adjusting elements, click the help button on the **Adjust Position of Elements** screen.

13. Once you adjusted your elements, click Next.

Stoor and Foundation Builder W Completing the Flo	izard 🛛 👔 👔	x iza
	When you click finish, the new level will be created at your selected location.	
	< Back Finish Cancel	

14. Click **Finish**. The new level is created automatically.

Note: The Floor and Foundation Builder will not launch if there is not a closed wall layout present in the drawing.

Editing Walls

Walls can be edited in a number of different ways. To display a menu of wall editing commands, simply select a wall and then right-click your mouse. Selecting **Walls Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to walls. These include the following:

- Resize a wall layout
- Lengthen or shorten a wall
- Move a wall
- Rotate a wall
- Curve a wall
- Break a wall
- Edit the width of a wall

- Edit the height of wall
- Edit or define a wall's surfaces
- Drop the exterior face of a wall
- Raise or lower a wall
- Slope the top or bottom of a wall
- Step the top of bottom of a wall
- Extend wall tops beneath gable ends
- Delete a wall

Editing Dynamic Dimension Settings

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Dynamic dimensions are the dimensions that appear on the screen when you select a wall, door, window or wall opening. Editing these dimensions lets you resize a wall layout, or move doors, windows and openings within a wall.

In the case of a composite wall, dynamic dimensions measure to the outer surface of the wall by default (e.g. the veneer). You can choose to have them measure to the edge of the core wall instead (e.g. stud wall).

To edit dynamic dimension settings:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- In the Program Settings dialog, select Building Aids in the left pane.
- 3. Select the desired option in the *Dynamic Dimensions* area.

To outer surface. Causes dynamic

dimensions to measure to a composite wall's outer surface (e.g. veneer).

To edge of core. Causes dynamic dimensions to measure to the edge of the core wall (e.g. stud wall) in a composite wall.

4. Click **OK**.

Resizing a Wall Layout

You can resize an exterior wall layout by moving a wall, or by editing its dynamic dimensions. All adjoining walls automatically stretch along with the wall you are moving or editing.

To resize a wall layout by moving a wall:

- 1. Select the exterior wall you want to move. All attached walls will stretch along with it when you move it.
- 3. Click and drag the wall to resize the wall layout, then release your mouse button.

To resize a wall layout by editing its dimensions:

- Select one of the walls. If you want to stretch the layout left or right, select a vertical wall. If you want to stretch the layout up or down, select a horizontal wall. Dynamic dimensions are displayed on the wall layout.
- Click the dimension you want to edit. The Edit Dimension dialog appears.



- 3. Enter the new value in the **Enter Distance** edit box.
- Specify the direction in which you want to move the walls by clicking one of the arrows to the right of the Enter Distance edit box.
- 5. Press **Enter** or click **OK**. The walls update automatically.

Note: If you select an interior wall and edit its dynamic length dimension, this will also resize the wall layout.

Lengthening and Shortening Walls

You can lengthen or shorten a wall by clicking and dragging one of the wall's ends, or by editing the dynamic dimension that appears along its length. If you choose to lengthen or shorten a wall by clicking and dragging, and that wall is attached to other walls, the attached walls will not move or change. However, if you choose to lengthen or shorten a wall by editing dynamic dimensions, and that wall is attached to other walls, the attached walls will move along with it.

To lengthen or shorten a wall by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Select the wall. A grip is displayed at each wall end.
- Hover your pointer over the wall end you want to stretch. The Lengthen cursor is displayed +→+→.
- 3. Click and drag the wall end until it has reached the desired length.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To lengthen or shorten a wall by editing dynamic dimensions:

- 1. Select the wall.
- 2. Click on the dimension that appears along the wall's length.



3. In the **Edit Dimension** dialog, specify the desired length for the wall, then specify which end of the wall you want to stretch or retract by clicking one of the arrow buttons next to the length edit box.

Edit Dimension	8
Enter Distance:	26'-0"
0	Cancel
Edit Dimension Enter Distance: 26'-0" OK Cancel	Specify which wall end you want to stretch

4. Click **OK**.

Editing the Width of a Wall

You can edit the width or thickness of a wall by making changes on the wall's Basic property page.

To edit the width of a wall:

- Select the wall. You can select multiple walls using Shift+click if you want.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Walls** dialog, select the Basic tab.

🔑 Walls (Document)

Name: 2x6 Stone Base Composite Siding Upper

Basic	Trim	Appearance	Line W	/ork	Quantity
			Properties:		
		111		Wal	Гуре
	а	///		Exte	erior Wall System
		1/		a-\	Width
	- Éf	1		Corr	ponent Layout
				Top	Edge
				Тур	e
				Lev	el
			b - \	√all Height	
			Bot	tom Edge	
			Тур	e	
			1	Fra	ming Options
				Fran	ne As Load Bearing
				Ene	ergy
				Incl	ude in Calculations
				Wal	IТуре
				Cav	ity R-Value
				Con	tionono D.Voluo

🖪 🔩 - 🎵

- The thickness is displayed in the Width box and it is the sum of all of the components that make up a wall. Click on the Select button beside Component Layout.
- Each component will list its Width Under Size. If you want to change the size of a component, click on button beside Select Component.
- 3. The **Catalog Access** dialog box will appear listing all components. Select a component, right click and select Edit Element.
- The Component dialog box will appear. Under the Size tab, you can adjust the a-Width value for the component.

5. Click **OK** in all of the dialogs to confirm any new changes.

See Defining a Wall's Components on page 12.

WhatEditing the Height of a Wall

You can edit a wall's height on the wall's *Basic* property page.

To edit the height of a wall:

- 1. Select the wall. You can select multiple walls using Shift+click if you want.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Walls** dialog, select the **Basic** tab.
- 4. In the *Top Edge* area, select the **Level** option.
- In the Level edit box, select either *By Location* (to be automatically set to the Building Location information) or *User Defined*.
- 6. If *User Defined* is selected, *b-Wall Height* edit box will appear. Type in a desired height for the wall.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Defining a Wall's Components

Every wall in the catalog has a set of properties that determine if the wall has interior finish, and/or exterior surfaces applied to it. An exterior surface would be a veneer such as brick, stone or siding. An interior surface would be a material applied to the core wall (e.g. stud wall) on the interior of the model, such as drywall or plaster.

To define a wall's surfaces:

- Select the wall whose properties you want to change. You can select multiple walls using Shift+click if you want. You can also define properties for walls in the catalog.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Walls** dialog, select the *Basic* tab.
- Click the Select button beside Component Layout.
- 5. In the **Component Layout** dialog box, the types of components are listed on the left. A

wall can have multiple *Interior Finishes*, *Interior Layers*, *Exterior Layers* and *Exterior Finishes*. It can only have one **Core** element. As you select a component, the middle of the dialog box will display the component **Properties** and the graphic to the right will highlight where the component is sitting within the wall.

Component Layout	
Component Layout	Properties: Select Compl Behaviour Function Treat as Loai Size Width Top Edge Offset from C Bottom Edg Offset from C Surface Display Plan and S Display
	ОК

- 1. To add components click on the **Add** button.
- 2. To remove a component, click the **Delete** button.
- 3. To move the component within its category, select either the *Move Up* or *Move Down*button. Components can only be moved within their category, if there are multiple

components within a category, otherwise the buttons are greyed out.

- 4. Under *Properties*, in the middle column, the component is listed at the top. If you select the component, a button will appear to the right. Click on it.
 - This takes you to the Catalog Access dialog box where the components are found in the catalog. Right click on the current component, and select Edit Element.
 - 2. The *Size, Appearance, Line Work* and *Quantity* information of the component is set here.
 - Under the *Size* tab you can set the Function of the component and that will carry forward as a default to the Component Layout tab. The width of the component can be added beside *a*-*Width*. If it is a framing component check the *Framed Component* option and then specify a member. Under *Energy* specify the R value of the component and if you wish to *Include in Calculations* for the overall Energy analysis.
 - 2. Under the Appearance tab set the texture for the component for when it is visible in a 3D view.
 - 3. Under the *Line Work* tab set the *Layer* and *Hatch* pattern information for the components view in *Surface* and in *Plan and Section* views.
 - The *Quantity* tab will outline the quantity information for the component that will carry back to the parent wall.
 - Click OK to exit the Components and Catalog
 Access dialog boxes and



?

r Exterior >

X

return to the **Component Layout** dialog box.

- You can also pick the Function for the component. The function can be *Structure, Sheathing, Barrier,Insulation,* or *Finish.* The function determines the properties that will be listed in the dialog box.
- 6. Each component can be considered *Load-Bearing* or get its Load-Bearing information from the parent wall. Most components are set to *Parent* so the wall, and not the individual components, are considered Load-Bearing or not.
- 7. The **Width** of the component comes directly from the component information. It can't be altered here.
- 8. The **Top** and **Bottom Edge** settings will shift the component up or down relative to the core. You can have the component sit higher or lower at the Top Edge or the Bottom Edge by typing in a value. The diagram to the right will update to show the change.
- 9. The last options define if the component is visible when the **Surface** is in elevation view or **Plan and Section** views. Check to turn the visibility on or off.
- 10. Click **OK** to return to the **Walls** dialog.

Lowering or Raising the Exterior Face of a Wall

You can extend the bottom and/or top of an exterior wall face in the wall's properties. For example, you may want to lower the bottom of the exterior face of a perimeter wall to cover the exposed floor structure below the wall.

To raise or lower the exterior face of a wall:

- Select the wall whose properties you want to change. You can select multiple walls using Shift+click if you want.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- In the Walls dialog, select the *Basic* tab and click the Select button beside Component Layout.

- 4. To raise the top of the exterior wall face, select the *Exterior Finish* component listed on the left of the dialog box. Each component has properties to define its height.
- With the exterior component selected enter an extension distance in the Offset from Core edit box under the Top Edge heading. To lower the bottom of the exterior wall face, enter a distance in th Offset from Core edit box underBottom Edge.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Making a Wall Invisible in 2D

You may find that you want to hide certain walls in 2D view, such as dormer walls and gable end walls, to improve the clarity of the view.

To make a wall invisible in 2D:

- Select the wall. You can select multiple walls using Shift+click if they are the same type.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Walls** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- 4. Click the **Select** button beside *Component Lay*out.
- 5. The *Properties* for each component are visible in the middle of the dialog box. At the bottom of the properties are **Display** for *Surface* (in 3D) or *Plan and Section* (for 2D views). Uncheck the option for the components that you don't want to see in 3D or 2D. Select each component on the left and make your *Display* options under *Properties* for each.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Raising or Lowering a Wall

You can raise or lower a wall using the Elevate tool on the wall's right-click menu.

To edit the elevation of a wall:

- 1. Select the wall whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the wall.

- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the bottom of the wall above the floor.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the wall looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the wall in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Sloping a Wall

You can slope a wall by setting different heights for each end of the wall.

To slope a wall:

- 1. Select the wall.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Walls** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- To slope the top of the wall, select the **Type** option in the *Top Edge* area and set it to Slope. To slope the bottom of the wall, select the **Slope** option in the *Bottom Edge* area.
- 5. In the **Start Height** edit box, type the distance from the floor to the start point of the slope. Note that the green wall end marker on the diagram corresponds to the green wall end marker on the wall in your drawing. This way you know which end is which.
- In the End Height edit box, type the distance from the floor to the end point of the slope. Note that you do not need to enter a negative value to slope a wall bottom below floor level.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Stepping a Wall

You can step the top or bottom of a wall by simply editing the wall's properties. For example, you may want to create a stepped foundation to accommodate a sloped building lot.

To step a wall:

- 1. Select the wall.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

- 3. In the **Walls** dialog, select the **Basic** tab.
- 4. To step the top of the wall, select the **Step** option in the *Top Edge* area, under *Type*. To step the bottom of the wall, select the **Step** option in the *Bottom Edge* area.
- 5. In the **Start Height** edit box, type the distance from the floor to the start point of the step. Note that the green wall end marker on the diagram corresponds to the green wall end marker on the wall in your drawing. This way you know which end is which.
- In the End Height edit box, type the distance from the floor to the end point of the slope. Note that you do not need to enter a negative value to step a wall bottom below floor level.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Note: If you apply strip footings to stepped wall bottoms, the footings will automatically step also.

Extending Walls to the Roof

By default, the tops of most walls in the catalog are set to be level (regardless of the roof type), and their height is determined by the Wall Height setting of the building location on which they reside. You can specify that you want a wall to automatically extend to the roof, regardless of the Wall Height setting in your building locations. This is particularly useful for filling in the pitched areas at gable ends.

To extend walls to the roof:

- Select the wall that you want to auto-extend to the roof. You can select additional walls using Shift+click.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- In the Walls dialog, select the Top and Bottom tab.
- 4. In the *Wall Top* area, enable the **Auto Extend** option.
- 5. To rake the external side of the wall, check the Exterior Wall Tops to Roof check box. If you want to offset the wall a specific distance from the roof surface, enter a value in the Offset below roof surface edit box.
- 6. To rake the internal side of the wall, check the Interior Wall Tops to Roof check box. If you want to offset the wall a specific distance from the roof surface, enter a value in the Offset below roof surface edit box.
- 7. Click **OK**. The walls are adjusted.

Tip: If you want to use a different wall material within the pitched area of a gable end, set the wall shape to 'Level' in its properties and change the roof edge properties instead. In a roof's properties you can choose to display a separate wall in the pitched area by enabling the Display Gable option on the roof's Basic property page and selecting the desired gable Wall Type. This wall can then be selected independently of the main wall so that you can control its properties and framing separately.

Making Walls Level

By default, most walls in the catalog are set to have level tops and bottoms, regardless of the construction above or below them. If a wall in your drawing has been stepped, sloped or extended to the roof, you can specify that you want it to be level instead. As an example, you would do this if the wall were at a gable end and you wanted to display a separate material or wall within the pitched area of the gable end.

To make a wall level:

- 1. Select the wall that you want to edit, either in the catalog or in your drawing.
- 2. Right-click and select Properties.
- 3. In the **Walls** dialog, select the **Basic** tab.
- Under **Top Edge**, Enable **Level** beside *Type*. This will give a level height to the top of the wall.
- Under Bottom Edge, Enable Level beside *Type*. This will give a level base to the bottom of the wall.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Moving Walls

You can move one or more walls by clicking and dragging them, or by editing the dynamic dimensions that appear on and near walls when you select a wall in your plan. When you move a wall, any walls attached to that wall move with it for a stretching effect.

To move walls by clicking and dragging:

- Click on the wall that you want to move. To move multiple walls, use Shift+click to select the remaining walls.
- Hover your pointer over the center grip on the currently selected wall to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag the wall to move it.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To move walls by editing dynamic dimensions:

- Click on the wall that you want to move. Dimensions appear on any walls that are attached to the selected wall, indicating the wall's distance from adjacent walls.
- 2. Click on the dimension that you want to change.
- In the Edit Dimension dialog, type the desired value for the dimension, then click OK. The dimension updates, and the wall is moved.



Rotating a Wall

You can use the Rotate tool to rotate a wall about a selected point.

To rotate a wall:

- 1. Select the wall.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- Position your pointer over the point you want to rotate the wall around.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the wall, then release your mouse button.

Curving a Wall

You can curve a wall using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the wall to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve a wall by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click the wall to select it.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the wall to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a wall to a selected point:

- 1. Click the wall to select it.
- Right-click in and select Curve, or select Edit
 Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The wall automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Offsetting a Wall

You can use the Offset tool to make multiple copies a wall in a set direction.

To offset a wall:

- 1. Select the wall.
- Right-click and select Offset, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Offset.
- 3. In the **Offset** dialog, type the distance you want to offset the wall in the **Offset Distance** edit box.
- 4. In the **Number of Copies** edit box, type the number of copies you want to create, or use



ed

the arrow keys to increase or decrease the number.

- 5. Click **OK**.
- 6. Click on the side you want to offset to. The wall is offset.

Breaking a Wall

You can break a wall into two or more segments using the Break tool. The segments can then be edited individually.

To break a wall:

- 1. Click the wall to select it.
- Right-click in the drawing area and select Break, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Break.
- 3. Click the point where you want to break the wall. This divides the wall into two segments that can be moved, stretched or manipulated individually.

Note: If the wall is a composite wall (framed wall + veneer), only the framed wall is broken.

Tip: To break a wall into specific lengths, use the Auto Break tool.

Tip: You can move a wall break by editing the wall's onscreen dimensions.

Breaking a Wall into Specific Lengths

You can use the Auto Break tool on a wall's editing menu to break the wall into lengths of your choice. This is particularly useful if you are using panelized construction because it provides precise control over the length of your panels. By breaking down long walls you can also avoid exceeding your maximum panel length.

To break a wall into specific lengths:

- Select the wall that you want to break, then right-click and select **Auto Break**.
- 2. In the **Enter Break Distance** dialog, type the length that you want your wall sections to be, then press **Enter** or click **OK**.

Enter Break Distance	8 23
Enter Distance: []"	
ОК	Cancel
Enter Break Distance 🛛 😵 🔀	
Enter Distance: []"	
OK Cancel	

The wall is broken into sections. The end at which breaking starts depends on the type of wall you are breaking. If you are breaking a framed wall, breaking begins according to the Framing Rule applied to that wall. In other words, the break direction coincides with the framing direction. If you are breaking a nonframed wall, breaking begins at the wall's start point. (When you select a wall in plan view, the end with the green grip is the start point.)

If the wall cannot be broken equally into the lengths you specified (due to its overall length), the last wall section will be shorter.

Note: If the wall is a composite wall (framed wall + veneer), only the framed wall is broken.

Tip: To break a wall anywhere by picking a break point, use the Break tool instead.

Tip: You can move a wall break by editing the wall's onscreen dimensions. This changes the length of the wall panels on either side of the break.

Moving Wall Breaks

If you have broken a wall using the Break or Auto Break tool, you can move a wall break by editing the wall's onscreen dimensions. Moving a break changes the length of wall panels on either side of the break. **To move a wall break:**

1. Click on the wall segment whose length you want to edit. A dimension appears along the

length of the wall segment.

- 2. Click on the onscreen dimension.
- 3. In the **Edit Dimension** dialog, type the length that you want to the wall segment to have, then click one of the arrows next to the edit box to specify which end you want to move. In the example below, if we wanted to make the selected panel 6 feet long, we would type 6' in the edit box, and then click the left arrow button to move the left wall break to the left. The panel would then be resized to 6'.



4. Click **OK**. The wall break is moved according to the settings you defined.

Deleting a Wall

You can delete a wall in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a wall:**

- 1. Select the wall to delete. You can select multiple walls using Shift+click.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Note: If your model contains an automatic floor, the floor will be deleted if the wall you are deleting opens up the wall layout.

Paint & Trim

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to apply different materials to walls (wood, stucco, brick, etc.), or apply paint or wallpaper.

You can apply trim to either side of a wall by making trim selections on the wall's Trim property page. You can select materials of your choice for baseboards, crown molding, chair rails, door/window trim, sills, cove molding, wainscoting and decorative wallpaper borders. To enhance your design you can apply a profile to trim if you like.

Applying Different Materials to Walls

You can apply different finishes to your walls using the handy Materials Paintbrush. The materials catalog contains an excellent selection of brick, concrete, wood and stone finishes.

To apply a material to a wall:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the wall face you want to apply the material to is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply.
- 4. Click on the wall face that you want to apply the material to. The material is immediately applied.
- 5. Right-click and select Finish.

Adding Paint and Wallpaper

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly apply custom paint, wallpaper or wood paneling to a wall.

To apply paint or wallpaper to walls:

- Display your model in 3D, and make sure the wall face you want to apply the paint or wallpaper to is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply. You can filter the material list to display only wall finishes by selecting *Paint* or *Wall Material Interior* from the **Filter** drop box.
- 4. Click on the wall face that you want to apply the paint or wallpaper to. The material is immediately applied. You can continue applying the material to other walls if you want.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Adding Trim to Walls

Trim types include baseboards, crown molding, chair rails, door/window trim, sills, cove molding, wainscoting and decorative wallpaper borders. You can add as many types of trim to a wall as you want, and even add different materials to either side of the wall.

Trim selections are made at the Document Settings level to create a default trim that is consistent on all walls in a project and on a wall's Trim property page. You can also edit each wall in a project to alter the trim.

To setup a default trim package for a project: 1. Select **Settings>Document Settings**.

2. In the **Document Settings** dialog box, select **Trim Settings** from the left list.

🗾 Document Settings

Drawing Aids **Building Aids** Units of Measure Site Boundaries Terrain Global **3D RealView** Animations Element Mark Datum Lines Auto Place Outlets **Revision Cloud** Polygon Hatch Dimension Auto Exteri Dimension Auto Interi Trim Settings



Here you select a default trim package to be applied for interior walls and another for exterior walls.

3. Click the **Select** button to select a trim package and then click **OK**.

4. Next, set the **Trim Behaviour** option. This option dettermines how trim behaves when there are two different finishes on a wall. Select either graphic that best matches your trim condition.

5. Click **OK** when all options are set.

To add trim to walls:

- 1. Select the wall you want to add trim to.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Walls** dialog, select the Trim tab.

4. Trim is organized into packages. For example, Interior Trim that includes baseboard, and casing can be organized in one package. Exterior trim, can be organized into another.

Each *Package Type* can be set to *Default Interior, Default Exterior,* or *Custom*.

NOTE: Trim packages set to *Custom* can be further refined. Default packages adhere to their existing trim products. Default packages are automatically included from the trim packages set under **Settings>Document Settings**.

Basic Trim		Appearance Line Work Qua		antity	
Trim P	ackages:				
Pack	age Type	Descri	iption		Apply
Default Inte		S4S Interior Base Package Sid Interior		Interior	
Cust	om	PVC Exterior Si	ding Trim F	Packa	Exterior
Resu Interi	ılt: ior			Exte	rior
Resu Interi Typ	ult: ior pe	Description		Exte Typ	rior De
Resu Interi Typ Ba:	ult: ior pe seboard	Description 3/8'' x 4'' MDI	F S4	Exte Typ Op	rior be ening
Resu Interi Typ Ba: Op	ult: ior pe seboard ening	Description 3/8'' x 4'' MD 3/8'' x 3'' MDI	F S4 F S4	Exte Typ Op Bas	rior De ening seboard
Resu Interi Typ Ba: Op Op	ılt: ior seboard ening ening	Description 3/8'' x 4'' MDI 3/8'' x 3'' MDI 3/8'' x 3'' MDI	F S4 F S4 F S4	Exte Typ Op Bas Wii	rior be ening seboard ndow He
Resu Interi Ba Op Op Op	ult: ior seboard ening ening ening	Description 3/8'' x 4'' MDI 3/8'' x 3'' MDI 3/8'' x 3'' MDI 3/8'' x 3'' MDI	F S4 F S4 F S4 F S4 F S4	Exte Typ Op Ba: Wii Wii	rior be ening seboard ndow He ndow Sill

Using the **Add** button. You can add additional trim packages to a wall.

Using the **Remove** button, You remove the highlighted trim package from the wall.

The **Edit** button will only appear selectable for *Custom* package types. By selecting Edit, you are taken to the **Trim Packages** dialog box where you can select a new trim package or create a new one.

The **Advanced** button will only appear selectable for *Custom* package types. By selecting Advanced you are taken to the **Advanced Trims** dialog box.

NOTE: The Advanced button is not available in Consumer versions. The following steps are not applicable to consumer versions.



Advanced Trims

Trim Packages:

Package Type Custom		Description	Apply to:
		S4S Interior Base Package Siding 2	Interior
Custom	~	PVC Exterior Siding Trim Package	Exterior

Туре	Description	Trim Package
Baseboard	3/8" x 4" MDF S4S Base	S4S Interior Base Package
Opening	3/8" x 3" MDF S4S Jamb	S4S Interior Base Package
Opening	3/8" x 3" MDF S4S Jamb	S4S Interior Base Package
Opening	3/8" x 3" MDF S4S Casing	S4S Interior Base Package

Each trim within a package is listed . You can *Include*, or *Exclude* the individual pieces of trim on a wall. It doesn't change the trim package, just the instance of trim pieces on the wall(s) selected.

For Exterior walls you will have the Interior and Exterior options. For interior walls you

will only have the Interior option. Interior option for **Apply to**, include Left, Right or Both.

The Exterior Side is the exterior side of an exterior wall.

The Left Interior Side or Right Interior Side of a wall depends on the direction in which the wall is drawn. If you click on a wall in your drawing, you will see one end marked with a green marker, and the other end marked with a red marker. The green marker indicates the start point of the wall, or the point you started drawing from. The red marker indicates the end point. To determine the left or right side of the wall, picture yourself standing at the wall's start point (green marker) and looking toward the end point (red marker). Turning your head left or right while in this position determines which side is left, and which side is right. For example, if a wall was drawn from left to right, the left interior side would be the side closest to the top of the screen.

Edit Trim Package

The trim pieces that make up a trim package can be altered to add or remove the pieces or change their position. You can alter the trim package so it reflects your choices every time you select the trim package.

In the list of trim packages, select the trim package you would like to alter.

- 1. Click Edit.
- 2. The **Trim Packages** dialog box appears. Select a trim package, and then right click and select **Edit Trim Package**.

In the **Edit Trim Package** dialog, the trim pieces within the package are listed.

Edit Trim Package

Name: S4S Interior Base Package

Included Elements:

Trim Type	Element	Rotation	Offset from V
Baseboard	3/8" x 4" MDF S4S Baseboard	0.00	0"
Opening	3/8" x 3" MDF S4S Casing	0.00	0"

- 1. To delete the member from the trim list, select it, then click **Remove**.
- 2. To add a trim, click Add and select a new one from the Catalog Access panel.
- In the *Included Elements* area, specify how you would like the trim applied to the wall. Different variables are available.

Trim Type. Classifies the type of trim so it knows the default origin of the trim. The default origin will be populated in the last column **Position From** it is not editable.

Rotate. Rotates the trim profile.

Offset from Wall. This is the offset of the molding from the face of the wall.

Offset from baseline. This determines where the member is offset from its origin position. For Baseboardand Chair Rail trim types, the origin is the bottom of the wall. For Opening, Window Sill, Window Head, Door Sill and Door Head trim types it is the opening. For Crown trim types, it is the top of wall.

Extension. For Window Sill, Window Head, Door Sill and Door Head trim types, you can

specify an extension of how far past the opening the trim extends. For all other trim types this will be non accessible.

4. Once you've selected your trim, click **OK**. The walls are updated automatically.

Note: You cannot add sills to hexagon or octagon windows.

er fApplying a Profile to Trim

By default, trim members in the catalog have a flat profile. To add interesting detail to your design, you can apply profiles to trim members by editing trim properties. You can select a pre-defined profile from the profiles library, or create your own.

To apply a profile to trim:

 Select the wall containing the trim that you want to edit, then right-click and select **Properties**.

If the trim does not exist yet in your drawing, select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**, then select the trim that you want to edit. Go to step 5.

- 2. In the **Walls** dialog, select the **Trim** tab.
- 3. In the *Trim Packages* list, select the trim package that you would like to apply a profile to, then click **Edit**.
- In the Trim Packages dialog, select the trim package that houses the trim you want to ed, then right-click and select Edit Trim Package.
- 5. In the Edit Trim Package page, select the Element that you want to replace with a custom trim. A button will appear beside it. Click it.
- 6. In the Catalog Access dialog box, select the specific member that you would like to use, then right-click and select **Edit Elemen**t.
- On the trim's Basic property page, click on the **Custom** option in the **Type** area.
- 8. Click the Select Profile button.
- 9. In the **Profiles** dialog, select the profile that you would like to use. You can also create a custom profile if you want.
- 10. Click **OK** in the **Profiles** dialog.

11. Click **OK** in any remaining dialogs. The wall's trim is updated to display the selected profile.

Corner Details

You can use the Corner Details tool to add quoins or boards to exterior wall corners. This is a great way to add architectural detail to your design.

Once inserted you can edit the properties of corner details, such as the dimensions of the quoins or boards.

Adding Corner Details to Walls

For architectural detail you can use the Corner Details tool to add quoins or boards to exterior wall corners. Just click on a wall to apply.

To add corner details to walls:

- Select Insert > Detailing > Corner Details, or click contended on the Building toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog panel, select the corner detail you would like to add. For quoins you can choose a staggered, mirrored or uniform pattern.
- Click on the exterior wall corner you would like to apply the detail to.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Editing Corner Details

For quoins and corner boards, you can control properties such as base height, total height, offset, and number of courses to achieve the exact result you want.

To edit corner detail properties:

- Click on the corner detail to select it. This may be easier to do in 3D view. For quoins, clicking on one quoin selects the whole set.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the properties as desired. Each type has different settings. Click on a detail type below to view a description of the settings.

Corner Boards

Width. The width of one board.

Thickness. The thickness of the board material.

Overall Height. The overall height of the board.

Base Height. The offset of the board from the bottom of the wall.

Staggered/Mirrored Quoins

Length. The length of the long quoin in the pattern.

Width. The length of the short quoin in the pattern.

Offset. The thickness of the quoin material.

Height. The height of one quoin.

Gap. The distance between quoins.

Base Height. The offset of the quoining from the bottom of the wall.

Number of Courses. The number of quoins running up each wall.

Overall Height. The overall height of the quoining according to your settings. This value cannot be edited.

Reverse Starter Course. Reverses how the quoining starts at the bottom of the wall. For example, if the starter course is a staggered long/short combination, it will be flipped to a short/long combination.

Uniform Quoins

Length. The length of a quoin.

Offset. The thickness of the quoin material.

Height. The height of one quoin.

Gap. The distance between quoins.

Base Height. The offset of the quoining from the bottom of the wall.

Number of Courses. The number of quoins running up each wall.

Overall Height. The overall height of the quoining according to your settings. This value cannot be edited.

Deleting Corner Details

You can remove corner details from a wall in a couple of easy steps.

To delete corner details:

 Click on the detail to select it. This may be easier in 3D view. For quoining, selecting one quoin selects the whole set. Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select **Delete**, or select **Edit >** Modify Elements > Delete.

Chapter 6: Footings, Columns & Members

Footings, Columns & Members

A structure's support system is an extremely important consideration during all phases of a design project. Support elements carry the load of walls, floors and other bearing elements in your model, and can also be a factor in the interior design of your home.

Envisioneer provides the tools to accurately place footings, and columns, and members such as beams in your design.

You can automatically attach strip footings to selected walls, or draw them manually if you prefer. You can also automatically insert mono footings beneath columns, or insert them manually anywhere in your design with a click of your mouse.

Columns and members come in a variety of shapes and sizes, and are inserted with point-and-click simplicity. You can customize them on the fly to achieve the precise result you want.

This chapter covers the insertion and editing of strip footings, mono footings, and columns and members.

Strip Footings

Using the Strip Footings Attached to Walls tool you can just click on a wall and a footing of your choice is automatically inserted underneath the wall. Footings automatically shape themselves to the bottom of walls, so if your wall bottoms are curved or stepped, your footings will be curved or stepped also. You can also insert strip footings manually using the Strip Footings by Picking Points tool. Use this tool when you need more precise control over your strip footing layout.

Once inserted you can move, stretch, lengthen/shorten, break or curve a strip footing, as well as edit its type or size.

Attaching Strip Footings to Walls

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Since foundation walls bear the weight of exterior walls above them, you need to insert footings beneath the foundation walls to transfer support for the vertical load.

Strip footings are easy to insert — just click on a wall and a footing is automatically inserted underneath the wall. Footings automatically shape themselves to the bottom of walls, so if your wall bottoms are curved or stepped, your footings will be curved or stepped also.

To insert strip footings under walls:

- Select Insert > Footings > Strip Footings Attached to Walls, or click the down arrow next to the Footings button . on the Building toolbar and select Strip Footings Attached to Walls.
- 2. In the catalog panel, select the footing you want to insert. Typically you would choose one that is wider than the wall you are attaching it to.
- Click on the wall you want to attach the footing to. The footing is inserted automatically. In plan view, strip footings are usually shown using a dashed line.
- 4. Continue inserting footings underneath each exterior foundation wall.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Inserting Strip Footings by Picking Points

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite You can insert strip footings manually by picking points in your drawing. Using this method you have precise control over the layout of your strip footings.

To insert strip footings by picking points:

- Select Insert > Footings > Strip Footings by Picking Points, or click the down arrow next to the Footings button . on the Building toolbar and select Strip Footings by Picking Points.
- 2. In the catalog panel, select the footing you want to insert.
- 3. Select the start point for the footing, noting that strip footings are drawn on center.
- 4. Select an end point for the footing. You can continue adding sections to the footing if you want.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Editing the Shape of a Strip Footing

Strip footing shapes include rectangular, tapered and filleted. You can also apply a custom profile to a footing.

To edit the footing shape:

- Select the footing whose properties you want to change. You can select multiple footings using Shift+click if you want.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Select the Basic tab, then click on the appropriate graphic in the *Type* area. There are several profiles to choose from. Each profile has a unique set of variables in the *Properties* pane that you can customize. If you would like to select or create a custom profile, scroll over and select *Custom*, then click the **Select Profile** button. For more information about creating custom profiles, see Creating Custom Profiles for Members, Columns and Footings.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Editing the Size of Strip Footings

You can edit the dimensions of a footing on the footing's Size property page.

To change the footing size:

- 1. Select the footing.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Strip Footing** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- 4. Edit the dimensions of the footing.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Moving/Stretching Strip Footings

When you move a strip footing, all footings attached to it move with it for a stretching effect. You can move strip footings by just clicking and dragging.

To move/stretch strip footings:

- Select the footing to move. You may need to make walls non-selectable to be able to select the footing.
- Position your pointer over the center grip to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag the footing to move it.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

Note: When you move a strip footing, it becomes detached from the wall. Therefore, if you move or stretch the wall, the footing will not go with it. If you want to re-attach a footing to a wall, you will need to delete the footing, then insert a new one.

Lengthening and Shortening Strip Footings

You can lengthen or shorten an individual footing by clicking and dragging one of the footing's ends.

To lengthen or shorten a footing:

- 1. Select the footing. A grip is displayed at each end.
- Hover your pointer over the end you want to stretch. The Lengthen cursor is displayed
 ⁺→⁺→⁺→⁺.
- 3. Click and drag the footing end until it has reached the desired length.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

Breaking Strip Footings

You can break a footing into two or more segments using the Break tool. The segments can then be edited individually.

To break a footing:

- 1. Click the footing to select it.
- Right-click in the drawing area and select Break, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Break.
- 3. Double-click the point where you want to break the footing.

Curving Strip Footings

If your strip footings are attached to walls, the footings will curve automatically if you curve the walls they are attached to. You can also curve footings independently if necessary using the Curve tool.

To curve a footing by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click the section of footing that you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the footing to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a footing to a selected point:

- 1. Click the section of footing that you want to curve.
- 2. Right-click in and select Curve, or select Edit> Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The footing automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Deleting Strip Footings

You can delete a strip footing in a couple of easy steps.

To delete strip footings:

- 1. Select the footing to delete. You can select multiple footings using Shift+click.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Mono Footings

Mono footings (short for *monolithic* footings), are sections of poured concrete used to support load-bearing columns or piers.

You can use the Mono Footings Attached to Columns tool to automatically insert a footing of your choice beneath a column in your design.

You can also use the Mono Footings by Picking Points tool to insert a mono footing anywhere in your drawing.

Once inserted you can move or rotate a footing, or edit its type or size.

Attaching Mono Footings to Columns

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Since support columns in your basement bear loads at a concentrated point, the load should be transferred to a proper footing.

Using the Mono Footings Attached to Columns tool you can insert a single mono footing beneath a selected column. All you have to do is select the column.

If you have multiple columns that require the same footing, you can automatically attach footings to all columns of the same type in one easy step.

To insert footings under columns:

- Select Insert > Footings > Mono Footings Attached to Columns, or click the down arrow next to the Footings button . on the Building toolbar and select Mono Footings Attached to Columns.
- 2. In the catalog panel, select the footing you want to insert. Typically you would choose one that is wider than the column you are attaching it to.
- 3. If you want to simultaneously insert the footing under multiple columns of the same type, right-click and select **Attach to all similar**.
- Click on a column to which you want to attach a footing. The footing is inserted automatically. If you selected **Attach to all sim**ilar in the previous step, a footing will be

automatically inserted under each similar column found on the current location.

5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Inserting Mono Footings by Picking Points

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert a variety of mono footings in your drawing with point-and-click simplicity.

To insert mono footings by picking points:

- Select Insert > Footings > Mono Footings by Picking Points, or click the down arrow next to the Footings button *R* on the Building toolbar and select Mono Footings by Picking Points.
- 2. In the catalog panel, select the footing you want to insert.
- 3. Position the footing where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Editing the Mono Footing Type

Mono footing types include rectangular, tapered, cylinder and cylinder tapered. The footing type determines the footing's general appearance.

To edit the footing type:

- Select the footing whose properties you want to change. You can select multiple footings using Shift+click if you want.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Select the Basic tab, then click on the appropriate graphic in the *Type* area.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Editing the Size of Mono Footings

You can edit the dimensions of a footing on the footing's Size property page.

To change the footing size:

- 1. Select the footing.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

- 3. In the **Mono Footing** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- 4. Edit the dimensions of the footing.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Moving Mono Footings

You can move a mono footing by clicking and dragging it.

To move a mono footing by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Select the footing to move.
- Position your pointer over the center grip to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag the footing to move it.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

Note: When you move a mono footing, it becomes detached from the column. Therefore, if you move the column, the footing will not go with it. If you want to re-attach a footing to a column, you will need to delete the footing, then insert a new one.

Rotating Mono Footings

You can rotate a mono footing by simply clicking and dragging it.

To rotate a mono footing:

- 1. Select the footing.
- Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. You may need to zoom in on the footing to be able to see the grips clearly.
- 3. Click and drag to rotate the footing.
- 4. When the footing is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Deleting Mono Footings

You can delete a mono footing in a couple of easy steps.

To delete mono footings:

- 1. Select the footing to remove. You can select multiple footings using Shift+click.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Columns

You can insert columns of various materials, shapes and sizes using the Columns tool. For example, if you have inserted an I-beam in the basement, you will need some posts beneath it to support it.

You can move a column by clicking and dragging it. Also, you can edit its shape, size or elevation to suit your design needs.

Inserting Columns

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Columns tool to insert a variety of wood, concrete, steel, brick and gypsum columns in various shapes and sizes. You may, for example, want to insert steel posts in the basement to support an Ibeam, or add decorative columns to a room to create a sense of elegance.

To insert a column:

- 1. Select **Insert > Columns**, or click **I I** on the Building toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog panel, select the column you want to insert.
- 3. Position the column where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Tip: You can apply different profiles to columns in their properties, and even create and apply your own custom profiles.

Editing the Shape of a Column

You can choose from a wide variety of column profiles, such as circular, rectangular, W-shape and Cshape, or create your own.

To edit the column type:

- Select the column whose properties you want to change. You can select multiple columns using Shift+click if you want.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Select the Basic tab, then click on the appropriate graphic in the *Type* area. There are several profiles to choose from. Each profile has a unique set of variables in the *Properties* pane

that you can customize. If you would like to select or create a custom profile, scroll over and select **Custom**, then click the **Select Profile** button. For more information about creating custom profiles, see Creating Custom Profiles.

4. Click **OK**.

Available Profiles for Members, Columns and Footings

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Below is a list of the available profiles that can be applied to members, columns and strip footings. Profiles are applied on the element's Basic property page. You can create and apply custom profiles as well.

	Rectangular Solid
	Rectangular Hollow
I	W Shaped
\bigcirc	Circle Solid
\bigcirc	Circle Hollow
Ľ	C-Shape
[]	Toe-to-Toe
JC	Back-to-Back
	Cold-Rolled C
C	Lip C
	Cold Angle
T	Double Angle
T	T-Shape
	U-Section
\bigcirc	D-Section



Editing the Dimensions of a Column

You can edit the dimensions of a column (e.g. height, width and depth) to suit your needs.

To edit the size of a column:

- 1. Click on the column to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the properties as desired. Different column shapes will have different dimension variables. Examples are *dy1*, *dx1* and *Height*.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Editing the Elevation of a Column

You can edit the elevation of a column by editing the Base Offset setting in its properties.

To edit the elevation of a column:

- 1. Click on the column to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the value in the **Base Offset** edit box. This is the offset of the base of the column from the floor.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Moving a Column

You can move a column by simply clicking and dragging it.

To move a column:

- 1. Click on the column to select it.
- 3. Click and drag the column to move it.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

Note: If you have a mono footing attached to the column, the footing will remain attached to the column and move with it.

Deleting a Column

You can remove a column in a couple of quick steps.

To delete a column:

- 1. Click on the column to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Members

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert both timber and steel members in your model to provide structural support where necessary. For example, you may want to insert an I-beam in the basement.

You can use the Members by Picking Points tool to insert a horizontal or sloping member. You can also

insert a member that matches the slope of an existing surface using the Members by Matching Plane tool.

You can use the Portal Frames tool to quickly create a span of portal frames, like what you would see in a barn structure.

Once you have inserted a member you can edit it in many ways. To display a menu of editing commands specific to members, simply select a member and then right-click your mouse. Selecting **Members Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to walls.

Inserting Members

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert both timber and steel members in your model to provide structural support where necessary. For example, you may want to insert an I-beam in the basement.

You can use the Members tool to insert a horizontal or sloping member.

You can also insert members using custom settings that you specify in advance. When you select the Advanced Members tool, you can specify settings such as slope, number of members, rotation, usage, and phase prior to inserting the member. You can insert a sloping member or a member that matches the slope of an existing surface using the Advanced Members tool.

You insert a member by picking a start point and end point on your screen. This gives you complete control over the length, position and direction of the member. You can choose to break members at walls, columns and other members if you want.

Tip: You can insert multiple members simultaneously by specifying a value in your member insertion settings prior to insertion. When you insert a single member you can use the Offset tool on the right-click menu to create multiple copies of a member in a set pattern. For example, you could array a floor joist to create a framed subfloor.

Inserting Members with Custom Settings

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the Advanced Members tool you can define a number of custom member settings prior to inserting the member. For example, you can predefine its slope, justification, rotation or offset, and attach a specific phase and usage if desired.

- Select Insert > Members > Advanced Members, or click the arrow next to the Building toolbar and select Advanced Members.
- 2. In the **Advanced Members** dialog, specify the settings for the member:

Slope Type: If sloping the member, choose the method for specifying the slope value. Choices are ? *in 12, 1 in ?, Degrees, Percent,* and *Select Plane*. For the *Select Plane* option, click the browse button in the **Select Plane** field that is created and then click on the surface whose plane you want to match. The name of the surface element will be reported in the **Slope Plane** field.

Slope Value. Enter the slope value according to the selected **Slope Type**. If the *Select Plane* option was selected, this field is labeled **Select Plane** instead.

Offset. To offset the member from the insertion line, enter an offset value here. By default, members are inserted on center.

Associate With. Associates the member with a specific type of element. The member will then be included when filtering that element in the View Filter dialog. Choose either None, Roof, Floor, Ceiling, Deck, or Structural Floor. If None is selected, the member will be filtered along with standard Members in the View Filter dialog.

Member. Click the browse button in this field to select a member from the catalog.

No. of Members. To insert multiple side-byside members simultaneously, enter the number of members that you wish to insert. **Reference Point**. By default, members insert with their topmost face at the insertion point. This face also serves as a baseline when rotating a member's profile. You can edit a member's insertion point so that it is at the center or bottom of the member.

Justification. The alignment of the member relative to the insertion line.

Rotation. Rotates the member about its insertion baseline. This ensures that the member is structurally correct and displayed properly in 2D and 3D.

Shift. Offsets the member from the picked start and end points. A positive or negative value can be entered depending on the desired shift direction.

Use usage from. To use the usage that is applied to the member in its properties, select *Member Properties*. To select a different usage from the Usages library, select *Library*.

Usage. If *Member Properties* was selected in the previous field, the member's current usage is reported in this field. If *Library* was selected, click the browse button in this field to select a usage from the Usages library.

Use phase from. To use the phase that is applied to the member in its properties, select *Member Properties*. To select a different phase from the Phases library, select *Library*.

Phase. If *Member Properties* was selected in the previous field, the member's current phase is reported in this field. If *Library* was selected, click the browse button in this field to select a phase from the Phases library.

- 3. Click Insert.
- 4. Proceed with inserting the member.

Tip: If you have already launched the standard Members tool and have selected a member in the catalog, you can activate the **Advanced Members** dialog from the right-click menu prior to inserting the member.

Inserting a Horizontal Member

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert a horizontal member in your drawing using the Members by Picking Points tool.

To create a horizontal member:

- Select Insert > Members > Members, or click
 f. f. on the Building toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the member you want to insert.
- 3. Select a start point for the member, then move your mouse in the direction you want the member to run.
- 4. Once the member is the desired length, click to select its end point. You can continue adding sections to the member if you want.
- 5. Right-click and select Finish.

Inserting a Sloping Member

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Advanced Members tool provides an easy way of inserting a sloping member in your drawing. When using the Advanced Members tool, you can predefine the slope value along with other settings before inserting the member.

Alternatively you can insert a sloping member with the Members tool. With this method you define the slope of the member by entering the heights of each end in the Commander.

To create a sloping member with the Advanced Members tool:

- Select Insert > Members > Advanced Members, or click the arrow next to # # on the Building toolbar and select Advanced Members.
- 2. In the Advanced Members dialog, select the desired method for specifying the slope value from the Slope Type drop box, then specify the desired slope value in the Slope Value field. By default, the start point of the member will be inserted at floor level. To offset the start point so that it is higher or lower, specify a value in the Offset field.
- 3. Click Insert.

4. Select the member's start point and end point, then right-click and select **Finish**.

To create a sloping member with the Members tool:

- 2. In the catalog, select the member you want to insert.
- 3. The **Base Height** edit box is displayed in the Commander. Type the desired height for the first end (start point) of the member, then press ENTER.
- 4. Select a start point for the member.
- 5. Move your mouse to stretch the member to the desired length, or enter a value in the Commander's **Distance** edit box.
- 6. Press the Tab key twice to move to the Commander's **Z** edit box.
- 7. Type the desired height for the other end of the member, then press ENTER.
- 8. You can continue adding segments to the member if you want.
- 9. When the member is complete, right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: If you want to insert a member that matches the slope of an existing surface, choose **Select Plane** from the **Slope Type** drop box when specifying the member's insertion settings. See Inserting a Member by Matching a Plane.

Inserting a Member by Matching a Plane

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Advanced Members tool to insert a member that matches the plane of an existing roof, floor or ceiling surface.

To insert a member by matching a plane:

toolbar and select Advanced Members .

- 2. In the **Advanced Members** dialog, click the **Slope Type** drop box and choose **Select Plane**.
- 3. Click in the newly created **Select Plane** field, then click the browse button that appears in the field. This takes you out to your drawing.
- 4. Click on the edge of the surface whose plane you want to match the member to. (Selecting the surface defines the plane.) The name of the surface is displayed in the **Select Plane** field in the **Advanced Members** dialog.
- 5. Select a member type and specify any other settings that you want the member to have.
- 6. Click Insert.
- Select a start point for the member, then move your mouse in the direction you want the member to run. Note that the member does not need to be drawn on the surface. It can be anywhere in space.
- Once the member is the desired length, click to select its end point. You can continue adding sections to the member if you want.
- 9. Right-click and select Finish.

Note: You can use the Adjust to Plane tool on the right-click menu to match any existing member to the slope of an existing surface.

Inserting Multiple Members Simultaneously

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Prior to inserting a member you can specify that you want to insert multiple copies of the member at the same time. For example, you may want to do this in areas where a member needs to be doubled or tripled for extra stability.

To insert multiple members simultaneously:

- Select Insert > Members > Advanced Members, or click the arrow next to the Building toolbar and select Advanced Members.
- 2. In the **Member Insertion Options** dialog, specify the desired number of members to insert

in the **No. of Members** edit box. Members will be inserted side by side. Specify any other desired settings, such as the member type.

- 3. Click Insert.
- 4. Proceed with inserting the members. As you draw, the specified number of members are created.

Inserting Trusses and Portal Frames

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use a **Timber Frames** tool to add trusses or portal frames to your model.

Truss types include the scissor truss, tray truss, and attic truss.

A portal frame is a simple structure comprising rafters connected to a pair of columns. Portal frame construction is typically found in single-story or lowrise structures with large open spaces, such as barns and warehouses.

When inserting timber frames, you can insert a single frame, or a series of frames that span a specified distance. The catalog contains a variety of trusses and portal frames that you can customize to suit your needs.

Note: You can use the Truss Run tool to insert truss profiles under an existing roof surface.

To insert a series of trusses or portal frames:

- Select Insert > Members > Timber Frames > Insert Timber Frames, or click the down arrow next to the Members button : : : : on the Building toolbar and select Insert Timber Frames.
- 2. In the catalog panel, select the truss or portal frame that you would like to insert. If you would like to specify the spacing between frames, double-click the element in the catalog, then specify the spacing properties in the **Timber Framing (Catalog)** dialog. You can specify the select **Maximum Spacing** between frames, and whether or not they need to be evenly spaced. You can also spe-

cify the **Support Height** of the frames, and various sizing and design settings.

3. Select an insertion point for the first frame, then select a second point to define the length of the span. Frames will be inserted along this span at the spacing specified in the element's properties.



4. Initially, the frames will be centered on the insertion line. To keep them centered on the insertion line, press Enter, or right-click and select **Center**. To offset the frames to either side of the insertion line, move your cursor in the desired direction until the frames have flipped to that side of the insertion line, then click to anchor them in place. Or, right-click and select either **Left** ort **Right**.



To insert a single truss or portal frame:

- Select Insert > Members > Timber Frames > Insert Single Timber Frame, or click the down arrow next to the Members button .
 on the Building toolbar and select Insert Single Timber Frame.
- 2. In the catalog panel, select the truss or portal frame that you would like to insert.
- 3. Select two points to define the length of the frame.

Editing Truss and Portal Frame Properties

Building Essentials | Construction Suite Truss and portal frame elements are inserted using Timber Frames tools. You can customize the properties of trusses and portal frames in the catalog, or ones that you have already inserted. For example, you may want to edit the support height of the element, the spacing between frames, or the length of

To edit the properties of truss or portal frame properties in the catalog, double-click the element in the catalog, or right-click and select **Edit Element**.

members that compose the truss or frame.

To edit the properties of an inserted timber frame element, select the element, then right-click and select **Properties**.

Properties are defined on two tabs in the **Timber Framing** dialog:

General tab:

Type. Choose either *Cathedral Truss, Attic Truss, Half Truss, Portal Frame, Fink Truss,* or *Flat Truss*to define the general shape and layout of the element.



Support Height. The height at which the bottom chord sits. For a portal frame, this also determines how long the lower vertical supports will be.

Maximum Spacing. The maximum distance that can exist between frames when inserted as a series (using *Insert Timber Frames*).

Space Evenly. If enabled, frames inserted in a series will be evenly spaced across the span, meaning that the distance between frames may be less than the Maximum Spacing value. If disabled, the tool will insert frames at the maximum spacing until it runs out of space within the specified span. This could result in a gap at the end of the span, but will maintain the maximum spacing value between inserted frames.

Bottom Chord Position. I.

a. The length of the top chord.

a1 - Slope value. The pitch of the top chord measured using the Slope Type method selected below.

Slope Type. The method used to measure the pitch of the top chord. Choose from Degrees, ? in 12, 1 in ?, or Percent.

b. The length of the bottom chord.

Depending on the type chosen, additional properties (such as **c** and **d**) may be available. Use the diagram as a guide when specifying these properties.

Specify Framing. Click to select the desired member type for the truss/frame members.

Detail tab:

Member Groups

For each member type that makes up the truss or portal frame (e.g. Top Chord, Bottom Chord, Bracing), you can specify the following parameters:

Use member from. To use the Framing Member assigned to the element on the General property page, select **Properties**. To use a specific member from the member library, select **Member Library**, then make a selection from the **Catalog Access** dialog. The latter option overrides the Framing Member selection on the General property page.

Name. If *Properties* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Name field displays a generic description, 'Timber Frame Member', indicating that the member to be used is the one selected on the element's General property page. If *Member Library* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays the member type to be used (as selected from the Member library). To select a different member, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Catalog Access** dialog.

Rotation. The rotation of the member about its center line (core). Click the down arrow in this field to select the angle of rotation $(0^{\circ}, 90^{\circ}, 180^{\circ} \text{ or } 270^{\circ})$.

Number of Members. Specify the number of members of this type to include: 1 or 2.

Usage. What the member will be used for. Usages can be used as sort keys in estimates and reports. To select a usage, click in this field and then click **____** to display the **Usages** library.

Phase. The building stage or process in which this member will be used. Phases can be used as sort keys in estimates and quantity reports. To select a phase, click in this field and then click **____** to display the **Phases** library.

Top Extension. The distance the inner webbing members (if present) project into the top chord.

Bottom Extension. The distance the inner webbing members (if present) project into the bottom chord.

Bottom Cut. Specify how the member ends are cut by selecting either *Square*, *Flush*, or *Plumb*.

Individual Members

For individual members within each member group, you can specify the following parameters:

Name. The name of the member as it appears in the left pane.

Offset from centerline. The offset of the member from the centerline of the frame. A positive value brings it forward, while a negative value pushes it toward the back.

Editing a Member's Insertion Reference Point

By default, members insert with their topmost face at the insertion point. This face also serves as a baseline when rotating a member's profile. You can edit a member's insertion point so that it is at the center or bottom of the member (see illustration). You can do this before or after inserting a member.



To edit a member's insertion reference point:

- 1. Select the member.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Members** dialog, select the *Details* tab.
- In the *Insertion Reference* area, select either the top, center or bottom **Reference Point**.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Moving a Member

You can move a member easily by clicking and dragging it.

To move a member:

- 1. Click on the member to select it.
- 3. Click and drag to move the member where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Note: If other members are attached to the member you are moving, they will remain attached and stretch along with the move.

Rotating a Member in the 2D Plane

You can rotate a member along the 2D (X/Y) plane using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a member:

- 1. Select the member.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Click on the point you want to rotate around, then move your mouse to rotate the member around the selected point.
- 4. When the member is at the desired rotation, click to finish.

Rotating a Member's Profile

Editing a member's Profile Rotation setting rotates the member about its insertion baseline. This ensures that your members are structurally correct and displayed properly in 2D and 3D.

To rotate a member's profile:

- 1. Select the member.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Members** dialog, select the *Details* tab.
- 4. In the *Insertion Reference* area, edit the rotation in the **Profile Rotation** edit box.



5. Click **OK**.

Lengthening or Shortening a Member

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can lengthen or shorten a member by clicking and dragging one of its end points. Note that if your member has multiple segments, you can lengthen/shorten the individual segments.

To lengthen or shorten a member:

- 1. Select the member. A grip is displayed at each end of the member.
- Hover your pointer over the end you want to stretch. The Lengthen cursor is displayed
 ⁺→⁺→⁺→⁺.
- Click and drag to stretch the member to the desired length, then release your mouse button.

Extending/Trimming Members to a Cutting Edge

You can use the Lengthen to Fence tool to lengthen or shorten multiple members to a cutting edge that you define.

To extend/trim members to a cutting edge:

- Select the members that you want to extend/trim. The quickest way to select a group of members is to click and drag a selection window through them.
- With the members selected, right-click and select Lengthen to Fence, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Lengthen to Fence.
- 3. Select a start point for the cutting edge, then select the end point. The cutting edge is simply a line to which the ends of members will be extended or trimmed.



Note: The member end that is closest to the cutting edge will be the end that is extended/trimmed.

Breaking a Member

You can use the Break tool to divide a member into independent segments. These segments can then be edited individually if desired.

To break a member:

- 1. Select the member.
- Right-click and select Break, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Break.
- 3. Click the point on the selected member where you want to break it. The member is automatically broken into two segments.

Breaking Members at Other Elements

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can force a member to break at the center line of walls, columns, and other members.

To break members at other elements:

- 1. Select the member.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Members** dialog, select the Details tab.
- Enable the appropriate check boxes Break at Walls, Break at Columns or Break at Members. When a check box is enabled, the member will be broken when it encounters that element.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Members** dialog.
- Adjust the member slightly by stretching or moving it. This forces the break into place, and updates the grip display.

Offsetting a Member

Building Essentials | Construction Suite You can use the Offset tool to offset a member a set number of times in a set direction.

To offset a member:

- 1. Select the member.
- Right-click and select Offset, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Offset.

- In the Offset dialog, type the distance you want to offset the member in the Offset Distance edit box.
- 4. In the **Number of Copies** edit box, type the number of copies you want to create, or use the arrow keys to increase or decrease the number.
- 5. Click **OK**.
- 6. Click on the side you want to offset to. The member is offset.

Adjusting a Member to a Plane

You can use the Adjust to Plane tool to match any member to the slope an existing roof, floor or ceiling surface.

To adjust a member to a plane:

- 1. Select the member.
- Right-click and select Adjust to Plane, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Adjust to Plane.
- In the Adjust to Plane dialog, click in the Select Plane field, then click the browse button that appears in the field. This takes you out to your drawing.
- 4. Click on the edge of the surface whose plane you want to match the member to. (Selecting the surface defines the plane.) The name of the surface is displayed in the **Select Plane** field.
- 5. To offset the member vertically from its current position, enter a value in the **Offset** field.
- 6. Click **OK**. The member takes on the slope of the selected plane.

Extending a Member to a Plane

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Extend to Plane tool to automatically extend a member to the plane of a selected surface. The end of the member will be mitered accordingly.

To extend a member to a plane:

- 1. Click on the member, then right-click and select **Extend to Plane**.
- 2. Click on the surface whose plane you want to extend the member to.

3. Click on the member end that you want to extend. The member is automatically extended to the selected plane.

Raising or Lowering a Member

You can raise or lower a member using the Elevate tool on the member's right-click menu.

To edit the elevation of a member:

- 1. Select the member whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the member.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the bottom of the member above the floor.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the member looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the member in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Editing the Shape of a Member

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can choose from a wide variety of member shapes, or create your own profile.

To edit a member's shape:

- 1. Select the member.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Members** dialog, click on the appropriate graphic in the *Type* area. There are several profiles to choose from. Each profile has a unique set of variables in the *Properties* pane that you can customize. If you would like to select or create a custom profile, scroll over and select *Custom*, then click the **Select Profile** button. For more information about creating custom profiles, see Creating Custom Profiles for Members, Columns and Footings.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Available Profiles for Members, Columns and Footings

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Below is a list of the available profiles that can be applied to members, columns and strip footings. Profiles are applied on the element's Basic property page. You can create and apply custom profiles as well.

	Rectangular Solid
	Rectangular Hollow
I	W Shaped
\bigcirc	Circle Solid
\bigcirc	Circle Hollow
Ľ	C-Shape
$\begin{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}$	Toe-to-Toe
][Back-to-Back
	Cold-Rolled C
C	Lip C
	Cold Angle
T	Double Angle
T	T-Shape
\square	U-Section
V	D-Section
Ľ	Gutter
\Box	Tapered 1
\square	Tapered 2
\checkmark	Tapered 3



Editing the Dimensions of a Member

You can edit the dimensions of a member (e.g. width and depth) to suit your needs.

To edit the dimensions of a member:

- 1. Select the member.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the dimensions in the *Properties* window. The variables in this window vary depending on the shape chosen. Clicking on a dimension variable in the dimensioned graphic automatically highlights the corresponding dimension in the *Properties* window, and vice versa.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Defining the Ends of a Member

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can specify whether you want the ends of a member to be plumb or square. Each end can be different.

To define the ends of a member:

- 1. Select the member.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Members** dialog, select the *Details* tab.
- In the *End Conditions* area, select either **Plumb** or **Square** for each end of the member.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Mitering Members

You can specify whether or not you want each end of a member to miter when it is connected to another member. By default most members in the catalog (except gutters) are not set to miter.

To miter members:

- $1. \hspace{0.1in} Select \hspace{0.1in} the \hspace{0.1in} member(s) \hspace{0.1in} that \hspace{0.1in} you \hspace{0.1in} want \hspace{0.1in} to \hspace{0.1in} miter.$
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Members** dialog, select the **Details** tab.
- 4. In the *End Conditions* area, enable the **Miter if Possible** check box for each end that you want to miter.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Note: Members that you want to miter must be on the same plane, and must be connected (i.e. share a node).

Note: In order for two members to miter, both must have the Miter if Possible option enabled. Currently you can only miter two members. In a situation where there are three members or more, you need to disable the Miter if Possible option for the third member if you want the other two to be mitered.

Specifying Purchased Lengths for Members and Columns

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Members and columns can be reported in terms of **total linear length**, or in **purchased lengths** in the quantity report. Purchased lengths are the lengths of lumber you would actually buy at the lumber yard.

If you want to use purchased lengths in your quantity report, you must specify that you want to use purchased lengths in your report template (see Specifying How Members and Columns are Reported in the Quantity Report on page 451), and define purchased lengths on a member or column's Purchased Items property page. Otherwise, members and columns are reported in terms of total linear length. For example, if you have 1000 feet worth of 2" x 6" floor joists in your model, the cut list will report 1000 feet of 2" x 6" floor joists if you don't have purchased lengths specified for 2" x 6" floor joists in your model. If, however, you specify an 8', 10' and 12' purchased length for the floor joist members, the cut list will report a certain number of 8' floor joists, a certain number of 10' floor joists, etc. whatever is needed to account for that 1000 feet of floor joist material.

The **Purchased Items** property page also has a direct relationship with the Cut Down Long Members option on a report template's Cut List Optimization page. If this option is enabled, members that exceed the longest purchased length will be reported using a combination of cut lengths specified on a member's **Purchased Items** property page.

For example, you might have 40' of top plate on one wall, but you likely wouldn't buy a 40' member. It would be more realistic to buy several smaller lengths to make up that 40' of top plate.

To specify purchased lengths for a member or column:

 To specify purchased lengths for wall, floor, ceiling or surface members in your drawing, select the element in your drawing, then right-click and select **Properties**. For walls, click the **Framing member** button in the properties dialog. For floors, ceilings, roofs and surfaces, click the **Specify Framing** button in the properties dialog. In the framing dialog, select the member to edit, then click **Select**. In the **Catalog Access** dialog, right-click the member to edit and select **Edit Element**.

To specify cut lengths for a member or column in the catalog, double-click the element in the catalog panel, or select it in the catalog panel and then right-click and select **Edit Element**. You can also open the Element Manager, then select the member or column that you want to edit.

To specify cut lengths for members in an existing deck, click on the edge of the deck to select it, then right-click and select

Properties. In the **Decks** dialog, select the Frame tab. Then, click the **Select** button in the *Joists* or *Beams* area. Note that it is not currently possible to specify cut lengths for deck boards (planking). In the **Catalog Access** dialog, right-click the member to edit and select **Edit Element**.

 In the properties dialog, select the **Purchased Items** tab. All cut lengths currently defined for the item are displayed.

F Members		
Name: 2x4x Plate		
Basic Purchased Items Details Apr	pearance Qu	antity
Add Edit Delete	2x4x8	army.
2x4x8 2x4x10 2x4x12 2x4x14 2x4x16 2x4x16 2x4x18 2x4x20	Length: Price: Part No: Units:	8'-0" \$0.00 248F EA
Clear All	Used for any	usage.
		OK

Members Name: 2x4x Plate Basic Purchased Items Details Add Edt Delete 2x4x81 2x4x10 2x4x12 2x4x16 2x4x18 2x4x20	Autoname , pearance Quantity 2x4x8 Length: 8'-0" Price: \$0.00 Part No: 248F Units: EA	
2x4x20		
Clear All	Used for any usage.	
	OK Cancel]

- 3. To delete a purchased length from the list, select it and then click **Delete**. To delete all purchased lengths from the list, click **Clear All**.
- To add a purchased length to the list, click
 Add. To edit an existing purchased length, select it in the list, then click Edit.
- 5. Define the properties of the purchased length in the **Define Purchased Member** dialog.

tem		
۶F		
er Use:		
5/8''	Add Usag	
Use this Length for:		
e usages: e except these:		
chased length as		
	rem PF er Use: 5/8'' or: usages: except these: and and and and and and and and and and	

- Specify a name for the purchased length as you would like it to appear in your estimate. If you want to name it automatically using a pre-defined naming convention, click the **Autoname** button. (See *Using Automatic Name Generation* on page 607.)
- Enter the desired length for the item in the Length edit box.

8. In the *Purchased Member Use* area, specify which usages the purchased length can be used for. (Usages can be used as sort keys in estimates and quotes.)

If the purchased length can be used for any usage, enable the **All usages** radio button. If you want the purchased length to be used for certain usages only, enable the **Only these usages** radio button, then Click

Add Usage... Add Usage... to select the desired usages from the **Usages** library. When you select a usage in the library, it is added to the usage list in the

Define Purchased Items dialog.

If the purchased length can be used for most usages with some exceptions, enable the **Any usage except these** radio button, then click

Add Usage... Add Usage... to

select the usages that you do not want the purchased length to be used for. When you select a usage in the **Usages** library it is added to the usage list.

To delete a usage from the usage list, select it

and then click Delete Usage

Delete Usage

9. In the *Quantity* area, specify the *Price*, *Part Number* and *Unit of Measure* for the member. This information may appear in estimates and quotes, and can be used to sort information in reports.

Tip: Appending *-TALLY* to a part number marks it as a tally item in Quote Generator.

- 10. Once you have defined the purchased length, click **OK** in the **Define Purchased Items** dialog.
- 11. Once you have defined all desired purchased lengths for the member, click **OK** in the properties dialog.

Note: If you want to include cut lengths for a member type in your Quantity Report, enable the *Include Cut Lengths* option in the member's properties. See *Editing the Quantitative Properties of Elements* on page 440.

Converting Framing to Members

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When roofs, floors, ceilings and surfaces are created, their framing cannot be selected for editing, and does not appear in member schedules. Using the Convert Framing to Members tool you can instantly convert a surface's framing into actual members that can be selected, edited, and quantified in schedules.

To convert framing to members:

- Select Insert > Members > Convert Framing to Members, or click the down arrow next to the Members button toolbar and select Convert Framing to Members.
- 2. Select the roof, floor, ceiling or surface whose framing you want to convert. If you are in 2D plan view, click on the edge of the element. If you are in 3D, click anywhere on the surface of the element. (**Note**: Automatic floors can only be selected in 3D.)

The framing is automatically converted.

3. Right-click and select Finish.

Displaying a Member as a Line in 2D

You can display selected members as lines in 2D to simplify the view.

- 1. Select the member in your drawing or in the catalog.
- 2. In the **Members** dialog, select the **Details** tab.
- 3. Enable the **Render in 2D as line** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Member

You can delete a member in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a member:

- Select the member. If the member has multiple segments you can Shift+click to select all the segments you want to remove.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Chapter 7: Doors, Windows & Openings

Doors, Windows & Openings

Once you've drawn walls, you can insert a variety of doors, windows and openings in them to create the exact design you want. Like all elements in Envisioneer, doors, windows and openings are intelligent. They know that they can only be inserted in walls. As soon as your pointer gets close to a wall, they snap into place. All you have to do is position it where you want it along the wall, then click to insert it.

Dimensions are displayed as you are positioning the element so you can get the precise placement you want. Even though doors, windows and openings automatically become associated with the walls they are inserted in, you can edit them independently if you want.

Doors

There are various types of doors in the catalog that you can insert in your drawing, including hinged, bifold, pocket, sliding glass and garage doors. To insert a door with the Doors tool, just position the door with your pointer, and then click to insert it. You can use the on-screen dimensions to position the door in the wall, center the door automatically (right-click and select *Center on Wall*), or define a specific offset distance (right-click and select *Enter insertion offset*). By default, the on-screen dimensions that appear when inserting a door measure from the edges of the door. If you prefer you can specify that you want the dimensions to measure to the center of the door by editing your program settings. Doors can be edited in a number of different ways, independently of the walls that contain them. To display a menu of door editing commands, simply select a door and then right-click your mouse. Selecting **Doors Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to doors.

Inserting Doors

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The catalog contains a wide variety of doors for you to insert, including hinged, bi-fold, pocket, sliding glass and garage doors. You can point and click to insert a door anywhere inside a wall, automatically center the door in the wall, or offset the door a specific distance from the end of the wall.

Doors are inserted at floor level. You can raise or lower a door after you have inserted it if you need to. **To insert a door:**

1. Make sure the location you want to insert doors on is the current location in the build-

- ing locations drop box.
 2. Select Insert > Doors, or click II II on the
- Building toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog, select the door you want to insert.
- If you want the door to be automatically centered on the wall, right-click and select Center on wall. Go to step 6.
- If you want to offset the door a specific distance from the end of the wall, right-click and select Enter insertion offset. Enter the offset distance in the Enter insertion offset dialog, then click OK.
- 6. Position the door in the receiving wall. If you are using an insertion offset, position the door close to the end you want to offset it from. The door will snap inside the wall. Dimensions are displayed that show you the distance on either side of the door.
- 7. With your door positioned where you want it, click to insert it.
- 8. Right-click and select Finish.

Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Center

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the on-screen dimensions that appear when inserting doors, windows and openings measure from the edges of the opening object. The same applies when you insert openings using an offset. If you prefer you can measure to center when inserting openings.

To insert doors, windows and openings to center:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Opening Placement* area, select **Dimen**sion to Center.
- 4. Click OK.

To insert the door, window or opening to the center of a wall:

1. Select the item from the catalog, move the cursor onto the drawing screen area, right click and select **Center on wall**.

Once a door, window or opening is in a wall, you can recenter it.

1. Select the item in the project. Right click and select **Center on wall**.

Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Edge

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have changed your program settings so that door, window and wall openings insert to center, you can switch it back to the default method where openings are measured from the edges of the opening.

To insert doors, windows and openings to the edge of the opening:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.

- 3. In the *Opening Placement* area, select **Dimension to Edge**.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Moving a Door

You can move a door by clicking and dragging it inside the wall, or by editing the dynamic dimensions on either side of the door. You can move a door in both 2D and 3D.

To move a door by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the door to select it.
- 2. Click and drag the door to move it, then release your mouse button. If you are moving a door in 3D, make sure that you select the center grip.

To move a door by editing dimensions:

- 1. Click on the door. Dynamic dimensions appear on either side of the door.
- 2. Click on the dimension you want to edit.
- 3. In the **Edit Dimension** dialog, enter the new value, then press **Enter** or click **OK**. The door position updates automatically.

Flipping a Door

You can use the Flip Opening tool to flip an entire door around. If the door originally opened out, it now opens in; if it was hinged on the left, it is now hinged on the right (and vice versa).

To flip a door:

- 1. Click the door to select it.
- Right-click in the drawing area and select Flip Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Flip Opening.

Flipping a Door Swing

Use the Flip Swing tool to flip only the swing of a door. The door will be hinged on the opposite side, but it will still open in the same direction, either in or out.

To flip a door swing:

- 1. Click the door to select it.
- Right-click in the drawing area and select Flip Swing, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Flip Swing.

Editing Door Swing Properties

You can specify the direction of a door swing as well as the extent of the swing in 2D and 3D.

To edit door swing properties:

- 1. Select the door whose swing properties you want to change.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Doors** dialog, edit the settings in the *Swing* area of the Basic page.

Swing Type. Choose from *Left, Right* or *Double*. A door with a left door swing will have its hinges on the right.

Operable Side. Choose from *Left*, *Right* or *Double*. This is for double doors only. The door that is inoperable will be closed in all views.

3D % **Open**. How much the door is shown swung open in 3D view. By default, doors are shown closed in 3D view.

2D % Open. How much the door is swung open in 2D plan view.

4. Click **OK**.

Tip: You can quickly flip a door swing using the Flip Swing tool on the right-click menu.

Tip: To specify how door swing direction is represented in your region, see *Specifying the Definition of a Right-hand vs Left-hand Door* on page 47.

Specifying the Definition of a Right-hand vs Left-hand Door

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The concept of a right-hand vs left-hand door differs around the world.

To specify how the door swing direction is defined in your region:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Building Aids** in the left column.

3. In the *Door Swing Direction* area, select the option that represents the way you typically reference right-hand and left-hand doors:



4. Click **OK**.

Raising or Lowering a Door

You can raise or lower a door in a wall using the Elevate tool on the door's right-click menu. You may, for example, want to lower your garage door if your ground floor sits above the ground.

To raise or lower a door:

- 1. Select the door whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value currently shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the door above or below the floor level.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the door base above the floor. You can enter a negative value to move the door down.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the door looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the door in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Editing Door Types

Door types include hinged, bi-fold, pocket, face slider, track slider, fold-up, tilt, roller, and pivot. You can edit a door's type on the door's Basic property page.

To edit a door type:

- 1. Select the door whose properties you want to change.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Doors** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- 4. In the *Type* area, click on the desired door type to select it.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Editing the Size of a Door

You can edit the height or width of a door.

To edit the size of a door:

- 1. Select the door whose size you want to change.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Doors** dialog, enter the desired values in the **Height** and **Width** edit boxes on the Basic page.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Tip: You can also stretch a door opening dynamically by clicking and dragging its side grips if displayed. See Stretching Doors, Windows and Openings for more information.

Stretching Doors, Windows and Openings

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If the **Stretch Openings** option is enabled in your Program Settings, grips will appear at the edges of doors, windows and openings when you select them. In 2D you can then dynamically stretch an opening to make it narrower or wider. In 3D view you can stretch it both vertically and horizontally. An additional setting lets you specify that you want the opening to be automatically renamed when its size changes.

To enable the stretching of openings:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. Check the **Enable** box in the **Stretch Open-***ings* area.
- 4. If you want openings to be automatically renamed according to their new size, enable the **Auto-rename Openings** check box. Note that this will also override any custom names that you have defined.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Editing the Shape of a Door

A door can be rectangular, arched or apexed. Note that you can only change the shape of a hinged door type.

To edit the shape of a door:

- 1. Select the door whose shape you want to change.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Doors** dialog, select either *Rectangular*, *Arched* or *Apexed* from the **Shape** drop box.
- 4. Edit the door's size properties if needed.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Displaying a Highlite or Sidelites on a Door

A sidelite is a glass panel set on one or both sides of a door (usually an entry door). A highlite is a glass panel above a door. You can choose which lites which you want to display.

To display lites on a door:

- 1. Select the door.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Doors** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- 4. To display a highlite over the door, enable the **Display Highlite** check box.
- 5. To display a sidelite on the left side of the door, enable the **Display Left Sidelite** check box.

- To display a sidelite on the right side of the door, enable the **Display Right Sidelite** check box.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Editing a Door's Sidelites and Highlites

A sidelite is a glass panel set on one or both sides of a door (usually an entry door). A highlite is a glass panel above a door. You can create a custom configuration of sidelites and/or highlights for a door.

To edit sidelites and highlites:

- 1. Select the door whose properties you want to change.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Doors** dialog, select the Lites tab.
- 4. In the *Type* window, select the lite you want to specify settings for. Note that the lite must be enabled on the Basic page before you can edit it.
- 5. To select a specific window type for the currently selected lite, click on the appropriate graphic in the *Type* area.
- 6. Edit the dimensions of the lite in the *Properties* area if desired. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the sidelite/highlite graphic, and vice versa.
 Shape. Choose from *Rectangle, Arched* or *Trapezoid*.

(highlite) **Adjust Width**. Selecting *Opening* adjusts the width of the highlite to match the width of the opening (including any sidelites). Selecting *Door* adjusts the width of the highlite to match the width of the door (excluding any sidelites). Selecting *User Defined* lets you specify a precise width for the highlite in the **Width** edit box.

Width. The total width of the lite.

(sidelites) Adjust Height to Door.

Automatically adjusts the height of a sidelite to match the height of the door.

Height. The overall height of the lite.

of Horizontal Panels. The number of panels across the lite. If you specify more than one panel, vertical dividers are added inside the lite's frame.

of Vertical Panels. The number of panels running vertically along the lite. If you specify more than one panel, horizontal dividers are added inside the lite's frame.

of Horizontal Panes. The number of panes of glass across each panel.

of Vertical Panes. The number of panes of glass running vertically along each panel.

Editing a Door's Energy Properties

The rate of heat loss through a door is indicated in terms of the U-factor. You can specify a door's Ufactor, and whether or not you want to include it in energy calculations.

To edit a door's energy properties:

- 1. Select the door.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Doors** dialog, select the **Basic** tab.
- 4. To include the U-factor in calculations when exporting the model to building energy software, enable the **Include in Calculations** check box in the **Energy** area.
- To specify the U-factor, edit the value in the U-Factor edit box.

To display the U-factor in door schedules, you need to add a U-Factor field to the door schedule layout. See *Defining the Field Layout of a Schedule* on page 525.

Editing a Door's Leaf

You can choose from a variety of door leaf types and change the thickness of the leaf.

To edit a door's leaf:

- 1. Select the door whose properties you want to change.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Doors** dialog, select the Leaf tab.
- 4. In the *Type* area, click on the leaf type you want. If you would like to use a custom door

leaf that has been imported into the Door Leafs library, select the **Custom** type, then select the desired leaf from the library.

- 5. If you want to change the thickness of the leaf, enter the thickness in the **Leaf Depth** edit box.
- 6. Each door leaf type has its own set of dimensions that you can define. These dimensions vary according to how many panels the leaf has. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the door leaf graphic, and vice versa.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Editing Door Details

You can specify precise dimensions and offsets for the door frame, sash, mullions and transoms.

To edit door details:

- 1. Select the door whose properties you want to change.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Doors** dialog, select the Details tab.
- 4. Edit the dimensions as desired.

Frame

Depth. The depth of the frame members as seen from an overhead view.

Width. The width of the frame members as seen from an overhead view.

Offset. The offset of the door frame from the wall face.

Sash

Depth. The depth of sash members (sidelite/highlite frame) as seen from an overhead view.

Width. The width of sash members as seen from an overhead view.

Offset. The offset of the sash from the front of the door frame, i.e. how far back it sits in the door frame.

Mullion

Vertical Separation. If a lite has two or more panels running across it, this adds vertical dividers between the panels.

Horizontal Separation. If a lite has two or more stacked panels, this adds horizontal dividers between them.

Depth. The front-to-back thickness of the mullion as seen from an overhead view.

Width. The width (left-to-right distance) of the mullion as seen from an overhead view. **Transom**

Depth. The front-to-back thickness of the transom member as seen from an overhead view. The transom is the member between the door and the sidelite or highlite frame.

Width. The width of the transom as seen from an overhead view.

5. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Door Opening

By default, door openings include trim around them if a trim member is specified for openings in the wall's Trim properties. You can turn opening trim on or off for individual door openings.

To control the display of trim around a door:

- Select the door, then right-click and select Properties.
- In the **Doors** dialog, enable or disable the Include Opening Trim check box. For a garage door you can display or hide a door sill using the Include Sill option.
- 3. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Door

You can delete a door with a couple of mouse clicks.

To delete a door:

- 1. Select the door to delete. To select multiple doors, use Shift+click.
- Click the Delete button on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Corner Doors

Many modern designs incorporate corner doors. There are 2 different corner door construction methods that work with either a hinged door or a track sliding door.

To combine 2 doors into one corner door unit:

1. Left click to select an inserted door and then holding down the shift key, left click to select the other door on the perpendicular wall.

- 2. Right click and select Create Corner Door.
- 3. A dialog box will appear with two selections:



The first option *Glass or Leaf* connects the door at the corner, the other option, *Frame*, connects the frames at the corner by inserting a post.

4. Select an option, the door is automatically connected at the corner.

5. With the door still selected, right click, and select **Properties**.

6. The same dialog box will appear, and you can change the connection type by selecting an alternate option.

With the door still selected, right click, and select **Break** and the doors will break back into two separate doors.

Windows

The catalog contains a variety of windows that you can insert in your drawing, including fixed, casement, double casement, hopper, awning, sliding, doublehung, single-hung, bay, bow and louvered windows. To insert a window with the Windows tool, just position the window with your pointer, and then click to insert it. You can use the on-screen dimensions to position the window in the wall, center the window automatically (right-click and select *Center on Wall*), or define a specific offset distance (right-click and select *Enter insertion offset*).

By default, the on-screen dimensions that appear when inserting a window measure from the edges of the window. If you prefer you can specify that you want the dimensions to measure to the center of the window by editing your program settings.

Windows can be edited in a number of different ways, independently of the walls that contain them. To display a menu of window editing commands, simply select a window and then right-click your mouse. Selecting **Windows Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to windows.

Inserting Windows

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The catalog contains a wide variety of windows for you to insert, including fixed, casement, double casement, hopper, awning, sliding, double-hung, single-hung, bay, bow and louvered windows.

You can point and click to insert a window anywhere in a wall, automatically center the window on the wall, or offset the window a specific distance from the end of the wall.

Windows are inserted at the Head Height defined for the building location you insert the window on. You can raise or lower a window after you have inserted it if you need to.

To insert a window:

- Make sure the location you want to insert windows on is the current location in the building locations drop box.
- 2. Select **Insert > Windows**, or click 🔛 🔛 on the Building toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog, select the window you want to insert.
- If you want the window to be automatically centered on the wall, right-click and select Center on wall. Go to step 6.
- If you want to offset the window a specific distance from the end of the wall, right-click and select Enter insertion offset. Enter the offset distance in the Enter insertion offset dialog, then click OK.
- 6. Position the window in the receiving wall. If you are using an insertion offset, position the window close to the end you want to offset it from. The window will snap inside the wall. Dimensions are displayed that show you the distance on either side of the window.
- 7. With your window positioned where you want it, click to insert it.
- 8. Right-click and select Finish.

Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Center

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the on-screen dimensions that appear when inserting doors, windows and openings measure from the edges of the opening object. The same applies when you insert openings using an offset. If you prefer you can measure to center when inserting openings.

To insert doors, windows and openings to center:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Opening Placement* area, select **Dimension to Center**.
- 4. Click **OK**.

To insert the door, window or opening to the center of a wall:

1. Select the item from the catalog, move the cursor onto the drawing screen area, right click and select **Center on wall**.

Once a door, window or opening is in a wall, you can recenter it.

1. Select the item in the project. Right click and select **Center on wall**.

Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Edge

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have changed your program settings so that door, window and wall openings insert to center, you can switch it back to the default method where openings are measured from the edges of the opening.

To insert doors, windows and openings to the edge of the opening:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Opening Placement* area, select **Dimen**sion to Edge.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Moving a Window

You can move a window by clicking and dragging it inside the wall, or by editing the dynamic dimensions on either side of the window. You can move a window in both 2D and 3D.

To move a window by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the window to select it.
- 2. Click and drag the window to move it, then release your mouse button. If you are moving a window in 3D, make sure that you select the center grip.

To move a window by editing dimensions:

- 1. Click on the window. Dynamic dimensions appear on either side of the window.
- 2. Click on the dimension you want to edit.
- 3. In the **Edit Dimension** dialog, enter the new value, then press **Enter** or click **OK**. The window position updates automatically.

Flipping a Window

You can use the Flip Opening tool to instantly flip a window around in the wall. If the window has a swing, the swing is also flipped.

To flip a window:

- 1. Select the window.
- Right-click in the drawing area and select Flip Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Flip Opening.

Raising or Lowering a Window

You can raise or lower a window in a wall using the Elevate tool on the window's right-click menu.

To raise or lower a window:

- 1. Select the window whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value currently shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the window top above the floor level.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the top of the window above the floor.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the window looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the window in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Editing Window Types

Window types include fixed, casement, hung, sliding, awning, hopper, vent, bay, bow and louver. You can edit a window's type on the window's Basic property page.

To edit a window type:

- 1. Select the window whose properties you want to change.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Windows** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- 4. In the *Type* area, click on the desired window type to select it.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Editing a Window's Size Properties

You can edit the height and width of a window. You can also control the number of horizontal and vertical panes in the window. Some window types have additional properties that define their geometry.

To edit the size of a window:

- 1. Select the window whose properties you want to change.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Windows** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- Edit the dimensions as desired. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the window graphic, and vice versa.

Most windows have the common dimensions listed below. Some have additional settings to define their geometry.

Window Width. The width of the window, not including the frame.

Window Height. The height of the window.

of Horizontal Panels. The number of window panels running horizontally across the window frame. If you specify more than one panel, vertical dividers are added inside the window frame.

of Vertical Panels. The number of window panels running vertically along the window frame. If you specify more than one panel, horizontal dividers are added inside the window frame.

of Horizontal Panes. The number of panes of glass across each window panel.

of Vertical Panes. The number of panes of glass running vertically along each window panel.

5. Click **OK**

Tip: You can also stretch a window opening dynamically by clicking and dragging its side grips if displayed. See Stretching Doors, Windows and Openings for more information.

Stretching Doors, Windows and Openings

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If the **Stretch Openings** option is enabled in your Program Settings, grips will appear at the edges of doors, windows and openings when you select them. In 2D you can then dynamically stretch an opening to make it narrower or wider. In 3D view you can stretch it both vertically and horizontally. An additional setting lets you specify that you want the opening to be automatically renamed when its size changes.

To enable the stretching of openings:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. Check the **Enable** box in the **Stretch Open-***ings* area.
- 4. If you want openings to be automatically renamed according to their new size, enable the **Auto-rename Openings** check box. Note that this will also override any custom names that you have defined.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Displaying a Highlite, Lowlite or Sidelites on a Window

A sidelite is a glass panel set on one or both sides of a window. A highlite is a glass panel above a window. A lowlite is a glass panel below a window. You can choose which lites which you want to display.

To display lites on a window:

- 1. Select the window.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Windows** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- 4. To display a highlite over the window, enable the **Display Highlite** check box.
- 5. To display a lowlite under the window, enable the **Display Lowlite** check box.

- 6. To display a sidelite on the left side of the window, enable the **Display Left Sidelite** check box.
- 7. To display a sidelite on the right side of the window, enable the **Display Right Sidelite** check box.
- 8. Click **OK**.

Editing a Window's Sidelites, Highlites and Lowlites

A sidelite is a glass panel set on one or both sides of a window. A highlite is a glass panel above a window. A lowlite is a glass panel below a window. You can create a custom configuration of sidelites, highlites and lowlites for a window.

To edit a window's lites:

- 1. Select the window whose properties you want to change.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Windows** dialog, select the Lites tab.
- 4. In the *Type* area select the lite you want to specify settings for. Note that the lite must be enabled on the Basic page before you can edit it.
- 5. To select a specific window type for the currently selected lite, click on the appropriate graphic in the *Type* area.
- 6. Edit the dimensions of the lite in the *Properties* area if desired. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the sidelite/highlite graphic, and vice versa.

Shape. Choose from *Rectangle*, *Arched* or *Trapezoid*.

(highlite/lowlite) **Adjust Width**. Selecting *Opening* adjusts the width of the highlite to match the width of the opening (including any sidelites). Selecting *Window* adjusts the width of the highlite to match the width of the window (excluding any sidelites). Selecting *User Defined* lets you specify a precise width for the highlite in the **Width** edit box.

Width. The total width of the lite.

(sidelites) Adjust Height to Window.

Automatically adjusts the height of a sidelite to match the height of the window.

Height. The overall height of the lite.

of Horizontal Panels. The number of panels across the lite. If you specify more than one panel, vertical dividers are added inside the lite's frame.

of Vertical Panels. The number of panels running vertically along the lite. If you specify more than one panel, horizontal dividers are added inside the lite's frame.

of Horizontal Panes. The number of panes of glass across each panel.

of Vertical Panes. The number of panes of glass running vertically along each panel.

7. Click **OK**.

Editing Window Details

You can specify precise dimensions and offsets for the window frame, sash, mullions and transoms.

To edit window details:

- 1. Select the window whose properties you want to change.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Windows** dialog, select the Details tab.
- 4. Edit the dimensions as desired.

Frame

Depth. The depth of the frame members as seen from an overhead view.

Width. The width of the frame members as seen from an overhead view.

Offset. The offset of the window frame from the wall face.

Sash

Depth. The depth of sash members

(sidelite/highlite/lowlite frame) as seen from an overhead view.

Width. The width of sash members as seen from an overhead view.

Offset. The offset of the sash from the front of the window frame, i.e. how far back it sits in the window frame.

Post (for Bays and Bows)

Depth: The thickness of posts in bay and bow windows.

Width: The width of posts in bay and bow windows.

Mullion

Vertical Separation. If a lite has two or more panels running across it, this adds vertical dividers between the panels.

Horizontal Separation. If a lite has two or more stacked panels, this adds horizontal dividers between them.

Depth. The front-to-back thickness of the mullion as seen from an overhead view.

Width. The width (left-to-right distance) of the mullion as seen from an overhead view. Transom (for Lites)

Depth. The front-to-back thickness of the transom member as seen from an overhead view. The transom is the member between the window and the sidelite, highlite or lowlite frame.

Width. The width of the transom as seen from an overhead view.

5. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Window Opening

By default, window openings include trim around them if a trim member is specified for openings in the wall's Trim properties. You can turn opening trim on or off for individual window openings.

To control the display of trim around a window opening:

- 1. Select the window, then right-click and select **Properties**.
- In the Windows dialog, disable the Include Opening Trim check box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Window

You can delete a window with a couple of mouse clicks.

To delete a window:

- Select the window to delete. To select multiple windows, use Shift+click.
- Click the Delete button on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Controlling the Display of Window Opening Symbols

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, swing-type windows display symbols that indicate the swing direction. These symbols are visible in 3D and elevation views. You can choose between two methods of displaying the symbols depending on your region, or disable the symbols altogether.

To control the display of window opening symbols:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.
- In the Window Opening Symbols area, select either Type 1 or Type 2. If you want to disable window opening symbols, select None.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Corner Windows

Many modern designs incorporate corner windows. There are 3 different corner window construction methods that work with a fixed window type.

To combine 2 windows into one corner window unit:

1. Left click to select an inserted window and then holding down the shift key, left click to select the other window on the perpendicular wall.

2. Right click and select Create Corner Window.

3. A dialog box will appear with three selections:



The first option *Glass* connects the glass at the corner, the second option *Sash* puts a sash at the corner, or the third option, *Frame*, connects the frames at the corner.

4. Select an option, the window is automatically connected at the corner.

5. With the window still selected, right click, and select **Properties**.

6. The same dialog box will appear, and you can change the connection type by selecting an alternate option.

Openings

An opening is a cutout in a wall of a specific shape, width and height. Openings can be rectangular, round, arched, octagonal or trapezoidal. To insert an opening with the Openings tool, just position the opening with your pointer, and then click to insert it. You can use the on-screen dimensions to position the opening in the wall, center the opening automatically (right-click and select *Center on Wall*), or define a specific offset distance (right-click and select *Enter insertion offset*).

By default, the on-screen dimensions that appear when inserting an opening measure from the edges of the opening. If you prefer you can specify that you want the dimensions to measure to the center of the opening by editing your program settings.

Openings can be edited in a number of different ways, independently of the walls that contain them. To display a menu of editing commands relating to openings, simply select an opening and then rightclick your mouse. Selecting **Openings Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to openings.

Inserting Wall Openings

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

An opening is a cutout in a wall of a specific shape, width and height. Openings can be rectangular, round, arched, octagonal or trapezoidal.

You can point and click to insert an opening anywhere in a wall, automatically center the opening on the wall, or offset the opening a specific distance from the end of the wall.

To insert an opening:

- Make sure the location you want to insert openings on is the current location in the building locations drop box.
- Select Insert > Openings, or click on the Building toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog, select the opening you want to insert.
- If you want the opening to be automatically centered on the wall, right-click and select Center on wall. Go to step 6.
- If you want to offset the opening a specific distance from the end of the wall, right-click and select Enter insertion offset. Enter the offset distance in the Enter insertion offset dialog, then click OK.
- 6. Position the opening in the receiving wall. If you are using an insertion offset, position the opening close to the end you want to offset it from. The opening will snap inside the wall. Dimensions are displayed that show you the distance on either side of the opening.
- 7. With your opening positioned where you want it, click to insert it.
- 8. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Openings are inserted at the Head Height defined for the building location you insert the opening on. You can resize, raise or lower an opening after you have inserted it if you need to.

Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Center

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the on-screen dimensions that appear when inserting doors, windows and openings measure from the edges of the opening object. The same applies when you insert openings using an offset. If you prefer you can measure to center when inserting openings.

To insert doors, windows and openings to center:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Opening Placement* area, select **Dimension to Center**.
- 4. Click **OK**.

To insert the door, window or opening to the center of a wall:

1. Select the item from the catalog, move the cursor onto the drawing screen area, right click and select **Center on wall**.

Once a door, window or opening is in a wall, you can recenter it.

1. Select the item in the project. Right click and select **Center on wall**.

Inserting Doors, Windows and Openings to Edge

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have changed your program settings so that door, window and wall openings insert to center, you can switch it back to the default method where openings are measured from the edges of the opening.

To insert doors, windows and openings to the edge of the opening:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.

- 3. In the *Opening Placement* area, select **Dimen**-sion to Edge.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Creating a Niche

A niche is a recess in a wall. There are a number of rectangular, circular and arched niches in the catalog that you can insert easily using the Openings tool. You can create a custom niche by inserting an opening in a wall, and then specifying a niche depth in the opening's properties.

To create a custom niche:

- 1. Insert an opening in the wall using the Openings tool.
- 2. Click on the opening to select it, and then right-click and select **Properties**.
- 3. In the **Openings** dialog, click on the drop box next to the **Specify Niche Depth** item.
- 4. Select either **Distance** or **Percentage** as your method of specifying the niche depth. The *Distance* option lets you enter a specific value for the depth, while the *Percentage* option lets you specify the depth as a percentage of the wall depth.
- 5. If you selected the *Depth* option, type the desired depth for the niche in the **Depth** edit box. If you selected *Percentage*, type the desired depth percentage in the **Depth** edit box. Note that you can specify a distance or percentage that is greater than the wall depth if needed. The niche would then protrude through the wall.
- 6. If you do not want any trim around the niche opening, disable the **Include Opening Trim** check box.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Tip: To flip a niche to the other side of the wall, use the Flip Opening tool on the right-click menu.

Flipping a Niche

If you have created a niche in a wall and it appears to be on the wrong side of the wall, you can flip it instantly using the Flip Opening tool.

To flip a niche to the other side of the wall:

- 1. Select the opening.
- 2. Right-click and select Flip Opening.

Editing the Appearance of a Niche

You can edit the appearance of a niche in 3D by applying different materials to the recessed face.

To edit the appearance of a niche:

- 1. Select the opening, then right-click and select **Properties**.
- 2. In the **Openings** dialog, select the Appearance tab.
- 3. Select the component whose appearance you would like to change.

Inside Niche Back. The interior face of the niche back.

Niche Back Side. The exterior face of the niche back. This would only be visible in 3D if the niche depth is greater than the wall depth, causing the niche to protrude from the wall.

- Click the Select button in the *Material* area, then select a material to apply to the component from the Materials library.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Moving a Wall Opening

You can move a wall opening by clicking and dragging it inside the wall, or by editing the dynamic dimensions on either side of the opening. You can move an opening in both 2D and 3D.

To move an opening by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the opening to select it.
- 2. Click and drag the opening to move it. If you are moving an opening in 3D, make sure that you select the center grip.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

To move an opening by editing dimensions:

- 1. Click on the opening. Dynamic dimensions appear on either side of the opening.
- 2. Click on the dimension you want to edit.
- 3. In the **Edit Dimension** dialog, enter the new value, then press **Enter** or click **OK**. The opening position updates automatically.

Raising or Lowering a Wall Opening

You can raise or lower an opening in a wall using the Elevate tool on the opening's right-click menu.

To raise or lower a wall opening:

- 1. Select the opening whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value currently shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the opening top above the floor level.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the top of the opening above the floor.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Editing the Size of a Wall Opening

You can edit the dimensions of a wall opening by changing the properties on the opening's Size property page.

To edit the size of a wall opening:

- 1. Select the opening whose properties you want to change.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the *Properties* area, edit the dimensions of the opening. Dimensions vary according to the shape of the opening.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Tip: If you want the bottom of your opening to be level with the floor, change the height of opening to match the Head Height of the building location it is inserted on. Alternatively you can lower the opening using the Elevate tool.

Tip: You can also stretch an opening dynamically by clicking and dragging its side grips if displayed. See Stretching Doors, Windows and Openings for more information.

Stretching Doors, Windows and Openings

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If the **Stretch Openings** option is enabled in your Program Settings, grips will appear at the edges of doors, windows and openings when you select them. In 2D you can then dynamically stretch an opening to make it narrower or wider. In 3D view you can stretch it both vertically and horizontally. An additional setting lets you specify that you want the opening to be automatically renamed when its size changes.

To enable the stretching of openings:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. Check the **Enable** box in the **Stretch Open-***ings* area.
- 4. If you want openings to be automatically renamed according to their new size, enable the **Auto-rename Openings** check box. Note that this will also override any custom names that you have defined.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Editing the Shape of a Wall Opening

Openings can be rectangular, round, arched, octagonal or trapezoidal.

To change the shape a wall opening:

- 1. Select the opening whose properties you want to change.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the *Type* area, click on the shape you want.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Trim Around a Wall Opening

By default, wall openings include trim around them if a trim member is specified for openings in the wall's Trim properties. You can turn opening trim on or off for individual openings.

To control the display of trim around a wall opening:

- 1. Select the opening, then right-click and select **Properties**.
- 2. In the **Openings** dialog, disable the **Include Opening Trim** check box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

Editing the Appearance of a Wall Opening in 2D Plan View

You can change the appearance of an opening in 2D plan view by editing its line style properties. This allows you to apply different colors, patterns or weights to different openings if you wish.

To edit the appearance of an opening in 2D plan view:

- 1. Select the opening, then right-click and select **Properties**.
- 2. In the **Openings** dialog, select the Appearance tab.
- 3. In the *Components* list, select **Header**.
- 4. Click the **Select** button in the *Linestyle* area.
- Select the desired line style from the Line Styles dialog, then click OK.
- 6. Click **OK** in the **Openings** dialog.

Deleting a Wall Opening

You can delete a wall opening with a couple of mouse clicks.

To delete an opening:

- 1. Select the opening to delete. To select multiple openings, use Shift+click.
- Click the Delete button on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Shutters

You can instantly apply shutters to one or both sides of a window or opening using the Shutters tool. Choose a flat, paneled, or board-and-batten style, or create your own style.

To display a menu of editing commands relating to shutters, simply select the shutter and then right-click

your mouse. Selecting **Shutters Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to shutters.

Inserting Shutters

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the Shutters tool you can instantly apply shutters to the wall on one or both sides of a window or opening. Choose a flat, paneled, or board-andbatten style, or create your own style. Shutters can be inserted on the exterior side or interior side of the wall, or both sides.

To insert shutters:

- Select Insert > Detailing > Shutters, or click the down arrow next to the Detailing button
 on the Building toolbar and select Shutters.
- 2. In the catalog, select the type of shutter you would like to insert.
- 3. In the Attach Shutters dialog, select the side of the wall on which you want to insert the shutters by enabling or disabling the Exterior Side and/or Interior Side check box. Under each option you can then specify whether you would like to apply a shutter to the left side, right side or both sides of the window or opening.

👰 Attach Shutters	8 23
Exterior Side	
Interior Side	
Both 💌	
ОК	Cancel

- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. Click on the window or opening that you want to apply shutters to. The shutters are inserted.

Editing Shutters

You can edit the style and dimensions of shutters by editing their properties.

To edit shutters:

- 1. Click on a shutter to select it. If you are editing a pair of shutters, clicking on one shutter selects them both.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the properties as desired. Each shutter type has different settings. Below is a brief description of each setting.

Adjust Size. If *By Opening* is selected, the height of the shutter automatically adjusts to the height of the window or opening it is applied to. If *Specify* is selected, you can define a specific shutter height in the Height edit box.

Width. The overall width of the shutter.

Height. The overall height of the shutter. This value is not adjustable if *By Opening* is selected in the *Adjust Size* drop box. It can only be edited if *Specify* is selected in the *Adjust Size* drop box.

Thickness. The depth of the shutter. Additional Settings for Panel Style

Panel Width. The width of the panel(s).

Top Rail Height. The height of the top rail.

Bottom Rail Height. The height of the bottom rail.

Number of Panels. The number of panels in the shutter.

Panel Type. Choose either *Flat, Bevel* or *Louver*. If there are two or more panels, you can select different types for individual panels.

Panel Height. The height of a panel. If there are two or more panels, you can set different heights for individual panels.

Mid Rail Height. The height of the dividing rail. If there are more than two panels, you can set different rail heights between panels. Additional Settings for Board-and-Batten

Style

Board Spacing. The distance between boards.

Batten Thickness. The height of a batten. **Batten Edge Offset**. The distance from the bottom of a board to the edge of the batten.

Number of Boards. The number of boards across the shutter.

Number of Battens. The total number of battens on the shutter.

Deleting Shutters

You can delete shutters in a couple of easy steps. **To delete shutters:**

- Click on a shutter to select it. If you are editing a pair of shutters, clicking on one shutter selects them both.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select **Delete**, or select **Edit >** Modify Elements > Delete.

Chapter 8: Floors & Ceilings

Floors & Ceilings

If you have automatic floors enabled in your Program Settings, a floor will be automatically inserted when you connect three or more walls to create a closed wall layout. When you insert interior walls, the floor is split as new rooms are created. You can also manually split automatic floors using the Room Division tool.

There are three tools available on the Insert menu for inserting floors manually: Floor by Room, Floor by Perimeter, and Floor by Picking Points.

If you want different flooring types in different rooms, you can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly apply different types of carpet, tiles, wood flooring, vinyl flooring, linoleum, or concrete to individual floors.

You can point and click to insert ceilings using one of the handy Ceiling tools: Ceiling by Room, Ceiling by Perimeter, or Ceiling by Picking Points. Any ceiling surface can easily be made into a tray or cathedral ceiling by simply editing the ceiling's properties. You can create openings in floors and ceilings if you need to.

Structural Floors

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A structural floor is a system of framing members that can be inserted with or without sheathing applied. Although you can use a Floors tool to insert a complete floor system (framing + finish flooring), there may be situations where you would prefer to insert only the structural components, or insert them separately from the flooring. Floors inserted with the Structural Floor by Perimeter and Structural Floor by Room tools are directly associated with the walls that contain them. If you stretch your wall layout, the floor stretches with it. If you open up your wall layout by deleting a wall, the floor will be deleted.

Floors inserted with the Structural Floor by Picking Points tool are independent and have no connectivity to walls, so they will remain the same if you move or delete walls.

For large spans, you can insert a bearing line to specify where you want to cut the joists. Once you have inserted the bearing line, the joists will be automatically cut along the line, and either staggered and overlapped, or held back.

You can also move the framing base point to start the joists a specific distance from the floor edge.

Although the structural floor is considered a single object, each member in the floor can be stretched or shortened individually. You can also add or remove members for greater framing flexibility and accuracy.

If you have inserted a finish floor in your model, you can convert the floor to a structural floor if desired.

Inserting a Structural Floor Throughout a Building Location

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Structural Floor by Perimeter tool detects the perimeter walls on the current building location and inserts a structural floor of your choice throughout the entire location. This option is ideal if you have deleted your automatic floor and would like to create a floor that spans your model. Once inserted, you have the option of cutting joists along a bearing line if needed.

To insert a structural floor throughout a building location:

- Make sure the building location that you want to insert the floor on is the current location.
- 2. Select Insert > Structural Floor > Structural Floor by Perimeter, or click the down arrow

next to the Structural Floor button



on the Building toolbar and select **Structural Floor by Perimeter**.

- 3. In the catalog, select the structural floor system that you want to insert.
- 4. Click anywhere inside the model. The floor is automatically inserted.

Note: The Structural Floor by Perimeter tool does not take interior walls into account. Only one large floor system is created.

Inserting a Structural Floor in a Room

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the Structural Floor by Room tool you can just click inside a room to automatically insert a structural floor of your choice in that room.

To insert a structural floor in a room:

 Select Insert > Structural Floor > Structural Floor by Room, or click the down arrow next



on the Building toolbar and select **Structural Floor by Room**.

- 2. In the catalog, select the structural floor type you want to insert.
- 3. Mouse over the room to which you want to add a floor (it will highlight), then click inside the room. The floor is automatically inserted.

Inserting a Structural Floor by Picking Points

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Structural Floor by Picking Points tool provides the freedom to create a floor system of any size or shape anywhere in your drawing. Just pick points to form a closed shape and the floor is instantly created.

To insert a structural floor by picking points:

 Select Insert > Structural Floor > Structural Floor by Picking Points, or click the down arrow next to the Structural Floor button

on the Building toolbar and select Structural Floor by Picking Points.

- 2. In the catalog, select the structural floor type you want to insert.
- Select a start point for the floor, then continue selecting points to define the size and shape of the floor. Note that you do not have to select the start point again to finish the floor

 the last point picked is always connected to the start point.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Inserting a Bearing Line in a Structural Floor

If you have inserted a structural floor, you can insert a bearing line to specify where you want joists to be cut within the floor system.

To insert a bearing line:

- Select the edge of the structural floor. You
 may need to hide the wall edges to be able to
 do this. You can tell that a structural floor is
 selected if red arrows are displayed at the
 floor's grip points.
- Right-click and select Structural Floor > Insert Bearing Line.
- 3. Select two points to draw a line through the floor joists. The joists are automatically cut along the bearing line. The joists ends on the bearing line will be either overlapped or held back depending on what is specified in the floor's properties.

In the following example, a bearing line was drawn down the middle of the floor system, and the joists were cut an overlapped along the bearing line:

 -
-
_

Stretching or Moving a Bearing Line in a Structural Floor

When you insert a bearing line in a structural floor, grip points are displayed at each end of the bearing line when the floor structure is selected. You can click and drag these grip points to move them.

If you need to move a grip point a specific distance, select the floor structure and then right-click and select **Stretch Bearing Line**. This activates the Commander, where you can specify exact values for the move.

When you stretch or move a bearing line, the joists that bear on the line adjust with it.

Removing a Bearing Line

If you want to remove a bearing line that you have inserted in a structural floor, follow the steps below.

- Select the structural floor. You may need to hide walls to be able to select the edge of it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Remove Bearing Line**.
- 3. Click on the bearing line. This removes the bearing line and returns the joists to their original, uncut state.

Moving the Framing Base Point in a Structural Floor

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, framing in a structural floor starts from the top corner. You may want to shift the base point to start the joists a specific distance from the corner instead. This may, for example, facilitate the application of sheathing.

To move the framing base point:

- 1. Click on the edge of the structural floor to select it.
- Right-click and select Structural Floor > Move Framing Base Point. The current framing base point is marked with a light blue triangle.
- 3. Either drag the light blue triangle to a new location, or click on any point in your drawing and enter a precise move distance in the Commander and press Enter. The base point is moved, and the framing adjusts accordingly.

Adding Members to a Structural Floor

Building Essentials | Construction Suite You can customize the framing of a structural floor by adding members to it. When you use the **Add to Structural Floor System** tool, manually inserted members become associated with the floor, and behave as though they are part it. For example, if you move the floor, the members will move along with it. Or, if the floor is deleted, the members will also be deleted. Any **View Filter** changes applied to the floor will be applied to the added members as well.

To add members to a structural floor:

- 1. Insert the members using the Members tool or Advanced Members tool.
- Select the inserted members, then right-click and select Add to Structural Floor System. A dialog box confirms the number of members added.

If needed you can disassociate a member from the floor using **Remove from Structural Floor System**.

Removing a Member from a Structural Floor

Building Essentials | Construction Suite To delete a member from a structural floor, simply select it and press **Delete** on your keyboard.

To disassociate a member that you have manually added to the floor using the **Add to Structural Floor System** option, select the member, then right-click and select **Remove from Structural Floor System**. The member will remain in the drawing, but will no longer be part of the floor system.

Cutting an Opening in a Structural Floor

If you have used the Structural Floor by Perimeter, Structural Floor by Room or Structural Floor by Picking Points tool to create a structural floor system, you can use the Cut Opening tool on the floor's rightclick menu to create an opening in it of any shape or size.

To create an opening in a structural floor:

- 1. Click on the edge of the floor to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Cut Opening.
- Select a start point for the opening, then continue selecting points to define the size and shape of the opening. Note that you do not have to select the start point again to finish the outline the last point picked is always connected to the start point.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Editing Structural Floor Properties

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Structural floor properties include settings for the joists, sheathing, sill plate, and rim joists.

To edit the general properties of an inserted floor, select the edge of the floor, then right-click and select **Properties**. In the **Structural Floor System** dialog, you can specify *General Properties* such as joist spacing, and define settings for the *Joists* and *Sheathing*.

Perimeter members can be edited on a per-edge basis, and can therefore be different on each edge. To edit the members along a particular edge, select the floor, then click on the red property marker on the desired edge. Edit the member settings for the selected edge in the **Member Properties** dialog box.

Structural floor properties are described below.

Regenerate components when updated. When checked, this erases and rebuilds the auto-generated framing components if the floor edge is modified (for example, stretched). When unchecked, the members remain intact when the floor edge is modified. Note that enabling this setting does not rebuild members that have been manually added to the floor system.

General Properties

Joist Direction. The angle at which the joists run.

Joist Spacing. The spacing between joists.

Style. The behavior of joists that rest on a bearing line. The **Stagger** option overlaps the joist ends. The **Hold Back** option pushes the joist ends away from the bearing line.

Distance. The overlap distance when joist ends are staggered, or the distance between joist ends when they are held back along the bearing line.

Sheathing

Include. Select **Yes** to include sheathing, or **No** if you do want to include sheathing.

Sheathing. Click on the field and then click the browse button to select a sheathing material from the catalog.

Phase. Click in the field and then click the browse button to assign a phase to the sheathing. The phase can be used as a sort key in quantity reports.

Usage. Click in the field and then click the browse button to assign a usage to the sheathing. The usage can be used as a sort key in quantity reports.

Joists/Sill Plate/Band Joist(s)/Rim Joist(s)/Opening Header(s)

These framing components are arranged into individual folders. Click **New** to add a member to a selected folder, or click **Copy** to copy an existing member. Click **Delete** to remove a selected member from the configuration.

Parameters include:

Name. A unique identifier for the member.

Member. Click in the field and then click the browse button to select a member from the catalog.

Rotation. The orientation of the member's profile.

Phase. Click in the field and then click the browse button to assign a phase to the member.

Usage. Click in the field and then click the browse button to assign a usage to the member.

Alignment. The point on a member that you want to use as a reference point when editing it. Choices are **Top**, **Center** and **Bottom**.

Opening(s)

Edge Offset. The offset of the opening's edge members from the line that you draw when cutting an opening. You can enter a positive or negative value to offset the members to either side of the line.

Joist Projection. The distance that the joists project into the opening edge.

Floors

If you have automatic floors enabled in your Program Settings, a floor will be automatically inserted when you connect three or more walls to create a closed wall layout. When you insert interior walls, the floor is split as new rooms are created. You can also manually split automatic floors using the Room Division tool.

There are three tools available on the Insert menu for inserting floors manually: Floor by Room, Floor by Perimeter, and Floor by Picking Points.

You can insert openings in both automatic and manually inserted floors (to accommodate a staircase, for example).

Automatic floors and floors inserted with the Floor by Perimeter and Floor by Room tools are directly associated with the walls that contain them. If you stretch your wall layout, the floor stretches with it. If you open up your wall layout by deleting a wall, the floor will be deleted.

Floors inserted with the Floor by Picking Points tool are independent and have no connectivity to walls, so they will remain the same if you move or delete walls.

Automatic floors can only be selected in 3D view. Floors created with one of the floor tools are selectable in both 2D and 3D.

You can edit floors in many ways, independently of the walls that surround them. To display a menu of floor editing commands, select a floor and then rightclick your mouse. Selecting **Floors Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to floors.

Floor categories in the catalog include *Framing and Surface, Framing Only, Surface Only,* and *Slabs.* If you prefer to insert structural components separately, or need more flexibility with your floor framing, use a Structural Floor tool instead. You can also convert a finish floor to a structural floor if desired.

Automatic Floors

If you have automatic floor insertion enabled in your Program Settings, a floor is automatically inserted throughout your model when you connect three or more walls to create a closed exterior wall layout. You can disable or enable automatic floor insertion at any time.

By default, hardwood flooring is applied when an automatic floor is created. If you use the House Builder Wizard, the floor type depends on the house style selected when using the Wizard. If you want you can apply a different material to the floor using the Materials Paintbrush.

When you draw interior walls, the floor is split into individual floors as new rooms are created provided the room's walls are all connected. You can also manually split automatic floors using the Room Division tool.

Automatic floors cannot be selected in 2D plan view. They can only be selected in 3D view. The only exception are floor edges that have been defined using the Room Division tool. Such edges are marked with a dashed line in 2D view, and can be stretched if necessary. Automatic floors are directly associated with the walls that contain them. If you stretch your wall layout, the floor stretches with it. If you open up your wall layout by deleting a wall, the floor will be deleted.

Tip: For projects in which you plan to use the House Builder Wizard, you can change the default floor type by editing the House Builder Wizard element configuration before running the Wizard. You can also select the floor type you want while running the Wizard.

Disabling or Enabling Automatic Floor Insertion

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

An option in your Program Settings determines whether or not a floor is automatically inserted throughout your model when you form a closed wall layout. You can disable or enable this option at any time.

To disable or enable automatic floor insertion:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

🛛 🐼 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Building Aids* area, disable or enable the **Automatically Insert Floors** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Inserting a Floor Throughout a Building Location

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Floor by Perimeter tool detects the perimeter walls on the current building location and inserts a floor of your choice throughout the entire location. This option is ideal if you have deleted your automatic floor and would like to create floors as quickly as possible throughout your model. It is also the perfect choice if you do not need different floors in each room.

To insert a floor throughout a building location:

- Make sure the building location that you want to insert the floor on is the current location.
- Select Insert > Floors > Floor by Perimeter, or click the down arrow next to the Floors button and select Floor by Perimeter.
- 3. In the catalog, select the floor type you want to insert.
- 4. Click anywhere inside the model. The floor is automatically inserted.

Note: The Floor by Perimeter tool does not take interior walls into account. Only one large floor surface is created. If you would prefer individual floors in each room, use the Floor by Room tool.

Inserting a Floor in a Room

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the Floor by Room tool you can just click inside a room to automatically insert a floor of your choice in that room.

To insert a floor in a room:

- Select Insert > Floors > Floor by Room, or click a contract of the Building toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the floor type you want to insert.
- 3. Mouse over the room to which you want to add a floor (it will highlight), then click inside the room. The floor is automatically inserted.

Note: By default, floors inserted with the Floor by Room tool extend to the inside edge of the wall core (e.g. stud wall). If you prefer that they extend to the interior wall surface, you can define this in your program settings prior to inserting them. See *Defining the Extents of Floors to be Inserted in Rooms* on page 69.

Inserting a Floor by Picking Points

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite The Floor by Picking Points tool provides the freedom to create a floor of any size or shape anywhere in your drawing. Just pick points to form a closed shape and the floor is instantly created.

To insert a floor by picking points:

- Select Insert > Floors > Floor by Picking Points, or click the down arrow next to the Floors button on the Building toolbar and select Floor by Picking Points.
- 2. In the catalog, select the floor type you want to insert.
- Select a start point for the surface, then continue selecting points to define the size and shape of the floor. Note that you do not have to select the start point again to finish the floor the last point picked is always connected to the start point.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Defining the Extents of Floors to be Inserted in Rooms

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, a floor inserted with the Floor by Room tool extends to the inside edge of the wall core (e.g. stud wall). If you prefer you can set the floor to extend to the interior edge of the interior wall surface (e.g. drywall) instead. This is an insertion setting that is defined in your program settings. Changing this setting has no effect on floors that have already been inserted. It only affects floors that you are going to insert with the Floor by Room tool. If you want to change the extents of an existing floor you can click and drag its editing grips.

To define the extents of floors to be inserted with the Floor by Room tool:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

📶 🗟 on the Settings toolbar.

- In the Document Settings dialog, click Building Aids in the left column.
- 3. In the *Insertion by Room* area, click the drop box next to the **Floors** item.
- 4. If you want floors in rooms to extend to the wall core, select **Wall Core**. If you want them

to extend to the interior wall surface, select **Wall Surface**.

5. Click **OK**.

Dividing a Room

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If a room contains an automatic floor, you can use the Room Division tool to split the room into two separate areas. This enables you to have two different floor types/finishes in the same room. You can also use the Room Division tool to define an opening in a floor.

Note: You cannot divide a room that contains a floor that was created with a Floor tool.

To divide a room:

- Select Insert > Floors > Room Division, or click the down arrow next to the Floors button and select and select Room Division.
- 2. Select points to define the division line. If you are dividing a room into two segments, the end points of the line must be on the floor edge, although intermediate points are permitted anywhere on the floor surface.



If you are creating a floor within a floor, the split line must form a closed shape.

3. Right-click and select **Finish**.

To move a division line:

1. Click on the dashed division line in 2D plan view. Blue grips are displayed along the line.

- 2. Hover your pointer over the center grip, then click and drag to move the line.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

Note: When you divide a floor, the division lines are also created on the ceiling above.

Moving Defined Floor Edges

If you have used the Room Division tool to define a custom floor area in your model, you can move the defined floor edge in 2D view to increase or decrease the size of the defined floor area.

To move a defined floor edge:

- Click on the dashed floor edge in 2D plan view. Blue grips are displayed along the line.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the center grip, then click and drag to move the line.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

Moving a Floor

You can move a manually inserted floor using the Move tool.

Note: You cannot move a floor that was created automatically with your wall layout. You can only move floors that were created with a Floor tool.

To move a floor:

- 1. Select the floor by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and drag the floor to move it, then release your mouse button.

Resizing or Reshaping a Floor

You can resize or reshape a floor by clicking and dragging its edges and corners.

Note: You cannot stretch a floor that was created automatically with your wall layout. You can only stretch floors that were created with a Floor tool.

To resize or reshape a floor:

 Select the floor by clicking on one of its edges. If you want to resize the floor, click on the edge that you want to adjust. A solid blue grip appears on the edge you selected, and hollow blue grips appear at each corner of the floor surface.

- 2. To resize the floor, hover your pointer over the solid blue grip, then click and drag the floor edge to adjust the floor size. Alternatively you can select the **Move Edge** tool on the right-click menu.
- 3. To reshape the floor, hover your pointer over one of the corner grips, then click and drag the corner to adjust the floor shape. Alternatively you can select the **Stretch** tool on the right-click menu.

If you would like to stretch only a portion of a floor edge, you can accomplish this by adding a node to the floor edge. See *Adding a Node to a Floor* on page 70.

Adding a Node to a Floor

You can add nodes to a floor edge to create more grips along the edge. You can then click and drag a grip on a specific segment to reshape that portion of the floor.

To add a node to a floor:

- 1. Select the floor.
- Right-click and select Add Node, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Add Node.
- Click on the point on the floor edge where you want to add a node. The edge is split into separate edges, each with its own grips for moving and stretching.

Removing a Node from a Floor

If you have added a node to a floor edge, removing a node causes the segment with which the node is associated to merge with the adjacent segments. Note that you cannot delete a node if it is the only node on the edge.

To remove a node from a floor:

- 1. Select the floor.
- 2. Right-click and select Remove Node.
- 3. Click on the node to remove.

Curving a Floor Edge

You can curve a floor edge using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the edge to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

Note: You cannot curve a floor that was created automatically with your wall layout. You can only curve floors that were created with a Floor tool.

To curve a floor edge by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the floor edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a floor edge to a selected point:

- 1. Click on the floor edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The floor edge automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Raising or Lowering a Floor

You can raise or lower a floor using the Elevate tool.

To raise or lower a floor:

- Select the floor. If the floor was created automatically with your wall layout, you need to select the floor in 3D.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the floor above the floor level defined for the current building location.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the floor looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the floor in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Editing the Thickness of a Floor

You can edit the thickness of a floor on its Basic property page.

To edit the thickness of a floor:

- Select the floor. If the floor was created automatically with your wall layout, you need to select the floor in 3D.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the value in the **Thickness** edit box on the Basic page.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Applying Different Materials to Floors

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly apply different types of materials to floors, such as different colors or patterns of carpet, tile or linoleum.

To apply a material to a floor:

- 1. Display your model in 2D Designer's View or 3D view and make sure the floor is visible in the view. You may need to hide the roof and ceilings.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply. You may want to select *Flooring* from the **Filter** drop box to display flooring materials.
- Click on the floor surface you want to apply the material to. The material is immediately applied. You can continue applying the material to other floor surfaces, or select another material in the catalog.
- 5. Right-click and select Finish.

Converting a Floor to a Structural Floor

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you use the Floor by Room, Floor by Perimeter, or Floor by Picking Points tool, a finish floor such as hardwood is inserted. You can use the Convert to Structural Floor tool to automatically convert the finish floor to a structural floor comprising framing members.

To convert a floor to a structural floor:

 Select the floor to convert. An easy way to do this is to go into 2D Designer's Plan mode, then click on the floor surface.

- 2. Right-click and select **Convert to Structural Floor**.
- 3. In the **Catalog Access** dialog, select the structural floor type to which you want to convert the selected floor.
- 4. Click **OK** to convert the floor.

Note: The Convert to Structural Floor tool is not available for auto-inserted floors.

Deleting a Floor

You can delete a floor in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a floor:

- Select the floor. If the floor was inserted automatically when you created your walls, you can only select the floor in 3D.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Floor Openings

You may need to cut an opening in your floor to accommodate a staircase or some other feature in your design. The method for creating an opening in an automatic floor is different from the method for creating an opening in a manually inserted floor.

To cut an opening in an automatic floor, you need to define the opening's outline with the Room Division tool, and then delete the outline to create the opening.

To cut an opening in a manually inserted floor (i.e. a floor created with one of the Floor tools), you can use the Cut Opening tool.

Once inserted, you can curve an opening if desired.

Cutting an Opening in an Automatic Floor

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert an opening of any shape and size in an automatic floor by defining the area to be cut out, then deleting it. You may need to do this to accommodate a staircase. **Note**: If you want to insert an opening in a floor that was created with a Floor tool, see *Cutting an Opening in a Manually Inserted Floor* on page 72.

To insert an opening in an automatic floor:

- Select Insert > Floors > Room Division, or click the down arrow next to the Floors button and select moon bivision.
- Select points to define the outline of the opening, ensuring the outline forms a closed shape.
- 3. Right-click and select **Finish**. An outline is created on the floor surface. You can stretch, move and curve the outline if necessary to get the exact size and shape you want.
- 4. Go into 3D view and make sure the floor is visible and accessible.
- 5. Click in the center of the outline you drew to select the outline.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Cutting an Opening in a Manually Inserted Floor

If you have used the Floor by Room, Floor by Perimeter or Floor by Picking Points tool to create a floor, you can use the Cut Opening tool on the floor's right-click menu to create an opening in it of any shape or size.

To create an opening in a manually inserted floor:

- 1. Select the floor surface.
- 2. Right-click and select **Cut Opening**.
- Select a start point for the opening, then continue selecting points to define the size and shape of the opening. Note that you do not have to select the start point again to finish the outline the last point picked is always connected to the start point.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Resizing or Reshaping a Floor Opening

If you have created an opening in a floor, you can resize or reshape the opening by clicking and dragging its edges or corners.

To resize or reshape a floor opening:

- 1. Click on the edge of the opening.
- 2. To resize the opening, hover your pointer over the center blue grip of the edge that you want to move, then click and drag the edge to adjust the opening size.
- 3. If the opening is located in a manually inserted floor, you can reshape the opening by clicking and dragging a corner grip.

Curving a Floor Opening

You can curve the edge of a floor opening using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the opening edge to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve an opening edge by clicking and dragging:

- 1. In 2D plan view, click on the opening edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the opening edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve an opening edge to a selected point:

- 1. In 2D plan view, click on the opening edge you want to curve.
- Right-click in and select Curve, or select Edit
 Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The opening edge automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Removing an Opening from an Automatically Inserted Floor

If you have inserted an opening in an automatic floor, you can remove it by deleting all of the opening edges.

To remove an opening from an automatic floor:

- In 2D plan view, click on one of the opening's edges, then Shift+click to select the remaining edges.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Removing an Opening from a Manually Inserted Floor

You can remove an opening from a manually inserted floor using the Remove Opening tool. A manually inserted floor is one that was inserted with either the Floor by Room, Floor by Perimeter or Floor by Picking Points tool.

Note: You cannot remove an opening from a manually inserted floor using Delete.

To remove an opening from a manually inserted floor:

- 1. Click on the edge of the floor or opening to select the floor.
- Right-click and select Remove Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Remove Opening.
- 3. Click on the edge of the opening. The opening is removed.

Ceilings

There are thee tools available for inserting ceilings. Use the Ceiling by Perimeter tool to instantly insert a ceiling throughout a building location. You can easily insert ceilings in rooms using the Ceiling by Room tool. To manually create a ceiling that is a custom shape or size, use the Ceiling by Picking Points tool.

Once you have inserted a ceiling you can convert it to a tray or cathedral ceiling provided your roof system is compatible with this type of design.

You can cut an opening in a ceiling to accommodate a staircase or other feature in your design.

Ceilings can be edited in a number of different ways. To display a menu of ceiling editing commands, select a ceiling and then right-click your mouse. Selecting **Ceilings Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to ceilings.

How Ceilings are Created

You can insert ceilings using any of the handy Ceiling tools — Ceiling by Room, Ceiling by Perimeter, or Ceiling by Picking Points.

You can edit the thickness and appearance of any ceiling as well as lower it to create a suspended ceiling, regardless of how you created it. You can also use the Materials Paintbrush to apply different colors or materials to individual ceilings. As well, any ceiling can be converted into a tray or cathedral ceiling by simply editing the ceiling's properties.

Tip: The underside of an upper-story floor can also serve as a ceiling. Similarly, the top side of a lower-story ceiling can serve as a floor.

Inserting a Ceiling Throughout a Building Location

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Ceiling by Perimeter tool detects the perimeter walls on the current building location and inserts a ceiling of your choice throughout the entire location. This option is ideal if you would like to create ceilings as quickly as possible throughout your model and do not have a need for different ceilings in each room.

To instantly add a ceiling to the entire perimeter of a location:

- Make sure the location you want to insert the ceiling on is the current location in the building locations drop box.
- Select Insert > Ceilings > Ceiling by Perimeter, or click the down arrow next to the Ceilings button 2 on the Building toolbar and select Ceiling by Perimeter.
- 3. In the catalog, select the ceiling type you want to insert.
- Click anywhere inside the perimeter of the model. The ceiling is added automatically.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: The Ceiling by Perimeter tool does not take interior walls into account. Only one large ceiling surface is created. If you would prefer individual ceilings in each room, use the Ceiling by Room tool.

Inserting a Ceiling in a Room

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Ceiling by Room option inserts a ceiling inside the perimeter of a room provided all the walls are connected. Adding ceilings by room allows you to have different ceiling types in different rooms.

To insert a ceiling inside a room:

- Make sure the location you want to insert the ceiling on is the current location in the building locations drop box.
- Select Insert > Ceilings > Ceiling by Room, or click i on the Building toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog, select the ceiling type you want to insert.
- 4. Mouse over the room to which you want to add a ceiling (it will highlight), then click inside the room. The ceiling is added automatically. (If you want, you can continue adding ceilings to other rooms.)
- Right-click and select **Finish** from the shortcut menu.

Note: By default, ceilings inserted with the Ceiling by Room tool extend to the inside edge of the wall core (e.g. stud wall). If you prefer that they extend to the interior wall surface, you can define this in your program settings prior to inserting them. See *Defining the Extents of Ceilings to be Inserted in Rooms* on page 75.

Inserting a Ceiling By Picking Points

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the Ceiling by Picking Points tool you can insert a ceiling by picking points to define the ceiling's outline. This lets you create a ceiling of any shape and size, anywhere in the drawing area.

To create a ceiling by picking points:

- 1. Make sure the location you want to insert the ceiling on is the current location in the build-ing locations drop box.
- Select Insert > Ceilings > Ceiling by Picking Points, or click the down arrow next to the Ceilings button R on the Building toolbar and select Ceiling by Picking Points.
- 3. In the catalog, select the ceiling type you want to insert.
- 4. Select a start point for the ceiling outline.
- Continue selecting points until the outline is defined. (You do not have to select the start point again because the last point you pick is always closed back to the start point.)
- 6. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Defining the Extents of Ceilings to be Inserted in Rooms

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, a ceiling inserted with the Ceiling by Room tool extends to the inside edge of the wall core (e.g. stud wall). If you prefer you can set the ceiling to extend to the interior edge of the interior wall surface (e.g. drywall) instead. This is an insertion setting that is defined in your program settings. Changing this setting has no effect on ceilings that have already been inserted. It only affects ceilings that you are going to insert with the Ceiling by Room tool. If you want to change the extents of an existing ceiling you can click and drag its editing grips.

To define the extents of ceilings to be inserted with the Ceiling by Room tool:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Insertion by Room* area, click the drop box next to the **Ceilings** item.
- If you want ceilings in rooms to extend to the wall core, select Wall Core. If you want them to extend to the interior wall surface, select

Wall Surface.

5. Click **OK**.

Creating a Tray Ceiling

A tray ceiling slopes upward with one or more steps prior to reaching a flat portion. This decorative ceiling treatment is often used to add volume or height to a room.

You can create a tray ceiling by changing a ceiling's type to Tray in its properties, then defining the tray height, skirt width and slope angle.

To create a tray ceiling:

- 1. Create a regular flat ceiling in the room that you want to have a tray ceiling.
- 2. Select the ceiling.
- 3. Right-click and select **Properties**.
- 4. In the **Ceilings** dialog, click the **Tray** option in the *Type* area.
- 5. In the *Properties* area, click the **Tray Height** option, then type the desired distance from the base of the ceiling to the raised flat portion. This defines the height of the tray.
- 6. Click the **Skirt Width** option, then specify the desired distance from the outer edge of the ceiling to the edge of the tray.
- 7. Click the **Edge Shape** option, then select either *Straight*, *Gable* or *Arched*.

Straight. Creates straight tray edges that can be angled.

Gable. Creates straight tray edges and leaves one side open on the tray so that the tray can fit up against a wall.

Arched. Creates curved tray edges.

- 8. If you selected the *Straight* edge shape, specify the desired angle for the tray's edges in the **Slope Value** edit box. To specify the method that you would like to use to specify the slope value, choose either *Degrees*, ? in 12, 1 in ?, or *Percent* from the **Slope Type** drop box.
- 9. If you selected the *Arched* edge shape, specify the following values:

Start Angle. The angle of the start of the curve, measured from the base of the ceiling

to the center of the starting curve. Choose a value from 1° to 90° .

End Angle. The angle of the upper portion of the curve, measured from the center of the ending curve to the top of the tray.

Radius. The distance from the base of the ceiling to the center of the curved edge.

10. Click **OK**.

Creating a Cathedral Ceiling

A cathedral ceiling is a high, vaulted, open ceiling that can be arched or slant upward to a point.

You can create a cathedral ceiling by changing a ceiling's type to Cathedral in its properties, then defining the ceiling's edge conditions.

To create a cathedral ceiling:

- 1. Create a regular flat ceiling in the room that you want to have a cathedral ceiling.
- 2. Select the ceiling.
- 3. Right-click and select **Properties**.
- 4. In the **Ceilings** dialog, click the **Cathedral** option in the *Type* area.
- Click the Skirt Width option, then specify the distance from the edge of the ceiling at which you want the ceiling to start sloping upward. If you want the ceiling to start sloping directly from the outer edges, specify a value of 0.
- Click the Edge Shape option, then select either Straight, Gable or Arched to define the shape of the ceiling's sloping edges.

Straight. Creates straight edges that can be angled.

Gable. Creates straight edges and leaves one side open so that the ceiling can fit up against a wall.

Arched. Creates curved edges.

7. If you selected the **Straight** edge shape, specify the desired angle for the sloping edges in the **Slope Value** edit box. To specify the method that you would like to use to specify the slope value, choose either *Degrees*, ? in 12, 1 in ?, or *Percent* from the **Slope Type** drop box.

8. If you selected the **Arched** edge shape, specify the following values:

Start Angle. The angle of the start of the curve, measured from the base of the ceiling to the center of the starting curve. Choose a value from 1° to 90°.

End Angle. The angle of the upper portion of the curve, measured from the center of the ending curve to the top of the ceiling's peak.

Radius. The distance from the base of the ceiling to the center of the curved edge.

Vert. Distance. The distance from the base of the ceiling to the peak.

9. Click **OK**.

Note: If you are creating a cathedral ceiling, you need to make sure your roof is steep enough to accommodate the ceiling. Otherwise, the ceiling will go through the roof.

Moving a Ceiling

You can move a ceiling using the Move tool.

To move a ceiling:

- 1. Select the ceiling by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- Click and drag the ceiling to the desired location in your drawing, then release your mouse button.

Resizing or Reshaping a Ceiling

You can resize or reshape a ceiling by clicking and dragging its edges and corners.

To resize or reshape a ceiling:

- Select the ceiling by clicking on one of its edges. If you want to resize the ceiling, click on the edge that you want to adjust. A solid blue grip appears on the edge you selected, and hollow blue grips appear at each corner of the ceiling surface.
- 2. To resize the ceiling, hover your pointer over the solid blue grip, then click and drag the ceiling edge to adjust the ceiling size. Altern-

atively you can select the **Move Edge** tool on the right-click menu.

3. To reshape the ceiling, hover your pointer over one of the corner grips, then click and drag the corner to adjust the ceiling shape. Alternatively you can select the **Stretch** tool on the right-click menu.

If you would like to stretch only a portion of a ceiling edge, you can accomplish this by adding a node to the ceiling edge. For example, you may want to stretch a portion of a ceiling into the foyer or closet. See *Adding a Node to a Ceiling* on page 77.

Adding a Node to a Ceiling

You can add nodes to a ceiling edge to create more grips along the edge. You can then click and drag a grip on a specific segment to reshape that portion of the ceiling.

To add a node to a ceiling:

- 1. Select the ceiling.
- Right-click and select Add Node, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Add Node.
- Click on the point on the ceiling edge where you want to add a node. The edge is split into separate edges, each with its own grips for moving and stretching.

Removing a Node from a Ceiling

If you have added a node to a ceiling edge, removing a node causes the segment with which the node is associated to merge with the adjacent segments. Note that you cannot delete a node if it is the only node on the edge.

To remove a node from a ceiling:

- 1. Select the ceiling.
- 2. Right-click and select **Remove Node**.
- 3. Click on the node to remove.

Curving a Ceiling Edge

You can curve a ceiling edge using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the edge to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve a ceiling edge by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the ceiling edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a ceiling edge to a selected point:

- 1. Click on the ceiling edge you want to curve.
- Right-click in and select Curve, or select Edit
 Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The ceiling edge automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Raising or Lowering a Ceiling

You can lower or raise a ceiling using the Elevate tool. **To raise or lower a ceiling:**

- 1. Select the ceiling by clicking on the edge of it.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The current value in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the ceiling above the floor level.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the height you want the ceiling to sit at above the floor.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the ceiling looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the ceiling in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Applying Different Colors and Materials to Ceilings

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly apply different colors or materials to ceilings.

To apply a material to a ceiling:

- Display your model in 3D view and make sure the ceiling is visible in the view. You may need to hide the roof.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply. You may want to select *Ceiling*

Material from the **Filter** drop box to display only ceiling materials.

- Click on the ceiling you want to apply the material to. You can continue applying the material to other ceiling surfaces, or select another material in the catalog.
- 5. Right-click and select Finish.

Deleting a Ceiling

You can delete a ceiling in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a ceiling:**

- 1. Select the ceiling.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Ceiling Openings

You can create an opening in a ceiling using the Cut Opening tool. You create the opening by picking points to define its size and shape.

Once inserted you can resize, reshape, or curve the opening.

Cutting Openings in Ceilings

You can create an opening in a ceiling using the Cut Opening tool. You create the opening by picking points to define its size and shape.

To cut an opening in a ceiling:

- Select the ceiling by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select Cut Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Cut Opening.
- 3. Select a start point for the opening.
- 4. Continue selecting points to define the opening. As you select points, the opening is created. The last point picked is always connected back to the start point to form a closed shape, so you don't have to select the start point again.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Resizing or Reshaping Ceiling Openings

If you have created an opening in a ceiling, you can resize or reshape the opening by clicking and dragging its edges or corners.

To resize or reshape a ceiling opening:

- 1. In 2D plan view, click on the opening edge you want to move.
- To resize the opening, hover your pointer over the center blue grip of the edge that you want to move, then click and drag the edge to adjust the opening size.
- 3. To reshape the opening, click and drag a corner grip.

Curving a Ceiling Opening

You can curve the edge of a ceiling opening using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the opening edge to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve an opening edge by clicking and dragging:

- 1. In 2D plan view, click on the opening edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the opening edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve an opening edge to a selected point:

- 1. In 2D plan view, click on the opening edge you want to curve.
- Right-click in and select Curve, or select Edit
 Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The opening edge automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Removing an Opening from a Ceiling

You can remove an opening from a manually inserted ceiling using the Remove Opening tool. A manually inserted ceiling is one that was inserted with either the Ceiling by Room, Ceiling by Perimeter or Ceiling by Picking Points tool.

Note: You cannot remove an opening from a manually inserted ceiling using Delete.

To remove an opening from a manually inserted ceiling:

- Click on the edge of the ceiling or opening to select the ceiling.
- Right-click and select Remove Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Remove Opening.
- 3. Click on the edge of the opening. The opening is removed.

Chapter 9: Stairs, Ramps & Railings

Stairs, Ramps & Railings

If your design has more than one floor, you'll want to insert a staircase. The catalog contains a variety of stair and ramp styles, including straight, spiral, foldback, L-shaped and L-winder. There are even stairs specifically for decks and porches.

You can edit the composition and dimensions of each component in your staircase to create the exact look you want. Stairs and ramps are inserted as solid objects with point-and-click simplicity. Just select the staircase or ramp you want to insert in the catalog, then click to insert it in your model.

The catalog also contains an excellent selection of railing types. A railing can be just a handrail, or a balustrade with posts, top/bottom rails and newels. You can insert railings on a staircase automatically. You can choose to put it on both sides, the left side, the right side, or the center. You can also draw a horizontal railing by picking points.

Stairs

You can use the Stairs/Ramps tool to insert a staircase in your drawing with one click. The catalog contains a variety of stair styles, including straight, spiral, foldback, L-shaped and L-winder.

Stairs are completely customizable so you can achieve the exact configuration you want. To display a menu of stair editing commands, select a staircase and then right-click your mouse. Selecting **Stairs Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to stairs.

Inserting Stairs and Ramps

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert a staircase or ramp with a single mouse click. If you place the staircase near a wall, the staircase will automatically snap to the wall. Once you have inserted a staircase, you can edit its size, style and geometry.

To insert a staircase or ramp:

- 1. In the building locations drop box, select the location where you want to insert the base of the staircase.
- Select Insert > Stairs/Ramps, or click
 on the Building toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog, select the staircase or ramp you want to insert.
- 4. Position the staircase and click to insert it.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Moving a Staircase or Ramp

You can move a staircase or ramp by clicking and dragging it.

To move a staircase or ramp:

- 1. Click on the staircase or ramp to select it.
- 3. Click and drag the staircase/ramp to move it.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

Rotating a Staircase or Ramp

You can rotate a staircase or ramp by simply clicking and dragging it.

To rotate a staircase or ramp:

- 1. Select the staircase or ramp.
- Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. ⁺∪⁺∪
- 3. Click and drag to rotate the staircase or ramp.
- 4. When the staircase or ramp is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Parts of a Staircase



Editing Stair Size Properties

You can edit the general dimensions of a staircase, such as height, width, and number of steps. You may want to familiarize yourself with the parts of a staircase before editing these properties.

To edit stair size properties:

- 1. Select the staircase whose stair properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Stairs/Ramps** dialog, edit the dimensions in the *Properties* window.

Overall Height. The vertical distance from the base of the staircase to the top of the staircase. Generally this is the distance from one floor to the next.

Total Steps. The total number of steps in the staircase including all treads and landings. This value is controlled by the Overall Height and Riser Maximum, so you can only go so

high or so low when specifying the total number of steps.

Riser Height. The distance from the top of one tread to the top of the next tread. The riser height adjusts if you edit the Overall Height or Total Steps, making this a readonly value.

Tread Run. The width of a step from the nose of the step to the riser of the next step.

Riser Maximum. The maximum height allowed for risers. The riser height adjusts when you change the Overall Height or Total Steps variables.

Show Riser. Inserts vertical boards under the treads. If turned off, the stairs are open under the treads.

4. Click **OK**.

Editing a Staircase Layout

You can choose from a multitude of preset staircase layouts and edit the dimensions of individual segments to suit your needs.

To edit a staircase layout:

- 1. Select the staircase whose stair properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Stairs/Ramps** dialog, select the Layout tab.
- 4. To change the layout of the staircase, make a selection from the *Preset Layouts* drop box, or click the graphic to display the available layouts and select the one you want.
- 5. To edit the dimensions of a particular segment, select the segment in the *Layout Segments* window. For example, an L-shaped staircase will have three segments: Stair 1, Landing 2 and Stair 3. The Stair 1 segment is the lower flight of stairs, Landing 2 is the central landing between the two flights, and Stair 3 is the upper flight of stairs.
 Different layouts will have different parameters. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.)

highlights the corresponding dimension in the stair graphic, and vice versa.

Stair Segments

Number of Steps. The number of steps in the flight.

Position Offset. Shifts the base of the staircase left or right from the center line. A positive value shifts it right, a negative value shifts it left. If the Upper Offset is set to 0, the entire staircase is moved.

Lower Width. The width of the bottom step.

Upper Width. The width of the top step.

Upper Offset. Shifts the top of the stair segment left or right to create an angled flight. A positive value shifts it right, a negative value shifts it left.

Landing Connection. Choose from Front, Bottom or Under to determine how the stairs attach to the landing.

Adjust Width. If the staircase has multiple segments, this adjusts the width of attached landings and stair flights to match the width settings of the current segment.

Adjust Height. When editing the number of risers or height of a segment in a multi-segmented staircase, this determines which other segments (or all others) are to be adjusted to make up the overall height of all segments.

Landing Segments (vary per style)

Position Offset. Shifts the landing left or right. A positive value moves the landing right. A negative value moves it left.

Width. The width of the landing along the lower flight of stairs. By default this matches the Upper Width setting of the lower stair flight.

Depth 1. The width of the landing along the upper flight of stairs. By default this matches the Lower Width setting of the upper stair flight.

Depth 2. The width of the exposed side of the landing.

Adjust Width. Adjusts the width of attached stair flights to match the width of the landing.

- To add a flight or landing to your staircase, click Add in the *Layout Segments* area. Select the segment you want to add in the Add/Edit Segment dialog.
- 7. The segment is added to your list of segments in the *Layout Segments* window. Proceed with defining the parameters for the new segment in the *Parameters* window.
- To change an existing segment to another type, select the segment in the *Layout Segments* window, then click Edit. Select the new segment type in the Add/Edit Segment dialog.
- 9. To delete a segment from the staircase, select the segment in the *Layout Segments* window, then click **Delete**.
- 10. Once you are satisfied with your layout settings, click **OK**.

Editing Stair Details

Editing stair details lets you precisely control the size and position of treads, risers, stringers and landing platforms.

To edit stair details:

- 1. Select the staircase whose stair properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To change the stringer style or create a solid stair, click the appropriate graphic in the *Type* area.
- 4. To edit tread, riser, stringer and landing details, select the Details tab. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the stair graphic, and vice versa.
- Edit the properties in the *Properties* area.
 Tread Thickness. The thickness of each step.
 Nosing Depth. The distance the step extends past the riser.

Riser Angle. The tilt of the riser board. A value of 0 means the board is perpendicular to the step (straight up and down). A value above 0 tilts the riser down toward the back of the staircase. The maximum angle allowed is 20° .



Stringer Side Offset. The distance the side stringers are offset from the ends of the treads.

Stringer Width. The distance from the bottom of the stringer to the underside of the tread/riser intersection. Setting the stringer width to match the height of your staircase creates a stringer that runs from the staircase right to the floor.



Stringer Thickness. The thickness of the stringer member.

Max Stringer Spacing. The maximum distance allowed between stringers. If you increase the width of the staircase, additional stringers will be inserted if this spacing is exceeded.

Landing Thickness. The thickness of the landing platform.

6. Click **OK**.

Editing the Appearance of a Stair Cut Line

When viewing a staircase in 2D plan view you can see a cut line through the staircase. The cut line is a standard drafting symbol for stairs.

You can change the cut line's position, size, angle and style. You can also hide it from view if you want.

To edit the appearance of the cut line:

- 1. Select the staircase.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Stairs/Ramps** dialog, select the Details tab.
- 4. Edit the settings in the *Cut Line* area.

Show Cut Lines. Shows or hides the cut lines in 2D plan view.

Extension. The distance the cut line extends past the edge of the staircase in 2D plan view. **Angle**. The angle of the cut line in 2D plan view.

Spacing. If using the *Double* or *Double Arch* style, this is the distance between the lines.

Elevation. How high up the staircase the cut line sits.

Style. Choose from *Single, Single Architectural, Double* and *Double Architectural*. The default is *Double Architectural*.

5. Once you've defined your cut line, click **OK**.

Deleting a Staircase or Ramp

You can delete a staircase or ramp in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a staircase or ramp:

- 1. Select the staircase or ramp.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Cutting an Opening in an Automatic Floor

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert an opening of any shape and size in an automatic floor by defining the area to be cut out,

then deleting it. You may need to do this to accommodate a staircase.

Note: If you want to insert an opening in a floor that was created with a Floor tool, see *Cutting an Opening in a Manually Inserted Floor* on page 72.

To insert an opening in an automatic floor:

- Select Insert > Floors > Room Division, or click the down arrow next to the Floors button and a select resulting toolbar and select Room Division.
- 2. Select points to define the outline of the opening, ensuring the outline forms a closed shape.
- 3. Right-click and select **Finish**. An outline is created on the floor surface. You can stretch, move and curve the outline if necessary to get the exact size and shape you want.
- 4. Go into 3D view and make sure the floor is visible and accessible.
- 5. Click in the center of the outline you drew to select the outline.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Cutting Openings in Ceilings

You can create an opening in a ceiling using the Cut Opening tool. You create the opening by picking points to define its size and shape.

To cut an opening in a ceiling:

- 1. Select the ceiling by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select Cut Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Cut Opening.
- 3. Select a start point for the opening.
- 4. Continue selecting points to define the opening. As you select points, the opening is created. The last point picked is always connected back to the start point to form a closed shape, so you don't have to select the start point again.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Ramps

You can use the Stairs/Ramps tool to insert a ramp in your drawing with one click. The catalog contains ramps with different degrees of incline, but you can edit the slope to suit your needs.

You can edit the layout of a ramp to achieve the exact configuration you want. To display a menu of ramp editing commands, select the ramp and then rightclick your mouse. Selecting **Stairs Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to stairs and ramps.

Inserting Stairs and Ramps

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert a staircase or ramp with a single mouse click. If you place the staircase near a wall, the staircase will automatically snap to the wall. Once you have inserted a staircase, you can edit its size, style and geometry.

To insert a staircase or ramp:

- 1. In the building locations drop box, select the location where you want to insert the base of the staircase.
- Select Insert > Stairs/Ramps, or click
 on the Building toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog, select the staircase or ramp you want to insert.
- 4. Position the staircase and click to insert it.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Moving a Staircase or Ramp

You can move a staircase or ramp by clicking and dragging it.

To move a staircase or ramp:

- 1. Click on the staircase or ramp to select it.
- 3. Click and drag the staircase/ramp to move it.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

Rotating a Staircase or Ramp

You can rotate a staircase or ramp by simply clicking and dragging it.

To rotate a staircase or ramp:

- 1. Select the staircase or ramp.
- Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. ⁺U⁺U
- 3. Click and drag to rotate the staircase or ramp.
- 4. When the staircase or ramp is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Editing General Ramp Properties

If editing a ramp, you can select a uniform or full style, and edit the ramp thickness and landing thickness. If you want to change the layout (shape) of the ramp or edit properties such as the height or slope, see *Editing the Layout of a Ramp* on page 86.

To edit ramp properties:

- 1. Select the ramp.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Stairs/Ramps** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- 4. If you want to change the ramp type, click on the type you want in the *Type* area. The first type is a ramp with uniform thickness, while the second is a full, wedge-style ramp.
- 5. If you selected the uniform ramp style, you can change its thickness by entering the desired thickness in the **Ramp Thickness** edit box.
- 6. To change the thickness of the landing, enter a value in the **Landing Thickness** edit box.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Editing the Layout of a Ramp

You can choose from a multitude of preset ramp layouts as well as edit various layout properties such as length and slope.

To edit the layout of a ramp:

- 1. Select the ramp.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Stairs/Ramps** dialog, select the Layout tab.

- 4. To change the layout of the ramp, make a selection from the *Preset Layouts* drop box, or click the graphic to display the available layouts and select the one you want.
- 5. To edit the dimensions of a particular segment, select the segment in the *Layout Segments* window. A straight ramp will have one segment, named Ramp 1. Other ramp styles will have more segments. For example, an Lshaped ramp will have three segments: Ramp 1, Landing 2 and Ramp 3. The Ramp 1 segment is the lower section of the ramp, Landing 2 is the central landing between the two sections, and Ramp 3 is the upper section of the ramp. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the ramp graphic, and vice versa.
- Edit the variables in the *Parameters* window.
 Ramp Segments

Slope. The angle of the ramp's incline.

Length. The length of the ramp's surface.

Position Offset. Shifts the base of the ramp left or right from the center line. A positive value shifts it right, a negative value shifts it left. If the Upper Offset is set to 0, the entire ramp is moved.

Lower Width. The width of the bottom of the ramp.

Upper Width. The width of the top of the ramp.

Upper Offset. Shifts the top of the ramp segment left or right to create an angled ramp. A positive value shifts it right, a negative value shifts it left.

Adjust Width. For ramps with multiple segments, this adjusts the width of attached landings and ramp flights to match the width settings of the current segment.

Adjust Height. When editing the height of a segment in a multi-segmented ramp, this determines which other segments (or all others) are to be adjusted to make up the overall height of all segments.

Landing Segments (vary per style)

Position Offset. Shifts the landing left or right from the center line. A positive value moves it right, a negative value moves it left.

Width. The width of the landing along the lower ramp section. By default this matches the Upper Width setting of the lower ramp section.

Depth 1. The width of the landing along the upper ramp section. By default this matches the Lower Width setting of the upper ramp section.

Depth 2. The width of the exposed side of the landing.

Adjust Width. Adjusts the width of attached ramp segments to match the width of the landing.

- 7. To add a segment or landing to your ramp, click **Add** in the *Layout Segments* area. Select the segment you want to add in the **Add/Edit Segment** dialog.
- 8. The segment is added to your list of segments in the *Layout Segments* window. Proceed with defining the parameters for the new segment in the *Parameters* window.
- To change an existing segment to another type, select the segment in the *Layout Segments* window, then click **Edit**. Select the new segment type in the **Add/Edit Segment** dialog.
- 10. To delete a segment from the ramp, select the segment in the *Layout Segments* window, then click **Delete**.
- 11. Once you are satisfied with your layout settings, click **OK**.

Deleting a Staircase or Ramp

You can delete a staircase or ramp in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a staircase or ramp:

- 1. Select the staircase or ramp.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Railings

The catalog contains an excellent selection of railing types. A railing can be just a handrail, or a balustrade with posts, top/bottom rails and newels.

You can insert railings on a staircase automatically. You can choose to put it on both sides, the left side, the right side, or the center. You can also draw a horizontal railing by picking points.

There are many ways to edit a railing. To display a menu of railing editing commands, select a railing and then right-click your mouse. Selecting **Railings Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to railings.

Inserting Railings on Both Sides of a Staircase or Ramp

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert railings on both sides of a staircase automatically. A railing can be just a handrail, or a balustrade with posts, top/bottom rails and newels.

To insert railings on both sides of a staircase automatically:

- Select Insert > Railings > Railings on Stairs Automatically, or click the down arrow next to the Railings button Railings on the Building toolbar and select Railings on Stairs Automatically.
- 2. In the catalog, select the railing type you want to insert.
- 3. Click on the staircase. The railings are inserted automatically on both sides.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Inserting a Railing on the Left Side of a Staircase or Ramp

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A railing can be just a handrail, or a balustrade with posts, top/bottom rails and newels. Using the Railing on Stair Left tool you can insert a railing on the left side of a staircase easily by just clicking two points on the stair.
To insert a railing on the left side of a staircase:

- Select Insert > Railings > Railing on Stair Left, or click the down arrow next to the Railings button Railing on the Building toolbar and select Railing on Stair Left.
- 2. In the catalog, select the railing type you want to insert.
- 3. Select a point anywhere along the bottom of the staircase (or along the tread where you want the bottom of the railing to sit) to define the level of the railing's bottom post. Your cursor will snap to the left side of the staircase as you start to draw the railing.
- 4. Select a point anywhere along the top of the staircase (or along the tread where you want the top of the railing to sit) to define the level of the railing's top post.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Inserting a Railing on the Right Side of a Staircase or Ramp

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A railing can be just a handrail, or a balustrade with posts, top/bottom rails and newels. Using the Railing on Stair Right tool you can insert a railing on the right side of a staircase easily by just clicking two points on the stair.

- Select Insert > Railings > Railing on Stair Right, or click the down arrow next to the Railings button Railing on the Building toolbar and select Railing on Stair Right.
- 2. In the catalog, select the railing type you want to insert.
- 3. Select a point anywhere along the bottom of the staircase (or along the tread where you want the bottom of the railing to sit) to define the level of the railing's bottom post. Your cursor will snap to the right side of the staircase as you start to draw the railing.
- 4. Select a point anywhere along the top of the staircase (or along the tread where you want the top of the railing to sit) to define the level of the railing's top post.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Inserting a Railing Along the Center of a Staircase or Ramp

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A railing can be just a handrail, or a balustrade with posts, top/bottom rails and newels. Using the Railing on Stair Center tool you can insert a railing along the center of a staircase easily by just clicking two points on the stair.

To insert a railing along the center of a staircase:

- Select Insert > Railings > Railing on Stair Center, or click the down arrow next to the Railings button Railing on the Building toolbar and select Railing on Stair Center.
- 2. In the catalog, select the railing type you want to insert.
- 3. Select a point anywhere along the bottom of the staircase (or along the tread where you want the bottom of the railing to sit) to define the level of the railing's bottom post. Your cursor will snap to the center of the staircase as you start to draw the railing.
- 4. Select a point anywhere along the top of the staircase (or along the tread where you want the top of the railing to sit) to define the level of the railing's top post.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Inserting a Horizontal Railing

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Railing by Picking Points tool to create a horizontal railing anywhere in your model. You may, for example, want to create a railing around a stairwell, or insert a railing to separate two rooms in your house. You create the railing by picking the start point and end point of the railing. Each point you pick serves as a main post point.

To insert a railing along a floor:

- 1. Make sure the building location that you want to insert the railing on is current.
- Select Insert > Railings > Railings by Picking Points, or click on the Building toolbar.

- 3. In the catalog, select the railing type you want to insert.
- 4. Select the start point for the railing.
- 5. Select an end point for the railing. You can continue adding sections to the railing if you want.
- 6. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Parts of a Railing



See Also: Editing Railing Properties

Editing Railing Properties

When editing a railing, you can choose a different railing type as well as control the dimensions and settings of posts, rails and newels. You may want to view the parts of a railing before editing railing properties.

To edit railing properties:

- 1. Select the railing. If the railing has multiple segments, use Shift+click to select the remaining segments.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

- 3. In the Railings dialog, select the Basic tab.
- 4. To change the railing type, click on the type you want in the *Type* area.
- 5. To edit the settings of individual railing components, make your changes in parameters window. The available parameters vary depending on the railing type. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the railing graphic, and vice versa.

Posts

Include Posts. Inserts a post at the railing's start point and endpoint, and at points in between defined by the Post Spacing.

Include First Post. If disabled, eliminates the post at the start point of the railing.

Include Last Post. If disabled, eliminates the post at the end point of the railing.

Post Spacing. The distance between intermediate posts in your railing.

Post Position. Choosing *From Start* measures the intermediate posts from the start point of the railing. Choosing *Centered* inserts an intermediate post at the center of the railing and measures other intermediate posts from there.

Post Height. This value is determined by the handrail and bottom rail heights.

Post Style. Choose either *Rectangle* or *Round* for the post shape.

Post Width. The width of the post.

Post Depth. The depth of the post.

Post Rotation. Determines the rotation of the connecting post where two railings connect. Choosing *Half Way* rotates the connecting post half way between the angle. Choosing *None* leaves the connecting post aligned to the first railing.

Handrail

Handrail Height. The height of the handrail above the insertion surface.

Make Continuous. Makes the handrail cut through all posts, creating a continuous, solid member.

Handrail Style. Choose either a *Rectangle* or *Round* shape.

Handrail Width. The width of the handrail (as seen in 2D plan view).

Handrail Depth. The depth (thickness) of the handrail.

Bottom Rail

Bottom Rail Height. The height of the bottom rail from the insertion surface.

Bottom Rail Style. Choose either a *Rectangle* or *Round* shape for the rail.

Bottom Rail Width. The width of the bottom (as seen in 2D plan view).

Bottom Rail Depth. The depth (thickness) of the bottom rail.

Balusters

Baluster Spacing. The horizontal distance between balusters.

Baluster Style. Choose either *Rectangle* or *Round* for the baluster shape.

Baluster Width. The width of the baluster.

Baluster Depth. The depth (thickness) of the baluster.

Stair Insertion

Post Offset. The horizontal offset of the first post from the bottom of the staircase. Only a positive value can be specified, which moves the post further back along the stairs.

Side Offset. Offset of railing from the sides of the treads.

Connection. Determines how railings are connected to the staircase. *Connection 2* maintains the distance from the nosing to the railing at all times. *Connection 1* breaks this rule to create a nicer-looking railing.

6. Click **OK**.

Changing the Length of a Railing

You can lengthen or shorten a railing by clicking and dragging one of its end points.

To stretch a railing:

- 1. Select the railing. A grip is displayed at each railing end.
- 3. Click and drag to lengthen or shorten the railing, then release your mouse button.

Stretching a Railing

You can use the Stretch tool to lengthen or shorten a railing and re-position it at the same time.

To stretch a railing:

- 1. Select the railing.
- 2. Right-click and select Stretch.
- 3. Click and drag the railing end you want to adjust, then release the mouse button.

Rotating a Railing

You can rotate a railing using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a railing:

- 1. Select the railing.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- Click on the point you want to rotate around, then move your mouse to rotate the railing around the selected point.
- 4. When the railing is at the desired rotation, click to finish.

Deleting a Railing

You can delete a railing in a few easy steps.

To delete a railing:

- Select the railing. If the railing has multiple segments, you can drag a selection window around it to select it, or select one segment then Shift+click to select the remaining segments.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Chapter 10: Roofs

Roof Systems

To complete your structural model, you want to insert a roof over it. The design of your roof can be a major factor in the overall look and feel of your home. Inserting a roof in Envisioneer is incredibly simple. Just click inside your model and the roof is inserted. Roofs are inserted by location. Therefore, if you have a two-story house, each story may require its own roof if the levels are split. The great thing about roofs in Envisioneer is that you can edit each roof edge individually to achieve the precise geometry, dimensions and appearance you want. This means that virtually any roof configuration is possible, including multiple pitch, multiple plate height roofs. And with a wide selection of roof styles to choose from, including hip, gable, mansard and arched, you can be as creative as you want.

To give your roof design that extra edge, you can add things like dormers, skylights and roof accessories such as solar panels and roof vents, all of which are completely customizable to suit your needs.

Roofs

There are two ways to insert a roof. The quickest, easiest way is to use the Roof by Perimeter tool to automatically insert a roof over the perimeter walls on a selected location. To create secondary roofs, such as porch roofs, you can use the Roof by Picking Points tool. To insert an opening in a roof, use the Cut Opening tool on the right-click menu.

Regardless of how a roof is created, practically every aspect of a roof can be edited and customized to create the precise configuration you want. For example, you can convert a hip to gable, or edit the slope or plate height of individual sections. To display a menu of roof editing commands, select the roof and then right-click your mouse. Selecting **Roofs Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to roofs.

Inserting an Automatic Roof Over Perimeter Walls

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Roof by Perimeter tool to automatically insert a roof over the perimeter wall layout of a selected building location. If you have a two-story home where the ground floor wall layout is different than the upper story wall layout, and you want each story to have its own roof, you will need to insert a roof on each location.

By default, the roof is inserted directly on top of the walls of the current building location. You can edit the support height as well as change the roof's style and dimensions.

To insert a roof over an entire wall layout:

- 1. Make sure the current location is the location containing the walls you want to insert the roof over.
- Select Insert > Roofs > Roof by Perimeter, or click A on the Building toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog, select the roof type you want to insert. Note that the catalog does not contain gable roofs. If you want to create a gable roof, insert a hip roof first, then convert it to a gable.
- 4. Click inside the wall perimeter. The roof is inserted automatically.

Note: If a roof already exists on the current location, it will be deleted.

Inserting a Roof By Picking Points

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Roof by Picking Points tool to create a roof of a custom size and shape by drawing the basic outline of the roof. This option is ideal when you want the roof to cover only a specific area, such as a porch.

To create a roof by picking points:

- Make sure the current location is the location containing the walls that you want to insert the roof over.
- Select Insert > Roofs > Roof by Picking Points, or click the down arrow next to the Roofs button Roofs button next to the Building toolbar and select Roof by Picking Points.
- 3. In the catalog, select the roof type you want to insert. Note that the catalog does not contain gable roofs. If you want to create a gable roof, insert a hip roof first, then convert it to a gable.
- 4. Select a start point for the roof outline. Typically you would select an exterior wall corner. Continue selecting points until the boundary is defined. If you make a mistake while drawing the outline you can undo the last segment drawn by right-clicking and selecting **Step Back**. You do not have to select the start point again because the last point you pick is always closed back to the start point.) See example



5. Right-click and select Finish.

Note: If the roof you are inserting runs up against any upper-story walls, the roof will cut around the walls. You can adjust the roof to avoid saddle situations, or to ignore the walls. See *Changing the Way a Lower-Story Roof is Created* on page 92. **Tip**: You can create any custom, complex roof by drawing the individual surfaces of the roof.

Selecting a Roof for Editing

You can select a roof by clicking on one of its edges. When you select a roof, the entire roof is selected, and a number of different grips and markers appear on the roof.

General editing tools like Move and Rotate will affect the roof as a whole. By clicking and dragging the solid blue grips at the center of each edge you can move an edge to effectively stretch the roof. By clicking and dragging the hollow blue grips at the corners, you can stretch the corners of the roof to reshape it. Example



The red and green arrows are surface markers. The green arrow indicates the currently selected surface (roof segment). Changes to most properties, such as the roof type, slope, and overhang distance, affect only the currently selected surface (which is marked by the green arrow). You can make additional surfaces current by simply clicking on the red arrows to change them to green. This lets you apply changes to multiple surfaces simultaneously.

Changing the Way a Lower-Story Roof is Created

By default, a lower-story roof cuts around upper-story walls where it runs up against upper-story walls. You can adjust the roof to avoid saddle situations if you want. A saddle situation is one where rain or snow runs down the roof slope and collects in areas where the roof meets a wall. You can also have the roof ignore the upper-story walls completely.

To change the way a lower-story roof is created:

- 1. Select the roof, then right-click and select **Properties**.
- 2. In the **Roofs** dialog, click the **Solution Type** button.
- 3. In the **Solution Type** dialog, click on the solution you want.
- 4. Click **OK** in the **Roofs** dialog.

Converting a Hip Roof to a Gable Roof

To convert a hip roof to a gable roof, you need to select two hip ends, then select the gable roof type in the roof properties.

To convert a hip roof to a gable roof:

- Click on the roof edge of one of the ends you want to convert. The roof is selected, and arrows appear on each roof surface edge. The arrow on the roof edge you selected should be green to indicate that it is the currently selected roof surface.
- Click on the arrow on the opposite roof edge. That arrow turns green also. Both hip ends are now selected.



- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 4. In the **Roofs** dialog, click the **Hip** button in the *Roof Shape* area of the Basic page.
- 5. In the **Roof Shape** dialog, click the **Gable** graphic.
- 6. Click **OK** in the **Roofs** dialog. The roof is converted.

Note: By default, gable ends on a roof do not display a wall or material within the pitched area of the roof. To extend the wall beneath a gable end to the pitched edges of the roof, see *Extending Walls to the Roof* on page 93. To display a separate wall in the pitched area, see *Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends* on page 94. To display a material in the pitched area rather than an actual wall, see *Defining the Material at Gable Ends* on page 94.

Extending Walls to the Roof

By default, the tops of most walls in the catalog are set to be level (regardless of the roof type), and their height is determined by the Wall Height setting of the building location on which they reside. You can specify that you want a wall to automatically extend to the roof, regardless of the Wall Height setting in your building locations. This is particularly useful for filling in the pitched areas at gable ends.

To extend walls to the roof:

- Select the wall that you want to auto-extend to the roof. You can select additional walls using Shift+click.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- In the Walls dialog, select the Top and Bottom tab.
- 4. In the *Wall Top* area, enable the **Auto Extend** option.
- 5. To rake the external side of the wall, check the Exterior Wall Tops to Roof check box. If you want to offset the wall a specific distance from the roof surface, enter a value in the Offset below roof surface edit box.
- 6. To rake the internal side of the wall, check the **Interior Wall Tops to Roof** check box. If you want to offset the wall a specific distance

from the roof surface, enter a value in the **Off-set below roof surface** edit box.

7. Click **OK**. The walls are adjusted.

Tip: If you want to use a different wall material within the pitched area of a gable end, set the wall shape to 'Level' in its properties and change the roof edge properties instead. In a roof's properties you can choose to display a separate wall in the pitched area by enabling the Display Gable option on the roof's Basic property page and selecting the desired gable Wall Type. This wall can then be selected independently of the main wall so that you can control its properties and framing separately.

Defining the Material at Gable Ends

If you have converted hip roof ends to gable roof ends, you can choose to display a material such as siding within the gabled areas by enabling the Display Gable option in the roof's properties and selecting a material for the roof's Gable End component. You can also choose to display no material at all at gable ends, or choose to display an actual wall. Note that the Gable End material setting does not apply if you have chosen to display an actual wall beneath gable ends in the roof's properties. Also, should you choose to display a material instead of a wall, the material will have no framing associated with it.

To change the appearance of raked surfaces under gable ends:

- 1. Click on a roof edge to select the roof.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. If you want to display a material within the pitched areas of the roof's gable ends, enable the **Display Gable** check box on the Basic property page. If you do not want to display a material at all, disable this check box. (If you would like to display an actual wall instead of just a material, click in the **Wall Type** field below the **Display Gable** check box and select a wall from the catalog. See *Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends* on page 94.)

- 4. If you are displaying a material (rather than a wall) at gable ends, select the Appearance tab.
- 5. In the Components list, select Gable End.
- 6. In the *Material* area, click the **Select** button.
- 7. In the **Materials** dialog, select the material you would like to use, then click **OK**.
- 8. Click **OK** in the **Roofs** dialog.

Note: If the Display Gable option is enabled and you do not select a wall type to display, the material specified for the Gable End component on the Appearance page will automatically be displayed at the selected gable end. If you want to display an actual wall instead of just a material at gabled ends, see *Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends* on page 94.

Displaying Walls Beneath Gable Ends

If you have converted hip roof ends to gable roof ends, you can choose to display a wall within the gabled areas of the roof (above the main wall). This can be any wall type in your catalog and can be different from the main wall type below it. When you choose to display a wall at a gable end, the wall can be selected and edited independently of the main wall that supports it. If you choose a framed wall, you can view and edit its framing properties just like any other wall in your model. Note that you can specify different wall display settings for each individual gable end in your roof, as making this change applies to selected roof edges only.

To display walls beneath gable ends:

- Click on the roof edge where the gable end is located. The roof is selected, and the arrow on the selected roof edge is displayed in green. If you want to apply the same change to other gabled ends, click on their arrows to turn them green as well. Make sure all other arrows are red.
- 2. Right-click and select Properties.
- In the Roofs dialog, enable the Display
 Gable check box on the Basic property page.

- 4. Click in the **Wall Type** field below the **Display Gable** option, then click **____** to display the **Catalog Access** dialog.
- Select the wall type that you would like to display in the gabled area, then click OK. The selected wall type is displayed in the Wall Type field.
- 6. Click **OK** in the **Roofs** dialog.
- 7. Look at the gabled ends in 3D. If the wrong material appears to be displayed on the exterior side, you will need to flip the wall. See .

Note: Make sure that the tops of the main walls beneath the gabled ends of the roof are set to 'Level' instead of 'Auto Extend', 'Slope' or 'Step' in their properties. Otherwise, the main wall will extend up and over the gable end wall, resulting in extraneous wall surfaces in the gabled area.

Note: If you would prefer to display a simple material in the gabled areas instead of an actual wall, do not select a wall type in the Wall Type field. Instead, go to the Appearance property page and select the desired material for the Gable End component. See *Defining the Material at Gable Ends* on page 94.

Moving a Roof

You can move an entire roof using the Move tool. Note that if you move your exterior wall layout, the roof will go with it, eliminating the need to move it separately.

To move an entire roof:

- 1. Click on one of the roof's edges to select the roof.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the roof, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Roof

You can rotate an entire roof about a selected point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a roof:

1. Click on one of the roof's edges to select the roof.

- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the roof, then release your mouse button.

Stretching a Roof

You can stretch a roof by clicking and dragging its grips or by using the Stretch or Move Edge tools on the roof's right-click menu. Each method has different options and results.

When **grip editing**, clicking and dragging the center grip on a roof edge moves the edge uniformly in the direction you drag. Clicking and dragging a corner grip stretches only that corner, allowing you to reshape the roof surface if desired. Using the clickand-drag method maintains the support height of the roof surface.

The **Stretch** tool allows you to stretch the corners of a roof edge, allowing for reshaping if desired. When using the Stretch tool, the Commander becomes active allowing you to specify a precise stretch distance and direction. Also, the support height of the roof surface is maintained.

The **Move Edge** tool moves the edge of a roof surface in the direction you specify. There are two options when stretching a roof edge using the Move Edge tool. You can either maintain the support height of the stretched portion or allow the support height to adjust. When using the Move Edge tool the Commander is active so that you can specify a precise move distance and direction if desired.

To stretch a roof by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on a roof edge to select the roof.
- 2. To uniformly stretch the edge of a roof surface, hover your pointer over the solid blue grip at the center of the roof edge you want to move. The Move cursor is displayed.
 \$\overline\$
- To stretch the corner of a roof surface, hover your pointer over the hollow blue grip at the corner you want to stretch. The Stretch cursor is displayed. * . . .

4. Click and drag to stretch the roof, then release your mouse button.

To stretch or reshape a roof with the Stretch tool:

- 1. Click on a roof edge to select the roof.
- Right-click and select Stretch. Your pointer becomes the Stretch cursor. * * * * *
- 3. Click and drag the corner of the roof surface that you want to move, then release your mouse button. Or, select a start point for the move, then enter the desired move distance and direction in the Commander.

To move a roof edge and maintain its support height:

- 1. Click on a roof edge to select the roof.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the solid blue grip at the center of the roof edge you want to move.
 - The Move cursor is displayed. $\bigoplus \bigoplus$. Or, right-click and select **Move Edge > Maintain Support Height**. Selecting the Move Edge tool activates the Commander so that you can see or specify the precise stretch distance.
- 3. Click and drag to stretch the roof, then release your mouse button. If you selected the Move Edge tool you can also pick a start point for the move, then type a stretch distance in the Commander and press Enter to complete the stretch.

To move a roof edge and allow its support height to adjust:

- 1. Click on a roof edge to select the roof.
- 2. Right-click and select **Move Edge > Adjust Support Height**.
- 3. Click and drag to stretch the roof, then release your mouse button. Or, pick a start point for the move, then type a stretch distance in the Commander and press Enter.

Note: When using the **Move Edge - Adjust Support Height** tool, you cannot stretch a roof so that it extends below the floor level of the building location on which the roof resides.

Note: If your roof was inserted automatically and you stretch your exterior wall layout, the roof

stretches with it, eliminating the need to stretch the roof separately.

Matching Roof Planes

Use the Match Planes tool to instantly change the plane of one roof surface to match the plane of another. In the following example, surface **A** is selected as the plane to match, and then surface **B** is selected as the plane to change. Surface **B** then has the same plane as surface **A**. Notice that the support height of the surface **B** lowers to allow for the adjustment to the plane.



Surface A is the primary surface



Surface B is matched to surface A

To match roof planes:

- Click on the roof to select it, then right-click and select Match Planes. Or, select Edit > Modify Elements > Match Planes.
- Click on the roof surface whose plane you want to apply to another surface (i.e. the plane you want to match to). In 2D plan view click on the edge of the surface to select it. In 3D click anywhere on the surface to select it.
- 3. Click on the roof surface whose plane you want to match with the plane of the first surface selected. The plane adjusts.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: The Match Planes tool is only available for roofs created with a Roofs tool. It is not available if the roof has been created with the Surfaces tool, or converted to surfaces.

Note: Both surfaces must be running in the exact same direction.

Reshaping a Roof

You can stretch the corners of a roof to change the shape of its perimeter.

To reshape a roof:

- 1. Click on a roof edge to select the roof.
- 2. Click and drag the hollow blue grips at the corners of the roof, then release your mouse button. Alternatively you can use the **Stretch** tool on the right-click menu.

Breaking a Roof Surface

You can use the Break tool to insert a break on a roof surface edge. This splits the surface into two surfaces that can be edited individually.

To break a roof surface:

- 1. Select the roof.
- Right-click and select Break, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Break.
- Click on the edge of the surface you want to break at the point where you want to break it. A new grip appears at the break point.

Creating Gables Mid-Fascia

You can create a gable on any fascia edge by inserting two break points to create a new surface, then changing the shape of the new surface to a gable.

To create a gable mid-fascia:

- 1. Select the roof.
- Right-click and select Break, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Break.
- 3. Insert a break point on the fascia to define the start of the gable segment.
- 4. Select the **Break** tool again and insert another break point on the fascia to define the other end of the gable segment. A new surface is created between the two break points.



- Click on the new surface's arrow to change it to green. If any other arrows are green, click them to change them to red.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 7. Click the graphical button in the *Roof Shape* area.
- 8. In the **Roof Shape** dialog, click on the **Gable** option.
- 9. Click **OK**. The mid-fascia segment is converted to a gable.



Editing the Basic Properties of a Roof Surface

Basic roof properties include Shape, Slope, Overhang Distance, Fascia Distance, etc. Changes are applied to the currently selected roof surface. You can edit multiple roof surfaces simultaneously if you want. Each surface in a roof can have different settings.

To edit the basic properties of a roof surface:

- 1. Click on the edge of the surface whose properties you want to edit. The arrow marker on that edge should be green. To select additional surfaces to edit, simply click their arrows to change them from red to green. All surfaces with green arrows will receive the changes.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To convert the currently selected segments to a different roof type, click the graphical button in the *Roof Shape* area, then select a roof type in the **Roof Shape** dialog.
- To edit the general dimensions and geometry of the roof, edit the values on the Basic page. Note that a gable roof will have fewer properties.

Slope Value. The pitch of the roof measured using the Slope Type method selected above.

Slope Type. The method used to measure the pitch of the roof. Choose from Degrees, ? in 12, 1 in ?, or Percent.

Thickness. The combined thickness of all roofing materials, such as shingles and sheathing.

Overhang. The distance from the side wall to the fascia.

Overhang Drop. The distance measured vertically from the support point to the underside of the fascia.

Fascia Distance. The distance from the ground to the top edge of the fascia board.

Horiz. Distance. The maximum horizontal distance allowed from the support point the uppermost point of the underside of the

rafter. This is a calculated result from the Slope Value and Vert. Distance variables.

Vert. Distance. The maximum vertical distance allowed from the support point to the uppermost point of the underside of the rafter.

Framing Offset. The distance below the surface thickness of the roof that the framing sits. Eg. Roof finish and sheathing thickness.

Display Gable (gables only). If the currently selected roof edge is a gable, you can choose what you want to display beneath the pitched edges of the roof (**None**, **Surface** or **Wall**).

The None option displays no material.

The **Surface** option displays a material such as siding, but no framing. The gable end material is defined on the **Appearance** tab.

The **Wall** option displays an actual wall from the catalog.

Note: If using the **Surface** or **Wall** option, make sure that the *Wall Top* of the main wall that supports the roof is set to *Level* and not *Auto Extend, Slope* or *Step*.

5. Click **OK**.

Editing the Height of a Roof Surface

You can raise or lower a roof surface by editing its Support Height variable.

To edit the height of a roof surface:

- Click on the edge of the surface whose height you want to adjust. The surface's arrow should be green. To select additional surfaces to adjust, simply click their red arrows to change them to green arrows. The change applies to those surfaces marked with a green arrow, not the whole roof.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Roofs** dialog, select the Support and Details tab.
- 4. Edit the value in the **Support Height** edit box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Applying a Different Roofing Material

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly apply different shingles or tiles to a roof.

To apply a different material to a roof:

- 1. Display your model in 3D view and make sure the roof is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply. You may want to select *Roof-ing* from the **Filter** drop box to display only roofing materials.
- 4. Click anywhere on the roof surface. The material is immediately applied to the entire roof.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Converting a Roof to Surfaces

If you have created a roof using one of the Roofs tools, you can explode the roof into individual surfaces. This allows for more in-depth editing and customization.

To convert a roof to surfaces:

- 1. Click on a roof edge to select the roof.
- Right-click and select Convert Roof to Surfaces, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Convert Roof to Surfaces.
- 3. In the **Catalog Access** dialog, select the desired surface material for the roof.
- 4. Click **OK**. The roof is converted.

Note that the framing on adjoining surfaces will adjust intelligently so that only one member is present along each adjoining edge instead of two.

To ensure that roof elements are correctly represented in 3D, and quantified correctly in the project estimate, you can use the Roof Edge Type Editor on the Surfaces menu to verify and specify properties for each roof edge.

Deleting a Roof

You can delete a roof in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a roof:**

- 1. Click on one of the roof's edges to select the roof.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Inserting an Opening in a Roof

Once you have created a roof, you can insert a custom opening in it of virtually any shape and size using the Cut Opening tool. You create the opening by picking points to define its outline.

To insert an opening in a roof:

- 1. Select the roof by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select Cut Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Cut Opening.
- 3. Select a start point for the opening.
- 4. Continue selecting points to define the opening. As you select points, the opening is created. The last point picked is always connected back to the start point to form a closed shape, so you don't have to select the start point again.
- 5. When you have selected your final point, right-click and select **Finish**.

Removing a Roof Opening

You can remove an opening that you have created in your roof using the Remove Opening tool.

To remove a roof opening:

- 1. Select the roof.
- Right-click and select Remove Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Remove Opening.
- 3. Click on one of the roof opening's corner grips. The opening is removed.

Note: You cannot use Delete to remove a roof opening.

Dormers

A dormer is a small structure that projects from a roof slope. Dormers are often used to extend the usable floor area of a second story that is under a moderate to steeply pitched roof. They can be quite effective in opening up cramped rooms under the roof. A typical dormer consists of a roof and three walls. The most common type of dormer is the gable dormer, characterized by the front gable in the roof.



You can also create a dormer without walls. In this case the dormer roof sits on top of the main roof. Its purpose is usually to add character to an otherwise plain roof or to make your roof design more complex. For example, you can insert a dormer roof on your main roof and stretch it to create a porch roof or gable extension.

You can create a dormer easily with the Dormer Roof tool. Just specify the dormer's settings, and then click to insert it.

Once inserted you can move or stretch the dormer if necessary.

Creating Dormers

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A dormer is a small structure that projects from a roof slope. Dormers are often used to extend the usable floor area of a second story that is under a moderate to steeply pitched roof. They can be quite effective in opening up cramped rooms under the roof. A typical dormer consists of a roof and three walls. The most common type of dormer is the gable dormer, characterized by the front gable in the roof.



You can also create a dormer without walls. In this case the dormer roof sits on top of the main roof. Its purpose is usually to add character to an otherwise plain roof or to make your roof design more complex. For example, you can insert a dormer roof on your main roof and stretch it to create a porch roof or gable extension.

Dormers are easy to insert - just point and click. You can control the dormer's width, roof type, wall type, and wall height. You can also specify whether or not you want the dormer to have walls.

To create a dormer:

- In the building locations drop box, select the location containing the roof you want to add the dormer to.
- Select Insert > Roofs > Dormer Roof, or click the down arrow next to the Roofs button on the Building toolbar and select Dormer Roof.
- 3. In the **Dormers** dialog, specify the desired width for the dormer in the **Dormer Width** edit box.
- 4. Click the **Dormer Roof** button, then select the desired roof type for the dormer. By default, the roof will have a gable front, regardless of the roof type. If you do not want it to have a gable front, uncheck the **Gable Front** check box.
- 5. If you want your dormer to have walls, check the **Include Walls** check box. Then, click the **Dormer Wall** button and select the desired wall type from the catalog. If you do not want your dormer to have walls, disable the **Include Walls** check box.

Note that dormer walls extend only to the surface of the main roof. As well, an opening is cut in the main roof surface to open the dormer up to the space below.

6. In the **Support height above main roof** edit box, type the height of the dormer's front wall, not including the raked portion between the two roof slopes. You can use this option even if you are not inserting walls to control the position of the bottom of the dormer roof.

- 7. Click **OK**. The dormer's wall footprint is attached to your cursor.
- Position the dormer where you want it, then click to insert it. In most cases you would place the front dormer wall directly on top of the exterior wall.
- 9. Right-click and select Finish.

Note: If you can't seem to insert the dormer, it means that the dormer is too large for the surface you are inserting it on. You may want to try decreasing the wall height before inserting it.

Moving a Dormer Roof

You can use the Move tool to move a dormer roof to another spot on your roof.

To move a dormer roof:

- 1. Click on the edge of the dormer roof to select it.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Element > Move.
- 3. Click anywhere on the screen, then drag to move the dormer roof.
- 4. When the dormer roof is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Note: If the dormer has walls, you need to move the walls separately. To move the dormer walls, click on one wall, Shift+click to select the remaining walls, right-click and select Move, then click and drag the walls into place.

Stretching a Dormer Roof

You can stretch the front or sides a dormer roof by clicking and dragging the appropriate roof edge.

To stretch a dormer roof:

- 1. Select the dormer roof.
- Position your pointer over the center blue grip of the edge you want to move. This displays the Move cursor.
 Alternatively you can select the Move Edge tool on the right-click menu.
- 3. Click and drag to stretch the roof, then release your mouse button.

Note: If your dormer has walls, the dormer roof will not adjust if you stretch the dormer walls.

Deleting a Dormer

You can delete a dormer in a couple of easy steps. If the dormer has walls, they need to be deleted separately. If you delete a dormer and see a hole left behind in the main roof, you can use the Update Roof tool to remove that hole.

To delete a dormer:

- 1. Click on the edge of the dormer roof to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Element > Delete.
- If the dormer has walls, select one of the walls, then Shift+click to select the remaining walls. Use the **Delete** tool to delete the selected walls.
- If a hole is left behind in the main roof, select the main roof and then right-click and select Update Roof. This removes the hole. Delete the remaining dashed line if present.

Skylights

You can use the Skylights tool to easily insert a skylight of your choice in an existing roof. When you insert a skylight, the roof surface is detected automatically, so it just pops in nicely wherever you position it.

Once inserted you can move and rotate a skylight, or edit its properties.

Inserting Skylights

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert a skylight in your roof with point-andclick simplicity. The catalog contains a long list of skylights in a variety of sizes.

To insert a skylight:

 Select Insert > Roofs > Skylights, or click the down arrow next to the Roofs button A A on the Building toolbar and select Skylights.

- 2. In the catalog, select the skylight you want to insert.
- 3. Position the skylight on the roof.
- 4. Click to insert the skylight.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Moving a Skylight

You can move a skylight by clicking and dragging it.

To move a skylight:

- 1. Click on the skylight to select it.
- 3. Click and drag the skylight to move it.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

Rotating a Skylight

You can rotate a skylight using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a skylight:

- 1. Click on the skylight to select it.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the skylight, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Properties of a Skylight

Skylight properties include height and width, as well as dimensions for the frame and sash.

To edit the properties of a skylight:

- 1. Click on the skylight to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- Edit the properties in the *Properties* window.
 Height. The overall height of the skylight window opening.

Width. The overall width of the skylight window opening.

Frame Depth. The depth of the window frame.

Frame Width. The thickness of the window frame.

Frame Offset. The offset of the window frame from the roof surface.

Sash Offset. The distance the sash sits back in the window frame. The sash is the frame that holds the glass.

Sash Depth. The thickness of the sash in plan view.

Sash Width. The width of the sash in elevation.

4. Once you've set your properties, click **OK**.

Deleting a Skylight

You can delete a skylight in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a skylight:**

- 1. Select the skylight.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Roof Accessories

Roof accessories include elements such as roof vents and solar panels.

When you use the Roof Accessories tool, the element inserts directly on the roof surface and lies at the same angle as the surface.

Inserting Roof Accessories

You can add elements such as solar panels and roof vents to your roof using the Roof Accessories tool. When you insert a roof accessory on a roof, it inserts directly on the roof surface at the same angle as the roof surface.

To insert a roof accessory:

- Select Insert > Roofs > Roof Accessories, or click the down arrow next to the Roofs button
 on the Building toolbar and select Roof Accessories.
- 2. In the catalog, select the roof accessory that you would like to insert.
- 3. Click on the roof surface on which you want to insert the accessory. If you are in 2D plan view, click on the edge of the roof surface. If you are in 3D view you can click anywhere on the surface. The element is attached to your cursor.

- 4. Position the element where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Moving a Roof Accessory

You can move a roof accessory by clicking and dragging it.

To move a roof accessory:

- 1. Click on the roof accessory to select it.
- 3. Click and drag the element to move it.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

Note: If you move a roof accessory, its angle will remain the same regardless of where you move it. You can edit the angle of a roof accessory by editing the orientation settings in its properties.

Rotating a Roof Accessory

You can rotate a roof accessory clockwise or counterclockwise on the surface where it resides by editing the Z Axis setting in its properties. Using this method instead of clicking and dragging the element or using the Rotate tool keeps the element lying at the same angle as the surface regardless of how it is rotated.

To rotate a roof accessory:

- 1. Click on the roof accessory to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Properties**.
- In the Roof Accessories dialog, click in the Z Axis field, then click the up or down arrow next to the angle value to edit the angle. Clicking the up arrow moves the element in a counterclockwise direction.
- $4. \quad Click \ \textbf{OK}. \ The \ element \ is \ rotated.$

Editing the Angle of a Roof Accessory

You edit the angle at which a roof accessory lies by editing the orientation settings in its properties.

To edit the angle of a roof accessory:

- 1. Click on the roof accessory to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Properties.

- 3. In the **Roof Accessories** dialog, edit the angle values in the **X Axis** and **Y Axis** fields. The X Axis value controls the front-to-back tilt. The Y Axis value controls the left-to-right tilt.
- 4. Click **OK**. The element's angle is updated.

Deleting a Roof Accessory

You can delete a roof accessory in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a roof accessory:

- 1. Select the roof accessory.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Chapter 11: Surfaces

Surfaces

You can use the Surfaces tool to create a floor, roof, ceiling or general surface of virtually any size and shape. You can control the slope of a surface, as well as the elevation of the upper and lower points of the surface. The Surfaces tool can help you handle special or complex construction situations.

A full menu of editing tools are available for editing surfaces, including Move, Rotate, Duplicate, Curve and Cut Opening. You can also join two or more surfaces together to meet your specific construction needs.

Creating a Surface

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Surfaces tool to create a custom floor, roof or ceiling surface. First you draw the surface by picking points, then define its slope. This lets you create a surface of any size, shape or slope, which can be useful in special or complex construction situations.

To create a surface:

- Select Insert > Surfaces > Surfaces, or click
 on the Building toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the material you would like to use to create your surface.
- 3. Select two points to define the first edge of the surface. If the surface will be sloped, start by drawing what will be the lower edge of the surface. The surface will incline from this edge.
- 4. Continue selecting points to define the shape of the surface. As you select points, an arrow is displayed that indicates the direction of the

slope. Note that since the surface is always closed, you do not need to pick the start point again to close it.

5. When you have defined the shape, right-click and select **Finish**. The **Define Surface** dialog appears.



If you want the lower edge of the surface to sit at a specific height, enter the height in the **Lower Point** edit box, then click the lock icon to lock that value in. Otherwise, this value will be variable depending on the Upper Point height or Slope Value.

If you want the upper edge of the surface to sit at a specific height, enter the height in the **Upper Point** edit box, then click the lock icon to lock the value in. Either the Lower Point or Slope Value fields must be unlocked in order to be able to enter an upper point value.

If you want the surface to have a specific slope, enter the slope in the **Slope Value** edit box. By default, the slope is measured using the **1 in ?** method. If you use a different method for slope measurement, select it from the **Slope Type** drop box. Other choices are ? *in 12, Degrees,* and *Percent.* If you choose to lock the slope value, the Lower Point and Upper Point values become variable.

6. In the **Define Surface** dialog, enter values to define the slope of the surface. There are a few different ways to do this:

If you want the lower edge of the surface to sit at a specific height, enter the height in the **Lower Point** edit box, then click the lock icon to lock that value in. Otherwise, this value will be variable depending on the Upper Point height or Slope Value. If you want the upper edge of the surface to sit at a specific height, enter the height in the **Upper Point** edit box, then click the lock icon to lock the value in. Either the Lower Point or Slope Value fields must be unlocked in order to be able to enter an upper point value. If you want the surface to have a specific slope, enter the slope in the **Slope Value** edit box. By default, the slope is measured using the **1 in ?** method. If you use a different method for slope measurement, select it from the Slope Type drop box. Other choices are ? *in 12, Degrees,* and *Percent.* If you choose to lock the slope value, the Lower Point and Upper Point values become variable.

7. Click **OK**.

Moving a Surface

You can move a surface using the Move tool.

To move a surface:

- 1. Select the surface by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and hold your mouse on the surface, then drag it to the desired location in your drawing.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

Resizing or Reshaping a Surface

You can resize or reshape a surface by clicking and dragging its edges and corners.

To resize or reshape a surface:

- 1. Select the surface by clicking on one of its edges.
- To resize the surface, click and drag the solid blue grips located at the center of each edge. Alternatively you can use the **Move Edge** tool on the right-click menu to move an edge.



3. To reshape the surface, click and drag the hollow blue grips located at the corners. Alternatively you can use the Stretch tool on the right-click menu. You can add nodes to the surface edges to create more grips for stretching.

Adding a Node to a Surface

You can add nodes to surface edges to create more grips. You can then click and drag the grips to reshape the surface.

To add a node to a surface:

- 1. Select the surface.
- Right-click and select Surface Commands > Add Surface Node, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Add Surface Node.
- Click on the point on the surface edge where you want to add a node. The edge is split into separate edges, each with its own grips for moving and stretching.



Curving a Surface Edge

You can curve a surface edge using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the edge to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve a surface edge by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the surface edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a surface edge to a selected point:

- 1. Click on the surface edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The surface edge automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Editing the Slope of a Surface

You can edit the slope of a surface after you have inserted it. You can also edit the lower point and upper point heights.

To edit the slope of a surface:

- 1. Select the surface.
- Right-click and select Surface Commands > Define Surface, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Define Surface.

3. Edit the values in the **Define Surface** dialog, then click **OK**.

If you want the lower edge of the surface to sit at a specific height, enter the height in the **Lower Point** edit box, then click the lock icon to lock that value in. Otherwise, this value will be variable depending on the Upper Point height or Slope Value.

If you want the upper edge of the surface to sit at a specific height, enter the height in the **Upper Point** edit box, then click the lock icon to lock the value in. Either the Lower Point or Slope Value fields must be unlocked in order to be able to enter an upper point value.

If you want the surface to have a specific slope, enter the slope in the **Slope Value** edit box. By default, the slope is measured using the **1 in ?** method. If you use a different method for slope measurement, select it from the **Slope Type** drop box. Other choices are ? *in 12, Degrees,* and *Percent.* If you choose to lock the slope value, the Lower Point and Upper Point values become variable.

Editing the Location of a Surface's Lower or Upper Point

The ends of the arrow on a surface represent the Lower Point and Upper Point of the surface when you are defining the surface. By default, the Lower Point and Upper Point are located on the edges of the surface. You can edit the location of the Lower Point or Upper Point on the surface by adjusting the length of the up-slope arrow.

For example, if you were creating a roof surface, and wanted it to have an overhang of 16", you could move the bottom end of the arrow 16" away from the lower surface edge. You would then enter the roof support height in the Lower Point edit box when defining the surface.

To edit the length of the arrow:

- 1. Select the surface.
- Right-click and select Surface Commands > Lengthen Arrow, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Lengthen Arrow.
- 3. Click and drag the ends of the arrow to adjust its length.

Editing the Up-Slope Direction of a Surface

You can change the up-slope direction of a surface by editing the rotation of the surface arrow.

To edit the up-slope direction of a surface:

- 1. Select the surface.
- Right-click and select Surface Commands > Define Surface, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Define Surface.
- 3. In the **Define Surface** dialog, edit the value in the **Rotation** edit box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Joining Surfaces Together

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Intersect Planes tool to join two surfaces together. To join two surfaces, you select the edge on each surface that you want to extend. The Intersect Planes tool calculates the plane where the two surfaces would intersect in space and extends the surface edges to this plane. This tool is particularly useful when creating a complex roof configuration where different surfaces have different slopes.

To join two surfaces together:

- In 2D plan view, select Insert > Surfaces > Intersect Planes, or click the down arrow next to the Surfaces button (*) * * on the Building toolbar and select Intersect Planes.
- 2. On the first surface, click on the edge that you want to extend.
- On the second surface, click on the edge that you want to extend. The surface edges are extended to the intersecting plane.

Converting a Roof to Surfaces

If you have created a roof using one of the Roofs tools, you can explode the roof into individual surfaces. This allows for more in-depth editing and customization.

To convert a roof to surfaces:

- 1. Click on a roof edge to select the roof.
- Right-click and select Convert Roof to Surfaces, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Convert Roof to Surfaces.
- 3. In the **Catalog Access** dialog, select the desired surface material for the roof.
- 4. Click **OK**. The roof is converted.

Note that the framing on adjoining surfaces will adjust intelligently so that only one member is present along each adjoining edge instead of two.

To ensure that roof elements are correctly represented in 3D, and quantified correctly in the project estimate, you can use the Roof Edge Type Editor on the Surfaces menu to verify and specify properties for each roof edge.

Defining Roof Surface Edge Properties

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you convert a roof to surfaces, or create a roof using the Surfaces tool, each edge of a roof has a definition applied to it that determines its appearance in 3D. For example, an edge defined as a Gable may have a gable end return. The roof edge definition also determines the properties of a roof edge, and these properties are calculated in quantity reports - for example, as hip length, ridge length, valley length, and so on. Sample definitions

Below are sample roof surface edge definitions for a standard hip roof:





Edges can be defined as a Fascia, Gable, Hip, Valley or Ridge, or have no definition.

To define a roof surface edge:

 Select Insert > Surfaces > Roof Edge Type Editor. All roof surface edges in your drawing are marked with colored arrows, and the Roof Edge Type Editor appears on the right side of the screen:

Roof Edge Type Editor
Apply to All Similar None Fascia Gable Hip Valley Ridge Display Slope Arrows
Type: Plain 🗸
a. Horizontal: b. Depth: Gable Soffit Width:
Fascia
Depth:
O Plumb O Raked
Soffit
Include Soffit
Width:
O Plumb Raked
Close

Roof Edge Type Editor
Apply to All Similar O None Fascia Gable Hip Valley Ridge Display Slope Arrows
Gable
Type: Plain 🗸
a. Horizontal:
Fascia
Depth:
O Plumb
Soffit
Indude Soffit Width: O Plumb Raked
Close

The color of each arrow indicates the type of each roof edge, as referenced in the editor.

- 2. To edit a roof edge's type, select the desired option in the **Roof Edge Type Editor**.
- 3. If **Fascia** is selected as the roof edge type, you can specify the following settings:

[Fascia] Depth. The thickness of the fascia board.

Plumb. The ends of the rafters are cut vertically resulting in a 90° fascia board.

Raked. The ends of the rafters have an angled cut.

Include Soffit. Includes a soffit along the edge.

[Soffit] Width. The width of the soffit.

Plumb. Creates a flat soffit that is parallel with the ground.

Raked. Creates a soffit that is angled to match the roof slope.

4. If **Gable** is selected as the roof edge type, you can specify the following settings:

Type. Choose either *Plain, Squared, Full Hip* or *Half Hip* for the gable return.

Horizontal. The horizontal distance of the return when looking at the gable end face on. **Depth**. The depth of the return.

Gable Soffit Width. The width of the soffit along the gable edge.

- To display arrows that indicate slope directions on your roof, enable the Display Slope Arrows check box.
- 6. Click on the arrow to which you want to apply the change.
- 7. When you have finished, click **Close**.

Editing Roof Surface Edge Details

The fascia, soffit and gable settings on a roof surface's Details property page determine the appearance and construction of roof surface edges defined as Fascias or Gables.

To edit roof surface edge details:

- 1. Click on a surface edge to select the surface.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Surfaces** dialog, select the Details tab.
- Edit the settings as desired. They are described below.

Fascia

Depth. The thickness of the fascia board.

Plumb. The ends of the rafters are cut vertically resulting in a 90° fascia board.

Raked. The ends of the rafters have an angled cut.

Soffit

Plumb. Creates a flat soffit that is parallel with the ground.

Raked. Creates a soffit that is angled to match the roof slope.

Gable

Type. Choose either Plain, Squared, Full Hip or Half Hip for the gable return.

Horizontal. The horizontal distance of the return when looking at the gable end face on.

Depth. The depth of the return

5. Click **OK**.

Editing the Thickness of a Surface

You can edit the thickness of a surface on its Basic property page.

To edit the thickness of a surface:

- 1. Select the surface by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select
 Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the value in the **Thickness** edit box on the Basic page.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Floor, ceiling and roof surfaces have a framing configuration assigned to them that you can see when framing is displayed. You can edit the framing configuration by selecting members for each component in the frame, setting the spacing between members, and selecting a phase and usage for each component.

Framing can be displayed using the Display Framing tool, and is included in the project estimate. Settings in the framing configuration let you specify whether or not you want each component in the frame to be displayed and quantified, providing the ultimate in versatility and control.

To specify framing options for surfaces:

- In a non-framed view, select the surface. You can also specify framing members for surfaces in the catalog.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. On the Basic property page, click the **Specify Framing** button. The surface's framing settings are displayed. Settings vary depending

on the type of surface (floor, ceiling or roof). Floors and ceilings have settings for the joists, rim joists and opening headers, while roofs have settings for the rafters and opening headers.

- 4. To select a member for any of the framing components, click in the component's **Member** field, then click the browse button **____** in that field to display the member catalog. Select the desired member in the **Catalog Access** dialog, then click **OK**.
- To define the spacing between joists or rafters, edit the value in the **a. Spacing** edit box.
- For floor and ceiling surfaces, specify the direction in which you want the joists to run in the **Direction** edit box. The direction is measured in degrees of an angle.
- 7. To specify a usage or phase for a framing member, click in the Usage or Phase field, click the browse button in that field, and then make a selection from the catalog. Usages and phases can be used as sort keys in your project estimate.
- 8. Click **OK**.

Tip: If you want to be able to select and edit surface framing members, or include them in member schedules, you must first convert them to actual elements using the Convert Framing to Members tool.

Applying Different Materials to Surfaces

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly apply different types of materials to surfaces.

To apply a material to a surface:

- Display your model in 2D Designer's View or 3D view and make sure the surface is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply.

- Click on the surface you want to apply the material to. The material is immediately applied. You can continue applying the material to other surfaces, or select another material in the catalog.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: To specify a linestyle or hatch pattern for a surface, edit the **2D Footprint** component in the surface's Appearance properties.

Cutting an Opening in a Surface

You can use the Cut Opening tool to quickly create an opening of any shape or size.

To create an opening in a surface:

- 1. Select the surface.
- 2. Right-click and select Cut Opening.
- Select a start point for the opening, then continue selecting points to define the size and shape of the opening. Note that you do not have to select the start point again to finish the outline the last point picked is always connected to the start point.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Editing Surface Openings

You can resize, reshape and curve openings in a surface in the same way that you would edit the surface itself.

See the following topics:

Resizing or Reshaping a Surface on page 106

Curving a Surface Edge on page 107

Removing an Opening from a Surface

You can remove an opening from a surface using the Remove Opening tool.

To remove an opening from a surface:

- 1. Select the surface.
- Right-click and select Remove Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Remove Opening.
- 3. Click on the edge of the opening that you want to remove.

Note: You cannot remove an opening from a surface using Delete.

Deleting a Surface

You can delete a surface in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a surface:

- 1. Select the surface.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Chapter 12: Framing

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Framing

Walls, floors, ceilings, roofs and surfaces have framing configurations assigned to them in their properties. You can choose which framing members you would like to use and edit their spacing by editing an element's framing properties.

Each building location in your project has a set of Framing Options assigned to it. These options determine how walls are framed on each location. They include a wall opening span table, framing rule, intersection reference table, and an infill configuration.

By entering into Framing Mode you can create custom configurations for individual walls and intersections in your model. While in this mode each wall, opening and intersection has special shading applied to it, identifying it as a unique framing component within the model. Three tools are available in this mode: Intersection Tool, Infill Tool, and Head Sill Jamb Tool.

Framing members are included in your project estimate. If you would like to generate a member schedule you will need to convert floor, ceiling and roof framing to actual elements using the Convert Framing to Members tool. After using this tool you can also select and edit individual members in your floor, ceiling or roof frame.

By default, framing is not visible, but you can use the Display Framing tool to view it instantly. Even when framing is displayed, framing cannot be selected for editing unless it is floor, ceiling or roof framing that has been converted to members. However, wall framing can be edited by editing a wall's framing properties, or editing the Framing Options in the Building Locations dialog. For more in-depth editing you can also switch to Framing Mode and edit the framing for individual walls and intersections.

Framing Display

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, framing is not visible, but you can use the Display Framing tool to view it instantly. You can then switch back to a non-framed view by selecting the Display All But Framing tool.

When framing is displayed, individual framing members in floors, ceilings and roofs cannot be selected for editing unless they have been converted to members. However, wall framing can be edited by editing a wall's framing properties, as well as editing the Framing Options in the Building Locations dialog. You can also switch to Framing Mode and edit the framing for individual walls and intersections.

Displaying Framing

Building Essentials | Construction Suite Walls, floors, ceilings and roofs have a framing configuration assigned to them in their properties. You can instantly view just your house frame using the Display Framing tool, then return to a regular view of your model at any time.



 Select View > Framing > Display Framingor click on the View Control toolbar.

To return to a non-framed view:

Select View > Framing > Display All But
 Framing or click the down arrow next to
 on the View Control toolbar and select
 Display All But Framing.

Note: You can also use the View Filter to display framing. However, the framing will not be displayed on its own unless you turn everything else off.

Note: Framing cannot be selected for editing in framing display mode. It is available for viewing purposes only. You can, however, change the framing options for walls, floors, ceilings and roofs.

Note: When in framing display mode, any members inserted with the Members tool are not visible. Floor, ceiling and roof framing that has been converted to members is not visible in this mode.

Returning to a Non-Framed View

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have used the Display Framing tool to view your house frame, you can instantly return to a nonframed view using the Display All But Framing tool.

To return to a non-framed view:

 Select View > Framing > Display All But Framing or click the down arrow next to the Display Framing button on the View Control toolbar and select Display All But Framing.

Wall Framing

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Every building location in your project has a number of framing options assigned to it that determine how walls on that location will be framed. These options include:

- Span tables (determines how openings should be framed)
- Infill (stud/top plate/bottom plate configuration)

- Framing rule (the direction in which walls are framed)
- Intersection lookup table (determines how intersections are framed)

You can select the framing member that you want to use for your walls. You can also specify whether or not selected walls are framed as load-bearing walls, and customize the framing settings for each building location in your project.

You can define custom framing settings for individual walls, openings and intersections by going into Framing Mode. In this mode each framing component (infill, opening and intersection) has special highlighting applied to it for ease of identification and selection.

The catalog ships with pre-defined libraries of head/sill/jamb tables, wall opening span tables, and infill configurations. You can edit or add to these libraries to meet your specific construction needs.

Selecting a Framing Member for Walls

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Every wall has a setting in its properties that determines what type of member (e.g. 2 x 4) will be used to frame the wall. In other words, this is the member that will be used for the studs, top plate and bottom plate as well as the members used to frame openings (except the header).

You can edit the member selection for individual walls in your model, or for walls in the catalog.

To edit the framing options for an individual wall or wall type:

 To edit a wall in your drawing, double-click it, or select the wall then right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

To edit a wall in the catalog, select the wall in the catalog, then right-click and select **Edit Element**.

- 2. In the **Walls** dialog, click the **Framing member** button.
- Select the desired member from the Catalog Access dialog.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Note: By default, walls are framed using the framing options specified in your building location settings (see page 115). These options include an infill configuration that determines settings for the studs, top plate, bottom plate, and very top plate. By default, each of these components is set to use a framing member from the Member Library rather than the framing member selected in each wall's properties. See *Defining a Wall Infill Configuration* on page 662.

Note: You can override the framing member selection for individual walls in your model by customizing the infill configuration applied to the wall in Framing Mode. See *Editing the Infill Configuration for Individual Walls* on page 116.

Note: Stud spacing is determined by the infill configuration assigned to the building location on which a wall resides, or by the infill configuration assigned to a wall in Framing Mode if a custom one has been selected for it.

Specifying Whether Walls are Load-bearing or Non-load-bearing

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can determine whether or not a wall is framed as a load-bearing wall by editing the wall's properties. This ensures that the proper head/sill/jamb configuration is applied to the wall.

To frame a wall as load-bearing or non-loadbearing:

- Select the wall, then right-click and select **Properties**. You can select multiple walls simultaneously.
- Specify the desired framing behavior for the Frame As Load Bearing setting:

Auto. The default value for all walls, this frames exterior walls as load-bearing, and interior walls as non-load-bearing.

Yes. Frames the selected wall as load-bearing.

No. Frames the selected wall as non-load-bearing.

3. Click **OK**.

Defining Wall Framing Options for Building Locations

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Each location in the Building Locations dialog has a set of framing options that determine how walls, openings and intersections on that location will be framed.

Location framing options include a span table selection, an infill configuration, framing rule, and intersection reference table.

The framing options you choose will determine what you see when framing is displayed (with the Display Framing tool), as well as the members reported in your Project Estimate. For example, if a wall has an infill configuration with studs 12" apart, the wall will have more studs than if it were to have an infill configuration with studs 16" apart.

To define framing options for a building location:

- Select Settings > Building Locations, or click : on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **Building Locations** dialog, click in the location's **Framing Options** field.
- Make the desired selections in the Location Framing Options dialog. The options are described below.

Span table. The wall span table that determines the head/sill/jamb configuration to be used for openings of different sizes in walls. You can select a span table for loadbearing walls, and one for non-load-bearing walls.

You can create custom span tables. See *Defining a Wall Opening Span Table* on page 654. You can also select a custom span table for individual walls in Framing Mode. See *Editing the Span Table Selection for Individual Walls* on page 118.

Intersection lookup table. The reference table containing rules for framing different types of intersections. You can edit intersection configurations by going into Framing Mode and using the Intersection tool. See *Editing Intersection Framing* on page 119.

Infill configuration. The precise layout of studs, top plate, very top plate and bottom plate that fill the volume of the wall. You can define custom infill configurations if you want. See *Defining a Wall Infill Configuration* on page 662. You can also apply different infill configurations to individual walls in Framing Mode. See *Editing the Infill Configuration for Individual Walls* on page 116.

Framing rule. The direction in which walls are framed. Options are described below.

From Bottom Left. Walls frame from the bottom left corner of the drawing area (from bottom to top, left to right).

From Bottom Right. Walls frame from the bottom right corner of the drawing area (from bottom to top, right to left).

From Top Left. Walls frame from the top left corner of the drawing area (top to bottom, left to right).

From Top Right. Walls frame from the top right corner of the drawing area (top to bottom, right to left).

From Start of Wall. Walls frame from their "start point", which is the end marked with a green grip when the wall is selected.

From End of Wall. Walls frame from their "end point", which is the end marked with a red grip when the wall is selected.

4. Click **OK**.

Note: You can override the building location framing options and specify custom framing options for individual walls, openings and intersections in your model by switching to Framing Mode.

Going into Framing Mode

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When in Framing Mode, framing components (wall infill, intersections and openings) are displayed as "glass boxes", making it easy to identify and select each one. You can see these glass boxes in both 2D and 3D views. Clicking on a wall lets you select the infill configuration, framing rule and wall opening span table for that wall. Clicking on an opening lets you select the opening span table to be used for framing that opening, or define a custom head/sill/jamb configuration for that particular opening. Clicking on an intersection lets you select the intersection framing configuration that you want to use on that intersection.

To switch to Framing Mode:

1. Select View > Framing Mode On/Off, or click

on the Framing toolbar.

To exit Framing Mode, select the Framing Mode On/Off tool or button again.

Editing the Infill Configuration for Individual Walls

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Infill refers to the material that fills the volume of the wall. An infill configuration determines what types of members are used for the studs, top plate, bottom plate and very top plate, the spacing between studs, and the way in which members are aligned and rotated.

By default, walls are framed using the infill configuration defined in the Framing Options for each building location. You can override this setting and select a custom infill configuration for individual walls in your model by going into Framing Mode.

To edit a wall's infill configuration:

- Go into Framing Mode (View > Framing Mode On/Off).
- Double-click the wall that you want to edit, or select the wall and then right-click and select **Properties**. When selecting a wall, watch for the 'Wall Infill' screen tip to appear so that you know you are selecting the infill and not another framing component.

Edit Infill	8 🕅
Flip framing side	
Infill configuration	
Refer to location	
Use custom infill configuration	
(None)	
Select custom configuration	
Framing rule	
Refer to location	
Use custom framing rule	
From Bottom Left	
Span table	
Refer to location	
Load Bearing	
Use custom span table	
(None)	
Select custom span table	
OK Cancel	

- 3. To use the infill configuration defined for the building location on which the wall resides, enable the **Refer to location** radio button in the *Infill Configuration* area.
- 4. To use a custom infill configuration, enable the Use custom infill configuration radio button in the Infill Configuration area, then click the Select custom configuration button and make a selection from the Wall Infill Library.
- 5. To flip the framing from one side of the wall to the other, enable the **Flip framing side** check box. If, for example, you notice that an opening's header member is positioned toward the exterior face of the wall and you want it positioned toward the interior face, you would enable the **Flip framing side** check box to flip the framing to the other side of the wall.

Note: By default each infill configuration is set to use framing members from the Member Library rather than the framing member defined in the wall's properties. You can change infill settings by editing the parameters in the infill configuration. See *Defining a Wall Infill Configuration* on page 662. You can also create new infill configurations to suit your needs.

Editing the Framing Rule for Individual Walls

The 'framing rule' refers to the direction in which walls are framed. You may, for example, want to start framing walls from the bottom left corner of your drawing area.

By default, the framing rule used to frame walls is the one defined in the Framing Options of each building location. You can override the framing rule for individual walls in your model by going into Framing Mode.

To edit a wall's framing rule in Framing Mode:

- Go into Framing Mode (View > Framing Mode On/Off).
- Double-click the wall that you want to edit, or select the wall and then right-click and select **Properties**. When selecting a wall, watch for the 'Wall Infill' screen tip to appear so that you know you are selecting the infill and not another framing component.

Edit Infill	8 22
Flip framing side	
 Refer to location 	
Use custom infill configuration	
(None)	
Select custom configuration	
Framing rule	
Refer to location	
O Use custom framing rule	
From Bottom Left	
Span table	
Refer to location	
Load Bearing	
Use custom span table	
(None)	
Select custom span table	
OK Cancel	

- 3. To use the framing rule defined for the building location on which the wall resides, enable the **Refer to location** radio button in the Framing Rule area.
- 4. To use a custom framing rule, enable the **Use custom framing rule** radio button in the Framing Rule area, then select a framing rule from the drop box.

From Bottom Left. Walls frame from the bottom left corner of the drawing area (from bottom to top, left to right).

From Bottom Right. Walls frame from the bottom right corner of the drawing area (from bottom to top, right to left).

From Top Left. Walls frame from the top left corner of the drawing area (top to bottom, left to right).

From Top Right. Walls frame from the top right corner of the drawing area (top to bottom, right to left).

From Start of Wall. Walls frame from their "start point", which is the end marked with a green grip when the wall is selected.

From End of Wall. Walls frame from their "end point", which is the end marked with a red grip when the wall is selected.

Editing the Span Table Selection for Individual Walls

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, wall openings are framed according to the span tables selected in the Framing Options of each building location. There is a span table selection for load-bearing walls, and one for non-load-bearing walls. Each span table contains a list of opening sizes (spans) and the head/sill/jamb configuration that should be used for each span.

You can override the span table selection in your building locations and select a custom span table for individual walls in your model. This can only be done in Framing Mode.

To edit the span table selection for an individual wall:

- Go into Framing Mode (View > Framing Mode On/Off).
- 2. Double-click the wall infill that you want to edit, or select the wall infill and then rightclick and select **Properties**. When selecting a wall infill, watch for the 'Wall Infill' screen tip to appear so that you know for sure that you are selecting the infill and not another framing component.
- 3. To use the span table defined for the building location on which the wall resides, enable the

Refer to location radio button in the *Span Table* area. Then, select either the **Load-Bearing** or **Non-Load-Bearing** span table.

4. To use a custom span table, enable the Use custom span table radio button in the Span Table area, then click the Select custom span table button and make a selection from the Wall Span Table Library.

Editing the Head/Sill/Jamb Configuration for Individual Openings

By default, wall openings are framed according to the span table selected in the infill settings for the wall in which the opening resides. A span table contains a list of opening sizes (spans) and the head/sill/jamb configuration that should be used for each span. You can override the span table selection and select a custom head/sill/jamb configuration for individual openings in your model. This can only be done in Framing Mode.

To edit the head/sill/jamb configuration for an individual opening:

- Go into Framing Mode (View > Framing Mode On/Off).
- 2. Double-click the opening that you want to edit, or select the opening and then right-click and select **Properties**. When selecting an opening, watch for the 'Head Sill Jamb Tool' screen tip to appear so that you know for sure that you are selecting an opening and not another framing component.
- 3. Select one of the following options:

Refer to Infill. Uses the span table selected in the infill settings for the wall in which the opening resides. The program will find the opening's size in the span table and apply the head/sill/jamb configuration assigned to that opening size.

Use custom head/sill/jamb configuration. Allows you to select a custom head/sill/jamb configuration to use. Click the **Select configuration** button and select the desired configuration from the Head Sill Jamb Library.

4. Click **OK**.

Chapter 12: Framing

Note: When two or more openings are very close to each other, the openings are selected as a group rather than individually. Applying a single head/sill/jamb configuration to the group of openings prevents framing members from overlapping.

Note: If needed you can create custom span tables (see page 654) and custom head/sill/jamb configurations (see page 656).

Editing Intersection Framing

Building Essentials | Construction Suite Each wall intersection in your model is framed using a standard intersection framing configuration designed specifically for that type of intersection. Intersection framing configurations are stored in an internal library called an *intersection lookup table*. The program matches intersections in your project with intersections in the lookup table to determine how each intersection should be framed.

When you switch to Framing Mode, each intersection is represented by a "glass box" for easy identification and selection. You can click on any intersection and apply a specific intersection framing configuration to it. When you apply a framing configuration to a selected intersection, you can choose to save that particular instance to the catalog, where it is added to an intersection lookup table that you choose. This way any configuration applications that you specify in the current project will be available for future use in any project. Otherwise, the intersection configuration that you specify resides in the current project only.

To edit an intersection's framing configuration:

- Go into Framing Mode (View > Framing Mode On/Off).
- 2. Double-click the intersection that you want to edit, or select the intersection and then rightclick and select **Properties**. When selecting an intersection, watch for the 'Intersection tool' screen tip to appear when you hover over the intersection. This way you know for sure that you are selecting an intersection and not another framing component.

Edit Intersection	8 3
Configuration Default 3 Stud Energy Corner Outside Custom Configurations: District Energy Corner Outside 2 × 4 @ 2 × 6 Left 2 × 4 @ 2 × 6 Left 2 × 4 @ 2 × 6 Right 4 Stud Corner Add Edit Delete	
Export configurations to catalog Export	」
	OK Cancel

- 3. To apply the default configuration for this type of intersection (as defined in the intersection lookup table), enable the **Default** radio button. To apply a custom configuration, enable the **Custom** radio button, and then select a framing configuration from the list. You can add, edit and delete configurations. The preview pane displays a live preview of the selected configuration. You can right-click in this pane to display various viewing options. If viewing in 3D you can click and drag in the pane to rotate the preview around.
- 4. If you want to save all of the intersection configurations in the current drawing to an inter-

section lookup table, click **Export... Export...**, then type a name for the table in the **New Lookup Table Name** dialog.

5. Click **OK**.

Note: Because there are so many different types of possible intersections, it is not possible to define intersection framing configurations externally (i.e. independently from an actual model). They can only be defined in Framing Mode.

Creating Custom Intersection Framing Configurations

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The intersection lookup table that ships with the program contains a variety of intersection framing configurations that can be applied to intersections in your model. You can edit the existing configurations or add new ones if needed. Each configuration consists of a number of detailed settings for the wall core and very top plate so that you can create the exact configuration you need.

To create a custom intersection framing configuration:

- Go into Framing Mode (View > Framing Mode On/Off).
- 2. Double-click the intersection that you want to edit, or select the intersection and then rightclick and select **Properties**. When selecting an intersection, watch for the 'Intersection tool' screen tip to appear when you hover over the intersection. This way you know for sure that you are selecting an intersection and not another framing component.



- 3. If you want to edit a configuration in the **Edit Intersection** dialog, select it in the list, then click **Edit**.
- If you want to add a new configuration, click Add.



5. Define the configuration in the **Wall** Intersection dialog. When defining a

configuration, the wall core (studs, top plate, bottom plate) is defined independently of the very top plate. This allows you to overlap the very top plate at corners for greater strength if desired. The settings are described below.

Configuration name. The name of the configuration as it appears in the list of configurations in the Edit Intersection dialog when an intersection is selected.

Wall Component. Select the wall to define (Wall A, Wall B, etc.). Refer to the diagram in the dialog to see which wall you are defining.

Relative to Wall. Click in this field to display a list of walls in the selected intersection. Select the wall to which you want the current wall to extend. If you do not want to extend the current wall, select *None*.

Extend to. Click in this field and select the method that you want to use to extend the current wall. Options are described below.

Leading. Extends the wall to the leading edge of the wall it intersects. The leading edge is the first edge that the current wall encounters when extended into the intersecting wall.



Trailing. Extends the wall to the trailing edge of the wall it intersects. The trailing edge is the second edge that the current wall encounters when extended into the intersecting wall.



Miter. Extends the wall to the trailing edge of the wall it intersects and creates a 45° miter cut.



Continuous. Applicable only to intersecting walls that lie at the same angle, as in a T-intersection or X-intersection, this extends the current wall into the same-plane intersecting wall, forming a continuous wall.





Treatment. Applicable only when the wall is being extended to the leading or trailing edge of another wall, and the angle between the walls is not 90°. The *Flush* option cuts the current wall so that it is flush with the edge of the intersecting wall. The *Square* option cuts the end of the wall squarely so that the wall end forms a 90° angle. (The angle of the intersecting wall is irrelevant.)



Offset. The distance that you want to offset the end of the wall from the intersecting wall. This value can be positive (for an extension) or negative (for a retraction).

Flip End. Flips the end studs to the other side of the wall.



End Condition. (*wall core only*) The number and orientation of studs at the wall's end (single, double, triple, turned, etc.). To select an end condition, click in the *End Condition* field and make a selection from the drop box. If you want to add or edit an end condition configuration, select **<Edit>** in the drop box to access the **End Condition Library**. You can create custom end conditions if necessary (see page 668).

 The configuration will be applied to all intersections similar to the current one. In the *Apply to Similar Intersections* area, select either **Basic Match**, **Moderate Match** or **Exact Match** to determine how similar the intersections must be to the current one in order to receive the new configuration.

Basic Match. The intersection has the same shape (same number of walls and nodes within the intersection).

Moderate Match. The intersection has the same shape, and angle between walls.

Exact Match. The intersection has the same shape, angle between walls, and orientation. To see sample matches, click here.



The table below illustrates sample matches to a selected intersection.



- If you would like to use this configuration for intersections of this type when new walls are created, enable the Make default for matches of selected strength check box.
- 8. The preview pane displays a live preview of the intersection configuration. You can rightclick in the preview pane to access a menu of viewing options, including View as 2D and View as 3D. If viewing in 3D you can also click and drag inside the pane to rotate the preview around. The options below the preview pane allow you to determine which components you want to see in the preview.
- 9. Click **OK**.

Floor Framing

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Every floor that was inserted with a Floor tool has a floor framing configuration assigned to it in its properties in Building Essentials and Construction Suite. These settings determine what the floor frame looks like when you display framing, as well as what members and quantities are reported in your project estimate. You can select the type of members you want to use for the joists, rim joists, and opening headers in a floor frame, and choose whether or not you want each component to be displayed and quantified. You can also control the joist spacing and direction, and specify a Phase and Usage for each component.

You can view floor framing by displaying your model in framed view in Building Essentials and Construction Suite. If you want to be able to select or edit individual members in your floor frame, or include floor framing members in a member schedule, you must first convert the floor framing to actual member elements using the Convert Framing to Members tool.

If you have inserted a Structural Floor, you can edit the individual members in the floor system if needed, and even add or remove members. You can control the visibility of structural floor framing using the View Filter.

Specifying Floor Framing Options

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Floors have a framing configuration assigned to them which you see when you display framing. You can specify a custom framing configuration if you want. There are settings for the joist, rim joist, and opening header, and you can control the joist spacing and direction.

Framing can be displayed using the Display Framing tool, and is included in the project estimate. Settings in the framing configuration let you specify whether or not you want each component in the floor frame to be displayed and quantified, providing the ultimate in versatility and control. You can also assign a Phase and Usage to each member in the configuration so that they are sorted appropriately in the project estimate.

To specify framing options for floors:

- 1. In a non-framed view, select the floor. If the floor was created automatically, you need to select it in 3D view. You can also specify framing members for floors in the catalog.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. On the Basic property page, click the **Specify Framing** button. The **Floor Framing** dialog appears.

Joist		<u>^</u>	4
Include in Framing		Yes	a + R
Member	2x8 SPF		
Usage	Joist		
Phase	Floor Deck		
a. Spacing	1'-4"	=	
Direction	0*		lí l
- Rim Joist			90
include in Framing		Yes	L († .
Member	2x8 SPF		
Usage	Joist		270
Phase	Floor Deck		270
 Opening Header 			
a second second		0	

Joist		×	
Include in Framing		Yes 🗌	at /
Member	2x8 SPF		
Usage	Joist		
Phase	Floor Deck		
a. Spacing	1'-4''	E	f
Direction	0*		í í
Rim Joist			90
include in Framing		Yes	ά.
lember	2x8 SPF		
Usage	Joist		270
Phase	Floor Deck		270
Opening Header			
1.		0	

- 4. To select a joist member, click on the Member field in the *Joist* area, then click the browse button in that field to display the member catalog. Select the desired member in the Catalog Access dialog, then click OK.
- 5. To define the joist spacing, edit the value in the **a. Spacing** field.
- 6. To define the joist direction, edit the angle in the **Direction** field.
- 7. To select a rim joist member, click on the Member field in the *Rim Joist* area, then click the browse button _____ in that field to display the member catalog. Select the desired member in the Catalog Access dialog, then click OK.
- 8. To select an opening header member, click on the **Member** field in the *Opening Header* area, then click the browse button ______ in that field to display the member catalog. Select the desired member in the **Catalog Access** dialog, then click **OK**.
- 9. By default, the joists, rim joists and opening headers are set to be displayed in the framing and quantified in the project estimate. If you do not want one of those components to be displayed and quantified, click in the **Include in Framing** field in that component's settings and select **No**.
- You can assign a unique Usage and Phase to the joist, rim joist and opening header members. Usages help to identify what materials are used for, or could be used for
on the construction site. Phase refers to the construction phase in which a material is used. Phase and Usage can be used as sort keys in your report template. Sort keys determine how materials are sorted in your project estimate.

To assign a Usage to a member, click in the member's **Usage** field and then click the browse button **____** in that field and make a selection from the **Usages** library. To assign a Phase to a member, click in the member's **Phase** field and then click the browse button **____** in that field and make selection from the **Phase** library.

11. Click **OK**.

Tip: If you want to be able to select and edit floor framing members, or include them in member schedules, you must first convert them to actual elements using the Convert Framing to Members tool.

Converting Framing to Members

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When roofs, floors, ceilings and surfaces are created, their framing cannot be selected for editing, and does not appear in member schedules. Using the Convert Framing to Members tool you can instantly convert a surface's framing into actual members that can be selected, edited, and quantified in schedules.

To convert framing to members:

- Select Insert > Members > Convert Framing to Members, or click the down arrow next to the Members button 2. 2. on the Building toolbar and select Convert Framing to Members.
- 2. Select the roof, floor, ceiling or surface whose framing you want to convert. If you are in 2D plan view, click on the edge of the element. If you are in 3D, click anywhere on the surface of the element. (**Note**: Automatic floors can only be selected in 3D.)

The framing is automatically converted.

3. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Ceiling Framing

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Every ceiling surface in your model has a ceiling framing configuration assigned to it in its properties. These settings determine what the ceiling frame looks like when you display framing, as well as what members and quantities are reported in your project estimate. You can select the type of members you want to use for the joists, rim joists, and opening headers in a ceiling frame, and choose whether or not you want each component to be displayed and quantified. You can also control the joist spacing and direction, and specify a Phase and Usage for each component.

You can view ceiling framing by displaying your model in framed view in Building Essentials and Construction Suite. If you want to be able to select or edit individual members in your ceiling frame, or include ceiling framing members in a member schedule, you must first convert the ceiling framing to actual member elements using the Convert Framing to Members tool.

Specifying Ceiling Framing Options

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Ceilings have a framing configuration assigned to them which you see when you display framing in Building Essentials and Construction Suite. You can specify a custom framing configuration if you want. There are settings for the joist, rim joist, and opening header, and you can control the joist spacing and direction.

Framing can be displayed using the Display Framing tool, and is included in the project estimate. Settings in the framing configuration let you specify whether or not you want each component in the ceiling frame to be displayed and quantified, providing the ultimate in versatility and control. You can also assign a Usage and Phase to each member in the configuration.

To specify framing options for ceilings:

- In non-framed view, select the ceiling you want to change. You can also specify framing members for ceilings in the catalog.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

3. On the Basic property page, click the **Specify Framing** button. The **Ceiling Framing** dialog appears.

Cei	ling Framing	
	Joist	
	Include in Framing	
	Member	2x4 SPF
	Usage	Ceiling Joi
	Phase	Ceiling Co
	a. Spacing	1'-4''
	Direction	90*
	Rim Joist	
	Include in Framing	
	Member	2x4 SPF
	Usage	Ceiling Joi
	Phase	Ceiling Co
	Opening Header	
	Include in Framing	
		OK
Ceiling Framing	() ()	
Jont Include in Fram Member Usage Phase	ing Yes 2x4 SPF Deling Joint Deling Contruction	
a Spacing Direction Bim Joist Include in Fram	114" 50' 400 Yes 140 140 140 140 140 140 140 140	
Member Usage Phase Opening Hea	2u4 SPF Colling Jaiat Ceiling Construction der	
Include in Fran	OK Cancel	

- 4. To select a joist member, click on the **Member** field in the *Joist* area, then click the browse button in that field to display the member catalog. Select the desired member in the **Catalog Access** dialog, then click **OK**.
- 5. To define the joist spacing, edit the value in the **a. Spacing** field.
- 6. To define the joist direction, edit the angle in the **Direction** field.
- 7. To select a rim joist member, click on the **Member** field in the *Rim Joist* area, then click the browse button _____ in that field to display the member catalog. Select the desired

member in the **Catalog Access** dialog, then click **OK**.

- 8. To select an opening header member, click on the **Member** field in the *Opening Header* area, then click the browse button ______ in that field to display the member catalog. Select the desired member in the **Catalog Access** dialog, then click **OK**.
- 9. By default, the joists, rim joists and opening headers are set to be displayed in the framing and quantified in the project estimate. If you do not want one of those components to be displayed and quantified, click in the **Include in Framing** field in that component's settings and select **No**.
- 10. You can assign a unique Usage and Phase to the joist, rim joist and opening header members. Usages help to identify what materials are used for, or could be used for on the construction site. Phase refers to the construction phase in which a material is used. Phase and Usage can be used as sort keys in your report template. Sort keys determine how materials are sorted in your project estimate.

To assign a Usage to a member, click in the member's **Usage** field and then click the browse button **____** in that field and make a selection from the **Usages** library. To assign a Phase to a member, click in the member's **Phase** field and then click the browse button **____** in that field and make selection from the **Phase** library.

11. Click **OK**.

Tip: If you want to be able to select and edit ceiling framing members, or include them in member schedules, you must first convert them to actual elements using the Convert Framing to Members tool.

Roof Framing

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Every roof in your model has a framing configuration assigned to it in its properties. The configuration determines what member is used for the rafters, and



23

the spacing between rafters. You can specify a custom roof framing configuration for individual roofs in your model.

Additional frame settings can be found on a roof's Support and Details property page. These include settings such as Support Type (rafter or truss) and Support Height, Raised Heel, Birds Mouth, and Seat.

You can view roof framing by displaying your model in framed view in Building Essentials and Construction Suite. If you want to be able to select or edit individual members in your roof frame, or include roof framing members in a member schedule, you must first convert the roof framing to actual member elements using the Convert Framing to Members tool.

Specifying Roof Framing Options

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Roofs have a framing configuration assigned to them that you see when you display framing. Framing can be displayed using the Display Framing tool, and is included in the project estimate. Settings in the framing configuration let you specify whether or not you want each component in the roof frame to be displayed and quantified. You can assign a member type, Usage and Phase to each member in the configuration.

To specify framing members for roofs:

- 1. In non-framed view, select the roof you want to change. You can also specify framing members for roofs in the catalog.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. On the Basic property page, click the **Specify Framing** button. The **Roof Framing** dialog appears.

Roof Framing 7 Rafter Include in Framing 2x8 SPF Member Usage Rafter Phase Roof Framing a. Spacing 1'-4" -- Opening Header Include in Framing Member 2x8 SPF Usage Rafter Roof Framing Phase -- Fascia Include in Framing 2x8 SPF Member Usage Fascia Phase Roof Framing -- Ridge Include in Framing Member 2x8 SPF Usage Ridge Beam Phase Roof Framing Hip Include in Framing 2x8 SPF Member Cancel OK

of	Framing		?		×
	Rafter				^
	Include in Framing			Yes	
	Member	2x8 SPF			
	Usage	Rafter			
	Phase	Roof Framir	ng		
	a. Spacing	1'-4''			
	Opening Header				
	Include in Framing			Yes	
	Member	2x8 SPF			
	Usage	Rafter			
	Phase	Roof Framir	ng		
	Fascia				
	Include in Framing			Yes	
	Member	2x8 SPF			
	Usage	Fascia			
	Phase	Roof Framin	ng		
	Ridge				
	Include in Framing			Yes	
	Member	2x8 SPF			
	Usage	Ridge Bear	n		
	Phase	Roof Framir	ng		
	Hip				
	Include in Framing			Yes	
	Member	2x8 SPF			~

- 4. Specify the desired options in the *Rafter*, *Opening Header*, *Hip*, *Valley*, *Gable*, *Gable Ladder*, *Collar Ties*, *Rafter Ties* and *Purlinss*ections.
 - To control whether or not each component in the frame is displayed in the framing and included in the project estimate, click in the component's **Include in Framing** field and select either **Yes** or **No**.
 - To select the member that you would like to use for a framing component, click on the **Member** field, then click the browse button _____ in that field to display the member catalog. Select the desired member in the **Catalog Access** dialog, then click **OK**.
 - You can assign a unique Usage and Phase to the rafter and opening header members. Usages help to identify what materials are used for, or could be used for on the construction site. Phase refers to the construction phase in which a material is used. Phase and Usage can be used as sort keys in your report template. Sort keys determine how materials are sorted in your project estimate.

To assign a Usage to a member, click in the member's **Usage** field and then click the browse button ______ in that field and make a selection from the **Usages** library. To assign a Phase to a member, click in the member's **Phase** field and then click the browse button ______ in that field and make selection from the **Phase** library.

- If you are including Rafters or a Gable Ladder, you can specify the spacing between members in the **Spacing** field.
- If you are including a Gable Ladder, the Extension property enables you to control the distance that the ladder framing extends. The default To Structure option automatically extends the ladder framing to the second rafter. Selecting the Fixed option enables you to specify a set extension Distance, which allows the ladder framing to be extended further.
- If you are including Collar Ties, the Vertical distance from ridge is from the top of the ridge to the top of the collar tie member. Specify the distance between the two. The **Max span** is the maximum span for the collar tie. If the span is longer than the distance specified it will be eliminated.
- If you are including Rafter Ties, the Vertical distance from support is from the top of the support height to the top of the rafter tie member. Specify the distance between the two. The Max span is the maximum span for the collar tie. If the span is longer than the distance specified it will be eliminated.
- If you are including Purlins, the Offset from Ridge defines the distance down the slope from the ridgeline to the center of the first purlin. The Span (Distance) defines the distance down the slope from the center of one

purlin to the center of the next purlin. Reset span at segment boundary (Yes/No) defines whether purlins restart at the top edge of each segment if a roof surface is comprised of multiple segments. Holdback from fascia (Distance) defines the last valid position of a purlin relative to the fascia edge of a roof surface. No part of the purlin should extend past this imaginary line. Place purlin at segment boundaries (Yes/No) forces a purlin to be places at the top and bottom edge of a roof segment if a roof surface is comprised of multiple segments. Place purlin at holdback (Yes/No) defines whether a purlin should be placed at the holdback line.

5. Click **OK**.

Note: Additional frame details can be found on a roof's Support and Details property page. More

Tip: If you want to be able to select and edit roof framing members, or include them in member schedules, you must first convert them to actual elements using the Convert Framing to Members tool.

Editing a Roof's Frame Details

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can choose to frame with rafters or trusses. You can also select the members you want to use and edit the precise dimensions of your roof's framing configuration.

To edit a roof's framing details:

- 1. Click on a roof edge to select the roof.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To select a member type for each component in the roof frame (rafters, opening headers, fascia board, ridge board, gable board, hip board, valley board), click the **Specify Framing** button on the Basic page. Specify the properties in the **Roof Framing** dialog. See Specifying Roof Framing Options on page 126.

- In the Roofs dialog, select the Support and Details tab.
- 5. Edit the parameters as desired.

Support Type. Choose *Truss* or *Rafter*.

Raised Heel. The portion of the rafter that rests on the wall plate.

Birds Mouth. The notch cut in the lower end of a rafter to fit it to the top plate of a wall.

Seat. The horizontal cut that is made when cutting a bird's mouth in a rafter.

Fascia

Depth. The thickness of the fascia board.

Plumb. The ends of the rafters are cut vertically resulting in a 90° fascia board.

Raked. The ends of the rafters have an angled cut.

<u>Soffit</u>

Plumb. Creates a flat soffit that is parallel with the ground.

Raked. Creates a soffit that is angled to match the roof slope.

Gable

Type. Choose either *Plain, Squared, Full Hip* or *Half Hip* for the gable return.

Horizontal. The horizontal distance of the return when looking at the gable end face on. **Depth**. The depth of the return.

6. Once you have set your properties, click **OK**.

Inserting Truss Profiles Under a Roof Surface

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Truss Run tool to quickly insert a run of truss profiles under an existing roof surface. The tool will recognize the hips, valleys and gable ends of the roof and insert an appropriate profile. It also recognizes any ceiling surfaces beneath the roof, and will alter the profile of the bottom chord to accommodate them.

Note: Truss profiles are mainly for display, and are not quantifiable. To insert actual truss members, use the Timber Frames tool.

To insert truss profiles under a roof surface:

- 1. Select Insert > Roofs > Truss Run.
- 2. In the catalog panel, select the truss profile that you would like to insert.
- 3. Click on the roof edge at the start of the truss run, then click on the roof edge at the end of the truss run.



4. Right-click and select Finish.



Editing Truss Run Properties

If you have used the Truss Run tool to insert truss profiles under a roof surface, you can edit the properties of the truss run, such as truss spacing properties.

To edit the properties of a truss run:

- 1. Click on any truss profile to select the truss run.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, to select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Trusses** dialog, edit the properties as desired:

Max truss spacing. The maximum allowable distance between two trusses. The tool will insert trusses at the maximum spacing until it runs out of space within the specified span.

Front offset. At the start of the truss run, the distance from the roof edge to the first truss.

Back offset. At the end of the truss run, the distance from the roof edge to the last truss.

Truss width. The width of a truss member (front to back).

Bottom chord thickness. The thickness of the truss's bottom chord member (top to bottom).

Web thickness. The thickness of the truss's web members (top to bottom).

Web max spacing. The maximum allowable distance between web members.

Restart spacing? If set to **No**, the system generates the trusses from start to end using the same spacing, ignoring the hip points. An extra truss is added to each hip point.

In the following example, the **Max truss** spacing is 2'-0", and **Restart Spacing** is set to **No**:



If set to **Yes**, the system generates the trusses from start to end using the same spacing, but takes the hip points into consideration and adds the last truss even if the distance is less than the spacing value. It will restart the spacing after the first hip point.



Surface Framing

You can specify a framing configuration for floor, ceiling and roof surfaces.

The framing configuration determines what the framing looks like when you display framing, as well as what members and quantities are reported in your project estimate. You can select the type of members you want to use for each component in the frame (e.g. joists, rim joists or rafters), and choose whether or not you want each component to be displayed and quantified. You can also control the spacing between joists or rafters, and specify a Phase and Usage for each component.

Specifying Framing Options for Surfaces

Building Essentials | Construction Suite Floor, ceiling and roof surfaces have a framing configuration assigned to them that you can see when framing is displayed. You can edit the framing configuration by selecting members for each component in the frame, setting the spacing between members, and selecting a phase and usage for each component.

Framing can be displayed using the Display Framing tool, and is included in the project estimate. Settings in the framing configuration let you specify whether or not you want each component in the frame to be displayed and quantified, providing the ultimate in versatility and control.

To specify framing options for surfaces:

1. In a non-framed view, select the surface. You can also specify framing members for

surfaces in the catalog.

- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. On the Basic property page, click the **Specify Framing** button. The surface's framing settings are displayed. Settings vary depending on the type of surface (floor, ceiling or roof). Floors and ceilings have settings for the joists, rim joists and opening headers, while roofs have settings for the rafters and opening headers.
- To select a member for any of the framing components, click in the component's Member field, then click the browse button in that field to display the member catalog. Select the desired member in the Catalog Access dialog, then click OK.
- 5. To define the spacing between joists or rafters, edit the value in the **a. Spacing** edit box.
- 6. For floor and ceiling surfaces, specify the direction in which you want the joists to run in the **Direction** edit box. The direction is measured in degrees of an angle.
- 7. To specify a usage or phase for a framing member, click in the Usage or Phase field, click the browse button in that field, and then make a selection from the catalog. Usages and phases can be used as sort keys in your project estimate.
- 8. Click **OK**.

Tip: If you want to be able to select and edit surface framing members, or include them in member schedules, you must first convert them to actual elements using the Convert Framing to Members tool.

Convert Framing to Members

Building Essentials | Construction Suite Floor, ceiling and roof surfaces have framing configurations assigned to them in their properties, and their framing is visible when the Display Framing tool is used. However, the framing that you see in framed view does not consist of actual members. What you see are representations of members. You can use the Convert Framing to Members tool to instantly convert floor, ceiling or roof framing to actual member elements that can be selected and edited individually. Using this tool will also allow floor, ceiling and roof framing members to appear in member schedules if desired.

Converting Framing to Members

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When roofs, floors, ceilings and surfaces are created, their framing cannot be selected for editing, and does not appear in member schedules. Using the Convert Framing to Members tool you can instantly convert a surface's framing into actual members that can be selected, edited, and quantified in schedules.

To convert framing to members:

- Select Insert > Members > Convert Framing to Members, or click the down arrow next to the Members button 2. 2. on the Building toolbar and select Convert Framing to Members.
- 2. Select the roof, floor, ceiling or surface whose framing you want to convert. If you are in 2D plan view, click on the edge of the element. If you are in 3D, click anywhere on the surface of the element. (**Note**: Automatic floors can only be selected in 3D.)

The framing is automatically converted.

3. Right-click and select Finish.

Chapter 12: Wall Panels

Wall Panels

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have your walls pre-built in a factory rather than stick-built on site, the program's Wall Panel feature will be of great benefit to you. You can view an instant list of all wall panels in your project, then generate diagrams for each one.

Each diagram shows an elevation and a plan view of the wall's framing configuration. By default the diagram is fully dimensioned, and each member in the diagram is tagged according to its type. A schedule is also included that lists the members used in the panel and the usage and quantity of each.



Prior to drawing walls you can set up a tagging system and define the settings that you want your wall panels to have. For example, you can decide which dimensions to include, define schedule settings, and control the amount of information displayed in the diagram. Once walls are drawn you can preview all wall panels and customize the appearance of each one. You can specify settings for all or multiple panels simultaneously, or customize individual panels to suit your needs.

Once you have defined panel properties and settings, you can insert wall panels onto worksheets. When you insert a wall panel diagram onto a worksheet, a block of that panel is created and stored in memory. Any time that you make a change to a wall's framing configuration, you will need to regenerate its associated wall panel diagram in order to update its block definition. When you regenerate a panel, any inserted instances of it in your project are automatically updated. Since the diagrams are generated directly from wall panels in your model, you can submit them to the panel assembly plant with confidence knowing that they are accurate and designed to your specifications.

Setting Up a Wall Panel Tagging System

Construction Suite only

GTH) 1/8' 2"

COUNT

As you draw walls, each wall is marked with a wall panel tag. Each tag is associated with a wall panel diagram that is generated by the program. By default, panel tags are simply numbers, and numbering begins at 0. You can specify how you would like wall panels to be tagged prior to drawing walls. You can change the default start number, add a prefix or suffix to the number, add location data to the tag, and change the panel view side.

To specify how you want wall panels to be tagged:

- 1. Select Tools > Wall Panels.
- In the Wall Panels dialog, click 2.

Options - Interview of the options - and select Panel Configuration.

3. In the Panel Configuration dialog, select Panel Tags in the left pane. The settings are described below.

Default Start Number. The number at which panel numbering starts by default. Note that this setting applies to walls that will be drawn and has no effect on walls that have already been drawn. If you have already drawn your walls you can customize the way panels are numbered using the Panel Numbering tool on the Options menu.

Prefix. A set of characters that appear before the panel number. For example, if you specify a prefix of 'WP', the panels would be named 'WP1', 'WP2', etc.

Add location data before prefix. Displays either the Location Name or Location Number before the prefix. For example, if panel WP2 resides on the Ground Floor location, and you select 'Location Name' to add to the prefix, the panel would be named 'Ground Floor WP2'. If you do not want to add location data to the prefix, ensure that None is selected in the drop box.

Suffix. A set of characters that appear after the panel number. For example, if you specify a suffix of 'EXT', the panels would be named '1EXT', '2EXT', etc.

Add location data after suffix. Displays either the Location Name or Location Number after the suffix. For example, if panel 2EXT resides on the Ground Floor location, and you select 'Location Name' to add to the suffix, the panel would be named '2EXT Ground Floor'. If you do not want to add location data to the suffix, ensure that None is selected in the drop box.

Default Panel View Side. This is the side of the wall that you are viewing, as indicated by the arrow on the wall panel tag in your 2D plan. The 'Left' or 'Right' side of the wall depends on the direction in which a wall is drawn. If you were to draw a wall from left to right, the 'left' side would be the side closest to the top of the screen. Imagine yourself standing at the wall's start point and looking to the left or the right to determine the desired view side.

4. Click **OK** in the **Panel Configuration** dialog.

5. Click Close in the Wall Panels dialog.

Note: If you have already drawn your walls, you can edit the wall panel names to suit your needs. See Editing Wall Panel Names on page 142.

Note: To select a text style for your wall panel tags, see *Editing the Text Styles Used for Wall Panels* on page 147.

Displaying/Hiding Wall Panel Tags

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

As you draw walls, each wall is marked with a wall panel tag. Each tag is associated with a wall panel diagram that is generated by the program. By default, wall panel tags are not displayed. You can turn them on and off using your View Filter.

To display or hide wall panel tags:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the **Elements on Location** tab.
- By default, wall panel tags are locked from filtering, so you need to unlock them before you can control their visibility. Click the lock icon in the Tags/Marks row to unlock tags.

🗎 🔒 Tags are locked

- 🔓 🚅 Tags are unlocked
- 4. Click the eye icon in the **Tags/Marks** row to turn wall panel tags on or off.
 - 🐞 🐞 Tags are turned on
 - A Tags are turned off
- 5. Click **OK**.

Note: Wall panel tags are visible but not selectable in Framing Mode. You can only select wall tags when in normal design mode.

Defining Wall Panel Settings

Construction Suite only

As you draw walls, each wall is marked with a wall panel tag. Each tag is linked to a wall panel diagram that the program generates. You can define the settings that you want your tags and wall panel diagrams to have prior to drawing walls, or customize them afterward. It is recommended that you define the wall panel settings before drawing walls to avoid having to regenerate wall panel diagrams.

When defining panel settings you can:

- Customize wall panel tags
- Set the panel view side
- Edit the scale of inserted panels
- Choose to insert a drawing border when panels are inserted
- Choose whether or not to display the elevation view, plan view, wall tags and very top plates in the diagram
- Choose what you want to dimension
- Choose whether or not you want to include a schedule, and where it is placed

All of these settings are defined in a single dialog and will be applied to panels as they are generated. If you have already drawn your walls and edit your wall panel settings, the settings will be applied to the panels that are currently selected in the Wall Panel List when you insert them. If you have already inserted wall panels onto worksheets, you will need to regenerate them in order to update them with your changes.

To define wall panel settings:

- Select Tools > Wall Panels. If you have already drawn walls, you can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by double-clicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or by rightclicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.
- 2. If you have already drawn your walls, select the panels in the list that you want to edit. 'Ctrl+click' to select multiple panels one by one, or 'Shift+click' to select a group of consecutive panels (or all panels). You can also click once on the building location name to instantly select all panels on that location. Note that you can expand and collapse each location by double-clicking the location name.
- 3. In the Wall Panels dialog, click

Configuration dialog box appears. This dialog contains 5 pages of settings.

4. To define a naming convention for wall panels, select **Panel Tags** in the left pane. The settings are described below.

Default Start Number. The number at which panel numbering starts by default. Note that this setting applies to walls that will be drawn and has no effect on walls that have already been drawn. If you have already drawn your walls you can customize the way panels are numbered using the Panel Numbering tool on the Options menu.

Prefix. A set of characters that appear before the panel number. For example, if you specify a prefix of 'WP', the panels would be named 'WP1', 'WP2', etc.

Add location data before prefix. Displays either the Location Name or Location Number before the prefix. For example, if panel WP2 resides on the Ground Floor location, and you select 'Location Name' to add to the prefix, the panel would be named 'Ground Floor WP2'. If you do not want to add location data to the prefix, ensure that None is selected in the drop box.

Suffix. A set of characters that appear after the panel number. For example, if you specify a suffix of 'EXT', the panels would be named '1EXT', '2EXT', etc.

Add location data after suffix. Displays either the Location Name or Location Number after the suffix. For example, if panel 2EXT resides on the Ground Floor location, and you select 'Location Name' to add to the suffix, the panel would be named '2EXT Ground Floor'. If you do not want to add location data to the suffix, ensure that None is selected in the drop box.

Default Panel View Side. This is the side of the wall that you are viewing, as indicated by the arrow on the wall panel tag in your 2D plan. The 'Left' or 'Right' side of the wall depends on the direction in which a wall is drawn. If you were to draw a wall from left to right, the 'left' side would be the side closest to the top of the screen. Imagine yourself standing at the wall's start point and looking to the left or the right to determine the desired view side. **Note**: This is the default view side for all walls that will be drawn. Once your walls are drawn you can flip the view side of individual panels using the Flip Panel View Side tool.

Note: If you have drawn walls already and want to apply edited name settings to the currently selected panels, you must use the Apply Name Changes to Selected Panel(s) tool on the Options menu to update the tags.

 To define the settings used when inserting panels onto worksheets, select **Insertion Set**tings in the left pane. The settings are described below.

Import Scale. The scale of the panel diagram when it is inserted onto the worksheet. By default, the import scale is the same as the worksheet scale. This means that the diagram will fill most of the sheet, which is ideal if you only want one wall panel diagram on each sheet. If you want to insert multiple panels on a sheet, or make panels appear smaller on the sheet for any reason, select an import scale that is smaller than the worksheet scale.

Common Scales 92 1/16" = 1'-0"

192	1/16" = 1'-0"
96	1/8" = 1'-0"
64	3/16" = 1'-0"
48	1/4" = 1'-0"
32	3/8" = 1'-0"
24	1/2" = 1'-0"
16	3/4" = 1'-0"
12	1" = 1'-0"
8	1 1/2" = 1'-0"
4	3" = 1'-0"
2	6" = 1'-0"
1	12" = 1'-0"

Worksheet Scale. The scale of the worksheet that will be created if you choose to insert panels from Model View, or choose to insert panels onto new worksheets when in Worksheet View. By default, the scale displayed is the same scale that is set for your main Model view window.

Plan View Spacing. The distance between panels when multiple panels are inserted onto one worksheet.

Drawing Border. Inserts a drawing border around the panel when it is inserted onto a worksheet. The list will contain any title blocks that exist in the current project. If you do not want to include a border, select **None** in this drop box.

Panels Across in Multi-Panel Insertion. If you are inserting multiple panels onto one worksheet, this value determines the maximum number of panels in one row. For example, if you are inserting 20 panels and you set this value to 5, your worksheet will contain 4 rows of panels with 5 panels in each row.

6. To select the styles for text and dimensions in your wall panel diagrams, select **Text and Dimension Styles** in the left pane. Click on the item for which you want to select a style, then click the browse button ______ in that field to display the **Dimension Styles** or **Text Styles** dialog. You can make selections for the following styles:

Dimension Style. The style used for the dimensions in the wall panel diagram, including member tags.

Label Text Style. The style applied to the panel name in the wall panel diagram. The panel name appears at the lower left corner of the elevation view, or the top right corner of the plan view.

Tag Text Style. The style applied to wall panel tags in your 2D plan.

Schedule Text Style. The style applied to text in the member schedule.

 To specify what you would like to include in your wall panel diagrams, select Panel Content in the left pane. Select either Yes or No for each of the following to determine whether or not they will be included in the panel diagram. **Include Elevation View**. Includes the display of the framed panel in elevation view.

Include Plan View. Includes a plan view of the wall panel, which shows you the distance between members in the panel.

Display Wall Tags. Includes the wall panel tag name in the diagram. The tag appears at the bottom left corner of the elevation view, or top left corner of the plan view.

Include Very Top Plates. Includes the display of the very top plate if one is present in the frame.



 To specify the dimensions that you would like to include on the panel diagram, select Dimensions in the left pane. Select either Yes or No for each available dimension string to specify whether or not it is included in the diagram. For example, you can choose whether or not you want to display dimensions for studs, top plates, bottom plates, cripples and openings.

There are 3 groups of dimensions in each diagram: those running up the side of the panel, those running across the top of the panel, and those running across the plan view. The dimensions running across the top of the panel include 4 dimension strings, each of which can be defined individually.



9. To specify whether or not you want to include a schedule along with the diagram or define schedule settings, select **Schedule** in the left pane. A typical schedule includes the tag, usage, description, count and length of each member type in the frame. Schedule settings are described below. **Include Schedule**. Select either **Yes** or **No** to specify whether or not you want to include a schedule in the diagram.

Placement. Choose either **Below** or **Right** to specify where you want to place the schedule in relation to the annotated panel.

Include Usage. Select either **Yes** or **No** to specify whether or not you want to include a **Usage** column in the schedule that reports the usage of each member.

- 10. Once you have defined your panel configuration, click **OK**.
- 11. If you have previously inserted any of the panels onto worksheets, a Regenerate symbol

G appears next to the names of the panels that have been inserted. This indicates that you need to regenerate the panels in order to update them with your changes.

To regenerate inserted panels and update them with your changes, click

G Regen Panel(s) G Regen Panel(s) at

the top of the dialog.

 When you are finished customizing and updating panels, click Close in the Wall Panels dialog.

Tip: If you have already drawn your walls and want to break a wall into two or more smaller panels, use the Break or Auto Break tool in your 2D plan.

Note: If walls have been drawn already, name changes are not automatically applied, even if you regenerate panels. You must use the Apply Name Changes to Selected Panel(s) tool to update wall panel names and tags.

Note: If you want to change a panel's framing configuration, you need to actually change the framing in the model, either by editing the framing options in your building locations or customizing framing configurations in Framing Mode. See Wall Framing on page 114.

Previewing Wall Panels

Construction Suite only

As you draw walls in your project, each one is automatically tagged with a panel number. Each wall panel in your model has an associated wall panel diagram that shows you the wall's panel number, framing configuration and framing dimensions. You can display an instant list of wall panels in your project and preview each one.

To preview wall panels:

....

 In Model View or Worksheet View, select **Tools > Wall Panels**. In Model View you can also double-click any wall panel tag displayed in your 2D plan, or right-click a tag and select **Edit Wall Panels**. The **Wall Panels** dialog appears:

Ground Floor 1 X 2 X 3 X 6 X 7 X 9 X 11 X 12 X 13 X 15 X 16 X 17 X 18 X 20 X 21 X	Panel Tag	Inserted	1
1 × 2 × 3 × 6 × 7 × 9 × 11 × 12 × 13 × 15 × 16 × 17 × 18 × 19 × 20 × 21 ×	Ground Floor		
2 X X 3 6 X X 9 9 X X 11 12 X 13 15 X 16 17 18 19 X 19 20 X 10 21 X 10 22 X 10 14 X 10 15 X 10 16 X 10 17 X 10 18 X 10 19 X 10 20 X 10 21 X 10 22 X 10 21 X 10 22 X 10 21 X 10 22 X 10 21 X 10 22 X 10 22 X 10 22 X 10 20 X	1	×	
3 X 6 X 7 9 X 11 X 12 X 13 X 15 X 16 X 17 X 18 X 19 X 20 X 21 X 22 X	2	×	
6 X 7 9 X 11 X 12 X 13 X 15 X 16 X 17 X 18 X 19 X 20 X 21 X 22 X	3	×	
7 X 9 X 11 X 12 X 13 X 15 X 16 X 17 X 18 X 19 X 20 X 21 X 22 X	6	×	
9 X 11 X 12 X 13 X 15 X 16 X 17 X 18 X 19 X 20 X 21 X 22 X	7	×	
11 X 12 X 13 X 15 X 16 X 17 X 18 X 19 X 20 X 21 X 22 X	9	×	
12 X 13 X 15 X 16 X 17 X 18 X 19	11	×	
13 X 15 X 16 X 17 X 18 X 19 X 20 X 21 X 22 X	12	×	
15 × 16 × 17 × 18 × 19 × 20 × 21 × 22 ×	13	×	=
16 X 17 X 18 X 19 X 20 X 21 X 22 X	15	×	
17 X 18 X 19 X 20 X 21 X 22 X	16	×	
18 × 19 × 20 × 21 × 22 ×	17	×	
19 × 20 × 21 × 22 ×	18	×	
20 X 21 X 22 X	19	×	
21 X	20	×	
22 🗙	21	×	
	22	×	
	26	×	

Val Paral Lit V Ised Paral () Period Ground Floer Circuit of F 2. To preview a wall panel, select it in the list in the left pane. The wall panel's diagram is displayed in the top right pane. The bottom right pane contains a 2D wall layout, and the currently selected wall panel is highlighted in red so that you know which one you are looking at.

Initially, every panel in the list will have an

 \times beside it. That is because you haven't inserted any panels yet. When you insert a

panel onto a worksheet, a check mark 🖋

is displayed instead.

In addition to viewing panels in this dialog, you can customize panel settings, renumber panels, edit the properties of individual panels, and insert panels onto worksheets.

If you change a wall in your model (for example, if you change its length or its framing configuration), the wall panel preview will update automatically the next time that you open the **Wall Panels** dialog. However, if you have already inserted the panel diagram for that wall, a Regenerate

symbol G G appears next to the panel name indicating that you need to regenerate the panel in order to update the inserted panel diagram with the changes you have made.

Note: Wall panel tags are visible but not selectable in Framing Mode. You can only select wall tags when in normal design mode. To turn wall panel tags on or off, use the View Filter.

Note: If a wall is intersected by one or more other walls, it is broken into multiple panels at those intersection points. You can use the Break tool on a wall's editing menu to manually create a break in a wall if needed. You can also use the Auto Break tool to break a wall into specific lengths.

Viewing and Editing the Properties of Individual Wall Panels

Construction Suite only

? 33



You can override the panel name settings defined in your panel configuration and define a custom name for individual wall panels in your project. You can define a prefix and/or suffix, and specify whether or not you want to include location data in the name.

To customize the name of an individual wall panel:

- In Model View or Worksheet View, select **Tools > Wall Panels**. In Model View you can also double-click any wall panel tag displayed in your 2D plan, or right-click a tag and select **Edit Wall Panels**.
- 2. In the left pane of the **Wall Panels** dialog, double-click the wall panel whose properties you want to view or edit, or right-click on the panel and select **Panel Properties**.
- 3. In the Panel Properties dialog, specify the name settings if desired. These are described below. As you define the name settings, the result is displayed in the Panel Name field. Add location data before prefix. Displays either the Location Name or Location Number before the prefix. For example, if 'Panel2' resides on the Ground Floor location, and you select 'Location Name' to add to the prefix, the panel would be tagged 'Ground Floor Panel2'. If you do not want to add location data to the prefix, ensure that None is selected in the drop box.

Add location data after suffix. Displays either the Location Name or Location Number after the suffix. For example, if panel '2EXT' resides on the Ground Floor location, and you select 'Location Name' to add to the suffix, the panel would be tagged '2EXT Ground Floor'. If you do not want to add location data to the suffix, ensure that **None** is selected in the drop box.

Prefix. A set of characters that appear before the panel number. For example, if you specify a prefix of 'Panel', the panels would be tagged 'Panel1', 'Panel2', etc.

Number. The number assigned to the panel according to your panel configuration settings. This value cannot be edited for individual panels, but you can edit your

panel numbering system. See Editing Wall Panel Numbering on page 140.

Suffix. A set of characters that appear after the panel number. For example, if you specify a suffix of 'EXT', the panels would be tagged '1EXT', '2EXT', etc.

Panel Name. The resulting panel name and tag.

- To display the diagram's tags and dimensions in the preview window, enable the **Display Annotations** check box. Disabling annotations results in a larger preview of the panel, providing a close-up look.
- Click **OK**. The panel name updates in the Wall Panels dialog and the panel tag updates in your 2D plan.
- 6. If you have previously inserted the panel

onto a worksheet, a Regenerate symbol 🥝

appears next to the panel name. This indicates that you need to regenerate the panel in order to update it with your name changes.

Ca Regen Panel(s)

To regenerate the panel, click

G Regen Panel(s)

the top of the dialog.

7. Click **Close** in the **Wall Panels** dialog.

Flipping a Wall Panel's View Side

Walls are tagged automatically as you draw them. They are tagged on the side specified in your panel configuration settings. Once you have drawn your walls you can flip the panel tag of individual walls to the other side of the wall if desired. This will also flip the resulting wall panel diagram so that you are viewing the wall from the other side.

To flip a wall panel's view side:

 In 2D plan view, right-click on the panel tag that you want to flip, then select Flip Panel View Side. The tag flips to the other side of the wall. **Note**: If you have previously inserted the panel onto a worksheet and want to update the inserted diagram, you will need to regenerate it.

Moving Wall Panel Tags

As you draw walls they are tagged at the center with a panel number. You can move wall panel tags if needed. For example, you may want to move a tag if it is obstructing another object in your drawing, or vice versa. You can drag and drop a wall panel tag to move it, or use the Move tool to specify a precise move distance with the Commander.

To move a wall panel tag using drag-and-drop:

- 1. In 2D plan view, click on the tag that you want to move.
- 2. Click and hold your mouse button over the tag's square blue grip, then drag it to the desired location in your plan.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

To move a wall panel tag using the Move tool:

- 1. In 2D plan view, click on the tag that you want to move.
- 2. Right-click and select **Move**.
- 3. Select a base point for the move.
- 4. Without holding your mouse button down, move your mouse to move the element. Select the point you want to move the element to, or enter a distance and direction in the Commander.

Tip: You can also nudge a selected wall panel tag in small increments by clicking the arrow keys on your keyboard.

Note: Moving a wall panel tag does not change the wall panel diagram that is associated with the tag, even if you move it to the other side of the wall. If you want to flip the panel view side, see Flipping a Wall Panel's View Side on page 139.

Editing Wall Panel Numbering

Construction Suite only

By default, wall panels are numbered in the order in which walls are drawn, starting with the default Start Number defined in your panel configuration settings. When you draw a wall that intersects another wall, the wall that you intersect is broken into smaller panels, which can cause panel numbering to become non-sequential in your 2D plan.

You can customize the wall panel numbering order on each building location after your walls have been drawn. You can choose a different start number or specify custom numbering options for exterior walls, interior load-bearing walls and interior non-loadbearing walls. Instead of numbering panels in the order in which walls are drawn, you can number them in a specific direction. For example, you can number exterior walls in a clockwise or counterclockwise direction, or number vertically drawn walls from left to right or right to left.

To edit wall panel numbering:

- In Model View, select Tools > Wall Panels. You can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by double-clicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or right-clicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.
- 2. In the Wall Panels dialog, click

Options • Options • and select **Panel Numbering**. The **Panel Numbering** dialog appears:

Panel Numbering
Sort Location: All Locations
Panel Start Number: 1 📑
Sort Options
💿 Sort As Drawn
Oustom Sort
Exterior Walls: Clockwise
Interior Vertical Walls:
Loadbearing Right
Non-loadbearing Right
Interior Horizontal Walls:
Loadbearing Bottor
Non-loadbearing Bottor
Sort Panels Car
Panel Numbering R X
Sort Location:
Panel Start Number: 1
Sort Options
Sort As Drawn
Exterior Walls: Clockwise
Interior Vertical Walls:
Non-loadbearing Right to Left
Interior Horizontal Walls:
Loadbearing Bottom to Top Non-loadbearing Bottom to Top
Sott Panels Cancel

3. From the **Sort Location** drop box, select the location for which you want to customize panel numbering. If you want to apply the

same rules to every location, select **All Loca-tions**.

- 4. To specify a different start number for your panel numbering system, edit the value in the **Panel Start Number** edit box. For each wall panel in the sequence, panel numbers will increment by 1 from this value. For example, if the first panel is numbered 100, the next will be 101, and the one after that will be 102, and so on.
- 5. If you want all wall panels to be numbered in the order in which they were drawn, enable the **Sort as Drawn** radio button.
- 6. If you want to sort panels in a specific direction rather than the order in which they were drawn, enable the **Custom Sort** radio button.
- To specify a sort order for exterior walls, click the drop box next to Exterior Walls and select either As Drawn, Counter-Clockwise or Clockwise.
- 8. To specify a sort order for vertical interior walls, click the drop boxes in the Interior Vertical Wall area and select either As Drawn,
 Left to Right or Right to Left. For example, if you select Left to Right, the vertical interior walls on the left side of the plan will be numbered first, and numbering will increase as you go across the plan to the right. You can specify a different sort order for loadbearing and non-load-bearing walls.
- To specify a sort order for horizontal interior walls, click the drop boxes in the Interior Horizontal Wall area and select either As Drawn, Top to Bottom or Bottom to Top. You can specify a different sort order for load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls.
- 10. When you are finished defining your sort

options, click

Sort Panels

Sort Panels. The wall panels in the **Wall Panels** dialog are sorted according to the rules you have set.

11. If you have previously inserted any of the renumbered panels onto worksheets, a Regenerate symbol *G* appears next to the names of the panels that have been inserted. This indicates that you need to regenerate the panels in order to update their tag numbers on the worksheets.

To regenerate inserted panels and update them with your changes, select them in the

list and then click GRegen Panel(s)

G Regen Panel(s) at the top of the dialog.

12. To update the panel numbering in your 2D plan, click **Close** in the **Wall Panels** dialog.

Tip: You can also manually re-order wall panels by moving them up and down in the Wall Panels dialog. See Re-ordering Wall Panels Manually on page 142.

Re-ordering Wall Panels Manually

Construction Suite only

You can manually re-order wall panels by moving them up and down in the Wall Panels dialog. When you move a wall panel up or down, it acquires the number of the panel that was in that spot originally. For example, if you move panel 1 at the top of the list down one spot, it becomes panel 2. Once you have reordered your panels and close the Wall Panels dialog, the tags in your 2D plan will update. If you have inserted any of the panels onto worksheets, you will need to regenerate them in order to update their tag numbers on the worksheets.

To re-order panels in the wall panel list:

- Select Tools > Wall Panels. You can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by doubleclicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or by right-clicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.
- 2. In the **Wall Panels** dialog, click on the wall panel that you want to move. The panel is highlighted red in the 2D plan shown in the dialog's lower right pane. This lets you know which panel you are re-numbering.

3. Click **a** the top of the dialog to move the panel up in the list, or click

to move it down. As you move the panel up or down, it acquires the number of that spot in the list.

4. If you have previously inserted any of the renumbered panels onto worksheets, a

Regenerate symbol *G* appears next to the names of the panels that have been inserted. This indicates that you need to regenerate the panels in order to update their tag numbers on the worksheets.

To regenerate inserted panels and update them with your changes, select them in the

list and then click **G Regen Panel(s) G Regen Panel(s)** at the top of the dialog.

 When you are finished re-ordering panels, click Close in the Wall Panels dialog. The wall panel tags in your 2D plan are updated.

Note: To sort your panels automatically according to a custom set of sorting rules, see Editing Wall Panel Numbering on page 140.

Editing Wall Panel Names

Construction Suite only

By default, wall panels are simply referred to by number and do not include any other information. You can add a prefix and/or suffix to the wall panel number, and add location data to the prefix or suffix for easier identification. You can edit the name definition for single or selected panels, or for all panels. (If you want to quickly edit the name of an individual wall panel and its associated tag, see Viewing and Editing the Properties of Individual Wall Panels on page 138.)

If you have already drawn your walls and edit your panel tag definition, the tags do not update automatically in your drawing or in the Wall Panels dialog. You must update them using the Apply Name Changes to Selected Panel(s) tool.

To edit panel naming settings:

- In Model View or Worksheet View, select **Tools > Wall Panels**. In Model View you can also double-click any wall panel tag displayed in your 2D plan, or right-click a tag and select **Edit Wall Panels**.
- In the left pane of the Wall Panels dialog, select the panels whose name definition you want to change. 'Ctrl+click' to select multiple panels one by one, or 'Shift+click' to select a group of consecutive panels (or all panels). You can also click once on the building location name to instantly select all panels on that location. Note that you can expand and collapse each location by double-clicking the location name.
- Click Options

 All Options
 All Options
 All Options
 All Options
 All Options
 All Options
 All Options
- In the Panel Configuration dialog, select Panel Tags in the left pane. The settings are described below.

Prefix. A set of characters that appear before the panel number. For example, if you specify a prefix of 'WP', the panels would be named 'WP1', 'WP2', etc.

Add location data before prefix. Displays either the Location Name or Location Number before the prefix. For example, if panel WP2 resides on the Ground Floor location, and you select 'Location Name' to add to the prefix, the panel would be named 'Ground Floor WP2'. If you do not want to add location data to the prefix, ensure that None is selected in the drop box.

Suffix. A set of characters that appear after the panel number. For example, if you specify a suffix of 'EXT', the panels would be named '1EXT', '2EXT', etc.

Add location data after suffix. Displays either the Location Name or Location Number after the suffix. For example, if panel 2EXT resides on the Ground Floor location, and you select 'Location Name' to add to the suffix, the panel would be named '2EXT Ground Floor'. If you do not want to add location data to the suffix, ensure that **None** is selected in the drop box.

- 5. Click **OK**.
- 6. To apply edited name settings to the cur-

rently selected panels, click 🖾 Options 🚽

Options and select **Apply Name Changes to Selected Panel(s)**. The tags in the **Wall Panels** dialog and in your drawing are updated.

7. If you have previously the selected panels

onto worksheets, a Regenerate symbol

Gappears next to the panel name. This indicates that you need to regenerate the panel in order to update it with your tag changes.To regenerate the panel, click

🕝 Regen Panel(s)

G Regen Panel(s) a

the top of the dialog.

8. Click Close.

Note: If you want to change the way panels are numbered, see Editing Wall Panel Numbering on page 140.

Applying Name Changes to Wall Panels

Construction Suite only

If you have already drawn your walls and have edited the name definition in your panel configuration settings, the tags will not update automatically in your drawing or in the Wall Panels dialog. You must update them using the Apply Name Changes to Selected Panel(s) tool.

To apply tag changes to existing wall panels:

- In Model View, select Tools > Wall Panels. You can also double-click any wall panel tag displayed in 2D plan view, or right-click a tag and select Edit Wall Panels.
- 2. In the left pane of the **Wall Panels** dialog, select the panels whose tag name you want to update. 'Ctrl+click' to select multiple panels one by one, or 'Shift+click' to select a group of consecutive panels (or all panels). You can also click once on the building location name

to instantly select all panels on that location. Note that you can expand and collapse each location by double-clicking the location name.

3. Click Options - and

select **Apply Name Changes to Selected Panel(s)**. The current tag definition is applied to the selected panels in the Wall Panels dialog as well as in your drawing.

4. If you have previously inserted the selected wall panels onto worksheets, click

G Regen Panel(s) **G** Regen Panel(s) at the top of the dialog to update the inserted panels.

5. Click **Close** in the **Wall Panels** dialog.

Note: You do not need to use the Apply Name Changes to Selected Panel(s) tool if you have not drawn walls yet. The current tag definition will be automatically applied as you draw walls.

Note: If you regenerate a wall panel diagram that has been inserted onto a worksheet, the tag in the inserted diagram updates, but the name of the worksheet does not. You can edit the name of a worksheet by editing its view properties. See Renaming a View Window on page 300.

Editing Content Display in Wall Panel Diagrams

Construction Suite only

By default, each wall panel diagram includes both an elevation view and plan view of the wall as well as the panel's tag number. The very top plate is also included. You can specify whether or not you want each of these items to be included in your wall panel diagrams by editing your panel configuration settings. Note that when you define panel content settings, they apply to all wall panels.

To specify what you want displayed in your wall panel diagrams:

 Select Tools > Wall Panels. If you have already drawn walls, you can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by double-clicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or by rightclicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.

- 3. In the **Panel Configuration** dialog, select **Panel Content** in the left pane.
- Select either Yes or No for each of the following to determine whether or not they will be included in the panel diagram.

Include Elevation View. Includes the display of the framed panel in elevation view.

Include Plan View. Includes a plan view of the wall panel, which shows you the distance between members in the panel.

Display Wall Tags. Includes the wall panel tag name in the diagram. The tag appears at the bottom left corner of the elevation view, or top left corner of the plan view.

Include Very Top Plates. Includes the display of the very top plate if one is present in the frame.



- 5. Once you have defined your panel content, click **OK**.
- 6. If you have previously inserted any of the panels onto worksheets, a Regenerate symbol

G appears next to the names of the panels that have been inserted. This indicates that you need to regenerate the panels in order to update them with your changes.

at

To regenerate inserted panels and update them with your changes, click

G Regen Panel(s) G Regen Panel(s)

the top of the dialog.

 When you are finished customizing and updating panels, click Close in the Wall Panels dialog.

Note: If you have already inserted wall panel diagrams onto worksheets you can also manually edit wall panel diagrams by editing each panel's definition in Worksheet View. See Editing Inserted Wall Panels Manually on page 150.

Editing Wall Panel Dimension Settings

Construction Suite only

Wall panel diagrams have a default set of dimension settings that determine which items are dimensioned in the diagram, including studs, top plates, bottom plates, cripples and openings. You can choose which dimensions you want displayed by editing your panel configuration settings. Note that when you define dimension settings, they apply to all wall panel diagrams.

To define wall panel dimension settings:

- Select Tools > Wall Panels. If you have already drawn walls, you can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by double-clicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or right-clicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.
- Click Options

 Click Options

 and select Panel Configuration.
- 3. In the **Panel Configuration** dialog, select **Dimensions** in the left pane.

 Select either Yes or No for each available dimension string to specify whether or not it is included in the diagram.

There are 3 groups of dimensions in each diagram: those running up the side of the panel, those running across the top of the panel, and those running across the plan view. The dimensions running across the top of the panel include 4 dimension strings, each of which can be defined individually.



- 5. To select a style to use for the dimensions, select **Text and Dimension Styles** in the left pane of the **Panel Configuration** dialog. Click on the **Dimension Style** item, then click the browse button _____ in that field. Select the desired style in the **Dimension Styles** dialog, then click **OK**.
- 6. Click **OK** in the **Panel Configuration** dialog.

 If you have previously inserted any of the panels onto worksheets, a Regenerate symbol

G appears next to the names of the panels that have been inserted. This indicates that you need to regenerate the panels in order to update them with your changes.

To regenerate inserted panels and update them with your changes, click

G Regen Panel(s) G Regen Panel(s) at

the top of the dialog.

 When you are finished customizing and updating panels, click Close in the Wall Panels dialog.

Note: If you have already inserted wall panel diagrams onto worksheets and you want to manually edit dimensions, you can do so by editing the panel's definition in Worksheet View. See Editing Inserted Wall Panels Manually on page 150.

Editing the Dimension Style Used in Wall Panels

Construction Suite only

You can select the dimension style that you would like to use in your wall panel diagrams. The selected style will be applied to all numerical dimensions as well as the member tags.

To edit the text styles used for wall panels:

- Select Tools > Wall Panels. If you have already drawn walls, you can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by double-clicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or by rightclicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.
- 2. In the Wall Panels dialog, click

Options - Options - and select Panel Configuration.

- 3. In the **Panel Configuration** dialog, select **Text and Dimension Styles** in the left pane.
- 4. Click on the **Dimension Style** item, then click the browse button in that field.
- 5. In the **Dimension Styles** dialog, select the desired dimension style, then click **OK**.
- 6. Click **OK** in the **Panel Configuration** dialog.

7. If you have previously inserted any of the panels onto worksheets, a Regenerate symbol

G appears next to the names of the panels that have been inserted. This indicates that you need to regenerate the panels in order to update them with your changes. To regenerate inserted panels and update them with your changes, click

Ca Regen Panel(s)

🕝 Regen Panel(s)

the top of the dialog.

 When you are finished customizing and updating panels, click Close in the Wall Panels dialog.

Editing Wall Panel Schedule Settings

Construction Suite only

By default, a member schedule is included in each wall panel diagram. You can control the placement of the schedule within the diagram and choose whether or not you want to include a usage for each member in the schedule. If you don't want to include a schedule in your wall panel diagrams, you can turn them off in your panel configuration settings. Note that schedule settings apply to all wall panel diagrams.

To edit wall panel schedule settings:

- Select Tools > Wall Panels. If you have already drawn walls, you can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by double-clicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or right-clicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.
- 3. In the **Panel Configuration** dialog, select **Schedule** in the left pane. A typical schedule includes the tag, usage, description, count and length of each member type in the frame. Schedule settings are described below.

Include Schedule. Select either **Yes** or **No** to specify whether or not you want to include a schedule in the diagram.

Placement. Choose either Below or Right to specify where you want to place the schedule in relation to the annotated panel.

Include Usage. Select either Yes or No to specify whether or not you want to include a Usage column in the schedule that reports the usage of each member.

When you finished editing schedule settings, click OK.

4. If you have previously inserted any of the panels onto worksheets, a Regenerate symbol

🕼 🌀 appears next to the names of the panels that have been inserted. This indicates that you need to regenerate the panels in order to update them with your changes. To regenerate inserted panels and update

them with your changes, click Ca Regen Panel(s)

C Regen Panel(s)

the top of the dialog.

5. When you are finished customizing and updating panels, click Close in the Wall Panels dialog.

Note: If you have already inserted wall panel diagrams onto worksheets and you want to manually edit an individual schedule, you can do so by editing the panel's definition in Worksheet View. See Editing Inserted Wall Panels Manually on page 150.

Note: To select a style for schedule text, see Editing the Text Styles Used for Wall Panels on page 147.

Editing the Text Styles Used for Wall Panels

Construction Suite only

You can select the text styles that you would like to use for the wall panel tags in your 2D plan and for the text that appears in your wall panel diagrams.

To edit the text styles used for wall panels:

1. Select Tools > Wall Panels. If you have already drawn walls, you can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by double-clicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or by rightclicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.

2. In the Wall Panels dialog, click

Options - Options - and select Panel Configuration.

- 3. In the Panel Configuration dialog, select Text and Dimension Styles in the left pane.
- 4. Click on the item for which you want to select a text style, then click the browse button _____ in that field to display the **Text** Styles dialog. You can make selections for the following styles:

Label Text Style. The style applied to the panel name in the wall panel diagram. The panel name appears at the lower left corner of the elevation view, or the top right corner of the plan view.

Tag Text Style. The style applied to wall panel tags in your 2D plan.

Schedule Text Style. The style applied to text in the wall panel's member schedule.

- 5. When you are finished selecting text styles, click OK.
- 6. If you have previously inserted any of the panels onto worksheets, a Regenerate symbol

🕝 Gappears next to the names of the panels that have been inserted. This indicates that you need to regenerate the panels in order to update them with your changes. To regenerate inserted panels and update them with your changes, click

G Regen Panel(s) G Regen Panel(s)

- the top of the dialog.
- 7. When you are finished customizing and updating panels, click Close in the Wall Panels dialog.

Editing Wall Panel Insertion Settings

Construction Suite only

You can edit the settings used when wall panel diagrams are inserted onto worksheets. You can control the insertion scale of panels as well as the scale of the worksheets that are created. You can also choose to include a drawing border or title block along with the panel diagram. If inserting multiple panels on one sheet, you can define the number of panels that you want to have in each row, and control the spacing between panels.

To define panel insertion settings:

- 1. Select **Tools > Wall Panels**. If you have already drawn walls, you can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by double-clicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or by rightclicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.
- 2. Click Options Options and select Panel Configuration.
- 3. In the **Panel Configuration** dialog, select Insertion Settings in the left pane. The settings are described below.

Import Scale. The scale of the panel diagram when it is inserted onto the worksheet. By default, the import scale is the same as the worksheet scale. This means that the diagram will fill most of the sheet, which is ideal if you only want one wall panel diagram on each sheet. If you want to insert multiple panels on a sheet, or make panels appear smaller on the sheet for any reason, select an import scale that is smaller than the worksheet scale.

Common Scales

192	1/16" = 1'-0"
96	1/8" = 1'-0"
64	3/16" = 1'-0"
48	1/4" = 1'-0"
32	3/8" = 1'-0"
24	1/2" = 1'-0"
16	3/4" = 1'-0"
12	1" = 1'-0"
8	1 1/2" = 1'-0"
4	3" = 1'-0"
2	6" = 1'-0"
1	12" = 1'-0"

Worksheet Scale. The scale of the worksheet that will be created if you choose to insert panels from Model View, or choose to insert panels onto new worksheets when in Worksheet View. By default, the scale

displayed is the same scale that is set for your main Model view window.

Plan View Spacing. The distance between panels when multiple panels are inserted onto one worksheet.

Drawing Border. Inserts a drawing border around the panel when it is inserted onto a worksheet. If you do not want to include a border, select None in this drop box. You can choose any block that currently exists in your project. For example, in the default drawing you will see Titleblock (Arch D-Landscape) listed because that is the title block that is inserted on the default worksheets.

Panels Across in Multi-Panel Insertion. If you are inserting multiple panels onto one worksheet, this value determines the maximum number of panels in one row. For example, if you are inserting 20 panels and you set this value to 5, your worksheet will contain 4 rows of panels with 5 panels in each row.

- 4. Click OK.
- 5. If you have previously inserted any of the panels onto worksheets, a Regenerate symbol

🕝 🌀 appears next to the names of the panels that have been inserted. This indicates that you need to regenerate the panels in order to update them with your changes. To regenerate inserted panels and update

G Regen Panel(s) G Regen Panel(s)

them with your changes, click

at

the top of the dialog.

6. Click Close in the Wall Panels dialog.

Note: Editing the wall panel insertion settings has no effect on wall panel diagrams that you have already inserted onto worksheets. If you want to use the new settings on inserted panels, you will have to delete the inserted panels and insert them again.

Note: If you have already inserted wall panel diagrams onto worksheets you can manually edit wall panel diagrams by editing each panel's

definition in Worksheet View. See Editing Inserted Wall Panels Manually on page 150.

Specifying Default Print Settings for Wall Panel Diagrams

Construction Suite only

Prior to printing wall panel diagrams you can specify the print settings that you would like to use.

- 1. Select Tools > Wall Panels. If you have already drawn walls, you can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by double-clicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or by rightclicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.
- 2. Click Options Options and select Default Print Setup.
- 3. In the **Print Setup** dialog, specify the desired print settings. For more information about these settings, see Printing Drawings on page 567.
- 4. Click OK.

Inserting Wall Panels onto Worksheets

Construction Suite only

You can insert wall panel diagrams onto worksheets directly from the Wall Panels dialog. You can insert multiple diagrams simultaneously, saving valuable time and effort. If you insert wall panel diagrams from Model View, they are inserted onto new worksheets that the program creates for you. If you insert wall panel diagrams from Worksheet View, you can choose to insert the diagrams onto new sheets or existing sheets.

To insert wall panel diagrams onto worksheets:

- 1. You can insert panels from Model View or Worksheet View. However, if you want to insert panels onto an existing worksheet, make that Worksheet View window the current view window first.
- 2. Select Tools > Wall Panels. If you are in Model View you can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by double-clicking a wall panel

tag in your 2D plan, or by right-clicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.

- 3. In the Wall Panels dialog, select the panels in the list that you want to insert. 'Ctrl+click' to select multiple panels one by one, or 'Shift+click' to select a group of consecutive panels (or all panels). You can also click once on the building location name to instantly select all panels on that location. Note that you can expand and collapse each location by double-clicking the location name.
- 4. If you are currently in Model View, click

Insert Panel(s)

Insert Panel(s) . A new worksheet will be created for each selected panel, and the panel diagrams will be inserted onto the sheets automatically. If your view tabs are displayed, you will see new tabs added - one for each new worksheet created.

If you are currently in Worksheet View, click A head B (1) and then

select either On Current Worksheet or On New Worksheet(s).

If you select On Current Worksheet, all selected panels will be inserted on the current worksheet. The spacing and layout of panels is determined by the insertion settings in your Panel Configuration. If you select **On** New Worksheet(s), a new worksheet will be created for each selected panel.

5. When you are finished inserting panels, click Close.

Tip: You can define various insertion settings prior to inserting panels. For example, you can choose to include a drawing border on the worksheet, set the spacing between inserted panels, and specify a scale for inserted panels. See Editing Wall Panel Insertion Settings on page 147.

Note: New worksheets containing panel diagrams are listed in the View Manager, so that you can control the visibility and properties of each one.

Regenerating Wall Panels

Construction Suite only

If you have inserted wall panel diagrams onto worksheets and you subsequently make changes to your wall framing or your wall panel configuration, the inserted diagrams do not update automatically. In order to update the inserted diagrams with your changes you need to regenerate them in the Wall Panels dialog.

If you see a Regenerate symbol **G** next to a panel's name in the **Wall Panels** dialog, this indicates that the panel has been inserted previously and that it requires regeneration. The program has detected a change in your wall framing or wall panel settings that impacts the appearance of the wall panel diagram.

To regenerate wall panels:

- Select Tools > Wall Panels. If you are in Model View you can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by double-clicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or right-clicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.
- In the Wall Panels dialog, select the panels in the list that you want to regenerate.
 'Ctrl+click' to select multiple panels one by one, or 'Shift+click' to select a group of consecutive panels (or all panels). You can also click once on the building location name to instantly select all panels on that location. Note that you can expand and collapse each location by double-clicking the location name.

3. Click G Regen Panel(s)

G Regen Panel(s) . When a panel has been

regenerated, the Regenerate symbol 🥝 🥝

is replaced by a check mark \checkmark , indicating that the panel's definition has been updated.

4. Click **Close** in the **Wall Panels** dialog. If you go to a worksheet that contains a regenerated wall panel, you will see that the diagram has been updated.

Note: Panels that have never been inserted onto

worksheets are marked with an X X in the Wall Panels dialog. These panels do not require regeneration if you make changes to your wall framing or panel configuration because they have not been generated yet. Their diagrams will be generated with the current settings when you insert them onto worksheets.

Note: You can also manually edit wall panel diagrams that have already been inserted onto worksheets. See Editing Inserted Wall Panels Manually on page 150.

Editing Inserted Wall Panels Manually

When you insert a wall panel diagram onto a worksheet, it is inserted as a block. This means that you can move, rotate, scale or delete the diagram as a whole. You can also edit every line, character and object in the diagram individually and even add objects to it. When you edit a block's definition, all instances of that block will update automatically with your changes.

To edit an inserted wall panel diagram manually:

- 1. Go to the worksheet containing the wall panel diagram that you want to edit.
- 2. Click anywhere on the diagram to select it.
- If you want to edit the diagram as a whole, select the desired editing tool (Move, Rotate, Scale, Delete, etc.) from the **Modify** menu.
- If you want to edit individual lines or text in the diagram, go to the Object Properties pane on the right side of the screen and click the Edit button in the Definition field. This takes you into block editing mode.
- Click on an object that you want to edit, then make the desired change. Continue editing objects as needed.
- When you are finished editing the diagram, press ESC on your keyboard to return to the overall worksheet.

Note: If you change a wall's size or framing, or change your panel configuration settings, you can

update inserted wall panel diagrams with those changes by regenerating the panels in the Wall Panels dialog.

Deleting Unreferenced Wall Panels

Construction Suite only

When you insert a wall panel diagram onto a worksheet, a block of that diagram is generated and stored in memory. The inserted diagram then *references* that stored block. If you delete an inserted wall panel diagram from your worksheet, the block that it references remains in memory. Since that block is no longer being referenced, it becomes unnecessary and can be removed from your system. Deleting unreferenced wall panels helps to decrease the overall drawing file size.

To delete unreferenced wall panels from memory:

- Select Tools > Wall Panels. You can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by doubleclicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or by right-clicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.
- 2. In the Wall Panels dialog, click

Coptions - Coptions - and select Delete Unreferenced Panels. If there are any unreferenced wall panels in memory, they are listed in the Delete Unreferenced Panels dialog.

🔁 Delete Unreferenced Panels

	Panel		
V	1		
V	2		
1	3		
\checkmark	4		
•			
		Delete	Ca
Unreferenced Panels	82		

3. Select the blocks that you want to delete by enabling their check boxes. You can select all panels simultaneously by clicking the top check box beside the **Panel** label.

Delete Cancel

- 4. Click **Delete Delete**. A dialog warns you that you will not be able to undo changes to your drawing since your last save if you proceed with deleting unreferenced items.
- 5. Click **OK** in the dialog to proceed with the deletion.

Exporting Wall Panel Data to a CSV File

Construction Suite only

You can export data from selected wall panels to a CSV file to create an automatic bill of materials.

To export wall panel data to a CSV file:

- Select Tools > Wall Panels. You can also bring up the Wall Panels dialog by doubleclicking a wall panel tag in your 2D plan, or by right-clicking a tag and selecting Edit Wall Panels.
- 2. In the **Wall Panels** dialog, select the panels whose data you want to export. Single-click to select one panel, Shift-click to select a group of consecutive wall panels, or Ctrl+click to select multiple panels one at a time.
- 3. Click Options Options and select BOM from Selected Panel(s).
- 4. In the **Save As** dialog box, specify a name and save location for the generated file, then click **Save**. A message box confirms that the BOM generation is complete.

A partial sample file is shown below.

4	A	В	С	D	E	F	G	н
1	Panel Nan	TAG	USAGE	DESCRIPT	DX1	DY1	COUNT	LENGTH
2	2	A	Stud	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	17	7'-8 5/8"
3	2	в	Header	2x6 SPF	1 1/2"	5 1/2"	4	4'-0"
4	2	С	Header	2x6 SPF	1 1/2"	51/2"	2	4'-4"
5	2	D	Plate	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	1	9'-8 1/4"
6	2	E	Plate	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	1	9'-11 3/4'
7	2	F	Plate	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	2	23'-9"
8	2	G	Jack Stud	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	4	6'-6 1/2"
9	2	н	Jack Stud	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	2	6'-7"
10	2	1	Opening S	2x4 SPF	11/2"	3 1/2"	2	3'-9"
11	2	J	Cripple St	2x4 SPF	11/2"	3 1/2"	3	8 1/8"
12	2	к	Cripple St	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	6	8 5/8"
13	2	L	Cripple St	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	6	3'-1/8"
14	3	A	Stud	2x4 SPF	11/2"	3 1/2"	8	7'-8 5/8"
15	3	в	Plate	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	2	6'-9"
16	2	C	Disto	302 AvC	1 1/2"	21/2"	1	14'-1"
Ð	panel BOM.c	SV						
1	A	В	С	D	E	F	G	н
1	Panel Nan	TAG	USAGE	DESCRIPT	DX1	DY1	COUNT	LENGTH
2	2	A	Stud	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	17	7'-8 5/8"
3	2	в	Header	2x6 SPF	1 1/2"	5 1/2"	4	4'-0"
4	2	С	Header	2x6 SPF	1 1/2"	51/2"	2	4'-4"
5	2	D	Plate	2x4 SPF	11/2"	3 1/2"	1	9'-8 1/4"
6	2	E	Plate	2x4 SPF	11/2"	3 1/2"	1	9'-11 3/4'
7	2	F	Plate	2x4 SPF	11/2"	3 1/2"	2	23'-9"
8	2	G	Jack Stud	2x4 SPF	11/2"	3 1/2"	4	6'-6 1/2"
9	2	н	Jack Stud	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	2	6'-7"
10	2	1	Opening S	2x4 SPF	11/2"	3 1/2"	2	3'-9"
11	2	J	Cripple St	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	3	8 1/8"
12	2	к	Cripple St	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	6	8 5/8"
13	2	L	Cripple St	2x4 SPF	1 1/2"	3 1/2"	6	3'-1/8"

15

3 B

Plate

Diate

2x4 SPF 11/2"

2vA SDE

3 1/2"

3 1/2

2 6'-9"

Chapter 13: Interiors

Interiors

The Interiors menu contains just about everything you would ever need to furnish and equip the interior of your home.

You may want to start with the handy Kitchen Builder Wizard to automatically create a kitchen design comprising cabinets and appliances. Just choose the shape, layout and materials you want, and then click to position and size the configuration to your exact specifications. If you prefer you can insert cabinets and appliances individually.

The Bathroom Builder Wizard works in much the same way — just step through the screens to select the layout and components you want, then watch as your bathroom is instantly created.

There are also a number of tools available for laying out utilities and equipment. These include Plumbing, Electrical, Equipment and HVAC.

Kitchen Builder Wizard

The Kitchen Builder Wizard creates a kitchen for you in a few easy steps. All you have to do is select the general shape and layout you want. Then, just point and click to insert all of your cupboards and appliances in one shot. It couldn't be easier!

Once you've inserted the kitchen you can move things around and edit individual elements to create a look that's customized to your taste and needs.

Get Started

Creating a Kitchen with the Kitchen Builder Wizard

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite Using the Kitchen Builder Wizard you can quickly create a kitchen layout that includes upper and lower cabinets, a sink, refrigerator and stove. There are a number of layouts and styles to choose from. **To create a kitchen with the Kitchen Builder Wizard:**

 Select Insert > Design Wizards > Kitchen Builder, or click the down arrow next to the Design Wizards button in the Building toolbar and select Kitchen Builder.



2. Click Next.



- Click on the general style of kitchen you want – L-Shape, Galley or U-Shape.
- 4. Click Next.



- 5. Select the layout that most closely resembles the layout you want. Remember that you can move and edit things later.
- 6. Click Next.



- Select a general style for your kitchen. The selection you make mainly determines the materials and colors used for the cupboards and countertops.
- 8. Click Next.

🕞 Kitchen Builder Wiza	ard		8 X
Select the l	Kitchen Rotat	ion	
Please select the rotati	on of the kitchen. This is how	it will be placed in your plan.	
			I
		< Back Next >	Cancel

- 9. Select the desired rotation for the kitchen layout by clicking the appropriate graphic.
- 10. Click Next.



- 11. Click **Finish**. The kitchen configuration is attached to your cursor.
- 12. Position the kitchen layout in your kitchen area. It will automatically snap to the walls when you get close to them. Click to anchor the kitchen elements. Dynamic dimensions are displayed to show you the size of the layout.

- 13. If you want you can stretch the layout by simply moving your pointer in the direction you want to stretch.
- 14. Once the dimensions are correct, click to finish the insertion.



15. Click **Yes** to finish the task. If you click **No** you can reposition or resize the kitchen.

Creating a Custom Kitchen Wizard Configuration

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A Kitchen Builder Wizard configuration determines what types of cabinets and appliances are used in your kitchen. You are asked to select a configuration for your kitchen when you run the Kitchen Builder Wizard.

You can edit any of the existing configurations that are available in the Kitchen Builder Wizard, or create your own. Customized configurations are saved automatically and will be available when you run the Kitchen Builder Wizard in the current project, or any other project.

To access the kitchen configuration library:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Kitchen Configuration.

To add a new configuration to the list:

- Select Edit > Add Configuration, or rightclick in the Kitchen Configurations window and select Add Configuration. An entry named 'New Configuration' is added to the list.
- Select the new configuration in the list. If you want to rename it, select Edit > Rename Configuration, or right-click and select Rename Configuration. Then, type the new name and press ENTER.

To edit a kitchen configuration:

- Select the configuration in the list. The element selections for the configuration are listed in the center pane.
- 2. In the center pane, select an element type you want to specify a style for (e.g. Refrigerator).
- 3. Click the **Select** button.
- 4. In the **Catalog Access** dialog, select the specific style you want to apply to the selected element type, then click **OK**.
- 5. Continue selecting styles for the remaining element types.

To delete a configuration from the list:

- 1. Select the configuration in the list.
- Select Edit > Delete Configuration, or rightclick and select Delete Configuration, or simply press the Delete key on your keyboard.

Launching the Kitchen Builder Wizard Automatically at Startup

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you want you can choose to launch the Kitchen Builder Wizard automatically every time you start the program or a new project, instead of opening a blank drawing.

To launch the Kitchen Builder Wizard automatically at startup:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **General** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Startup* area, check the **Launch wizard** when starting new project check box.
- 4. Select **Kitchen Builder** from the drop box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Bathroom Builder Wizard

The Bathroom Builder Wizard creates a complete bathroom for you in a few easy steps. All you have to do is select the general style, layout and rotation for the bathroom, then just point and click to automatically insert all of your cabinets and fixtures. It couldn't be easier! Once the bathroom has been built you can move things around and edit individual elements to create a look that's customized to your taste and needs.

Get Started

Creating a Bathroom with the Bathroom Builder Wizard

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the Bathroom Builder Wizard you can quickly and easily create a bathroom layout that includes a cabinet, sink, toilet, tub and shower. There are a number of layouts and styles to choose from.

To create a bathroom with the Bathroom Builder Wizard:

 Select Insert > Design Wizards > Bathroom Builder, or click the down arrow next to the Design Wizards button in the Building toolbar and select Bathroom Builder.



2. Click Next.



- 3. Select the image that contains the elements you want to include in your bathroom.
- 4. Click Next.



- 5. Click on the layout you want the bathroom elements to have.
- 6. Click Next.



- Select a style for your bathroom elements. Each style dictates which cabinet, countertop, sink, toilet, tub and shower will be used. Remember that you can edit the properties of individual elements later.
- 8. Click Next.



- Click on the desired rotation for your bathroom configuration. This is how the configuration will be oriented when you are inserting it in your plan.
- 10. Click Next.



- 11. Click Finish.
- 12. Position the bathroom layout in your bathroom area. It will automatically snap to the walls when you get close to them. Click to anchor the bathroom elements. Dynamic dimensions are displayed to show you the size of the layout.
- 13. Move your cursor to stretch the layout to the desired size, then click again to finish.



If you are satisfied with the bathroom placement, click **Yes** to finish the task. If you click **No** you can reposition or resize the layout.

Creating a Custom Bathroom Wizard Configuration

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A Bathroom Builder Wizard configuration determines what types of cabinets and plumbing fixtures are used in your bathroom. You are asked to select a configuration for your bathroom when you run the Bathroom Builder Wizard.

You can edit any of the existing configurations that are available in the Bathroom Builder Wizard, or create your own. Customized configurations are saved automatically and will be available when you run the Bathroom Builder Wizard in the current project, or any other project.

To access the bathroom configuration library:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Bathroom Configuration.

To add a new configuration to the list:

- Select Edit > Add Configuration, or rightclick in the Bathroom Configurations window and select Add Configuration. An entry named 'New Configuration' is added to the list.
- Select the new configuration in the list. If you want to rename it, select Edit > Rename Configuration, or right-click and select Rename Configuration. Then, type the new name and press ENTER.

To edit a bathroom configuration:

- Select the configuration in the list. The element selections for the configuration are listed in the center pane.
- 2. In the center pane, select an element type you want to specify a style for (e.g. Vanity).
- 3. Click the **Select** button.
- 4. In the **Catalog Access** dialog, select the specific style you want to apply to the selected element type, then click **OK**.
- 5. Continue selecting styles for the remaining element types.

To delete a configuration from the list:

- 1. Select the configuration in the list.
- Select Edit > Delete Configuration, or rightclick and select Delete Configuration, or simply press the Delete key on your keyboard.

Launching the Bathroom Builder Wizard Automatically at Startup

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you want you can choose to launch the Bathroom Builder Wizard automatically every time you start the program or a new project, instead of opening a blank drawing.

To launch the Bathroom Builder Wizard automatically at startup:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **General** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Startup* area, check the **Launch wizard** when starting new project check box.
- 4. Select **Bathroom Builder** from the drop box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Cabinets

Cabinets are essential for storage and can also contribute to the overall look and feel of a room. The catalog contains a huge selection of cabinet types, styles and sizes, all customizable to suit your taste and needs. Cabinet types include base cabinets, corner cabinets, upper cabinets, islands, pantry cabinets and bathroom vanities.

You can insert cabinets in any room in your house with just a click of your mouse. Cabinets are designed to snap to walls and other cabinets, making insertion even easier.

Inserting Cabinets

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Cabinets are essential for storage and can also contribute to the overall look and feel of a room. The

catalog contains a huge selection of cabinet types, styles and sizes, all customizable to suit your taste and needs.

Cabinet types include base cabinets, corner cabinets, upper cabinets, islands, pantry cabinets and bathroom vanities.

You can insert cabinets in your design by simply pointing and clicking with your mouse. Cabinets automatically snap to walls and other elements when you get close to them provided Collision Control is turned on.

Note that most cabinets in the catalog have a countertop displayed. If you plan to insert a custom countertop over inserted cabinets with the Countertop tool, you may first want to turn off the **Show Counter** property for those cabinets. See *Editing Cabinet Properties* on page 159.

To insert a cabinet:

- Select Insert > Interiors > Cabinets, or click
 on the Interiors toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the cabinet you want to insert.
- 3. Position the cabinet where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Moving a Cabinet

You can move individual or multiple cabinets by clicking and dragging them.

To move a cabinet:

- Select the cabinet you want to move. If you want to move multiple cabinets, use Shift+click to select the additional cabinets.
- 3. Click and drag to move the cabinet.
- 4. When the cabinet is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Rotating a Cabinet

You can rotate cabinets by clicking and dragging them.

To rotate a cabinet:

- 1. Select the cabinet you want to rotate.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. $+ \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2}$

Tip: If the triangular grip is in close proximity to the square grab handle, you may want to zoom in on the cabinet to distinguish between the two grips.

- 3. Click and drag to rotate the cabinet.
- 4. When the cabinet is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Raising or Lowering a Cabinet

You can raise or lower a cabinet using the Elevate tool on the cabinet's right-click menu.

To edit a cabinet's elevation:

- 1. Select the cabinet whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the cabinet.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the bottom of the cabinet above the floor.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the cabinet looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the cabinet in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Tip: You can also change a cabinet's elevation by changing the **Distance above current location or terrain** variable on the cabinet's Behavior property page.

Editing Cabinet Properties

Cabinet properties include cabinet type, size, and leaf style, as well as settings for the counter, shelves, toe space and hardware.

To edit cabinet properties:

1. Select the cabinet whose properties you want to edit.

- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To change the cabinet type, dimensions or 2D representation, select the **Basic** tab.

To specify the cabinet type, click the **Type** drop box and select either **Base**, **Upper** and **Pantry**. You can then select a style for the cabinet. Cabinet styles and size properties will vary depending on the cabinet type selected. Note that there is a **Spacer** style for filler cabinets.

Use the graphics as guides when determining the cabinet's properties. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the cabinet graphic, and vice versa. Note that if you change the dimensions of a cabinet that has a patterned door leaf, the leaf material will remap itself automatically to match the new cabinet size.

Under the Door properties;

You can select to show a door or leave it off by deselecting the option.

The **Door Swing** can be set to **Left** or **Right**.

In the **2D Representation** area you can specify whether or not the left and right edges of the cabinet are displayed in 2D.

- To change the cabinet's leaf style, select the Leaf tab.
- 5. To select a leaf style for the door, select *Door* from the **Apply to** drop box, then make your selections. To select a leaf style for the drawers, if applicable, select *Drawer* from the **Apply to** drop box. Leaf properties vary depending on the leaf style selected. Use the graphics as guides when setting these properties. If you would like to use a custom door leaf that has been imported into the Door Leafs library, select the **Custom** type, then select the desired leaf from the library.
- To edit the counter, shelving, toe space or hardware details, select the Details tab. <u>Counter</u>

Show Counter. Displays a counter on the cabinet.
Thickness. The thickness of the counter material.

Show Backsplash. Displays a backsplash on the cabinet. The backsplash is a vertical surface designed to protect the wall behind a countertop.

Thickness. The thickness of the backsplash material.

Height. The distance from the countertop to the top of the backsplash.

Show Nosing. Displays nosing (moulded projection) on the front edge of the counter.

Thickness. The depth of the nosing.

Height. The height of the nosing.

Radius. The radius of the curve.

Shelves

Show Shelves. Displays shelves inside the cabinet. The shelves would be visible if the cabinet door is glass.

Number of Shelves. The number of shelves you would like to display inside the cabinet. Toe Space

Style. Select **Indent** for a recess of a specified depth, **Floating** for completely open space beneath the entire cabinet, or **None** for no toe space.

Depth. For an indented toe space, this is the depth of the recess.

Height. The height of the recess.

Hardware

Show Handle. Displays handles on the cabinet door and drawers, if present.

Handle Style. Choose from Box, Circle or Cylinder. A box style creates a rectangular handle. A circle style creates a round knob. The cylinder style creates a cylindrical handle.

Distance a. For pantry cabinets, this is the distance from the bottom of the upper cabinet portion to the top of the door handle.

Distance b. The distance from the bottom of the cabinet to the top of the door handle.

 When you're finished editing properties, click OK.

Applying Different Finishes to Cabinets

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly apply a different finish to a cabinet, such as a different type of wood, or another type of material altogether.

To apply a different finish to a cabinet:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the cabinet is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply. You may want to select *Cabinets* from the **Filter** drop box to display only cabinet materials.
- Click on the cabinet component you want to apply the material to. Materials are applied separately to the individual parts of the cabinet (frame, door, counter, handles, etc.).
- 5. When you are finished applying materials, right-click and select **Finish**.

Inserting a Sink

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert a kitchen or bathroom sink into a cabinet that you have inserted in your drawing by simply pointing and clicking. The sink automatically snaps itself into place at the center of the cabinet top.

If you are inserting the sink into a countertop that you have created with the Countertop tool, you can insert the sink at any position.

- To insert a sink into a cabinet:
- Select Insert > Interiors > Plumbing
 Fixtures, or click is in the Interiors toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the Sinks category, then select the sink to insert.
- 3. Position the fixture inside the cabinet, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting a Cabinet

You can delete a cabinet in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a cabinet:

- 1. Select the cabinet.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Countertops

You can use the Countertop tool to insert a custom countertop in your drawing. To insert a countertop you select a start point, then point and click in the direction you want the pathway to run. You can continue picking points to add segments if you want. After inserting a countertop, you can add a sink to it at any position.

You can create custom countertops in the catalog, or edit existing countertops to suit your design needs.

Inserting a Countertop

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert a countertop anywhere in your drawing by picking points.

The width, thickness and appearance of a countertop is determined by the countertop's properties in the catalog. You control the length and direction of the countertop as you draw it.

Note that most cabinets in the catalog have a countertop displayed. If you plan to insert a countertop using the **Countertop** tool, you may first need to disable the **Show Counter** option in the properties of those cabinets, so that you do not have two countertops. See *Editing Cabinet Properties* on page 159.

To insert a countertop:

1. Select Insert > Interiors > Countertop, or



on the Interiors toolbar.

- 2. In the catalog, select the countertop that you want to insert.
- 3. Select a start point. Note that your insertion point is on the center line of the countertop.
- 4. Move your cursor in the direction you want the countertop to run, then select an endpoint for the countertop. You can continue selecting

points in any direction to add more segments to the countertop if you want.

5. Double-click to finish, or right-click and select **Finish**.

Moving a Countertop

You can use the Move tool to move a countertop that you have inserted with the Countertop tool.

To move a countertop:

- 1. Click on the countertop to select it.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and drag the countertop to where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Stretching a Countertop

You can lengthen or shorten a countertop that you have inserted with the **Countertop** tool by clicking and dragging its end grips, or using the Stretch tool. If you use the click-and-drag method, the countertop is constrained to its current direction when you stretch it. If you use the Stretch tool you can rotate the countertop while stretching. You can also use the Commander when the Stretch tool is active.

To stretch a countertop by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the countertop to select it.
- Click and hold your mouse button over one of the end grips. The Lengthen cursor is displayed +→+→.
- 3. Drag to stretch the countertop, then release your mouse button.

To stretch a countertop with the Stretch tool:

- 1. Click on the countertop to select it.
- 3. Click and hold your mouse button over one of the end grips, drag to stretch the countertop in any direction, then release your mouse button. If you want to enter a precise stretch distance or direction, click on the end grip, specify the desired distance and direction in the Commander, then press **Enter**.

Curving a Countertop

If you have inserted a countertop with the **Countertop** tool, you can curve its edges using the **Curve** tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the countertop to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve a countertop by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the countertop to select it.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a countertop to a selected point:

- 1. Click on the countertop to select it.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The countertop automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Editing the Properties of a Countertop

You can customize a countertop in the catalog, or one that you have inserted with the **Countertop** tool. For example, you can change its insertion height, width, backsplash, and nosing.

To edit the properties of a countertop:

- 1. Select the countertop.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. On the **Basic** tab you can specify the following properties:
 - Type
 - Insertion Height
 - Insertion Direction (Left or Right.
 - Determines which edge the nosing is on.)
 - Thickness
 - Width
 - Backsplash Type (None, Nosing, Backsplash)
 - Backsplash Thickness
 - Backsplash Height
 - Nose Type (None, Nosing)
 - Nosing Thickness

- Nosing Height

- 4. On the **Appearance** tab you can specify the *Layer*, *Material* and *Pattern* for each component of the countertop (2D Component, Surface, Splash).
- 5. On the **Quantity** tab you can specify whether or not you want the countertop to be include in quantity reports, and specify quantity properties such as *Price*, *Phase* and *Category*.
- 6. Click **OK**.

If the countertop was not inserted with the Countertop tool, and is instead associated with a cabinet, you must edit the countertop through the cabinet properties. On the **Details** tab of the cabinet properties dialog you can specify the thickness of the counter, and whether or not it is displayed. On the **Appearance** tab you can specify the layer, material and pattern for the cabinet's **Counter** component.

Deleting a Countertop

If you have inserted a countertop with the **Countertop** tool, you can delete it in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a countertop:

- 1. Click on the countertop to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

If your cabinets have a countertop displayed, and you did not insert it with the Countertop tool, you can remove the countertop by disabling the **Show Counter** option in the properties of those cabinets. See *Editing Cabinet Properties* on page 159.

Appliances

Most home plans usually show the location of appliances in the kitchen and laundry room. Inserting appliances in your project can obviously enhance the design of a room, and can also help identify where electrical outlets are needed.

The catalog offers an excellent selection of kitchen and laundry appliances, including refrigerators, dishwashers, ovens, ranges, washers, dryers — even toasters. And of course, just like everything else, you can customize appliances to create the exact look you want.

Inserting appliances is easy — just point and click. Most major appliances are set to snap to walls and other elements when you get close to them.

Inserting Appliances

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert a wide variety of kitchen and laundry appliances in your design by simply pointing and clicking with your mouse. Appliances automatically snap to walls and other elements when you get close to them provided Collision Control is turned on.

To insert an appliance:

- Select Insert > Interiors > Appliances, or click a on the Interiors toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the appliance you want to insert.
- 3. Position the appliance where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Note: If you are inserting a built-in oven, just position it where you want it in the wall and it will snap into place correctly with only the oven door and controls protruding from the wall.

Moving Appliances

You can move individual appliances by clicking and dragging them.

To move an appliance:

- 1. Select the appliance you want to move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the appliance.
- 4. When the appliance is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Rotating Appliances

You can rotate appliances by clicking and dragging them.

To rotate an appliance:

- 1. Select the appliance you want to rotate.
- Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. ⁺U⁺U

Tip: If the triangular grip is in close proximity to the square grab handle, you may want to zoom in on the appliance to distinguish between the two grips.

- 3. Click and drag to rotate the appliance.
- 4. When the appliance is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Raising or Lowering Appliances

You can raise or lower an appliance using the Elevate tool on the element's right-click menu. For example, you might want to place a microwave on the kitchen counter.

To raise or lower an appliance:

- 1. Select the appliance whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the appliance.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the bottom of the appliance above the floor.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the appliance looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the appliance in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Tip: You can also change an appliance's elevation by changing the **Distance above current location or terrain** variable on the appliance's Behavior property page.

Editing Appliance Size Properties

You can edit the height, width and depth of most appliances. Some appliances have additional properties that define their size and style.

To edit appliance properties:

- 1. Select the appliance whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To change the size or style of the appliance, select the Basic tab. Appliance styles and size properties will vary depending on the appliance. Use the graphics as guides when determining the appliance's properties. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the appliance graphic, and vice versa.
- Once you've specified the properties, click OK.

Applying Colors and Materials to Appliances

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly change the color or finish of an appliance.

To apply a color or finish to an appliance:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the appliance is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the color or finish you want to apply.
- 4. Click on the appliance component you want to apply the material to. Materials are applied separately to the individual parts of the appliance. For example, you can select a different color just for a knob or handle.
- 5. When you are finished applying materials, right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting an Appliance

You can delete an appliance in a couple of easy steps. **To delete an appliance:**

- 1. Select the appliance.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Furniture, Electronics & Accessories

Once you've got your cabinets and appliances in place, you can start with furnishing and decorating your home. The catalog contains so many different types of furniture, electronics and decorative accessories, the possibilities are endless. And with easy, point-and-click insertion, you can play around with different design ideas and quickly decorate every room of your home, just the way you want it.

Inserting Interior Furniture

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The catalog contains a variety of furnishings for every room in your home — everything from beds to CD stands. Furnishings automatically snap to walls and other elements when you get close to them provided Collision Control is turned on.

To insert furniture:

- Select Insert > Interiors > Interior Furniture, or click on the Interiors toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the element you want to insert.
- 3. Position the element where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Inserting Electronics

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Electronics include televisions, computers, clocks and telephones.

To insert electronics:

- Select Insert > Interiors > Electronics, or click
 on the Interiors toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the element you want to insert.
- 3. Position the element where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Inserting Interior Accessories

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Accessories are those small, personal touches that really pull a room together. They are things like curtains, blinds, towel racks, shower curtains, medicine cabinets, plates, bowls, cups, mirrors and pictures.

To insert accessories:

- 1. Select Insert > Interiors > Interior Accessories, or click
- 2. In the catalog, select the element you want to insert.
- 3. Position the element where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Moving Furnishing Elements

You can move furniture, electronics and accessories by clicking and dragging them.

To move an element:

- 1. Select the element you want to move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the element.
- 4. When the element is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Rotating Furnishing Elements

You can rotate furniture, electronics and accessories by clicking and dragging them.

To rotate an element:

- 1. Select the element you want to rotate.
- Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. ⁺U⁺U

Tip: If the triangular grip is in close proximity to the square grab handle, you may want to zoom in on the element to distinguish between the two grips.

- 3. Click and drag to rotate the element.
- 4. When the element is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Raising or Lowering Furnishing Elements

You can raise or lower furniture, electronics and accessories using the Elevate tool on the element's right-click menu. For example, you might want to adjust the height of a picture on the wall.

To edit the elevation of a furnishing element:

- 1. Select the element whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the element.
- In the Elevate dialog, specify the desired elevation of the bottom of the element above the floor.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the element looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the element in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Tip: You can also change a furnishing element's elevation by changing the **Distance above current location or terrain** variable on the element's Behavior property page.

Editing the Size of Furnishing Elements

You can edit the height, width and depth of most furnishing elements. Some elements have additional properties that define their size and style.

To edit the size of furnishing elements:

- 1. Select the element whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To change the dimensions of the element, select the Basic tab. Size properties will vary depending on the element.
- 4. Once you've specified the properties, click **OK**.

Applying Different Colors, Fabrics and Finishes to Furnishing Elements

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly apply a color, fabric or finish to any furnishing element.

To apply a material to a furnishing element:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the furnishing element is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- In the catalog panel, select the color or material you want to apply. You may want to select *Furniture* from the **Filter** drop box to display only furniture materials.
- Click on the component you want to apply the material to. Materials are applied separately to the individual parts of the element. For example, you can apply a specific fabric to the bedspread on a bed.
- 5. When you are finished applying materials, right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting Furnishing Elements

You can delete furniture, electronics or accessories in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a furnishing element:

- 1. Select the element.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Equipment

Envisioneer offers a variety of equipment elements that can make your home more functional and enjoyable, such as exercise equipment, satellite dishes, and garbage disposal equipment. All can be inserted with a simple mouse click.

Inserting Equipment

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The catalog contains a wide range of functional equipment, including exercise equipment, central vac units, utility boxes and meters, satellite dishes, and garbage disposal units.

To insert equipment:

- Select Insert > Interiors > Equipment, or click cl cl cl on the Interiors toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the element you want to insert.
- 3. Position the element where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Moving Equipment

You can move equipment by clicking and dragging it.

To move equipment:

- 1. Select the element you want to move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the element.
- 4. When the element is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Rotating Equipment

You can rotate equipment by clicking and dragging it while in rotation mode.

To rotate an element:

- 1. Select the element you want to rotate.
- Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. ⁺C)⁺C)
- 3. Click and drag to rotate the element.
- 4. When the element is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Raising or Lowering Equipment

You can edit the elevation of an element to suit your needs.

To edit the elevation of an element:

- 1. Select the element whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the element.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the bottom of the element above the floor.

- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the element looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the element in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Tip: You can also change an equipment element's elevation by changing the **Distance above current location or terrain** variable on the element's Behavior property page.

Editing the Size of Equipment

You can edit the height, width and depth of most equipment elements.

To edit the size of equipment elements:

- 1. Select the element whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To change the dimensions of the element, select the Basic tab.
- Once you've specified the properties, click OK.

Applying Different Colors or Materials to Equipment

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly apply a different color or finish to any element.

To apply a material to an element:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the element is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the color or material you want to apply.
- Click on the component you want to apply the material to. Materials are applied separately to the individual parts of the element.
- 5. When you are finished applying materials, right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting Equipment

You can delete an equipment element in a couple of easy steps.

To delete an element:

- 1. Select the element.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Interior Lighting

Interior lighting can drastically change the look and atmosphere of a room. Light fixtures also play an important part when you create interior 3D RealViewTM renderings.

The catalog provides an excellent selection of ceiling lights, wall lights, track lights, recessed lights and lamps for you to insert. You can even turn them on and off! Lights are inserted at a logical height in your plan depending on their type, making accurate placement easy. Also, ceiling lights snap to ceilings, and wall lights snap to walls. Just point and click!

If working in Rendered or Rendered Outline display mode, real-time lighting effects are displayed as you insert light fixtures in your design, allowing you to see how much light will be produced.

Inserting Interior Lighting

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The catalog offers an excellent selection of lighting fixtures for the interior of your home. Interior light fixtures include ceiling lights, wall lights, track lighting, recessed lights, and lamps.

Each lighting fixture has a light source in its property definition, such as an incandescent light bulb. Lights are particularly important if you plan to create a 3D RealView[™] of your model, since the program uses light to calculate and create the rendered view.

With the exception of lamps, light fixtures are set to snap to either ceilings or walls depending on what kind of fixture they are.

To insert a light fixture:

- 2. In the catalog, select the light fixture you want to insert.
- 3. Position the light where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Tip: If you switch to Rendered or Rendered Outline display mode, you can see instant lighting effects as you position and insert light fixtures.

Note: If you want to insert exterior light fixtures, use the Exterior Lighting tool.

Changing the Way a Light Snaps Upon Insertion

By default, ceiling lights are set to snap to ceilings, and wall lights are set to snap to walls. Lamps have no snap setting so that you can place them anywhere in a room. You can change a light fixture's snap setting on the fixture's Behavior property page. Note that this applies to interior light fixtures only.

To change the way a light snaps on insertion:

- 1. In the catalog, select the light fixture whose snap setting you want to change.
- 2. Right-click and select Edit Element.
- 3. In properties dialog, select the Behavior tab.
- 4. From the **Align Light to** drop box, select either *Ceiling, Wall* or *None*.
- 6. Click **OK** in the **Lights** dialog.

Moving a Light Fixture

You can move light fixtures by clicking and dragging them.

To move a light fixture:

- 1. Select the light fixture you want to move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the light fixture.
- 4. When the light fixture is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Rotating a Light Fixture

You can rotate light fixtures by clicking and dragging them.

To rotate a light fixture:

- 1. Select the light fixture you want to rotate.
- Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. ⁺C)⁺C)

Tip: If the triangular grip is in close proximity to the square grab handle, you may want to zoom in on the fixture to distinguish between the two grips.

- 3. Click and drag to rotate the light fixture.
- 4. When the light fixture is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Raising or Lowering a Light Fixture

You can raise or lower a light fixture using the Elevate tool on the fixture's right-click menu.

To raise or lower a light fixture:

- 1. Select the fixture whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the light fixture.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the fixture above the floor (or the terrain if it is an outdoor light fixture).
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the light fixture looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the fixture in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Tip: You can also change a light fixture's elevation by changing the **Distance above current location or terrain** variable on the fixture's Behavior property page.

Editing the Size of a Light Fixture

You can edit the dimensions of a light fixture on its Basic property page.

To edit the size of a light fixture:

- 1. Select the light fixture whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Select the Basic tab. Size properties will vary depending on the type of fixture. Use the diagram as a guide when determining the fixture's properties. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the light fixture diagram, and vice versa.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source

A light source is usually a type of light bulb. You can edit a light fixture's light source to achieve a different lighting effect.

To edit a light fixture's light source:

- 1. Select the light fixture whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Select the Lights tab.
- To replace the currently selected light source with another type, click Edit, then select a light source from the Light Sources dialog.
- To add a light source to the fixture, click Add, then select a light source from the Light Sources dialog. If you want to add or edit light sources in the Light Sources library, see Customizing the Light Source Library.
- 6. To delete a light source from the light fixture, click **Delete**.
- 7. To edit the position of the light source in relation to the light fixture, specify the X, Y and Z coordinates in the *Light Position* area.
 Coordinates are measured from the bottom center of the fixture. The small red box in the preview window indicates the current position of the light source. Changing the X value moves the light source left or right. Selecting Middle positions the light in the center of the fixture, and selecting Minimum

or Maximum positions it on the left or right side. If you select Custom you can enter a specific value in the adjacent edit box which is relative to the center position. For example, entering -3 moves the light source 3" left from the center. Changing the Y value moves the light source forward or backward. Selecting Minimum brings the light source all the way forward, and selecting Maximum moves it to the back of the fixture. Changing the Z value moves the light source up or down. Selecting Minimum positions the light source at the bottom of the fixture, while selecting Maximum positions it at the top of the fixture.

8. To edit the orientation of the light source, edit the *Tilt up/down* and *Tilt left/right* values. You may want to do this if your light fixture is angled a certain way. For example, if you have adjustable track lighting, and each fixture is angled at 45 degrees, you will probably want to change the tilt of the light source to 45 degrees as well, so that the light shines at a 45-degree angle instead of straight down.

Tilt up/down. The angle of the light beam relative to the floor. A 0-degree tilt means that the light shines straight down.

Tilt left/right. The rotation of the light source left or right.

9. Once you've specified the properties, click **OK**.

Turning a Light On or Off

By default, lights are on when you insert them. You can virtually turn lights on and off in one of two ways:

Turn the light on/off directly:

- 1. Select the light fixture in your drawing.
- 2. Right-click and select Light On or Light Off.

Edit the light's properties:

- 1. Select the light fixture.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Select the **Lights** tab.

- 4. To turn the light on or off, click the eye icon next to the light source name.
 - 🐞 🐞 Light is turned on
 - 🚕 Light is turned off
- 5. Click **OK**.

Changing the Way a Light Fixture Looks

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to apply different colors or materials to different parts of a light fixture. For example, you may want to change the color of a lamp shade.

To change the look of a light fixture:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the light fixture is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply.
- Click on the component you want to apply the material to. Materials are applied separately to the individual parts of the light fixture.
- 5. When you are finished applying materials, right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting a Light Fixture

You can delete a light fixture in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a light fixture:

- 1. Select the fixture.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

frElectrical

It is so easy to insert electrical elements such as outlets, switches, thermostats and smoke detectors in your plan — just point and click. Electrical elements automatically snap to walls and are inserted at a logical height depending on their type, making it easy to place them accurately.

Once you've inserted electrical elements you may want to draw wiring in your 2D plan. All it takes is a few clicks of the mouse.

Inserting Electrical Elements

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert electrical elements such as outlets, light switches, thermostats and smoke detectors with a single mouse click. The backs of these elements automatically snap to walls and are inserted at a logical height on the wall, making accurate placement effortless. You can move, raise and lower these elements after you have inserted them.

To insert electrical elements:

- Select Insert > Interiors > Electrical > Electrical > Electrical Elements, or click on the Interiors toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the element you want to insert.
- 3. Position the element where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: You can insert outlets throughout a room automatically using the Auto Place Outlets tool.

Inserting Outlets Throughout a Room Automatically

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Auto Place Outlets feature to have automatically insert outlets throughout selected rooms in your model. You can move, raise and lower outlets after they have been inserted.

To insert outlets automatically:

- Select Insert > Interiors > Electrical > Auto Place Outlets, or click on the Interiors toolbar.
- 2. If you are using the Auto Place Outlets tool for the fist time, you will be prompted to specify the following settings:

Outlet Element. Click **Select** to choose the outlet that you would like to be inserted.

Min. wall length. The minimum length that a wall must be to eligible for an outlet.

Max. distance from outlet. The maximum distance between one outlet and the next.

Max. distance from opening. The maximum distance that an outlet can be from a wall opening.

The values you specify will be saved as the default values going forward. You can change the default values at any time by selecting **Settings > Document Settings**.

- 3. Position your cursor inside the room in which you want to place outlets (it will highlight).
- 4. Click inside the room. Outlets are inserted throughout the room according to the settings you specified.

Note: You can insert outlets individually using the Electrical Elements tool.

Moving an Electrical Element

You can move outlets, switches, thermostats and smoke detectors in plan view by simply clicking and dragging them.

To move an element:

- 1. Select the element you want to move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the element.
- 4. When the element is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Raising or Lowering an Electrical Element

You can raise or lower an outlet, switch, thermostat or smoke detector using the Elevate tool.

To raise or lower an electrical element:

- 1. Select the element whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the element.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the bottom of the element above the floor.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the element looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate

tool remains active while the change is applied to the element in your model.

5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Tip: You can also change an element's elevation by changing the **Distance above current location or terrain** variable on the element's Behavior property page.

Editing the Size of an Electrical Element

You can edit the height, width and depth of most electrical elements. Some elements have additional dimensions for individual components in the element.

To edit the size of an electrical element:

- 1. Select the element whose size you want to edit.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the properties as desired.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Different Color or Material to an Electrical Element

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to apply a different color or material to an electrical element.

To apply a color or material to an electrical element:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the electrical element is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the color or material you want to apply.
- 4. Click on the electrical element. The color or material is applied immediately.
- 5. Right-click and select Finish.

Deleting an Electrical Element

You can delete an outlet, switch, thermostat or smoke detector in a couple of easy steps.

To delete an electrical element:

- 1. Select the element.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Inserting Electrical Wiring

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Once you've inserted electrical elements, you can use the Wiring tool to indicate the location of electrical wiring in your 2D plan. By default, wiring lines have arched segments and use a dashed linestyle. You can stretch and reshape individual segments after you've inserted the line. You can also edit the linestyle. Wiring is only visible in 2D plan view.

To add electrical wiring:

- Select Insert > Interiors > Electrical > Wiring, or click the down arrow next to the Electrical button 2 on the Interiors toolbar and select Wiring.
- 2. Select a start point for the wiring line.
- Select the next point for the wiring line. An arched line segment is created between the two points. Continue selecting points to add more segments.



4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: You can change the line style of individual wires if you want. You can also mark your wiring lines with text.

Stretching and Reshaping Wiring

You can stretch individual segments in a wiring line by clicking and dragging their grips. Stretching wiring segments can change their length or shape.

To stretch a wiring segment:

 Select the segment you want to stretch. Grips are displayed along the segment. 2. Hover your pointer over the grip that you want to grab and stretch.



3. Click and drag to stretch the line, then release your mouse button.



Editing the Line Style of Wiring

By default, electrical wiring is displayed using the Electrical Power Distribution line style, which is a brown, dashed line. You can select a different line style for selected wiring segments if you want. For example, you may want to select the Telephone line style for your telephone lines.

To edit the line style of wiring:

- Select one of the line segments you want to change. Use Shift+click to select the remaining segments in the line.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Line Styles** dialog, select the line style you want to use.
- Click **OK**. The line style is updated in your drawing.

Selecting a Default Line Style for Wiring

You can select a default line style to use when drawing electrical wiring by editing your Drafting Settings.

To select a default line style for electrical wiring:

- Select Settings > Drafting Settings, or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Drafting Settings** dialog, select the *Electrical Wiring* item.
- 3. Click Settings.
- 4. In the **Line Styles** dialog, select the line style you want to use as the default when drawing electrical wiring, then click **OK**.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Drafting Settings** dialog.

Note: You can edit the line style of electrical wiring after it has been drawn.

Deleting Wiring

You can delete individual wiring segments or an entire wire in a couple of easy steps.

To delete wiring:

- Select the wiring segment you want to delete. To select an entire wire, drag a selection window around it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Plumbing

The catalog offers a complete selection of sinks, faucets, tubs, showers, toilets and bidets to help you properly equip your home. Plumbing fixtures are inserted with a single mouse click and will automatically snap to walls if Collision Control is turned on. You can control which edge of a fixture snaps to the wall, as well as edit the fixture's size, style and elevation.

Inserting Plumbing Fixtures

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Placing plumbing fixtures in your plan is easy — just select what you want to insert, then point and click. With Collision Control turned on, fixtures will automatically snap to walls when you get close to them. Also, fixtures will insert at a logical height. For example, a toilet will insert on the floor, while a sink may insert 3' off the floor. You can edit a fixture's size and elevation, as well as move and rotate it.

To insert plumbing fixtures:

- 1. Select Insert > Interiors > Plumbing
 - **Fixtures**, or click 🖄 🖄 on the Interiors toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the fixture you want to insert.
- 3. Position the fixture where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Note: Certain sinks can only be inserted into a cabinet. If you are inserting such a sink, the cabinet must be large enough to house the sink.

Moving Plumbing Fixtures

You can move plumbing fixtures by clicking and dragging them.

To move a plumbing fixture:

- 1. Select the plumbing fixture you want to move.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the fixture's center grip to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag to move the fixture.
- 4. When the fixture is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Rotating Plumbing Fixtures

You can rotate plumbing fixtures by clicking and dragging them.

To rotate a plumbing fixture:

- 1. Select the fixture you want to rotate.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. $\begin{pmatrix} +\\ \\ \\ \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} +\\ \\ \end{pmatrix}$

Tip: If the triangular grip is in close proximity to the square grab handle, you may want to zoom in on the element to distinguish between the two grips.

- 3. Click and drag to rotate the fixture.
- 4. When the fixture is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Raising or Lowering Plumbing Fixtures

You can raise or lower a plumbing fixture using the Elevate tool on the fixture's right-click menu.

To edit a plumbing fixture's elevation:

- 1. Select the fixture whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the element.

- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the bottom of the fixture above the floor.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the element looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the element in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Tip: You can also change a plumbing fixture's elevation by changing the **Distance above current location or terrain** variable on the fixture's Behavior property page.

Editing the Size of a Plumbing Fixture

You can edit the height, width and depth of a plumbing fixture.

To edit the properties of a plumbing fixture:

- 1. Select the plumbing fixture whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the properties as desired.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Applying a Different Color or Finish to a Plumbing Fixture

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to apply different colors or finishes to different parts of a plumbing fixture.

To apply a color or finish to a plumbing fixture:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the fixture is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the color or finish you want to apply.
- 4. Click on the component you want to apply the material to. Materials are applied separately to the individual parts of the plumbing fixture. For example, you can select a different color just for a tap or handle.

5. When you are finished applying materials, right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting Plumbing Fixtures

You can delete a light fixture in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a light fixture:

- 1. Select the fixture.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

HVAC

The correct placement of heating and ventilation elements is an important part of the home design process. Laying out HVAC elements is quick and easy - just point and click. The catalog contains just about anything you'd need — furnaces, fireplaces, wood stoves, chimneys, central air units, water heaters, floor registers and cold air returns. Of course, just like anything else, you can move, rotate and edit these elements if you change your mind.

Inserting HVAC Elements

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert HVAC elements such as fireplaces, furnaces, water heaters, central air units, floor registers and vents with a click of your mouse.

To insert an HVAC element:

- Select Insert > Interiors > HVAC Elements, or click on the Interiors toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the element that you want to insert.
- 3. Position the element where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Moving HVAC Elements

You can move HVAC elements by clicking and dragging them.

To move an HVAC element:

- 1. Select the HVAC element you want to move.
- Hover your pointer over the element's center grip to display the Move cursor.

- 3. Click and drag to move the element.
- 4. When the element is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Rotating HVAC Elements

You can rotate HVAC elements by clicking and dragging them.

To rotate an HVAC element:

- 1. Select the element you want to rotate.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. $(+)_{()}$

Tip: If the triangular grip is in close proximity to the square grab handle, you may want to zoom in on the element to distinguish between the two grips.

- 3. Click and drag to rotate the element.
- 4. When the element is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Raising or Lowering HVAC Elements

You can raise or lower an HVAC element using the Elevate tool on the element's right-click menu.

To edit an HVAC element's elevation:

- 1. Select the element whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the element.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the bottom of the element above the floor.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the element looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the element in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Tip: You can also change an HVAC element's elevation by changing the **Distance above current location or terrain** variable on the element's Behavior property page.

Editing the Size of HVAC Elements

You can edit the dimensions of an HVAC element. The more complex an element is, the more variables it will have. A chimney, for example, has separate variables for the base, cap and flue, so you can create the exact look and size you want.

To edit the size of an HVAC element:

- 1. Select the HVAC element whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the properties as desired.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting HVAC Elements

You can delete an HVAC element in a couple of easy steps.

To delete an HVAC element:

- 1. Select the element.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Chapter 14: Landscaping

Landscaping

Envisioneer offers a full set of landscaping tools to help you design a complete and realistic landscape plan. You may want to start with major structures, such as Decks, Patios, Fences, Sheds and other Exterior Structures.

Once those are in place you can bring your plan to life with Garden Beds, Edging and Plants, and even lay out an Irrigation system!

Enhance and personalize your plan even further by adding Furniture, Accessories and Lighting.

Plants

Nothing brings your landscape to life like trees, shrubs, plants and flowers. With thousands of plants to choose from, **Envisioneer** lets you create the landscape of your dreams. Inserting plants involves nothing more than a single mouse click, and once inserted, they can be dragged and dropped anywhere you like. You can even make them grow!

If you need to learn more about a particular species of plant, you can view the plant's light, water, temperature and soil requirements in its properties. For even more detailed information you can browse through the comprehensive Plant Encyclopedia.

Note: The ability for growth and the Plant Encyclopedia is not available for 3D plants. Only billboard plants have this option.

Inserting Plants

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Inserting plants involves nothing more than a single mouse click, and once inserted, they can be dragged and dropped anywhere you like. Before inserting plants, you may want to research different plant types in the Plant Encyclopedia, which contains thousands of different plant species.

To insert a plant:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Plants, or click
 and the Landscape toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the plant you want to insert. If you want to view the plant's size or requirements before inserting it, right-click in the catalog and select Properties.
- 3. Position the plant where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Note: Although the Master Catalog contains a wide variety of plants for you to insert, it does not contain all the plants listed in the Encyclopedia. You can, however, insert plants from the Encyclopedia. You can also add plants from the Encyclopedia to the current catalog.

Moving a Plant

You can move a plant easily by just clicking and dragging it.

To move a plant:

- 1. Select the plant you want to move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the plant.
- 4. When the plant is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Editing the Elevation of a Plant

You can raise or lower a plant using the Elevate tool. You may want to do this for hanging plants, or plants in raised garden boxes.

To change the elevation of a plant:

- 1. Select the plant.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the plant above the ground.

- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the plant looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the plant.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Editing the Appearance of a Plant in 2D View

By default, plants are represented by a circular symbol in 2D plan view. You can choose from three 2D plant styles. You can also change the diameter of the trunk in 2D, or hide the trunk altogether.

To edit the style of a plant in 2D:

- 1. Select the plant whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Plants** dialog, select the Size tab.
- 4. To change the style of the circle shown in 2D plan view, click the style you want in the *Type* area.
- To change the size of the trunk in 2D plan view, edit the value in the Trunk Diameter edit box. To hide the trunk from 2D view, *select* No from the Show trunk in plan? drop box.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Changing the Age of a Plant

The age of a plant determines its size at planting time. You can increase or decrease the age of a plant by making a change on the plant's Plant Info property page.

To change the age of a plant:

- Click on the plant whose planting age you want to change.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Plants** dialog, select the Plant Info tab.
- 4. Move the **Planting Age** slider left or right until the desired planting age is displayed. Planting age is measured in years.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Note: This ability is not available for 3D plants. Only billboard plants have this option.

Forcing a Custom Plant Size

The size of a plant is determined by properties in the Plant Encyclopedia. You can specify a custom height and width for a plant on the plant's Size property page. Note that if you do this, however, the plant's size changes in both 2D and 3D regardless of the *Planting Age* setting on the Plant Info page.

Note: If you just want to see plants at a different maturity level (i.e. change their age), you should change their planting age instead. You can also apply an overall age change to your landscape.

To change the size of a plant:

- 1. Select the plant whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Plants** dialog, select the Size tab.
- 4. Set the **Size from encyclopedia** option to **No**.
- 5. To change the width of the plant, enter a value in the **Width** edit box.
- 6. To change the height of the plant in 3D view, edit the value in the **Height** edit box.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Note: This ability is not available for 3D plants. Only billboard plants have this option.

Deleting a Plant

You can delete a plant in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a plant:

- 1. Select the plant.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Seeing Plant Growth Over Time

Once you have inserted plants in your landscape plan, you can see how they will look any specified

number of years down the road using the Plant Growth Over Time feature.

To see plant growth over time:

 Select Insert > Landscape > Gardening > Plant Growth Over Time, or click the down arrow next to the Gardening button on the Landscape toolbar and select Plant Growth Over Time.



- 2. Enter the number of years to add to your landscape.
- 3. Click **OK**.

NOTE: This ability is not available for 3D plants. Only billboard plants have this option. For 3D plants you must change their actual size in the plants properties.

Applying Seasonal Changes to Plants

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Plant Seasonal Change feature updates the appearance of the plants in your drawing to reflect a particular season. Generally the change applies to flowering plants and trees that have a certain bloom time.

To apply seasonal changes to your plants:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Gardening > Plant Seasonal Change, or click the down arrow next to the Gardening button on the Landscape toolbar and select Plant Seasonal Change.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, change the date. Select a month by clicking the arrows on the month bar at the top of the calendar. Select a day by clicking a number on the calendar.
- 3. Click **OK**. The plants in your drawing are updated according to the time of year you specified.

Note: Keep in mind that seasonal changes may have different results depending on the plant's properties in the Encyclopedia. Things to consider are the climate of the region the plant is in, and the plant's world origin.

Note: This ability is not available for 3D plants. Only billboard plants have this option.

Inserting Plants from the Encyclopedia

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Plant Encyclopedia contains more than 7500 plant species, not all of which are included in the catalog. You can insert a plant directly from the Encyclopedia if you want.

To insert a plant from the Encyclopedia:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Gardening > Plant Encyclopedia, or click ?? ?? on the Landscape toolbar.
- 2. In the Plant Encyclopedia, locate and select the plant you want to insert. To select a plant in the plant list, use the scrollbar beside the plant list to scroll through the list of plants, then click on the plant you want to view. By default, common plant names are listed in the plant list. You can switch to Latin names by clicking the **Latin** button.

If you know the name of the plant you are looking for, you can locate it more quickly by typing the first few letters of the plant's name in the Search edit field above the plant list. The list of plants will move to the closest match as you type.



- 3. Click the **Select** button. The Encyclopedia closes, and the plant is attached to your cursor.
- 4. Insert the plant in your plan.
- 5. Right-click and select Finish.

Adding Plants to the Catalog from the Encyclopedia

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite Although the catalog contains a vast array of plants for you to insert, it does not contain all the plants listed in the Plant Encyclopedia.

You can add any plant from the Plant Encyclopedia to any catalog by following the steps below.

To add a plant from the encyclopedia to the current catalog:

- 1. Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager.
- 2. In the **Element Manager** dialog, select or create the group you want to add the plant to.
- 3. Select Edit > Add Element.
- 4. In the **Plants** dialog, select the Plant Info tab.
- 5. Click the **Encyclopedia** button to launch the Plant Encyclopedia.
- 6. On the Encyclopedia's main page, select the desired plant in the plant list.
- Click Select. Notice that the Plant Info page of the Plants dialog is now full with the selected plant's information.
- In the Name edit box, specify a name for your plant.
- 9. Specify the remaining properties (Size, Quantity or Behavior) if desired, then click OK in the Plants dialog. Note that the settings on the Appearance page have no effect on the plant's appearance. The appearance of a plant is determined by settings in the Encyclopedia.
- Click **OK** in the **Element Manager** dialog. The plant is added to your catalog.

Plant Encyclopedia

The Plant Encyclopedia contains comprehensive information on thousands of plants. The Encyclopedia has many uses related to the selection and care of plants. You can view information about any plant, select plants based on certain criteria, research potential diseases, and learn how to care for your plants.

Note: This ability is not available for 3D plants. Only billboard plants have this option.

Using the Plant Encyclopedia

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite The Plant Encyclopedia contains comprehensive information on thousands of plants. The Encyclopedia has many uses related to the selection and care of plants. You can:

- · View information about any plant How to
- Select plants based on certain criteria How to
- Research potential diseases How to
- · Learn how to care for your plants How to
- To access the Plant Encyclopedia:
- 1. Select Insert > Landscape > Gardening > Plant Encyclopedia, or click 🥀 🥀 on the Landscape toolbar.

Encyclopedia Main Page

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | **Construction Suite**

The Encyclopedia's main page contains a

comprehensive plant list that you can scroll through and select plants from. The page also displays a photo and two previews of a selected plant, as well as basic information about the plant and its appropriate growing environment.



Selecting a Plant to View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the plant list on the Encyclopedia's main page contains all 7500 plant species. If you have used the Plant Filter to filter out certain plant types, the list is smaller.

To select a plant in the plant list, use the scrollbar beside the plant list to scroll through the list of plants, then click on the plant you want to view. By default, common plant names are listed in the plant list. You can switch to Latin names by clicking the **Latin** button.

If you know the name of the plant you are looking for, you can locate it more quickly by typing the first few letters of the plant's name in the Search Edit field above the plant list. The list of plants will move to the closest match as you type.



Viewing Plant Information

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Encyclopedia's main page displays images and basic information about the currently selected plant. **To view plant information:**

- Select Insert > Landscape > Gardening > Plant Encyclopedia, or click ?? ?? on the Landscape toolbar.
- 2. Select the plant you want to view information about. How to
- 3. Basic information is displayed on the main page, which is described below.

Usage. This window lists all the possible ways you can use the plant. Click one of the usage options to view a brief description of the usage in the Plant Usage catalog.

Soil/Zone/Lifetime. The window below the **Usage** window indicates **Soil Preference** (alkaline, acidic, heavy, etc.), **Zone** (ranging from 1 for Sub-Arctic to 10 for Sub-Tropical), and **Lifetime** (the life expectancy of the plant in years). Each of the icons/items in this window has a tool tip. If you hover your cursor over the icon/item, a small pop-up window appears displaying a brief description of the item. For example, if you hover your cursor over the soil preference icon, the window will display the preferred soil type that the icon indicates.

lioC		Zone	Lifetime
		1 - 10	1
Soll	Zone 8 - 10	Lifetime 5	

Plant Type and Needs. The window to the right of the **Usage** window indicates the following:



Each of the icons in this window has a tool tip. If you hover your cursor over the icon, a small pop-up window appears displaying a brief description of the icon.

Season Color Diagram. This circle gives you an idea of what you can expect from the chosen plant throughout the year. The outer circle shows the months in which the plant blooms, and the color of its flowers. Fruits are also indicated in this circle, showing the period when they ripen, and the color of their fruit. The inner circle indicates when the plant has foliage (including autumn leaves), and the color of its leaves.



Plant Views

The main page has two views: **overhead** and **profile**. The overhead view shows you a textured view of the plant from above.



The profile view gives you an idea of the plant's height and spread, and shows you what your plant will look like in 3D.





Note: The profile view shows the plant's total height. If the plant is a vegetable, this includes the underground part. If the plant is a water plant, the underwater part is included. The width of bushes and flowers can be affected by how they are pruned. The plant will reach optimum size at maturity and under favorable conditions.

Note: This ability is not available for 3D plants. Only billboard plants have this option.

Plant Care Calendar

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Encyclopedia's Plant Care Calendar page shows the required monthly care (planting, watering, fertilizing, etc.) for the currently selected plant.

Note: This ability is not available for 3D plants. Only billboard plants have this option.



To see detailed information about each plant care task, click on the icon. A Care dialog appears displaying helpful tips on how to complete a given task. Clicking the tools icon in the top right corner of the dialog opens a dialog showing the tools you will need to complete the task.

Care

Watering with fertilizer

Watering with fertiliser can be carr spring, during flowering, and in au fill a watering can with water, add to recommended amount of feed, top water and apply to the plant as dire label. In some cases this is only ap soil, in others to the foliage (but no bright sunlight). Only apply when recommended, never exceed the recommended dose. Use specific for certain plants e.g. ericaceous f Rhododendrons and Camellias etc

World Map Page

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Encyclopedia's World Map page displays a world map that indicates the region of the world where the currently selected plant originates. Right-click on a highlighted region to see details about the climate and growing conditions most favorable for plants indigenous to the region.



Notebook Page

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Encyclopedia's Notebook page to enter and view notes about the currently selected plant. To select a plant, scroll through the list and click on it, or use the Search Edit field above the plant list to enter the first few letters of the plant name and find a quick match. Click in the box on the right side of the page and type your note. When you move to another page in the Encyclopedia, your text is saved automatically.

Picture Page Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Encyclopedia's Picture page contains a collage of thumbnail images of all the available plants in the plant list. You can browse through the images manually or by using the arrows at the top of the page.



To view a large picture of a selected plant, click the View Large button at the top of the page.

To return to the thumbnail views, click the View Thumbnail button ().





Diseases Page

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Encyclopedia's Diseases page lists the possible diseases that may affect a plant. By default, the

disease list contains the diseases that can affect the currently selected plant. If you want to view a comprehensive list of diseases for all plants, click **All** in the bottom right corner of the page.



When you select a disease in the disease list, you will see a picture of the disease, details of its symptoms in the **Symptoms** windows, and care information in the **Control** window.

If you want to search in reverse to find all plants affected by a specific disease, click the **Filter** button at the bottom of the page. This opens the main Encyclopedia page. To restore your plant list, return to the **Diseases** page and click the **All** button.

Filtering the Plant List

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Encyclopedia's Plant Filter lets you filter out unwanted plants from your plant list by specifying various criteria.

To use the Plant Filter:

 Select the Plant Filter tab on the left side of the Encyclopedia window.



 Each Encyclopedia page has different options. Click on the tabs along the top of the Encyclopedia window to select the page you want, then select the options you want.

The main Encyclopedia page lets you select the Plant Type, Watering Needs, Lighting Preference, Soil Preference, Zone, Color (for flower, leaf, autumn leaf, and fruit), Height and Blooming Season.

The **Plant Care Calendar** page lets you select the Complexity of Care required, Speed of

Growth (for both height and spread), Life Expectancy and Usage.

The **World Map** page lets you select the region of the world where the plants originate. For example, if you wanted to find plants for an Asian-themed water garden, you would click on the Asian region of the map to exclude any plants that aren't indigenous to Asia.

The **Notebook** page lets you filter plants by notes that you've entered previously on this page. For example, you could enter the note "Front Yard" for all plants that you want to use in your front yard. When you are ready to lay out the front yard of your landscape plan you can go back to the **Plant Filter** and limit your plant list to only the plants you've pre-chosen for your front yard.

The **Picture** page lets you limit your plant list by the part of the plant shown in its photo (leaf, bark, fruit, etc.).

The filter option available on the **Diseases** page is different, because it affects the disease list, not the plant list. To use this filter, click on the image that represents the part of the plant affected or type of infestation, then select the **Encyclopedia** tab on the left side of the window to switch to the regular **Diseases** page. For example, if you are considering planting lilies or daffodils in your garden, and want to know what type of diseases these bulb plants may encounter, click the Bulb image on the **Diseases** page (in **Plant Filter** mode), then go into **Encyclopedia** mode and select the **Diseases** page.

3. Select the criteria for filtering.

When you are in Plant Filter mode, each icon and scale represents a specific plant criterion. As soon as you click on an icon or move a slider, filtering begins. To deselect an icon, click on it again.

Note: If some of the icons disappear, it is because no such plant is selectable within the current criteria. For example, if you

select minimal water, the climber plant type icon will disappear because there are no climbing plants that will accept minimal watering.

If you select more than one icon within a single group, then all plants with any of the checked properties will be selected. For example, selecting maximum light and medium light will exclude all plants that flourish under minimal light (shade) conditions. If icons/sliders of more than one type are checked/moved, then plants that satisfy all the chosen criteria will be selected. For example, if you click on the deciduous tree icon in the **Type** box, the full sun icon in the Lighting Preference box, and the white square on the **Color** box, then only hardwood trees that flourish in full sunlight, require minimal watering, and produce white flowers will be selected.

 The total number of plants available — based on the filters you have applied — is indicated on the leaf in the upper right corner of the window. If at any time you want to restore the complete list of plants, click **Reset**.

NOTE: This ability is not available for 3D plants. Only billboard plants have this option.

Inserting Plants from the Encyclopedia

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Plant Encyclopedia contains more than 7500 plant species, not all of which are included in the catalog. You can insert a plant directly from the Encyclopedia if you want.

To insert a plant from the Encyclopedia:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Gardening > Plant Encyclopedia, or click ?? ?? on the Landscape toolbar.
- 2. In the Plant Encyclopedia, locate and select the plant you want to insert. To select a plant in the plant list, use the scrollbar beside the plant list to scroll through the list of plants, then click on the plant you want to view. By

default, common plant names are listed in the plant list. You can switch to Latin names by clicking the **Latin** button.

If you know the name of the plant you are looking for, you can locate it more quickly by typing the first few letters of the plant's name in the Search edit field above the plant list. The list of plants will move to the closest match as you type.



- 3. Click the **Select** button. The Encyclopedia closes, and the plant is attached to your cursor.
- 4. Insert the plant in your plan.
- 5. Right-click and select Finish.

Adding Plants to the Catalog from the Encyclopedia

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Although the catalog contains a vast array of plants for you to insert, it does not contain all the plants listed in the Plant Encyclopedia.

You can add any plant from the Plant Encyclopedia to any catalog by following the steps below.

To add a plant from the encyclopedia to the current catalog:

- 1. Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager.
- 2. In the **Element Manager** dialog, select or create the group you want to add the plant to.
- 3. Select Edit > Add Element.

- 4. In the **Plants** dialog, select the Plant Info tab.
- Click the Encyclopedia button to launch the Plant Encyclopedia.
- 6. On the Encyclopedia's main page, select the desired plant in the plant list.
- Click Select. Notice that the Plant Info page of the Plants dialog is now full with the selected plant's information.
- 8. In the **Name** edit box, specify a name for your plant.
- 9. Specify the remaining properties (Size, Quantity or Behavior) if desired, then click **OK** in the **Plants** dialog. Note that the settings on the Appearance page have no effect on the plant's appearance. The appearance of a plant is determined by settings in the Encyclopedia.
- Click **OK** in the **Element Manager** dialog. The plant is added to your catalog.

Garden Beds, Ponds & Fills

In the real world, one of the first things you need to do to create a garden is to dig out a bed for your plants. In Envisioneer, you can create a garden bed instantly by simply picking points to define the outline of the bed. The bed is then automatically filled with a material of your choice, such as soil or bark.

The versatile Fills tool is handy for more than just garden beds. Choose the Water fill to create a pond, or the Sand fill to create a horseshoe pit. The possibilities are endless.

Creating Fills

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Fills tool to define an area filled with soil, sand, gravel, concrete, bark or water. You define the area by picking points to draw its outline. Filled areas automatically hug the terrain they are inserted on.

To create a filled area:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Fills, or click
 on the Landscape toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select your fill material.
- 3. Select a start point for your filled area.

- Continue selecting points to define the boundary of the filled area. Note that the last point picked always closes back to the start point, so you don't have to pick the start point again.
- 5. Right-click and select Finish.

Note: You cannot insert a fill on top of another fill.

Moving a Filled Area

You can move a filled area using the Move tool.

To move a filled area:

- 1. Click on the filled area to select it.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and drag the filled area to move it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Filled Area

You can rotate a filled area using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a filled area:

- 1. Click on the filled area to select it.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the corner you want to rotate around.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the fill, then release your mouse button.

Resizing a Filled Area

You can resize a filled area by stretching one of its edges.

To resize a filled area by stretching it:

- 1. Click on the filled area to select it.
- 2. Click on the edge you want to stretch.
- 4. Click and drag to stretch the fill.
- 5. Release your mouse button.

Reshaping a Filled Area

You can change the shape of a filled area by stretching its corners. You can do this by clicking and dragging its grips.

To reshape a filled area by stretching:

 Click on the filled area to select it. A grab handle is displayed at each corner.



2. Click and drag a corner grip to stretch the filled area.



3. Release your mouse button.



Curving a Filled Area

You can curve the edge of a fill using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the edge to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve a fill edge by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the fill edge that you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the fill edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a fill edge to a selected point:

- 1. Click on the fill edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The fill edge automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Changing the Fill Material

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly change the look of a fill.

To change the fill material:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the fill is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply. The *Landscape Materials* category contains fill materials like water, sand and gravel.
- 4. Click anywhere on the surface of the fill. The material is applied immediately.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting a Filled Area

You can delete a filled area in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a filled area:

- 1. Click on the filled area to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Note: Deleting a fill returns the terrain to its original state where the fill was located.

Edging

Edging can be an attractive accent around gardens, ponds, sidewalks, driveways, and other areas. It can

also help retain fill materials and keep weeds out of your garden. You can choose from PVC lawn edging, wood posts, or rails.

Drawing edging is easy - just point and click to define the start and end point of the edging, then keep clicking to add more segments.

Inserting Edging

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Edging can be an attractive accent around gardens, ponds, sidewalks, driveways, and other areas. It can also help retain fill materials and keep weeds out of your garden. You can choose from PVC lawn edging, wood posts, or rails. You insert edging by simply picking points to define the end points and direction of the edging.

To insert edging:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Edging, or click
 i i on the Landscape toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select your edging material.
- 3. Select a start point for the edging.
- 4. Move your cursor in the direction you want the edging to run, then select an endpoint for the edging. You can continue selecting points in any direction to add more sections to the edging if you want.



Edging around a garden

5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Tip: You can also insert decorative borders around a garden. See *Inserting Exterior Accessories* on page 213.

Cleaning Up the Corners of Edging

If you edged around an area with posts or rails, you'll notice that the edging members connect on center at the corners. You may want to lengthen the members to form completely flush intersections.



To clean up the corners of edging:

- Click on one of the edging members. Blue grab handles are displayed at the ends of the member.
- Hover your pointer over the end grip to display the Lengthen cursor. +→+→+→
- Click and drag the edging so that it meets up with the outside of the member it is connected to, then release your mouse button.
- 4. Select the other member.
- Click and drag the end so that it meets up with the inside edge of the connecting member, then release your mouse button.

Moving Edging

You can move a piece of edging by clicking and dragging it. If the member is attached to any other edging members, the other members move along with it.

To move edging:

- Select the edging you want to move. If you want to move multiple members, use Shift+click to select the other members.
- Hover your pointer over the center blue grip to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag to move the edging, then release your mouse button.

Rotating Edging

You can use the Rotate tool to rotate edging about a selected point.

To rotate edging:

- 1. Select the edging. A grip is displayed at the center and ends of the edging.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the edging, then release your mouse button.

Changing the Length of Edging

You can lengthen or shorten edging by clicking and dragging its end points.

To change the length of edging:

- Select the edging you want to lengthen or shorten. Grips are displayed at the center and ends of the edging.
- 3. Click and drag to lengthen or shorten the edging, then release your mouse button.

Breaking Edging

When you create a break in edging, you can select and edit the portions on either side of the break independently.

To create a break in edging:

- 1. Select the edging you want to break.
- Right-click and select Break, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Break.
- 3. Click where you want to break the edging.

Curving Edging

You can curve a section of edging using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the edging to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve edging by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click the section of edging that you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.

- 3. Click and drag the edging to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve edging to a selected point:

- 1. Click the section of edging that you want to curve.
- Right-click in and select Curve, or select Edit
 Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The edging automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Editing the Height and Width of Edging

You can edit the height or width (thickness) of edging on the edging's Basic property page.

To edit the height or width of edging:

- Click on the edging to select it. Use Shift+click to select multiple segments if necessary.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To edit the height of the edging, change the value in the **Edge Height** edit box.
- To edit the width (thickness) of the edging, change the value in the **Edge Width** edit box. Note that this variable is not available for PVC edging.
- If the edging is post edging, you can control the spacing between posts by editing the value in the **Approx. Edge Spacing** edit box.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Changing the Edging Material

You can apply a different color or material to edging using the Materials Paintbrush.

To apply different materials to edging:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the edging is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply.

- 4. Click on the edging.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting Edging

You can delete edging in a couple of easy steps.

To delete edging:

- Select the edging to remove. You can select multiple edging segments using Shift+click.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Fences & Gates

Fences can add beauty, privacy and security to your property. Fences are drawn with ease in Envisioneer. Just point and click to fence off a yard in seconds! The catalog contains an assortment of fences in a variety of materials, including concrete, stone and wood. You can even add a white picket fence for that classic look.

Once you've drawn your fence you can easily pop a gate into it. You can choose a style that matches your fence, or choose an entirely different style to create a stylish accent.

Inserting a Fence

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

To insert a fence, you draw it just like a wall by selecting a start point and end point. This allows you to create a fence of any length. You can continue selecting points in other directions to add on to the fencing (if you want to fence around your yard, for example).

To insert a fence:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Fences/Gates > Fences, or click and on the Landscape toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the fence type you want to insert.
- 3. Select a start point for the fence.
- 4. Move your cursor in the direction you want the fence to run. The fence stretches as you move your cursor.

- 5. Select an end point for the fence. If you want you can continue adding sections to the fence in any direction by simply selecting points.
- 6. Right-click and select Finish.

Tip: If you have inserted a site boundary in your plan, you can draw your fence on top of the lot lines for ease. The fence then acts as a visual indicator of your property extents in 3D.

Stretching a Fence Layout

You can stretch a fence layout by clicking and dragging one of the fence segments.

To stretch a fence layout:

- 1. Click on the fence segment you want to move.
- Position your pointer over the center blue grip to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag to stretch the layout, then release your mouse button.

Changing the Length of a Fence

You can lengthen or shorten a fence by clicking and dragging its end points.

To change the length of a fence:

- 1. Select the fence you want to lengthen or shorten.
- Position your cursor over the fence end that you want to stretch. The Lengthen cursor is displayed. +→+→+
- 3. Click and drag to lengthen or shorten the fence, then release your mouse button.

Creating a Break in a Fence

When you create a break in a fence, you can select the fence portions on either side of the break independently. You may want to insert one or more breaks in a fence so that you can then remove certain segments of it.

To create a break in a fence:

- 1. Select the fence you want to break.
- Right-click and select Break, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Break.
- 3. Click where you want to break the fence.

Parts of a Fence



Editing the Properties of a Fence

You can change the height of a fence, specify whether or not you want the fence to hug the terrain, edit the size and position of fence posts, and edit the dimensions of the rails and boards.

To edit the properties of a fence:

- 1. Click on the fence to select it.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To change the type of fence, click on the appropriate graphic in the *Type* area. Choose from General, Privacy, Picket or Ranch. The General style just inserts a plain, flat surface.
- 4. To change the height of the fence, edit the values in the **Fence Height** edit box.
- 5. If you want the bottom of the fence to hug the terrain, check the **Hug Terrain?** check

box, then select either *Raked* or *Stepped* from the **Slope Type** drop box.

6. To change the dimensions or position of the fence posts, edit the post parameters in the *Posts* area.

Secondary Post Position. Choosing *Centered* starts the spacing of intermediate posts from the middle of the fence to create a balanced look. Choosing *From Start* starts the spacing of intermediate posts from the first main post.

Max. Post Spacing. The maximum allowable spacing between posts. If you stretch the fence, the spacing between posts increases. More posts are added to prevent the spacing from exceeding the maximum.

Post Width. The width (and depth) of fence posts.

Post Extension. The distance the fence posts extend past the top of the fence boards.

Post Rotation. Determines the rotation of the connecting post where two fence segments connect. Choosing *Half Way* rotates the connecting post half way between the angle. Choosing *None* leaves the connecting post aligned to the first fence.

7. To change the dimensions of the top, middle or bottom rail, edit the rail parameters in the *Rails* area.

Rail Width. The width of the rail members. **Rail Depth**. The thickness of the rail members.

Top Rail Height. The distance from the bottom of the fence to the top rail.

Middle Rail Height. The distance from the top rail to the middle rail.

Bottom Rail Height. The distance from the middle rail to the bottom rail.

8. To change the dimensions of the boards in a privacy or picket fence, edit the board parameters in the *Boards* area.

Board Style. Choose either *Squared* or *Pointed*. You would typically see pointed boards on a picket fence.

Board Width. The width of one fence board.

Board Depth. The thickness of one fence board.

Board Spacing. The distance from the center of one board to the center of the next board.

Board Offset. The offset of the bottom of the fence boards from the ground.

9. When you're done editing properties, click **OK**.

Applying Different Materials to a Fence

You can apply a different color or material to the boards, posts or rails of a fence. For example, you can select a different type of wood for a wood fence.

To apply different materials to a fence:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the fence is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply.
- 4. Click on the fence component you want to apply the material to. Materials are applied separately to the individual parts of the fence (fence boards, posts and rails). Clicking on one component will apply the material to all components of the same type. For example, clicking on one post will apply the material to all posts.
- 5. When you are finished applying materials, right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting a Fence

You can delete a fence in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a fence:

- 1. Select the fence. You can select multiple fence segments using Shift+click.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Inserting a Gate

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite The catalog contains a variety of gate types, including wood, picket and ranch style gates. Gates just pop themselves right into fences. Naturally, if you are inserting a gate in a fence, you want to choose a gate size that corresponds to the fence size. For example, if your fence is a 6' wood privacy fence, you would likely choose the 6' wood privacy gate. Gates are shown slightly open so you can identify them easily in 2D and 3D views.

To insert a gate:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Fences/Gates > Gates, or click the down arrow next to the Fences button in on the Landscape toolbar and select Gates.
- 2. In the catalog, select the gate you want to insert.
- 3. Position the gate where you want it, then click to insert it. The gate will automatically pop itself into the fence when you position it in the fence.



4. Right-click and select Finish.

Moving a Gate

You can move a gate back and forth inside a fence by simply clicking and dragging it.

To move a gate:

- 1. Click on the gate to select it.
3. Click and drag to move the gate, then release your mouse button.

Flipping a Gate

You can use the Flip Opening tool to flip an entire gate around. If the gate originally opened out, it now opens in; if it was hinged on the left, it is now hinged on the right (and vice versa).

To flip a gate:

- 1. Click the gate to select it.
- Right-click in the drawing area and select Flip Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Flip Opening.

Flipping a Gate's Swing

Use the Flip Swing tool to flip only the swing of a gate. The gate will be hinged on the opposite side, but it will still open in the same direction, either in or out.

To flip a gate swing:

- 1. Click the gate to select it.
- Right-click in the drawing area and select Flip Swing, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Flip Swing.

Editing the Properties of a Gate

You can change the height and width of a gate as well as the dimensions of the rails and boards. You can also control how far the gate is open in 2D and 3D views.

To edit the properties of a gate:

- 1. Click on the gate to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To change the type of gate, click on the appropriate graphic in the *Type* area. Choose from General, Privacy, Picket or Ranch. The General style just inserts a plain, flat door.
- 4. To change the overall size of the gate, edit the values in the **Gate Width** and **Gate Height** edit boxes.
- To change the swing type, select either *Left* or *Right* from the **Swing Type** drop box. This determines which side the gate is hinged on.
- 6. If you want to change how far the gate is open in 3D views, edit the percentage in the

3D Percent Open edit box. To change how far the gate is open in 2D views, change the percentage in the **2D Percent Open** edit box.

7. To change the dimensions of the top, middle or bottom rail, edit the rail parameters in the *Rails* area.

Rail Width. The width of the rail members. **Rail Depth**. The thickness of the rail members.

Top Rail Height. The distance from the bottom of the gate to the top rail.

Middle Rail Height. The distance from the top rail to the middle rail.

Bottom Rail Height. The distance from the middle rail to the bottom rail.

 To change the dimensions of the boards in a privacy or picket fence, edit the board parameters in the *Boards* area.

Board Style. Choose either *Squared* or *Pointed*. You would typically see pointed boards on a picket fence.

Board Width. The width of one fence board. **Board Depth**. The thickness of one fence board.

Board Spacing. The distance from the center of one board to the center of the next board.

Board Offset. The offset of the bottom of the gate boards from the ground.

 When you're done editing properties, click OK.

Deleting a Gate

You can delete a gate in a couple of easy steps. When you delete a gate, the fence returns to its original state.

To delete a gate:

- 1. Select the gate.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Sheds

The Shed Builder Wizard steps you through the creation of a custom shed, then builds it for you

instantly! Simply select the shed style you want, then enter the dimensions you would like it to have. Next, define the desired door/window combination, and then select custom materials for the roof, walls, floor, door and window. Finally, just click to insert your new shed where you want it!

Once inserted, you can further edit the shed's individual components if needed.

Note: If you would like to insert a pre-made shed from the catalog, use the Exterior Structures tool. You can find sheds in the Storage and Enclosures category of the catalog.

Building a Shed with the Shed Builder Wizard

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Shed Builder Wizard will create a custom shed for you in a few easy steps. All you need to do is select a shed style, enter the desired dimensions, and specify the door and window placement. You can even select what materials you would like to use for the roof, walls, floor, door and window.

Once you've inserted the shed in your plan, you can further edit its individual components to achieve the exact size and appearance you want.

To build a shed:

 Select Insert > Design Wizards > Shed Builder, or click the down arrow next to the Design Wizards button in the Building toolbar and select Shed Builder.

	The Shed Builder Wizard steps you through the creation of a custom shed, and builds it for you instantly. Simply select the style and size you want, then choose a door and window configuration. You can then select the construction materials you would like to use for the shed's walls, roof, door and windows. To get started, click Next.
--	---

2. On the Welcome screen, click Next.

🚰 Shed Builder Wizard		? 💌
Select a Building Style an	d Size	LAR
Choose an approximate shed style that suits you created, you can modify it further.	ir needs. Once the shed has	been
	Building Size	
$(\lambda \times (\lambda \times$	Area =	100.0 H ²
× J L S	a. Length:	10'-0"
\land	b. Width:	10'-0"
a b a b		
	< Back Next >	Cancel

- On the next screen, click on the graphic that most closely resembles the style of shed you would like to build.
- 4. Enter the desired dimensions for the shed in the **Length** and **Width** edit boxes.
- 5. Click Next.



- 6. On the Door and Window Configuration screen, click on the door/window combination that you would like for the front of the shed. If you would like a window on the left side of the shed, enable the Include Window on left side check box. If you would like a window on the right side of the shed, enable the Include Window on right side check box.
- 7. Click Next.



8. On the Shed Elements screen you can select a custom materials to use for the shed's roof, walls, floor, door and window. Just click the

desired elements button, then make a selection from the catalog. **NOTE:** For Building Essentials and Construction Suite products, the Floors option will allow for a Structural Floor or a Floor Surface. If you have defined your own shed configuration in the Library Manager, you can simply select it from the **Shed Configuration** drop box.

🔗 Shed Builder Wizard	§ X
Completing the Wiza	rd
	You are about to complete the Shed Builder Wizard. Once you click Finish, the shed will be attached to your cursor, ready to be inserted. Click on the screen to insert your shed. Once inserted you can edit the shed's walls, roof, floor, door and windows individually. Click Finish to build your shed.
	< Back Finish Cancel

- 9. On the final screen, click **Finish**. The shed is attached to your cursor, ready to be inserted.
- 10. Position the shed where you want it, then click to insert it.

Tip: If you would like to insert a pre-made shed from the catalog, use the Exterior Structures tool. You can find sheds in the Storage and Enclosures category of the catalog.

Moving a Shed

You can move a shed that you have created by creating a selection window around it, then using the Move tool.

To move a shed:

- In 2D plan view, click and drag a selection window around the entire shed.

3. Click and drag the shed to move it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Shed

Once you have inserted your shed, you may find that you need to rotate it. You can do this easily using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a shed:

- In 2D plan view, click and drag a selection window around the entire shed.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate. The Rotate cursor is displayed. ⁺U⁺U
- 3. Select a base point for the rotation, such as a corner of the shed.
- 4. Without holding your mouse button down, move your mouse to rotate the element. The element will rotate in the direction you move the mouse.
- 5. When the shed is at the desired rotation, click to anchor it in its new position.

Editing a Shed

If you have created and inserted a shed with the Shed Builder Wizard, you can edit its roof, walls, floor, door and window individually. Just click on the element you want to edit, then edit it as you would if it were part of a house. For example, you can stretch the walls to make the shed bigger or smaller, or select a different window size.

Launching the Shed Builder Wizard Automatically at Startup

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you want you can choose to launch the Shed Builder Wizard automatically every time you start the program or a new project.

To launch the Shed Builder Wizard automatically at startup:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **General** in the left column.

- 3. In the *Startup* area, check the **Launch wizard** when starting new project check box.
- 4. Select **Shed Builder** from the drop box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Creating a Custom Shed Builder Wizard Configuration

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A Shed Builder Wizard configuration determines what elements are used for a shed's roof, walls, floor, door and window. You are asked to select a configuration for your shed when you run the Shed Builder Wizard.

You can edit any of the existing configurations that are available in the Shed Builder Wizard, or create your own. Customized configurations are saved automatically and will be available when you run the Shed Builder Wizard in the current project, or any other project.

To access the shed configuration library:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Shed Configuration.

To add a new configuration to the list:

- Select Edit > Add Configuration, or rightclick in the Shed Configuration window and select Add Configuration. An entry named 'New Configuration' is added to the list.
- Select the new configuration in the list. If you want to rename it, select Edit > Rename Configuration, or right-click and select Rename Configuration. Then, type the new name and press ENTER.

To edit a shed configuration:

- Select the configuration in the list. The element selections for the configuration are listed in the center pane.
- 2. In the center pane, select an element type you want to specify a style for (e.g. Wall).
- 3. Click the **Select** button.

- 4. In the **Catalog Access** dialog, select the specific style you want to apply to the selected element type, then click **OK**.
- 5. Continue selecting styles for the remaining element types.

To delete a configuration from the list:

- 1. Select the configuration in the list.
- Select Edit > Delete Configuration, or rightclick and select Delete Configuration, or simply press the Delete key on your keyboard.

Decks

A great way to add more living space to your home without building an addition is to build a deck. With outdoor living spaces becoming more and more desirable, Envisioneer gives you all the tools you need to create the exact look you want, quickly and easily.

The Deck Builder Wizard makes building a deck so simple — just select the material and shape you want, and the deck is built for you automatically. Or if you prefer, you can create the precise size and shape you want using the Deck tool. You can even add levels to your deck if you want for a truly customized look. Once you have the main structure up, you can point and click to insert stairs of your choice. You can even cut an opening in the deck if you want.

Decks

There are two ways to build a deck in Envisioneer. You can let the Deck Builder Wizard do all the work for you — just select the material and shape you want, and the deck is built automatically. If you want to be able to specify a precise size and shape, use the Deck tool to select points that define the outline of the deck.

Regardless of how a deck is created, you can edit practically every aspect of it after it has been inserted. To display a menu of deck editing commands, select the deck and then right-click your mouse. Selecting **Decks Help** at the bottom of the menu displays a list of help topics relating to decks.

Building a Deck with the Deck Builder Wizard

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Deck Builder Wizard takes all the work out of building a deck because it does it all for you! Just select the decking material and deck shape, enter the dimensions you want, then point and click to insert the deck. By default, decks include posts, beams and railings.

After inserting a deck you can move, stretch, rotate, raise or lower it if needed, as well as edit its properties, which include settings for posts, railings and skirting.

To build a deck using the Deck Builder Wizard:

- In the Building Locations drop box, select the location you want to associate the deck with. The height of a deck is determined by the Height above current location variable in the deck properties. You can edit this value after the deck has been inserted if necessary.
- Select Insert > Design Wizards > Deck Builder, or click the down arrow next to the Design Wizards button in the Building toolbar and select Deck Builder.



3. In the Deck Wizard dialog, click Next.

Chapter 14: Landscaping

🚰 Deck Builder Wizard	2
Choose a Deck Type	
Search:	
Show all 🔻	
🖃 🗁 Pressure Treated	
	=
2 x 6 Pressure Treated Decking	
🕀 🧰 Cedar	
Composite Decking Composite Deck	-
< Back Next >	Cano

4. Select the decking material you would like to use.

5. Click Next.

🚰 Deck Builder Wizard	8
Choose a Deck Shap	be and Size
Pick the general shape of the deck you Shape	u want to create and enter dimensions below.
Size	a. 10'-0"
b	b. 10'-0"
	< Back Next > Canc

- 6. In the *Shape* area, click on the shape that most closely resembles the shape you want to create. Remember that you can edit the shape after the deck has been inserted.
- 7. In the *Size* area, specify the desired dimensions for the deck.
- 8. Click Next.

🚝 Deck Builder Wizard	8 2
Choose Decking Rotation and Dire	ection
Select the deck rotation and the decking direction. This is how it will be placed and constructed in your project.	Decking Direction
Deck Rotation	
< Back	Next > Cancel

- 9. In the *Deck Rotation* area, select the desired rotation for your deck. This is how the deck will be oriented when it is attached to your cursor.
- 10. In the *Decking Direction* area, select the direction you want the deck boards to run.
- 11. Click Next.



- 12. Click **Finish**. The Deck Wizard closes, and the deck is attached to your cursor, ready to be inserted.
- 13. Position the deck where you want it, then click to insert it.

Building a Deck with the Deck Tool

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Deck tool to build a deck of virtually any shape and size.

Once you've inserted a deck you can move, stretch, rotate, raise or lower it if needed, as well as edit its properties, which include settings for posts, railings and skirting.

To create a deck:

- In the Building Locations drop box, select the location you want to associate the deck with. The height of a deck is determined by the Height above current location variable in the deck properties. You can edit this value after the deck has been inserted if necessary.
- Select Insert > Landscape > Decks > Decks, or click an on the Landscape toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog, select the decking material you want to use.
- 4. Select a start point for the deck outline. Continue selecting points until the outline is defined. (You do not have to select the start point again because the last point you pick is always closed back to the start point.)



5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Launching the Deck Builder Wizard Automatically at Startup

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you want you can choose to launch the Deck Builder Wizard automatically every time you start the program or a new project.

To launch the Deck Builder Wizard automatically at startup:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **General** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Startup* area, check the **Launch wizard** when starting new project check box.
- 4. Select **Deck Builder** from the drop box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Moving a Deck

You can move a deck using the Move tool.

To move a deck:

- Click on one of the deck's edges to select the deck.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and drag the deck to move it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Deck

You can use the Rotate tool to rotate a deck about a selected point.

To rotate a deck:

- 1. Select the deck by clicking on one of its edges. A grip is displayed at each corner.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the deck, then release your mouse button.

Note: When you rotate a deck, the direction of the deck boards does not change. You can change the decking direction if you want.

Changing the Direction of Deck Boards

You can use the Set Decking Direction tool to change the direction of your deck boards.

To change the direction of deck boards:

- 1. Select the deck by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select Set Decking Direction, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Set Decking Direction.
- 3. Select two points to define a line that runs in the direction you want the deck boards to run. The deck boards update to match the direction of the line.

Stretching a Deck

You can stretch a deck in any direction by clicking and dragging one of its edges.

To stretch a deck:

- 1. Click on the deck edge you want to stretch.
- 3. Click and drag to stretch the deck, then release your mouse button.

If you would like to stretch only a portion of a deck edge, you can accomplish this by adding a node to the deck edge. See *Adding a Node to a Deck* on page 203.

Reshaping a Deck

You can change the shape of a deck by stretching any of its corners.

To reshape a deck:

- 1. Click on the deck to select it. A grip is displayed at each corner.
- 2. Click and drag a corner grip to stretch the deck. Alternatively you can select the **Stretch** tool on the right-click menu.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

If you would like to stretch only a portion of a deck edge, you can accomplish this by adding a node to the deck edge. See *Adding a Node to a Deck* on page 203.

Adding a Node to a Deck

You can add nodes to a deck edge to create more grips along the edge. You can then click and drag a grip on a specific segment to reshape that portion of the deck.

To add a node to a deck:

- 1. Select the deck.
- Right-click and select Add Node, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Add Node.
- Click on the point on the deck edge where you want to add a node. The edge is split into separate edges, each with its own grips for moving and stretching.

Removing a Node from a Deck

If you have added a node to a deck edge, removing a node causes the segment with which the node is associated to merge with the adjacent segments. Note that you cannot delete a node if it is the only node on the edge.

To remove a node from a deck:

- 1. Select the deck.
- 2. Right-click and select Remove Node.
- 3. Click on the node to remove.

Curving a Deck Edge

You can curve a deck edge using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the deck edge to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve a deck edge by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the deck edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the deck edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a deck edge to a selected point:

- 1. Click on the deck edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.

- Select the point you want to curve to. The deck edge automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Changing the Height of a Deck

By default, decks are inserted at a height that is relative to the current building location.

To change the height of a deck:

- 1. Select the deck by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. On the Support property page, edit the value in the **Height above current location** edit box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Editing Deck Post Properties

You can edit a deck's post type, post spacing and post depth. You can also disable posts altogether if you want.

To edit deck post properties:

- 1. Select the deck by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Decks** dialog, select the Support tab.
- 4. If you want to remove posts from the deck, uncheck the **Include Posts** check box in the *Supports* area.
- To select a different member to use for deck posts, click the **Select** button next to the **Include Posts** edit box, then make your selection from the catalog.
- To change the spacing between posts along beams, edit the value in the Spacing along Beam edit box.
- 7. To change the depth of the posts in the ground, edit the value in the **Depth below** ground level edit box. This effectively changes the overall height of the post, but does not affect the portion shown above ground.
- 8. Click **OK**.

Editing Deck Footings

You can control the display of footings under your deck by editing deck properties. You can also choose the footing material you want to use.

To create footings under deck posts:

- 1. Select the deck by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. On the Support property page, check the **Include Footings** check box in the *Supports* area.
- Click the Select button next to the Include Footings edit box, then select the desired footing type from the catalog.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Editing the Deck Frame

You have complete control over the way a deck is constructed. You can specify the way you want the beams constructed in relation to the posts. You can also select specific materials to use for deck boards, beams and joists, as well as edit the spacing and overhang of these members.

To edit the deck frame:

- 1. Select the deck by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Decks** dialog, select the Frame tab.
- 4. To change the way the beams are constructed, click on the desired configuration in the *Construction* area. Beams are the vertical members that rest on or are attached to the posts, and that support the deck joists.
- 5. To select a different material for the deck boards, click the **Select** button in the *Decking* area, then make your selection from the catalog.
- 6. To edit the spacing between deck boards, edit the value in the **Spacing** edit box in the *Decking* area.
- To change the amount the deck boards hang over the deck frame, edit the value in the **Overhang** edit box in the *Decking* area.

- To adjust the angle of the deck boards in relation to the joists, edit the value in the Angle from Joists edit box.
- 9. To select a different material for the deck joists, click the **Select** button in the *Joists* area, then make your selection from the catalog.
- 10. To edit the spacing between joists, edit the value in the **Spacing** edit box in the *Joists* area.
- 11. To change the amount the joists hang over the beams, edit the value in the **Overhang** edit box in the *Joists* area. The general rule of thumb is to limit the extension to 1/3 of their length.
- 12. To select a different material for the deck beams, click the **Select** button in the *Beams* area, then make your selection from the catalog.
- 13. To change the amount the beams extend past each other, edit the value in the **Overhang** edit box in the *Beams* area.
- 14. Once you've specified the deck frame properties, click **OK**.

Controlling the Display of Deck Railings

By default, ground-level and low-level decks do not have railings turned on, while raised-level and second-story decks do. You can control the display of railings for each side of a deck.

To control the display of deck railings:

- 1. Select the deck.
- 2. Click on the edge properties grip (red circle) on the deck edge you want to define.
- 3. To display a railing on the selected deck edge, enable the **Railing** check box. If you do not want to display a railing on the deck edge, clear the **Railing** check box.
- 4. If you want to display railings on all deck edges, enable the **Apply to all edges** check box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Note: If you add stairs to your deck, an opening will be automatically created in the railing.

Changing the Style of a Deck Railing

You can change a deck's railing type by making a selection on the Accessories property page.

To change a deck's railing style:

- 1. Select the deck by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Decks** dialog, select the Accessories tab.
- 4. In the *Railings* area, click the **Select** button.
- 5. Select the desired railing type from the catalog.
- 6. Click OK.

Controlling the Display of Deck Skirting

Skirting is basically screening such as lattice along the bottom of a deck that conceals the underside of the deck frame. It can also keep out animals and debris. Most decks do not display skirting by default. You can control the display of skirting for each deck edge.

To control the display of skirting on your deck:

- 1. Select the deck by clicking on one of its edges.
- 2. Click on the edge properties grip (red circle) on the deck edge you want to define.
- To display skirting on the selected deck edge, enable the Skirting check box. If you do not want to display skirting on the deck edge, clear the Skirting check box.
- 4. If you want to display skirting on all deck edges, enable the **Apply to all edges** check box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Changing the Skirting Material on a Deck

You can change a deck's skirting material by making a selection on the Accessories property page.

To change a deck's skirting material:

- 1. Select the deck.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Decks** dialog, select the Accessories tab.
- 4. In the *Skirting* area, click the **Select** button.
- 5. Select the desired skirting material from the catalog.
- 6. Click OK.

Deleting a Deck

You can remove a deck completely in a couple of easy steps.

To remove a deck:

- Click on one of the deck's edges to select the deck.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Note: If you added stairs to your deck, you need to remove them separately.

Deck Openings

Once you have inserted a deck you can create an opening in the deck if desired using the Cut Opening tool on the right-click menu.

Once created you can resize, reshape or curve the deck opening.

Inserting an Opening in a Deck

Once you have created a deck, you can insert a custom opening in it of virtually any shape and size using the Cut Opening tool.

You create the opening by picking points to define its outline.

To insert an opening in a deck:

- 1. Select the deck by clicking on one of its edges.
- Right-click and select Cut Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Cut Opening.
- 3. Select a start point for the opening.
- 4. Continue selecting points to define the opening. As you select points, the opening is

created. The last point picked is always connected back to the start point to form a closed shape, so you don't have to pick the start point again.

5. When you have selected your final point, right-click and select **Finish**.

Resizing a Deck Opening

You can resize a deck opening by clicking and dragging one of its edges.

To stretch a deck opening:

- 1. Select the deck.
- Hover your pointer over the center blue grip of the edge that you want to move. This displays the Move cursor. Alternatively you can select the **Move Edge** tool from the right-click menu.
- 3. Click and drag in the direction you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Reshaping a Deck Opening

You can change the shape of a deck opening by stretching its corners. You can do this by clicking and dragging.

To reshape a deck opening by stretching:

- 1. Select the deck.
- Click and drag the corners of the opening to stretch it, then release your mouse button. Alternatively you can select the **Stretch** tool from the right-click menu.

Curving a Deck Opening Edge

You can curve an opening edge using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the opening edge to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve an opening edge by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the opening edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the opening edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve an opening edge to a selected point:

- 1. Click on the opening edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The opening edge automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Removing Deck Openings

You can delete an opening from a deck using the Remove Opening tool.

Note: You cannot remove an opening using Delete.

To remove a deck opening:

- Click on the edge of the deck or opening to select the deck.
- Right-click and select Remove Opening, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Remove Opening.
- 3. Click on the edge of the opening. The opening is removed.

Deck Stairs

Once you have inserted a deck you can easily attach stairs to it using the Deck Stairs tool. Stairs automatically snap to your deck for easy insertion, and the railings on the deck are automatically removed to allow for the stair opening.

Once inserted you can move deck stairs along a deck edge. You can also edit their size, control the display of railings, and edit stringers, treads and risers.

Adding Stairs to a Deck

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add a staircase to your deck with a single mouse click. Stairs automatically snap to your deck for easy insertion, and the railings on the deck are automatically removed to allow for the stair opening. By default, stairs extend from the deck platform down to the terrain, so there's absolutely nothing you need to calculate. Also, deck stairs have a railing on both sides by default, but you can remove one or both of them if you want after the stairs have been inserted. You can choose either pressure treated or cedar stairs, and edit the stair dimensions to get the exact result you want.

To add stairs to a deck:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Decks > Deck
 Stairs, or click the down arrow next to the
 Decks button area on the Landscape toolbar and select Deck Stairs.
- 2. In the catalog, select the type of stairs you would like to insert.
- Move your pointer close to the deck edge. Position the stairs where you want them, then click to insert them.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Moving Deck Stairs

You can move a deck staircase by clicking and dragging it along the deck edge. Note that you can't move deck stairs away from the deck, but you can move them to another deck edge. Also, the opening in the deck railing adjusts with the move of the deck stairs.

To move a staircase by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the staircase to select it.
- 3. Click and drag the staircase along the deck edge to move it.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

Editing the Size of Deck Stairs

You can edit the overall height and width of deck stairs, the width of the steps, and the riser height.

To edit the size of deck stairs:

- 1. Click on the staircase to select it.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the properties on the Basic tab.

Extend Stair. The option selected determines where the base of the stairs sit. You can either change where they extend to, or specify an explicit height. By default, the deck stairs are inserted at deck level and run down to the terrain.

Down to terrain. Extends the stairs down to the ground.

Down to previous location. Extends the stairs to the floor level of the building location below the current one.

Down to deck location. Extends the stairs down to the floor level of the building location the deck is associated with. You might use this if you have raised your deck above the floor level of the current location and want to extend the stairs down.

Explicit Height. Extends the stairs down a specific distance that you define in the Overall Height edit box.

Overall Height. Available only if Explicit Height is selected in the Extend Stair drop box, this lets you define a fixed height for the stairs.

Max. Riser Height. The maximum distance allowed between individual steps. Note that if your riser height exceeds the width of the member you are using for your riser boards, two or more boards will be inserted for each riser.

Tread Run. The width of each step. The width of a step is measured from the nose of the step to the riser of the next step. Note that if your tread run exceeds the width of the member you are using for your treads, two or more boards will be inserted for each step.

Overall Width. The width of the stairs measured from one end of a step to the other end of the step.

4. Click **OK**.

Controlling the Display of Railings on Deck Stairs

By default, deck stairs have a railing on both sides. You can choose to have a railing on the left side only or right side only, or remove them altogether.

To control the display of railings on deck stairs:

- 1. Click on the staircase to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

- 3. In the *Railings* area, uncheck the **Include Rail**ings check box if you don't want any railings on your deck stairs. If you want one or more railings on the stairs, leave this check box enabled.
- 4. If you want a railing on the left side of the stairs, select **Railing on left side** from the drop box. If you want a railing on the right side of the stairs, select **Railing on right side** from the drop box. If you want a railing on both sides of the stairs, select **Railing on both sides**.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Editing Stringers, Treads and Risers on Deck Stairs

You can specify detailed settings for the stringers, risers and treads on your deck stairs.

To edit stringer, riser or tread details:

- 1. Click on the staircase to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Deck Stairs** dialog, select the Details tab.
- 4. To change the stringer style, click the appropriate graphic in the *Stringer* area. Choose from *Notched*, *Under* or *Side*.
- 5. Edit the remaining properties as desired. <u>Stringer</u>

Spacing. The spacing between the outside stringers and intermediate stringers.

Height. The distance from the bottom of the stringer to the underside of the tread/riser intersection. Specifying a stringer height that is the same as the overall height of the staircase creates a staircase that is completely closed on the sides. In other words, the stringers go right to the ground.



Width. The thickness of the stringer members. Riser

Closed Riser. Inserts riser boards under the steps. If you leave this disabled, the staircase will be open under the treads.

Select. Click this button to select a riser board to use.

Spacing. When the riser comprises two or more boards, this is the spacing between the boards.

Angle. The tilt of the riser boards. A value of 0 means the board is perpendicular to the step (straight up and down). A value above 0 tilts the riser down toward the back of the staircase. The maximum angle allowed is 20^o.





Select. Click this button to select the type of wood to use for your steps.

Spacing. When each step comprises two or more boards, this is the spacing between those boards.

Nosing. The distance the step extends past the riser.

Overhang. The distance the ends of the steps extend past the outer stringers.

6. Click **OK**.

Deleting Deck Stairs

You can delete a set of stairs in a couple of easy steps. **To delete deck stairs:**

- 1. Click on the stairs.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Irrigation

Sprinkler systems are not only convenient, but they can also extend the life and improve the look of your lawn and plants.

You can insert pop-up sprinklers in your landscape plan with a single mouse click. When you insert a sprinkler, the coverage of the spray is outlined with a dashed line.

Inserting Irrigation

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The catalog contains a wide selection of pop-up sprinklers with varying ranges of spray. You insert a sprinkler by simply pointing and clicking with your mouse. When you insert a sprinkler, the coverage of the spray is outlined with a dashed line.

To insert pop-up sprinklers:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Irrigation, or click con the Landscape toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the sprinkler you want to insert.
- 3. Position the sprinkler where you want it, then click to insert it. You can continue inserting more sprinklers if you want.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Moving a Sprinkler

You can move a sprinkler by simply clicking and dragging it.

To move a sprinkler:

- 1. Select the sprinkler.
- Hover your pointer over the sprinkler's square grip to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag to move the sprinkler.
- 4. When the sprinkler is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Rotating a Sprinkler

You can rotate a sprinkler (and its spray) by simply clicking and dragging its rotation handle.

To rotate a sprinkler:

- 1. Select the sprinkler.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the sprinkler's triangular grip.
- 3. Click and drag to rotate the sprinkler, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Height of a Sprinkler

All sprinklers in the catalog are 3" tall. You can edit the height of a sprinkler if you want.

To edit the height of a sprinkler:

- 1. Select the sprinkler.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- On the Basic page, edit the value in the Height edit box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Editing a Sprinkler's Spray Properties

You can edit the distance covered by a sprinkler's spray, as well as the spray pattern line style.

To edit a sprinkler's spray properties:

- 1. Select the sprinkler.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To edit the spray distance, edit the size values on the Basic property page. For most sprinklers you would edit the **Width** and **Depth** values. The Adjustable sprinkler in the catalog lets you specify a custom radius and included angle for the spray.
- To edit the line style of the spray pattern, select the Appearance tab, then select **Spray Pattern** in the left pane. Click the Select button in the *Linestyle* area to select a different line style.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Sprinkler

You can delete a sprinkler in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a sprinkler:**

- 1. Select the sprinkler.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Exterior Structures

The catalog offers an excellent selection of exterior structures to make your outdoor living space more functional. These include play gyms, swings, sandboxes, trampolines, tennis and volleyball courts, detached garages, sheds, gazebos, arbors, garden boxes, greenhouses, pools and hot tubs.

If you are creating a landscape plan and do not have a model in your project, you can insert a house template to create your landscape plan around.

All structures are inserted with a single mouse click and can be easily moved, rotated and edited.

Inserting Exterior Structures

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite You can insert a wide variety of exterior structures to make your outdoor living space more functional. These include play gyms, swings, sandboxes, trampolines, tennis and volleyball courts, detached garages, sheds, gazebos, arbors, garden boxes, greenhouses, pools and hot tubs.All structures are inserted with a single mouse click and can be easily moved, rotated and edited.

To insert an exterior structure:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Exterior Structures, or click and a contract on the Landscape toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the structure you want to insert.
- 3. Position the structure where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Inserting a House Template

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A house template is basically the exterior shell of a finished home. If you are creating a landscape plan and your project does not contain a model, you can insert a house template to serve as the focal point of your plan.

To insert a house template:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Exterior Structures, or click and a contract on the Landscape toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the House Templates group, then select the desired house template.
- 3. Position the template where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Although a house template looks like a real house, it can't be edited like a real model can. It is considered a single-click element, so clicking on any part of the template selects the entire house.

It is important to note that when you select the house template, the invisible bounding box is always square or rectangular, and does not necessarily follow the shape of the house outline. This can interfere with the selection of other elements near the house. If you have inserted elements around the house, such as plants, and want to select them, you may want to use the View Filter to make the house template non-selectable for ease of editing your landscape plan.



Another thing to note is that the house template's exterior walls are not visible in 2D. You only see the roof line. If you want to insert things like fills up against the exterior walls of the house, you will need to either draw them in 3D, or draw them in 2D and then move them into place in 3D.

Moving Exterior Structures

You can move exterior structures in plan view by simply clicking and dragging them.

To move an exterior structure:

- 1. Select the element you want to move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the element.
- 4. When the element is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Rotating Exterior Structures

You can rotate exterior structures by clicking and dragging them.

To rotate an exterior structure:

- 1. Select the element you want to rotate.
- Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. ⁺∪⁺∪

Tip: If the triangular grip is in close proximity to the square grab handle, you may want to zoom in on the element to distinguish between the two grips.

- 3. Click and drag to rotate the element.
- 4. When the element is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Editing the Size of an Exterior Structure

You can edit the height, width and depth of most exterior structures.

To edit the size of an exterior structure:

- 1. Select the structure.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the values on the Basic page. The **Uniform Scale** option ensures that the element scales uniformly when you change one of its dimensions.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Applying Different Colors or Materials to Exterior Structures

You can change the look of an exterior structure by applying different colors or materials to it.

To apply different colors or materials to an exterior structure:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the structure is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the color or material you want to apply.
- Click on the component you want to apply the material to. Some structures can have different materials applied to individual parts. For example, the roof of a shed can be different from the shed's walls.
- 5. When you are finished applying materials, right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting an Exterior Structure

You can delete an exterior structure in a couple of easy steps.

To delete an exterior structure:

- 1. Select the structure.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Exterior Furniture & Accessories

The catalog includes a great selection of exterior furniture so you can relax, eat and entertain outdoors. Furniture types include patio tables, patio chairs, picnic tables, loungers and benches.

Personalize your design even further with accessories such as fireplaces, fountains, wind chimes, decorative columns, corner accents, garden borders, weather vanes, door mats, patio umbrellas, trellises, bird baths, mailboxes, cars and planters.

All it takes is one click to insert furnishings and accessories.

Inserting Exterior Furniture

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can insert patio tables, patio chairs, picnic tables, loungers and benches with a single mouse click. When inserting exterior furniture, you have the option of inserting it on the terrain, or on a building location.

To insert exterior furniture:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Exterior
 Furniture, or click the down arrow next to
 the Exterior Furniture button and a new next to
 the Exterior Furniture button and and and a new next to
 the Exterior on Terrain or Exterior
 Furniture on Location, depending on where
 you want to insert the element. The Exterior
 Furniture on Location option lets you insert
 the element on a deck, or on anything that is
 associated with a building location.
- 2. In the catalog, select the element you want to insert.
- 3. Position the element where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Inserting Exterior Accessories

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Exterior accessories include everything from bird baths to weather vanes. Inserting exterior accessories is easy — just point and click. You can insert exterior accessories on the terrain, or on a building location.

To insert an exterior accessory:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Exterior
 Accessories, or click the down arrow next to
 the Exterior Accessories button in the Landscape toolbar. Then, select either Exter ior Accessories on Terrain or Exterior
 Accessories on Location. The 'on Location'
 option lets you insert the element on a deck,
 or on anything that is associated with a build ing location.
- 2. In the catalog, select the accessory you want to insert.
- 3. Position the element where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Moving Furnishing Elements

You can move furniture, electronics and accessories by clicking and dragging them.

To move an element:

- 1. Select the element you want to move.
- Hover your pointer over the element's center grip to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag to move the element.
- 4. When the element is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Rotating Furnishing Elements

You can rotate furniture, electronics and accessories by clicking and dragging them.

To rotate an element:

- 1. Select the element you want to rotate.

Tip: If the triangular grip is in close proximity to the square grab handle, you may want to zoom

in on the element to distinguish between the two grips.

- 3. Click and drag to rotate the element.
- 4. When the element is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Raising or Lowering Furnishing Elements

You can raise or lower furniture, electronics and accessories using the Elevate tool on the element's right-click menu. For example, you might want to adjust the height of a picture on the wall.

To edit the elevation of a furnishing element:

- 1. Select the element whose elevation you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the element.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the bottom of the element above the floor.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the element looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the element in your model.
- 5. To apply the change and close the dialog, click **OK**.

Tip: You can also change a furnishing element's elevation by changing the **Distance above current location or terrain** variable on the element's Behavior property page.

Editing the Size of Furnishing Elements

You can edit the height, width and depth of most furnishing elements. Some elements have additional properties that define their size and style.

To edit the size of furnishing elements:

- 1. Select the element whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

- 3. To change the dimensions of the element, select the Basic tab. Size properties will vary depending on the element.
- Once you've specified the properties, click OK.

Applying Different Colors, Fabrics and Finishes to Furnishing Elements

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly apply a color, fabric or finish to any furnishing element.

To apply a material to a furnishing element:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the furnishing element is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- In the catalog panel, select the color or material you want to apply. You may want to select *Furniture* from the **Filter** drop box to display only furniture materials.
- 4. Click on the component you want to apply the material to. Materials are applied separately to the individual parts of the element. For example, you can apply a specific fabric to the bedspread on a bed.
- 5. When you are finished applying materials, right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting Furnishing Elements

You can delete furniture, electronics or accessories in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a furnishing element:

- 1. Select the element.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Exterior Lighting

Outdoor lighting can beautify any landscape and offers security and visibility at night. Lighting can also play an important part when you create exterior 3D RealView[™] renderings.

The catalog offers both light posts and ground lighting to enhance the exterior design of your home.

You can even turn them on and off! Exterior lighting is inserted directly on the terrain. Just point and click!

Inserting Exterior Lighting

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Inserting exterior light posts and ground lighting is easy — just point and click.

To insert an exterior light fixture:

- Select Insert > Landscape > Exterior Lighting, or click the down arrow next to the Exterior Lighting button n the Landscape toolbar. Then, select either Exterior Lighting on Terrain or Exterior Lighting on Location, depending on where you want to insert the element. The Exterior Lighting on Location option lets you insert the element on a deck, or on anything that is associated with a building location.
- 2. In the catalog, select the light you want to insert.
- 3. Position the light where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Tip: If you switch to Rendered or Rendered Outline display mode, you can see instant lighting effects as you position and insert light fixtures.

Moving a Light Fixture

You can move light fixtures by clicking and dragging them.

To move a light fixture:

- 1. Select the light fixture you want to move.
- Hover your pointer over the fixture's center grip to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag to move the light fixture.
- 4. When the light fixture is where you want it, release your mouse button.

Editing the Size of a Light Fixture

You can edit the dimensions of a light fixture on its Basic property page.

To edit the size of a light fixture:

- 1. Select the light fixture whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Select the Basic tab. Size properties will vary depending on the type of fixture. Use the diagram as a guide when determining the fixture's properties. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the light fixture diagram, and vice versa.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source

A light source is usually a type of light bulb. You can edit a light fixture's light source to achieve a different lighting effect.

To edit a light fixture's light source:

- 1. Select the light fixture whose properties you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Select the Lights tab.
- To replace the currently selected light source with another type, click Edit, then select a light source from the Light Sources dialog.
- To add a light source to the fixture, click Add, then select a light source from the Light Sources dialog. If you want to add or edit light sources in the Light Sources library, see Customizing the Light Source Library.
- 6. To delete a light source from the light fixture, click **Delete**.
- 7. To edit the position of the light source in relation to the light fixture, specify the X, Y and Z coordinates in the *Light Position* area.
 Coordinates are measured from the bottom center of the fixture. The small red box in the preview window indicates the current position of the light source. Changing the X value moves the light source left or right. Selecting Middle positions the light in the center of the fixture, and selecting Minimum

or Maximum positions it on the left or right side. If you select Custom you can enter a specific value in the adjacent edit box which is relative to the center position. For example, entering -3 moves the light source 3" left from the center. Changing the Y value moves the light source forward or backward. Selecting Minimum brings the light source all the way forward, and selecting Maximum moves it to the back of the fixture. Changing the Z value moves the light source up or down. Selecting Minimum positions the light source at the bottom of the fixture, while selecting Maximum positions it at the top of the fixture.

8. To edit the orientation of the light source, edit the *Tilt up/down* and *Tilt left/right* values. You may want to do this if your light fixture is angled a certain way. For example, if you have adjustable track lighting, and each fixture is angled at 45 degrees, you will probably want to change the tilt of the light source to 45 degrees as well, so that the light shines at a 45-degree angle instead of straight down.

Tilt up/down. The angle of the light beam relative to the floor. A 0-degree tilt means that the light shines straight down.

Tilt left/right. The rotation of the light source left or right.

9. Once you've specified the properties, click **OK**.

Turning a Light On or Off

By default, lights are on when you insert them. You can virtually turn lights on and off in one of two ways:

Turn the light on/off directly:

- 1. Select the light fixture in your drawing.
- 2. Right-click and select Light On or Light Off.

Edit the light's properties:

- 1. Select the light fixture.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Select the **Lights** tab.

4. To turn the light on or off, click the eye icon next to the light source name.

🐞 🐞 Light is turned on

- 🚕 Light is turned off
- 5. Click **OK**.

Changing the Way a Light Fixture Looks

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to apply different colors or materials to different parts of a light fixture. For example, you may want to change the color of a lamp shade.

To change the look of a light fixture:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the light fixture is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply.
- 4. Click on the component you want to apply the material to. Materials are applied separately to the individual parts of the light fixture.
- 5. When you are finished applying materials, right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting a Light Fixture

You can delete a light fixture in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a light fixture:

- 1. Select the fixture.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Chapter 14: Terrain

Terrain

By default, a basic 160' x 160' grass terrain is displayed in the drawing area. You can edit the terrain's size, base level, mesh spacing and contour display. You can also select a different material to apply to the terrain when viewing in Rendered and Rendered Outline display mode.

To recreate the topography of your lot, you can add Hills, Valleys, Berms, Trenches, Plateaus or Slopes to the existing terrain.

Alternatively you can use the Terrain Import Wizard to import data from a site recorder file. This instantly creates a Triangulated Irregular Network (TIN) mesh that accurately depicts the contours of your building site.

If you do not have a site recorder file to import, you can convert the standard terrain to a TIN mesh and then create contours by adding spot points to the mesh.

Once you've modeled the terrain, you can create sidewalks and driveways using the Paths tool, or create a patio with the Pads tool. To help control sloped areas, you may want to insert a Retaining Wall.

If you would like your property lines and building setbacks to be represented in your plan, just use the Site Boundary tool to define the outline of your lot.

Terrain Modeling

Using different Terrain tools you can recreate the topography of the lot your home will be built on. By default, a basic $160' \times 160'$ grass terrain is displayed in the drawing area. You can edit the terrain's size, base level, and mesh spacing. In 2D view, only the boundary of the terrain is shown (you may need to zoom out to see it). In 3D view, the terrain is

displayed as a 3D object. You can choose whether or not you want to display the terrain boundary.

You add hills, berms, plateaus, and slopes to your terrain to create a realistic-looking building site. When you add these features to the terrain, contour lines appear on the terrain in 2D view, and the terrain updates in 3D view to reflect the changes that you have made to it.

Alternatively, you can convert the standard terrain to a Triangulated Irregular Network (TIN) mesh and create contours by adding spot level points to the mesh. If you have a site recorder file on hand, you can also import site data from that file to instantly create a TIN mesh.

If you change your mind you can revert to the standard terrain using the Reset Terrain tool.

Terrain Settings

By default, a basic 160' x 160' grass terrain is displayed in the drawing area. By default, the terrain is set to cut around the building. You can control how the terrain cuts around the building. You can edit the terrain's size, base level, and mesh spacing. In 2D view, only the boundary of the terrain is shown (you may need to zoom out to see it). In 3D view, a grass material is applied to the terrain for a realistic effect. You can choose whether or not you want to display the terrain boundary, and choose a different material to apply to the terrain in Rendered display mode. If you add features such as hills and slopes to the terrain, or create a TIN mesh with varying spot level points, contour lines appear on the terrain in 2D view. You can control the interval at which contour lines appear, or disable contours if preferred.

If your terrain is a TIN mesh, you can control the smoothness of the contour lines, and control the display of the labels that appear on the contour lines. You can turn the terrain off at any time if necessary.

Cutting the Terrain Around the Building

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the standard terrain in every new project is set to cut around the building instead of through it. You can specify the building location that you want the terrain to cut around, or force the terrain to cut through the building if you prefer. These settings apply to both the standard terrain and TIN meshes.

To define how the terrain cuts around the building:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Terrain** in the left pane.
- To force the terrain to cut around the building, enable the Auto-cut terrain around building check box. If you want the terrain to cut through the building, disable this check box.
- To specify the building location that you want the terrain to cut around, click the Select Building Location to Cut Around drop box, then select the desired location.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Defining the Size of the Terrain

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, a 160' x 160' terrain is displayed in the drawing area. You can edit the length and width of the terrain to suit your needs.

To define the size of the terrain:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

🗐 🗟 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Ter**-**rain** in the left pane.
- 3. To change the overall size of the terrain, enter the desired values in the **Length** and **Width** edit boxes.
- 4. Click OK.

Note: Length and width settings are not available if the terrain is currently a TIN mesh.

Defining the Grade Level of the Terrain

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite You can define the elevation at which the base of the terrain sits by editing the terrain's base level in your program settings. This effectively raises or lowers the terrain when viewing in 3D. The base level is also the reference point from which topographical features like hills and berms are measured. The Grade level also applies to TIN meshes.

To define the grade level of the terrain:

1. Select **Settings > Document Settings** or click

🛛 🗟 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Terrain** in the left pane.
- To change the level at which the base of the terrain sits, type the desired value in the Grade Level edit box. This value is measured from 0.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Defining the Terrain Mesh Spacing

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When viewing the terrain in Hidden Line or Rendered Outline display mode in 2D Plan view, or in any display mode other than Rendered mode in 3D view, a mesh is displayed on the surface of the terrain to help you visualize the contours of the terrain in these display modes. You can edit the spacing between terrain mesh lines.

To define the terrain mesh spacing:

1. Select **Settings > Document Settings** or click



🙀 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Terrain** in the left pane.
- 3. Type the desired spacing between mesh lines in the **Mesh Spacing** edit box. A smaller mesh spacing will show a higher level of detail than a larger mesh spacing.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Note: The Mesh Spacing setting is not available if the current terrain is a TIN mesh.

Controlling the Display of Terrain Contours

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you add features such as hills and slopes to the terrain, or create a TIN mesh with varying spot level points, contour lines appear on the terrain in 2D view. You can control the interval at which contour lines appear, specify the elevation of the first contour, or disable contours if preferred.

To control the display of terrain contours:

- Select Settings > Document Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Terrain** in the left pane.
- To display contours on your terrain, enable the Show Contours check box. If you do not want to display contours, disable this check box.
- 4. In the **Start** edit box, enter the elevation of the first contour.
- 5. In the **Interval** check box, enter the desired spacing between contours.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Note: If the current terrain is TIN mesh, you can also control the labels that appear on contour lines.

Selecting a Material for the Terrain

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, a grass texture is applied to the terrain in Rendered and Rendered Outline display mode. You can apply a different material to the terrain if you want. For example, you may want to display a sandy, snowy or concrete terrain.

To select a material for the terrain:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click



on the Settings toolbar.

2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Terrain** in the left pane.

- Click <u>Select...</u> in the Material area, then make your selection in the Materials dialog and click OK. A preview of the selected texture is displayed on the Terrain settings page.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Specifying Line Style Settings for the Terrain

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the terrain resides on the Terrain layer, and adopts the color, line type and line weight assigned to that layer. You can override the layer settings and apply a different line style settings to the terrain lines.

To specify line style settings for the terrain:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

🙀 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Terrain** in the left pane.
- 3. In the *Material* area, select the desired color, line type and line weight.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding the Terrain Boundary Line

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, when viewing the terrain in 2D view, the outline of the terrain is displayed. You can disable the display of the boundary line if you want. This setting is available for both the standard terrain and for TIN meshes.

To display or hide the terrain boundary line:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

🕙 🐼 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Terrain** in the left pane.
- 3. In the *Terrain Mesh* area, check or uncheck the **Show Boundary** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Turning the Terrain On and Off

You can hide the terrain from view and display it again whenever you want using the View Filter.

To turn the terrain on or off:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Elements on Terrain tab.
- Click the eye icon next to the **Terrain** option. The eye closes.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Hills & Valleys

You can add hills to your terrain with a single mouse click. You can control the height of a hill as well as its peak shape. Generally, the diameter of the hill base is the same as the hill height. You can insert multiple hills together to create one larger hill. To create a valley, simply specify a negative height when using the Hills/Valleys tool.

Creating Hills and Valleys

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add hills to your terrain with a single mouse click. You can control the height of a hill as well as its peak shape. Generally, the diameter of the hill base is the same as the hill height. You can insert multiple hills together to create one larger hill. Also, if you insert hills next to other terrain elements, like plateaus or slopes, the elements will automatically blend together.

To insert a hill or valley:

- Select Insert > Terrain > Hills/Valleys, or click _ 4 on the Terrain toolbar.
- 2. In the **Hills/Valleys** dialog, specify the height of the hill in the **Height** edit box. Entering a negative value will create a valley.
- 3. Using the **Zenith** slider control, select a peak shape for the hill.
- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. Click to insert the hill. You can insert multiple hills if you like.
- 6. Right-click and select Finish.

Note: The Hills/Valleys tool cannot be used on TIN meshes.

Moving a Hill

You can move a hill by clicking and dragging it. **To move a hill:**

- 1. Click in the center of the hill to select it.
- 2. Click and drag the center grip to move the hill, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Height or Shape of a Hill

To edit the height or peak shape of a hill:

- 1. Click in the center of the hill to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- Edit the properties in the Hills/Valleys dialog.
- 4. Click OK.

Deleting a Hill

You can remove a hill in a couple of easy steps. **To remove a hill:**

- 1. Click in the center of the hill to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Berms and Trenches

A berm is a mound or bank of soil without formal sides. You often see large berms on the sides of highways, which are used for noise control.

To insert a berm you simply select two points that define the length of the top of the berm. You can control the height and peak shape of the berm. To create a trench, simply specify a negative height when using the Berms/Trenches tool.

Creating Berms and Trenches

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A berm is a mound or bank of soil without formal sides. You often see large berms on the sides of highways, which are used for noise control. On a reduced scale, a natural berm can provide some interesting benefits in a backyard landscape.

Climate control. Berms act as windbreaks, channeling air flow. Berms can create a warmer microclimate or direct cooling breezes.

Privacy. A berm can be a "friendly fence" in the back yard or between your house and a sidewalk.

Vertical interest. You can add variety and texture to your gardens with berms, change the view from your outdoor sitting areas, or even hide eyesores with them.

Noise control. A berm can cut down on traffic noise if you live on a busy street or near a schoolyard.

Berms may be shored with stone, bricks, or timbers, and planted with groundcovers, perennials, annuals, trees, etc.

You can control the height of a berm as well as its peak shape.

To create a berm/trench:

- Select Insert > Terrain > Berms/Trenches, or click and on the Terrain toolbar.
- 2. In the **Berms/Trenches** dialog, specify the height of the berm in the **Height** edit box. Entering a negative value creates a trench.
- 3. Using the **Zenith** slider control, select a peak shape for the berm.
- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. Select two points to define the length of the top of the berm. The berm will be created downward and outward from this line.



6. Right-click and select Finish.

Note: The Berms/Trenches tool cannot be used on TIN meshes.

Moving a Berm

To move a berm:

- Click in the center of the berm to select it. A blue grip is displayed in the middle of the berm's central line.
- 2. Click and drag the central blue grip to move the berm, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Berm

To rotate a berm or trench:

 Click in the center of the berm to select it. Grips are displayed along the berm's central line.

- 2. Click and drag a grip to rotate the berm around the selected point.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

Stretching a Berm

To stretch a berm:

- Click in the center of the berm to select it. Grips are displayed at either end of the berm's central line.
- 2. Click and drag an end grip to stretch the berm, then release your mouse button. You can move the end point to any position on the screen.

Editing the Height or Shape of a Berm

You can edit the height of a berm, or the depth of a trench, as well as its peak shape.

To edit a berm's height or shape:

- 1. Click in the center of the berm to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

Deleting a Berm

To delete a berm:

- 1. Click in the center of the berm to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Plateaus

A plateau is a relatively large, flat area of land situated above the adjacent land. Adding a plateau to your terrain involves clicking a few points to define the shape of the plateau. You can control the height of the plateau as well as its peak shape.

Creating Plateaus

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A plateau is a relatively large, flat area of land situated above the adjacent land. Adding a plateau to your terrain involves clicking a few points to define the shape of the plateau. You can control the height of the plateau as well as its peak shape. Note that if you insert a plateau in close proximity to other terrain elements, such as hills, the elements automatically blend together.

To create a plateau:

- Select Insert > Terrain > Plateaus, or click
 on the Terrain toolbar.
- 2. In the **Plateaus** dialog, specify the height of the plateau in the Height edit box. Entering a negative value creates an excavated area.
- 3. Using the **Zenith** slider control, select a general shape for the plateau. The pointier the shape, the steeper the sides will be.
- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. In the drawing area, select points to define the outline of the top of the plateau. Note that the last point picked always closes back to the start point, so you don't have to pick the start point again. The plateau will be created downward and outward from your outline.



6. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: The Plateaus tool cannot be used on TIN meshes.

Moving a Plateau

To move a plateau:

- 1. Click in the center of the plateau to select it.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.

3. Click and drag to move the plateau, then release your mouse button.

Stretching a Plateau

To stretch a plateau:

- 1. Click in the center of the plateau to select it.
- 2. Click on the edge of the central outline that you want to stretch. A blue grip is displayed on the selected edge.
- 3. Click and drag the edge to stretch the plateau, then release your mouse button.

Reshaping a Plateau

To reshape a plateau:

- Click in the center of the plateau to select it. Corner grips are displayed on the central outline of the plateau.
- 2. Click and drag a corner grip to stretch the shape, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Height or Peak Shape of a Plateau

To edit the height or peak shape of a plateau:

- 1. Click in the center of the plateau to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the properties in the **Plateaus** dialog.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Plateau

To delete a plateau:

- 1. Click in the center of the plateau to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Slopes

A slope is an area of land with a natural incline. It is often common practice to slope the land away from the sides of a house so that water drains away from it rather than towards it. When you create a slope, you select two points: the first point is the starting point of the slope, and the second point determines the length and direction of the slope.

Creating Slopes

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A slope is an area of land with a natural incline. It is often common practice to slope the land away from the sides of a house so that water drains away from it rather than towards it. When you create a slope, you select two points: the first point is the starting point of the slope, and the second point determines the length and direction of the slope. If the slope comes into contact with other terrain elements, like hills and plateaus, the elements automatically blend together.

To create a slope in your terrain:

- Select Insert > Terrain > Slopes, or click 2 on the Terrain toolbar.
- 2. In the **Slopes** dialog, enable the **Height** button.
- 3. In the **Height** edit box, enter the desired height for the top of the slope. Note that slopes are built from the top surface of the terrain up.
- 4. Enable the **Angle** button.
- In the Angle edit box, enter an angle (in degrees) for the slope. The higher the value, the steeper the slope.
- 6. Click **OK**.
- 7. Select a start point for the slope. The slope will incline from this point. Note that the sides of the slope will extend to the very edges of the terrain.
- 8. Move your cursor in the direction you want the slope to run. A stretchable arrow is displayed.



- 9. When the arrow is pointing in the right direction and is the desired length, click to insert the slope. The longer the arrow, the more gradual the slope will be. A shorter arrow will result in a steeper slope. Note that if the point you pick is not on the edge of the terrain, the land will level off at the top of the slope.
- 10. Right-click and select Finish.

Note: The Slopes tool cannot be used on TIN meshes.

Note: If you insert another slope, and that slope comes into contact with an existing slope, the new slope will insert on top of the existing slope.

Moving a Slope

To move a slope:

- 1. Click in the center of the slope. The central arrow is displayed.
- 2. Click and drag the arrow's center blue grip to move the slope, then release your mouse button.

Stretching a Slope

To stretch a slope:

- Click in the center of the slope. The central arrow is displayed, and grips are displayed at either end of it.
- 2. Click and drag an end grip to stretch the arrow, then release your mouse button. Note that you can also rotate the arrow by selecting a different position for it while clicking and dragging. This changes the direction of the slope.

Editing the Height of a Slope

To edit the height of a slope:

- 1. Click in the center of the slope to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Slopes** dialog, enable the **Height** radio button.
- 4. Edit the height in the **Height** edit box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Editing the Angle of a Slope

To edit the angle (steepness) of a slope:

- 1. Click in the center of the slope to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Slopes** dialog, enable the **Angle** radio button.
- 4. Edit the height in the **Angle** edit box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Slope

To delete a slope:

- Click in the center of the slope to select it. The central arrow is displayed.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

TIN Mesh

A Triangulated Irregular Network (TIN) mesh is a representation of the surface of the terrain based on a set of points. If you have a site recorder file on hand, you can import spot levels from that file to instantly create a TIN mesh in the drawing area.

Also, as an alternative to using Terrain tools such as Hills/Valleys, Slopes and Plateaus, you can convert your standard terrain to a TIN mesh and then add spot level points to the mesh to create contours in the terrain. This can help you accurately depict the topography of your building site by illustrating changes in elevation across the site.

If you change your mind about using a TIN mesh, you can revert back to the standard terrain using the Reset Terrain tool.

Importing Site Data

Construction Suite only

You can use the Terrain Import Wizard to import spot levels from a site recorder file. When you import site data, the program reads in the X, Y and Z coordinate values for each point in the file.

You can import site data from the following types of files:

- TXT (delimited text file)
- CSV (Comma Separated Value file)
- GPX (GPS eXchange Format)
- XYZ (Coordinates file)
- YXZ (Coordinates file)
- PRM (Parameter file)
- PNT (Point file)
- AUF (Autodesk Uploadable File)
- NEZ (Northing, Easting and Elevation data)

Once you have stepped through the Wizard, a Triangulated Irregular Network (TIN) mesh is instantly created in the drawing area that accurately depicts the contours of your building site.



Browse...

To import site data:

ard, click

1. Select Insert > Terrain > Import Site Data, or

click 🗟 🗟 on the Terrain toolbar.

2. On the first screen of the Terrain Import Wiz-

Browse...

- 224 -

- In the **Open** dialog, click the drop box next to the **File Name** edit box and select the file type you are looking for.
- 4. Locate and select the site recorder file that you want to import, then click **Open**. The file is loaded into the **Terrain Import Wizard**.

Terrain	Import Wizard					
Selec "3up	t Terrain File por່ກ່າວ "ໄປແກ່ນລະດຳໃຫ້	es (eg. tx,	US4,7X92,781L.)			
Sele	ect a data file to Import:					
	C:\Terrain File\grid_con	ntour.xyz				
Sele	ect the data Format:					
	Format:		Delimiter:			_
	XYZ	•	Comma			•
	Start Import at Row:					
	1					
Pre	view:			_		_
	x			Y	Z	
	586079.838635 48192 586072.872651 48192	90.377173 97.172811	227.712000 0)		
	586062.246395 48193	07.433115	227.362000 0			
	586052.441106 48193	16.946309	227.134000 0			
	586042.355204 48193	26.795675	226.750000 0)		
				< Bad	k	Nex
Terrain Im	uport Wizard		9 2)		
Select T						
Suppo	rt for Text based files (eg. txt,	csv, xyz, etc.)				
Select	a data file to Import:					
C	:\Terrain File\grid_contour.xyz				Browse	
Select	the data Format:					
For	rmat:	Comma	•			
Sta	art Import at Row:					
1						
Preview	w:					
x			Y Z			_
5	86079.838635 4819290.377173 86072.872651 4819297.172811	227.712000 0 227.557000 0				
5	86062.246395 4819307.433115 86052.441106 4819316.946309	227.362000 0 227.134000 0				
5	86042.355204 4819326.795675	226.750000 0				
			< Back Next	t >	C	ancel

- 5. Click the **Format** drop box, then select the format of the data that you are importing.
- 6. Click the **Delimiter** drop box, then select the method used to separate data in the imported file. Choices are **Comma**, **Tab**, **Space**, **Semicolon**, or **Bar/Pipe**. If you are not sure what type of delimiter was used in the file, select the option that creates the most optimal result in the preview window. For example, if you are importing an XYZ file, you want to make sure that there is a value displayed in each column (X, Y and Z). If the wrong delimiter is selected, all values may appear grouped into one column (e.g. the X column), and the points will not be input properly.

Y	z	
4819290.377173	227.712000	0
4819297.172811	227.557000	0
4819307.433115	227.362000	0
4819316.946309	227.134000	0
4819326.795675	226.750000	0
	Y 4819290.377173 4819297.172811 4819307.433115 4819316.946309 4819326.795675	Y Z 4819290.377173 227.712000 4819297.172811 227.557000 4819307.433115 227.362000 4819316.946309 227.134000 4819326.795675 226.750000

X	Y	Z	
586079.838635	4819290.377173	227.712000	0
586072.872651	4819297.172811	227.557000	0
586062.246395	4819307.433115	227.362000	0
586052.441106	4819316.946309	227.134000	0
586042.355204	4819326.795675	226.750000	0

Next >

 If you want to start importing data from a row other than row 1, enter the row number in the Start Import at Row edit box.

8. Click

Yards).

- Next >
- On the next screen, click the Units drop box and select the unit of measure used in the file that you are importing (Millimeters, Centimeters, Meters, Inches, Feet or

Terrai	n Import Wi	zard					
Unit: Se	s and Speci lect the Uni	ial Items ts of measu	re used as	well as I	tems to	ignore	
Se	elect the units	being used in	the data fi	le:			
	XY Units:			Junits:			
	Centimete	rs	-	Centimeter	rs		Ŧ
Ke	www.orde in de	ecription field	to innore (s	enerated		icoloo '-')	
N.C	cynords in de	sciptorriteta	to ignore (a	eperateur	y a sem		
Pr	eview:						
	x	Y		Z			
	586079.8	38635 48192	90.377173	227.712	000 0		
	586072.8	72651 48192	97.172811	227.557	0 000		
	586062.2	46395 48193	07.433115	227.362	0 000		
	586042.3	55204 48193	26.795675	226.750	000 0		
				_			_
					< Bad	<	ve:
Terrain I	Import Wizard				8		
Units a	and Special Iter	ns					
Selec	ct the Units of m	neasure used as	well as Items	s to ignore			
Selec	ct the units being	used in the data fi	le:				
X	(Y Units:	Z	Units:		_		
l	Centimeters	•	Centimeters		•		
Кеуи	words in description	on field to ignore (s	eperated by a	semicolon ';')			
Denti	·						
Previ	v.	v	7				
-	^ 586079.838635	4819290.377173	227.712000	0			
	586072.872651	4819297.172811	227.557000	0			
	586052.246395 586052.441106	4819307.433115 4819316.946309	227.362000	0			
	586042.355204	4819326.795675	226.750000	0			
L							

10. Certain points in the file may be there as a reference or comment only, and should not be included in the import. Such points are

usually accompanied by text that distinguishes them from the measured spot levels. For example, a point may be labeled as a *benchmark* rather than a measured spot level. If the file contains points that you do not want to import, enter a keyword that identifies them in the file. If you are specifying multiple keywords, separate them with a semicolon (;). When the program is importing the file, any lines containing the specified keywords will be ignored.

11. Click Next > Next > . The

points in the data file are imported into the Wizard. A preview of the resulting mesh is displayed on the next screen. You can zoom and pan in the preview window using the controls below the preview window.

The overall dimensions of the mesh (**Width** and **Height**) are displayed to the left of the preview. The elevation of the highest point on the mesh (the highest *Z* coordinate) is displayed in the **Max Z** box, and the lowest point (the lowest *Z* coordinate) is displayed in the **Min Z** box.

If the resulting values do not look realistic,

< Back < Back click to

select input units that result in correct measurements. Note that the measurements are displayed in the unit of measure selected in your program settings, not necessarily the unit of measure used in the imported file.



- 12. To adjust the base level from which spot levels are measured so that the mesh is inserted at the Base Level defined for the terrain in your program settings, edit the value in the Grade Level edit box. For example, if the Min Z value in your file is 20', and the Base Level in your program settings is set to **0**", you might set the Grade Level value to -20' so that the bottom of the mesh sits at the 0" Base Level when it is inserted. If instead you were to specify a Z Offset of 0", the mesh would virtually be inserted 20' in the air when viewing in 3D.
- 13. If you want to change the angle of the mesh, enter the desired angle in the Angle edit box,

or click the Pick Angle button next to the Angle edit box and pick two points in the preview window to define the angle. If you are picking points to define the angle, the Angle by Reference dialog appears and reports the angle that you

defined. You can edit the angle here if you want.

14. If you want to import only a portion of the

ı	wai	π	ω	1
		1		
	1. 1	.		

Set mesh, click Set under the Crop Box option, then click two points diagonally in the preview window to define a box around the portion that you want to import. A blue box is displayed around the selected portion. To remove the crop box,



Specify the point on the mesh that you want 15. to be attached to your cursor when you are inserting the mesh:

To select a specific insertion point on the

Set mesh, click Set under the Insertion Point option, then select a point on the mesh that you would like to serve as the insertion point. A green circle is displayed at the selected point. This is the point that will be attached to your cursor when you insert the mesh in your drawing area. To remove the defined insertion point, Clear

To move the insertion point to the origin specified in the original mesh file, enable the Move to origin check box.

Clear

click

If you do not select an insertion point or move it to the origin, your cursor will be attached to the center of the mesh when you insert it.



mesh is attached to your cursor.

17. Position the mesh in the drawing area, then click to insert it.

Note: If you import site data to create a TIN mesh and save the project as a version 7.2 file, the mesh will not be saved in that file. It will revert back to the standard, flat terrain.

Converting the Terrain to a TIN Mesh

Construction Suite only

A Triangulated Irregular Network (TIN) mesh is a representation of the surface of the terrain based on a set of points. As an alternative to using Terrain tools such as Hills/Valleys, Slopes and Plateaus, you can convert your standard terrain to a Triangulated Irregular Network (TIN) mesh and then add spot level points to the mesh to create contours in the terrain. This can help you accurately depict the topography of your building site by illustrating changes in elevation across the site.

You can also convert a terrain that has had features such as hills and slopes added to it. In this case, spot level points and contours are displayed within the boundary of the TIN mesh.

To convert the terrain to a TIN mesh:

- 1. Select Insert > Terrain > Convert Terrain to TIN.
- 2. In the **Convert Terrain** dialog, click **Yes** to confirm that you want to convert the terrain to a TIN mesh.

Note: If you convert the terrain to a TIN mesh and save the project as a version 7.2 file, the mesh will not be saved in that file. It will revert back to the standard, flat terrain.

Adding Spot Level Points to a TIN Mesh

Construction Suite only

If you have converted the terrain to a TIN mesh, or have imported data from a site recorder file to create a TIN mesh, you can use the Spot Points tool to add spot level points to the mesh. Adding spot level points with different elevations creates contours on the mesh. This is a great alternative to using terrain tools such as Hills/Valleys, Slopes and Plateaus. Even adding only a few key points can result in a fairly good representation of your building site.

As you are positioning a spot point on the mesh you can view its current position by looking at the X and Y coordinates displayed on the Commander, and specify the point's Z coordinate, or elevation. You can also edit the point's elevation after insertion.

To add spot level points to a TIN mesh:

- Select Insert > Terrain > Spot Point, or click
 on the Terrain toolbar. A spot point is attached to your cursor, and the Commander displays X, Y and Z edit boxes.
- To specify the elevation of the spot point, type a value and press the Tab key. This value is measured from the base of the terrain and appears in the Z edit box as you type it.
- With the Z value defined, position the spot point on the mesh. As you move it around, the values in the X and Y edit boxes update the display the point's current position. You can type directly in the X and Y edit boxes if you want.
- 4. Click to insert the spot point. Contours are created around the inserted point. Each contour is marked with elevation text.





Editing the Elevation of Spot Level Points

If you have used the Spot Points tool to add a spot level point to a TIN mesh, you can edit the elevation of that point after it has been inserted. When you edit the elevation of a spot level point, the contours update to reflect the change in the mesh.

To edit the elevation of a spot level point:

- 1. Click on the spot point to select it.
- Right-click and select **Properties**. The current elevation of the point is displayed in the **Spot Points** dialog.



JE Spot Poin	ts	2 23
Level Relativ	ve to Base Te	errain
Level:	2'-0''	V
(OK	Cancel

- 3. Edit the value in the **Level** edit box to adjust the elevation of the point. The value is measured from the base of the terrain.
- 4. Click **OK**. The mesh is updated.

Adjusting the Smoothness of Mesh Contours

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have imported site data to create a TIN mesh or have converted the terrain to a TIN mesh and added spot level points, you can control the smoothness of the mesh's contour lines. Fine smoothing creates gentle, rounded curves, while a more coarse setting creates more angular lines.

To adjust the smoothness of mesh contours:

- 1. Select Settings > Program Settings.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Terrain** in the left pane.
- In the right pane, click and drag the TIN Smoothing slider to the desired setting. Fine smoothing creates gentle, rounded curves, while a more coarse setting creates more angular lines.





4. Click **OK**.

Note: The TIN Smoothing setting is not available if the current terrain is not a TIN mesh.

Controlling the Display of Terrain Contour Labels

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite When you import site data to create a TIN mesh or add spot level points to a TIN mesh, the resulting contour lines are marked with labels that indicate the elevation of each contour. You can turn contour labels on or off, and select a text style to apply to the labels if they are turned on.

To control the display of terrain contour labels:

- 1. Select Settings > Program Settings.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Terrain** in the left pane.
- 3. In the right pane, enable the **Show Labels** check box if you want to display contour labels, or disable the check box if you do not want to display labels.
- To select a text style for the labels, click Text Style... below the Show Labels check box. Make a selection in the Text Styles dialog, then click OK.
- 5. Click **OK** to apply your changes.

Resetting the Terrain

Construction Suite only

If you have imported site data to create a TIN mesh or converted the standard terrain to a TIN mesh, you can use the Reset Terrain tool to remove the TIN mesh from your drawing and re-insert a standard, flat terrain. The size and properties of the terrain are determined by your program settings.

To reset the terrain:

 Select Insert > Terrain > Reset Terrain. The TIN mesh is removed, and the terrain is reset.

Paths & Driveways

Sidewalks, pathways and driveways add to the overall aesthetics of your landscape and provide access to different areas of your property. Drawing them with the Paths tool is easy — just select a start point, then point and click in the direction you want the pathway to run. Continue picking points to add segments if you want.

The catalog includes an excellent selection of pathway materials including wood, sand, gravel, concrete, brick and asphalt. You can even create a forest path! A number of different widths are available, but you can create a custom width if you want.

Creating Paths, Sidewalks and Driveways

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The catalog contains a wide variety of path types, including boardwalks, sand paths, gravel paths, brick paths, and driveways. The width and thickness of a path is determined by the path's properties in the catalog. You control the length and direction of the path as you draw it. Dimensions are displayed as you draw each segment.

To create a path:

- Select Insert > Terrain > Paths, or click on the Terrain toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the path type you want to insert.
- 3. Select a start point for your path. Note that your insertion point is on the center line of the path.
- 4. Move your cursor in the direction you want the path to run, then select an endpoint for the path. You can continue selecting points in any direction to add more sections to the path if you want.



Tip: To create a smooth curve in the path, click several points with a short distance between each point.

5. Double-click to finish, or right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: By default, all paths hug the terrain they are inserted on, but you can disable the Hug Terrain option in the path's properties if you want.

Moving a Path Element

You can move an entire path using the Move tool. **To move a path:**

- 1. Click on the path to select it.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and drag the path to where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Stretching a Path Element

You can lengthen or shorten a sidewalk, pathway or driveway by clicking and dragging its end grips, or using the Stretch tool. If you use the click-and-drag method, the path is constrained to its current direction when you stretch it. If you use the Stretch tool you can rotate the path while stretching. You can also use the Commander when the Stretch tool is active.

To stretch a path by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the path to select it.
- Click and hold your mouse button over one of the path's end grips. The Lengthen cursor is displayed +→+→.
- 3. Drag to stretch the path, then release your mouse button.

To stretch a path with the Stretch tool:

- 1. Click on the path to select it.
- Right-click and select Stretch. Your cursor becomes the Stretch cursor * ***.**.
- 3. Click and hold your mouse button over one of the path's end grips, drag to stretch the path in any direction, then release your mouse button. If you want to enter a precise stretch distance or direction, click on the end grip, specify the desired distance and
direction in the Commander, then press **Enter**.

Curving a Path Element

You can curve a path segment using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the path to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve a path by clicking and dragging:

- Click on the path to select it. If the path has multiple segments, make sure you click on the specific segment you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the path to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a path to a selected point:

- Click on the path to select it. If the path has multiple segments, make sure you click on the specific segment you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The path automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Editing the Thickness or Width of a Path Element

You can edit the thickness of your path material or the path's overall width.

To edit the thickness or width of a path:

- Select the path. If the path has multiple segments, you do not have to select them all. Property changes affect the whole path.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. To edit the thickness of the path, enter a value in the **Thickness** edit box.
- 4. To edit the width of the path, enter a value in the **Width** edit box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Applying Different Materials to Path Elements

You can apply a different material to any path, sidewalk or driveway using the quick and handy Materials Paintbrush.

To apply a material to a path element:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the path is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply. You may want to select the *Landscape* option from the **Filter** drop box to display only landscaping materials.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting a Path Element

You can delete a sidewalk, pathway or driveway in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a path:

- 1. Click on the path to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Pads

Creating a pad (for a patio, for example) involves clicking a few points to define the outline of the pad using the Pads tool. You can apply a different material to the pad after it has been inserted.

By default, pads hug the terrain they are inserted on. If the terrain is not flat where you are inserting the pad, you may want to turn off the pad's Hug Terrain option to make the pad flat and have it positioned at the Terrain Base Level specified in your Terrain Settings.

Creating a Pad

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Pads tool to insert a concrete or brick pad directly on your terrain. By drawing the outline of the pad, you control its precise size and shape. You can use the Materials Paintbrush to apply a different color or material to the pad after it has been inserted.

To create a pad:

- Select Insert > Terrain > Pads, or click
 on the Terrain toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the type of pad that you want to insert.
- 3. Select a start point for the pad.
- Continue selecting points to define the outline of the pad. Note that the last point picked always closes back to the start point, so you don't have to pick the start point again.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: By default, pads hug the terrain they are inserted on. If the terrain is not flat where you are inserting the pad, you may want to turn off the pad's Hug Terrain option to make the pad flat and have it positioned at the Terrain Base Level specified in your Terrain Settings.

Disabling the Hug Terrain Option

Disabling the Hug Terrain option ensures an element remains flat regardless of any slopes in the terrain, and positions the element at the Base Level specified in your terrain settings.

To disable the Hug Terrain option:

- 1. Click on the edge of the element to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. On the Basic property page, uncheck the **Hug Terrain?** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Moving a Pad

You can move a pad using the Move tool.

To move an entire pad:

- 1. Click on the edge of the pad to select it.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and drag the pad to move it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Pad

You can rotate a pad easily using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a pad:

- 1. Click on the edge of the pad to select it.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Position your pointer over the corner grip you want to rotate the pad around.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the pad, then release your mouse button.

Resizing a Pad

You can resize a pad by stretching one of its edges.

To resize a pad by stretching it:

- 1. Click on the edge of the pad to select it.
- 3. Click and drag to stretch the pad, then release your mouse button.

Reshaping a Pad

You can change the shape of a pad by clicking and dragging its corners.

To reshape a pad:

- Click on the edge of the pad to select it. A grab handle is displayed at each corner.
- 2. Click and drag a corner grip to stretch the pad.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

Curving a Pad

You can curve the edge of a pad using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the edge to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve a pad edge by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the pad edge that you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a pad edge to a selected point:

- 1. Click on the edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The edge automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Editing the Thickness of a Pad

You can edit the thickness of a pad on the pad's Basic property page.

To edit the thickness of a pad:

- 1. Click on the edge of the pad to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Pads** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- 4. Enter the desired thickness in the **Thickness** edit box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Applying a Different Material to a Pad

You can use the Materials Paintbrush to quickly apply a different color or material to a pad. For example, you may want to change a patio to stone.

To apply a material to a pad:

- 1. Display your model in 3D view and make sure the pad is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply.
- 4. Click on the pad surface. The material is immediately applied.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting a Pad

You can delete a pad in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a pad:**

- 1. Click on the edge of the pad to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Retaining Walls

A well-built retaining wall system can preserve the natural shape of your land, reinforce hills and slopes, and protect your home from possible landslides or soil erosion. Retaining walls can also be an attractive addition to a garden or the overall landscaping around your home.

Drawing retaining walls is easy — just point and click. Envisioneer automatically displays dimensions as you draw, and connects corners for you. Once inserted, any wall can be moved, rotated, lengthened, shortened, broken, curved or deleted. This lets you create the exact wall layout that you want.

The catalog contains wood, concrete and concrete block retaining walls in a variety of sizes. You can change the properties of walls, such as their thickness and appearance, as well as create custom walls.

Drawing Retaining Walls

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Drawing retaining walls is easy — just point and click. *Envisioneer* automatically displays dimensions as you draw, and connects corners for you.

To draw a retaining wall:

- Select Insert > Terrain > Retaining Walls, or click so on the Terrain toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog, select the wall type you want to insert.
- 3. Select a start point for the wall.
- 4. Move your cursor in the direction you want your wall to run. Its length is shown as you draw the wall.
- 5. When the wall is the length you want, click to set its endpoint.
- 6. Continue selecting points to add on to the wall if you want.
- 7. When you are done, right-click and select **Fin-ish**.

Moving Walls

You can move one or more walls by clicking and dragging them, or by editing the dynamic dimensions that appear on and near walls when you select a wall in your plan. When you move a wall, any walls attached to that wall move with it for a stretching effect.

To move walls by clicking and dragging:

- Click on the wall that you want to move. To move multiple walls, use Shift+click to select the remaining walls.
- Hover your pointer over the center grip on the currently selected wall to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag the wall to move it.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To move walls by editing dynamic dimensions:

- Click on the wall that you want to move. Dimensions appear on any walls that are attached to the selected wall, indicating the wall's distance from adjacent walls.
- 2. Click on the dimension that you want to change.
- In the Edit Dimension dialog, type the desired value for the dimension, then click OK. The dimension updates, and the wall is moved.





Rotating a Wall

You can use the Rotate tool to rotate a wall about a selected point.

To rotate a wall:

- 1. Select the wall.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Position your pointer over the point you want to rotate the wall around.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the wall, then release your mouse button.

Lengthening and Shortening Walls

You can lengthen or shorten a wall by clicking and dragging one of the wall's ends, or by editing the dynamic dimension that appears along its length. If you choose to lengthen or shorten a wall by clicking and dragging, and that wall is attached to other walls, the attached walls will not move or change. However, if you choose to lengthen or shorten a wall by editing dynamic dimensions, and that wall is attached to other walls, the attached walls will move along with it.

To lengthen or shorten a wall by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Select the wall. A grip is displayed at each wall end.
- Hover your pointer over the wall end you want to stretch. The Lengthen cursor is displayed +→+→.
- 3. Click and drag the wall end until it has reached the desired length.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To lengthen or shorten a wall by editing dynamic dimensions:

- 1. Select the wall.
- 2. Click on the dimension that appears along the wall's length.





3. In the **Edit Dimension** dialog, specify the desired length for the wall, then specify which end of the wall you want to stretch or retract by clicking one of the arrow buttons next to the length edit box.

Edit Dimension		?
Enter Distance:	26'-0"	-
O	Cancel	
Edit Dimension	ি হ Specify	
Enter Distance: 26'-0"	which wall end you	
OK Cancel	want to stretch	

4. Click **OK**.

Curving a Wall

You can curve a wall using the Curve tool. Once the tool is active, you can click and drag the wall to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve a wall by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click the wall to select it.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the wall to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a wall to a selected point:

- 1. Click the wall to select it.
- Right-click in and select Curve, or select Edit
 Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Select the point you want to curve to. The wall automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Breaking a Wall

You can break a wall into two or more segments using the Break tool. The segments can then be edited individually.

To break a wall:

- 1. Click the wall to select it.
- Right-click in the drawing area and select Break, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Break.
- 3. Click the point where you want to break the wall. This divides the wall into two segments that can be moved, stretched or manipulated individually.

Note: If the wall is a composite wall (framed wall + veneer), only the framed wall is broken.

Tip: To break a wall into specific lengths, use the Auto Break tool.

Tip: You can move a wall break by editing the wall's onscreen dimensions.

Editing the Width of a Wall

You can edit the width or thickness of a wall by making changes on the wall's Basic property page.

To edit the width of a wall:

- 1. Select the wall. You can select multiple walls using Shift+click if you want.
- 2. Right-click and select Properties, or select

Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

3. In the Walls dialog, select the Basic tab.

Name

Basi

Trim	Annearance	Line Work Qu	Jantitu	
	Appearance	Properties:	and diverse and the second	
	111	Wall Ty	pe	Fra
а	///	Exterior	Wall System	
t	1/	a - Widt	h	9 15/16"
Ĥ	1	Compor	nent Layout	Select
		Top E	dge	
		Туре		
		Level		User
	k	b · Wall	Height	18'-1 1/8
	4	Botton	Edge	
	17	Туре		
Ц		Framin	g Options	
		Frame A	s Load Bearing	
		Energy	, –	
		Include	in Calculations	
		Wall Ty	pe	
		Cavity F	R-Value	13.00

🖪 🔩 - 🎵

OK

- The thickness is displayed in the Width box and it is the sum of all of the components that make up a wall. Click on the Select button beside Component Layout.
- Each component will list its Width Under Size. If you want to change the size of a component, click on button beside Select Component.
- 3. The **Catalog Access** dialog box will appear listing all components. Select a component, right click and select Edit Element.
- The Component dialog box will appear. Under the Size tab, you can adjust the a-Width value for the component.
- 5. Click **OK** in all of the dialogs to confirm any new changes.

See Defining a Wall's Components on page 12.

WhatEditing the Height of a Wall

You can edit a wall's height on the wall's *Basic* property page.

To edit the height of a wall:

- 1. Select the wall. You can select multiple walls using Shift+click if you want.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Walls** dialog, select the **Basic** tab.
- 4. In the *Top Edge* area, select the **Level** option.
- 5. In the **Level** edit box, select either *By Location* (to be automatically set to the Building Location information) or *User Defined*.
- 6. If *User Defined* is selected, *b-Wall Height* edit box will appear. Type in a desired height for the wall.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Sloping a Wall

You can slope a wall by setting different heights for each end of the wall.

To slope a wall:

- 1. Select the wall.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Walls** dialog, select the Basic tab.
- To slope the top of the wall, select the **Type** option in the *Top Edge* area and set it to Slope. To slope the bottom of the wall, select the **Slope** option in the *Bottom Edge* area.
- 5. In the **Start Height** edit box, type the distance from the floor to the start point of the slope. Note that the green wall end marker on the diagram corresponds to the green wall end marker on the wall in your drawing. This way you know which end is which.
- In the End Height edit box, type the distance from the floor to the end point of the slope. Note that you do not need to enter a negative value to slope a wall bottom below floor level.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Stepping a Wall

You can step the top or bottom of a wall by simply editing the wall's properties. For example, you may want to create a stepped foundation to accommodate a sloped building lot.

To step a wall:

- 1. Select the wall.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Walls** dialog, select the **Basic** tab.
- 4. To step the top of the wall, select the **Step** option in the *Top Edge* area, under *Type*. To step the bottom of the wall, select the **Step** option in the *Bottom Edge* area.
- 5. In the **Start Height** edit box, type the distance from the floor to the start point of the step. Note that the green wall end marker on the diagram corresponds to the green wall end marker on the wall in your drawing. This way you know which end is which.
- In the End Height edit box, type the distance from the floor to the end point of the slope. Note that you do not need to enter a negative value to step a wall bottom below floor level.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Note: If you apply strip footings to stepped wall bottoms, the footings will automatically step also.

Applying Different Materials to Walls

You can apply different finishes to your walls using the handy Materials Paintbrush. The materials catalog contains an excellent selection of brick, concrete, wood and stone finishes.

To apply a material to a wall:

- 1. Display your model in 3D, and make sure the wall face you want to apply the material to is visible in the view.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.
- 3. In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply.

- Click on the wall face that you want to apply the material to. The material is immediately applied.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Deleting a Wall

You can delete a wall in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a wall:

- 1. Select the wall to delete. You can select multiple walls using Shift+click.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Note: If your model contains an automatic floor, the floor will be deleted if the wall you are deleting opens up the wall layout.

Property Lines

You may want to know where your property lines are, especially if you are working in a confined or unusually-shaped area. Lot lines and setbacks can be found on a survey plan or surveyor's certificate.

You can use the Site Boundary tool to define your building lot. A site boundary is a closed line that shows the legal property boundary (lot lines), and is annotated with bearing text, length text and peg numbers. You can specify setbacks as well, which define your building envelope.

To create a site boundary you just pick points to define the outline of the lot. The Commander is displayed as you draw, allowing you to enter each bearing precisely.

When drawing your site boundary, there are two ways of defining segment angles. The Reference Angle Method lets you define the direction of each segment by specifying an acute angle within a given quadrant (NW, NE, SW, SE). The Angle Bearing Method, which lets you specify a forward or back bearing measured clockwise from the North meridian. Once you've drawn your site boundary you can edit each segment individually if necessary to achieve the precise size and shape you need. You can also change the site boundary settings which include the line, text and peg styles used in the site boundary. **Note**: The site boundary appears only in 2D wireframe view.

Tip: You can put a fence along your lot lines to show where the lot lines are in 3D.

Creating a Site Boundary Using the Reference Angle Method

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When creating a site boundary using the Reference Angle Method, angles are measured using compass bearings and a reference angle. Each angle is measured within a given quadrant (NE, NW, SE or SW). The angle is the acute (less than 90°) angle from the North or South meridian as measured to the East or West. For example, the bearing N 90d00'00" E can be thought of as 90° east of North.

By default, the angle is specified using the degrees/minutes/seconds format, but you can choose to use decimal degrees if you prefer.

To create a site boundary with the Reference Angle Method:

- Make sure the Reference Angle format is selected on the Site Boundaries page in your Document Settings. How to
- In 2D plan view, select View > Zoom and Navigate > Zoom to Fit, or click (Interpretent on the View Control toolbar. This will bring the entire terrain into view so you can insert the boundary easily and precisely.
- Select Insert > Terrain > Site Boundary, or click on the Terrain toolbar.
- 4. Select a point for the first peg (stake). The Commander becomes instantly active, displaying options for defining the length and direction of line segments.

NE 🔻	Distance	35'-4"]	Direction
NE 🔻	Distance 33'-1 1/2"	Direction	90°00'00"	

5. Move your mouse in the general direction you want the first site boundary line to run. This determines the quadrant you are working in, and the compass points used in the bearing. Note that you can also select a quadrant (NE, NW, SE or SW) from the drop box in the Commander if you prefer — just remember to Tab over to the **Distance** edit box when you're done.

- 6. Type a length for the boundary line. The value appears in the Commander's **Distance** edit box.
- 7. To specify the direction of the line, either move your mouse in the desired direction (watching the resulting angle in the Commander's **Direction** edit box), or press the Tab key to move to the **Direction** edit box, then enter the desired angle and press ENTER. Remember that the angle is measured from the North or South meridian, and should be between 0 and 90 degrees.



 Continue defining the remaining segments. When you have defined all but the last segment, right-click and select **Finish**. A closing line segment will be created automatically between the first and last peg, forming a closed site boundary.



Note: Bearings coincide with the angle of the north arrow specified in your global settings.

Creating a Site Boundary Using the Angle Bearing Method

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When using the Angle Bearing Method to draw a site boundary, each angle is calculated clockwise from the positive Y axis, or North meridian. By default, each bearing is entered as a forward bearing, but you can choose to enter a back bearing instead.

To create a site boundary with the Angle Bearing Method:

- Make sure the Angle Bearing format is selected on the Site Boundaries page in your Document Settings. How to
- In 2D plan view, select View > Zoom and Navigate > Zoom to Fit, or click (Interpretent on the View Control toolbar. This will bring the entire terrain into view so you can insert the boundary easily and precisely.
- 3. Select Insert > Terrain > Site Boundary, or click is on the Terrain toolbar.
- Select a point for the first peg (stake). The Commander becomes instantly active, displaying options for defining the length and direction of line segments.
- If you want to enter a back bearing instead of a forward bearing, select **Back bearing** from the Commander's left drop box. Just

remember to Tab over to the **Distance** edit box when you're done.

- 6. Type a length for the first boundary line. The value appears in the Commander's **Distance** edit box.
- 7. To specify the direction of the line, either move your mouse in the desired direction (watching the resulting angle in the Commander's **Direction** edit box), or press the Tab key to move to the **Direction** edit box, then type the desired angle and press ENTER. Remember that each angle is calculated clockwise from the positive Y axis, or North meridian.



 Continue defining the remaining segments. When you have defined all but the last segment, right-click and select **Finish**. A closing line segment will be created automatically between the first and last peg, forming a closed site boundary.

Moving a Site Boundary

You can move a site boundary using the Move tool.

To move a site boundary:

- 1. Click on one of your lot lines to select the entire site boundary.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.

3. Click and drag the site boundary to move it, then release your mouse button.

Stretching a Site Boundary

You can resize or reshape a site boundary by clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a site boundary:

- Click on one of your lot lines to select the site boundary. If you want to resize the boundary, click on the specific lot line that you want to move. Clear blue grips appear at each corner of the boundary, and a solid blue grip appears at the center of the lot line you selected.
- 2. To resize the boundary, click and drag the solid blue grip. To reshape the boundary, click and drag one of the clear blue corner grips.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

Note: You can also edit the length and direction of individual lot lines precisely by editing the boundary's properties.

Editing the Length or Direction of Site Boundary Edges

You can edit the length or direction of a site boundary edge by editing site boundary properties.

To edit the length or direction of a site boundary edge:

- 1. Click on the lot line you want to edit.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- To edit the length of the current segment, type the desired value in the Length edit box.
- 4. To edit the distance of the setback line from the lot line, type the distance in the **Setback** edit box.
- 5. To edit the angle of the current segment, make the appropriate changes in the *Direction* area of the **Site Boundary Edge** dialog. There are two methods of defining direction. The method that is available is the one that was used to draw the site boundary initially, or whatever is current on the Units of

Measure page in your Program Settings. If the *Reference Angle Method* is current, you can edit the direction of the segment by editing the value in the **Angle** edit box. If the *Angle Bearing Method* is current, you can edit the direction of the segment by editing the **Forward Bearing** or **Back Bearing** value.

- 6. In the *When Editing* area, select the appropriate **Peg No.** to adjust, as editing the length or angle of a segment will cause a peg to move.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Defining Setback Distances

By default, setback lines are not included in your site boundary, as all setback distances are set to 0. You can specify a setback distance for each individual site boundary edge.

To define setback distances:

- Click on the property line you want to specify a setback distance for. Note that setback distances are defined per site boundary edge, one at a time.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.



- 3. In the **Site Boundary Edge** dialog, edit the value in the **Setback** edit box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Clipping the Terrain to the Site Boundary

If you have added a site boundary to your plan, you can choose to clip the terrain to the site boundary so

that when you view the model in 3D, you see only your lot. In other words, the terrain is resized to the size of your lot in 3D.

To clip the terrain to the site boundary:

- Click on the edge of the site boundary to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Site Boundary Edge** dialog, enable the **Clip Terrain** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

The terrain boundary line becomes dashed in 2D plan view, indicating that it will be clipped. The terrain will be clipped (resized) when you view the model in 3D.

Curving a Site Boundary Edge

You can curve a site boundary edge using the Curve tool, or by editing site boundary edge properties.

To curve a site boundary edge using the Curve tool:

- 1. Click on the site boundary edge you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve a site boundary edge by editing its properties:

- 1. Click on the lot line you want to edit.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Enable the **Arc Radius** check box, then enter the desired arc radius in the adjacent edit box. The arc radius is the distance from the lot line (in its uncurved state) to the top of the proposed arc.
- Select the desired direction of the arc from the Arc Direction drop box. Selecting Inside creates the arc toward the inside of the boundary, while selecting Outside pushes it outward.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Editing a Site Boundary's Line, Text and Peg Styles

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can edit site boundary settings before or after a site boundary has been created. Settings include line styles for lot lines and setback lines, text styles for bearings, lengths and pegs, as well as peg size and style. You can also control which textual information you want to appear.

To edit site boundary settings:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

🕙 🙀 on the Settings toolbar.

2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Site Boundaries** in the left column.

If you have already drawn a site boundary, you can also access site boundary settings by clicking the **Settings** button in the **Site Boundary Edge** dialog.

- 3. To edit the line style of the outside boundary line, select **Boundary line** from the drop box in the *Lines* area, then select the desired color, line type and line weight for the line.
- 4. To edit the line style of the setback line, select **Setback line** from the drop box in the *Lines* area, then select the desired color, line type and line weight for the line.
- To edit the line style of the pegs, select Peg from the drop box in the *Lines* area, then select the desired color, line type and line weight for the line.
- To edit the peg style, select either the Round or Square option in the *Pegs* area. To edit the size of the peg symbol, enter the desired value in the Width edit box.
- 7. To edit the text style of bearing text, click the **Bearing** button, then select the desired text style from the **Text Styles** dialog. If you do not want to include bearing text in the site boundary, disable the adjacent **Include** check box. By default, bearing text appears on the inside of the site boundary. If you want it to appear on the outside, select **Outside Line** from the drop box next to the **Include** check

box. Note that if you are including both bearing text and length text, one must be set to the outside of the boundary, and one must be set to the inside. You cannot have both on the same side. Otherwise, one of them will be disabled.

- 8. To edit the text style of length text, click the Length button, then select the desired text style from the Text Styles dialog. If you do not want to include length text in the site boundary, disable the adjacent Include check box. By default, length text appears on the outside of the site boundary line. If you want it to appear on the inside, select Inside Line from the drop box next to the Include check box.
- 9. To edit the text style of peg text, click the **Peg** button, then select the desired text style from the **Text Styles** dialog. If you do not want to include peg text in the site boundary, disable the adjacent **Include** check box.
- To edit the distance between text and the site boundary line, enter the desired distance in the **Distance from line** edit box. This applies to all forms of text — bearing, length and peg text.
- 11. Click **OK**.

Selecting a Method of Measurement When Drawing a Site Boundary

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

There are two methods of angle measurement available for creating a site boundary. With the Reference Angle method, each angle is measured from the North or South meridian within a given quadrant (NE, NW, SE, SW). With the Angle Bearing method, each angle is measured clockwise from the positive Y axis, or North meridian.

Site units can be Imperial or Metric. You can select the unit of measure you want to use and specify the desired level of precision. When specifying the angle of each site boundary segment, you can use Degrees/Minutes/Seconds, or Decimal Degrees with a specified level of precision.

To select a method of angle measurement for site boundary entry:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

🙀 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Site Boundaries** in the left column.
- 3. Select the desired entry method from the **Bearing Format** drop box (*Reference Angle* or *Angle Bearing*).
- In the *Distances* area, select either Imperial or Metric, then select a unit of measure from the Units drop box. Imperial choices are *Feet-Inches* and *Inches*. Metric choices are *Mil-Iimeters, Centimeters* and *Meters*. From the Precision drop box, select a level of precision for distance measurements.
- 5. From the **Units** drop box in the *Angles* area, select the unit you wish to use when specifying the angle of each site boundary edge. Choose either the *Degrees/Minutes/Seconds*, or *Decimal Degrees*. If your choice is Decimal Degrees, select the desired level of precision from the adjacent **Precision** drop box.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Site Boundary

To delete a site boundary that you have inserted:

- 1. Click on one of your lot lines to select the entire site boundary.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Chapter 15: Editing Elements in Model View

Editing Elements in Model View

When you double-click after inserting an element or select **Finish** from the right-click menu, you automatically go into Selection Mode, meaning you can select elements in your drawing area and edit them. Most elements can be moved, rotated, copied, replaced and deleted. Some elements have additional editing commands available. For example, you can lengthen, break and curve walls. All elements have a property sheet where you can change the size or appearance of the element.

To access a menu of editing commands for a selected element, just right-click in the drawing area or select **Edit > Modify Elements**. Certain functions can be performed without selecting any commands at all. For example, you can move and rotate most elements by simply clicking and dragging your mouse.

This chapter describes how to select elements, and use general editing commands like Move, Rotate, Elevate, Duplicate, Replace and Delete. It also describes how to access and edit element properties. For information about editing a specific type of element, see the chapter about that element.

Accessing Edit Tools

Most elements in Model View can be moved once they are selected by simply clicking and dragging them. Some can also be stretched or rotated. You can access a full menu of edit tools in Model View by right-clicking in the drawing area, or by selecting **Edit > Modify Elements**. Menus vary depending on the element selected. Typical tools are Properties, Move, Rotate, Duplicate, and Delete. If two types of elements are selected (such as a floor and a wall), only tools that are common to both element types are available.

Undoing the Previous Action

The Undo tool cancels your most recent action. You can undo as many actions as you have taken since your last save.

To undo an action:

- Select Edit > Undo, or
- Click 🦙 🦙 on the Standard toolbar, or
- Press Ctrl+Z

Tip: You can use the Redo tool to reapply an action you have canceled using the Undo tool.

Redoing an Undo

The Redo tool reapplies a tool that you have reversed using Undo. Redo will only work directly following an Undo.

To redo a task:

- Select Edit > Redo, or
- Click → → on the Standard toolbar, or
- Press Ctrl+Y

Moving Elements

When you select an element in Model View, you are automatically in Drag and Drop mode. If the element is a singular, one-click object, like a cabinet or plant, you can move the element by simply clicking and dragging it. If you want to move an area-drawn element, such as a roof or floor, you need to select the Move tool before clicking and dragging. Otherwise, doing a straight drag-and-drop will only stretch it. If you click and drag a wall, all walls attached to it move with it.

If you have your Commander turned on and would like to be able to enter precise values for the move, you need to select the Move tool instead of doing a straight drag-and-drop. **Note**: Elements associated with walls, such as doors and windows, can only be moved within the wall they are in. You cannot move them to another wall.

To move an element using drag-and-drop:

- 1. Select the element you want to move. You are now in Drag and Drop mode.
- 3. Click and drag to move the element.
- 4. When the element is where you want it, release the mouse button.
- To move an element using the Move tool:
- 1. Select the element you want to move.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Select a base point for the move. The move distance and direction will be measured from this point.
- 4. Without holding your mouse button down, move your mouse to move the element. Select the point you want to move the element to, or enter a distance and direction in the Commander.

Tip: You can nudge an element slightly using the arrow keys on your keyboard.

Nudging Elements

You can nudge an element or object slightly using the arrow keys on your keyboard. By default, the element is nudged 1" (or 25mm). You can change the nudge distance in your program settings before nudging if you like.

For an additional level of control, a secondary nudge distance is also available in your program settings. By default it is set to 1'-0" (or 300mm). This distance is used if you press and hold down the CTRL key while using the arrow keys.

To nudge an element:

- 1. Select the element that you want to nudge.
- 2. Use the arrows on your keyboard to nudge the element up, down, left or right. This uses

the primary nudge distance defined in your program settings.

To nudge an element using the CTRL key:

- 1. Select the element that you want to nudge.
- 2. Press and hold down the CTRL key on your keyboard.
- While holding down the CTRL key, use the arrows on your keyboard to nudge the element up, down, left or right. This uses the secondary nudge distance defined in your program settings.

Editing Nudge Distances

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, an element is moved 1" (25mm) when you nudge it using your arrow keys. If you hold down the CTRL key while using the arrow keys, a secondary nudge distance of 1'-0" (305mm) is used. You can edit both of these nudge distances in your program settings.

To edit nudge distances:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Drawing Aids** in the left column.
- 3. To edit the primary nudge distance (when using only your arrow keys to nudge), edit the value in the **Normal** edit box in the *Nudge Distance* area.
- 4. To edit the secondary nudge distance (when using the CTRL key in conjunction with the arrow keys), edit the value in the **With CTRL key** edit box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Raising and Lowering Elements

Most elements can be raised or lowered using the Elevate tool on the element's right-click menu. Some elements, such as roofs, do not provide access to the Elevate tool. In the case of a roof, you can raise or lower it by changing the Support Height variable in its properties. Many block elements (like furniture and plants) also have a *Distance above current location or terrain* variable in their properties that you can use to raise or lower the element. Walls have a *Drop Exterior Face* variable, and columns have a *Base Offset* variable in their properties that you can edit.

To raise or lower an element using the Elevate tool:

- 1. Select the element that you want to raise or lower.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value shown in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the element above the floor level or terrain.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the element above the floor. If the element is a landscaping element, the value you specify is relative to the terrain. The distance you enter is the distance from the floor or terrain to the insertion point of the element. For most elements, the insertion point is at the base of the element. For windows and wall openings, however, the insertion point is at the top of the element. Therefore, if you are raising or lowering a window or wall opening, specify the desired distance from the floor to the top of the window or opening.
- 4. If you are in a 3D or elevation view and would like to see what the element looks like at the new elevation, click **Apply**. The Elevate tool remains active while the change is applied to the element in your model.
- 5. To apply the change to the element, click **OK**. To raise or lower a block element by editing its properties:
- 1. Select the element you want to raise or lower.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the properties dialog, select the **Behavior** tab. If there is no Behavior tab, you will need to use the Elevate tool to raise or lower the element.
- 4. Edit the value in the **Distance above current location or terrain** edit box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Rotating Elements

Singular, one-click elements like cabinets and furniture can be rotated on the spot by simply clicking and dragging them while in Rotation mode. Railings can be rotated by clicking and dragging their end points. For most other elements such as walls, floors, ceilings or roofs, you need to use the Rotate tool. You also need to use the Rotate tool if you want to be able to enter a precise rotation angle in the Commander, or you want to rotate the element about a point other than the center point of the element.

Doing a Simple, On-the-Spot Rotation

If you see a triangular grip on an element when it is selected, it can be rotated by simply clicking and dragging it. Using this method, the element is rotated about its center point. If your Angle Snap is on, the element will rotate in increments of whatever angle is set for the Angle Snap. If the Angle Snap is off, the element will rotate in increments of 1^o.





To rotate an element by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Select the element you want to rotate.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the triangular grip to display the Rotate cursor. $\frac{1}{\zeta}$

Tip: If the triangular grip is in close proximity to the square grab handle, you may want to zoom in on the element to distinguish between the two grips. If you do not see the triangular grip, the element can only be rotated with the Rotate tool.



- 3. Click and drag to rotate the element.
- 4. When the element is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Using the Rotate Tool

Using the Rotate tool you can rotate an element about any selected base point. You should also use the Rotate tool if you want to be able to enter a precise rotation angle in the Commander. If your Angle Snap is on, the element will rotate in increments of whatever angle is set for the Angle Snap. If you are using the Commander, you can override the Angle Snap by entering the desired angle in the Commander. If the Angle Snap is off, the element will rotate in increments of 1º.

To rotate an element using the Rotate tool:

- 1. Select the element to rotate.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Select a base point for the rotation. The base point can be any point on the element (e.g. center point or corner point), or any point in the drawing area. The point you pick establishes an automatic baseline that runs through the point at 180°. You can rotate fullcircle around this baseline. Example



element that may be lying at an odd angle, select

a base point on the other element, then line up your rotation line with that element.

4. Without holding your mouse button down, move your mouse to rotate the element. The element will rotate from the defined base point in the direction you move the mouse. If the Commander is turned on, you can view the angle of rotation as you rotate, or enter a precise angle. Positive angle values are read in a counter-clockwise direction, while negative values are read in a clockwise direction.

Curving Elements

You can curve line-drawn elements such as walls, as well as area-drawn elements such as floors.

If an element has the Curve tool on its right-click menu, it can be curved. Once the Curve tool is active, you can click and drag the edge to curve it, or select a point to curve to.

To curve an element by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the element edge that you want to curve.
- Right-click and select Curve, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Curve.
- 3. Click and drag the edge to the desired curve.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

To curve an element to a selected point:

- 1. Click on the ceiling edge you want to curve.
- Right-click in and select Curve, or select Edit
 Modify Elements > Curve.
- Select the point you want to curve to. The ceiling edge automatically curves to the point.
- 4. Click to finish.

Note: For more precise curving, see *Curving Elements Using the Commander* on page 557.

Changing an Element's Orientation

Symbol elements, such as furniture and light fixtures, are oriented in a logical fashion when you insert them in your drawing. For example, tables are inserted in a flat, upright position on the floor, and electrical outlets are inserted in a vertical position on the face of walls. You can edit the orientation of most symbol elements. For example, you may want to flip an air register so that you can insert it on the ceiling in your basement.

To change an element's orientation:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. On the Basic property page, click the appropriate arrow keys in the *Orientation* area to rotate the element.

X Axis: Rotates the element front to back, and vice versa.

Y Axis: Rotates the element towards its left or right side in 3D.

Z Axis: Rotates the element left or right in 2D plan view.

Note: Orientation control is only available for simple block elements like furniture and appliances. It does not apply to elements with customizable components, such as fireplaces or cabinets.

Copying Elements on the Same Location

The Duplicate tool creates a copy of a selected element that you can then position where you like on the current location.

To duplicate an element in Model View:

- 1. Select the element to copy.
- Right-click and select **Duplicate**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Duplicate.
- 3. Select a base point for the copy movement. Typically you would select one of the element's grips, but you can click anywhere in the drawing. The base point is simply a reference point used to define the move distance.
- Select the point you are copying the element to. You can do this by moving your mouse and then clicking to insert the copy, or by typing a distance and direction in the Commander.

Copying Objects to Other Locations

The Duplicate to Locations tool lets you copy existing elements and objects to other locations. This is useful if the elements you have already drawn will have the same layout on another location. For example, you can copy the exterior walls on the Ground Floor to the Second Floor and instantly create another story. You can also use this tool to copy text, dimensions and CAD objects to another location.

When you use the Duplicate to Locations tool you have the option of deleting the original objects. This is a great way to move objects from one location to another if they are not on the correct location.

To copy objects to other locations:

- 1. Make sure the location you want to copy objects FROM is current.
- 2. Select the objects that you want to copy.
- 3. Right-click and select **Duplicate to Locations**.
- In the Duplicate to Locations dialog, select the target location(s) you want to copy the objects to.
- 5. Click **OK**. You are asked if you want to delete the original object.
- If you want to delete the original objects, click Yes. You would select this if you wanted to move the objects instead of copying them. If you want to leave the original objects on their current location, click No. The objects are copied.

Note: The location you are copying to must exist in the Building Locations dialog.

Cutting and Pasting Elements

Use the Cut and Paste tools to remove an inserted element and place it elsewhere in your drawing. Note that you can cut an element from one location and paste it on a different location.

To cut and paste an element in Model View:

- 1. Select the element to cut.
- Right-click and select Cut, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Cut. The element is temporarily removed from the drawing.

- Right-click and select Paste, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Paste. The element is attached to your cursor.
- 4. Position the element where you want it, then click to insert it.

Arraying Elements

When you array elements, you create multiple copies of an element at the same time. You can create an array in a single row or column, or multiple rows and columns. You can also control the spacing between elements in the array, and the array's rotation angle. Example



Sample array of posts with 2 rows and 5 columns

To array an element in Model View:

- 1. Select the element you want to array.
- Right-click and select Array, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Array.
- 3. In the **Number of Rows** box, type the number of horizontal rows you want or use the arrows to select a value.
- 4. In the **Number of Columns** box, type the number of vertical columns you want.
- 5. In the **Distance Between Rows** box, type the spacing you want between rows. This determines the distance between elements appearing in columns (vertical spacing).
- 6. In the **Distance Between Columns** box, type the spacing you want between columns. This determines the distance between elements appearing in rows (horizontal spacing).
- 7. In the **Array Rotation Angle** box, type the degree of rotation for the array.
- 8. Click **OK**. The array is created.

Note: The Array tool is only available for certain elements.

Mirroring Elements

You can create a mirror image of selected elements using the Mirror tool. You mirror the elements by specifying a mirror line — an imaginary line about which the elements are flipped. Once the element has been mirrored, you can choose whether or not you want to delete the original element.

Tip: You can use the Mirror tool to reverse an entire floor plan.

To mirror elements in Model View:

- 1. Select the elements you want to mirror.
- Right-click and select Mirror, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Mirror.
- Click two points to define a mirror line. Example



 When prompted to choose whether or not you want to delete the original object, click Yes to delete the original object, or click No to leave the original intact.

Replacing Elements

You can use the Replace tool to replace an element in your drawing with a different item from the catalog.

To replace an element:

- 1. Select the element that you want to replace.
- Right-click and select **Replace**, or select **Edit** > Modify Elements > Replace.
- 3. In the **Replace** dialog, select the replacement item.

You can use the **Search** feature to quickly narrow down the element list according to a specified keyword or part number. Click the drop box in the **Search** area and select either **Description** to search by keyword, or **Part No.** to search by part number. An edit box appears next to the drop box.

In the edit box, enter the keyword(s) or part number to search for, then press Enter or

click click Search will display any match that contains the specified text string, even if the string is part of a word. Note that only elements of the type that you are replacing are displayed. Once search results are obtained they are displayed in the catalog portion of the dialog. To return the catalog to its default state, where all elements are displayed, select Show All from the Search drop box. Search terms that you have used are saved in the Search window for future use.

 Once you have selected the replacement item, click **OK**. The element is automatically replaced.

Note: You can only replace an element with another of the same type. For example, you can replace a window with another window, but you cannot replace a window with a door.

Editing the Size and Composition of an Element

You can edit the physical make-up of an element as well as its dimensions by accessing the element's Basic property page. Some elements have additional property pages that control its composition. For example, cabinets have Leaf and Details property pages. When you edit the properties of elements that exist in your drawing, only selected elements are changed. Other occurrences of the element in your drawing remain unchanged. You can, however, select and edit multiple elements at the same time provided they share the same properties.

To edit the properties of an inserted element:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- Adjust the properties as desired. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the element graphic, and vice versa, if one exists.
- 3. Click **OK**. The selected elements are updated in the drawing.

Note: Editing the properties of an element in your drawing has no effect on the element's property definition in the catalog it came from. If you want to edit an element in a catalog, see *Editing Elements in a Catalog* on page 605. Editing an element in a catalog affects all future insertions of that element in your drawing.

Editing an Element's Layer Assignments

Each of an element's components has a specific layer assigned to it. Layer definitions determine the color, line type and line weight used to display a component's lines in 2D plan view. You can edit an element's layer assignments on its Line Work property page.

To edit an element's layer assignments:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. Select the Line Work tab.
- 3. In the *Components* pane, select the component whose layer assignment you want to change.
- Select the desired layer from the Layer drop box. The layer's color, line type and line weight are displayed below the drop box.

Layer Walls - Ex	terior Si	urface		
Color		Line	Гурез	Line W
Black		Continuous		Mediu
Layer Walls - Exterior	r Surface			•
Color	Line	Types	Line Weight	
0001				3

To override the layer's **Color**, **Line type** or **Line weight** setting, click on the property that you want to override and then make a selection from the drop box that appears.

5. When you are finished editing layer assignments, click **OK**.

Editing an Element's Material Settings

An element's material properties are displayed in Rendered and Rendered Outline mode. If you choose to edit an element's material through its Appearance property page, you can select different materials for each of the element's components.

To change an element's material through the Appearance property page:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. Select the Appearance tab.
- 3. In the *Components* pane, select the component whose material you want to change.
- 4. To select a texture for the component, which will be displayed in Rendered and Rendered outline display mode, click the material swatch or the browse button in the *Material* area, then make a selection from the **Materials** dialog.



 To edit the way the material is applied to the component in Rendered and Rendered Outline mode, click the **Mapping** button in the *Material* area, then define your mapping settings. These are described below.

Auto Texture Mapping. Applies a UV map, which is a flat, 2D representation of the vertices of the 3D model. It defines where the 2D pixels in your texture will be placed on the 3D surface. For imported elements, selecting Auto uses the mapping already applied to the element.

Face Texture Mapping. Applies the texture to every single face of the element component. This is the most common texture mapping option used in the program.

Box Texture Mapping. Creates a rectangular bounding box around the element, then applies a texture to each of the box's 6 sides. This would be useful for an element such as a sofa.

Predefined texture mapping. If using a texture from an outside source, this uses the texture mapping that was assigned to the texture originally.

Override tile size. Allows you to specify a custom tile size for the material. Tile height refers to the height of one bitmap tile. The program uses tiled rendering to display images, meaning images are generated in pieces (tiles) vertically and horizontally. Changing the tile height of a brick material, for example, would make the bricks look taller. Changing the tile width would make the bricks look wider.

Note that the *Override tile size* option lets you customize the tile size for this instance only without creating a new material.

Position. Allows you to shift the material on the element (left, right, up or down) by clicking the appropriate arrows.

Rotation. Specifying an angle here rotates the material on the element in a clockwise direction.

6. When you are finished defining materials, click **OK**.

Note: When you edit the material of an element in your drawing, the element's material definition in the catalog does not change. The change only applies to the selected element. If you want to change the element's properties in the catalog, see *Editing Elements in a Catalog* on page 605. Editing an element in a catalog affects all future insertions of that element in your drawing.

Editing an Element's Pattern Settings

An element's pattern properties are displayed when you view a model in Patterned mode. If you choose to edit an element's pattern settings through its Line Work property page, you can select different patterns for each of the element's components.

To change an element's pattern settings:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. Select the Line Work tab.
- 3. In the *Components* pane, select the component whose pattern you want to change.
- 4. To select a pattern for the component, click the pattern swatch or the browse button in the *Pattern* area, then make a selection from the **Patterns** dialog.
- To edit the way the pattern is applied to the element in Patterned display mode, click the Mapping button in the *Pattern* area, then define your mapping settings. These are described below.

Rotation. Specifying an angle here rotates the pattern on the element in a clockwise direction.

Position. Allows you to shift the pattern on the element (left, right, up or down) by clicking the appropriate arrows.i

- 6. To specify a color and line weight for the pattern's lines, select Layer below the pattern swatch which has the desired color/line weight properties. You can override the color or line weight by clicking the Color swatch or the Line Weight drop box.
- 7. When you are finished, click **OK**.

Solid Filling Walls and Other Elements

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can instantly apply solid fill to the walls or other elements in your 2D plan by enabling solid fill in your Program Settings. Any element that has solid fill enabled on its Line Work property page will be solid filled. These include walls, floors, surfaces, members, cabinets, paths, pads, and fills.

To enable solid filling:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

ど 🗟 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Drawing Assistance* area, enable the **Enable Solid Filling** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Note: Solid filling will only appear on elements that have solid fill colors assigned to them and have solid fill turned on in their Line Work properties.

Editing Solid Fill Colors

Certain elements have a solid fill color assigned to them in their Line Work properties. These include walls, floors, surfaces, members, cabinets, paths, pads, and fills. You can edit the color assignment for these elements in your catalog or in your drawing.

To edit solid fill colors:

- Select the element whose solid fill color you want to change, either in the catalog, or in your drawing. Note that editing solid fill in the catalog will affect only future insertions of that element type.
- 2. Access the element's properties.
- 3. In the properties dialog, select the Line Work tab.
- In the *Components* list, select the component you want to change. For example, if the element is a wall you may want to select **2D Core** or **Airspace**. Other elements may have a 2D component as well.

- 5. In the *Solid Fill* area, make sure the **Enable** check box is checked.
- 6. Click the color swatch.
- 7. In the **Color** dialog, select the desired solid fill color, then click **OK**.
- 8. Click **OK** in the properties dialog.

Disabling Solid Fill for Individual Elements

If you have enabled solid filling in your program settings, you can turn solid fill off for individual elements in your drawing by editing the element's Line Work properties.

To disable solid fill for an individual element:

- 1. Select the element whose solid fill you want to turn off.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the properties dialog, select the Line Work tab.
- In the *Components* list, select the component whose solid fill you want to disable. For example, if the element is a wall, you may want to select **2D Core**.
- 5. In the *Solid Fill* area, uncheck the **Enable** check box.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Note: To turn off all solid filling in your drawing you need to disable solid filling in your program settings.

Applying Colors and Materials with the Materials Paintbrush

The Materials Paintbrush is best used in 3D view and the 2D Designer's Plan view. It lets you select a material or color in the catalog, then apply it to elements. When you use the Materials Paintbrush on an element, the settings on the element's Appearance property page update to match the selections you made with the Materials Paintbrush.

To use the Materials Paintbrush:

Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
 on any tabbed toolbar.

 In the catalog panel, select the material you want to apply. There is an incredible selection to choose from, including Wood, Brick, Marble, Concrete, Steel, Carpet, Tile, Roofing, Paint, Fabric, and much more. You can filter the material list according to specific applications by making a selection from the Filter drop box.



- 3. If you want to apply the material to all instances of the element you select, enable the **Apply to All Similar** check box. For example, let's say your model's exterior walls are 2x6 Framed Masonry walls, and you want them all to have horizontal siding instead. If you enable the Apply to All Similar option, all you have to do is click on one of the walls, and all of the walls of the same type will change simultaneously.
- In 3D view, click on the element that you want to apply the material to. The material is immediately applied.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: To undo the last application, right-click in the drawing area and select **Step Back**.

Undoing a Material Application

If you have just used the Materials Paintbrush to apply a material to an element, you can undo the application using the Step Back tool.

To undo a material application:

 With the Materials Paintbrush still active, right-click in the drawing area and select Step Back, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Step Back.

You can continue stepping back to the point when the Materials Paintbrush was first launched.

Note: You cannot undo a material application if you have left the Materials Paintbrush mode.

Sampling Materials with the Eyedropper

While the Materials Paintbrush is active you can use the Eyedropper tool to identify a material applied to an element in your drawing. Once you've clicked on the element, the catalog panel updates to display the material applied to the element. This eliminates guesswork and allows you to identify a material that you want to use again without having to search the catalog.

To sample a material with the Eyedropper:

- 1. Activate the Materials Paintbrush tool. How to
- 2. In the catalog panel, click *Nour* Cursor becomes an eyedropper.
- Click on the element whose material you want to sample. The catalog updates to display the material applied to the element.

Note: The material will not be added to the materials history list unless you apply it to an element.

Viewing Recently Used Materials

When you use the Materials Paintbrush, a record is kept of the materials you have used. You can view a list of the most recently used materials by selecting the **History** tab in the catalog panel while the Materials Paintbrush is active. If you want to use one of the recently used materials, just select it in the history list and proceed with applying in your drawing.



Setting the Maximum Size for the Material History List

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, when the Materials Paintbrush tool is active, the History tab in the catalog panel displays a maximum of 15 materials. You can change this setting if you wish.

To change the maximum setting for the material history list:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, enter the desired maximum number of materials in the **Material history list** edit box, or use the arrows to scroll up or down through a list of

values.

3. Click **OK**.

Matching the Appearance of Elements

Use the Match Appearance tool to match the appearance of selected elements with that of another similar element. For example, if you have inserted a cabinet in your drawing whose appearance you really like, you can instantly change the appearance of all other cabinets in the room (or model) to match the appearance of that cabinet.

To match the appearance of elements:

- Window around or cross through the elements that you want to edit. It does not matter if other element types are included in the selection only elements that are of the same type as the primary element (the one whose appearance you want to match) will receive the changes. You can even cross through the entire model if you want to change the appearance of all similar elements throughout the model.
- Shift+click to select the primary element. This is the element to which you want to match the other elements.
- 3. Right-click and select **Match Appearance**. The appearance of all selected elements that are the same type as the primary element will now match the appearance of the primary element.

A dialog box confirms the number of elements that were changed, and the number of elements in the selection set that were excluded from the appearance change (because they are not of the same element type).



Querying Elements

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the Query Element/Location tool you can select any element in your drawing and instantly view its name and building location.

To query an element/location:

- 1. Select Tools > Query Element/Location.
- 2. With the Query Element/Location cursor

? 🔓 Query Elen	nent / Location	8 23
Element:	60'' Double French Door	
Location:	Ground Floor	
		ОК

3. When you are finished viewing the element and location information, click **OK**.

Note: For landscaping and terrain elements, which are associated with the terrain, the Location box displays *Terrain* rather than a building location.

Note: The Query Element/Location tool can only be used on elements that were inserted from the catalog. You cannot use it on drafting objects.

Deleting Elements

You can delete an element from your drawing in two quick steps.

To delete an element:

- 1. Select the element.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Chapter 16: 2D and 3D Viewing

2D and 3D Viewing

There are a variety of options for viewing your design in 2D and 3D. When you begin working, your design is displayed as a 2D Plan. You can also use the 2D Designer's Plan tool to instantly view a rendered version of your 2D plan.

When working in 2D view, you can magnify or reduce the view using the Zoom In, Zoom Out or Zoom Realtime tools. You can also magnify a selected area using the Zoom Window tool. The Zoom to Fit tool magnifies your design so it fills the drawing area, creating the largest view possible. The Pan tool lets you pan the view in any direction by simply clicking and dragging.

You can instantly switch to 3D view with a couple of mouse clicks. Using the 3D QuickView tool you can instantly view your 3D design from a number of preset angles. Or you can choose one of the pre-defined 3D Cameras — 3D Perspective or 3D Overview — as well as create new views to suit your needs.

While in a 3D view you can navigate through the scene using realtime navigation tools such as Walk Around, Fly Around, and Look Around.

You can select 2D and 3D viewing and navigation tools from the View menu or from the View Control and Zoom & Navigate toolbars below the drawing area. Most of these tools can also be found on the handy Navigator, which is an all-in-one onscreen controller similar to a handheld video game controller.

Elevations are automatic — just select the one that you want to view, or create a custom one. You can create a Section by defining a cut line through your model. Using the Dynamic Cutaway tool you can dynamically strip away a portion of your 3D model so that you can see inside it.

For a truly amazing experience you can try the Stereo Vision tool. Just slip on a pair of 3D glasses and watch every detail of your 3D model pop out at you.

In 2D plan view, your drawing is displayed in Wireframe mode by default. In 3D view, it is displayed in Rendered mode. You can switch to other display modes such as Hidden Line and Patterned at any time.

The Navigator

When you want to change your view in any way, you can select tools from the View menu or from the toolbars below the drawing area. The most common viewing and navigation tools can also be found in the handy onscreen Navigator, which is kind of like a video game controller. It lets you switch between 2D and 3D, zoom and pan, and navigate in 3D, all from a simple control panel displayed on the screen.



You can move the Navigator around on the screen, and turn it off if you don't want it displayed.

Using the Navigator

The Navigator is an onscreen controller that lets you switch between 2D and 3D, zoom and pan, and navigate in 3D. Similar to a video game controller, it brings the most frequently used viewing and navigation tools together in one place.



To display a 2D plan view, click **20** on the Navigator.

To display a 3D camera view, click 🚳 🚳.

To display a 3D QuickView, click 🛃 🛃, then select the desired view angle on the Navigator's center pad.





To zoom in realtime, click 🔯 🔯 and then click and drag on the Navigator's center pad. Drag upward to zoom in, drag downward to zoom out.

To pan the view, click 🖑 🖑 and then click and drag on the Navigator's center pad in the direction that you want to pan.

To walk around in a 3D camera view, click ****** and then click and drag on the Navigator's center pad in the direction that you want to walk. For example, to walk forward, click and drag upward.

To fly around the model, click \bigcirc and then click and drag on the Navigator's center pad. The Fly

Around tool revolves the camera around the target in a 3D view. Drag upward or downward to tilt the model down or up, drag right to rotate the model in a clockwise direction, or drag left to rotate it counterclockwise.

To spin the view with the Look Around tool, click To spin the view with the Look Around tool, click and then click and drag on the Navigator's center pad. The Look Around tool revolves the target around the camera in a 3D Camera view. Drag left to spin the model clockwise, drag right to spin it counterclockwise. Drag up to lower the height and shorten the distance of the target. Drag down to raise the height and lengthen the distance of the target.

Note: The Walk Around, Fly Around and Look Around tools are only available if the current view is a 3D view. In a 3D QuickView, the only navigation tool available is Fly Around.

Moving the Navigator

You can move the Navigator around on the screen by clicking and dragging its move grip.



To move the Navigator:

- 1. Click and hold your mouse button over the Navigator's grip.
- 2. While holding your mouse button down, drag the Navigator to the desired location on the screen.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

Turning the Navigator On or Off

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can turn the onscreen Navigator on or off as needed through your program settings.

To turn the Navigator on or off:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 iii iii on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Nav-igation** in the left pane.
- 3. In the right pane, enable or disable the **Enable** check box in the *Navigator Control* pane.
- 4. Click **OK**.

2D Viewing

When you start a project, the view that you are in initially is a 2D Plan, which is a flat, overhead view. This is the best type of view to be in when you are inserting elements and creating your design.

You are not limited to a wireframe 2D view, though. For an interesting perspective you can use the 2D Designer's Plan tool to display the 2D plan in rendered display mode, which displays element textures and colors.

Viewing the 2D Plan

When you start a drawing, the default view is a 2D plan view, which is a flat, overhead view. 2D plan view is ideal for creating a floor plan.

To display your model in 2D plan view:

- Select View > 2D Plan, or
- Click 20 20 on the View Control toolbar or on the onscreen Navigator, or
- Right-click in the drawing area and select **2D Plan**, or

By default, all locations are visible at the same time. However, any locations other than the current location are dimmed. While in 2D plan view you can zoom in and out, and pan your drawing.

Viewing a 2D Designer's Plan

By default, your design is displayed in a wireframe 2D plan view. You can use the 2D Designer's Plan

tool to quickly display a rendered version of the 2D plan view. In a rendered view, materials are applied to the elements and terrain, creating a more realistic view. For example, if you have a shingled roof on your model, you will actually see the shingles in 2D Designer's Plan view.

To view a 2D Designer's Plan:

Select View > 2D Designer's Plan, or click
 interview Control toolbar.

Note: You can use the View Filter to hide elements like the roof or ceilings so that you can see inside the model.

3D Viewing

There are two different tools available for 3D viewing. The 3D QuickView tool displays your design from a pre-defined view angle that you choose. 3D QuickViews are parallel views, meaning that distance is eliminated from the view.

The 3D Camera tool displays a 3D perspective view of your design. In a perspective view, the scale of an element decreases according to its distance from the viewer, creating a more real-world view. In a 3D Camera View, the viewing angle, viewing height and target are determined by a virtual camera whose settings you can edit.

When you are in a 3D view, you can use the Dynamic Cutaway tool to strip a portion of your model away to create a 3D cutaway view.

When you view in 3D, a sky image is displayed in the background. You can select a different background image to display if you want.

For a truly virtual experience, you can enter into Presentation Mode, which is designed specifically for use with external controllers and virtual reality headsets.

Quick 3D Viewing

Using the 3D QuickView tool you can instantly view your design in 3D by selecting a pre-defined view angle. You can view your design from the front left, rear left, front right or rear right corner. You can also create an orthogonal elevation view by selecting a front, rear, left or right view angle. Each 3D QuickView is a parallel view, which means distance is eliminated from the view. 3D views are automatically displayed in rendered mode for optimal effect.

To create a basic 3D view:

- Select View > 3D QuickView, or click 3 and a select view Control toolbar or the onscreen Navigator.
- 2. In the **3D QuickView** dialog (or in the Navigator), click the button representing the angle you want to view from. The corner arrows represent the four available isometric views, which let you view your design from any corner at a 30° angle. Clicking the center button creates a 2D rendered plan view.



Note: The 3D QuickView tool is designed for quick, basic 3D viewing. These views are preset and do not have cameras associated with them. Most navigation tools are not available in a 3D QuickView, except for Fly Around. For 3D views that you can adjust, see *Displaying 3D Camera Views* on page 260.

Displaying 3D Camera Views

A camera view is a 3D perspective view. In a perspective view, the scale of an element decreases according to its distance from the viewer, creating a more real-world view.



Envisioneer offers two pre-defined camera views for your convenience: *3D Perspective* and *3D Overview*. The 3D Perspective lets you view your design from a Southwest viewpoint. The 3D Overview looks at your design from an elevated position, creating an overhead view. You can change a 3D view by editing camera properties, as well as create new views.

To view a 3D camera view:

Select View > 3D Cameras, then select the camera view you want to display. Or, click
 of of on the View Control toolbar and select the camera view to display. You can also click of of on the Navigator to display the first 3D camera view in the list.

You can change the view interactively by changing the settings or camera/target positions in the Camera Properties panel on the right side of the screen, or by clicking and dragging on the center pad in the Navigator.

To close the Camera Properties panel and display the Catalog panel, click the panel's **Close Properties** button.

Tip: If you have your cameras turned on in 2D, you can switch to a 3D view by selecting a camera, right-clicking it, then selecting **Activate View**.

Creating a New 3D Camera View

You can create a new 3D view by placing a new camera in your 2D plan view. Once you've inserted the camera, you specify the camera angle and viewing field angle by rotating and clicking your mouse.

To create a new 3D camera view:

- While in 2D plan view, select View > 3D Cameras > Place New Camera, or click of of on the View Control toolbar and select Place New Camera. A camera is attached to your cursor, ready to be inserted.
- 2. Click to insert the camera where you want it.
- 3. Move your cursor in the direction you want to view. Moving the cursor back and forth changes the camera angle.
- 4. Once you have the desired direction and angle in place, click to select a location for the target.
- Once you've defined the position and angle of your camera, the 3D view is instantly displayed.

The view will appear on your 3D Cameras menu and toolbar flyouts for easy access. (By default, the first view you create is called Camera1).

Note: If a camera is placed in a room that has no light fixtures, the camera headlight feature will illuminate the room when you are viewing the room in 3D. This light is only available when viewing and navigating in real time and is not used in rendering.

Creating Dynamic Cutaway Views

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Dynamic Cutaway tool lets you strip away a portion of your 3D model so that you can see inside it. By sliding a selected clipping plane back and forth, you essentially create a moving cross-section of your design. Example



To create a dynamic cutaway view:

- 1. Go into 3D view. How to
- Select View > Dynamic Cutaway, or click
 on the View Control toolbar.
- 3. In the **Dynamic Cutaway** dialog, click on the clipping plane you would like to use. For example, if you want to strip away the front of your house, click on *Front*.
- 4. Click and drag the slider in the **Dynamic Cutaway** dialog to move the clipping plane back and forth. As you move the clipping plane, your design is stripped away.
- 5. To change the angle of the clipping plane, click and drag inside the dialog's clipping plane graphic to rotate the clipping plane.



 When you have created the desired view, click OK. Note that the 3D view will remain a cutaway view once you close the Dynamic Cutaway dialog. If you want to return to the original view, click on *None* in the Dynamic Cutaway dialog before clicking OK.

Changing a 3D Camera View

You can change a 3D camera view using the Camera Properties panel that appears when you switch to a 3D camera view, or by clicking and dragging on the center pad of the Navigator. The position of the camera determines the point you are viewing your design from while in a 3D camera view. You can change your viewpoint by moving your camera in the Camera Properties panel. You can also change your camera height and adjust the viewing field angle.

If you are currently in a 3D camera view, you can use navigation tools such as Walk Around and Fly Around to move the camera dynamically.

You can also change what you're focused on in a 3D camera view by moving the target in the Camera Properties panel. You can also change the target height.

You can use the onscreen Navigator to quickly move the camera and target simultaneously by clicking and dragging on the Navigator's center pad.

Displaying the Camera Properties Panel

You can change your 3D view by editing the settings or camera/target positions in the Camera Properties panel. The Camera Properties panel appears automatically when you switch to a 3D camera view. If you have closed the panel, you can open it again when you need it.

To display the Camera Properties panel:

 With the 3D camera view displayed, rightclick in the view window and select Camera Properties.

Zooming and Panning in the Camera Properties Panel

When the Camera Properties panel is displayed in a 3D camera view, you can zoom and pan the view inside the panel's interactive view map window. For example, you may need to zoom out to be able to bring the camera grip into view. Or, you may need to zoom in to be able to place a camera in a precise position in a room. The zoom and pan tools are located below the view map window in the Camera Properties panel.

To zoom in by increments:

1. Click \mathfrak{Q} below the view map window.

To zoom out by increments:

1. Click

To zoom in and out in real time:

- 1. Click 📷
- 2. To zoom in, click and drag toward the top of the screen.
- 3. To zoom out, click and drag toward the bottom of the screen.
- 4. When the view is the desired size, release your mouse button.

Tip: You can also zoom in and out using the scroll button on your mouse.

To zoom a selected area:

- 2. Click and drag a selection window around the area you want to magnify.

To zoom to the extents of the view map window:

1. Click 🔬 🕵 .

To pan (shift) the view:

- 1. Click 🕂 😷 .
- 2. Click and hold your mouse button in the view map window.
- 3. Drag the view in the direction you want to pan.
- 4. Release the mouse button.

To zoom back to the previous view:

1. Click 🧾

Closing the Camera Properties Panel

The Camera Properties panel appears automatically when you switch to a 3D camera view. You can close the panel at any time to display the Catalog panel.

To close the Camera Properties panel:

1. In the Camera Properties panel, click the **Close Properties** button.

Turning Cameras On and Off

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Every 3D camera view is controlled by a virtual "camera". The Cameras On/Off tool displays a camera icon on the screen. This gives you an idea of where you are viewing from. If you click on a camera, the target and viewing field angle become highlighted.

This lets you know what the camera is focused on, and how much of your design is included in the view.

Having cameras displayed in 2D plan view allows you to move cameras and targets in order to adjust the 3D views they are associated with. This is an alternative to adjusting 3D views interactively with the Camera Properties panel.

To turn cameras on:

- Select View > Viewing Aids > Cameras On/Off, or
- Click 🗋 🔯 on the View Control toolbar

In 2D plan view, all cameras for all 3D camera views are visible. (By default there are two: one for the 3D Perspective, and one for the 3D Overview.) You may need to zoom out to see them.

Changing Your Viewpoint

Moving a camera changes the angle you are viewing from in a 3D camera view. You can change the position of a camera by clicking and dragging the camera grip in the interactive Camera Properties panel. You can also move a camera while in 2D plan view if your cameras are turned on. If the Navigator is displayed you can change your viewpoint by clicking and dragging on the Navigator's center pad.

To change your viewpoint in a 3D camera view:

- Display the 3D camera view, and make sure the Camera Properties panel is displayed. If it isn't, right-click in the view window and select Camera Properties.
- 2. In the view map window of the Camera Properties panel, click and drag the yellow camera grip, then release your mouse button. The 3D view updates automatically.



To change your viewpoint from 2D plan view:

- 1. Make sure you are in 2D plan view.
- 2. Turn your cameras on. How to
- 3. By default, the camera for the 3D Perspective view is located to the left of the model. The camera for the 3D Overview is located towards the right side of the model. Click on the camera you want to move.
- Hover your pointer over the camera's blue grip to display the Move cursor ⊕ ⊕. Or, right-click in the drawing area and select Move Camera.
- 5. Click and drag the camera to move it where you want it.
- 6. To see the resulting view, right-click and select **Activate View**, or simply double-click the camera.

Note: If you use the Navigator to change your viewpoint, the camera and target both move simultaneously in the direction that you drag. If you want to move only the camera, use one of the other techniques described above.

Note: You cannot change the viewpoint of a 3D QuickView, since these views do not have cameras associated with them.

Changing the Camera Height

The height of your camera determines the height you are viewing your model from in a 3D Camera View. A positive camera height lets you look down on your model, while a negative camera height lets you look up at your model.

To change the camera height:

- Display the 3D camera view, and make sure the Camera Properties panel is displayed. If it isn't, right-click in the view window and select Camera Properties.
- 2. In the Camera Properties panel, type the height you want in the **Camera Height** edit box, or use the arrows to scroll up or down through a list of values.

Changing the Target of a 3D Camera View

The target of a 3D camera view is the area you are focused on, or looking towards. You can change the position of a target by clicking and dragging the target grip in the interactive Camera Properties panel. You can also move a target while in 2D plan view.

To change the target in a 3D camera view:

- 1. Display the 3D camera view, and make sure the Camera Properties panel is displayed. If it isn't, right-click in the view window and select **Camera Properties**.
- 2. In the view map window of the Camera Properties panel, click and drag the circular target grip, then release your mouse button. The 3D view updates automatically.



To change a target from 2D plan view:

- 1. In 2D plan view, turn your cameras on. How to
- 2. By default, the camera for the 3D Perspective view is located to the left of the model. The camera for the 3D Overview is located towards the right side of the model. Click on the camera whose target you want to move. The target is usually inside or near your model. It is marked with a blue grip.

click in the drawing area and select **Move Tar-get**.

- 4. Click and drag the target to move it where you want it.
- 5. To see the resulting view, right-click and select **Activate View**, or simply double-click the camera.

Note: If the Navigator is displayed, you can move the camera and target simultaneously by clicking and dragging on the Navigator's center pad. If you want to move only the target, however, use one of the two techniques described above.

Changing the Target Height in a 3D Camera View

Raising or lowering your target can increase or decrease the steepness of the angle you are viewing from when looking through the camera.

To change the target height:

- 1. Display the 3D camera view, and make sure the Camera Properties panel is displayed. If it isn't, right-click in the view window and select **Camera Properties**.
- 2. In the Camera Properties panel, type the height you want in the **Target Height** edit box, or use the arrows to scroll up or down through a list of values.

Changing the Viewing Field Angle

In a 3D camera view, the viewing field refers to your field of vision. It works like a camera lens: higher values produce a wide-angle view; lower values produce a close-up view.

Sometimes changing the viewing field angle makes it seem like you are zooming in or out. This is because for wide-angle views, the program needs to shrink the image to provide enough screen space to contain the view. Conversely, the program enlarges the image to fill the screen at smaller view angles, creating a closeup view.

To change the viewing field angle in a 3D camera view:

1. Display the 3D camera view, and make sure the Camera Properties panel is displayed. If it

isn't, right-click in the view window and select **Camera Properties**.

2. In the Camera Properties panel, type the desired angle in the **View Angle** edit box, or use the slider to increase or decrease the angle.



60º View Angle



100º View Angle

Viewing in Presentation/Virtual Reality Mode

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

In Presentation Mode, you navigate using an external controller (such as a video game controller), or the arrow keys on your keyboard. If you have a virtual reality headset, you can create a 360° virtual reality viewing experience.

When navigating in Presentation Mode, you will not walk through walls or other objects. Instead you can walk up and down stairs, step onto decks, and walk through open doors, just as you would in real life.

To enter into Presentation Mode, select View >

Presentation Mode, or click on the View Control toolbar.

The **Presentation Mode** dialog box will appear. You can enter Presentation mode with a Lightmap or with *None* selected without a Lightmap. You have two choices: **Presentation** or **VR** to view the model.

- Click **Presentation** to enter in Presentation Mode. While in Presentation mode, selecting the +- will incrementally increase/decrease the exposure and selecting shit +- will increase/decrease the gamma correction of the view.
- To navigate in Presentation Mode, use the arrow keys on your keyboard. To look around hold down your left mouse button and move your mouse left or right. Hold down your right mouse button and move your mouse to look up and down.
- **NOTE:** If it is too dark or too light as you enter Presentation Mode, use the + or to adjust the level of brightness.
- Click VR to enter Virtual Reality Mode. You must have a compatible virtual reality headset for VR to work. This option will be greyed out if it doesn't detect the appropriate equipment.

• To exit Presentation or Virtual Reality Mode,



By default, a standard 360° view is produced during virtual reality viewing. You can switch to a stereoscopic view in your Program Settings (Settings>Program Settings>Graphics). In a stereoscopic view, depth data is added between the foreground and background, creating a more immersive experience. See *Stereoscopic VR Viewing* on page 677.

If you want to render a panoramic view that can be shared and viewed with the VR app, see *Rendering a Panoramic View for VR Viewing* on page 533.

Stereoscopic VR Viewing

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, a standard 360° view is produced during virtual reality viewing in Presentation Mode. If you switch to a stereoscopic view, depth data is added between the foreground and background, creating a more immersive experience.

To enable or disable stereoscopic VR viewing:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Graphics** in the left column.
- 3. In the VR pane, check or uncheck the **Ste**-**reoscopic** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Scene Properties

When a view window contains a 3D scene, there are a number of properties that you can specify to control the appearance of the scene. These properties may also come into play when creating 3D Real View renderings.

Specifying the Properties of a 3D Scene

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite When a view window contains a 3D scene, there are a number of properties that you can specify to control the appearance of the scene, such as the background and amount of daylight.

To specify scene properties:

- Display the scene, then right-click and select Scene Properties. Or, select View > View Properties and select the Scene Properties tab.
- 2. In the **Scene Properties** panel, specify the following settings:

Use physically accurate lighting. Enabling this option causes light to be simulated in a more natural way, resulting in optimal rendering quality. Note, however, that these advanced lighting calculations will increase rendering time.

Exposure. Determines how light or dark the image will appear. The higher the value, the lighter the image will be.

Date and Time. Determines how much daylight will be in the scene relative to your global location.

Background. If **Use physically accurate lighting** is enabled, a realistic sky background is automatically generated, and the background type is set to **Physical Sky**.

If Use physically accurate lighting is

disabled, you can select an image to use for the background. From the **Type** drop box, select either **2D Image** or **3D Image** depending on the type of image you want to use. 2D images are displayed directly across from the camera, and therefore move when you move. 3D images form a skybox, creating the perception of a realistic 3D world. You can then select the image to use from the **Materials** library.

Sky settings. This setting helps to control the amount of light being cast onto a scene. Choices are *Clear Sky, Partly Cloudy Sky,* and *Overcast Sky.* For example, if your rendered image looks overexposed, you can select a partly cloudy or overcast sky to reduce the amount of light coming through.

If Use physically accurate lighting is

enabled, the following settings are also available:

Sky Power. The sky multiplier. Set the value to 1.0 to create a physically accurate sky texture. Lower values can be used to simulate the effect of clouds or environment on the sky intensity.

Sky Saturation. The intensity of color in an image. If saturation is set to 1.0, colors are as computed by the model, and the image will have overly bright colors. If the value is lower, returned colors will look more grayish.

Sun Power. The intensity of sunlight. This applies in Realistic display mode and photo-realistic renderings, both of which displays sun and shadows.

Enable reflections. Simulates light reflecting off of objects and surfaces.

Enable sun light. If disabled, sun light is not created, regardless of the time of day. It is recommended that you disable sun light if you are rendering within a room that has no openings.

Enable sun shadow. Simulates the shadows cast by objects when they are illuminated by the sun.

3. Click Close.

Using Physically Accurate Lighting in a Scene

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can make a 3D scene more photorealistic by using physically accurate lighting. Enabling this option creates a realistic sky, and causes light to be simulated in a more natural way, resulting in optimal rendering quality. Note, however, that these advanced lighting calculations will increase rendering time.

To use physically accurate daylight for a 3D scene:

 Display the scene, then right-click and select Scene Properties. Or, select View > View Properties and select the Scene Properties tab. In the Scene Properties panel, enable the Use physically accurate lighting check box.

Defining the Time of Day in a Scene

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The time of day in a 3D scene determines how much daylight will be in the scene relative to your global location.

To define the time of day:

- Display the view, then right-click and select Scene Properties. Or, select View > View Properties and select the Scene Properties tab.
- By default, the date is set to the current date. If you would like to set the date to a different time of year, click the calendar icon in the **Date** field, then select the desired date.
- To set a time of day, click on the hour or minute value in the **Time** field, then type the desired value for the hour or minute. To switch from AM to PM, or vice versa, select the **AM** or **PM** setting and click an adjacent arrow key.
- 4. To keep track of changes in time due to daylight savings, enable the **DST** check box.
- 5. Click Close.

Selecting a Background for a Scene

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, a sky image is displayed behind your model when you are in a 3D view. You can select a different image to display, including custom bitmaps that you have imported. If you have multiple view windows defined, you can select a different background for each one if desired.

To select a background for a view:

 Display the view, then right-click and select Scene Properties. Or, select View > View Properties and select the Scene Properties tab.
- 2. To use a realistic sky background, enable the **Use physically accurate lighting** check box.
- 3. To use a selected image for the background, disable **Use physically accurate lighting**. In the **Background** pane, select either **3D Image** or **2D Image** from the **Type** drop box. 2D images are displayed directly across from the camera, and therefore move when you move. 3D images form a skybox, creating the perception of a realistic 3D world. You can then select the image to use from the **Materials** library. A number of predefined backgrounds are available in the **Landscape Back-grounds** folder.
- 4. Click **Close** in the **Scene Properties** panel.

Changing the Sun and Sky Settings in a Scene

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Changing a scene's sky conditions can adjust the amount of light in the scene. For example, if a scene looks overexposed, you can change the sky to partly cloudy or overcast to reduce the amount of light being cast onto the scene.

To change a scene's sky settings:

- Display the scene, then right-click and select Scene Properties. Or, select View > View Properties and select the Scene Properties tab.
- Select the desired sky condition from the Sky settings drop box. Choices are Clear Sky, Partly Cloudy Sky, and Overcast Sky.
- 3. If **Use physically accurate lighting** is enabled, the following settings are also available:

Sky power. The sky multiplier. Set the value to 1.0 to create a physically accurate sky texture. Lower values can be used to simulate the effect of clouds or environment on the sky intensity.

Sky saturation. The intensity of color in an image. If saturation is set to 1.0, colors are as computed by the model, and the image will

have overly bright colors. If the value is lower, returned colors will look more grayish.

Sun power. The intensity of sunlight. This applies in Realistic display mode and photo-realistic renderings, both of which displays sun and shadows.

Enable reflections. Simulates light reflecting off of objects and surfaces.

Enable sun light. If disabled, sun light is not created, regardless of the time of day. It is recommended that you disable sun light if you are rendering within a room that has no openings.

Enable sun shadow. Simulates the shadows cast by objects when they are illuminated by the sun.

Enabling Reflections and Shadows in a Scene

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Enabling reflections and sun shadows can create an added level of realism to a 3D scene.

To enable reflections and/or sun shadows in a scene:

- Display the scene, then right-click and select Scene Properties. Or, select View > View Properties and select the Scene Properties tab.
- 2. To simulate light reflecting off of objects and surfaces, enable the **Enable Reflections** check box.
- To simulate the shadows cast by objects when they are illuminated by the sun, enable the Enable Sun Shadow check box.

Specifying the Exposure in a Scene

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Exposure determines how light or dark a scene will appear by controlling the amount of light collected by the camera.

To specify the exposure in a scene:

- Display the scene, then right-click and select Scene Properties. Or, select View > View Properties and select the Scene Properties tab.
- 2. Move the **Exposure** slider to the desired value. The higher the value, the lighter the image will be.

Navigating in 3D

Envisioneer offers a variety of tools for navigating dynamically in 3D camera views. Once a tool is selected, just use your mouse to perform the navigation. You can return to the previous view instantly using the Reset Camera tool.

You can also use your mouse or the arrow keys on your keyboard to perform some navigation functions without having to select tools from the menu, toolbar or Navigator. This lets you change your view instantly for a more quick and efficient design process.

Note: If you move into a room that has no light fixtures, the camera headlight feature will illuminate the room when you are viewing the room in 3D. This light is only available when viewing and navigating in real time and is not used in rendering.

Click on a tool below to learn more about it.

Walk Around

Fly Around

Look Around

Reset Camera

Walking Around in a 3D Camera View

When you are in a 3D camera view, you can use the Walk Around tool to walk around your model, or even go right inside it. You can walk forward, backward, left or right.

To walk around in a 3D camera view:

 Select View > Zoom and Navigate > Walk Around, or right-click in the drawing area and select Walk Around, or click ?? ?? on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar or on the Navigator.

- Click and hold down your mouse button in the drawing area or on the Navigator's center pad.
- 3. Drag in the direction you want to move.
 - To move forward, drag upward.
 - To move backward, drag downward.
 - To walk left or right, drag left or right.
 - If you drag up to the left, your path of motion will curve upward to the left, and so forth.

Tip: You can also walk around using only your mouse. Click and hold the CTRL key and your left mouse button, then drag to walk around.

Tip: You can also use your arrow keys to walk forward and backward. Click the up arrow to walk forward, and click the down arrow to walk backward.

Note: The Walk Around tool is not available if the view is a 3D QuickView.

Note: By default, motion will continue when you stop dragging, until you release your mouse button. If you would prefer that motion stop when you stop dragging, you should change your motion response setting. See *Setting the Zoom and Navigation Motion Response* on page 275.

Flying Around Your 3D Model

In a 3D camera view, the Fly Around tool revolves the camera around the target, making it seem like the model is spinning.

To fly around your model in a 3D camera view:

- Select View > Zoom and Navigate > Fly Around, or right-click in the drawing area and select Fly Around, or click (() () () () () () () Zoom and Navigate toolbar or on the onscreen Navigator.
- Click and hold down your mouse button in the drawing area or on the Navigator's center pad.
- 3. Drag in the direction that you want to rotate the model. For example, if you want to rotate the model to the right, drag to the right.

Note: To have the model rotate in the opposite direction when you drag, enable the **Invert Orbit Navigation** setting in **Settings > Program Settings > Navigation**.

Note: By default, motion will continue when you stop dragging, until you release your mouse button. If you would prefer that motion stop when you stop dragging, you should change your motion response setting. See *Setting the Zoom and Navigation Motion Response* on page 275.

Tip: You can also fly around by clicking and dragging your middle mouse button provided that the Fly Around tool is assigned to the middle mouse button in your navigation settings. (By default, the Look Around tool is assigned to the middle button.)

Spinning the View with the Look Around Tool

In a 3D camera view, the Look Around tool revolves the target around the camera.

To spin the view in a 3D camera view:

- Select View > Zoom and Navigate > Look Around, or right-click in the drawing area and select Look Around, or click (on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar or on the Navigator.
- 2. Click and hold down your mouse button in the drawing area or on the Navigator's center pad, then drag to look around.
 - Drag right to move the target in a counterclockwise direction. Your model orbits around you in a clockwise direction.
 - Drag left to move the target in a clockwise direction. Your model orbits around you in a counterclockwise direction.
 - Drag up to lower the height and shorten the distance of the target. Your view becomes high-angle, and your model moves toward the top of the screen.
 - Drag down to raise the height and lengthen the distance of the target. Your

view becomes low-angle, and your model moves toward the bottom of the screen.

Note: Be careful when using the Look Around tool. It is very easy to lose sight of your model since the camera's "eye" is fixed in one direction only. It does not move to follow the orbiting target. Therefore, your field of vision is limited, and your model can quickly get above, below or behind you.

Note: The Look Around tool is not available if the view is a 3D QuickView.

Resetting the Camera

If you have moved the camera of a 3D camera view, either by dragging it in 2D plan view or using a navigation tool like Walk Around or Pan, you can use the Reset Camera tool to move the camera back into its original position. Note that this tool is only available when the current view is a 3D view.

To reset the camera to its original position:

 Select View > Zoom and Navigate > Reset
 Camera, or click b on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar.

Note: The Reset Camera tool is not available if the view is a 3D QuickView.

Zooming and Panning

While designing you will probably need to zoom in on something to be able to see it more clearly. You can use a variety of zoom tools to magnify or demagnify the current view or a portion of it. This gives you control over the amount of detail displayed.

Zoom In. Magnifies the entire view in increments.

Zoom Out. De-magnifies the entire view in increments.

Zoom Realtime. Continuously magnifies or shrinks the view as you click and drag with your mouse.

Zoom Window. Magnifies a particular area of your design.

Zoom to Fit. Magnifies the entire view to the extents of the drawing area.

Zoom Previous. Returns the view to the previous zoom level.

The Pan tool lets you shift the view around in the drawing area.

Zooming In

The Zoom In tool magnifies the entire view in increments. Zooming is possible in both 2D and 3D view.

To zoom in:

- Select View > Zoom and Navigate > Zoom
 In, or click ⊕ ⊕ on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar.
- To zoom in more, select the Zoom In tool repeatedly until the view is sufficiently magnified.

Zooming Out

The Zoom Out tool reduces the size of the current view in increments.

To zoom out:

- Select View > Zoom and Navigate > Zoom
 Out, or click Q Q on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar.
- 2. To zoom out more, select the Zoom Out tool repeatedly until the desired zoom level is achieved.

Zooming in Realtime

The Zoom Realtime tool continuously magnifies or shrinks the view as you click and drag with your mouse. You can zoom in and out in 2D plan view or any 3D view.

To zoom in and out:

- Select View > Zoom and Navigate > Zoom Realtime, or click x in on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar or on the Navigator.
- 2. Click in the drawing area or on the Navigator's center pad, then drag up or down to zoom in or out. To zoom in, click and drag upward. To zoom out, click and drag downward.
- 3. When the view is the desired size, release your mouse button.

Note: By default, zooming will continue when you stop dragging, until you release your mouse

button. If you would prefer that zooming stop when you stop dragging, you should change your motion response setting. See *Setting the Zoom and Navigation Motion Response* on page 275.

Tip: You can also zoom in and out using the scroll wheel on your mouse, or by holding down the CTRL key and right mouse button simultaneously.

Zooming With a Scroll Wheel Mouse

If you have a mouse with a scroll wheel, you can zoom in and out in real time by rolling the wheel. The position of your mouse pointer determines the center of zoom.

To zoom with a scroll wheel mouse:

- 1. Position your pointer over the center of the area you want to zoom.
- 2. To zoom in, roll the wheel forward.
- 3. To zoom out, roll the wheel backward.

Zooming a Selected Area (Zoom Window)

Using the Zoom Window tool you can magnify a particular area of your design by drawing a selection window around it.

To zoom a selected area:

- Select View > Zoom and Navigate > Zoom Window, or click a on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar. Your cursor becomes a magnifying glass.
- 2. Click and drag a selection window around the area you want to magnify.



Note: The Zoom Window tool is not available in 3D camera views.

Zooming to Fit the Drawing Area

The Zoom to Fit tool instantly extends your drawing to the edges of the drawing area. This ensures your entire drawing is visible at the most maximized view possible, and makes full use of the drawing area. Note that the terrain is considered part of your drawing. If you want to zoom your model to fit the drawing area, you need to turn the terrain off before using Zoom to Fit.

To zoom the drawing to fit the drawing area:

 Select View > Zoom and Navigate > Zoom to Fit, or click ?? ?? on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar.

Note: The Zoom to Fit tool is not available in 3D camera views.

Panning

Using the Pan tool you can move the current view of your design to bring a particular part of your design into view. This is especially useful when the area you want to view is currently not visible because you have zoomed in on your drawing.

To pan the current view:

- Select View > Zoom and Navigate > Pan, or click on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar or on the Navigator.
- 2. Click and hold your mouse in the drawing area or on the Navigator's center pad.
- 3. Drag the view in the direction you want to pan.
- 4. Release the mouse button.

Tip: You can also pan the view using your mouse. To pan in 2D view, click and drag the middle button. To pan in 3D view, click and hold the CTRL key while pressing the middle button.

Tip: In 2D views you can also pan the view using the arrow keys on your keyboard.

Zooming Back to the Previous View

If you have used a zoom or pan tool, you can use the Zoom Previous tool to instantly return the view to its previous state.

To zoom back to the previous view:

 Select View > Zoom and Navigate > Zoom
 Previous, or click Q Q on the Zoom and Navigate toolbar.

Zoom & Navigation Settings

You can use both your mouse and arrow keys to zoom and navigate, instead of using menus and toolbars. There are also various settings that let you precisely control the way you zoom and navigate. You can experiment with these settings to tailor the zoom and navigation tools to the way you like to work.

Settings and functions include:

- Mouse controls ...
- Arrow key controls ...

- Zoom and navigation speed ...
- Zoom and navigation motion response ...
- Middle mouse button assignment ...

Zooming and Navigating with the Mouse

You can use the buttons on your mouse to perform many zoom and navigation functions instead of making selections from the menu, toolbar or Navigator. This allows you to instantly change your view while designing, making the design process more quick and efficient. For example, you can zoom in realtime by simply rolling the scroll wheel on your mouse.

In 2D view you can use the mouse to zoom and pan. In 3D view you can use the mouse to zoom, pan, walk around, look around, or fly around.

You can view the mouse control settings at any time by displaying the Navigation page in your Program Settings.

To view mouse control settings:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Navigation** in the left pane.

Mouse Controls 2D Plan Views Scroll Wheel = Zoom In/Out Middle Button = Pan 3D Views Middle Button = Pan © Fly Around © Look Around Scroll Wheel = Zoom In/Out Ctrl + Left Button = Walk Ctrl + Middle Button = Pan Ctrl + Right Button = Zoom In/Out

Mouse Controls
2D Plan Views
Scroll Wheel = Zoom In/Out
Middle Button = Pan
3D Views
Middle Button = O Fly Around
Look Around
Scroll Wheel = Zoom In/Out
Ctrl + Left Button = Walk
Ctrl + Middle Button = Pan
Ctrl + Right Button = Zoom In/Out

Note: By default, the Look Around tool is assigned to the middle mouse button. You can assign the Fly Around tool to it if you prefer by selecting the Fly Around option for the Middle Button setting.

Assigning a Navigation Action to the Middle Mouse Button

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use your middle mouse button to either Look Around or Fly Around without having to make a selection from the menu, toolbar or Navigator. By default, the Look Around tool is assigned to the middle mouse button. You can choose to assign the Fly Around tool to it if you prefer.

To assign a navigation action to the middle mouse button:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 iii on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Nav-igation** in the left pane.
- 3. In the Mouse Controls area, select either the **Look Around** or **Fly Around** option next to the **Middle Button** setting.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Inverting the Orbit when Navigating in 3D

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, when using the Fly Around tool, the model rotates in the direction in which you drag.

To have the model rotate in the opposite direction when you drag, follow these steps:

- 1. Select Settings > Program Settings > Navigation.
- 2. In the Zoom and Navigation Settings pane, enable **Invert Orbit Navigation**.

Using Arrow Keys to Pan and Navigate

You can use the arrow keys on your keyboard to pan, walk or look around instead of making selections from the menu, toolbar or Navigator. This allows you to instantly shift your view when needed. In 2D view you can use the arrow keys to pan the view. In 3D view you can use the arrow keys to walk and look around. You can click an arrow key to move in increments, or click and hold an arrow key for continuous motion in the specified direction.

You can view the arrow key settings at any time by displaying the Navigation page in your Program Settings.

To view arrow key settings:

Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.

2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Navigation** in the left pane.



Adjusting Zoom and Navigation Speed

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can adjust the rate of motion for zoom and navigation tools so that your motion is faster or slower when dragging your mouse. This applies to continuous motion tools, including Zoom Realtime, Pan, Walk Around, Fly Around, and Look Around.

To adjust zoom and navigation speed:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Nav-igation** in the left pane.
- 3. In the *Zoom and Navigation Speed* area, click and drag the slider to adjust the zoom and navigation speed. Slide left for slower motion, or slide right for faster motion.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Setting the Zoom and Navigation Motion Response

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, when using continuous motion tools such as Zoom Realtime, Pan, Walk Around and Fly Around, motion continues in the current direction when you stop dragging your mouse, until you release your mouse button. If you prefer that motion stop when you stop dragging, you can disable continuous motion in your program settings.

To select a zoom and navigation motion response:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Nav-igation** in the left pane.
- 3. In the *Zoom and Navigation Speed* area, check or uncheck the **Continuous Motion** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Elevations

Elevations are the front, back and side views of a building. The Elevations menu contains four predefined elevation view tools - **Front Elevation**, **Right Elevation**, **Rear Elevation**, and **Left Elevation**. Just select one to instantly display an elevation view. You can also create a custom elevation if you want. You can control the display of elevation marks in your drawing, and edit a variety of elevation properties.

If you would like to add detail to an elevation, such as text and dimensions, we recommend that you do this in Worksheet View — the program's 2D production drafting module. Simply import the elevation view using the Define SmartView tool, and then use whatever drafting tools you need.

By default, drafting tools are not available in elevation views in Model View (they are only available in 2D plan view). You can, however, create a new view window in Model View and use the Insert View tool to copy an elevation view into that window, and then add detail. More info

Viewing Elevations

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Elevations are 2D images that show a particular side of your model (front, rear, left or right) as if you were looking at it face on. While in an elevation view you can zoom in and out as well as change the display type.



To view an elevation:

- Select View > Elevations, or click on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. From the flyout, select the elevation you want to view (Front, Back, Right or Left).

When you are in elevation view, the Elevation Properties panel is displayed on the right side of the screen. You can use this panel to interactively adjust the elevation and its settings.

Tip: If you have your elevation marks turned on in your 2D plan view, you can switch to an elevation

view by selecting an elevation mark, right-clicking it, then selecting **Activate View**. Or, you can simply double-click the elevation mark.

Creating a Custom Elevation

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can create a custom elevation by inserting an elevation mark in your 2D plan view. Once you've inserted the mark, which represents your viewpoint, you can rotate it using your mouse to define the view direction.

To create a custom elevation:

- 1. Make sure you are in 2D plan view.
- Turn your elevation marks on. This is not necessary, but we recommend it so that you can see where other elevation marks are located. The default elevation marks are located at the extents of the terrain, so you may need to zoom out to see them.
- Select View > Elevations > Create New Elevation, or click and select Create New Elevation. An elevation mark is attached to your cursor, ready to be inserted.
- 4. Click to insert the new elevation mark. This represents your viewpoint, so naturally you would select a point in front of the model side you want to look at in your elevation.
- Move your cursor to rotate the arrow on the elevation mark and define the view direction. Once it is pointing in the desired direction (usually towards your model), click to finish.

Once you've positioned the elevation mark, the resulting elevation is instantly displayed. It is also added to the Elevations menu and toolbar flyout for easy access. Note that elevations sections are named automatically when you create them, starting with the name A1. The number increments each time you create a new elevation or section. You can rename elevations and sections in their properties.

Displaying the Elevation Properties Panel

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you switch to elevation view, the Elevation Properties panel is automatically displayed on the right side of the screen. You can use this panel to interactively adjust the elevation and its settings. If you have closed the panel, you can open it again when you need it.

To display the Elevation Properties panel:

 With the elevation displayed, right-click in the view window and select Elevation Properties.

Zooming and Panning in the Elevation Properties Panel

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When the Elevation Properties panel is displayed in an elevation view, you can zoom and pan the view inside the panel's interactive view map window. For example, you may need to zoom out to be able to see the entire model or the elevation mark icon.

To zoom in by increments:

1. Click \mathbb{A} below the view map window.

To zoom out by increments:

1. Click

To zoom in and out in real time:

- 1. Click 📷.
- 2. To zoom in, click and drag toward the top of the screen.
- 3. To zoom out, click and drag toward the bottom of the screen.
- 4. When the view is the desired size, release your mouse button.

Tip: You can also zoom in and out using the scroll button on your mouse.

To zoom a selected area:

- 1. Click . Your cursor becomes a magnifying glass.
- 2. Click and drag a selection window around the area you want to magnify.

To zoom to the extents of the view map window:

1. Click 🥁 🕵

To pan (shift) the view:

- 1. Click 🚬 🖑 .
- 2. Click and hold your mouse button in the view map window.
- 3. Drag the view in the direction you want to pan.
- 4. Release the mouse button.
- To zoom back to the previous view:
- 1. Click 🗾

Closing the Elevation Properties Panel

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Elevation Properties panel appears automatically when you switch to an elevation view. You can close the panel at any time to display the Catalog panel.

To close the Elevation Properties panel:

1. In the Elevation Properties panel, click the **Close Properties** button.

Turning Elevation Marks On and Off

You can use the View Filter to display or hide elevation marks in your 2D plan view. An elevation mark contains the label given to the elevation in the elevation's properties, as well as a target arrow that identifies the view direction of the elevation.



By default, four marks are displayed, one for each of the default elevations on the Elevation View menu. If you have created a custom elevation, a mark is displayed for that elevation as well.

To turn elevation marks on or off:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the **Viewing Aids** tab.

- In the Elevation Mark row, click the eye icon in the *Display* column to toggle elevation marks on or off.
 - 🐞 🚲 Marks are turned on
 - 🚕 Marks are turned off

The marks are located at the extents of your drawing, so you may need to zoom out to see them.

If you select and right-click an elevation mark, you can access a menu of tools including Move, Move Target and Activate View.

Moving Elevation Marks

By default, elevation marks are centered with your model, which means the model is centered on the screen when you view the resulting elevation view. If you move an elevation mark in your 2D plan view, the model may be moved left or right when you display the elevation view.

You can move an elevation mark while in elevation view using the interactive Elevation Properties panel. Alternatively you can move it while in 2D plan view, then display the resulting view.

To move an elevation mark while in elevation view:

- Display the elevation view, and make sure the Elevation Properties panel is displayed. If it isn't, right-click in the view window and select **Elevation Properties**.
- 2. In the view map window of the Elevation Properties panel, click and drag the elevation mark grip. The elevation view updates instantly.



For front and rear elevations, move the mark left or right. For left or right elevations, move the mark up or down. Note that moving a mark closer to or farther away from the model has no effect on the resulting elevation view.

To move an elevation mark while in 2D plan view:

- 1. Select the elevation mark in 2D plan view.
- Hover your pointer over the mark's blue grip to display the Move cursor. Or, rightclick in the drawing area and select Move.
- 3. Click and drag the mark to move it where you want it.
- 4. Right-click and select **Activate View** to see the resulting elevation, or simply double-click the elevation mark.

Changing the Target of an Elevation

By default, elevation marks point straight at your model. The result is a completely face-on view when you display the resulting elevation view. If you rotate an elevation mark, you change the target of the elevation. This focuses the view on a different part of your design when you display the elevation view.

To change the target of an elevation:

- 1. Go to 2D plan view, and make sure your elevation marks are turned on.
- 2. Select the mark whose target you want to change.
- 3. Right-click and select Move Target.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the mark so it is pointing in a different direction.
- 5. Right-click and select **Activate View** to see the result, or simply double-click the elevation mark.

Editing Elevation Properties

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can edit the name of an elevation as it appears on the Elevation Views menu, as well as edit the mark text and mark text style.

To edit elevation properties:

- 1. Display the elevation view and make sure the Elevation Properties panel is displayed. If it isn't, right-click in the view window and select **Elevation Properties**.
- 2. To edit the name of the elevation as it appears on the Elevations menu, edit the name in the **Name** edit box.
- 3. To edit the text that appears on the elevation mark, edit the text in the **Mark Text** edit box.
- 4. To apply a different text style to the elevation mark, click the **Text Style** button and make a selection from the **Text Styles** dialog. You can also add and edit text styles if you want.

Detailing Elevations

In Model View, text, dimension and drafting tools are only available in 2D plan view, and not in elevation views. To be able to detail an elevation in Model View, you need to create a new view window, then use the Insert View tool to import an image of the elevation into the new view window. If your product does not contain the Insert View tool, this procedure is not possible.

To avoid having to create new view windows, and have more detailing and editing power, we recommend detailing elevations in Worksheet View — the program's 2D production drafting module.

To be able to detail an elevation in Model View, follow these steps:

- 1. Create the desired elevation view in the *Model* view window.
- 2. Create a new view window and name it *Elevation* (or something similar). How to
- 3. With a 2D plan view displayed in the new view window, use the **Insert View** tool to copy the elevation view from the *Model* view window to the new view window. How to
- 4. Detail the copied elevation view image as desired.

Deleting an Elevation

You can delete an elevation from the Elevations menu by deleting its corresponding elevation mark in 2D plan view.

To delete an elevation:

- 1. Go to 2D plan view, and make sure your elevation marks are turned on.
- 2. Select the mark to delete.
- 3. Press the **Delete** key on your keyboard, or right-click and select **Delete**.

Sections

A section is a cross-section view of your design created by cutting through the building. Section views are useful for clarifying construction details. You can use the Create New Section tool to create a custom section at any time.

Once a section has been created you can edit its viewpoint, depth, and other properties. You can also control the display of section marks.

If you would like to add detail to a section, such as text and dimensions, we recommend that you do this in Worksheet View — the program's 2D production drafting module. Simply import the section view using the Define SmartView tool, and then use whatever drafting tools you need.

By default, drafting tools are not available in section views in Model View (they are only available in 2D plan view). You can, however, create a new view window in Model View and use the Insert View tool to copy a section view into that window, and then add detail. More info

Creating a Section

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can cut through any portion of your model to create a section view, or *cross-section*. Section views are a great way to see the interior features of your model that you are not able to see from the outside, and clarify construction details.



To create a section, you draw a section line through your model in 2D plan view, then click to define the view direction and depth.

To create a section:

- 1. Make sure you are in 2D plan view.
- Select View > Sections > Create New Section, or click on the View Control toolbar and select Create New Section.
- Select two points to draw a line that cuts through your model. This is the line you will be viewing from.
- 4. Move your cursor in the direction you want to view. The more you move away from the section line, the deeper your view becomes. Once the bounding box is the desired distance and direction from the section line, click

to finish.



Once you've defined the section mark, the resulting section view is instantly displayed. It is also added to the Sections menu and toolbar flyouts for easy access. Note that elevations sections are named automatically when you create them, starting with the name A1. The number increments each time you create a new elevation or section. You can rename elevations and sections in their properties.

Viewing Sections

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have created section views, you can display them at any time using the Sections menu or toolbar.

To view a section:

 Select View > Sections, or click and on the View Control toolbar and select the section name.

Tip: If you have your section marks turned on in your 2D plan view, you can switch to a section view by selecting a section mark, right-clicking it, then selecting **Activate View**.

Displaying the Section Properties Panel

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you switch to section view, the Section Properties panel is automatically displayed on the right side of the screen. You can use this panel to interactively adjust the section and its settings. If you have closed the panel, you can open it again when you need it.

To display the Section Properties panel:

 With the section view displayed, right-click in the view window and select Section Properties.

Zooming and Panning in the Section Properties Panel

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When the Section Properties panel is displayed in a section view, you can zoom and pan the view inside the panel's interactive view map window. For example, you may need to zoom out to be able to see the entire model or the section mark icons.

The zoom and pan tools are located below the view map window.

To zoom in by increments:

1. Click \mathbb{Q} below the view map window.

To zoom out by increments:

- 1. Click 🤤 🔍 .
- To zoom in and out in real time:
- 1. Click 📷.
- 2. To zoom in, click and drag toward the top of the screen.
- 3. To zoom out, click and drag toward the bottom of the screen.
- 4. When the view is the desired size, release your mouse button.

Tip: You can also zoom in and out using the scroll button on your mouse.

To zoom a selected area:

1. Click Le. Your cursor becomes a magnifying glass. 2. Click and drag a selection window around the area you want to magnify.

To zoom to the extents of the view map window:

1. Click 🧝 🥵 .

To pan (shift) the view:

- 1. Click 🕂 🕐 .
- 2. Click and hold your mouse button in the view map window.
- 3. Drag the view in the direction you want to pan.
- 4. Release the mouse button.

To zoom back to the previous view:

1. Click 🗾 📃 .

Closing the Section Properties Panel

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Section Properties panel appears automatically when you switch to a section view. You can close the panel at any time to display the Catalog panel.

To close the Section Properties panel:

1. In the Section Properties panel, click the **Close Properties** button.

Turning Section Marks On and Off

When you create a section, a section mark is displayed in the 2D plan view. The section mark contains markers at each end of the section line which indicate the direction of the section view. You can turn section marks on and off using the View Filter.

To turn section marks on or off:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the **Viewing Aids** tab.
- 3. In the **Section Mark** row, click the eye icon in the *Display* column to toggle section marks on or off.
 - 🐞 🖝 Marks are turned on
 - 😞 Marks are turned off

Changing Your Viewpoint in a Section

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can change your viewpoint in a section by moving a section mark. You can use the Section Properties panel to move the section mark interactively. Alternatively you can move the section mark in 2D plan view, then display the resulting view.

To change your viewpoint in a section:

- Display the section, and make sure the Section Properties panel is displayed. If it isn't, right-click in the view window and select Section Properties.
- 2. In the view map window of the Section Properties panel, click and drag the red square grip at the center of the section mark line, then release your mouse button. The section updates instantly.



To change your viewpoint from 2D plan view:

- 1. In 2D plan view, make sure your section marks are turned on.
- 2. Click on the section mark.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the blue grip on the section line to display the Move cursor
 Or, right-click in the drawing area and select Move.
- 4. Click and drag the mark to move it where you want it.

5. Right-click and select **Activate View** to see the result.

Changing the Depth of a Section

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can change the depth of a section by stretching the section line bounding box. You can change the depth interactively using the Section Properties panel. Alternatively you can change the depth in 2D plan view, then display the resulting view.

To change the depth of a section:

- Display the section, and make sure the Section Properties panel is displayed. If it isn't, right-click in the view window and select Section Properties.
- 2. In the view map window of the Section Properties panel, click and drag the circular grip opposite the main section mark line, then release your mouse button. The section updates instantly.



To change the depth from 2D plan view:

- 1. In 2D plan view, make sure your section marks are turned on.
- 2. Click on the section mark.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the blue grip on the bounding box line to display the Stretch

- Click and drag to make the bounding box smaller or bigger. The bigger the box, the deeper the view.
- 5. Right-click and select **Activate View** to see the result.

Detailing Sections

To detail a section, you can use a variety of text, dimension and drafting tools. Such tools are only available in 2D plan view, and not in section views. You can, however, create a new view window, then use the Insert View tool to import an image of the section into the new view window. If your product does not contain the Insert View tool, this procedure is not possible.

To avoid having to create new view windows, and have more detailing and editing power, we recommend detailing sections in Worksheet View the program's 2D production drafting module.

To be able to detail a section, follow these steps:

- 1. Create the desired section view in the *Model* view window. How to
- 2. Create a new view window and name it *Section* (or something similar). How to
- With a 2D plan view displayed in the new view window, use the **Insert View** tool to copy the section view from the *Model* view window to the new view window. How to
- 4. Detail the copied section image as desired.

Editing Section Properties

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can edit the name of a section as it appears on the Sections menu, as well as edit the section mark text and text style.

To edit section properties:

- Display the section and make sure the Section Properties panel is displayed. If it isn't, rightclick in the view window and select **Section Properties**.
- To edit the name of the section as it appears on the Sections menu, edit the name in the Name edit box.

- To edit the text that appears on the section mark, edit the text in the Mark Text edit box.
- To apply a different text style to the section mark, click the **Text Style** button and make a selection from the **Text Styles** dialog. You can also add and edit text styles.

Deleting a Section

You can delete a section from the Sections menu by deleting its corresponding section mark in 2D plan view.

To delete a section:

- In 2D plan view, make sure your section marks are turned on.
- 2. Select the mark to delete.
- 3. Press the **Delete** key on your keyboard, or right-click and select **Delete**.

Stereo Vision

Wearing a pair of 3D glasses while the Stereo Vision tool is turned on creates a view that provides depth perception, making it seem like every detail is popping out at you. Basically, it makes you feel like you're really there!

There are a number of stereo vision settings that you can adjust to fine-tune your viewing experience.

Stereo vision works when you are viewing still 3D images and also when you are navigating in 3D.

What is Stereo Vision?

Stereo Vision gives you depth perception. Here's how it works:

Both of your eyes are aimed at the same target, but because each eye is located in a different position, each takes in a unique view from its own perspective. When the two separate images arrive simultaneously in the back of the brain, they are united into one picture. The combined picture appears threedimensional because it has the added depth dimension.

Displaying a 3D Stereo View

Selecting the Stereo Vision tool while wearing a pair of 3D glasses adds the perception of depth to a 3D view, making it seem like every detail is popping out at you. This is a great way to really step into your model and get a true feel for it.

To display a 3D stereo view:

- 1. Display a 3D view.
- 2. Select View > Stereo Vision > Stereo Vision On/Off.
- 3. Put on a pair of 3D glasses. You can use any pair of anaglyphic (red/cyan) glasses.

Tip: Stereo vision works when viewing still images as well as when you are navigating through a 3D scene.

Adjusting Stereo Vision Settings

You can adjust your 3D stereo view by editing the stereo vision settings. Make sure you have your 3D glasses on while editing the settings.

To edit stereo vision settings:

- 1. Select View > Stereo Vision > Stereo Vision Settings.
- 2. Editing the settings by clicking and dragging the sliders. For the most part you just need to play around with the settings until you achieve the result you want.

Below is a description of each setting.

Stereo Effect. Adjusts the distance between the red image and cyan image.

Comfort Adjustment. Caters to the differences in the human eye. Since each eye takes in a unique view from its own perspective, and each person's eyes and vision are different, the image will not appear exactly the same to everyone.

Projection Plane Distance From Camera.

The distance of the projection plane from the camera determines which objects in the model appear to pop out of the screen, and which ones are sunken into the screen.

Changing the Display Mode

By default, your design is displayed in Wireframe mode when you are in 2D plan view. When you switch to a 3D view, the default display mode is Rendered mode. There are six display modes you can choose from — Wireframe, Hidden Line, Rendered, Rendered Outline, Patterned, and Realistic.

Note that when you change the display mode in one view and then switch to another view and change the display mode in that view, the display mode in the first view will be retained when you go back to it.

To change the display mode:

- Select View > Display Mode, or click the down arrow next to the Display Mode button
 on the View Control toolbar to view the Display Mode menu.
- 2. Choose the desired display mode. These are described below.

Wireframe

Each line in your design is visible, creating a "seethrough" view. It is available for both 2D and 3D views.



Hidden Line

In a hidden line view, all lines that you would normally not see are removed from the view, creating an opaque view.



Rendered

In Rendered display mode, textures and colors are applied to the elements and terrain, creating a very realistic view. **Note**: The Rendered display mode should not be confused with a 3D RealView.



Rendered Outline

In the Rendered Outline display mode, textures and colors are applied to the elements and terrain, and surface edges are outlined in a single, dark line for increased surface definition.



Patterned

In Patterned display mode, patterns of lines (hatching) are applied to the surfaces of elements. Patterns are part of a material's definition. Therefore, the materials applied to your elements determine what patterns you will see.



Realistic

Shades and shadows are displayed in Realistic mode, which change in real time as you navigate. This can be particularly noticeable when viewing interiors with light fixtures and other sources of light and reflection.



Displaying a Wireframe View

Wireframe view displays all lines in your model, creating a "see-through" view.



To change the display mode to wireframe:

- Select View > Display Mode > Wireframe, or
- Click on the View Control toolbar

Displaying a Hidden Line View

When you change your display mode to Hidden Line, lines are removed from the view that you would normally not see, creating an opaque, non-color view.



To change your display mode to Hidden Line:

- Select View > Display Mode > Hidden Line, or
- Click the down arrow next to the Display Mode button on the View Control toolbar and select Hidden Line

Displaying a Rendered View

When you change your display mode to Rendered, materials and colors are applied to the elements and terrain for a colorful, realistic view. Note that this does not display a 3D RealViewTM rendered view.



To change your display mode to Rendered:

- Select View > Display Mode > Rendered, or
- Click the down arrow next to the Display Mode button on the View Control toolbar and select **Rendered**

Displaying a Rendered Outline View

When you change your display mode to Rendered Outline, materials and colors are applied to the elements and terrain, and surface edges are outlined with a black line for high definition.



To change your display mode to Rendered Outline:

- Select View > Display Mode > Rendered Outline, or
- Click the down arrow next to the Display Mode button on the View Control toolbar and select **Rendered Outline**

Displaying a Patterned View

When you change your display mode to Patterned, patterns of lines (hatching) are applied to the surfaces of elements.



To change your display mode to Patterned:

- Select View > Display Mode > Patterned, or
- Click the down arrow next to the Display Mode button on the View Control toolbar and select **Patterned**

Displaying a Realistic View

When you switch to a Realistic display mode, realistic shades and shadows are displayed in the view. The shades and shadows change in real time as you navigate.



To change your display mode to Realistic:

- Select View > Display Mode > Realistic, or
- Click the down arrow next to the Display Mode button on the View Control toolbar and select **Realistic**

Chapter 17: View Filters

View Filters

The unique View Filter dialog acts as a display filter, letting you decide which elements or locations you want displayed at any given time. For example, you may want to hide your roof and ceilings to be able to see inside the model. It also acts as a selection filter, letting you control whether or not certain objects can be selected, which is sometimes necessary when trying to select a particular element in your drawing, like a floor or ceiling.

Other features allow you to "pick and choose" with your mouse precisely what you would like to filter. These include Pick Items to Hide, Hide All Except, Pick Items to Make Non-Selectable, and Make All Non-Selectable Except.

To access the View Filter:

 Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.



Display Filter

You can use the View Filter to control what elements and locations are displayed in a Model View window at any time. Filtering applies to the current view window, so you could have different filter settings for each view window if you have more than one.

You can display or hide:

- an entire location, or multiple locations How to
- building elements on a specific location or multiple locations How to
- wall panel tags How to

- the terrain How to
- elements on the terrain How to
- notation elements such as text, dimensions, schedules, and drafting objects How to
- viewing aids such as elevation and section marks How to
- components in Framing Mode How to

Filtering the Display

The View Filter provides precise control over what elements and locations are displayed in a view at any given time.

You can display/hide:

- an entire location, or multiple locations How to
- building elements on a specific location or multiple locations How to
- wall panel tags How to
- the terrain How to
- elements on the terrain How to
- notation elements such as text, dimensions, schedules and drafting objects How to
- viewing aids such as elevation and section marks How to
- framing components in Framing Mode How to

Note: Using the View Filter does not delete elements from your drawing. It just hides them from view.

To filter the display:

 Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.

The **View Filter** dialog contains several tabs, including *Elements on Location, Elements on Terrain,* and *Notation.*

The *Elements on Location* tab lists all the elements in your model that are associated with building locations. Many elements in the list can be expanded to display a list of sub-components for precise view control. You can display or hide elements on all locations, or specific locations.

The *Elements on Terrain* tab lists the terrain and any landscaping elements in your drawing that are associated with the terrain.

The *Notation* tab contains items such as text, dimensions, drafting objects, and project trace images.

The *Viewing Aids* tab contains items such as elevation marks and section marks.

The *Framing* tab lists the framing components tools available in Framing Mode — the Head/Sill/Jamb tool, Intersection tool and Wall Infill tool.

The icons in the *Display* column indicate whether or not that location or element is currently displayed. Clicking an icon toggles the icon to the opposite state (on or off).

🐞 🐞 Element is turned on

😞 Element is turned off

 $\bigoplus_{\Theta} \bigoplus_{\Theta}$ On the *Elements on Location* tab, this icon indicates that some of an element's components are turned on, and some are turned off.

Clicking **Display All** turns on all elements displayed on the current tab. Clicking **Display None** turns off all elements displayed on the current tab. On the *Elements on Location* tab, these buttons affect elements on the currently selected location(s).

The icons in the *Lock* column indicate whether or not an item is locked. If an item is locked, it remains in its current state regardless of any element filtering you do. For example, if *Wall Framing* is locked in a visible state, *Wall Framing* will remain visible even if you turn off the *Walls* element, or click the **Display None** button.

🔒 🔒 Item is locked

👔 💼 Item is unlocked

Some of the item's components are locked, and some are not

Displaying/Hiding Elements on Locations

You can use the View Filter to display or hide selected element types on all or selected building locations. This applies to building elements such as walls and doors, as well as landscaping elements that were inserted using the "Insert on Location" option.

To display or hide building elements:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Elements on Location tab.

- 3. By default, elements on all locations are displayed in the element list. To control the visibility of elements on a specific location, disable the **All Locations** check box, then select the location where you want to filter the view. You can Ctrl+click to select multiple locations if you want.
- 4. To turn an element on or off, click the element's eye icon in the *Display* column to toggle it on or off. If you want to filter specific element components, click the element's plus sign (+) to display a list of components. For example, the Walls element can have components such as wall surfaces, trim, wall framing, doors and windows. Each component has its own display icon.

★ Element or component is turned on
 ↓ Element or component is turned off
 ↓ Indicates that some of an element's components are turned on, and some are turned off

- To display or hide all building elements currently shown in the element list, click **Display** All or **Display None**.
- 6. To lock an element or component in its current display state, click the lock icon in the *Lock* column. When an item is locked, any filtering you do in the dialog will have no effect on the locked item. For example, if *Wall Framing* is locked in a visible state, *Wall Framing* will remain visible even if you turn off the *Walls* element, or click the **Display None** button.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Building Locations

You can turn individual or all locations on or off. When you turn a location off, all elements on that location are hidden from view.

To display or hide locations:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Elements on Location tab.

- 3. On the right side of the dialog, select the location(s) that you want to display or hide.
 - To display or hide one or more specific locations, disable the **All Locations** check box, then in the locations list, select the location(s) that you want to display or hide. You can Ctrl+click to select multiple locations if you want.
 - To display or hide all locations, enable the **All Locations** check box.
- In the Display area, click All or None to turn all the elements on the selected location on or off.
- 5. Click **OK**.

To quickly display or hide all locations:

Select View > View Filters > All Locations
 On/Off, or click the down arrow next to the
 View Filters button 3 on the View Control toolbar and select All Locations On/Off.

Displaying/Hiding Elements on the Terrain

You can use the View Filter to display or hide the terrain and any elements associated with the terrain, such as landscaping elements.

To filter elements on the terrain:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Elements on Terrain tab.
- Click the eye icons in the *Display* column to turn elements on or off. You can also click the **Display All** or **Display None** button to display or hide all terrain elements simultaneously.

🐞 📷 Element is turned on

😞 Element is turned off

4. Click **OK**.

Note: The visibility of decks is controlled on the Elements on Location tab. This also applies to exterior lighting, exterior furniture or exterior accessories that were inserted using the "Insert on Location" option.

Displaying/Hiding Notation Objects

You can use the View Filter to control the visibility of notation objects such as text and dimensions.

To filter notation objects from view:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- Click the eye icon in the *Display* column next to the notation object you want to display or hide. Clicking the icon toggles visibility on and off. You can also click the **Display All** or **Display None** button to display or hide all notation objects simultaneously.

🐞 🚲 Object is turned on

😞 Object is turned off

4. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Viewing Aids

You can use the View Filter to control the visibility of viewing aids such as elevation marks and section marks.

To filter viewing aids from view:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Viewing Aids tab.
- Click the eye icon in the *Display* column next to the object you want to display or hide.
 Clicking the icon toggles visibility on and off. You can also click the **Display All** or **Display None** button to display or hide all viewing aids simultaneously.

🐞 🐞 Object is turned on

- 😞 Object is turned off
- 4. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Framing Mode Components

Building Essentials | Construction Suite When in Framing Mode, framing components (wall infill, intersections and openings) are displayed as "glass boxes", making it easy to identify and select each one. You can hide selected framing components from view if you want.

To filter components from view in Framing Mode:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Framing tab.
- 3. Click the eye icon in the *Display* column next to the framing component that you want to display or hide in Framing Mode. The Head Sill Jamb Tool option relates to the display of openings. Other components that may be listed are Intersections and Wall Infill.

🐞 퓳 Component is turned on

🚕 Component is turned off

4. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Text

Using the View Filter you can display or hide text in your drawing.

To filter text from view:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- In the Text row, click the eye icon in the Display column to turn text on or off.
 - '∰ ∰ Text is turned on
 - 😞 Text is turned off
- 4. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Dimensions

Using the View Filter you can display or hide dimensions in your drawing.

To filter dimensions from view:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Dimensions** row, click the eye icon in the *Display* column to turn dimensions on or off.

🐞 🐞 Dimensions are turned on

😞 Dimensions are turned off

4. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Drafting Objects

Using the View Filter you can display or hide drafting objects in your drawing. Drafting objects are lines, arcs, circles and rectangles.

To filter drafting objects from view:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Drafting** row, click the eye icon in the *Display* column to turn drafting objects on or off.
 - 🐞 🖝 Drafting objects are turned on
 - Drafting objects are turned off
- 4. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Electrical Wiring

Using the View Filter you can display or hide electrical wiring that you have inserted in your drawing.

To filter electrical wiring from view:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Electrical Wiring** row, click the eye icon in the *Display* column to turn wiring on or off.
 - ₩ Wiring is turned on
 - 喿 Wiring is turned off
- 4. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Project Trace Images

If you have used the Project Trace Image tool to import a plan into your project, you can hide the image if you want using the View Filter. This is an alternative to deleting the image.

To filter project trace images from view:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Project Trace Images** row, click the eye icon in the *Display* column to turn project trace images on or off.
 - 🐞 Project trace image is turned on
 - Project trace image is turned off
- 4. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Schedules

If you have inserted a schedule in your project, you can use the View Filter to hide it from view.

To filter schedules from view:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Schedules** row, click the eye icon in the *Display* column to turn schedules on or off.
 - ₩ Schedules are turned on
 - 🚕 Schedules are turned off
- 4. Click **OK**.

Displaying/Hiding Schedule Marks

When you insert a schedule, the associated elements in your project are tagged with schedule marks. You can hide these marks from view if you want.

To filter schedule marks from view:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Schedule Marks** row, click the eye icon in the *Display* column to turn schedule marks on or off.

★ Schedule marks are turned on

🚕 Schedule marks are turned off

4. Click **OK**.

Selection Filter

When your model contains a number of elements, it can sometimes be difficult to select certain ones because they are too close to each other, or overlap each other. Floors, for example, can be very difficult to select in 2D because floor edges are typically right up against the walls. Also, small elements can be hard to select in an extreme zoomed out view, even in 2D.

You can use the View Filter to prevent specific elements from being selected. You can even prevent entire building locations from being selected.

You can control selectability for the following:

- an entire location, or multiple locations How to
- building elements on a specific location or multiple locations How to
- · elements on the terrain How to
- notation elements such as text, dimensions, schedules, and drafting objects How to
- viewing aids such as elevation marks and section marks How to
- components in Framing Mode How to

Selection Filtering

You can use the View Filter to prevent specific elements from being selected. You can even prevent entire building locations from being selected.

To control element selectability:

 Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.

The **View Filter** dialog contains various tabs, including *Elements on Location*, *Elements on Terrain*, and *Notation*.

The *Elements on Location* tab lists all the elements in your model that are associated with building locations. Many elements in the list can be expanded to display a list of sub-components for precise filtering. You can control the selectability of elements on all locations, or specific locations.

The *Elements on Terrain* tab lists the terrain and any landscaping elements in your drawing that are associated with the terrain.

The *Notation* tab contains items such as text and dimensions.

The *Viewing Aids* tab contains items such as elevation marks and section marks.

The *Framing* tab lists the framing components tools available in Framing Mode — the Head/Sill/Jamb tool, Intersection tool and Wall Infill tool.

The icons in the *Selection* column indicate whether or not an element is currently selectable. Clicking an icon toggles the icon to the opposite state (selectable or non-selectable).

Element is selectable

Element is not selectable

On the *Elements on Location* tab, this icon indicates that some of an element's components are selectable, and some are not.

Clicking **Select All** makes all elements on the current tab selectable. Clicking **Select None** turns off selectability for all elements displayed on the current tab. On the *Elements on Location* tab, these buttons affect elements on the currently selected location(s).

The icons in the *Lock* column indicate whether or not an item is locked. If an item is locked, it remains in its current state regardless of any element filtering you do. For example, if walls are currently non-selectable and you click the **Select All** button to make all elements selectable, walls will remain unselectable if they are locked.

🔒 🔒 Item is locked

🗗 💼 Item is unlocked

Some of the item's components are locked, and some are not

Note: Wall framing cannot be selected, but you can select intersections, openings and wall infill while in Framing Mode. Floor, ceiling and roof framing cannot be selected unless you convert their framing to actual members.

Making Elements on Locations Selectable or Non-Selectable

You can use the View Filter to control the selectability of elements on all or selected building locations. This applies to building elements such as walls and doors, as well as landscaping elements that were inserted using the "Insert on Location" option.

To change the selectability of elements on locations:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Elements on Location tab.
- By default, elements on all locations are displayed in the element list. To control the selectability of elements on a specific location, disable the All Locations check box, then select the location that you want to filter. You can Ctrl+click to select multiple locations if you want.
- 4. To control an element's selectability, click the element's filter icon in the *Selection* column to toggle it on or off.
 - Element is selectable
 - Element is not selectable

If you want to control the selectability of specific element components, click the element's plus sign (+) to display a list of element components. For example, the Walls element can have components such as wall surfaces, trim, wall framing, doors and windows. Each component has its own filter icon.

- To control the selectability of all building elements currently shown in the element list, click Select All or Select None.
- 6. To lock an element or component in its current state of selectability, click the lock icon in the *Lock* column. When an item is locked, any filtering you do in the dialog will have no effect on the locked item. For example, if walls are currently non-selectable and you click the **Select All** button to make all elements selectable, walls will remain unselectable if they are locked.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Making Building Locations Selectable or Non-Selectable

When you make a location non-selectable, no elements on that location can be selected in any view.

To make a location selectable or non-selectable:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Elements on Location tab.
- On the right side of the dialog, select the location(s) that you want to make selectable or non-selectable.
 - To control selectability for one or more specific locations, disable the All Locations check box, then in the locations list, select the location(s) that you want to filter. You can Ctrl+click to select multiple locations if you want.
 - To control selectability for all locations, enable the All Locations check box.
- In the Selection area, click All or None to make all the elements on the selected location selectable or non-selectable.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Making Elements on the Terrain Selectable or Non-Selectable

You can use the View Filter to control the selectability of the terrain or any elements associated with the terrain, such as landscaping elements.

To make elements on the terrain selectable or non-selectable:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Elements on Terrain tab.
- 3. Click the filter icons in the *Selection* column to toggle selectability on or off.
 - Element is selectable
 - Element is not selectable
- 4. If you want to make all elements on the *Elements on Terrain* tab selectable or non-

selectable, click the **Select All** or **Select None** button.

5. Click **OK**.

Note: The selectability of decks is controlled on the Elements on Location tab. This also applies to exterior lighting, exterior furniture or exterior accessories that were inserted using the "Insert on Location" option.

Making Notation Objects Selectable or Non-Selectable

You can use the View Filter to control whether or not notation objects such as text and dimensions can be selected for editing.

To make notation objects selectable or non-selectable:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. Find the item that you want to control and then click its filter icon in the *Selection* column to toggle selectability on or off.
 - Object is selectable
 - , Object is not selectable
- 4. Click **OK**.

Making Viewing Aids Selectable or Non-Selectable

You can use the View Filter to control whether or not viewing aids such as elevation marks and section marks can be selected.

To make viewing aids selectable or non-selectable:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Viewing Aids tab.
- 3. Find the item that you want to control and then click its filter icon in the *Selection* column to toggle selectability on or off.
 - 🛒 Object is selectable
 - Object is not selectable
- 4. Click **OK**.

Making Framing Mode Components Selectable or Non-Selectable

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When in Framing Mode, framing components (wall infill, intersections and openings) are displayed as "glass boxes", making it easy to identify and select each one. You can use the View Filter to prevent specific framing components from being selected while in Framing Mode.

To control the selectability of Framing Mode components:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Framing tab.
- 3. Find the item that you want to control and then click its filter icon in the *Selection* column to toggle selectability on or off. The Head Sill Jamb Tool option relates to wall openings. Other components that may be listed are Intersections and Wall Infill.
 - Component is selectable
 - Component is not selectable
- 4. Click **OK**.

Making Text Selectable or Non-Selectable

Using the View Filter you can make text selectable or non-selectable.

To make text selectable or non-selectable:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- In the **Text** row, click the filter icon in the Selection column to toggle selectability on or off.
 - Text is selectable
 - Text is not selectable
- 4. Click **OK**.

Making Dimensions Selectable or Non-Selectable

Using the View Filter you can make dimensions selectable or non-selectable.

To make dimensions selectable or non-selectable:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Dimensions** row, click the filter icon in the *Selection* column to toggle selectability on or off.
 - Dimensions are selectable
 - Dimensions are not selectable
- 4. Click **OK**.

Making Drafting Objects Selectable or Non-Selectable

Using the View Filter you can make drafting objects selectable or non-selectable. Drafting objects are things like lines, arcs, circles and rectangles.

To make drafting objects selectable or non-selectable:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Drafting** row, click the filter icon in the *Selection* column to toggle selectability on or off.
 - Drafting objects are selectable
 - The selectable The selectable The selectable The selectable select
- 4. Click **OK**.

Making Electrical Wiring Selectable or Non-Selectable

Using the View Filter you can make electrical wiring selectable or non-selectable.

To make electrical wiring selectable or non-selectable:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.

- In the Electrical Wiring row, click the filter icon in the Selection column to toggle selectability on or off.
 - Electrical wiring is selectable
 - Electrical wiring is not selectable
- 4. Click **OK**.

Making Project Trace Images Selectable or Non-Selectable

Using the View Filter you can make project trace images selectable or non-selectable.

To make project trace images selectable or non-selectable:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Project Trace Images** row, click the filter icon in the *Selection* column to toggle selectability on or off.
 - Project trace image is selectable
 - Project trace image is not selectable
- 4. Click **OK**.

Making Schedules Selectable or Non-Selectable

If you have inserted a schedule in your project, you can use the View Filter to make the schedule selectable or non-selectable.

To make schedules selectable or non-selectable:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Schedules** row, click the filter icon in the **Selection** column to toggle selectability on or off.

Schedules are selectable

Schedules are not selectable

4. Click **OK**.

Making Schedule Marks Selectable or Non-Selectable

When you insert a schedule, the associated elements are tagged with schedule marks. You can use the View Filter to make the marks selectable or nonselectable.

To make schedule marks selectable or nonselectable:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Schedule Marks** row, click the filter icon in the *Selection* column to toggle selectability on or off.
 - Schedule marks are selectable
 - Schedule marks are not selectable
- 4. Click **OK**.

Point-and-Click Filters

When you need to filter a single object in your drawing, point-and-click filters are the way to go.

These filters let you use your mouse to choose objects for display filtering or selection filtering.

Pick Items to Hide. Click on an object to hide it instantly.

Hide All Except. Quickly hides everything except a selected object.

Pick Items to Make Non-Selectable. Click on an object to prevent it from being selected when editing.

Make All Non-Selectable Except. Click on an object to make it the only selectable object in the drawing.

Hiding Items by Picking in Your Drawing

Using the Pick Items to Hide tool you can select items directly in your drawing that you want to hide.

To hide an item by picking:

- Select View > View Filters > Pick Items to Hide, or click the down arrow next to the View Filters button 3 on the View Control toolbar and select Pick Items to Hide.
- 2. Click on the item that you want to hide. Note that filtering occurs per *item type* rather than

individual item. For example, if you pick one column, all columns will be hidden.

3. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Hiding All Except What Is Picked

Using the Hide All Items Except tool you can select an item in your drawing and automatically hide everything else for quick display control.

To hide all except what is picked:

- Select View > View Filters > Hide All Items
 Except, or click the down arrow next to the
 View Filters button 3 on the View Control toolbar and select Hide All Items Except.
- 2. Click on the item that you want to remain displayed. Note that filtering occurs per *item type* rather than individual item. For example, if you pick one column, all columns will remain displayed.
- 3. Right-click and select Finish.

Making Items Non-Selectable by Picking in Your Drawing

Using the Pick Items to Make Non-Selectable tool you can select items directly in your drawing that you want to make non-selectable.

To make an item non-selectable:

- Select View > View Filters > Pick Items to Make Non-Selectable or click the down arrow next to the View Filters button 3 3 on the View Control toolbar and select Pick Items to Make Non-Selectable.
- 2. Click on the item that you want to make nonselectable. Note that filtering occurs per *item type* rather than individual item. For example, if you pick one column, all columns will be made non-selectable.
- 3. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Making All Non-Selectable Except What Is Picked

Using the Make All Non-Selectable Except tool you can pick an item in your drawing that you want to be selectable, and automatically make everything else non-selectable.

To make all non-selectable except what you pick:

- Select View > View Filters > Make All Non-Selectable Except or click the down arrow next to the View Filters button 3 3 on the View Control toolbar and select Make All Non-Selectable Except.
- 2. Click on the item(s) that you want to be selectable. Note that filtering occurs per *item type* rather than individual item. For example, if you pick one column, all columns will be made selectable.
- 3. Right-click and select Finish.

View Filter Templates

You can create and apply filter templates in the **View Filter** dialog. Templates enable you to capture a group of filter settings, and instantly apply them to your drawing. For example, if you wanted to display an electrical diagram, you could create an 'Electrical' template in which only walls, electrical elements and electrical wiring are shown.

You can add, apply, edit and delete templates to suit your needs.

Creating a View Filter Template

You can create filter templates in the **View Filter** dialog which enable you capture a specific group of filter settings, and instantly apply them to your drawing. For example, if you wanted to display an electrical diagram, you could create an 'Electrical' template in which only walls, electrical elements and electrical wiring are shown.

To create a view filter template:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, click
- 3. In the **New View Filter Template** dialog, you can select an existing template on which to base the new template if desired.
- 4. Specify the desired display and selection settings. For more information, refer to *Filtering the Display* on page 288 and *Selection Filtering* on page 292.
- 5. In the **Template Name** edit box, type a name for the template.

- 6. By default, the template will displayed on the View > View Filters menu for quick access. If you do not want it to appear there, disable the Include in menu check box. Note that the template will still be displayed in the Templates drop box in the View Filter dialog.
- 7. Click Save.
- 8. To apply the template settings, click **Apply** in the **View Filter** dialog.

Applying a View Filter Template

If you have created a view filter template, you can apply its filter settings to the current view by selecting it from the **View > View Filters** menu. This assumes that the **Include in menu** option is selected in the template's properties.

You can also apply a template in the **View Filter** dialog:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the desired template from the **Template** drop box.
- 3. Click Apply.

Editing a View Filter Template

If you have created a view filter template, you can edit its filter settings if needed.

To edit a view filter template:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the template from the **Template** drop box.
- 3. Click 💕.
- 4. In the **Edit View Filter Template** dialog, edit the filter settings.
- 5. Click Save.

Deleting a View Filter Template

If you delete a view filter template that you have created, it will be removed from the list of templates in the **View Filter** dialog and the **View > View Filter** menu.

To delete a view filter template:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the template from the **Template** drop box.
- 3. Click

Chapter 17: Managing View Windows

Managing View Windows

The View Manager contains a listing of view windows and lets you open, close, create, and edit views. Every new project has at least one pre-defined view window. A *Model View* view window is where you build and edit your 3D model. A *Worksheet View* window takes you into a 2D drafting mode where you can create your construction documents. **Note**: **Personal Architect** does not have Worksheet views.

You can easily create new view windows as needed. Each window can have different view settings. For example, you may want to display a wireframe, 2D plan view in one view window, and a 3D view in another window.

When you create new view windows, you can switch between open view windows using the **Window** menu or view tabs.

You can display multiple view windows at the same time using the Tile Open Views and Cascade Open Views tools. View windows can be moved, resized and closed to create the exact arrangement you want. You can edit the name and scale of views listed in the View Manager, as well as specify print properties for each view. Select View > View Manager, or click so the View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.

	Views	Active	^	View Properties	Print Properties		
- <default< th=""><th>group></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th></default<>	group>						
Model		1		Name:			
1 Floor Pla	n	2		1 Floor Pl	an		
2 Elevation	15			Tuper			
3 Details		۲) Juforkoho	et Ween		
4 Site Plan		X		Workshe	er Alem		
				Scale:			
				1:48	1/4'' = 1'-0''	-	
			~				
General View			*				
Current View			~				

Adding a Group to the View Man-

ager

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Views are arranged in groups for ease of organization. You can add groups to the View Manager to help you organize views.

To create a new group in the View Manager:

- Select View > View Manager, or click Select View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- In the View Manager dialog, select Arrange > Add Group, or right-click in the left pane and select Arrange > Add Group. A 'New Group' is added to the list.
- 3. Edit the group's name in the **Name** edit box in the right pane.

You can now add views to the group, or move existing views into the group.

Renaming a Group in the View Manager

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

To access the View Manager:

To rename a group in the View Manager:

- Select View > View Manager, or click
 Image: Select View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- 2. In the **View Manager** dialog, select the group that you want to rename. It's properties appear in the right pane.
- 3. Edit the name in the **Name** edit box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Group in the View Manager

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

To delete a group in the View Manager:

- Select View > View Manager, or click Select View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- 2. In the **View Manager** dialog, select the group that you want to delete.
- Select Arrange > Remove Group, or rightclick in the left pane and select Arrange > Remove Group. The group is deleted.

Note: If a group contains views and you delete it, the views will be deleted also. You may first want to move the views into another group.

Expanding and Collapsing Groups in the View Manager

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Views are contained in groups in the View Manager. You can expand or collapse individual groups, or all groups simultaneously.

To expand or collapse groups:

- Select View > View Manager, or click
 Image: Select View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- 2. To expand a group that is currently collapsed, click the small plus sign (+) to the left of the group's name.

- To expand all groups at once, select Arrange
 Expand All, or right-click in the left pane and select Arrange > Expand All.
- 4. To collapse a group that is currently expanded, click the small minus sign (--) to the left of the group's name.
- 5. To collapse all groups at once, select Arrange
 > Collapse All, or right-click in the left pane and select Arrange > Collapse All.

Creating a New View Window

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Every new project contains at least one pre-defined view window.

You can use the View Manager to create new view windows and specify different view settings for each window. For example, you may want to create a view window called '3D View' and display a 3D view in that window.

If your product contains the Worksheet View mode, you can create either a **Model View** window or **Worksheet View** window. You build, edit and view your model in Model View windows. When you create a Worksheet View window, you are automatically switched to the 2D production drafting mode. Here you can create detailed and accurate construction documents.

Views are stored in groups for easy organization and navigation. You can add view windows to the default group, or create your own groups if you want. You can add views using the View Manager, or through the view tabs below the drawing area.

To create a new view in the View Manager:

- Select View > View Manager, or click
 Select View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- 2. In the left pane of the **View Manager** dialog, select the group you want to add the view to.
- Select Views >Add Model View or Add Worksheet (depending on which type of view you want to create), or right-click in the left pane and select Add Model View or Add Worksheet. A *Model View* window will contain your actual 3D model. In model view

you can build and edit your model. Selecting *Worksheet View* will put you directly into drafting mode where you can create working drawings.

Note: You cannot create Worksheet View windows in *Building Essentials*.

A new view is added to the list.

- 4. In the **Name** edit box in the right pane, type a name for the view window.
- 5. Select a view scale for the view. The view scale is the ratio of units on paper to real-world units. If the scale is set to 1:48 (1/4" = 1'- 0"), a quarter inch on paper will represent one foot of your model. For example, an 8-foot wall would be 2 inches on paper. The view scale becomes particularly important in Worksheet View, where you create all of your printable working drawings. (Note that you can set a print scale for the view that is independent of the view scale.)
- 6. If you want to define the view's print settings at this time, select the **Print Properties** tab in the right pane, then define the print settings.
- 7. Click **OK**. The new view becomes the current view window.

To create a new view through the view tabs:

- Right-click any view tab and select either Add Model View or Add Worksheet (depending on which type of view you want to create). A new view tab is added.
- 2. To edit the properties of the view window, such as the name and view scale, right-click the view tab and select **View Manager**.

Copying a View Window

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can copy an existing view window to create a new view window. When you copy a view, the contents and display settings of the view are copied to the new view window. The Copy View tool works on both Model View and Worksheet View windows. You can copy a view in the View Manager, or through the view tabs.

To copy a view in the View Manager:

- Select View > View Manager, or click Select View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- 2. In the left pane of the **View Manager** dialog, select the view window that you want to copy.
- Select Views > Copy View, or right-click and select Copy View.

To copy a view through the view tabs:

- 1. Right-click on the view tab that you want to copy.
- 2. Select Copy View.

Renaming a View Window

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can edit the name of a view window as it appears in the View Manager, in the program's title bar, and on the view tabs. You can do this in the View Manager, or by accessing the view window's properties.

To rename a view window when it is the current view window:

- Select View > View Properties, or right-click in the view window and select View Properties.
- 2. In the **View Properties** dialog, type the new name in the **Name** edit box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

To rename a view window in the View Manager:

- Select View > View Manager, or click I I I Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- 2. On the left side of the **View Manager** dialog, select the view that you want to rename. It's properties appear in the right pane.
- 3. Edit the view's name in the **Name** edit box in the right pane.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Opening View Windows

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite If you have closed a view window either through the View Manager or by clicking a view window's Close button, you can open it again by making it active in the View Manager.

To open a view window:

- Select View > View Manager, or click
 Image: Select View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- 2. Click in the check box next to the view window's name to make it active. It appears on the **Window** menu as well as on a view tab if you have view tabs turned on.

To open all view windows at once:

- Select View > View Manager, or click on the View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- In the View Manager dialog, select Views > Set All Active, or right-click in the left pane and select Set All Active.

Closing View Windows

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the *Model* view window is open when you start a project. Others may be open as well depending on the program version you are using. You can close individual view windows by making them inactive in the View Manager, by clicking the view window's Close button, or through the right-click menu of view tabs.

To close a view window from within the window itself:

1. Click the Close button in the top right corner of the view window.



To close a view window using the View Manager:

- 2. Click in the check box next to the view's name to make the view inactive.

To close all view windows at once:

- Select View > View Manager, or click
 Image: Select View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- In the View Manager dialog, select Views > Set All Inactive, or right-click in the left pane and select Set All Inactive.

To close a view window from the view tabs:

- 1. Right-click the view tab of the window that you want to close.
- 2. Select Close View.

Deleting a View Window

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can delete a view window by removing it from the View Manager, or by selecting the Delete View tool on a view tab's right-click menu.

To delete a view window from the View Manager:

- Select View > View Manager, or click on the View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- 2. Select the view to delete.
- In the View Manager dialog, select Views > Delete View, or right-click in the left pane and select Delete View.

To delete a view window from the view tabs:

- 1. Right-click on the view tab containing the view that you want to delete.
- 2. Select Delete View.
- Click **OK** to confirm that you want to permanently delete the view.

Re-ordering Views in the View Manager

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite You can move views up or down in the View Manager to control which group they are contained in, or change their place in the list.

To re-order views in the View Manager:

- Select View > View Manager, or click so the View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- 2. In the **View Manager** dialog, select the view that you want to move.
- Select Arrange > Move Up or Arrange > Move Down, or right-click in the left pane and select Arrange >Move Up or Arrange > Move Down. Repeat to move the view further up or down if necessary.

Displaying/Hiding the View Tabs

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When view tabs are turned on, a row of tabs is displayed below the drawing area. Each tab represents an open view in the View Manager. View tabs make it easy to switch from one view to another.

To turn view tabs on or off:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Tool Display* area, check or uncheck the **View Tabs** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Making a View Window the Current View Window

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have multiple view windows, you can use the Set Current option in the View Manager to make a particular view window the current one displayed.

To set the current view window:

- Select View > View Manager, or click so the View Control toolbar, or right-click any view tab and select View Manager.
- 2. In the **View Manager** dialog, select the view window you want to make current.

 Select Views > Set Current, or right-click in the left pane and select Set Current. The selected view window is now the current view window.

Switching Between View Windows

All open view windows appear on the program's **Window** menu, making it easy to switch from one window to another.

Also, if you have turned your view tabs on, view tabs for each open view window are displayed below the drawing area.

To make a view window the current view window, simply select it from the **Window** menu, or select the view's corresponding view tab below the drawing area.

Allowing a Different Current Location Per View Window

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the location you select in one view window will be the one displayed when you switch to other view windows. By changing your program settings you can allow a different location to be current in each view window.

To allow a different current location per view window:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 iii iii on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Model View Behavior* area, disable the **Maintain Current Location Per View** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Tiling View Windows

By default, only one maximized view window is displayed at a time. Using the Tile Open Views tool you can instantly tile all open view windows in the drawing area. This is a great way to see different views of your design while you are working on it. When you make a change in one view window, the design updates automatically in all other view windows.

To tile all open view windows:

1. Select Window > Tile Open Views.

Cascading View Windows

By default, only one maximized view window is displayed at a time. Using the Cascade Open Views tool you can instantly display all open view windows in a stacked format, with the current view window on top. Once the view windows are cascaded you can move and resize each one if you want.

To cascade all open view windows:

1. Select Window > Cascade Open Views.

Returning to a Maximized View

If you have tiled or cascaded your open view windows, you can return to a maximized view (where only one view window is visible) by maximizing one of the open view windows.

To maximize a view window:

1. Click the Maximize button in the view window you want to maximize.



Restoring the Previous Arrangement of View Windows

If you tiled, cascaded or arranged your view windows, then maximized one of them, you can use the Restore Down button to return to the view window arrangement that was displayed before you used the Maximize button.

To restore the previous arrangement of view windows:

 Click the Restore Down button in the top right corner of the current view window.



Restore Down



↑ Restore Down

Drafting & Documentation

There is a full set of drafting and layout tools available in both Model View and Worksheet View to help you annotate your drawing and create complete construction documents quickly and easily. You can insert text, dimensions, lines, shapes and details, and even import your own CAD files (such as title blocks).

We recommend creating your construction documents in Worksheet View, which is the program's 2D drafting module. When you are in Worksheet View you can insert a view of your model, such as a 2D floor plan, elevation or section, and then use drafting tools to annotate the drawing.

Note that Worksheet View is not available in Personal Architect.

Many of the drafting tools available in Worksheet View are also available in Model View on the Tools menu. However, they are only available in 2D plan views. If you want to detail an elevation, section or 3D view, you will need to create a new view window and use the Insert View tool to insert the view into that window. The drafting tools will then become available for you to use.

There are three auto-dimension tools that are only available in Model View: Auto Exterior Dimensions, Auto Interior Dimensions, and Room Dimensions.

You can insert text with the Text tool or the Text with Leader tool.

Note that all text, dimensions and drafting objects inserted in Model View will appear in Worksheet View when you insert a 2D view.
Chapter 18: Drafting in Model View

Drafting in Model View

In Model View, you can find a variety of drafting tools on the Tools menu, such as Text and Dimensions.

The Tools > Layout sub-menu contains a basic set of line and shape tools — Line, Arc, Circle, Rectangle and Polygon Hatch, as well as a set of detailing tools — Batt Insulation, Rigid Insulation, Wood Section, Masonry Section, and Cut Line. Objects drawn with these tools will not display in 3D view. You can use these tools to help with your design layout. For example, you may want to draw construction lines to help you place walls and other elements.

In addition to drafting tools, the Layout menu contains the Insert View tool, which lets you insert views of your model — 2D plans, elevations, sections or 3D views — into the current view window.

You can use the Import PDF File to import the contents of any PDF file into your Envisioneer project. You can define the size and angle of the imported block prior to importing it. If the PDF contains a floor plan, you can scale the plan to the correct size upon import, then trace the imported plan using building tools such as the Walls tool to create an accurate 3D model in Envisioneer.

You can also use the Import CAD File tool to import an AutoCAD DWG or DXF file into your project, such as a title block, detail or drafting symbol. Using these tools allows you to create quick, basic working drawings.

Many of the drafting tools that you see in Model View are also available in Worksheet View. The exceptions are Auto Exterior Dimensions, Auto Interior Dimensions, and Room Dimensions. These tools can only be used in Model View.

Note: We recommend completing your working drawings in Worksheet View rather than Model View. Worksheet View provides access to the same tools you see on the Layout menu, plus many more. Dedicated solely to 2D production drafting, Worksheet View gives you all the drawing and editing tools needed to create fast, accurate, detailed working drawings.

Text (Model View)

There are two Text tools available in Model View. Use the Text tool to insert text, notes or labels in 2D plan views. Use the Text with Leader tool to insert text, notes or labels in the form of a callout.

You can move and rotate text after it has been inserted, and edit its style or content.

Text tool (Model View)

You can use the Text tool to add text to a 2D plan view. You can type the text that you want to insert, import a *.txt file, or use one of the available predefined labels. While defining the text to insert you can specify the text style and justification that you want to use.

You can move and rotate text after it has been inserted, as well as edit the content and style.

Adding Text in Model View

You can add custom text or pre-defined labels to your drawing. You can select the text style you want to use, and control the justification of the text. Text can be moved and rotated after it has been inserted, just like most other elements.

What type of text do you want to insert? Custom Text

To add custom text to your drawing:

1. Select **Tools > Text > Text**, or click **A A** on the Annotation toolbar.

4 Text	
Text Style Labels	
	Impor
	Predefin Default Badaya Batroo Cold Ro Deck Den Dening F Forer Front Y Garage Kithen Laundr
	Multiple text insert

- 2. In the **Text** dialog, type the text you want to add. If you want to import a text (*.txt) file, click **Import**, then select the file to import.
- 3. To select a style for the text, click the **Text Style** button and select or create a text style in the **Text Styles** dialog.
- 4. By default, text is left justified. For multi-line text, this means that text lines will line up on the left, and be ragged on the right. If you want to change the justification¹ of the text, click the appropriate justification button above the text editing window.
 - Left Justify
 - E Center Justify
 - Right Justify
- 5. If you want to automatically return to the **Text** dialog after you have inserted the current text, enable the **Multiple text insert** check box. This is ideal when you want to insert different pieces of text without having to select the **Text** tool again.
- 6. Click **OK**. The text is attached to your cursor.
- 7. Position the text where you want it, then click to insert it.

Pre-defined Labels

To add pre-defined labels to your drawing:

 Select Tools > Text > Text, or click A A on the Annotation toolbar.

- In the **Text** dialog, select the label you want in the *Pre-defined Labels* list on the right side of the dialog, then drag it into the editing window. You can also double-click the label or click and the label to the editing window.
- 3. If you want to add or edit a label, click the **Library** button to access the Labels library.
- To select a style for the text, click the **Text** Style button and select or create a text style in the **Text Styles** dialog.
- 5. If you want to automatically return to the Text dialog after you have inserted the current text, enable the Multiple text insert check box. This is ideal when you want to insert different pieces of text in your drawing without having to select the Text tool again.
- 6. Click **OK**. The text is attached to your cursor.
- 7. Position the text where you want it, then click to insert it.

Customizing the Labels Library

You can add your own pre-defined text labels to the labels library as well as edit and delete the existing labels.

To customize the labels library:

 Select a Text tool, then click the Library button below the list of pre-defined labels in the Text dialog.

You can also select File > Catalogs > Library Manager. In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Labels.

- To add a new label to the list, select Edit > Add Label, or right-click in the label window and select Add Label.
- To edit an existing label, select it in the list, then select Edit > Edit Label, or right-click and select Edit Label. You can also click inside the lower pane of the Labels dialog.
- 4. In the Label Properties dialog, type a name for the label in the Name edit box. Then, enter the label text in the Label Text window, or click Import to load an existing text file. The name is not necessarily the same as the actual label text. It simply identifies the label

¹Justification refers to the way lines of text "line up" in relation to the window that contains them. A "left" justification lines the left side of the text up with the left side of the window, leaving the right side ragged.

in the list of labels. For example, a label named 'Address' can contain your company's full address.

- 5. Click **OK** to return to the **Labels** dialog.
- To delete a label in the list, select the label, then select Edit > Delete Label, or right-click in the label window and select Delete Label.
- 7. When you are finished customizing the library, click **OK**.

Moving Text in Model View

You can move text by simply clicking and dragging it. **To move text:**

- 1. Select the text you want to move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the text, then release your mouse button.

Rotating Text in Model View

You can change the angle of text using the Rotate tool.

To rotate text:

- 1. Select the text you want to rotate.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around typically the blue grip.
- 4. Move your mouse to rotate the text in the desired direction.
- 5. When the text is at the desired rotation, click to set the position.

Editing Text Content in Model View

You can edit the content of a text element by accessing its properties.

To edit text:

- 1. Select the text you want to edit.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Text** dialog, edit the text in the text window.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Changing the Style of Text in Model View

You can edit the appearance of text by applying a different text style to it.

To change the style of text:

- 1. Select the text whose style you want to change.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Text** dialog, click **Text Style**.
- 4. In the **Text Styles** dialog, select a new text style. You can also create your own text style, or edit the current text style. More

Note that if you edit an existing text style, your changes are permanently saved in the text styles library, and are not project-specific.

- 5. Click **OK** in the **Text Styles** dialog.
- 6. Click **OK** in the **Text** dialog. The text is changed automatically.



Note: The Properties tool lets you change the text style of the selected text object only. If you want to globally change all text objects that use a particular text style, see *Updating a Text Style Globally* on page 307.

Updating a Text Style Globally

You can use the Update Style tool to change the text style of all text objects in your drawing that use the same text style.

To update a text style globally:

- 1. Select a text object whose text style you want to change.
- Right-click and select Update Style, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Update Style.
- 3. In the **Text Style Properties** dialog, make the desired text style change.
- 4. Click **OK**. All text objects using the selected text style will automatically update.

Customizing the Text Styles Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add your own text styles to the text styles library as well as edit and delete the existing text styles.

To customize the text styles library:

 If you are currently in the **Text** dialog, click the **Text Style** button. If you are not currently in the **Text** dialog you can launch it by selecting a Text tool.

For direct access to text styles library, select File > Catalogs > Library Manager. In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Text Styles.

- To add a new text style to the list, select Edit
 Add Text Style, or right-click in the text style window and select Add Text Style.
- To edit an existing text style, select it in the list, then select Edit > Edit Text Style, or right-click and select Edit Text Style. You can also click inside the lower pane of the Text Styles dialog.
- 4. In the **Text Style Properties** dialog, type a name for the text style in the **Name** edit box.
- 5. From the **Font** drop box, select a font to use.
- From the Font Style drop box, select a style for the font. Choices can include Regular, *Italic*, Bold, and *Bold Italic*.
- 7. In the **Height** edit box, specify the desired text height.
- Click the Color swatch to access the Color dialog, where you can select a color for the text.

- 9. Click **OK** to return to the **Text Styles** dialog.
- To delete an existing text style, select it in the list, then select Edit > Delete Text Style, or right-click in the style window and select Delete Text Style.
- 11. Click **OK**.

Changing the Justification of Multi-line Text

You can change the way multiple lines of text are aligned.

To change the justification of text:

- 1. Select the text you want to edit.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Text** dialog, click the appropriate justification button below the editing window.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Finding and Replacing Text in Model View

You can use the Find and Replace tool to find a specific word or phrase in your project. You can also replace it instantly with another word or phrase of your choice.

To find and replace text:

- Select Tools > Text > Find and Replace, or click T on the Annotation toolbar.
- 2. In the **Find and Replace Text** dialog, type the word or phrase that you want to find in the **Find what** edit box.
- 3. If you want to replace the text with something else, enter the replacement text in the **Replace with** edit box.
- 4. Select any options you want to use to control the search. These are described below.

Match case. Find text with the same capitalization as the search text. For example, if you enter the word "Bedroom" as your search text, the word "bedroom" would not be returned as a match because the first character is not uppercase.

Match whole word. Find only whole words, not parts of words. For example, if you enter

the word "day" as your search text, the words "Monday" or "daytime" would not be returned as matches.

Search up. Search backward from the current search position.

5. Click Find Next.

If the text is found, the first instance is displayed in the lower pane of the **Find and Replace Text** dialog, and the text is highlighted in the drawing area.

- To replace the text with the text in the Replace with edit box, click Replace. To instantly replace all instances of the search text, click Replace All.
- 7. To search for the next instance of the text, click **Find Next** again. When the search is complete, the **End of Search** dialog will appear notifying you that all text has been searched.
- 8. When you are finished searching for text, close the **Find and Replace Text** dialog.

Note: The Find and Replace tool searches the current building location only.

Deleting Text in Model View

You can delete selected text from your drawing in a couple of easy steps.

To delete text:

- Select the text you want to remove. You can select multiple entries using Shift+click.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Text with Leader tool (Model View)

You can use the Text with Leader tool to add a callout (text with arrow) to a 2D plan view. You can type the text that you want to insert, import a *.txt file, or use one of the available pre-defined labels. While defining the text to insert you can select a dimension style to use for the leader. Once you have inserted text with a leader, you can move or stretch the leader, change the style of the text, move the text, or edit the text.

Adding Text with a Leader in Model View

You can insert text with an arrow attached to it that points to a particular element or area in your drawing. The leader has two segments and can be oriented in any fashion.

To add a text with leader:

- Select Tools > Text > Text with Leader, or click A A on the Annotation toolbar.
- 2. To select a dimension style for the leader, click the **Dimension Style** button and make a selection from the **Dimension Styles** dialog.
- Type the desired text in the editing window.
 Or, to import a text (*.txt) file, click **Import**, then select the file to import.
- 4. To insert a pre-defined label, select the label you want in the *Pre-defined Labels* list on the right side of the dialog, then drag it into the editing window. You can also double-click the label or click and the label to the editing window. To access the Labels library, where you can add and edit labels, click Library.
- 5. If you want to automatically return to the Leader dialog after you have inserted the current text, enable the Multiple text insert check box. This lets you keep inserting text without having to select the Text with Leader tool again.
- 6. Click **OK**.
- 7. In the drawing area, select the point where you want the arrowhead to appear.
- Select the next point of the leader. If you only want a two-point leader, right-click and select Finish at this point. Otherwise, you can select a third point for the leader if you want.
- 9. If you are creating a three-point leader, select a third point for the leader. The text is inserted.



Moving and Stretching a Leader

You can move or stretch a leader by clicking and dragging its grips.

To move/stretch a leader:

- 1. Click on the text with leader to select it. Grips appear on the leader.
- 2. Click and drag a grip to move it, then release your mouse button.

Changing the Style of Text with a Leader in Model View

The text style and leader arrow style of text with a leader is determined by the current dimension style, which by default is the Standard dimension style. You can change the style of text with a leader by selecting a dimension style with the desired style settings.

To select a different style for text with a leader:

- 1. Click on the text with leader to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Leader** dialog, click the **Dimension Style** button.
- In the Dimension Styles dialog, select the dimension style that you want to use, then click OK. For information about editing dimension styles, including leader settings, see *Customizing the Dimension Styles Library* on page 626.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Leader** dialog. The text with leader is updated.

Note: The Properties tool lets you change the style of the selected text object only. If you want to globally change all text objects that use a particular text style, see *Updating the Style of Text with a Leader Globally* on page 310.

Updating the Style of Text with a Leader Globally

You can use the Update Style tool to change the style of all text with leader objects in your drawing that use the same dimension style.

To globally update the style of text with a leader:

- 1. Select a text with leader object whose dimension style you want to change.
- Right-click and select Update Style, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Update Style.
- In the Dimension Style Properties dialog, make the desired dimension style change. Leader arrow properties are specified on the *Leader* tab. The text style is specified on the *Text* tab.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Moving Leader Text in Model View

If you have inserted text with a leader, you can move the text independently of the leader.

To move leader text:

- 1. Click on the text with leader to select it.
- Right-click and select Move Text, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move Text.
- 3. Click and drag the text to move it, then release your mouse button.

Editing Leader Text in Model View

If you have inserted text with a leader, you can change the text to whatever you want.

To edit leader text:

- 1. Click on the text with leader to select it.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the **Leader** dialog, edit the text as desired, then click **OK**.

Deleting Text with a Leader in Model View

You can delete text with a leader in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a leader with text:

- 1. Click on any part of the leader or text. The entire item is selected.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Dimensions (Model View)

Envisioneer automatically displays on-screen dimensions as you draw, making it easy to draw walls at correct lengths, and insert elements like doors and windows precisely where you want them. These dimensions are drawing aids only that disappear once you have inserted the element.

The Dimensions menu in Model View offers a variety of powerful tools to help you add dimensions to your 2D plan. Dimension values are calculated automatically so you can annotate your drawing quickly and effortlessly.

Use the Auto Exterior Dimensions tool to automatically apply dimensions to the perimeter of your model, and the Auto Interior Dimensions tool to insert auto-calculated dimensions on the model's interior. Another powerful tool is the Room Dimensions tool, which instantly calculates the dimensions of a room (length x width) and inserts the measurement in the room.

Three tools are available for inserting singular dimensions. Use the Linear Dimensions tool to insert a simple horizontal or vertical dimension, and the Aligned Dimensions tool to insert a dimension that aligns with (takes the angle of) the object being dimensioned. Use the Angular Dimensions tool to insert a dimension that measures an angle rather than a distance.

Use the Continuous Dimension tool to quickly add more segments to an existing linear or aligned dimension. You can use the Baseline Dimension tool to build multiple dimensions along a common baseline, creating a series of stacked dimensions. You can create an Overall Dimension from two or more selected dimensions.

By default dimensions use the Current Dimension Style. You can also change the style of an individual dimension after it has been inserted, or perform a global update of a dimension style. You can move or stretch a dimension after it has been inserted, as well as align, join and split dimensions.

Setting the Current Dimension Style in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you add dimensions to your drawing, they use the current dimension style, which by default is the Standard dimension style. You can select a different dimension style to be the current one if you want.

To set the current dimension style:

- 1. Select Settings > Current Dimension Style.
- 2. In the **Current Dimension Style** dialog, click the **Select** button..
- 3. In the **Dimension Styles** dialog, select the style you want to set as current.
- 4. Click OK in the Dimension Styles dialog.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Current Dimension Style** dialog.

Specifying Exterior Dimension Settings

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Before using the Apply Auto Exterior Dimensions tool to create automatic exterior wall dimensions, it is a good idea to specify the settings for the exterior dimensions. These settings control how the walls and wall elements (doors, windows, openings, etc.) are dimensioned.

To specify exterior dimension settings:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

🛯 🗟 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Dimension Auto Exterior** in the left column.
- 3. Specify the settings described below. Include Dimension String for:

Overall. The outermost dimension string that dimensions the overall length of each exterior wall.



Projections. String that dimensions all projecting points along an exterior wall. If a wall has no projections, this string will be identical to the overall dimension string.



Openings: String that dimensions all major projections and all openings in the exterior walls, including door and window openings. Openings can be dimensioned on center, or to the outside edges (see the **Openings** area of the dialog).



Interior Walls: String that dimensions to all major projections and each interior wall that projects into the exterior wall. (You can specify which edges you want to dimension to in the **Interior Walls** area of the dialog).







Dimension Line Distances

Dim Line Spacing: The spacing between successive dimension lines (when two or more strings are used).

Dimension Offset: The distance between the first dimension string and the walls.

Extension Lines

Extension lines extend from the dimension line toward the walls being dimensioned. In situations where dimension points are not parallel with each other, you can specify whether you want the extension lines to extend all the way to the dimension points, or whether you want them to line up with the shortest dimension point.

Openings

If you are including a dimension string for openings, you can specify whether you want the openings to be dimensioned on center, or to the edges of the openings.

Add Opening Height after Width. For door, window and opening dimensions, enabling this option displays the height of the opening in addition to the width. For example, if an opening is 5' wide and 6'-8" high, the dimension would read 5'-0"/6'-8". You can choose a different separator if you wish.

Separation. The character or format used to separate the opening width and opening height. Available choices are shown below with examples.

l (forward slash)	5'-0"/6'-8"
— (dash)	5'-0"— 6'-8"
X	5'-0" X 6'-8"
Multi-line	5'-0" 6'-8"

End Condition

You can choose which exterior wall faces you want to dimension to.

Surface (Exterior). Dimensions to the outer edge of the walls's exterior surface (e.g. brick, stone or siding). If the wall does not contain an exterior surface, the outer edge of the core wall is used instead.

Core (*Exterior*). Dimensions to the outer edge of the core wall (e.g. stud wall).

Core (*Center*). Dimensions to the center of the core wall (e.g. stud wall).

Core (Interior). Dimensions to the inner edge of the core wall (e.g. stud wall).

Surface (Interior). Dimensions to the interior edge of the interior surface (e.g. drywall or

plaster). If the wall does not contain an interior surface, the inner edge of the core wall is used instead.

Interior Walls

If you are including the **Interior Walls** dimension string, you can specify whether you want the interior walls to be dimensioned to the center or edges of the wall core, or to the edges of the wall's interior surfaces. You can select more than one option if needed.

Edges (Surfaces). Dimensions to the edges of the wall's interior surfaces (e.g. drywall or plaster).

Edges (Core). Dimensions to the edges of the core wall (e.g. stud wall).

Center (Core). Dimensions to the center of the core wall (e.g. stud wall).

4. Click **OK**.

Specifying Interior Dimension Settings

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you are using the Auto Interior Dimensions tool to create automatic interior wall dimensions, you can specify how you want the walls dimensioned before creating the dimensions. By default, walls are dimensioned on center. If you prefer you can dimension to other or additional wall edges.

To specify the auto interior dimension setting:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Dimension Auto Interior** in the left column.
- You can specify whether you want the interior walls to be dimensioned to the center or edges of the wall core, or to the edges of the wall's interior surfaces. You can select more than one option if needed.

Leading Edge (Surface). Dimensions to the leading edge of the interior surface (e.g. drywall or plaster). The leading edge is the

first edge of the interior surface that the dimension line encounters as it runs from its start point.

Leading Edge (Core). Dimensions to the leading edge of the core wall (e.g. stud wall). The leading edge is the first edge of the core wall that the dimension line encounters as it runs from its start point.

Center (Core). Dimensions to the center of the core wall (e.g. stud wall).

Trailing Edge (Core). Dimensions to the trailing edge of the core wall (e.g. stud wall). The trailing edge is the second edge of the core wall that the dimension line encounters as it runs from its start point.

Trailing Edge (Surface). Dimensions to the trailing edge of the interior surface (e.g. drywall or plaster). The trailing edge is the second edge of the interior surface that the dimension line encounters as it runs from its start point.

4. If you do not want to include the width of intersecting walls in the dimensions, enable the **Ignore Wall Dimensions** check box. The difference is shown below:



5. Click OK. You can now proceed with creating

auto interior dimensions.

Creating Automatic Exterior Dimensions

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Auto Exterior Dimensions tool automatically dimensions the exterior walls of your home. By default, three dimension strings are created: one for openings, one for wall segments, and an overall dimension for each side of the model.

To create automatic exterior dimensions:

 Select Tools > Dimensions > Auto Exterior Dimensions, or click tin time on the Annotation toolbar.

Note: You can control which dimension strings are created, as well as how walls and wall elements are dimensioned. You must specify these settings before the dimensions are created.

Creating Automatic Interior Dimensions

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Auto Interior Dimensions tool automatically dimensions interior walls in your model. To create automatic interior wall dimensions, you draw a base line through your model. Dimensions are created for any walls along that line (running in the same direction as the line).

To create automatic interior dimensions:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Auto Interior Dimensions, or click on the Annotation toolbar.
- 2. Select a start point for the base line that is outside of the model. Example



- Select an end point for the base line that is outside of the model. Dimensions are created along that line.
- 4. Right-click and select Finish.

Note: Before creating automatic interior dimensions, you may want to specify the interior dimension setting, which determines exactly how the walls are dimensioned. See Specifying Interior Dimension Settings.

Creating Linear Dimensions in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A linear dimension is a horizontal or vertical dimension with extension lines going vertically (for a horizontal linear dimension) or horizontally (for a vertical linear dimension) to the origins of the extension lines, which define the endpoint of the dimension.



This tool is ideal for creating interior dimensions, or dimensions on a landscape plan.

To create linear dimensions:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Linear Dimensions, or click → → on the Annotation toolbar.
- 2. Click a point in your drawing to begin the dimension line.
- Move your mouse (you do not have to hold the mouse button down) to a second point and click. A dimension line including offsets, arrows and a numerical value is added to your drawing.

4. Move your mouse away from the dimension line to stretch your extension lines. When the extension lines are the desired length, click to finish the dimension.

Creating Aligned Dimensions in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

An aligned dimension is similar to a linear dimension, except it tilts to the same angle as the element you are dimensioning, making it the ideal choice for elements that are not horizontal or vertical.



To create aligned dimensions in Model View:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Aligned Dimensions, or click (***) on the Annotation toolbar.
- 2. Click a point in your drawing to begin the dimension line.
- Move your mouse (you do not have to hold the mouse button down) to a second point and click. A dimension line including offsets, arrows and a numerical value is added to your drawing.
- 4. Move your mouse away from the dimension line to stretch your extension lines. When the extension lines are the desired length, click to finish the dimension.

Creating Angular Dimensions in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Angular Dimensions tool to insert a dimension that measures an angle rather than a distance. This is particularly useful where objects are

not rectangular, or are not perpendicular to one another.

To create an angular dimension, you select three points that will be used to create the dimension, then select a location for the dimension line.

To create an angular dimension:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Angular Dimensions, or click the down arrow next to the Dimensions button → → → on the Tools toolbar and select Angular Dimensions.
- 2. Select the angle's vertex point.
- 3. Select the first endpoint of the angle.
- 4. Select the second endpoint of the angle.



5. With the dimension attached to your crosshairs, position the dimension where you would like it, and then click to insert it.

Creating Continuous Dimensions in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can easily add more segments to an existing dimension using the Continuous Dimension tool. Simply pick points where you want each extension line to be, and the dimension line will automatically extend with each point picked. This creates a series of dimensions that are end to end. When you select the Continuous Dimension tool, it automatically starts to continue the last dimension created in the current session, from that dimension's second extension line. You can choose a different extension line from which to continue, or select a different dimension altogether.



To create continuous dimensions:

1. Select Tools > Dimensions > Continuous

Dimension or click **HTT ITT** on the Annotation toolbar. Your cursor will

automatically snap to the second extension line of the last linear or aligned dimension created in the current session.

If you would like to continue the dimension from the other extension line, right-click and choose **Select continued dimension**, then click near the end from which you want to continue.

If you would like to continue a different dimension, right-click and choose **Select continued dimension**, then click on the desired dimension, clicking near the end from which you would like to continue.

- Move your cursor in the direction in which you would like to continue the dimension. The dimension line extends as you move your cursor.
- Click to select the next extension line point. This creates a new dimension.
- 4. Continue adding more dimensions as needed.
- 5. When you are finished adding dimensions, right-click and select **Finish**.

Creating Baseline Dimensions in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Baseline Dimension tool to create multiple dimensions along the same baseline. Baseline dimensions are built from an existing linear or aligned dimension in your drawing. Simply pick points where you want each extension line to be, and new dimensions will be created with each point picked. When you select the Baseline Dimension tool, it automatically starts from the second extension line of the last linear or aligned dimension created. You can choose to continue from the other extension line instead, or choose a different dimension to continue if you want. Each new dimension is stacked next to the previous one.





To create baseline dimensions:

1. Select **Tools > Dimensions > Baseline**

Dimension or click **H** on the Annotation toolbar. Your cursor will automatically snap to the second extension line of the last linear or aligned dimension created. This will be the first extension line of the new dimensions.

If you want to continue from the other extension line instead, right-click and choose **Select continued dimension**, then click near the extension line that you want to use as your first extension line point.

If you would like to continue a different dimension altogether, right-click and choose **Select continued dimension**, then click on the dimension that you would like to continue.

- Move your cursor in the direction in which you would like to continue the dimension, then select a point for the second extension line. A new dimension is created.
- 3. Continue to select extension line points to add more dimensions.
- 4. When you are finished adding dimensions, right-click and select **Finish**.

Tip: To change the spacing between baseline dimensions, edit the **Baseline Offset** value in your dimension style properties. See *Changing the Style of a Dimension in Model View* on page 322.

Creating Overall Dimensions in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Overall Dimension tool to create one overall dimension from two or more existing dimensions in your drawing. The overall dimension extends from the first extension line of the first dimension picked to the second extension line of the last dimension picked.



To create an overall dimension:

1. Select Tools > Dimensions > Overall Dimen-

sion or click **HTT** on the Annotation toolbar.

- 2. Click where you would like the dimension line to be placed.
- 3. Click on the first dimension from which you would like to create an overall dimension.
- Click on the second dimension from which you would like to create an overall dimension. An overall dimension is created. You can select more dimensions to add if you want.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Creating Room Dimensions

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the Room Dimensions tool you can quickly calculate the dimensions of a room (e.g. $8' \times 10'$) and insert the dimension on your plan.

To create room dimensions:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Room Dimensions, or click 12 12 on the Annotation toolbar.
- 2. Click on a corner of the room.
- Click an adjacent corner to indicate the width and rotation of the room. Then, click an opposite corner to indicate the length of the room.



- 4. In the **Room Dimensions** dialog, you can edit the resulting dimensions if needed.
- Select the format in which you want the dimensions displayed — either Width x Length, or Length x Width.
- To select a style for the dimension, click the Dimension Style button, then make a selection from the Dimension Styles dialog.
- 7. Click **OK**. The dimensions are automatically inserted at the center of the room.

Moving a Dimension Line in Model View

You can move a dimension line using the Move Dimension Line tool. When you move a dimension line, the extension lines stretch to accommodate the move.

To move a dimension line using the Move Dimension Line tool:

- 1. Select the dimension.
- Right-click and select Move Dimension Line, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move Dimension Line.
- 3. Click any point to serve as the base point for the move.
- 4. Move your mouse in the direction you want to move the dimension line.
- 5. Click to finish the move.

Stretching Dimensions in Model View

You can make a dimension longer or shorter, or stretch either of its extension lines. When you stretch the length of a dimension, the dimension value updates automatically to reflect the new length.

To adjust the length of a dimension:

- 1. Select the dimension.
- 2. Click on one of the lower extension grips, then drag the dimension to stretch it. Note that it is possible to stretch the extension line at the same time.



3. Release your mouse button.

To adjust the length of extension lines:

- 1. Select the dimension.
- 2. Click the grip at the end of the extension line, then drag to stretch the extension line.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

Aligning Dimensions in Model View

You can use the Align Dimension tool to align an existing dimension with another.

To align dimensions:

- 1. Click on the dimension that you want to align another dimension with.
- Right-click and select Align Dimension, or select Edit > Modify > Align Dimension.
- 3. Click on the dimension that you want to align with the first dimension. The dimension adjusts to align with the first dimension.

Joining Dimensions in Model View

You can join two existing linear or aligned dimensions using the Join Dimension tool. Joining two dimensions turns two dimensions into one, and the dimension value updates automatically to display the new length.

To join dimensions:

- 1. Click on one of the dimensions that you want to join with another.
- Right-click and select Join Dimension, or select Edit > Modify > Join Dimension.
- 3. Click on the dimension that you with the first. The two dimensic into one.

Note: If the two dimensions that you are joining are not aligned with each other, the second dimension picked will be aligned with the first dimension picked when they are joined.

Splitting Dimensions in Model View

You can split a dimension into two dimensions at a selected point using the Split Dimension tool.

To split a dimension:

- 1. Click on the dimension that you want to split.
- Right-click and select Split Dimension, or select Edit > Modify > Split Dimension.
- 3. Click on the dimension line where you would like to split the dimension. The dimension is split at the selected point.

Overriding Dimension Text in Model View

You can edit a dimension's calculated numerical value to suit your needs, or add information to the value. You can even change the value to text, such as "Varies".

To override dimension text:

- Select the dimension, then right-click and select Override Text. Or, select Edit > Modify Elements > Override Text.
- If you want to replace the current dimension value with something else, type the desired text in the **Override Dimension Text** dialog. You can type any numerals or characters you want.

If you want to keep the current value but add information before or after the value, use a pair of angle brackets <> before or after the additional text. For example, if you wanted to add the words 'Final Dimension' after the dimension value, you would type <> Final Dimension in the edit box.

For a 12'-0" dimension, the dimension would then look like this:

12'-0" Final Dimension

12'-0" Final Dimension

If you want to add text below the dimension value (on the other side of the dimension line), type the characters **\X** where you want to drop down to a new line. For example, if you wanted to add the 'Final Dimension' text below the current dimension value instead of beside it, you would type **<> \X Final Dimension** in the edit box.

The dimension would then read:

12'-0" Final Dimension

12'-0" Final Dimension

The line break option can be used with the current dimension value (as shown in the example above), or with custom text that you type in the edit box. Note that you can only use the line break option once when overriding a dimension. You cannot keep adding more lines of text.

3. Click **OK** to update the dimension text.

Changing the Style of a Dimension in Model View

You can change the appearance of a dimension's line, arrows and text by applying a different dimension style to it.

To change the style of a dimension:

- 1. Select the dimension. You can select multiple dimensions using Shift+click.
- Right-click and select Change Style, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Change Style. (Note: For text with a leader, select *Properties*).
- In the Dimension Styles dialog, select the style that you want to apply to the dimension. You can also create your own dimension style, or edit the current dimension style. More Note that if you edit an existing

dimension style, your changes are permanently saved in the dimension styles library, and are not project-specific.

4. Click **OK**.

Note: The Change Style tool lets you change the dimension style of the selected dimension only. If you want to globally change all dimensions that use a particular dimension style, use the Update Style tool instead.

Updating a Dimension Style Globally

You can use the Update Style tool to change the style of all dimensions in your drawing that use the same dimension style.

To update a dimension style globally:

- 1. Select a dimension whose dimension style you want to change.
- Right-click and select Update Style, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Update Style.
- 3. In the **Dimension Style Properties** dialog, make the desired dimension style change.
- 4. Click **OK**. All dimensions using the selected dimension style will update automatically.

Dimension Style Properties

Anatomy of a Dimension



Arrow Type. You can select the type of symbol you want displayed at the ends of the dimension line. Choose an arrow, dot or tick for your arrow type.



The properties below the Arrow Type selection window (Extension Offset, Baseline Offset, etc.) vary depending on the arrow type selected. As you make different selections, the dimension updates in the preview window.

a - Extension Offset		1/8''
b - Dimension Lap		1/8"
c - Extension Lap		1/8"
d - Tick Width		1/8''
Baseline Offset		1"
a - Extension Offset	1/8''	
b - Dimension Lap	1/8"	
c - Extension Lap	1/8"	
d - Tick Width	1/8"	
Baseline Offset	1"	

Some of the common properties include:

Extension Offset. The distance between the end of the extension line and the object being dimensioned.

Dimension Lap. The distance the dimension line extends past the ends of the dimension. (The "ends" of the dimension are where the dimension line and extension lines intersect.)

Extension Lap. The distance the extension lines extend past the dimension line.

Baseline Offset. The distance between dimensions when the Baseline Dimension tool is used.

Leader tab

Arrow Type. You can specify the type of symbol you want to display at the end of leaders. (Leaders are used with the Text with Leader tool.) Choose an arrow, dot or tick for your arrow type.



The properties below the Arrow Type selection window (Arrow Length, Landing Gap, Leader Position, etc.) vary depending on the arrow type selected. As you make different selections, the dimension updates in the preview window.

	a - Arrow Length		1/16"		*
	b - Arrow Thickness		1/4"		
	c - Landing Gap		1/2"		
	Leader Position			Middle	
1	a - Arrow Length	1/16"			
t	- Arrow Thickness	1/4"			
¢	: - Landing Gap	1/2"			
ι	eader Position		Middle		

Common properties include:

Landing Gap. The distance between the end of the leader line and the object being annotated.

Leader Position. The justification of the leader in relation to the text (choose *Top*, *Middle* or *Bottom*). For example, a *Top* leader position aligns the leader with the top of the text.

<u>Text tab</u>

Text Style... Click to select a style for the dimension text. A text style determines the font, font style, text height and color of text.

Vertical Text Position

This is the vertical position of the dimension text relative to the dimension line.

Vertically Centered: Text is placed inside the dimension line.

Horizontal Text: Forces the dimension text to always be horizontal, regardless of the dimension line's angle.

Above Dimension Line: Text is placed above the dimension line.

Distance: Distance between the text and the dimension line when placing text above the dimension line.

Horizontal Text Position

This is the position of the dimension text relative to the ends of the dimension line.

Centered: Centers the text inside the dimension line.

Distance from first end: Places the text a specific distance from the first end of the dimension. Specify the distance in the *Distance* edit box.

Distance from the second end: Places the text a specific distance from the second end of the dimension. Specify the distance in the *Distance* edit box.

Units

Override system units: Uses the unit of measure specified in the Dimension Style Properties dialog instead of the unit of measure specified in the Program Settings.

Units\Distance: The units used for dimensions that measure a distance.

Type: Choose from Feet-Inches, Millimeters, Centimeters, Meters or Inches.

Precision: For Feet-Inches, the choices are whole units (0, 1/2, 1/4 and so on). For metric units, the choices are number of decimal places you can use.

Units\Angle: The units used for angular dimensions.

Type: Choose either Decimal Degrees or Degrees/Minutes/Seconds.

Precision: Choose the number of decimal places you would like angular dimensions to have (if using Decimal Degrees).

Line Styles tab

Refers to the line styles of the dimension line, extension lines and arrows. You can select a different line style for the dimension line, extension lines and arrows. A line style determines the pattern, color and weight of a line.

To assign a different line style to a dimension component, select the component in the left pane, then click **Select** in the center pane to access the **Line Styles** dialog.

Deleting a Dimension in Model View

You can delete a dimension from your drawing in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a dimension:

- Select the dimension you want to remove. You can select multiple dimensions using Shift+click.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Element Marks

Element marks show information such as dimensions or part numbers. You can choose to display marks on any element in your drawing, including doors, windows, openings, members, and cabinets. Visibility of element marks is controlled through the View Filter.

You can specify mark settings such as the format, position and text style in your Program Settings.

Specifying How Elements are Marked

Element marks show information such as an element's dimensions or part number. By default, doors, windows and openings insert with marks displayed, while other elements do not. You can specify whether or not a mark is displayed for any element in your drawing or catalog, and even specify custom mark text if desired.

You can specify default element mark settings such as the format and text style of marks in your Document Settings. See *Specifying Settings for Element Marks* on page 324.

To specify how an element is marked:

- Select the element in your drawing, then right-click and select **Properties**. Or, if you have not inserted the element yet, select it in the catalog, then right-click and select **Edit Element**.
- 2. In the properties dialog, select the Quantity tab.
- 3. In the *Quantity* pane, select the desired mark method from the **Mark** drop box:

Auto. Inserts a mark with the default mark settings.

Custom. Inserts a mark with custom text that you specify in the **Mark** field.

Off. Disables the creation of a mark.

4. Click **OK**.

Specifying Settings for Element Marks

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite You can specify the default format and appearance of element marks in your Document Settings. There are settings for door, window,opening, member and cabinet marks, as well as a set of default settings for all other types of elements.

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

🔄 🗟 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Element Marks** in the left column.
- Specify the mark settings. You can specify unique mark settings for doors, windows, openings, members, and cabinets. For all other elements, the settings in the **Default Mark** section will be used.

The available settings are:

Format. The format for the element's measurements. e.g. *Width x Height*

Units. The units in which measurements are displayed. e.g. *Feet-inches*

Precision. The precision of the element's measurements in terms of the selected units.

Position. The position of the mark in relation to the element (*Inside, Outside* or *Center*).

Offset. The distance of the mark from the element when the **Position** is set to *Inside* or *Outside*.

Layer. The layer on which marks will reside in Worksheet View.

Text Style. The style of the mark text (font, font size, color, etc.).

Displaying/Hiding Element Marks

You can display or hide element marks using your View Filter. Note that marks will only be shown on elements that have **Marks** turned on in their properties. By default, doors, windows and openings have marks turned on. See Specifying How Elements are Marked.

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Elements on Location tab.

3. Click the eye icon in the *Display* column to toggle marks on or off.

🐞 🐞 Marks turned on

- 🚕 Marks turned off
- 4. Click **OK**.

Lines & Shapes (Model View)

The Layout menu in Model View offers a number of different tools for adding lines and basic shapes to your 2D plan. These include Line, Arc, Circle, Ellipse, Elliptical Arc, Rectangle and Polygon Hatch. You can also draw a Revision Cloud around an area to call attention to it.

Lines and shapes are drawn with point-and-click simplicity. Editing them is easy — just select the object that you want to edit and then right-click to display a full menu of editing tools.

Lines (Model View)

To draw a line in 2D plan view you simply pick points to define the line's end points. Lines can have one segment or multiple segments depending on how many points you pick. For multi-segmented lines you can even join the last point to the start point to form a closed shape if needed.

Once you have drawn a line you can move, rotate, stretch or break it, extend or trim the line to another object, and change its line style.

Drawing Lines in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can draw a line with one or more segments by simply picking points.

To draw a line:

- Select Tools > Layout > Line, or click on the Layout toolbar.
- 2. Select a start point for the line.
- 3. Select the end point for the line. If you want you can continue adding segments to the line. If you want to close the last line back to the first line to create a closed shape, right-click and select **Close**.
- 4. When you are finished drawing the line, right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: Lines can only be drawn in 2D plan view.

Moving a Line in Model View

You can move a line by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move a line:

- Click on the line to select it. If the line has multiple segments and you want to move those as well, Shift+click to select the remaining segments.
- 3. Click and drag the line to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Note: In multi-segment lines, each segment is considered a separate line. Therefore, if you select only one segment and move it, the other segments do not move with it.

Rotating a Line in Model View

You can rotate a line using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a line:

- Click on the line to select it. If the line has multiple segments and you want to rotate those as well, Shift+click to select the remaining segments.
- 2. Right-click and select **Rotate**.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the line's grips.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the line.
- 5. When the line is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Note: In multi-segment lines, each segment is considered a separate line. Therefore, if you select only one segment and rotate it, the other segments do not rotate with it.

Stretching a Line in Model View

You can stretch a line in any direction by simply clicking and dragging one of its end points. If you

want to stretch a line without changing its direction you can use the Lengthen tool.

To stretch a line by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Click on the line to select it.
- Hover your pointer over the end you want to stretch to display the Stretch cursor. * \$\overline{\phi}_* * \$\overline{\phi}_*\$
- 3. Click and drag to stretch the line, then release your mouse button.

To lengthen or shorten a line:

- 1. Click on the line to select it.
- Right-click and select Lengthen, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Lengthen.
- 4. Click and drag to lengthen or shorten the line, then release your mouse button.

Extending a Line to Another Object (Model View)

You can use the Extend tool to extend a line to another drafting object in your drawing.

To extend a line to another object:

- Select the object you want to extend to. The object must be a line, arc, circle or rectangle. It must also be in the path of the line you want to extend.
- 2. Right-click and select **Extend**.
- 3. Select the line you want to extend, clicking near the end that you want to extend. The line is extended to the object you selected.

Trimming a Line to Another Object (Model View)

If a line passes through another drafting object, you can use the Trim tool to trim the line to the object it intersects.

To trim a line to another object:

 Select the object you want to trim to. The object must be a line, arc, circle or rectangle. Also, the line must intersect the object. In the following example, you would select the circle as the object to trim to.



- 2. Right-click and select Trim.
- 3. Select the line you want to trim, clicking near the end you want to trim.



The line is trimmed automatically to the nearest border.



In the above example, if you clicked on the center of the line, the portion inside the circle would be trimmed:



Breaking a Line in Model View

You can break a line into two separate lines using the Break tool.

To break a line:

- 1. Click on the line to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Break**.
- Click the point on the line where you want to break it. The line is broken at the selected point.

Offsetting a Line in Model View

You can use the Offset tool to make multiple copies a line in a set direction.

To offset a line:

- 1. Select the line.
- Right-click and select Offset, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Offset.
- 3. In the **Offset** dialog, type the distance you want to offset the line in the **Offset Distance** edit box.
- 4. In the **Number of Copies** edit box, type the number of copies you want to create, or use the arrow keys to increase or decrease the number.
- 5. Click **OK**.
- 6. Click on the side you want to offset to. The line is offset.

Editing the Style of a Line in Model View

By default, lines are drawn using the line style specified for Drafting Objects in your default Drafting Settings. You can easily change the line style of a line after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of a line:

- 1. Click on the line to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Properties**.
- In the Line Style dialog, click on Color, Line Type, or Line Weight to change the individual line style properties.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Line in Model View

You can delete a line in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a line:

- 1. Click on the line to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Arcs (Model View)

An arc is a curved line. There are three ways to draw an arc in Model View:

Start, Center, End. Select the start point and center point to define the arc's radius, and then the end point to define the arc's length.

3 Points. Select a start point for the arc, a second point along the arc, then drag the arc into position as you specify the end point.

Start, End, Radius. Select the start and end point of the arc to define its length, then select a third point to define the arc's radius.

Once you have drawn an arc you can move, rotate or stretch it, edit the arc's curve, extend or trim the arc to another object, or edit its line style.

Drawing Arcs in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

There are three Arc tools available in Model View:

Start, Center, End**Start, Center, End**. When you specify the start and center points, you define the arc's radius. The end point establishes the arc's length.

3 Points. Select a start point for the arc, a second point along the arc, then drag the arc into position as you specify the end point.

Start, End, Radius. Select the start and end point of the arc to define its length, then select a third point to define the arc's radius (curve).

To draw an arc with the Start, Center, End tool:

- Select Tools > Layout > Arc > Arc Start, Center, End, or click the down arrow next to the Arcs button on the Layout toolbar and select Arc - Start, Center, End.
- 2. Select a start point for the arc.

- 3. Select the arc's center point. The radius is now defined.
- 4. Select the arc's end point to define the arc's length.



5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

3 Points. Select a start point for the arc, a second point along the arc, then drag the arc into position as you specify the end point.

To draw an arc with the 3 Points tool:

- Select Tools > Layout > Arc > Arc 3 Points, or click the down arrow next to the Arcs button on the Layout toolbar and select Arc - 3 Points.
- 2. Select the start point of the arc.
- 3. Select a second point on the arc.
- Drag the arc to stretch it to the desired length and position, then select the end point of the arc.



5. Right-click and select Finish.

Start, End, Radius. Select the start and end point of the arc to define its length, then select a third point to define the arc's radius (curve).

To draw an arc with the Start, End, Radius tool:

- Select Tools > Layout > Arc > Arc Start, End, Radius, or click the down arrow next to the Arcs button on the Layout toolbar and select Arc - Start, End, Radius.
- 2. Select the start point of the arc.
- 3. Select the end point of the arc to define its length.
- 4. Move your pointer to curve the arc, then select a third point to define the arc's radius.



Note: Arcs can only be drawn in 2D plan view.

Moving an Arc in Model View

You can move an arc using the Move tool.

To move an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the arc, then release your mouse button.

Rotating an Arc in Model View

You can rotate an arc about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the arc's grips.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the arc about the selected point.
- 5. When the arc is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Stretching an Arc in Model View

You can stretch an arc in any direction by clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- Hover your pointer over the grip you want to move, then click and drag it into position. Moving an end grip changes the length of the arc and can also change the curve of the arc. Moving the center grip changes the curve (radius) of the arc.

Editing the Curve of an Arc in Model View

You can change how much an arc curves by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To edit the curve of an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the center grip, then click and drag the handle to change the arc's curve.

Extending an Arc to Another Object (Model View)

You can use the Extend tool to extend an arc to another drafting object in your drawing.

To extend an arc to another object:

- Select the object you want to extend to. The object must be a line, arc, circle or rectangle. It must also be in the path of the arc you want to extend.
- 2. Right-click and select **Extend**.
- 3. Select the arc you want to extend, clicking near the end that you want to extend. The arc is extended to the object you selected.

Trimming an Arc to Another Object (Model View)

If an arc passes through another drafting object, you can use the Trim tool to trim the arc to the object it intersects.

To trim an arc to another object:

 Select the object you want to trim to. The object must be a line, arc, circle or rectangle. Also, the arc must intersect the object. In the following example, you would select the rectangle as the object to trim to.



- 2. Right-click and select **Trim**.
- 3. Select the arc you want to trim, clicking near the end you want to trim.



The arc is trimmed automatically to the nearest border.



In the above example, if you clicked on the center of the arc, the portion inside the rectangle would be trimmed:



Offsetting an Arc in Model View

You can use the Offset tool to make multiple copies an arc in a set direction.

To offset an arc:

- 1. Select the arc.
- Right-click and select Offset, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Offset.
- 3. In the **Offset** dialog, type the distance you want to offset the arc in the **Offset Distance** edit box.
- 4. In the **Number of Copies** edit box, type the number of copies you want to create, or use the arrow keys to increase or decrease the number.
- 5. Click **OK**.
- 6. Click on the side you want to offset to. The arc is offset.



Editing the Line Style of an Arc in Model View

By default, arcs are drawn using the line style specified for Drafting Objects in your default Drafting Settings. You can easily change the line style of an arc after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Properties**.

- In the Line Style dialog, click on Color, Line Type, or Line Weight to change the individual line style properties.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting an Arc in Model View

You can delete an arc in a couple of easy steps.

To delete an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Circles (Model View)

There are two ways to draw a circle in Model View.

Center, Radius. Draw the circle from the center out, by picking two points to define its radius.

2 Point. Select two points to define the circle's diameter.

Once you have drawn a circle you can move, rotate or stretch the circle, and edit its line style.

Drawing Circles in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

There are two ways to draw a circle. With the Circle -Center, Radius tool you draw the circle from the center out, by picking two points to define its radius. With the Circle - 2 Point tool, you draw the circle outward from a selected point, essentially defining the circle's diameter.

To draw a circle by specifying its radius:

- Select Tools > Layout > Circle > Circle -Center, Radius, or click the down arrow next to the Circles button S on the Layout toolbar and select Circle - Center, Radius.
- 2. Click the point that is to be the center of the circle.
- 3. Move your pointer away from the center point. The circle grows as you move farther away from the center.
- 4. When the circle is the desired size, click to finish. Example



5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

To draw a circle by specifying its diameter:

- Select Tools > Layout > Circle > Circle 2 Point, or click the down arrow next to the Circles button (S) (S) on the Layout toolbar and select Circle - 2 Point.
- 2. Click a point in the drawing. The circle will grow from this point.
- 3. Move your pointer away from the selected point. The farther you move away from this point, the larger the circle becomes.
- 4. When the circle is the desired size, click to finish. Example



5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: Circles can only be drawn in 2D plan view.

Moving a Circle in Model View

You can move a circle by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move a circle:

- 1. Click on the edge of the circle to select it.
- Hover your pointer over the center grip to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag the circle to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Circle in Model View

You can rotate a circle in the X/Y plane using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a circle:

- 1. Click on the edge of the circle to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the circle's exterior grips.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the circle about the selected point.
- 5. When the circle is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Stretching a Circle in Model View

You can edit the size of a circle by simply clicking and dragging one of its exterior grips.

To stretch a circle:

- 1. Click on the edge of the circle to select it.
- Hover your pointer over one of the grips on the circle's circumference to display the Stretch cursor. * \$\overline{\phi}\$**\$,\$\overline{\phi}\$*
- 3. Click and drag to make the circle smaller or larger, then release your mouse button.

Note: If you want to define a specific radius using the Commander, right-click the selected circle and select **Edit Radius**.

Editing the Line Style of a Circle in Model View

By default, circles are drawn using the line style specified for Drafting Objects in your Drafting Settings. You can easily change the line style of a circle after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of a circle:

- 1. Click on the edge of the circle to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Properties.
- In the Line Style dialog, click on Color, Line Type, or Line Weight to change the individual line style properties.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Circle in Model View

You can delete a circle in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a circle:

- 1. Click on the edge of the circle to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Ellipses

You can create an ellipse or an elliptical arc in Model View using tools on the **Tools > Layout > Ellipse** menu. Two insertion methods are provided for each, as indicated below.

Ellipse - Axis Ellipse - Center Elliptical Arc - Axis Elliptical Arc - Center

Creating Ellipses in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

To draw an ellipse, select **Tools > Layout > Ellipse**, then select either **Ellipse - Axis** or **Ellipse - Center**.

To use the **Ellipse - Axis** tool:

- 1. Select two points to define the major axis of the ellipse.
- 2. Select a third point away from the axis to define the minor radius.



3. Right-click and select Finish.

To use the **Ellipse - Center** tool:

- Select the midpoint of the ellipse, then select a second point to define the major radius of the ellipse.
- 2. Select a third point to define the minor radius.



3. Right-click and select Finish.

Creating Elliptical Arcs in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite To draw an elliptical arc, select **Tools > Layout > Ellipse**, then select either **Elliptical Arc - Axis** or **Elliptical Arc - Center**.

To use the **Elliptical Arc - Axis** tool:

- 1. Select two points to define the major axis of the ellipse.
- 2. Select a third point away from the axis to define the minor radius.





3. Select two points to define the end points of the arc.





The section between the two points will form the arc:



4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

To use the $\ensuremath{\text{Elliptical Arc}}$ - $\ensuremath{\text{Center}}$ tool:

- Select the midpoint of the ellipse, then select a second point to define the major radius of the ellipse.
- 2. Select a third point to define the minor radius.



3. Select two points to define the end points of the arc.



The section between the two points will form the arc:

4



4. Right-click and select Finish.

Moving an Elliptical Object in Model View

You can move an ellipse or elliptical arc by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move an ellipse:

- 1. Click on the edge of the ellipse to select it.
- 3. Click and drag to move the ellipse where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating an Elliptical Object in Model View

You can rotate an ellipse or elliptical arc using the Rotate tool.

To rotate an elliptical object:

- 1. Click on the edge of the object to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the object's grips.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the object about the selected point.
- 5. When the object is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Stretching an Elliptical Object in Model View

You can an ellipse or elliptical arc by simply clicking and dragging one of its grips.

To stretch an elliptical object:

- 1. Click on the edge of the object to select it.
- Hover your pointer over one of the object's exterior grips to display the Stretch cursor.
 * \$\dots\$*.\$
- 3. Click and drag to stretch the object, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of an Elliptical Object

By default, ellipses and elliptical arcs are drawn using the line style specified for Drafting Objects in your Drafting Settings. You can easily change the line style of an elliptical object after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of an elliptical object:

- 1. Click on the edge of the object to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Properties**.
- In the Line Style dialog, click on Color, Line Type, or Line Weight to change the individual line style properties.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting an Elliptical Object in Model View

You can delete an ellipse or elliptical arc in a couple of easy steps.

To delete an elliptical object:

- 1. Click on the edge of the object to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Rectangles

You can use the Rectangle tool in Model View to draw a rectangle. Just select a point, stretch diagonally to the desired size, then click to finish.

Once you have drawn a rectangle you can move, rotate or stretch it, or edit its line style.

Drawing Rectangles in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can draw a rectangle easily by just picking two points on the screen.

To draw a rectangle:

- Select Tools > Layout > Rectangle, or click
 on the Layout toolbar.
- 2. Click a point on the screen. This will be one of the rectangle's corners.
- 3. Move your pointer away from the current point. The rectangle grows as you move farther away.
- 4. When the rectangle is the desired size, click to finish it. Example



5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Moving a Rectangle in Model View

You can move a rectangle by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move a rectangle:

- 1. Click on the edge of the rectangle to select it.
- 3. Click and drag the rectangle to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Rectangle in Model View

You can rotate a rectangle about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a rectangle:

- 1. Click on the edge of the rectangle to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the rectangle's grips.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the rectangle about the selected point.
- 5. When the rectangle is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Stretching a Rectangle in Model View

You can stretch a rectangle by clicking and dragging its corner grab handles.

To stretch a rectangle:

- Click on the edge of the rectangle to select it. Grips are displayed at each corner.
- Hover your pointer over one of the corner grips to display the Stretch cursor. * * * * * *
- 3. Click and drag to stretch the rectangle, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of a Rectangle in Model View

By default, rectangles are drawn using the line style specified for Drafting Objects in your default Drafting Settings. You can easily change the line style of a rectangle after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of a rectangle:

- 1. Click on the edge of the rectangle to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Properties.
- In the Line Style dialog, click on Color, Line Type, or Line Weight to change the individual line style properties
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Rectangle in Model View

You can delete a rectangle in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a rectangle:**

- 1. Click on the edge of the rectangle to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Polygon Hatch (Model View)

A polygon is a closed object consisting of three or more line segments. Examples include triangles, squares and hexagons. To draw a polygon with the Polygon Hatch tool in Model View, simply pick points to define its shape. When drawing a polygon you can select a line style for the polygon's outline, and apply a hatch pattern to the polygon if you want. Once you have drawn a polygon you can move, rotate

or stretch the polygon, or edit its line style or hatch pattern.

Drawing Hatched Polygons in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Polygon Hatch tool to draw a polygon of any shape with hatching of your choice instantly applied. You can edit the shape, line style and hatch pattern of the polygon after it has been inserted.

To draw a hatched polygon:

- Select Tools > Layout > Polygon Hatch, or click # on the Layout toolbar.
- Select a start point for the polygon, then continue selecting points to define its shape. Note that you do not have to select the start point again, as the polygon always remains closed as you draw it. Be careful not to cross any lines, or the polygon will not be created.
- 3. Once you've selected the last point of the polygon, right-click and select **Finish**.

Tip: If you don't want your polygon to have hatching, you can set its hatch properties to None. More

Moving a Polygon in Model View

You can move a hatched polygon using the Move tool.

To move a polygon:

- 1. Click on the edge of the polygon to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Move**.
- 3. Select a base point for the move, then select the point you want to move to.

Rotating a Polygon in Model View

You can rotate a polygon about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a polygon:

- 1. Click on the edge of the polygon to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the polygon's grips.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the polygon about the selected point.
- 5. When the polygon is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Stretching a Polygon in Model View

You can resize and reshape a polygon by clicking and dragging its grab handles.

To stretch a polygon:

- Click on the edge of the polygon to select it. Blue grips are displayed at each corner point.
- Hover your pointer over the grab handle you want to move to display the Stretch cursor.
 * \$\overline{\phi}\$*.\$\overline{\phi}\$.
- 3. Click and drag the grip to resize or reshape the polygon, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Style of a Polygon's Boundary Line (Model View)

When you draw a polygon, the boundary line uses the default line style set for Drafting Objects in your Drafting Settings. You can change the line style of a polygon's boundary line after the polygon has been inserted.

To edit the style of a polygon's boundary line:

- 1. Click on the edge of the polygon to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Properties**. The **Poly-gon Hatch** dialog appears.
- 3. Click on **Color**, **Line Type**, or **Line Weight** to change the individual line style properties.
- 4. Click **OK** to apply the changes.

Editing a Polygon's Hatch Pattern in Model View

Once you have created a polygon, you can edit the properties of the hatch pattern applied, or select a different hatch pattern to apply.

To edit a polygon's hatch pattern:

- 1. Click on the edge of the polygon to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Properties**.
- 3. In the **Polygon Hatch** dialog, click the **Select** button in the *Pattern* area.
- 4. In the **Patterns** dialog, select the hatch pattern you want to apply, then click **OK**. You can add and edit patterns if you want.
- Click **OK**. The polygon is automatically updated.

Tip: If you don't want the polygon to have hatching, select 'None' in the pattern list.

Deleting a Polygon in Model View

You can delete a polygon in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a polygon:**

- 1. Click on the edge of the polygon to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Revision Clouds

You can draw a revision cloud around a portion of your drawing to call attention to it. Usually revision clouds are used in the review process to indicate an area of change.

Prior to drawing revision clouds you can choose the settings that you would like your revision clouds to have, such as the line style, pattern, and arc size. You can also edit the properties of an inserted revision cloud.

Drawing Revision Clouds in Model View

Revision clouds call attention to areas of change in your drawing. You can quickly draw a revision cloud around any portion of your drawing by simply clicking a few points.

To draw a revision cloud:

Layout toolbar.

1. Select Tools > Layout > Revision Cloud >

Revision Cloud, or click on the

2. Pick points to form the outline of the cloud, then hover your cursor over the start point to close the shape. When picking points, be careful not cross over any segments that you have already drawn.





Moving a Revision Cloud in Model View

You can move a revision cloud using the Move tool.

To move a revision cloud:

- 1. Click on the edge of the revision cloud to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Move**.
- 3. Select a base point for the move, then select the point you want to move to.

Stretching a Revision Cloud in Model View

You can stretch the arcs in a revision cloud by clicking and dragging their grips.

To stretch a revision cloud:

- 1. Click on the revision cloud to select it. Blue grips appear on each of the cloud's arcs.
- 2. Click and drag a grip to stretch an arc, then release your mouse button.

Editing Revision Cloud Properties in Model View

You can edit a revision cloud's line style and pattern by editing its properties.

To edit revision cloud properties:

- Click on the edge of the cloud to select it, then right-click and select **Properties**.
- To assign a different layer to the revision cloud, click the browse button next to the Layer box, then select a layer from the Layers dialog.
- To override the color, line type, or line weight, click in the Color, Line Types, or Line Weight box and make the desired selection.
- To apply a different pattern to the revision cloud (visible in Patterned display mode), enable the **Include** check box in the **Pattern** area. Click **Select** in the **Pattern** area to select a pattern from the **Patterns** library.
- 5. Click **OK** to apply the changes.

Deleting a Revision Cloud in Model View

You can delete a revision cloud in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a revision cloud:

- 1. Click on the edge of the cloud to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Converting 2D to 3D

If you have drawn a line, arc, circle, rectangle or polygon in Model View, you can use the Convert To tool on an object's right-click menu to convert that object to an actual 3D building element such as a wall, member, footing or edging. The resulting element will have properties and can be edited just like any other 3D building element that you insert, and will be quantified in your project estimate.

Converting 2D Lines and Shapes to 3D Building Elements

In Model View you can convert lines, arcs, circles, rectangles and polygons to actual 3D building elements such as walls, members, strip footings and edging.

To convert lines and shapes to 3D building elements:

- 1. Select the line or shape.
- Right-click and select Convert To, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Convert To. Then, select the building element that you want to convert the object to.
- In the Catalog Access dialog, select the material you want to use for the element, then click OK. The object is instantly converted.

Note: Circles and arcs cannot be converted to members.

Details (Model View)

The *Tools > Layout > Details* menu in Model View offers a full set of tools for adding 2D details to a 2D plan. Tools include Batt Insulation, Rigid Insulation, Wood Section, Masonry Section, and Cut Line. Just pick points to define the end points of the detail, and the detail is created for you automatically.

Once you have drawn a detail you can move and stretch it, or edit its line style.

Batt Insulation (Model View)

Batt insulation is pre-cut, flexible insulation that fits inside wall cavities between the studs. You can add batt insulation detail to a 2D view in Model View using the Batt Insulation tool. Select a start point and end point to define the length of the detail, and then a third point to define the width of the detail.

Once you have drawn batt insulation you can move and stretch it, as well as edit its line style.

Drawing Batt Insulation in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite
You can add sections of batt insulation to a 2D view by picking points to define the length and width of the insulation detail.

To draw batt insulation in Model View:

- Click two points to define the length of the insulation section, then move your pointer away from the base line and click a third point to define the width of the section.



Moving Batt Insulation in Model View

You can move a section of batt insulation by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move batt insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the center grip to display the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag the insulation to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Stretching Batt Insulation in Model View

You can make batt insulation longer, shorter, wider or narrower by simply clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch batt insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it. Blue grips are displayed at each corner point.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the grip you want to move to display the Stretch cursor.
- 3. Click and drag the grip in the direction you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of Batt Insulation in Model View

By default, batt insulation is drawn using the line style specified for Drafting Objects in your default Drafting Settings. You can easily change the line style of batt insulation after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of batt insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Properties.
- In the Line Style dialog, click on Color, Line Type, or Line Weight to change the individual line style properties.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting Batt Insulation in Model View

You can delete a section of batt insulation in a couple of easy steps.

To delete batt insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select **Delete**, or select **Edit >** Modify Elements > Delete.

Rigid Insulation (Model View)

Rigid insulation takes the form of non-flexible panels and is often used on roofs and walls to provide thermal insulation. You can add a 2D rigid insulation detail to a 2D plan in Model View using the Rigid Insulation tool. Simply select two points to define the length of the detail, and a third point to define the width of the detail.

Once you have inserted rigid insulation you can move and stretch it, as well as edit its line style.

Drawing Rigid Insulation in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add sections of rigid insulation to a 2D view by picking points to define the length and width of the insulation detail.

To draw rigid insulation:

 Select Tools > Layout > Details > Rigid Insulation, or click Image: Second second

 Click two points to define the length of the insulation section, then move your pointer away from the base line and click a third point to define the width of the section.



Moving Rigid Insulation in Model View

You can move a section of rigid insulation by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move rigid insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it.
- Hover your pointer over the center grip to display the Move cursor.
- Click and drag the insulation to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Stretching Rigid Insulation in Model View

You can make rigid insulation longer, shorter, wider or narrower by simply clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch rigid insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it. Blue grips are displayed at each corner point.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the grip you want to move to display the Stretch cursor.
- 3. Click and drag the grip in the direction you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of Rigid Insulation in Model View

By default, rigid insulation is drawn using the line style specified for Drafting Objects in your default Drafting Settings. You can easily change the line style of rigid insulation after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of rigid insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Properties**.
- In the Line Style dialog, click on Color, Line Type, or Line Weight to change the individual line style properties.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting Rigid Insulation in Model View

You can delete a section of rigid insulation in a couple of easy steps.

To delete rigid insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Wood Sections (Model View)

Wood sections can be used to represent blocking, wood posts or other wood elements in a 2D drawing. Use the Wood Section tool to draw a wood section by picking points to define its length and width.

Once you have drawn a wood section you can move, rotate or stretch it, and edit its line style.

Drawing a Wood Section in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Wood sections can be used to represent blocking, wood posts or other wood elements in a 2D view. You can add a custom-sized wood section to a 2D view by picking points to define its length and width.

To draw a wood section:

Select Tools > Layout > Details > Wood Section, or click the down arrow next to the
Details button 国 国 on the Layout toolbar

and select Wood Section.

2. Click two points to define the length of the wood section, then move your pointer away from the base line and click a third point to define the width of the section.



Moving a Wood Section in Model View

You can move a wood section by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move a wood section:

- 1. Click on the wood section to select it.
- 3. Click and drag the section to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Wood Section in Model View

You can rotate a wood section about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a wood section:

- 1. Click on the wood section to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Rotate**.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the object's grips. Click and drag to rotate the wood section about the selected point.
- 4. When the wood section is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Stretching a Wood Section in Model View

You can make a wood section longer, shorter, wider or narrower by simply clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a wood section:

- 1. Click on the wood section to select it. Blue grips are displayed at each corner point.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the grip you want to move to display the Stretch cursor. Click and drag the grip in the direction you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Model View

By default, wood sections are drawn using the line style specified for Drafting Objects in your default Drafting Settings. You can easily change the line style of a wood section after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of a wood section:

- 1. Click on the wood section to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select **Properties**.
- In the Line Style dialog, click on Color, Line Type, or Line Weight to change the individual line style properties.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Wood Section in Model View

You can delete a wood section in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a wood section:

- 1. Click on the wood section to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Masonry Sections (Model View)

A masonry section shows where brick, stone or concrete is used in a design. You can use the Masonry Section tool to add a masonry section detail to a 2D view. Once you have defined the desired dimensions for the bricks and joints, you just pick two points to define the length of the detail, and a third point to define the width of the detail.

Once you have drawn a masonry section you can move, rotate or stretch the section, edit its properties, or edit its line style.

Drawing a Masonry Section in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add a masonry section to a 2D view to represent an area where brick, stone or concrete is used. You create a masonry section by specifying the dimensions of one masonry unit and joint, and then picking points to define the length and direction of the section.

To draw a masonry section:

- Select Tools > Layout > Details > Masonry Section, or click the down arrow next to the Details button 티 티 이 n the Layout toolbar and select Masonry Section.
- 2. In the **Masonry Section** dialog, select either **Brick** or **Block** to define how you want the masonry to be represented graphically in the section.
- 3. Specify the desired dimensions for each brick and joint.

Masonry Height. The height of one masonry unit (e.g. brick) in the section.

Masonry Width. The width of each masonry unit in the section.

Joint Height. The distance between masonry units.

Joint Width. The offset of the mortar from the face of the masonry units.

- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. In your drawing, click two points to define the length of the masonry section, keeping in mind that the line you are defining will represent the exterior face of the masonry. Then, move your pointer away from the base line and click a third point to define the direction of the section relative to the base line.



Moving a Masonry Section in Model View

You can move a masonry section by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move a masonry section:

- 1. Click on the masonry section to select it.
- 3. Click and drag the section to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Masonry Section in Model View

You can rotate a masonry section about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a masonry section:

- 1. Click on the masonry section to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the object's grips.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the masonry section about the selected point. When the masonry section is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Stretching a Masonry Section in Model View

You can make a masonry section longer or shorter by simply clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a masonry section:

1. Click on the masonry section to select it. Blue grips are displayed at each corner point.

- 2. Hover your pointer over one of the corner grips to display the Stretch cursor.
- 3. Click and drag the grip in the direction you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Editing Masonry Section Properties in Model View

Once you have created a masonry section, you can edit the dimensions of the masonry units and joints by accessing the masonry section properties.

To edit masonry section properties:

- 1. Click on the masonry section to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Masonry Section Properties.
- 3. In the **Masonry Section Properties** dialog, edit the values as desired.

Masonry Height. The height of one masonry unit (e.g. brick) in the section.

Masonry Width. The width of each masonry unit in the section.

Joint Height. The distance between masonry units.

Joint Width. The offset of the mortar from the face of the masonry units.

4. Click **OK**.

Editing the Line Style of a Masonry Section in Model View

By default, masonry sections are drawn using the line style specified for Drafting Objects in your default Drafting Settings. You can easily change the line style of a masonry section after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of a masonry section:

- 1. Click on the masonry section to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Properties.
- In the Line Style dialog, click on Color, Line Type, or Line Weight to change the individual line style properties.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Masonry Section in Model View

You can delete a masonry section in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a masonry section:

- 1. Click on the masonry section to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Cut Lines (Model View)

A cut line is a standard drafting symbol used to represent a break in the drawing. It indicates that the object continues in the same manner after or between the break lines. You can use the Cut Line tool to add a cut line detail to a 2D drawing. All you have to do is select two points to define the length of the cut line, and a third point to define its width.

Once you have drawn a cut line you can move, rotate or stretch the cut line, or edit its line style.

Drawing a Cut Line in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A cut line is a standard drafting symbol used to represent a break in the drawing. It indicates that the object continues in the same manner after or between the break lines. You can add a cut line to a 2D view by picking points to define the length and extent of the cut line.

To draw a cut line:

- 2. Click two points to define the length of the cut line, then move your pointer away from the base line and click a third point to define the extent of the break symbol's sharpness.



Moving a Cut Line in Model View

You can move a cut line by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move a cut line:

- 1. Click on the cut line to select it.
- 3. Click and drag the cut line to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Cut Line in Model View

You can rotate a cut line about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a cut line:

- 1. Click on the cut line to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the object's grips.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the cut line about the selected point. When the cut line is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

Stretching a Cut Line in Model View

You can make a cut line longer, shorter, narrower or wider by simply clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a cut line:

- Click on the cut line to select it. Blue grips are displayed at the ends and center of the cut line.
- 2. Hover your pointer over the grip you want to move. If you want to change the extent of the cut line's sharpness, hover over the grip at the break's peak. The Stretch cursor is displayed.
- 3. Click and drag the grip in the direction you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of a Cut Line in Model View

By default, cut lines are drawn using the line style specified for Drafting Objects in your default Drafting Settings. You can easily change the line style of a cut line after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of a cut line:

- 1. Click on the cut line to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Properties.
- In the Line Style dialog, click on Color, Line Type, or Line Weight to change the individual line style properties.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Cut Line in Model View

You can delete a cut line in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a cut line:**

- 1. Click on the cut line to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Insert View

You can use the Insert View tool to insert a 2D plan view, elevation view, section view, 3D Camera View or 3D QuickView into an existing Model View window. When you insert a view, it is inserted as a 2D image (even if the view is a 3D view), and is only visible if the view window is set to 2D plan view. You can insert multiple views in the same view window.

You can move and resize the model view image once it has been inserted, and add things like text and dimensions. You cannot, however, edit the appearance of the image contents.

Inserting Views in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Insert View tool to insert different views of your drawing into one Model View window. For example, you could insert four different elevations into a view window to simulate a typical drawing sheet. You can insert a 2D plan view, elevation, section, 3D camera view, or 3D QuickView. When you insert a view, it is inserted as a 2D image (even if the view is a 3D view), and is only visible in 2D plan view. The image can be moved once it has been inserted, but you cannot change the appearance of its contents.

To insert a view:

 Make sure the view window into which you want to insert the view is the current view window.

Note: The view in the view window must be a 2D plan view. Otherwise, the Insert View tool is unavailable. If you do not want the 2D plan view displayed, use the Display None option in the View Filter.

- Select Tools > Layout > Insert View, or click
 on the Layout toolbar.
- In the **Insert View** dialog, select the tab containing the type of view you want to insert (2D, 3D, elevation, etc.).
- 4. Select the specific view you would like to insert (e.g. Front Elevation).
- 5. For all view types except 3D camera views you can specify a scale for the inserted view in the *Properties* area. The scale is the ratio of units on paper to real-world units. If the scale is set to 1:1 (12" = 1'- 0"), twelve inches on paper will represent one foot of your model. This would be a rather large printout. A scale of 1:12 (1" = 1'- 0"), however, would result in a smaller-scale view when the drawing is printed because every foot is represented by only one inch on paper.
- If you are inserting an elevation or section, a Datum Lines pane appears in the dialog:



Settings...

If you want datum lines to be inserted at key points in the elevation or section, select **Yes** from the **Include Datum Lines** drop box. Otherwise, select **No**.

If you are including datum lines:

Include Locations

In the **Datum Line Placement** section, select the points at which you want a datum line to be placed (Grade, Grade Level, Floor Level, etc.) by selecting **Yes** next to each one that you want to include.

NOTE: Grade Level is taken directly from *Settings>Document Settings> Terrain> Grade Level*. The height reported there will be the height above sea level (ASL) listed in the datum information. If you have left it at 0" you can elect to show Grade but set Grade Level to No so the height doesn't appear.

If the elevation or section shows more than one location:

If the elevation or section shows more than one location:

In the **Include Locations** section, select the locations where you would like datum lines to be displayed by selecting **Yes** next to each desired location.

To define the appearance of the datum lines, datum marks, leader lines and text, click **Settings**. See *Defining the Appearance of Datum Lines in Elevations and Sections* on page 368.

- 7. In the *Insertion* area, select the format in which you want the view to be inserted. The **Image** option inserts a raster image, or bitmap, which can be resized once inserted. You can also change the display mode of a raster image to rendered, rendered outline, or patterned. The **Drawing** option inserts a vector image. Vector data provides useful information about the geometry in a drawing, such as endpoints, curves and polygons. Vector images are displayed in wireframe or hidden line display mode.
- To filter elements from the view that you are inserting, click *below* the preview window. More info
- 9. To change the display mode of the view, click be choiced in the selected the desired display mode. Choices are Wireframe, Hidden Line, Rendered, Rendered Outline and Patterned. Note that if the *Drawing* option is selected in the Insertion area, the image will only appear in wireframe or hidden line display mode when inserted.
- 10. To zoom or pan the view in the preview window, use the zoom/pan tools below the preview window. More

Click on a tool for more info:

Zoom In

To zoom in by increments:

 Click delow the view map window.

Zoom Out

To zoom out by increments:

1. Click 🔍

Zoom Realtime

To zoom in and out in real time:

- 1. Click 📊
- 2. To zoom in, click and drag toward the top of the screen.
- 3. To zoom out, click and drag toward the bottom of the screen.
- 4. When the view is the desired size, release your mouse button.

Tip: You can also zoom in and out using the scroll button on your mouse.

Zoom Window

To zoom a selected area:

- Click and drag a selection window around the area you want to magnify.

Zoom to Fit

To zoom to the extents of the view map window:

1. Click 🧝 🕵

Pan

To pan (shift) the view:

- 1. Click 📲.
- 2. Click and hold your mouse button in the view map window.
- 3. Drag the view in the direction you want to pan.
- 4. Release the mouse button.

Zoom Previous

To zoom back to the previous view:

- 1. Click 🗾.
- 2. Click **Insert**. The image is attached to your cursor.
- Click to insert the view image where you want it. You can move and stretch the image later if you want.

Moving a Model View Image (in Model View)

If a view of the model has been imported into a Model View window, you can move the inserted view around on the screen.

To move a model view image:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- 3. Click and drag to move the image where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Resizing a Model View Image (in Model View)

If a view of the model has been imported into a Model View window, you can resize the inserted image by clicking and dragging its corner grab handles. This shrinks or enlarges the view depending on the direction in which you stretch.

Note: If the *Drawing* insertion option was selected when the view was inserted, it is considered a vector image and cannot be resized. You can only resize views that were inserted with the *Image* insertion option selected.

To resize an imported view image:

- Click on the image to select it. Its bounding box is highlighted, and blue grips appear at the corners and center.
- Hover your pointer over a corner grip to display the Stretch cursor. * * * * * *
- 3. Click and drag to stretch the view, then release your mouse button.

Deleting a Model View Image (in Model View)

If a view of the model has been imported into a Model View window, you can delete the inserted image in a couple of easy steps.

To delete an imported view image:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Import CAD File (Model View)

If you have a drawing sheet border, title block, drafting symbol, detail or other drawing in AutoCAD® DWG or DXF format that you would like to import into your **Envisioneer** project, use the Import CAD File tool.

When importing a CAD file you will need to specify how you want colors and linetypes to be handled, and select an appropriate scale for the image. Once that is done, just click in the drawing area to insert the image.

Once you have inserted a CAD file you can move or rotate it to suit your design needs.

Tip: There are a number of drafting symbols, details and title blocks in DWG format available in the program's Drafting Objects folder.

Importing CAD Files in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Import CAD File tool lets you bring an AutoCAD DWG or DXF file into your project as a 2D image. You may, for example, want to bring in a drawing sheet border, title block, drafting symbol, or detail. You can define the size and angle of the imported block prior to importing it.

To import a CAD file in Model View:

- In Model View, select Tools > Layout >
 Import CAD File, or click in the Layout toolbar. You can also select File > Import > Import CAD File.
- 2. In the **Open** dialog, select the type of file you want to import from the **Files of type** drop box.
- 3. Select the file you want to import, then click **Open**.
- 4. In the Component Options dialog, specify how you would like colors and linetypes to be displayed. If By Layer is selected, the resulting image will use the colors and linetypes assigned to the layers of the CAD drawing. If By Color is selected, it will use the colors and linetypes of individual entities in the CAD drawing.
- Click **OK**. The image is displayed in the Import dialog. You can zoom and pan in the preview pane using the zoom/pan controls

below the pane. Note that changing the zoom level inside the preview pane has no effect on the image when it is imported.



6. If the document has more than one page, navigate to the page that you want to import by clicking the buttons in the *Page* area of the **Import** dialog.

Page:			
< <	1	/4	> >
Page:			
< < 1	/4	> >	

 Before importing the image you will need to define the size or scale of the imported image. Initially the size of the image is the same as the size in the CAD file. You can set a custom size by editing the values in the Width and Height edit boxes. When you do so, the Scale values adjust accordingly.

If you are importing a floor plan and you know the scale at which it was drawn originally, you can enter that value in the **Scale** edit boxes. For example, if the plan was drawn at a 1/4" = 1'-0" (1:48) scale, you would enter **48** in the **Scale (X)** or **Scale (Y)** edit box. There are separate X and Y (horizontal and vertical) scale settings. By default, whatever you enter in one edit box will automatically be displayed in the other edit box, maintaining the same scale in both directions. If you want the X scale to be different than the Y scale, you need to click the lock icon beside the **Scale (X)** and **Scale (Y)** edit boxes. With the lock 'unlocked' you can enter a different value in each edit box.

Another way of specifying the scale is to draw a reference line along an existing object in the CAD image and specify the length of that object in real-world units. To do this,

click the Pick Scale button \square next to the **Scale (X)**or **Scale (Y)** edit box, then pick two points along an object in the CAD image to define a reference line. (If the X scale and Y scale will differ, you should pick points along a horizontal object for the X scale, and pick points along a vertical object for the Y scale.) Then in the **Scale by Reference** dialog, enter the length of the reference line and click **OK**. For example, if you know that a particular wall in your plan is 12' long, draw a line along that wall and then enter 12' in the **Scale by Reference** dialog.

Scale by Refere	ence	×
New Distance	12'	Pick
	ОК	Cancel

The **Scale** values in the **Import** dialog will then adjust to reflect the scale you defined.

8. To specify the angle of the imported image, enter a value in the **Angle** edit box, or click

Pick Angle button **O** next to the **Angle** edit box and pick two points along an object in the CAD image to define the angle. If you are picking points to define the angle, the **Angle by Reference** dialog appears and reports the angle that you defined. You can edit the angle here if you want.

9. If you want to import only a portion of the

image, click	Set	Set	under
the Crop Bo	x option, then	click two po	oints

diagonally in the preview window to define a box around the portion that you want to import. A blue box is displayed around the selected portion. To remove the crop box,

click **Clear**, then click **OK** to confirm that you want to clear the crop box.

- 10. To dim the imported image, slide the **Dim-ming** slider to the desired dim level. The higher the percentage, the more dim the image will be.
- 11. If you want the **Import** dialog to appear again after you insert the image so that you can insert another image, enable the **Multiple Insert** check box.
- 12. To import the image into the current view window, click **Insert**. The image is attached to your cursor.
- 13. Position the image where you want it, then click to insert it.

Tip: For your convenience, there are also a number of pre-defined drafting symbols, details and title blocks in DWG format available in the program's Drafting Objects directory.

Resizing a CAD Image in Model View

If you have imported a CAD file into your project, you can scale the image using the Resize tool. You can scale in the X or Y direction, or both directions simultaneously to maintain the aspect ratio.

To resize a CAD image:

- 1. Click on the CAD image to select it.
- Right-click and select Resize, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Resize.
- 3. Pick two points on the CAD image to create a reference line. If possible pick two points along an object in the CAD image whose length you know. The length of the reference line is displayed in real-world units in the **Resize Block** dialog.



- 4. In the **Resize Block** dialog, enter the new length that you want the reference line to represent. Entering a greater value will make the image bigger, and entering a lesser value will make the image smaller.
- 5. If you want the image to be scaled in both directions, enable the **Maintain Aspect Ratio** radio button.
- 6. If you want the image to be scaled in only one direction, enable either the Horizontal Only or Vertical Only radio button.
- 7. Click **OK**. The image is resized.

Moving a CAD Image in Model View

If you have used the Import CAD File tool in Model View, you can move the resulting 2D image around on the screen.

To move a CAD image in Model View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- 3. Click and drag to move the image where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a CAD Image in Model View

You can use the Rotate tool to rotate a CAD image that you have inserted in Model View using the Import CAD File tool.

To rotate a CAD image:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Click and drag the image's center grip to rotate the image, then release your mouse button.

Deleting a CAD Image in Model View

If you have used the Import CAD File tool, you can delete the CAD image in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a CAD image:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Specifying a Default Drafting Objects Directory

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you use the Import CAD File tool, you are prompted to select a DWG or DXF file to open. By default, the program's Drafting Objects folder is displayed in the **Open** dialog, where you can find a number of pre-defined drafting symbols and title blocks. This folder is in the following location:

C:\ProgramData**Cadsoft****Envisioneer**\Drafting Objects

You can specify a different default directory to display if you want.

To specify a default drafting objects directory:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select the General tab.

- 3. In the *File Paths* area, scroll down and select the **Drafting Settings Directory**.
- 4. Click Modify.
- 5. In the **Browse for Folder** dialog, locate and select the directory you want to use as the default drafting objects directory, then click **OK**.
- 6. Click **OK** in the **Program Settings** dialog.

Import PDF File

Portable Document Format (PDF) is a file format created by Adobe Systems for the purpose of sharing documents. You can use the Import PDF File to import the contents of any PDF file into your Envisioneer project. If the PDF contains a floor plan, you can scale the plan to the correct size upon import, then trace the imported plan using building tools such as the Walls tool to create an accurate 3D model in Envisioneer. You can even snap to points on the imported plan while tracing.

Importing a PDF File in Model View

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Import PDF File to import the contents of any PDF file into your Envisioneer project. You can define the size and angle of the imported block prior to importing it. If the PDF contains a floor plan, you can scale the plan to the correct size upon import, then trace the imported plan using building tools such as the Walls tool to create an accurate 3D model in Envisioneer.

To import a PDF file in Model View:

 Select File > Import > Import PDF File, or Tools > Layout > Import PDF File, or click



In the **Open** dialog, locate and select the PDF file that you want to import, and then click **Open**. (If the **Font Support Issue** dialog appears, see the note below.)

The PDF file is displayed in the **Import** dialog. You can zoom and pan in the PDF preview pane using the zoom/pan controls below the pane. Note that changing the zoom level inside the preview pane has no effect on the image when it is imported.



3. If the PDF has more than one page, navigate to the page that you want to import by clicking the buttons in the *Page* area of the **Import PDF** dialog.



4. Before importing the PDF you will need to define the size or scale of the imported image. This is especially important if you are importing a floor plan because you want the walls to be the correct length when you trace them.

Initially the size of the image is the same as the page size in the PDF file. You can set a custom size by editing the values in the **Width** and **Height** edit boxes. When you do so, the **Scale** values adjust accordingly.

If you are importing a floor plan and you know the scale at which it was drawn originally, you can enter that value in the **Scale** edit boxes. For example, if the plan was drawn at a 1/4" = 1'-0" (1:48) scale, you would enter **48** in the **Scale (X)** or **Scale (Y)** edit box. There are separate X and Y (horizontal and vertical) scale settings. By default, whatever you enter in one edit box will automatically be displayed in the other edit box, maintaining the same scale in both directions. If you want the X scale to be different than the Y scale, you need to click the lock icon beside the **Scale (X)** and **Scale (Y)** edit boxes. With the lock 'unlocked' you can enter a different value in each edit box.

Another way of specifying the scale is to draw a reference line along an existing object in the PDF image and specify the length of that object in real-world units. To do this,

click the Pick Scale button \square next to the **Scale (X)**or **Scale (Y)** edit box, then pick two points along an object in the PDF image to define a reference line. (If the X scale and Y scale will differ, you should pick points along a horizontal object for the X scale, and pick points along a vertical object for the Y scale.) Then in the **Scale by Reference** dialog, enter the length of the reference line and click **OK**. For example, if you know that a particular wall in your plan is 12' long, draw a line along that wall and then enter 12' in the **Scale by Reference** dialog

Scale by Reference dialog.

Scale by Refere	ence	X
New Distance	12	Pick
	ок	Cancel

The **Scale** values in the **Import** dialog will then adjust to reflect the scale you defined.

5. To specify the angle of the imported image, enter a value in the **Angle** edit box, or click

the Pick Angle button **O** next to the **Angle** edit box and pick two points along an object in the PDF image to define the angle. If you are picking points to define the angle, the **Angle by Reference** dialog appears and reports the angle that you defined. You can edit the angle here if you want.

6. If you want to import only a portion of the

image, click	Set	Set	next
		1.1.4	· .

to the Crop Box item, then click two points

diagonally in the PDF window to define a box around the portion that you want to import. A blue box is displayed around the selected portion. To remove the crop box,

click **Clear Clear**, then click **OK** to confirm that you want to clear the crop box.

- 7. To dim the imported image, slide the **Dim-ming** slider to the desired dim level. The higher the percentage, the more dim the image will be.
- 8. To import the file as an image with no vector information, make sure that the Convert to Image check box is enabled. This option is particularly useful for large files that take a long time to open. If this option is enabled you can adjust the quality of the resulting image by dragging the Quality slider to the desired position. Note that increasing the quality may also increase the time needed to load the image.

Note: If the PDF is converted to an image, you will not be able to snap to points on the image like you can on a vector-based PDF.

- 9. If you want the **Import** dialog to appear again after you insert the PDF so that you can insert another PDF, enable the **Multiple Insert** check box.
- 10. To import the image into the current view window, click **Insert**. The image is attached to your cursor.
- 11. Position the image where you want it, then click to insert it.

Note: If the PDF file that you are importing contains fonts that are not available on your computer, the **Font Support Issue** dialog will appear. Before importing the PDF, you need to specify how you want to handle this issue.



not display properly.

Tip: If the PDF is a vector PDF (one that was generated from vector-based design software), you can snap to points on the imported plan while

tracing. Note that the Ortho snap takes precedence over the Object Snap when tracing to facilitate the creation of straight lines.

Tip: You can hide the imported image from view by disabling the visibility of Drafting objects in your View Filter.

Resizing a PDF Image

If you have imported a PDF file into your project, you can scale the image using the Resize tool. You can scale in the X or Y direction, or both directions simultaneously to maintain the aspect ratio.

To resize a PDF image:

- 1. Click on the PDF image to select it.
- Right-click and select Resize, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Resize.
- 3. Pick two points on the PDF image to create a reference line. Typically you would pick two points along an object in the PDF image whose length you know, such as a wall. The length of the reference line is displayed in real-world units in the **Resize Block** dialog.





4. In the **Resize Block** dialog, enter the new length that you want the reference line to represent. Entering a greater value will make the

image bigger, and entering a lesser value will make the image smaller.

- 5. If you want the image to be scaled in both directions, enable the **Maintain Aspect Ratio** radio button.
- If you want the image to be scaled in only one direction, enable either the Horizontal Only or Vertical Only radio button.
- 7. Click **OK**. The image is resized.

Moving a PDF Image

If you have imported a PDF file into your drawing you can move the image if necessary.

To move a PDF image in Model View:

- 1. Click on the PDF image to select it.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the image, or pick a start point for the move and specify a move distance and direction in the Commander.

To move a PDF image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Hover your pointer over the square blue grip at the center of the image, then click and drag to move it. Alternatively you can use the Modify > Move tool if you want to specify a precise move distance in the Commander.

Rotating a PDF Image

If you have imported a PDF file into your drawing, you can rotate the image if necessary.

To rotate a PDF image in Model View:

- 1. Click on the PDF image to select it.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Pick a point on the image, then click and drag to rotate the image around this point.

To rotate a PDF image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Hover your pointer over the triangular blue grip on the edge of the image, then click and drag to rotate the image. Alternatively you can use the Modify > Rotate tool if you want to specify a precise rotation distance.

Deleting a PDF Image

If you have imported a PDF file you can delete the image when you don't need it anymore.

To delete a PDF image in Model View:

- 1. Click on the PDF image to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

To delete a PDF image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select
 Modify > Delete, or click and on the Modify toolbar.

Chapter 19: Drafting in Worksheet View

Drafting in Worksheet View

Worksheet View is a powerful, 2D production drafting module. Here you can find all of the drawing and editing tools needed to create fast, accurate, detailed working drawings.

Selecting a Worksheet View tab below the drawing area takes you directly into Worksheet View. There are a number of pre-defined Worksheet View windows available, and you can create more if needed.

The pre-defined Worksheet View windows contain a generic border and title block. You can delete the border/title block if you do not want to use it, or customize it to suit your needs. You can also use the Import CAD File tool to insert one of the pre-defined title blocks in the program's Drafting Objects folder, or your own title block in DWG or DXF format. You can also use the Import Image tool to insert a BMP, JPG or TGA image, such as a company logo.

Once your drawing border is in place, you can use the Define SmartView tool to insert a view of your model onto the worksheet. You can insert 2D Plan Views, 3D Camera Views, 3D QuickViews, Elevations and Sections.

Once you have inserted a view you can begin annotating it. You can add text, dimensions, lines, shapes, hatching, details (such as insulation) and symbols.

If your worksheet has content that you want to reuse in other projects, you can capture it in a block using the Define Block tool. You can even attach userdefined attributes to blocks for maximum versatility and control. All objects drawn in Worksheet View are drawn on layers. This provides you with control over line types, line weights and colors, and whether or not objects can be seen, selected or plotted.

Tip: There are three powerful dimensioning tools available in Model View that you may want to use before inserting 2D plan views in Worksheet View. These are Auto Exterior Dimensions, Auto Interior Dimensions, and Room Dimensions.

Worksheet View

When you open a new project, a Model View window is displayed. This is where you build, edit and view your 3D model.

When you switch to a Worksheet View window, you go directly into 2D drafting mode. The Worksheet View interface is different than the Model View interface. It offers a number of different drafting tools that help you create professional-looking working drawings. You can start by inserting a view of your model with the Define SmartView tool, such as a floor plan or elevation. You can then edit and annotate the drawing to suit your documentation needs.

Switching to Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Once you have created your model you can begin creating your construction documents. Envisioneer offers a complete 2D drafting mode called Worksheet View. To enter Worksheet View you need to open a Worksheet view window using the view tabs or the Window menu. You can also open Worksheet View windows from the View Manager.

A number of Worksheet view windows have been pre-defined for you, such as Floor Plan, Elevations and Details.

To switch to Worksheet View:

1. Select a view tab below the drawing area that represents a Worksheet View window, or click on the **Window** menu and select the desired view.

You can also access a Worksheet View window through the View Manager.

The Worksheet View Environment

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The layout of Worksheet View is similar to the layout you see in Model View. There is a title bar, menu bar and toolbar area at the top of the screen.

Below the drawing area you will see the view tabs that let you switch between view windows, the View toolbar, and the Commander. At the bottom of the screen you can see the same status bar available in Model View.

In Worksheet View, the information panel on the right side of the screen displays Object Properties.



Insert Toolbar

The Insert toolbar provides access to a number of powerful, automated tools that will help you get your worksheet started. Use the SmartView tools to define and insert a view of your 3D model, whether it be a 2D plan, elevation, section, or 3D view. If your model changes you can instantly update the views on your worksheets to reflect the changes. Using the Import CAD File tool you can insert title blocks, details and symbols that are in DWG or DXF format. Use the Import PDF tool to bring in a PDF file, scaled and rotated as desired. With the Import Image tool you can bring in any image in JPG, BMP or TGA format, such as a company logo. To save time you can use the Define Block tool to capture a group of objects in a block that can be saved and then inserted on other worksheets.



Draw Toolbar

The Draw toolbar contains a number of drafting tools: Line, Polyline, Circle, Arc, Polygon, Boundary Hatch, Rigid Insulation, Batt Insulation, Wood Section, Masonry Section and Cut Line.



Modify Toolbar

The Modify toolbar contains a wide variety of tools for editing objects in your drawing: Delete, Move, Rotate, Duplicate, Array, Offset, Stretch, Scale, Mirror, Break, Extend, Trim, Fillet, Join Polyline, and Explode.

In	sert	$\overline{\langle}$	Draw	Modify	Tools	$\overline{\ }$	Help	
		争	じ 			X	R 🔭	- 🍏
In	sert	$\overline{}$	Draw	Modify	Tools	$\overline{}$	Help	

Tools Toolbar

Insert pre-defined labels or custom Text, as well as Linear, Aligned and Angular Dimensions. Build on existing dimensions using the Continuous, Baseline and Overall Dimension tools, and edit dimensions using the Align, Join and Split Dimension tools. Use the Measure tool to quickly determine the distance between any two points.



Properties Toolbar

The Properties toolbar indicates the current layer, and the color, line type and line weight assigned to that layer. You can override layer settings by making selections from the layer setting drop boxes. The toolbar also provides access to the Layer Properties dialog.



View Toolbar

The View toolbar contains a complete set of zoom and pan tools: Zoom In, Zoom Out, Zoom Realtime, Zoom Window, Zoom Previous, Zoom to Fit, and Pan.



Drawing Area

By default, the drawing area displays a virtual piece of paper with a shadow behind it. This represents the paper size set in the view's Print Properties. If you change the paper size selection in the view's Print Properties, the virtual sheet of paper will update to reflect the new size. Having the virtual paper displayed enables you to see how the worksheet content will appear on the printed page. If you want you can disable the virtual sheet of paper to create a standard look where a solid background is displayed throughout the entire drawing area.

By default, print margins are marked with a dotted line if you have your virtual paper enabled. These are the print margins set in the properties of the printer that is currently selected for the view. You can disable the display of the print margin lines if you want.

Each pre-defined worksheet contains a sample drawing sheet border that you can delete or edit to suit your needs. You can insert any pre-defined or custom title block, as well as various views of your model. From there you can edit, detail and annotate your drawing to create a detailed, accurate construction document.

Crosshairs, Pickbox and Cursor

In Worksheet View you see *crosshairs*, which are lines that represent the two coordinate axes. At the center of the crosshairs is a *pickbox*, a square used for selecting objects. When you move your pointer outside the drawing area you see a *cursor*, an arrow for accessing menus and toolbars. The cursor can also become a double-headed arrow when resizing windows.

Object Properties Panel

The Object Properties panel displays the properties of the currently selected object, such as the layer it is assigned to. You can edit properties by simply making different selections in the panel.

Object Propert	ics
 no selection - 	
Object Properties	alaith, guardathaith, gudarai
• no selection •	

Controlling the Display of the Paper Shadow in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, a virtual sheet of paper with a shadow behind it is displayed in the drawing area in Worksheet View. This piece of paper represents the paper size selection in the view's Print Properties. Having the virtual paper displayed lets you see how the worksheet content will fit and appear on the printed page. You can disable the virtual paper display if you want to create a standard look where a solid background is displayed throughout the entire drawing area.

To control the display of the paper shadow:

Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Worksheet View Behavior* area, check or uncheck the **Enable Paper Shadow** check box.
- 4. Click OK.

Controlling the Display of Page Margin Lines in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, dashed lines are displayed on the virtual paper in Worksheet View to show you where the page margins are. Page margins denote the areas of the paper (along the borders) in which the printer will not print any content (i.e. the *non-printable areas*). Page margins are set in the properties of the printer that is selected for each view.

To control the display of page margin lines:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Worksheet View Behavior* area, check or uncheck the **Enable Page Margin Lines** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Note: Page margin lines can only be displayed if your paper shadow is enabled.

Layers

All objects in Worksheet View are drawn on **layers**. This is similar to using overlays in paper-based drafting. A layer contains objects that are similar in nature, or that share the same attributes. For example, you may have a layer just for text objects.

The layer on which an object is placed determines the object's color, line type and line weight. You can hide individual layers from view, set a layer to non-plot, or make objects on a layer non-selectable.

As you draw, new objects are placed on the current layer. There are several pre-defined layers available in Worksheet View that you can use. You can edit the properties of these layers, or create new layers. Layers created or edited in Worksheet View are specific to the current project only. If you want to define a layer that can be used in other projects, edit the Layers Library instead.

Layer Control

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Layers are like the overlays used in paper-based drafting. They are used to organize the content of a drawing and group information by function. For example, you may have a layer dedicated to text and dimensions, and another specifically for your title block.

All objects in Worksheet View are drawn on layers. As you draw, new objects are placed on the current layer. There are several pre-defined layers available in Worksheet View that you can use. You can edit the properties of these layers, or create new ones.

By placing objects on layers you can determine the following:

- Whether objects on a layer are visible
- Whether objects on a layer can be selected for editing
- What color, line type and line weight is assigned to objects on a layer
- Whether objects are plotted
- Whether objects on the layer will appear in front of or behind objects on other layers

Selecting a Layer to Draw On

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Before you draw or insert an object in Worksheet View, you should select a layer to put it on.

To quickly select a layer:

1. Click the layer drop box on the Properties toolbar and select the layer you want.

To make a layer current in the Layer Properties dialog:

- Select View > Layer Properties, or click an the Properties toolbar.
- 2. Select the layer that you want to make current.



Making a Layer Current

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you draw or insert objects in Worksheet View, they are drawn on whatever layer is current in the layer drop box. You can also make a layer the current one when you are in the Layer Properties dialog.

To make a layer current in the Layer Properties dialog:

- Select View > Layer Properties, or click
 on the Properties toolbar.
- 2. Select the layer that you want to make current.
- 3. Click Set Current Set Current, or right-click and select Set Current, or or click More Options...

and choose Set Current.

Creating a New Layer for the Current Project

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can easily create your own layers for the current project and define their name, color, line type and line weight. You can also control whether or not objects on the layer are visible, selectable or plottable. Layers created in Worksheet View are specific to the current project, and will be available in all Worksheet Views in the current project. If you want to create a layer that can be used in other projects, add it to the Layers Library instead.

To create a new layer for the current project:

- In Worksheet View, select View > Layer Properties, or click and the Properties toolbar.
- 2. In the Layer Properties dialog, click
 - Add , or right-click in the

layer list and select Add. You can also click



and select **Add**. A new layer called *Layer 1* is added below the currently selected layer.

3. To edit the name of the layer, click the current name, then type the desired name and

press Enter. Or click Rename

Rename and then type the desired name.

- To control the selectability of objects on the layer, click the layer's filter icon right in the Selectable column.
- To edit the default color assigned to the layer, click inside the *Color* field, then make a selection from the list of colors. Or, select *Other* to access the **Colors** dialog.
- To edit the layer's default line type assignment, click inside the *Line Type* field, then make a selection from the list of line types. Or, select *Other* to access the Line Types dialog.
- To edit the layer's default line weight assignment, click inside the *Line Weight* field, then make a selection from the list of line weights. Or, select *Other* to access the Line Weights dialog.
- 10. Click **OK**.

Editing Layer Properties

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add, edit, rename and delete layers in the current project. Layer properties include the layer name, color, line type and line weight. You can also specify whether or not a layer is visible, whether or not it can be selected, and whether or not it plots. You can change the display order priority of a layer, so that objects on the layer appear in front of or behind objects on other layers. You can edit the settings for single layers or for multiple layers simultaneously.

Layers defined in Worksheet View are specific to the current project, and any changes you make will apply to all Worksheet Views in the current project. If you want to define layers that can be used in other projects, edit your Layers Library instead.

To edit layer properties in the current project:

1. In Worksheet View, select View > Layer **Properties**, or click $\geq \geq$ on the Properties toolbar.

Set Current	🔂 Add	Delete	• 📝	Rename
	Name			Displ
Cabinets				1
CAD				đ
Celinos				徳
Ceilings - Pla	n view			1
Default	at their			1
Door swing				1
Doors				1
Drafting - Di	mancione			1
Draffing - H	atela			1
Drafting - Tr	aun			1
Dratung - It	ext			1
Electrical				
Floors				
Footings				
ver Properties • Current 🕹 Add 🐞 De Name	icto 😰 Rename 😰 Display	More Options Selectable	Plot	Priority
AD			8	999
elings - Plan view	٠	1	8	500
efault por-swing		30	8	999
oors		200	8	999
	۲	30	8	999
rafting - Hatch	۰		8	999
afting - Hatch afting - Text		140	0	999
afting - Hatch afting - Text ectrical pors	۲	200	-	
arfing - Hatch arfing - Text ectrical tors otings		201	8	500

2.

📝 Rename

and then click Rename

or right-click and select **Rename**. Type the new name, then press Enter.

- 5, Add Add , or 3. To add a layer, click right-click and select Add. A layer named Layer 1 is added to the list. You can edit the properties of the layer to suit your needs.
- 4. To delete a layer, select the layer in the list

Delete and then click 🛗 Delete , or right-click and select Delete. You cannot a delete a layer that currently has objects on it.

5. To edit a layer's properties, select the layer that you want to edit. If you want to edit multiple layers simultaneously, select the layers that you want to edit using one of the following methods:

To select a group of sequential layers, click on the first layer in the group, then holding down the Shift key select the last layer in the group.

To select multiple layers one at a time, hold down the CTRL key while selecting layers.

To select all layers, right-click in the layer list and choose Select All, or click

More Options...



and choose Select All.

To deselect all layers, right-click in the layer list and choose Deselect All, or click

More Options... More Options.

and choose Deselect All. If you have some layers selected and want to

invert the selection so they are not selected and all other layers are selected, right-click in the layer list and select Invert Selection, or

More Options... click

More Options... and select Invert Selection.

Edit the settings as desired. You can simply 6. click inside a field to edit it, or if multiple layers are selected, use options such as **Display**, Selectable, Plot, Set Color, Set Line Type and Set Line Weight on the right-click menu

More Options... or the

More Options... menu. If multiple layers are

plor	Lin
27,255)	Conti
	Cont
5,128,0)	Cont
5,128,0)	Dash
k	Defa
k	Cont
	Cont
k	Conti
k	Cont
k	Cont
5,128,0)	Dash
	Conti
enta	Dash
	· · · · ·

More Options.

selected, the same change will apply to all selected layers. Settings are described below. **Display**. Controls whether or not objects on the layer are visible. Click the eye icon to toggle visibility on or off.

🐞 🐞 Layer is visible

矣 👧 Layer is invisible

Selectable. Controls whether or not objects on the layer can be selected. Click the filter icon to toggle selectability on or off.

📅 Objects on layer are selectable

Objects on layer are not selectable

Plot. Controls whether or not objects on the layer will be plotted. Click the printer icon to toggle the plot state on or off.

▲ Gbjects on layer will plot

🐼 🚳 Objects on layer will not plot

Priority. The display order priority of the layer. A layer with a higher number will appear in front of a layer with a lower number.

Color. The color of objects on the layer. Click the box to display a list of colors. Select the desired color, or select *Other* to access the **Color** dialog.

Line Type. The style of line used to display objects on the layer. Click the box to display a list of line types. Select the desired line type, or select *Other* to access the **Line Types** dialog.

Line Weight. The weight of the line used to display objects on the layer. Click the box to display a list of line weights. Select the desired line weight, or select *Other* to access the **Line Weights** dialog.

7. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Layer

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can delete unused layers from the layer list if you like.

To delete a layer:

- In Worksheet View, select View > Layer Properties, or click and the Properties toolbar.
- 2. In the **Layer Properties** dialog, click on the layer that you want to delete.
- 3. Click **Delete Delete**, or right-click and select Delete, or click

More Options...

and select **Delete**. The layer is deleted.

Transferring an Object to Another Layer

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

In Worksheet View, you can transfer an object that you have drawn to another layer by making a layer selection on the Properties toolbar or in the Object Properties panel.

To transfer an object to another layer:

- 1. Select the object.
- In the Object Properties panel, select the layer that you want to transfer the object to from the Layer drop box. Or, select a layer from the layer drop box on the Properties toolbar.

Note: Transferring an object to another layer does not make that layer current.

Overriding Color, Line Type and Line Weight

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the color, line type and line weight settings on the Properties toolbar are set to *BYLAYER*, which means the color, line type and line weight of new objects are determined by the settings of the layer they are drawn on. For example, if a layer's color setting is red, objects drawn on that layer will be red. If you select a specific color on the Properties toolbar, however, that color is used for all new objects, overriding the default color for the current layer. The same applies to line types and line weights.

- To override a layer setting before drawing an object, make the desired color, line type or line weight selection on the Properties toolbar.
- To edit an object's color, line type or line weight after it has been drawn, select the object, then make the desired changes in the Object Properties panel.

Controlling the Visibility of Layers

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can make a layer visible or invisible by editing its properties. Hiding layers can reduce the complexity of a drawing by removing unnecessary objects from view, without removing them from the drawing. You may, for example, want to hide a layer containing construction lines.

To control the visibility of layers:

- Select View > Layer Properties, or click an the Properties toolbar.
- 2. In the **Layer Properties** dialog, click the layer's eye icon in the *Display* column to toggle visibility on and off.

🐞 🐞 Layer is visible

🔍 🗛 Layer is invisible

To toggle the visibility for multiple layers simultaneously, select the layers and then rightclick and select **Display**, or click

More Options...

More Options... and

select **Display**.

To select multiple layers, hold down the CTRL key while selecting layers. If you want to select a group of sequential layers, select the first layer in the group, then holding down the Shift key, select the last layer in the group.

To select all layers, right-click in the layer list and choose **Select All**, or click

More Options...

More Options... and

choose Select All.

To deselect all layers, right-click in the layer list and choose **Deselect All**, or click



choose Deselect All.

3. Click **OK**.

Note: Changes to layer visibility are per worksheet.

Controlling the Ability to Select and Edit Objects on Layers

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You may have specific layers containing objects that you do not want anyone to be able to edit. You can determine whether or not objects on a layer are selectable by editing the layer's properties. This may be particularly useful if the drawing is being shared with other people.

To control the selectability of objects on a layer:

- In Worksheet View, select View > Layer Properties, or click and on the Properties toolbar.
- 2. In the **Layer Properties** dialog, click the layer's filter icon in the *Selectable* column to toggle selectability on and off.

Will Objects on layer are selectable

Objects on layer are not selectable

To toggle the selectability of multiple layers simultaneously, select the layers and then rightclick and select **Selectable**, or click

and

and

More Options...

select Selectable.

To select multiple layers, hold down the CTRL key while selecting layers. If you want to select a group of sequential layers, select the first layer in the group, then holding down the Shift key, select the last layer in the group.

To select all layers, right-click in the layer list and choose **Select All**, or click



• ______ Per Price

choose Select All.

To deselect all layers, right-click in the layer list and choose **Deselect All**, or click More Options...

More Options... and

choose **Deselect All**.

3. Click **OK**.

Controlling Whether or Not a Layer is Plotted

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can determine whether or not a layer is plotted by editing the layer's properties. If you turn off plotting for a layer, the objects on that layer are still displayed. However, if a layer is set to plot but is currently turned off (invisible), the layer will not be plotted.

To control a layer's plot setting:

- In Worksheet View, select View > Layer Properties, or click and the Properties toolbar.
- 2. In the **Layer Properties** dialog, click the layer's printer icon in the *Plot* column to toggle plotting on and off.

過
の
bjects on layer will plot

🐼 🚳 Objects on layer will not plot

To toggle the plot setting for multiple layers simultaneously, select the layers and then rightclick and select **Plot**, or click

More Options...

select **Plot**.

To select multiple layers, hold down the CTRL key while selecting layers. If you want to select a group of sequential layers, select the first layer in the group, then holding down the Shift key, select the last layer in the group.

To select all layers, right-click in the layer list and choose **Select All**, or click

More Options... More Options.. and

choose Select All.

To deselect all layers, right-click in the layer list and choose **Deselect All**, or click

More Options...



3. Click **OK**.

Controlling the Display Order Priority of Layers

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can make objects on certain layers appear in front of or behind objects on other layers. You can achieve this by assigning numbers of priority to layers.

To control the display order priority of layers:

- In Worksheet View, select View > Layer Properties, or click and the Properties toolbar.
- 2. In the **Layer Properties** dialog, click the value in a layer's *Priority* column, and then enter the desired number of priority. A layer with a higher number will appear in front of a layer with a lower number.
- 3. Click **OK**.

Note: Changes to layer priority are per worksheet.

Object Snaps (Worksheet View)

Object snaps help you locate precise points on objects when drawing and editing in Worksheet View, without having to know their coordinates or draw construction lines. For example, if you hover your pickbox along a line, the pickbox will automatically snap to the precise endpoints and midpoint of that line as the pickbox nears those points. Envisioneer displays a special marker whenever your pickbox comes close to a snap point.

The Object Snaps available in Worksheet View are Endpoint, Midpoint, Center, Nearest, Intersection, Insertion, Perpendicular, Tangent and Quadrant. By default, all nine object snaps are active, but you can disable object snaps that you do not want to use. You can also turn object snaps off altogether.

If while drawing or editing you want to use a specific object snap, you can temporarily disable all active object snaps and select the specific one that you want to use.

and

Using Object Snaps in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Object snaps help you locate precise points on objects when drawing and editing in Worksheet View, without having to know their coordinates or draw construction lines. For example, if you hover your pickbox along a line, the pickbox will automatically snap to the precise endpoints and midpoint of that line as the pickbox nears those points. Envisioneer displays a special marker whenever your pickbox comes close to a snap point.

Worksheet View offers nine object snaps for accurately locating precise points.

Endpoint. Snaps to the endpoint of an existing line or arc.

Midpoint. Snaps to the midpoint of a line or arc.

Center. Snaps to the center point of an arc or circle.

Nearest. Snaps to a point on a line, circle, arc or other object that is nearest to the center of the pickbox (where the crosshairs intersect).

Intersection. Snaps to the point where objects cross each other.

Insertion. Snaps to the insertion point of text, blocks, imported model views, and imported CAD objects.

Perpendicular. Snaps to a point on a line, arc or circle that forms a perpendicular from the current point to the selected object.

Tangent. Snaps to a point on an object that forms a tangent between the object and another point.

Quadrant. A quadrant is a section of an arc or circle. This snaps to the 0-, 90-, 180- and 270-degree positions on a circle or arc.

Selecting the Objects Snaps You Want to Use

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, all nine object snaps are active while you are drawing and editing in Worksheet View. You can disable selected object snaps if you want.

To select object snaps to use:

- In Worksheet View, select Settings > Object Snap Settings.
- Uncheck the boxes of object snaps that you do not want to use. Any that you want to use should be checked.

Endpoint. Snaps to the endpoint of an existing line or arc.

Midpoint. Snaps to the midpoint of a line or arc.

Center. Snaps to the center point of an arc or circle.

Nearest. Snaps to a point on a line, circle, arc or other object that is nearest to the center of the pickbox (where the crosshairs intersect).

Intersection. Snaps to the point where objects cross each other.

Insertion. Snaps to the insertion point of text, blocks, imported model views, and imported CAD objects.

Perpendicular. Snaps to a point on a line, arc or circle that forms a perpendicular from the current point to the selected object.

Tangent. Snaps to a point on an object that forms a tangent between the object and another point.

Quadrant. A quadrant is a section of an arc or circle. This snaps to the 0-, 90-, 180- and 270-degree positions on a circle or arc.

3. Click **OK**.

Using a Specific Object Snap (Snap Override)

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If while drawing or editing in Worksheet View you want to use a specific object snap, you can temporarily disable all active object snaps and select the specific one that you want to use.

To use a specific object snap:

- When you are ready to select a point, rightclick and select **Snap Overrides**, then select the specific object snap that you want to use.
- 2. Select the point using the object snap.

Once you've used a snap override, all enabled objects snaps become active again.

Turning Object Snaps On and Off

If you do not want object snaps to be active while you are drawing and editing, you can disable them.

To turn object snaps on and off:

- Press F5 on your keyboard, or
- Click the OBJSNAP button on the Status bar, or
- Select **Settings > Program Settings**, then on the Drawing Aids pane, check or uncheck the Enable (F5) check box in the Object Snap area

SmartViews

A SmartView is a view of the 3D model that you have created in Model View. You can use the Define SmartView tool to insert a 2D plan view, 3D Camera view, 3D QuickView, elevation or section onto a sheet in Worksheet View. When you insert a SmartView onto a worksheet it is saved in memory so that you can quickly insert the same view again onto other sheets using the Insert SmartView tool. If you want to change a SmartView's settings, such as the view scale, use the Redefine SmartView tool.

If you make changes to your 3D model, you can instantly update selected SmartViews in Worksheet View using the Update SmartView tool. You can also update multiple SmartViews simultaneously using the Update SmartViews (Global) tool.

Like everything else in Worksheet View, SmartViews are 2D objects and can be edited using the tools on the Modify menu.

Inserting a Saved SmartView

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Every time you use the Define SmartView tool to insert a SmartView of your model, the SmartView is saved in memory so that you can quickly insert the same view again onto other sheets using the Insert SmartView tool.

To insert a saved SmartView:

 In Worksheet View, select Insert > SmartViews > Insert SmartView.

- 2. In the **Insert SmartView** dialog, select the SmartView that you want to insert from the top drop box.
- 3. Click **OK**.
- 4. Position the SmartView where you want it, then click to insert it.

Note: If you are inserting the saved SmartView on a worksheet that has a different scale than the worksheet on which you originally inserted the SmartView, the SmartView will appear to be different in size than it did on the original worksheet.

Enabling/Disabling Polygon Consolidation When Inserting a SmartView

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Polygon consolidation combines individual polygons and/or objects into a single object. By default, polygon consolidation is enabled in your program settings.

If you insert a SmartView that is an elevation or section view onto a worksheet and discover that certain lines or faces are missing in the inserted view, disabling polygon consolidation prior to inserting the SmartView may resolve this issue.

To enable or disable polygon consolidation:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Work-space** in the left pane.
- 3. In the *Worksheet View Behavior* area, check or uncheck the **Enable Polygon Consolidation** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Note: Disabling polygon consolidation may cause extraneous lines to be displayed in inserted SmartViews. For example, you may see a line on the exterior wall face where an interior wall intersects it.

Defining the Appearance of Datum Lines in Elevations and Sections

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When inserting an elevation or section view onto a worksheet, you have the option of including datum lines at key points such as the Floor Level and Wall Height of each location. Sample datum lines are shown below.



Prior to inserting an elevation or section, you can define the appearance of datum lines, leaders, marks and text. You can also turn off individual components if desired.

To define datum line properties:

 If you are currently in the Insert View dialog, click Settings in the Datum Lines pane on the elevation view or section view tab. Otherwise, select Settings > Document Settings

or click on the Settings toolbar, then select **Datum Lines** in the **Document Set-tings** dialog.

2. You can define the following properties: General

Layer. The drawing layer on which the datum lines, marks and text will be placed. The layer dictates the color, line type and line

weight of datum and/or leader lines if **By Layer** is selected for these settings in the datum line properties.

Datum Marks

These are optional blocks that can be displayed at the end(s) of each datum line.

Position. If including a block at the end of datum lines, specify whether you want to display the block at **Both** ends, the **Left** end or **Right** end of the datum line.

Datum Block. To display a block at the end of each datum line, select the desired block from the drop box. If you do not want to display a block, select **None**. The blocks in the drop box are blocks that have been created using the **Define Block** tool (see *Creating a Block* on page 423).

Leader Lines

Leader lines extend from the ends of datum lines (past the extents of the model). Leader lines are optional and can have a different appearance than that of the datum line. If used, they are the lines along which the text is placed.

Position. Specify whether you want to display leader lines at **Both** ends, the **Left** end or **Right** end of each datum line.

Length. The length of the leader line. If you do not want to include leader lines, specify a length of **0**. Keep in mind that you can also extend datum lines past the extents of the model by specifying an **Extension Distance** in the *Datum Lines* section.

Color. The color of the leader lines. If **By Layer** is selected, the color is determined by the layer selected in the **Layer** field.

Line Type. The style of the leader lines (solid, dashed, etc.). If **By Layer** is selected, the line type is determined by the layer selected in the **Layer** field.

Line Weight. The thickness of the leader lines. If **By Layer** is selected, the line weight is determined by the layer selected in the **Layer** field.

Datum Lines

Datum lines are lines that pass through the model. Their display is optional. If used, they can be extended past the extents of the model.

Display. Select either **On** or **Off** to specify whether or not you want datum lines displayed.

Extension Distance. The distance by which the datum lines extend past the extents of the model.

Color. The color of the datum lines. If **By Layer** is selected, the color is determined by the layer selected in the **Layer** field.

Line Type. The style of the leader lines (solid, dashed, etc.). If **By Layer** is selected, the line type is determined by the layer selected in the **Layer** field.

Line Weight. The thickness of the leader lines. If **By Layer** is selected, the line weight is determined by the layer selected in the **Layer** field.

Text

Text can be optionally displayed at the end(s) of datum lines. It can consist of a description and/or elevation from grade.

Description. The location name. Specify where you want to display the elevation text relative to the leader line (**Above-Right**, **Below-Right**, etc.). If you do not want to display a description, select **None**.

Elevation. The height above grade. Specify where you want to display the elevation text relative to the leader line. If you do not want to display elevation text, select **None**.

Style. The text style in which the text will be displayed.

Alignment. The alignment of the text relative to the leader line. Selecting **Left** or **Right** will align the text with the left end or right end of the leader line, while selecting **Center** will center the text along the leader line.

Editing a SmartView

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite If you have inserted a SmartView on your worksheet, you can edit the contents of the SmartView if needed. You can edit its individual components (for example move or delete lines or other objects), or add objects to it. Any changes or additions you make are automatically saved to the SmartView's definition, so any future insertions of the SmartView will contain your changes.

To edit a SmartView:

- Double-click the inserted SmartView, or select the SmartView and then click the Edit button in the Definition field in the Object Properties panel. Everything except the SmartView is dimmed, indicating that you are now in SmartView editing mode.
- 2. Make the desired changes or additions.
- 3. Press ESC to return to your worksheet.

Note: If you inserted your SmartView using the 'Image' option instead of the 'Drawing' option, inplace editing is not available. However, you can replace the image with another saved on your computer. To do so, click the browse button in the Object Properties panel.

Note: If you want your changes to apply to the selected instance of the SmartView only and not future insertions of the SmartView, explode the SmartView and then make your edits. This leaves its original definition intact. Note, however, that the SmartView will no longer be linked to the 3D model and can no longer be updated with changes you make to the model.

Redefining a SmartView's Settings

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have inserted a SmartView on a worksheet you can change its settings using the Redefine SmartView tool. You can change the scale of the SmartView, change what is visible in the SmartView, or select different content to display, such as a different location in a 2D plan or a different view in an elevation.

To redefine a SmartView's settings:

- 1. Select Insert > SmartViews > Redefine SmartView.
- 2. Click on the edge of the inserted SmartView to select it.
- 3. Define the desired settings for the SmartView in the **Redefine SmartView** dialog.
- 4. Click **Update** to apply the new settings to the inserted SmartView.

Updating a SmartView with Changes to your Model

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you make changes to your model in Model View after you have inserted SmartViews of the model in Worksheet View, you can use the Update SmartView tool to instantly update a selected SmartView with the changes. For example, if you add a window to the model and then update a SmartView, the window will then appear in the SmartView.

To update a SmartView:

- In Worksheet View, select Insert > SmartViews > Update SmartView. (In Express, use the Tools menu.)
- 2. Click on the edge of the SmartView to select it. The SmartView is instantly updated.

Note: Currently you cannot update 3D views of your model or any view that was inserted using the 'Image' option instead of the 'Drawing' option.

Note: When you update a SmartView, you are changing its definition. This means that **all** inserted instances of the SmartView will update on all worksheets.

Tip: If you have several different SmartViews that you want to update with changes to your model, use the Update SmartView (Global) tool, which lets you update multiple SmartViews simultaneously.

Updating SmartViews Globally

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite If you make changes to your model in Model View after you have inserted SmartViews of the model in Worksheet View, you can use the Update SmartViews (Global) tool to instantly and simultaneously update multiple inserted SmartViews with the changes you made. When using this tool and can choose which SmartViews you want to update.

To update SmartViews globally:

- In Worksheet View, select Insert > SmartViews > Update SmartViews (Global). (In Express, use the Tools menu.)
- 2. In the **Update SmartViews** dialog, check the boxes of the SmartViews that you want to update. Note that all inserted instances of a selected SmartView will update on all worksheets.
- 3. Click Update.

Note: Currently you cannot update 3D views of your model or any view that was inserted using the 'Image' option instead of the 'Drawing' option.

Deleting Unreferenced SmartViews from Memory

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you insert a SmartView in your drawing, a block of that SmartView is stored in memory, and the inserted SmartView *references* that stored block. If you delete an inserted SmartView from your drawing, the block that it references remains in memory. Having too many unreferenced SmartViews in your project can increase drawing file size. You can alleviate this problem by deleting unreferenced SmartViews from memory.

To delete unreferenced SmartViews:

- In Worksheet View, select Insert > SmartViews > Delete Unreferenced SmartViews.
- 2. If there are any unreferenced SmartViews in memory, they are listed in the **Delete Unreferenced SmartViews** dialog. Check the ones that you want to delete. You can select all SmartViews simultaneously by clicking the top check box beside the **SmartView Name**label.

- 3. Click **Delete Delete**. A dialog warns you that you will not be able to undo changes to your drawing since your last save if you proceed with deleting unreferenced items.
- 4. Click **OK** in the dialog to proceed with the deletion.

Moving a SmartView

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have inserted a SmartView on your worksheet, you can move it around on the worksheet by clicking and dragging it.

To move a SmartView:

- 1. Click on the view to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the center grip.
- 3. Click and drag to move the image where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a SmartView

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

In Worksheet View, you can rotate an inserted SmartView by clicking and dragging its rotation grip.

To rotate a SmartView:

- 1. Select the SmartView.
- 2. Click and drag the triangular blue grip in the direction that you want to rotate.
- 3. When the SmartView is at the desired angle, release your mouse button.

Deleting a SmartView

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can delete a SmartView that you have inserted on your worksheet in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a SmartView:

- 1. Click on the SmartView to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in in on the Modify toolbar.

Borders & Title Blocks

By default, the pre-defined Worksheet View windows have a generic drawing border and title block. The style of this sheet varies depending on your region.

You can:

- Customize the existing border or title block
- Delete the border and title block
- Insert a different title block using the Import CAD File tool

Customizing the Default Title Block

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you open one of the pre-defined Worksheet View windows, a generic drawing sheet border and title block are displayed. You can edit the border or title block to suit your needs.

To customize the default title block:

- Click on the border to select the border and title block.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, click the **Edit** button in the **Definition** field.

You can now select individual parts of the border or title block to edit them, or add objects to the title block. Changes are saved automatically to the block definition.

Deleting the Default Drawing Border and Title Block

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

In Worksheet View, if you do not want to use the default drawing sheet border and title block, you can delete them.

To delete the default drawing border and title block:

- 1. Click on the border to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or select Modify > Delete.

Importing CAD Files in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Import CAD File tool lets you insert any AutoCAD DWG or DXF file into your worksheet view window. You may, for example, want to bring in a drawing sheet border, title block, detail or drafting symbol. You specify the scale of the drawing prior to insertion.

To import a CAD file:

- In Worksheet View, select Insert > Import CAD File, or click 2 2 on the Insert toolbar. You can also select File > Import > Import CAD File.
- 2. In the **Open** dialog, select the type of file you want to import from the **Files of type** drop box.
- 3. Select the file you want to import, then click **Open**.
- 4. Click **OK**. The image is displayed in the **Import** dialog. You can zoom and pan in the preview pane using the zoom/pan controls below the pane. Note that changing the zoom level inside the preview pane has no effect on the image when it is imported.



 If the document has more than one page, navigate to the page that you want to import by clicking the buttons in the *Page* area of the **Import** dialog.



 Before importing the image you will need to define the size or scale of the imported image. Initially the size of the image is the same as the size in the CAD file. You can set a custom size by editing the values in the Width and Height edit boxes. When you do so, the Scale values adjust accordingly.

If you are importing a floor plan and you know the scale at which it was drawn originally, you can enter that value in the Scale edit boxes. For example, if the plan was drawn at a 1/4" = 1'-0" (1:48) scale, you would enter 48 in the Scale (X) or Scale (Y) edit box. There are separate X and Y (horizontal and vertical) scale settings. By default, whatever you enter in one edit box will automatically be displayed in the other edit box, maintaining the same scale in both directions. If you want the X scale to be different than the Y scale, you need to click the lock icon beside the Scale (X) and Scale (Y) edit boxes. With the lock 'unlocked' you can enter a different value in each edit box. Another way of specifying the scale is to draw a reference line along an existing object in the CAD image and specify the length of that object in real-world units. To do this, click the Pick Scale button 🔂 🔂 next to

click the Pick Scale button **I** next to the **Scale (X)**or **Scale (Y)** edit box, then pick two points along an object in the CAD image to define a reference line. (If the X scale and Y scale will differ, you should pick points along a horizontal object for the X scale, and pick points along a vertical object for the Y scale.) Then in the **Scale by Reference** dialog, enter the length of the reference line and click **OK**. For example, if you know that a particular wall in your plan is 12' long, draw a line along that wall and then enter 12' in the **Scale by Reference** dialog.

Scale by Refere	ence	×
New Distance	12	Pick
	ОК	Cancel

The **Scale** values in the **Import** dialog will then adjust to reflect the scale you defined.

7. To specify the angle of the imported image, enter a value in the **Angle** edit box, or click

Pick Angle button **D** next to the **Angle** edit box and pick two points along an object in the CAD image to define the angle. If you are picking points to define the angle, the **Angle by Reference** dialog appears and reports the angle that you defined. You can edit the angle here if you want.

8. If you want to import only a portion of the

image, click **Set Set** next to the **Crop Box** item, then click two points diagonally in the preview window to define a box around the portion that you want to import. A blue box is displayed around the selected portion. To remove the crop box,

click **Clear Clear**, then click **OK** to confirm that you want to clear the crop box.

- 9. To dim the imported image, slide the **Dim-ming** slider to the desired dim level. The higher the percentage, the more dim the image will be.
- If you want the **Import** dialog to appear again after you insert the image so that you can insert another image, enable the **Multiple Insert** check box.
- 11. To import the image into the current view window, click **Insert**. The image is attached to your cursor.
- 12. Position the image where you want it, then click to insert it.

Tip: For your convenience, there are also a number of pre-defined drafting symbols, details and title

blocks in DWG format available in the program's Drafting Objects directory.

Moving a CAD Image in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have used the Insert CAD File tool to import a DWG or DXF drawing, you can move the resulting 2D image around on the screen.

To move a CAD image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the solid blue corner grip.
- 3. Click and drag to move the image where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a CAD Image in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can rotate an imported CAD image by simply clicking and dragging.

To rotate a CAD image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the triangular grip.
- 3. Click and drag to rotate the image, then release your mouse button.

Deleting a CAD Image in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have used the Insert CAD File tool, you can delete the CAD image in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a CAD image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in the Modify toolbar.

Specifying a Default Drafting Objects Directory

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you use the Import CAD File tool, you are prompted to select a DWG or DXF file to open. By default, the program's Drafting Objects folder is displayed in the **Open** dialog, where you can find a number of pre-defined drafting symbols and title blocks. This folder is in the following location:

C:\ProgramData\Cadsoft\Envisioneer\Drafting Objects

You can specify a different default directory to display if you want.

To specify a default drafting objects directory:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 iii iii on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select the General tab.
- 3. In the *File Paths* area, scroll down and select the **Drafting Settings Directory**.
- 4. Click Modify.
- 5. In the **Browse for Folder** dialog, locate and select the directory you want to use as the default drafting objects directory, then click **OK**.
- 6. Click **OK** in the **Program Settings** dialog.

Import CAD File (Worksheet View)

If you have a drawing sheet border, title block, drafting symbol, detail or other drawing in AutoCAD® DWG or DXF format that you would like to import into your working drawing, use the Import CAD File tool.

When inserting a CAD file in Worksheet View you will need to select an appropriate scale for the image. Then you just click to insert the image where you want it.

Once you have inserted a CAD file you can move or rotate it to suit your design needs.

Tip: There are a number of drafting symbols, details and title blocks in DWG format available in the program's Drafting Objects folder.

Importing CAD Files in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Import CAD File tool lets you insert any AutoCAD DWG or DXF file into your worksheet view window. You may, for example, want to bring in a drawing sheet border, title block, detail or drafting symbol. You specify the scale of the drawing prior to insertion.

To import a CAD file:

- In Worksheet View, select Insert > Import CAD File, or click on the Insert toolbar. You can also select File > Import > Import CAD File.
- 2. In the **Open** dialog, select the type of file you want to import from the **Files of type** drop box.
- Select the file you want to import, then click Open.
- 4. Click **OK**. The image is displayed in the **Import** dialog. You can zoom and pan in the preview pane using the zoom/pan controls below the pane. Note that changing the zoom level inside the preview pane has no effect on the image when it is imported.



5. If the document has more than one page, navigate to the page that you want to import by clicking the buttons in the *Page* area of the **Import** dialog.



 Before importing the image you will need to define the size or scale of the imported image. Initially the size of the image is the same as the size in the CAD file. You can set a custom size by editing the values in the Width and Height edit boxes. When you do so, the Scale values adjust accordingly.

If you are importing a floor plan and you know the scale at which it was drawn originally, you can enter that value in the **Scale** edit boxes. For example, if the plan was drawn at a 1/4" = 1'-0" (1:48) scale, you would enter **48** in the **Scale (X)** or **Scale (Y)** edit box. There are separate X and Y (horizontal and vertical) scale settings. By default, whatever you enter in one edit box will automatically be displayed in the other edit box, maintaining the same scale in both directions. If you want the X scale to be different than the Y scale, you need to click the lock icon beside the **Scale (X)** and **Scale (Y)** edit boxes. With the lock 'unlocked' you can enter a different value in each edit box. Another way of specifying the scale is to draw a reference line along an existing object in the CAD image and specify the length of that object in real-world units. To do this,

click the Pick Scale button \square next to the **Scale (X)**or **Scale (Y)** edit box, then pick two points along an object in the CAD image to define a reference line. (If the X scale and Y scale will differ, you should pick points along a horizontal object for the X scale, and pick points along a vertical object for the Y scale.) Then in the **Scale by Reference** dialog, enter the length of the reference line and click **OK**. For example, if you know that a particular wall in your plan is 12' long, draw a line along that wall and then enter 12' in the **Scale by Reference** dialog.

Scale by Refere	ence	×
New Distance	12'	Pick
	ОК	Cancel

The **Scale** values in the **Import** dialog will then adjust to reflect the scale you defined.

7. To specify the angle of the imported image, enter a value in the **Angle** edit box, or click

Pick Angle button **O** next to the **Angle** edit box and pick two points along an object in the CAD image to define the angle. If you are picking points to define the angle, the **Angle by Reference** dialog appears and reports the angle that you defined. You can edit the angle here if you want.

8. If you want to import only a portion of the

image, click **Set Set** next to the **Crop Box** item, then click two points diagonally in the preview window to define a box around the portion that you want to import. A blue box is displayed around the
selected portion. To remove the crop box,

Clear

Clear , then click **OK**

click to confirm that you want to clear the crop box.

- 9. To dim the imported image, slide the Dimming slider to the desired dim level. The higher the percentage, the more dim the image will be.
- 10. If you want the **Import** dialog to appear again after you insert the image so that you can insert another image, enable the Multiple Insert check box.
- 11. To import the image into the current view window, click Insert. The image is attached to your cursor.
- 12. Position the image where you want it, then click to insert it.

Tip: For your convenience, there are also a number of pre-defined drafting symbols, details and title blocks in DWG format available in the program's Drafting Objects directory.

Moving a CAD Image in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | **Construction Suite**

If you have used the Insert CAD File tool to import a DWG or DXF drawing, you can move the resulting 2D image around on the screen.

To move a CAD image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the solid blue corner grip.
- 3. Click and drag to move the image where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a CAD Image in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can rotate an imported CAD image by simply clicking and dragging.

To rotate a CAD image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the triangular grip.
- 3. Click and drag to rotate the image, then release your mouse button.

Deleting a CAD Image in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | **Construction Suite**

If you have used the Insert CAD File tool, you can delete the CAD image in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a CAD image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- 2. Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select **Modify > Delete**, or click 🚔 🚔 on the Modify toolbar.

Specifying a Default Drafting **Objects Directory**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | **Construction Suite**

When you use the Import CAD File tool, you are prompted to select a DWG or DXF file to open. By default, the program's Drafting Objects folder is displayed in the **Open** dialog, where you can find a number of pre-defined drafting symbols and title blocks. This folder is in the following location:

C:\ProgramData\Cadsoft\Envisioneer\Drafting **Objects**

You can specify a different default directory to display if you want.

To specify a default drafting objects directory:

- 1. Select Settings > Program Settings or click i on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the Program Settings dialog, select the General tab.
- 3. In the File Paths area, scroll down and select the Drafting Settings Directory.
- 4. Click Modify.
- 5. In the Browse for Folder dialog, locate and select the directory you want to use as the default drafting objects directory, then click OK.
- 6. Click OK in the Program Settings dialog.

Import PDF File

Portable Document Format (PDF) is a file format created by Adobe Systems for the purpose of sharing documents. You can use the Import PDF File to import the contents of any PDF file into your Envisioneer project. Prior to importing the file you can specify the scale and angle at which you want to insert the image.

Importing a PDF File in Worksheet View

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Import PDF File to import the contents of any PDF file into your **Envisioneer** project. You can define the size and angle of the imported block prior to importing it. You can also choose to import a portion of the image if needed.

To import a PDF file in Worksheet View:

1. Select File > Import > Import PDF File, or

Insert > Import PDF File, or click **()** on the Insert toolbar.

In the **Open** dialog, locate and select the PDF file that you want to import, and then click **Open**. (If the **Font Support Issue** dialog appears, see the note below.)

The PDF file is displayed in the **Import PDF** dialog. You can zoom and pan in the PDF preview pane using the zoom/pan controls below the pane. Note that changing the zoom level inside the preview pane has no effect on the image when it is imported.



3. If the PDF has more than one page, navigate to the page that you want to import by clicking the buttons in the *Page* area of the **Import PDF** dialog.



4. Before importing the PDF you will need to define the size or scale of the imported image. Initially the size of the image is the same as the page size in the PDF file. You can set a custom size by editing the values in the Width and Height edit boxes. When you do so, the Scale values adjust accordingly. If you are importing a floor plan and you know the scale at which it was drawn originally, you can enter that value in the Scale edit box. For example, if the plan was drawn at a 1/4" = 1'-0" (1:48) scale, you would enter 48 in the Scale (X) or Scale (Y) edit box. There are separate X and Y (horizontal and vertical) scale settings. By default, whatever you enter in one edit box will automatically be displayed in the other edit box, maintaining the same scale in both directions. If you want the X scale to be different than the Y scale, you need to click the lock icon beside the Scale (X) and Scale

(Y) edit boxes. With the lock 'unlocked' you can enter a different value in each edit box. Another way of specifying the scale is to draw a reference line along an existing object in the PDF image and specify the length of that object in real-world units. To do this,

click the Pick Scale button \square next to the **Scale (X)**or **Scale (Y)** edit box, then pick two points along an object in the PDF image to define a reference line. (If the X scale and Y scale will differ, you should pick points along a horizontal object for the X scale, and pick points along a vertical object for the Y scale.) Then in the **Scale by Reference** dialog, enter the length of the reference line and click **OK**. For example, if you know that a particular wall in your plan is 12' long, draw a line along that wall and then enter 12' in the **Scale by Reference** dialog.

Scale by Reference		
New Distance	12'	Pick
	ОК	Cancel

The **Scale** values in the **Import PDF** dialog will then adjust to reflect the scale you defined.

- 5. To specify the angle of the imported image, enter a value in the **Angle** edit box, or click the Pick Angle button next to the **Angle** edit box and pick two points along an object in the PDF image to define the angle. If you are picking points to define the angle, the **Angle** by **Reference** dialog appears and reports the angle that you defined. You can edit the angle here if you want.
- 6. If you want to import only a portion of the

image, click **Set Set** next to the **Crop Box** item, then click two points diagonally in the PDF window to define a box around the portion that you want to import. A blue box is displayed around the selected portion. To remove the crop box,

click Clear Clear, then click OK

to confirm that you want to clear the crop box.

- 7. To dim the imported image, slide the **Dim-ming** slider to the desired dim level. The higher the percentage, the more dim the image will be.
- 8. If you want the **Import** dialog to appear again after you insert the PDF so that you can insert another PDF, enable the **Multiple Insert** check box.
- 9. To import the image into the current view window, click **Insert**. The image is attached to your cursor.
- 10. Position the image where you want it, then click to insert it.

Note: If the PDF file that you are importing contains fonts that are not available on your computer, the **Font Support Issue** dialog will appear. Before importing the PDF, you need to specify how you want to handle this issue.





Vector Format

Choosing this format will leave any v intact. Snapping to linework will be p may be displayed incorrectly.



You can choose to rasterize the text by selecting the **Raster Format** option. This maintains the display of the text, but you will not be able to snap to linework once the PDF is inserted in your project. If you choose the **Vector Format** option, all vector geometry will remain intact so that you can snap to linework once the PDF is inserted, but the text may not display properly.

Moving a PDF Image

If you have imported a PDF file into your drawing you can move the image if necessary.

To move a PDF image in Model View:

- 1. Click on the PDF image to select it.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the image, or pick a start point for the move and specify a move distance and direction in the Commander.

To move a PDF image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Hover your pointer over the square blue grip at the center of the image, then click and drag to move it. Alternatively you can use the Modify > Move tool if you want to specify a precise move distance in the Commander.

Rotating a PDF Image

If you have imported a PDF file into your drawing, you can rotate the image if necessary.

To rotate a PDF image in Model View:

- 1. Click on the PDF image to select it.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.

3. Pick a point on the image, then click and drag to rotate the image around this point.

To rotate a PDF image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Hover your pointer over the triangular blue grip on the edge of the image, then click and drag to rotate the image. Alternatively you can use the **Modify > Rotate** tool if you want to specify a precise rotation distance.

Deleting a PDF Image

If you have imported a PDF file you can delete the image when you don't need it anymore.

To delete a PDF image in Model View:

- 1. Click on the PDF image to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

To delete a PDF image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in the Modify toolbar.

Import Image

Use the Import Image tool to import a BMP, JPG or TGA file onto your worksheet, such as a floor plan or logo.

During import you have the option of scaling or cropping the image. Once the image has been inserted you can Move, Rotate or Scale it if necessary.

Importing an Image in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the Import Image tool you can import a BMP, JPG or TGA file onto your worksheet, such as a floor plan or your company logo. You can scale or crop the image prior to import.

To import an image:

 In Worksheet View, select Insert > Import Image, or click See Select File > Import toolbar. You can also select File > Import > Import Image.

- 2. In the **Open** dialog, select the file type you are importing from the **File type** drop box. You can import BMP, JPG or TGA files.
- 3. Locate the file to import, then click **Open**.
- 4. The image is displayed in the **Import** dialog. You can zoom and pan in the preview pane using the zoom/pan controls below the pane. Note that changing the zoom level inside the preview pane has no effect on the image when it is imported.



 Before importing the file you will need to define the size or scale of the imported image.

You can set a custom size by editing the values in the **Width** and **Height** edit boxes. When you do so, the **Scale** values adjust accordingly.

If you are importing a floor plan and you know the scale at which it was drawn originally, you can enter that value in the Scale edit boxes. For example, if the plan was drawn at a 1/4" = 1'-0" (1:48) scale, you would enter 48 in the Scale (X) or Scale (Y) edit box. There are separate X and Y (horizontal and vertical) scale settings. By default, whatever you enter in one edit box will automatically be displayed in the other edit box, maintaining the same scale in both directions. If you want the X scale to be different than the Y scale, you need to click the lock icon beside the Scale (X) and Scale (Y) edit boxes. With the lock 'unlocked' you can enter a different value in each edit box. Another way of specifying the scale is to draw a reference line along an existing object in the image and specify the length of that

object in real-world units. To do this, click the

Pick Scale button Pick Scale (Y) edit box, then pick two points in the image to define a reference line. (If the X scale and Y scale will differ, you should pick points along a horizontal object for the X scale, and pick points along a vertical object for the Y scale.) Then in the **Scale by Reference** dialog, enter the length of the reference line and click **OK**. For example, if you know that a particular wall in your plan is 12' long, draw a line along that wall and then enter 12' in the **Scale by Reference** dialog.

Scale by Reference		×
New Distance	12	Pick
	ОК	Cancel

The **Scale** values in the **Import** dialog will then adjust to reflect the scale you defined.

6. To specify the angle of the imported image, enter a value in the **Angle** edit box, or click

the Pick Angle button **O** next to the **Angle** edit box and pick two points along an object in the image to define the angle. If you are picking points to define the angle, the **Angle by Reference** dialog appears and reports the angle that you defined. You can edit the angle here if you want.

7. If you want to import only a portion of the

image, click **Set Set** next to the **Crop Box** item, then click two points diagonally in the preview window to define a box around the portion that you want to import. A blue box is displayed around the selected portion. To remove the crop box,

click **Clear Clear**, then click **OK** to confirm that you want to clear the crop box.

8. To dim the imported image, slide the **Dimming** slider to the desired dim level. The higher the percentage, the more dim the image will be.

- 9. If you want the **Import** dialog to appear again after you insert the image so that you can insert another image, enable the **Multiple Insert** check box.
- 10. To import the image onto the current worksheet, click **Insert**. The image is attached to your cursor.
- 11. Position the image on the sheet, then click to insert it.

Moving an Inserted Image

You can move an inserted image in Worksheet View by clicking and dragging it.

To move an inserted image:

- 1. Select the image.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the center blue grip.
- 3. Click and drag to move the image where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating an Inserted Image

You can rotate an inserted image in Worksheet View by clicking and dragging its rotation grip.

To rotate an inserted image:

- 1. Select the image.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the triangular grip on the right side of the image.
- 3. Click and drag to rotate the image to the desired angle, then release your mouse button.

Scaling an Inserted Image

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have used the Import Image tool in Worksheet View to insert an image in your drawing, you may need to scale it to make it the correct size.

To scale an inserted image:

- 1. Select the image.
- Select Modify > Scale, or click on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select a base point to scale from. Typically this is a point on the image.
- 4. Enter the desired scale factor in the **Scale** edit box. For example, to double the size of

the image, type 2. To reduce the size by half, type 0.5.

5. Click **OK**.

Deleting an Inserted Image

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

In Worksheet View you can delete an image inserted with the Import Image tool in a couple of easy steps. **To delete an inserted image:**

- o delete all inserted imag
- 1. Select the image.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click and on the Modify toolbar.

Text (Worksheet View)

There are two Text tools available in Worksheet View. Use the Text tool to insert custom text, notes or labels onto your worksheet. Use the Description tool to insert an auto-generated description of an element that exists in an inserted SmartView.

You can move and rotate text after it has been inserted, and edit its style or content.

If you find the quality of text in Worksheet View to be poor, you can try enabling or disabling Worksheet View antialiasing.

Adding Text in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add custom text to your worksheet using the Text tool. You can control the style and color of the text, and even apply different styles or colors to individual characters.

To add text in Worksheet View:

- In Worksheet View, click the layer drop box and select the layer you would like to insert the text on.
- 2. Select **Tools > Text > Text**, or click **A A** on the Tools toolbar.
- 3. In the **Text** dialog, select the text style you would like to apply to the text from the text style drop box.

- 4. If you would like to add or edit a text style, click down a click down and to access the Text Styles library. The selected text style and its associated font and font size are displayed in the adjacent drop boxes.
- To select a color for the text, click <u>A</u>, then select a color from the pop-up color palette.
- 6. To select a background color for the text, click

, then select a color from the popup color palette. Creating a background fill can make it easier to see text when it is placed on top of patterned and rendered images.

- 7. To make the text bold, click **B**
- 8. To italicize the text, click *I*.
- 9. To underline the text, click **U**
- 10. To change the justification of the text, click the appropriate **justification**¹ button.

∎ **E** Left Justify

- E Center Justify
- Right Justify
- 11. Type the desired text in the text preview window. Or, to import a text (*.txt) file, click

Import... Import... , then select the file to import.

- 12. To insert a pre-defined label, select the label you want in the *Pre-defined Labels* list on the right side of the dialog, then drag it into the editing window. You can also double-click the label or click editing window. To access the Labels library, where you can add and edit labels, click
- To change the zoom level inside the editing window, select a value from the **Zoom** drop box.

- 14. To edit the style, color or justification of the text in the preview window, or parts of the text, highlight the text that you want to change, then make your new selections above the preview window.
- 15. If you want to automatically return to the **Text** dialog after you have inserted the current text, enable the **Multiple text insert** check box. Otherwise, the Text command is finished once you insert the text.
- When you are ready to insert the text in your drawing, click **OK**. The text is attached to your crosshairs.
- 17. Position the text where you would like it, then click to insert it.

Note: If you select part of the text in the editing window and try to resize it, the selected characters cannot be 8 times larger or 4 times smaller than any unselected text in the editing window. If all text is selected, however, you can resize without limits.

Adding a Description

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have inserted a SmartView of a floor plan, elevation, section or 3D QuickView on a worksheet, you can use the **Description** tool to add an autogenerated description of an element on that worksheet. The description is taken directly from the **Name** field in the element's properties.

Note that this tool only works if you have inserted the view as a drawing, not as an image, and only works on building elements.

To add a description:

1. In Worksheet View, select **Tools > Text >**

Description, or click Tools toolbar.



on the

- 2. Click on the element. Its description is attached to your cursor.
- Position the description on the worksheet, then click to insert it.

¹Justification refers to the way lines of text "line up" in relation to the window that contains them. A "left" justification lines the left side of the text up with the left side of the window, leaving the right side ragged.

Tip: To add a description with a leader, use the Description with Leader tool instead. To add custom text, use the Text tool.

Moving Text in Worksheet View

You can move text in Worksheet View by clicking and dragging the move grip.

To move text in Worksheet View:

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the text's solid square blue grip.
- 3. Click and drag to move the text, then release your mouse button.

Rotating Text in Worksheet View

You can change the angle of text in Worksheet View by clicking and dragging its rotation grip.

To rotate text:

- 1. Select the text that you want to rotate.
- 2. Click and drag the triangular grip in the direction that you want to rotate, then release your mouse button.

Editing Text in Worksheet View

You can edit the font, height, color and content of text after it has been inserted.

To edit text in Worksheet View:

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. Make the desired changes in the **Object Prop**erties panel.

Tip: To quickly display the **Text** dialog where you can edit all text properties, just double-click the text.

Finding and Replacing Text in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Find and Replace tool to find a specific word or phrase in your project. You can also replace it instantly with another word or phrase of your choice.

To find and replace text:

- Select Tools > Text > Find and Replace, or click the down arrow next to the Text button
 A A on the Tools toolbar and select Find and Replace.
- 2. In the **Find and Replace Text** dialog, type the word or phrase that you want to find in the **Find what** edit box.

Find and Replace Text	? 🛛
Find what:	
	•
Replace with:	
	•
Search In:	
Current Worksheet	•
Options	
Match case	Find Next Replace
Search up	Replace All
	Cancel

- 3. If you want to replace the text with something else, enter the replacement text in the **Replace with** edit box.
- From the Search In drop box, select the area of your project that you want to search. Options are *Current Worksheet* and *Current Selection*. If nothing was selected before you chose the Find and Replace tool, the only option is *Current Worksheet*.
- 5. Select any options you want to use to control the search. These are described below.

Match case. Find text with the same capitalization as the search text. For example, if you enter "Bedroom" as your search text, the text "bedroom" would not be returned as a match because the first character is not uppercase.

Match whole word. Find only whole words, not parts of words. For example, if you enter the word "day" as your search text, the words "Monday" or "daytime" would not be returned as matches.

Search up. Search backward from the current search position.

6. Click Find Next.

If the text is found, the first instance is displayed in the lower pane of the **Find and Replace Text** dialog, and the text is highlighted in the drawing area.

- To replace the text with the text in the Replace with edit box, click Replace. To instantly replace all instances of the search text, click Replace All.
- To search for the next instance of the text, click Find Next again. When the search is complete, the End of Search dialog will appear notifying you that all text has been searched.
- 9. When you are finished searching for text, close the **Find and Replace Text** dialog.

Controlling the Quality of Text Through Antialiasing

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, antialiasing is used in the display of text in Worksheet View. Antialiasing smooths jagged edges by changing the color or intensity of pixels at object edges. If you find that text in Worksheet View looks too fuzzy, you can try disabling antialiasing.

To enable or disable antialiasing in Worksheet View:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click the Program Settings button on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Work-space** in the left pane.
- 3. Check or uncheck the **Enable Antialiased Text** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Deleting Text in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can delete text in Worksheet View in a couple of easy steps.

To delete text:

1. Select the text.

 Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click and on the Modify toolbar.

Text with Leader tool (Worksheet View)

You can use the Text with Leader tool to add a callout (text with arrow) to a Worksheet View. You can type the text that you want to insert, import a *.txt file, or use one of the available pre-defined labels. While defining the text to insert you can select a dimension style to use for the leader.

Once you have inserted text with a leader, you can move or stretch the leader, move the leader text, edit the style or content of leader text, change the leader style, or scale the leader arrows.

Leaders (Worksheet View)

Use the Text with Leader tool to insert text, notes or labels in the form of a callout.

Use the Description with Leader tool to insert an auto-generated description of an element with a leader.

Once inserted, you can edit the style or content of leader text, move and stretch the leader, change the style of the leader, and scale leader arrows.

Adding Text with a Leader in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the Text with Leader tool you can insert text with a leader line attached to it. The leader has an arrow at one end, and two segments that can be oriented in any fashion.

To add text with a leader:

- Select Tools > Text > Text with Leader, or click the down arrow next to the Text button
 A A on the Tools toolbar and select Text with Leader.
- 2. In the **Text** dialog, select the text style you would like to apply to the text from the text style drop box.
- If you would like to add or edit a text style, click d to access the Text Styles library.

- 4. To make the text bold, click **B**
- 5. To italicize the text, click
- 6. To underline the text, click <u>U</u>.
- Type the desired text in the text preview window. Or, to import a text (*.txt) file, click
 Import...
 Import...
 , then select the file to import.
- 8. To insert a pre-defined label, select the label you want in the *Pre-defined Labels* list on the right side of the dialog, then drag it into the editing window. You can also double-click the label or click defined to add the label to the editing window. To access the Labels library, where you can add and edit labels, click

Library... Library...

- 9. To change the zoom level inside the text preview window, select a value from the zoom drop box 150% 150% .
- 10. To edit the style, color or justification of the text in the preview window, or parts of the text, highlight the text that you want to change, then make your new selections above the preview window.
- 11. Click OK.
- 12. By default, the leader lines will be straight. If you want to create an arched leader line, right-click and select **Spline** before selecting your first point. If you drew an arched leader previously, the style will remain set to **Spline** for subsequent leaders that you create. To create straight leader lines, right-click and select **Straight** before drawing the leader.



- 13. In the drawing area, select the point where you want the arrowhead to appear. Typically this is next to or on an object.
- Select the next point of the leader. If you only want a two-point leader, right-click and select Finish at this point. Otherwise, you can select a third point for the leader if you want.

Tip: To automatically tag a building element with its name, use the Description with Leader tool instead.

Adding a Description with a Leader (Worksheet View)

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have inserted a SmartView of a floor plan, elevation, section or 3D QuickView on a worksheet, you can use the **Description with Leader** tool to add an auto-generated description of an element with a leader. The description is taken directly from the **Name** field in the element's properties.

Note that this tool only works if you have inserted the view as a drawing, not as an image, and only works on building elements.

To add a description:

1. In Worksheet View, select **Tools > Leaders >**



Description with Leader, or click

Son the Tools toolbar.

- 2. Click on the element whose description you want to add to the worksheet.
- 3. By default, the leader lines will be straight. If you want to create an arched leader line, right-click and select **Spline** before selecting your first point. If you drew an arched leader previously, the style will remain set to **Spline** for subsequent leaders that you create. To create straight leader lines, right-click and select **Straight** before drawing the leader.



- 4. Select the first point of the leader (on or near the element).
- Select the next point of the leader. If you only want a two-point leader, right-click and select
 Finish at this point. Otherwise, you can select a third point for the leader if you want. The description appears at the end of the leader.

Tip: If you want to insert a description without a leader, use the Description tool instead. To insert

custom text with a leader, use the Text with Leader tool.

Editing the Style or Content of Leader Text in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Once you have inserted text with a leader, you can access and edit the text properties through the Object Properties panel.

To edit leader text:

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, click _____ next to the **Contents** item.
- 3. Make the desired changes in the **Text** dialog, then click **OK**.

Tip: To quickly launch the **Text** dialog where you can edit all text properties, just double-click the text.

Hip Roof - S

Moving Leader Text in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have inserted text with a leader, you can move the text independently of the leader.

To move leader text:

- 1. Select the text with leader.
- Click and drag the grip that appears on the text to move the text, then release your mouse button.

Moving and Stretching a Leader

You can move or stretch a leader by clicking and dragging its grips.

To move/stretch a leader:

- 1. Click on the text with leader to select it. Grips appear on the leader.
- 2. Click and drag a grip to move it, then release your mouse button.

Changing the Style of a Leader in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you use the Text with Leader tool, the style of the leader (i.e. arrowhead) is determined by the current dimension style. You can change the leader style by selecting a dimension style with the desired style settings.

To select a different style for a leader:

- 1. Click on the text with leader to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired dimension style from the **Style** drop box.

Scaling Leader Arrows in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have inserted text with a leader, you can edit the scale of the leader arrowhead.

To scale a leader arrow:

- 1. Select the text with leader.
- In the Object Properties panel, enter the desired scale for the leader arrow in the Scale edit box. For example, to double the size, enter 2. To reduce the size by half, enter 0.5.

Deleting Text with a Leader in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can delete text with a leader in a couple of easy steps.

To delete text with a leader:

- 1. Select the text with a leader.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select
 Modify > Delete, or click in the Modify toolbar.

Dimensions (Worksheet View)

There are several quick and easy dimension tools available in Worksheet View. Dimension values are

calculated automatically so you can annotate your drawing quickly and effortlessly.

Use the Linear Dimensions tool to insert a dimension that is oriented horizontally or vertically, and the Aligned Dimensions tool to insert a dimension that aligns with (takes the angle of) the object being dimensioned. You can use the Angular Dimensions tool to insert a dimension that measures an angle rather than a distance.

Use the Continuous Dimension tool to quickly add more segments to an existing linear or aligned dimension, creating a series of end-to-end dimensions. You can use the Baseline Dimension tool to build multiple dimensions along a common baseline, creating a series of stacked dimensions. You can create an Overall Dimension from two or more selected dimensions.

By default dimensions use the Current Dimension Style. You can also change the style of an individual dimension after it has been inserted.

There are many ways to edit dimensions. You can move text and reset the text position, move the dimension line, stretch the dimension, align, join and split dimensions, override a dimension value, scale a dimension, or scale a dimension value.

Setting the Current Dimension Style in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you add dimensions to your drawing, they use the current dimension style, which by default is the Standard dimension style. You can select a different dimension style to be the current one if you want.

To set the current dimension style:

- 1. Select Settings > Current Dimension Style.
- 2. In the **Current Dimension Style** dialog, click the **Select** button.
- 3. In the **Dimension Styles** dialog, select the style you want to set as current.
- 4. Click **OK** in the **Dimension Styles** dialog.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Current Dimension Style** dialog.

Creating Linear Dimensions in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A linear dimension is a horizontal or vertical dimension with extension lines going vertically (for a horizontal linear dimension) or horizontally (for a vertical linear dimension) to the origins of the extension lines, which define the endpoint of the dimension.



To create linear dimensions:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Linear Dimensions, or click → 0 → 0 on the Tools toolbar.
- 2. Click a point in your drawing to begin the dimension line.
- Move your mouse (you do not have to hold the mouse button down) to a second point and click. A dimension line including offsets, arrows and a numerical value is added to your drawing.
- 4. Move your mouse away from the dimension line to stretch your extension lines. When the extension lines are the desired length, click to finish the dimension.

Creating Aligned Dimensions in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite An aligned dimension is similar to a linear dimension, except it tilts to the same angle as the object you are dimensioning, making it the ideal choice for elements that are not horizontal or vertical.



To create aligned dimensions in Worksheet View:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Aligned Dimensions, or click the down arrow next to the Dimensions button [---] [--] on the Tools toolbar and select Aligned Dimensions.
- 2. Click a point in your drawing to begin the dimension line.
- Move your mouse (you do not have to hold the mouse button down) to a second point and click. A dimension line including offsets, arrows and a numerical value is added to your drawing.
- 4. Move your mouse away from the dimension line to stretch your extension lines. When the extension lines are the desired length, click to finish the dimension.

Creating Angular Dimensions in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Angular Dimensions tool to insert a dimension that measures an angle rather than a distance. This is particularly useful where objects are not rectangular, or are not perpendicular to one another.

To create an angular dimension, you select three points that will be used to create the dimension, then select a location for the dimension line.

To create an angular dimension:

Select Tools > Dimensions > Angular Dimensions, or click the down arrow next to the

Dimensions button $[\rightarrow] [\rightarrow]$ on the Tools toolbar and select **Angular Dimensions**.

- 2. Select the angle's vertex point.
- 3. Select the first endpoint of the angle.
- 4. Select the second endpoint of the angle.



 With the dimension attached to your crosshairs, position the dimension where you would like it, and then click to insert it.

Creating Continuous Dimensions in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can easily add more segments to an existing linear or aligned dimension using the Continuous Dimension tool. Simply pick points where you want each endpoint to be, and the dimension line will automatically extend with each point picked. This creates a series of dimensions that are end to end.



To create continuous dimensions:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Continuous
 Dimension or click the down arrow next to the Dimensions button → → on the Tools toolbar and select Continuous Dimension.
- 2. If it is not currently selected, click on the linear or aligned dimension that you would like to continue.

- Move your cursor in the direction in which you would like to continue the dimension. You can continue a dimension from either endpoint. The dimension line extends as you move your cursor.
- Click to select the next extension line point. This creates a new dimension.
- 5. Continue adding more dimensions as needed.
- 6. When you are finished adding dimensions, right-click and select **Finish**.

Creating Baseline Dimensions in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Baseline Dimension tool to create multiple dimensions along the same baseline. Baseline dimensions are built from an existing linear or aligned dimension in your drawing. Simply pick points where you want each extension line to be, and new dimensions will be created with each point picked.



To create baseline dimensions:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Baseline
 Dimension or click the down arrow next to the Dimensions button → on the Tools toolbar and select Baseline Dimension.
- 2. If not already selected, click on the dimension that you would like to continue, clicking near the extension line that you would like to use as the first extension line (baseline) for each new dimension.
- 3. Move your cursor in the direction in which you would like to continue the dimension, then select a point for the second extension line. A new dimension is created.
- 4. Continue to select extension line points to add more dimensions.
- 5. When you are finished adding dimensions, right-click and select **Finish**.

Tip: To change the spacing between baseline dimensions, edit the **Baseline Offset** value in your dimension style properties. See *Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet View* on page 393.

Creating Overall Dimensions in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Overall Dimension tool to create one overall dimension from two or more existing dimensions in your drawing. The overall dimension extends from the first extension line of the first dimension picked to the second extension line of the last dimension picked.



To create an overall dimension:

Select Tools > Dimensions > Overall Dimension or click the down arrow next to the Dimensions button [++] [++] on the Tools toolbar and select Overall Dimension.

- 2. Click where you would like the dimension line to be placed.
- 3. Click on the first dimension from which you would like to create an overall dimension.
- Click on the second dimension from which you would like to create an overall dimension. An overall dimension is created. You can select more dimensions to add if you want.
- 5. Right-click and select **Finish**.

Moving Dimension Text in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can move a dimension's text without affecting the dimension line.

To move dimension text:

- 1. Click on the dimension to select it.
- 2. Position your crosshairs over the solid blue grip that is on the text, then click and drag to move the text.

Resetting the Dimension Text Position in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have moved a dimension's text, you can use the Reset tool to move it back to its original position if needed.

To reset the dimension text position:

- 1. Click on the dimension to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, click the **Reset** button in the **Text Position** field.

Moving a Dimension Line in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can move a dimension line by clicking and dragging it. When you move a dimension line, the extension lines stretch.

To move a dimension line:

- 1. Select the dimension.
- 2. Click and drag one of the dimension line's end grips, then release your mouse button.

Stretching Dimensions in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can make a dimension longer or shorter, or stretch either of its extension lines. When you stretch the length of a dimension, the dimension value updates automatically to reflect the new length.

To adjust the length of a dimension:

- 1. Select the dimension.
- 2. Click on one of the lower extension grips, then drag the dimension to stretch it. Note that it is possible to stretch the extension line at the same time.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

To adjust the length of extension lines:

- 1. Select the dimension.
- 2. Click the grip at the end of the extension line, then drag to stretch the extension line.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

Aligning Dimensions in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Align Dimension tool to align an existing dimension with another.

To align dimensions:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Align Dimension, or click the down arrow next to the Dimensions button [++] [++] on the Tools toolbar and select Align Dimension.
- 2. Click on the dimension that you want to align another dimension to.
- 3. Click on the dimension that you want to align with the first dimension. The second dimension adjusts to align with the first dimension.

Joining Dimensions in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can join two existing linear or aligned dimensions using the Join Dimension tool. Joining two dimensions turns two dimensions into one, and the dimension value updates automatically to display the new length.

To join dimensions:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Join Dimension, or click the down arrow next to the Dimensions button [++] [++] on the Tools toolbar and select Join Dimension.
- 2. Click on one of the dimensions that you want to join with another.
- 3. Click on the dimension that you want to join with the first. The two dimensions are joined into one.

Splitting Dimensions in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can split a dimension into two dimensions at a selected point using the Split Dimension tool.

To split a dimension:

- Select Tools > Dimensions > Split Dimension, or click the down arrow next to the Dimensions button [+] [+] on the Tools toolbar and select Split Dimension.
- 2. Click on the dimension that you would like to split.
- Click on the dimension line who like to split the dimension. The split at the selected point.

Changing the Style of a Dimension in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can apply a different dimension style to a dimension in Worksheet View by simply making a style selection in the Object Properties panel. **To change the style of a dimension:**

- 1. Select the dimension. You can select multiple dimensions using Shift+click.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired dimension style from the **Style** drop box. To access the Dimension Styles library, where you can add and edit dimension styles, select *Other* from the **Style** drop box.

Overriding Dimension Text in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

In Worksheet View it is possible to edit a dimension's calculated numerical value to suit your needs, or add information to the value. You can even change the value to text, such as "Varies".

To override dimension text:

- 1. Select the dimension.
- If you want to replace the current dimension value with something else, type the desired text in the **Override** edit box in the Object Properties panel. You can type any numerals or characters you want.

If you want to keep the current value but add information before or after the value, use a pair of angle brackets <> before or after the additional text. For example, if you wanted to add the words 'Final Dimension' after the dimension value, you would type <> Final Dimension in the edit box.

For a 12'-0" dimension, the dimension would then look like this:

12'-0" Final Dimension

12'-0" Final Dimension

If you want to add text below the dimension value (on the other side of the dimension line), type **VX** where you want to drop down to a new line. For example, if you wanted to add the 'Final Dimension' text below the current dimension value instead of beside it, you would type **<> \X Final Dimension** in the edit box.

The dimension would then read:

12'-0" Final Dimension

12'-0" Final Dimension

The line break option can be used with the current dimension value (as shown in the example above), or with custom text that you type in the edit box. Note that you can only use the line break option once when overriding a dimension. You cannot keep adding more lines of text.

3. Press **Enter** or click in the drawing area to update the dimension.

Scaling a Dimension in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Dimension scale affects the size of the dimension geometry: text, ticks and offsets. It does not affect the measured length shown in a dimension. You may need to scale dimensions in Worksheet View if you are importing a view whose scale is different than the scale of the worksheet, or scaling a block that contains dimensions.

To scale a dimension:

- 1. Select the dimension.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, edit the value in the **Scale** edit box. For example, to double the dimension sizing, enter 2. To reduce the sizing to half, enter 0.5.

Scaling Dimension Values in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

In Worksheet View you can scale the measured length shown in a dimension by editing the dimension's Value Scale property. You may need to scale dimension values if you are importing a view whose scale is different than the scale of the worksheet, or scaling a block that contains dimensions.

To scale a dimension value:

- 1. Select the dimension.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, edit the value in the **Value Scale** edit box. For example, to double the value, enter 2. To reduce the value by half, enter 0.5.

Note: You cannot scale a value that has been overridden.

Deleting a Dimension in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can delete a dimension in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a dimension in Worksheet View:

- 1. Select the dimension.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in the Modify toolbar.

Lines & Shapes (Worksheet View)

The Draw menu in Worksheet View offers a number of different tools for adding lines and basic shapes to your worksheet. These include Line, Polyline, Arc, Circle, Ellipse, Elliptical Arc, Polygon, Rectangle. The Polygon Hatch tool lets you create a shape with hatching applied.

You can also draw a Revision Cloud around an area to call attention to it.

Lines and shapes are drawn with point-and-click simplicity. Once you have drawn a line or shape you can click and drag its grips to move or stretch the object, edit the object's properties in the Object Properties panel, or choose from a variety of editing tools on the Modify menu.

Lines (Worksheet View)

To draw a line in Worksheet View you simply pick points to define the line's end points. Lines can have one segment or multiple segments depending on how many points you pick. For multi-segmented lines you can even join the last point to the start point to form a closed shape if needed.

Once you have drawn a line you can move, rotate, stretch, fillet or break it, extend or trim the line to another object, and change its line style.

Drawing Lines in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can draw a line with one or more segments by simply picking points.

To draw a line in Worksheet View:

- Select Draw > Line, or click on the Draw toolbar.
- 2. Select a start point for the line.
- Select the end point for the line. If you want you can continue adding segments to the line. The line will snap to common points on objects provided those snaps are enabled in your Object Snap settings.
- 4. When you are finished drawing the line, right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: If a line has multiple segments, each segment is considered a separate entity.

Moving a Line in Worksheet View

You can move a line in Worksheet View by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move a line:

- 1. Click on the line to select it.
- 2. Click and drag the line's center grip, then release your mouse button.

Note: In multi-segment lines, each segment is considered a separate line. Therefore, if you select only one segment and move it, the other segments do not move with it.

Rotating a Line in Worksheet View

You can rotate a line in Worksheet View using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a line:

- 1. Click on the line to select it.
- Select Modify > Rotate, or click UU on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select the point that you want to rotate the line around, such as the endpoint or midpoint.
- 4. Move your mouse in the direction that you want to rotate.
- 5. When the line is at the desired angle, click to finish.

Stretching a Line in Worksheet View

You can stretch a line by simply clicking and dragging one of its end points. You can stretch it in any direction.

To stretch a line:

- 1. Click on the line to select it.
- 2. Click and drag the end that you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Extending a Line to Another Object (Worksheet View)

You can use the Extend tool to extend a line to another drafting object in your drawing.

To extend a line to another object:

- Select Modify > Extend, or click on the Modify toolbar.
- Select the object you want to extend to, then press Enter (or right-click and select Enter). The object must be in the path of the line you want to extend.
- 3. Select the line that you want to extend. The line is extended to the object you selected.

Trimming a Line to Another Object (Worksheet View)

If a line passes through another drafting object, you can use the Trim tool to trim the line to the object it intersects.

To trim a line to another object:

 Select Modify > Trim, or click X on the Modify toolbar. Select the object you want to trim to, then press Enter (or right-click and select **Enter**). The line must intersect the object. In the following example, you would select the circle as the object to trim to.



2. Select the line you want to trim, clicking near the end you want to trim.



The line is trimmed automatically to the nearest border.



In the above example, if you clicked on the center of the line, the portion inside the circle would be trimmed:



Filleting Lines in Worksheet View

Filleting connects two lines together at a point where they would naturally meet if both were extended. If the lines already intersect, they are trimmed to each other. Example



There are two fillet options available. The **Fillet - Join** tool performs a straight connection, causing the lines to meet at a single point, while the **Fillet - Radius** tool connects two lines with a curve.

To join lines at a single point:

- Select Modify > Fillet > Fillet Join, or click the arrow next to provide on the Modify toolbar and select Fillet - Join.
- Select the first line that you want to join, clicking near the specific end that you want to extend.
- Select the second line that you want to join. The lines are connected.

To join lines with a curve:

 Select Modify > Fillet > Fillet - Radius, or click the arrow next to on the Modify toolbar and select Fillet - Radius.

- 2. In the **Radius** dialog box, specify the desired radius for the curve, then press Enter or click **OK**.
- 3. Select the first line that you want to fillet.
- 4. Select the second line that you want to fillet. The lines are connected with a curve.

Breaking a Line in Worksheet View

You can break a line into two separate lines using the Break tool.

To break a line:

- 1. Click on the line to select it.
- Select Modify > Break, or click is on the Modify toolbar.
- Click the point on the line where you want to break it. The line is broken at the selected point.

Editing the Style of a Line in Worksheet View

By default, lines are drawn using the color, line type and line weight assigned to the layer that the line is drawn on. You can easily change the style of a line after you have inserted it.

To change the style of a line:

- 1. Click on the line to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the **Color**, **Line Pattern** and **Line Weight** drop boxes.

Deleting a Line in Worksheet View

You can delete a line in Worksheet View in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a line:

- 1. Click on the line to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in in on the Modify toolbar.

Polylines

A polyline is a continuous line composed of one or more line segments. To draw a polyline, you select the endpoints of each line segment.

When you select a polyline, grips are displayed at each segment endpoint. You can move these grips to effectively stretch the polyline in different directions.



Once you have drawn a polyline you can move, rotate, stretch, close, break or curve the polyline, as well as extend or trim it to another object.

Drawing Polylines in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A polyline is a continuous line composed of one or more line segments. To create a polyline, you select the endpoints of each line segment. When you select a polyline, grips are displayed at each segment endpoint. You can move these grips to effectively stretch the polyline in different directions.



To draw a polyline:

- Select Draw > Polyline, or click
 on the Draw toolbar.
- 2. Select a start point for the polyline.
- 3. Select the end point of the first line segment.
- 4. Move your mouse in the direction you want the next segment to run. When the segment is the correct length, click to define its endpoint.
- 5. Continue adding segments as desired.
- 6. Right-click and select Finish.

Moving a Polyline in Worksheet View

You can move a polyline using the Move tool.

To move a polyline:

- 1. Click on the polyline to select it.
- 3. Select a base point for the move, such as the polyline's endpoint.
- 4. Select the point you want to move to.

Rotating a Polyline in Worksheet View

You can rotate a polyline about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a polyline:

- 1. Select the polyline.
- Select Modify > Rotate, or click U O on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select a base point to rotate around. Typically this is one of the polyline's grips.
- 4. Move your cursor to rotate the polyline about the selected point, then click to finish.

Stretching a Polyline in Worksheet View

You can reshape a polyline by clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a polyline:

- 1. Select the polyline. Blue grips are displayed at each segment endpoint.
- 2. Click and drag the grips to reshape the polyline, then release your mouse button.

Extending a Polyline to Another Object (Worksheet View)

You can use the Extend tool to extend a polyline to another drafting object in your drawing.

To extend a polyline to another object:

- Select Modify > Extend, or click i on the Modify toolbar.
- Select the object you want to extend to, then press Enter (or right-click and select Enter). The object must be in the path of the polyline that you want to extend.

 Select the polyline that you want to extend. The polyline is extended to the object you selected.

Trimming a Polyline to Another Object (Worksheet View)

If a polyline passes through another drafting object, you can use the Trim tool to trim the polyline to the object it intersects.

To trim a polyline to another object:

- 1. Select **Modify > Trim**, or click 🕅 on the Modify toolbar.
- Select the object you want to trim to, then press Enter (or right-click and select **Enter**). The polyline must intersect the object. In the following example, you would select the circle as the object to trim to.



2. Select the polyline you want to trim, clicking near the end you want to trim.



The polyline is trimmed automatically to the nearest border.



In the above example, if you clicked on the center of the line, the portion inside the circle would be trimmed:



Joining Objects to a Polyline

You can join an existing line, arc or other polyline to a polyline using the Join Polyline tool provided the end of the object is currently connected to the end of the polyline. Together the object and the polyline form one continuous polyline. If the object you initially choose is not a polyline, you will be prompted to turn it into one.

To join an object to a polyline:

- Select Modify > Join Polyline or click the Join Polyline button on the Modify toolbar.
- Click on the polyline to which you want to join objects. A dialog confirms your selection. Click OK.

If the object is not a polyline, you will be asked if you want to convert it to one. Click **Yes** to convert the object to a polyline, or click **No** to select a different object.

 Click on the line, arc or polyline that you want to join to the polyline, then press Enter or right-click and select Enter. The object is joined to the polyline.

Curving a Polyline (Worksheet View)

You can curve a polyline by simply making a selection from the Curve Type drop box in the Object Properties panel. There are three different curve types available: Curve Fit, Quadratic, and Cubic. Each creates a different degree of curvature.

To curve a polyline:

- 1. Click on the polyline to select it.
- In the Object Properties panel, make a selection from the Curve Type drop box. These are described below.

Curve Fit. Creates a smooth curve with high curvature, passing through all of the vertices.

Quadratic. Creates a smooth curve that is pulled toward the vertices but passes through only the first and last vertices.

Cubic. Creates a smooth curve that is pulled toward the vertices but passes through only the first and last vertices. Cubic curving creates the smoothest curve with the lowest curvature.



Tip: To remove the curve from a polyline, just select **None** from the Curve Type drop box.

Decurving a Polyline

If you have fit a polyline with a curve in Worksheet View, you can remove the curve by editing the polyline's properties.

To decurve a polyline:

- 1. Click on the polyline to select it.
- In the Object Properties panel, select None from the Curve Type drop box.

Closing a Polyline (Worksheet View)

By enabling the Closed option in the Object Properties panel you can instantly transform an open polyline into a closed shape. If this option is selected, a line segment is drawn from the start point of the polyline to its end point.

To close a polyline:

- 1. Click on the polyline to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, enable the **Closed** check box.

Note: To undo the closing, disable the **Closed** check box.

Breaking a Polyline (Worksheet View)

You can break a polyline into two separate polylines using the Break tool.

To break a polyline:

- 1. Click on the polyline to select it.
- Select Modify > Break, or click is on the Modify toolbar.
- Click the point on the polyline where you want to break it. The polyline is broken at the selected point.

Editing the Line Style of a Polyline (Worksheet View)

By default, polylines are drawn using the color, line type and line weight assigned to the layer that the polyline is drawn on. You can easily change the style of a polyline after you have drawn it.

To change the style of a polyline:

- 1. Click on the polyline to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the **Color**, **Line Pattern** and **Line Weight** drop boxes.

Deleting a Polyline (Worksheet View)

You can delete a polyline in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a polyline:**

- 1. Click on the polyline to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click and on the Modify toolbar.

Arcs (Worksheet View)

An arc is a curved line. There are three ways to draw an arc in Worksheet View:

Start, Center, End. Select the start point and center point to define the arc's radius, and then the end point to define the arc's length.

3 Points. Select a start point for the arc, a second point along the arc, then drag the arc into position as you specify the end point.

Start, End, Radius. Select the start and end point of the arc to define its length, then select a third point to define the arc's radius.

Once you have drawn an arc you can move, rotate or stretch it, edit the arc's curve, extend or trim the arc to another object, or edit its line style.

Drawing Arcs in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

There are three tools available for drawing arcs in Worksheet View.

Start, Center, End**Start, Center, End**. When you specify the start and center points, you define the arc's radius. The end point establishes the arc's length.

3 Points. Select a start point for the arc, a second point along the arc, then drag the arc into position as you specify the end point.

Start, End, Radius. Select the start and end point of the arc to define its length, then select a third point to define the arc's radius (curve).

To draw an arc with the Start, Center, End tool:

- Select Draw > Arc > Arc Start, Center, End, or click the down arrow next to the Arc button on the Draw toolbar and select Arc - Start, Center, End.
- 2. Select a start point for the arc.
- 3. Select the arc's center point. The radius is now defined.
- Select the arc's end point to define the arc's length.



3 Points. Select a start point for the arc, a second point along the arc, then drag the arc into position as you specify the end point.

To draw an arc with the 3 Points tool:

- Select Draw > Arc > Arc 3 Points, or click the down arrow next to the Arc button on the Draw toolbar and select Arc - 3 Points.
- 2. Select the start point of the arc.
- 3. Select a second point on the arc.
- 4. Drag the arc to stretch it to the desired length and position, then select the end point of the arc.



Start, End, Radius. Select the start and end point of the arc to define its length, then select a third point to define the arc's radius (curve).

To draw an arc with the Start, End, Radius tool:

- Select Draw > Arc > Arc Start, End, Radius, or click the down arrow next to the Arc button on the Draw toolbar and select Arc - Start, End, Radius.
- 2. Select the start point of the arc.

- 3. Select the end point of the arc to define its length.
- 4. Move your pointer to curve the arc, then select a third point to define the arc's radius.



Moving an Arc in Worksheet View

You can move an arc by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- 2. Click and drag the solid blue grip at the center of the arc, then release your mouse button.

Rotating an Arc in Worksheet View

You can rotate an arc about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- Select Modify > Rotate, or click O O on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select a point to rotate around. Typically this is one of the arc's grips.
- 4. Move your mouse to rotate the arc about the selected point.
- 5. When the arc is at the desired rotation, click to finish.

Stretching an Arc in Worksheet View

You can stretch an arc in any direction by clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- Hover your pointer over the grip you want to move, then click and drag it into position.
 Moving an end grip changes the length of the arc and can also change the curve of the arc.
 Moving the midpoint grip changes the curve (radius) of the arc.

Editing the Curve of an Arc in Worksheet View

You can change how much an arc curves by clicking and dragging its midpoint grip. Alternatively you can edit the Radius in the Object Properties panel.

To edit the curve of an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the hollow midpoint grip, then click and drag to change the arc's curve.

To edit the radius of an arc:

- 1. Select the arc.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, enter the desired radius in the **Radius** edit box.
- 3. Click in the drawing area to update the arc.

Extending an Arc to Another Object (Worksheet View)

You can use the Extend tool to extend an arc to another drafting object in your drawing.

To extend an arc to another object:

- Select Modify > Extend, or click on the Modify toolbar.
- Select the object you want to extend to, then press Enter (or right-click and select Enter). The object must be in the path of the arc you want to extend.
- 3. Select the arc you want to extend, clicking near the end that you want to extend. The arc is extended to the object you selected.

Trimming an Arc to Another Object in Worksheet View

If an arc passes through another drafting object, you can use the Trim tool to trim the arc to the object it intersects.

To trim an arc to another object:

- 1. Select **Modify > Trim**, or click 🕅 🕅 on the Modify toolbar.
- Select the object you want to trim to, then press Enter (or right-click and select Enter). The arc must intersect the object. In the following example, you would select the rectangle as the object to trim to.



2. Select the arc you want to trim, clicking near the end you want to trim.



The arc is trimmed automatically to the nearest border.



In the above example, if you clicked on the center of the arc, the portion inside the rectangle would be trimmed:



Editing the Line Style of an Arc in Worksheet View

By default, arcs are drawn using the color, line type and line weight assigned to the layer that the arc was drawn on. You can easily change the line style of an arc after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the Color, Line Pattern and Line Weight drop boxes.

Deleting an Arc in Worksheet View

You can delete an arc in a couple of easy steps.

To delete an arc:

- 1. Click on the arc to select it.
- 2. Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select **Modify > Delete**, or click 🚔 觉 on the Modify toolbar.

Ellipses (Worksheet View)

You can create an ellipse or an elliptical arc in Worksheet View using tools on the Draw > Ellipse menu. Two insertion methods are provided for each, as indicated below.

Ellipse - Axis

Ellipse - Center

Elliptical Arc - Axis

Elliptical Arc - Center

Drawing an Ellipse in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

To draw an ellipse in Worksheet View, select Draw > Ellipse, or click the down arrow next to the Ellipse

button

on the Draw toolbar, then select either Ellipse - Axis or Ellipse - Center.

To use the Ellipse - Axis tool:

- 1. Select two points to define the major axis of the ellipse.
- 2. Select a third point away from the axis to define the minor radius.





To use the **Ellipse - Center** tool:

- 1. Select the midpoint of the ellipse, then select a second point to define the major radius of the ellipse.
- 2. Select a third point to define the minor radius.



Drawing Elliptical Arcs in Worksheet View

To draw an elliptical arc in Worksheet View, select Draw > Ellipse, or click the down arrow next to the

on the Draw toolbar, then Ellipse button select either Elliptical Arc - Axis or Elliptical Arc -Center.

To use the **Elliptical Arc - Axis** tool:

- 1. Select two points to define the major axis of the ellipse.
- 2. Select a third point away from the axis to define the minor radius.





3. Select two points to define the end points of the arc.





The section between the two points will form the arc:

To use the Elliptical Arc - Center tool:

- Select the midpoint of the ellipse, then select a second point to define the major radius of the ellipse.
- 2. Select a third point to define the minor radius.



3. Select two points to define the end points of the arc.





The section between the two points will form the arc:



Moving an Elliptical Object in Worksheet View

You can move an ellipse or elliptical object by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move an elliptical object:

- 1. Click on the edge of the object to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the object's center grip.
- 3. Click and drag to move the object where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating an Elliptical Object in Worksheet View

You can rotate an ellipse or elliptical arc about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate an elliptical object:

- 1. Click on the edge of the object to select it.
- 2. Select **Modify > Rotate**, or click **U U** on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select the point that you want to rotate the object around. Typically this is one of the object's exterior grips.

- 4. Move your mouse to rotate the object about the selected point.
- 5. When the object is at the desired rotation, click to finish.

Stretching an Elliptical Object in Worksheet View

You can stretch an ellipse or elliptical arc by simply clicking and dragging one of its exterior grips.

To stretch an elliptical object:

- 1. Select the object.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over one of the object's grips.
- 3. Click and drag to stretch the object, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of an Elliptical Object in Worksheet View

By default, ellipses and elliptical arcs in Worksheet View are drawn using the color, line type and line weight assigned to the layer that the object was drawn on. You can easily change the line style of an elliptical object after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of an elliptical object:

- 1. Click on the object to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the **Color**, **Line Pattern** and **Line Weight** drop boxes.

Deleting an Elliptical Object in Worksheet View

You can delete an ellipse or elliptical arc in a couple of easy steps.

To delete an elliptical object:

- 1. Click on the edge of the object to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in the Modify toolbar.

Circles (Worksheet View)

There are two ways to draw a circle in Worksheet View.

Center, Radius. Draw the circle from the center out, by picking two points to define its radius.

2 Point. Select two points to define the circle's diameter.

Once you have drawn a circle you can move, rotate or stretch the circle, and edit its line style.

Drawing Circles in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

There are two ways to draw a circle. With the Circle -Center, Radius tool you draw the circle from the center out, by picking two points to define its radius. With the Circle - 2 Point tool, you draw the circle outward from a selected point, essentially defining the circle's diameter.

To draw a circle by specifying its radius:

- Select Draw > Circle > Circle Center, Radius, or click the down arrow next to the Circle button S on the Draw toolbar and select Circle - Center, Radius.
- 2. Click the point that is to be the center of the circle.
- 3. Move your pointer away from the center point. The circle grows as you move farther away from the center.
- When the circle is the desired size, click to finish. Example



To draw a circle by specifying its diameter:

 Select Draw > Circle > Circle - 2 Point, or click the down arrow next to the Circle button 🚫 🚫 on the Draw toolbar and select **Circle - 2 Point**.

- 2. Click a point in the drawing. The circle will grow from this point.
- 3. Move your pointer away from the selected point. The farther you move away from this point, the larger the circle becomes.
- 4. When the circle is the desired size, click to finish. Example



Moving a Circle in Worksheet View

You can move a circle by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move a circle:

- 1. Click on the edge of the circle to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the circle's center grip.
- 3. Click and drag to move the circle where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Circle in Worksheet View

You can rotate a circle about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a circle:

- 1. Click on the edge of the circle to select it.
- 2. Select **Modify > Rotate**, or click **U U** on the Modify toolbar.

- 3. Select the point that you want to rotate the circle around. Typically this is one of the circle's exterior grips.
- 4. Move your mouse to rotate the circle about the selected point.
- 5. When the circle is at the desired rotation, click to finish.

Stretching a Circle in Worksheet View

You can edit the size of a circle by simply clicking and dragging one of its exterior grips. Alternatively you can edit the Radius in the Object Properties panel.

To edit the size of a circle by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Select the circle.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over one of the grips on the circle's circumference.
- 3. Click and drag to make the circle smaller or larger, then release your mouse button.

To edit the radius of a circle:

- 1. Select the circle.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, enter the desired radius in the **Radius** edit box.
- 3. Click in the drawing area to update the circle.

Editing the Line Style of a Circle in Worksheet View

By default, circles in Worksheet View are drawn using the color, line type and line weight assigned to the layer that the circle was drawn on. You can easily change the line style of a circle after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of a circle:

- 1. Click on the circle to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the **Color**, **Line Pattern** and **Line Weight** drop boxes.

Deleting a Circle in Worksheet View

You can delete a circle in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a circle:**

- 1. Click on the edge of the circle to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click and on the Modify toolbar.

Rectangles

You can use the Rectangle tool in Worksheet View to draw a rectangle. Just select a point, stretch diagonally to the desired size, then click to finish.

Once you have drawn a rectangle you can move, rotate or stretch it, or edit its line style.

Drawing Rectangles in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can draw a rectangle easily by just picking two points on the screen.

To draw a rectangle:

- 1. Turn your Ortho off.
- 2. Select **Draw > Rectangle**, or click
- 3. Click a point on the screen. This will be one of the rectangle's corners.
- 4. Move your pointer away from the current point. The rectangle grows as you move farther away.
- 5. When the rectangle is the desired size, click to finish it. Example



Moving a Rectangle in Worksheet View

You can move a rectangle in Worksheet View using the Move tool.

To move a rectangle:

- 1. Select the rectangle.
- 3. Select a base point for the move, then select the point you want to move to.

Rotating a Rectangle in Worksheet View

You can rotate a rectangle about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a rectangle:

- 1. Select the rectangle.
- Select Modify > Rotate, or click UU on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select a base point to rotate around, such as one of the rectangle's corners.
- 4. Move your cursor to rotate the rectangle about the selected point, then click to finish.

Stretching a Rectangle in Worksheet View

You can resize and reshape a rectangle by clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a rectangle:

- 1. Select the rectangle. Blue grips are displayed at each corner point.
- 2. Click and drag the grips to resize or reshape the rectangle, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of a Rectangle in Worksheet View

By default, rectangles in Worksheet View are drawn using the color, line type and line weight assigned to the layer that the rectangle was drawn on. You can easily change the line style of a rectangle after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of a rectangle:

- 1. Click on the rectangle to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the **Color**, **Line Pattern** and **Line Weight** drop boxes.

Deleting a Rectangle in Worksheet View

You can delete a rectangle in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a rectangle:

- 1. Click on the edge of the rectangle to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in on the Modify toolbar.

Polygons (Worksheet View)

A polygon is a closed, multi-sided object. Using the Polygon tool you can quickly create a polygon with three or more equal sides without having to draw each side. All you need to do is specify the desired number of sides, the polygon's center point, and a distance to define the polygon's size.

Once you have created a polygon you can move, rotate and stretch it.

Drawing Polygons in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A polygon is a closed, multi-sided object. You can use the Polygon tool to quickly create a polygon with three or more equal sides (such as a triangle, square or hexagon) without having to draw each side. Just specify the number of sides you want, select a center point, then select a point to define the size of the polygon. You can choose to inscribe the polygon inside an imaginary circle, or circumscribe it about an imaginary circle.

To draw a polygon:

- In Worksheet View, select Draw > Polygon or click O O on the Draw toolbar.
- In the **Polygon** dialog, enter the number of sides you want the polygon to have in the **Number of Sides** edit box. The minimum number of sides is 3 and the maximum is 1000.
- 3. From the drop box select either **Inscribed in Circle** or **Circumscribed about Circle**. Use the Inscribed in Circle option when you want to specify the distance between the center of the polygon and each vertex. That is, the

corners of the polygon will touch the circumference of an imaginary circle. Use the Circumscribed about Circle option when you want to specify the distance between the center of the polygon and the midpoint of each side. That is, the polygon's sides will be tangent to the circle.



- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. In the drawing area, select a center point for the polygon. The polygon will be created outward from this point.
- 6. Move your pointer away from the center to stretch the polygon to the desired size. Note that the direction in which you move determines the rotation of the polygon.
- 7. When the polygon is the desired size, click to finish.

Moving a Polygon in Worksheet View

You can move a polygon using the Move tool.

To move a polygon:

- 1. Select the polygon.
- 3. Select a base point for the move, then select the point you want to move to.

Rotating a Polygon in Worksheet View

You can rotate a polygon about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a polygon:

- 1. Select the polygon.
- 2. Select **Modify > Rotate**, or click **U U** on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select a base point to rotate around. Typically this is one of the polygon's grips.
- 4. Move your cursor to rotate the polygon about the selected point, then click to finish.

Stretching a Polygon in Worksheet View

You can resize and reshape a polygon by clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a polygon:

- 1. Select the polygon. Blue grips are displayed at each corner point.
- 2. Click and drag the grips to resize or reshape the polygon, then release your mouse button.

Deleting a Polygon in Worksheet View

You can delete a polygon in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a polygon:

- 1. Click on the edge of the polygon to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in the Modify toolbar.

Polygon Hatch (Worksheet View)

A polygon is a closed object consisting of three or more line segments. Examples include triangles, squares and hexagons. To draw a polygon with the Polygon Hatch tool in Worksheet View, simply pick points to define its shape. When drawing a polygon you can apply a hatch pattern to the polygon if you want, and choose whether or not you want to include a boundary line.

Once you have drawn a polygon you can move, rotate or stretch the polygon, or edit the style, scale or angle of the polygon's hatch pattern.

Tip: You can quickly apply a hatch pattern to any closed area of your 2D plan using the Boundary Hatch tool.

Drawing Hatched Polygons in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A polygon is a closed object consisting of three or more line segments. You can use the Polygon Hatch tool to draw a free-form polygon of any shape with hatching of your choice instantly applied (or no hatching if you prefer). You can edit the shape, line style and hatch pattern of the polygon after it has been inserted.

To draw a hatched polygon:

- Select Draw > Polygon Hatch, or click
 on the Draw toolbar.
- 2. In the **Polygon Hatch** dialog, select the appearance properties that you would like the polygon to have. If you would like it to have a boundary line, enable the **Include** check box in the *Boundary Line* area. If you would like the polygon to be hatched, enable the **Include** check box in the *Pattern* area, then click **Select** to select a hatch pattern from the **Patterns** library.
- Select a start point for the polygon, then continue selecting points to define its shape. Note that you do not have to select the start point again, as the polygon always remains closed as you draw it. Be careful not to cross any lines, or the polygon will not be created.
- 4. Once you've selected the last point of the polygon, right-click and select **Finish**.

Note: The color, line type and line weight of the boundary line is determined by the properties of the layer that the polygon is drawn on.

Moving a Polygon in Worksheet View

You can move a polygon using the Move tool. **To move a polygon:**

- 1. Select the polygon.
- 3. Select a base point for the move, then select the point you want to move to.

Rotating a Polygon in Worksheet View

You can rotate a polygon about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a polygon:

- 1. Select the polygon.
- Select Modify > Rotate, or click UU on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select a base point to rotate around. Typically this is one of the polygon's grips.
- 4. Move your cursor to rotate the polygon about the selected point, then click to finish.

Stretching a Polygon in Worksheet View

You can resize and reshape a polygon by clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a polygon:

- 1. Select the polygon. Blue grips are displayed at each corner point.
- 2. Click and drag the grips to resize or reshape the polygon, then release your mouse button.

Editing a Polygon's Hatch Pattern Line Properties in Worksheet View

If you have created a polygon using the Polygon Hatch tool, you can change the color, line type and line weight of the polygon's hatch pattern after it has been inserted.

To edit a polygon's hatch pattern:

- 1. Click on the polygon to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the **Color**, **Line Type** and **Line Weight** drop boxes.

Editing a Polygon's Hatch Pattern in Worksheet View

Once you have created a polygon, you can replace its hatch pattern with a different one, or edit the properties of the existing one.

To edit a polygon's hatch pattern:

- 1. Click on the polygon to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, make your desired changes.

To hide the hatch pattern's boundary line, disable the **Boundary/Include** check box.

To hide the hatch pattern, disable the **Pattern/Include** check box.

To replace the hatch pattern with a different one, click the **Style** drop box and select the pattern you want.

To edit the scale of the hatch pattern, enter the desired scale in the **Scale** edit box.

To edit the angle of the hatch pattern, enter the desired angle in the **Angle** edit box.

To edit the start point of the hatch pattern in relation to the polygon, click the browse button in the **Specify Origin** field, then select the desired start point in your drawing.

Deleting a Polygon in Worksheet View

You can delete a polygon in a couple of easy steps. **To delete a polygon:**

- 1. Click on the edge of the polygon to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select
 Modify > Delete, or click and on the Modify toolbar.

Revision Clouds

You can draw a revision cloud around a portion of your drawing to call attention to it. Usually revision clouds are used in the review process to indicate an area of change.

Prior to drawing revision clouds you can choose the settings that you would like your revision clouds to have, such as the line style, pattern, and arc size. You can also edit the line style or pattern of an inserted revision cloud.

Drawing Revision Clouds in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Revision clouds call attention to areas of change in your drawing. You can quickly draw a revision cloud around any portion of your drawing by simply clicking a few points.

To draw a revision cloud:

1. Select **Draw > Revision Cloud**, or click



 Pick points to form the outline of the cloud, then hover your cursor over the start point to close the shape. When picking points, be careful not cross over any segments that you have already drawn.





Moving a Revision Cloud in Worksheet View

You can move a revision cloud using the Move tool.

To move a revision cloud:

- 1. Select the revision cloud.
3. Select a base point for the move, then select the point you want to move to.

Stretching a Revision Cloud in Worksheet View

You can stretch the arcs in a revision cloud by clicking and dragging their grips.

To stretch a revision cloud:

- Click on the revision cloud to select it. Hollow blue grips appear on each of the cloud's arcs.
- 2. Click and drag a grip to stretch an arc, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of a Revision Cloud in Worksheet View

You can edit the line type, color or line weight of a revision cloud's outline by making changes in the Object Properties panel.

To edit the line style of a revision cloud:

- 1. Click on the revision cloud to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the **Color**, **Line Type** and **Line Weight** drop boxes.

Editing a Revision Cloud's Hatch Pattern in Worksheet View

Once you have created a revision cloud, you can apply a hatch pattern to it or edit the pattern currently applied to it.

To edit a revision cloud's hatch pattern:

- 1. Click on the revision cloud to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, make your desired changes.

To hide the hatch pattern's boundary line, disable the **Boundary/Include** check box.

To hide the hatch pattern, disable the **Pattern/Include** check box.

To replace the hatch pattern with a different one, click the **Style** drop box and select the pattern you want.

To edit the scale of the hatch pattern, enter the desired scale in the **Scale** edit box. To edit the angle of the hatch pattern, enter the desired angle in the **Angle** edit box.

To edit the start point of the hatch pattern in relation to the revision cloud, click the browse button in the **Specify Origin** field, then select the desired start point in your drawing.

Deleting a Revision Cloud in Worksheet View

You can delete a revision cloud in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a revision cloud:

- 1. Click on the edge of the revision cloud to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in the Modify toolbar.

Boundary Hatch (Worksheet View)

Hatching is a pattern of lines and/or shapes that represents a building material, such as brick, concrete or roof shingles. It is used in 2D plans, elevations and sections to relay information about the building's construction.

There are two ways to create hatching in Worksheet View. You can use the Boundary Hatch tool to apply a hatch pattern of your choice to any *closed* area in your design. For example, you could apply a shingle pattern to a roof section. When using the Boundary Hatch tool you can specify a scale and angle for the pattern, and control how the hatching is applied.

An alternative way to create hatching is to use the Polygon Hatch tool, which lets you draw a polygon with hatching applied.

When you create hatching, a *hatch object* is created that you can select and edit to suit your needs.

Creating Hatching Using Boundary Hatch

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Hatch patterns represent actual materials, such as shingles and brick. You can apply a hatch pattern to any closed area in a 2D view using the Boundary Hatch tool. For example, you may want to apply a shingle pattern to the roof in an elevation. You can choose an angle and scale for the pattern, and specify how you want the hatching applied. When you apply hatching, the hatch pattern becomes an object that you can edit to suit your needs.

To apply hatching:

- 1. In Worksheet View, make sure your 2D view is displayed (plan or elevation).
- Select Draw > Boundary Hatch, or click
 on the Draw toolbar.



- 3. In the **Boundary Hatch** dialog, click the **Style** drop box and select the pattern that you would like to apply.
- 4. Click Select Boundaries. This takes you back out to your drawing.
- 5. Position your crosshairs inside the area that you want to hatch. The area's boundary becomes highlighted. Click inside the area to select it. You can select multiple areas if you want. When you are finished selecting areas to hatch, right-click and select **Enter**.
- 6. By default, if a boundary contains another closed boundary, the inner boundary will not be hatched. If you want to hatch the inner boundary as well, enable the **Ignore** radio button in the **Hatching** dialog. Otherwise, enable the **Outer** radio button to hatch only the outer boundary.
- To deselect an area that you have selected, click Remove Boundaries, click inside the area, then right-click and select Enter.

- By default, patterns are applied horizontally (0 degrees). If you want to rotate the pattern, enter the desired angle in the **Angle** edit box.
- 9. To change the size of the pattern, enter a value in the **Scale** edit box. A value of 2 doubles the size, while a value of .5 reduces the size by half.
- 10. By default, the pattern is created from the 0,0 origin (the Use Default radio button is selected). If you want the pattern to be created from a different point, enable the Specify Origin radio button, then click Select the desired origin point in the drawing. For example, if you were applying a brick pattern to a wall and wanted full bricks along the bottom of the wall, you would select one of the wall's bottom corners as the origin.
- If you want the boundary to be part of the hatch pattern (i.e. have the same color and line weight applied), enable the **Include Boundary** check box. Otherwise, the boundary line will remain the way it was before hatching, and will not be part of the hatch object.
- By default, if more than one boundary is selected for hatching, only one hatch object is created. If you want to create a separate hatch object for each boundary, enable the **Create Separate Hatches** check box. This is important if you want to edit the hatching later.
- Once you have selected your boundary and specified your options, click **Preview** to see how the hatching will look. When you are finished previewing the hatching, press ESC, or right-click and select **Cancel**.
- 14. To apply the hatching, click **OK**.

Note: If the Boundary Hatch tool is not successful in detecting the boundary, use the Polygon Hatch tool instead.

Note: The color and weight of the pattern's lines are determined by the layer that the pattern is on.

Tip: You can insert elevations that are already hatched by setting the display mode to Patterned in the Insert View dialog when inserting the

elevations onto your worksheet. The patterns applied depend on the material settings in each element's properties.

Moving Hatching in Worksheet View

You can use the Move tool to move a hatch object created with the Boundary Hatch tool in Worksheet View.

To move a hatch object:

- 1. Click on the hatching to select it.
- Select Modify > Move, or click not the Modify toolbar.
- Select a base point for the move, such as a corner grip, then select the point you want to move to.

Rotating Hatching in Worksheet View

You can use the Rotate tool to rotate a hatch object created with the Boundary Hatch tool.

To rotate hatching:

- 1. Click on the hatching to select it.
- 2. Select **Modify > Rotate**, or click **O** on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select a base point to rotate around, such as a corner grip. Move your mouse to rotate the hatching about the selected point, then click to finish.

Stretching Hatching in Worksheet View

You can resize and reshape a hatch object (created with the Boundary Hatch tool) without distorting the pattern by clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a hatch object:

- Click on the hatching to select it. Blue grips are displayed on the hatch boundary.
- 2. Click and drag the grips to resize or reshape the object, then release your mouse button.

Editing Hatch Pattern Line Properties in Worksheet View

You can change the color, line type and line weight of a hatch pattern (created with the Boundary Hatch tool) after it has been inserted in Worksheet View.

To edit hatch pattern properties:

- 1. Click on the hatching to select it.
- 2. In the **Object Properties** panel, select the desired settings from the **Color**, **Line Type** and **Line Weight** drop boxes.

Editing an Object's Hatch Pattern in Worksheet View

Once you have created hatching using the Boundary Hatch tool, you can replace the hatch pattern with a different one, edit the properties of the existing one, or add or remove boundaries.

To edit an object's hatch pattern:

- 1. Click on the hatching to select it.
- 2. In the **Object Properties** panel, make your desired changes.
- 3. To hide the hatch object's boundary line, disable the **Boundary/Include** check box.
- To hide the hatch pattern, disable the Pattern/Include check box.
- 5. To replace the hatch pattern with a different one, click the **Style** drop box and select the pattern you want.
- 6. To edit the scale of the hatch pattern, enter the desired scale in the **Scale** edit box.
- 7. To edit the angle of the hatch pattern, enter the desired angle in the **Angle** edit box.
- 8. To edit the start point of the hatch pattern in relation to the hatch object, click the browse button in the **Specify Origin** field, then select the desired start point in your drawing.

Deleting Hatching

You can delete hatching that you have created with the Boundary Hatch tool in a couple of easy steps. **To delete hatching:**

1. Click on the hatching to select it.

 Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click and on the Modify toolbar.

Details (Worksheet View)

The *Draw* > *Details* menu in Worksheet View offers a full set of tools for adding 2D details to your worksheet. Tools include Batt Insulation, Rigid Insulation, Wood Section, Masonry Section, Cut Line and Roof Symbol. Just pick points to define the end points of the detail, and the detail is created for you automatically.

Once you have drawn a detail you can move and stretch it, or edit its line style.

Batt Insulation (Worksheet View)

Batt insulation is pre-cut, flexible insulation that fits inside wall cavities between the studs. You can add batt insulation detail to a worksheet using the Batt Insulation tool. Select a start point and end point to define the length of the detail, and then a third point to define the width of the detail.

Once you have drawn batt insulation you can move and stretch it, as well as edit its line style.

Drawing Batt Insulation in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Batt insulation is pre-cut, flexible insulation that fits inside wall cavities between the studs. You can add sections of batt insulation to your Worksheet View drawing by picking points to define the length and width of the insulation detail.

To draw batt insulation:

- In Worksheet View, select Draw > Details > Batt Insulation, or click the down arrow next to the Details button 国 国 on the Draw toolbar and select Batt Insulation.
- Click two points to define the length of the insulation section, then move your pointer away from the base line and click a third point to define the width of the section.



Moving Batt Insulation in Worksheet View

You can move a section of batt insulation by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move batt insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the center grip.
- Click and drag the insulation to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Stretching Batt Insulation in Worksheet View

You can make batt insulation longer, shorter, wider or narrower by simply clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch batt insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it. Blue grab handles are displayed at each corner point.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the grip that you want to move.
- Click and drag the grip in the direction you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of Batt Insulation in Worksheet View

By default, batt insulation is drawn using the color, line type and line weight assigned to the layer that the batt insulation was drawn on. You can easily change the line style of batt insulation after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of batt insulation:

1. Click on the batt insulation to select it.

2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the **Color**, **Line Pattern** and **Line Weight** drop boxes.

Deleting Batt Insulation in Worksheet View

You can delete a section of batt insulation in a couple of easy steps.

To delete batt insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click i on the Modify toolbar.

Rigid Insulation (Worksheet View)

Rigid insulation takes the form of non-flexible panels and is often used on roofs and walls to provide thermal insulation. You can add a 2D rigid insulation detail to a worksheet using the Rigid Insulation tool. Simply select two points to define the length of the detail, and a third point to define the width of the detail.

Once you have inserted rigid insulation you can move and stretch it, as well as edit its line style.

Drawing Rigid Insulation in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Rigid insulation takes the form of non-flexible panels and is often used on roofs and walls to provide thermal insulation. You can add sections of rigid insulation to a Worksheet View drawing by picking points to define the length and width of the insulation detail.

To draw rigid insulation:

- Click two points to define the length of the insulation section, then move your pointer away from the base line and click a third point to define the width of the section.



Moving Rigid Insulation in Worksheet View

You can move a section of rigid insulation by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move rigid insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the center grip.
- Click and drag the insulation to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Stretching Rigid Insulation in Worksheet View

You can make rigid insulation longer, shorter, wider or narrower by simply clicking and dragging its grips. **To stretch rigid insulation:**

To stretch rigid insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it. Blue grab handles are displayed at each corner point.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the grip that you want to move.
- 3. Click and drag the grip in the direction you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of Rigid Insulation in Worksheet View

By default, rigid insulation is drawn using the color, line type and line weight assigned to the layer that the insulation was drawn on. You can easily change the line style of rigid insulation after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of rigid insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the **Color**, **Line Pattern** and **Line Weight** drop boxes.

Deleting Rigid Insulation in Worksheet View

You can delete a section of rigid insulation in a couple of easy steps.

To delete rigid insulation:

- 1. Click on the insulation to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in the Modify toolbar.

Wood Sections (Worksheet View)

Wood sections can be used to represent blocking, wood posts or other wood elements in a 2D drawing. Use the Wood Section tool to draw a wood section by picking points to define its length and width.

Once you have drawn a wood section you can move, rotate or stretch it, and edit its line style.

Drawing a Wood Section in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Wood sections can be used to represent blocking, wood posts or other wood elements in a 2D drawing.

You can add a custom-sized wood section to a worksheet by picking points to define its length and width.

To draw a wood section:

- In Worksheet View, select Draw > Details > Wood Section, or click the down arrow next to the Details button 티 티 이 n the Draw toolbar and select Wood Section.
- 2. Click two points to define the length of the wood section, then move your pointer away from the base line and click a third point to define the width of the section.



Moving a Wood Section in Worksheet View

You can move a wood section by clicking and dragging its center grab handle.

To move a wood section:

- 1. Click on the wood section to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the center grip.
- 3. Click and drag the section to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Wood Section in Worksheet View

You can rotate a wood section about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a wood section:

- 1. Click on the wood section to select it.
- 2. Select **Modify > Rotate**, or click **U U** on the Modify toolbar.
- Select the point that you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the object's grips.
- 4. Move your mouse to rotate the wood section about the selected point.
- 5. When the wood section is at the desired rotation, click to finish.

Stretching a Wood Section in Worksheet View

You can make a wood section longer, shorter, wider or narrower by simply clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a wood section:

 Click on the wood section to select it. Blue grab handles are displayed at each corner point.

- 2. Hover your pickbox over the grip that you want to move.
- 3. Click and drag the grip in the direction you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of a Wood Section in Worksheet View

By default, wood sections are drawn using the color, line type and line weight assigned to the layer that the wood section was drawn on. You can easily change the line style of a wood section after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of a wood section:

- 1. Click on the wood section to select it.
- In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the Color, Line Pattern and Line Weight drop boxes.

Deleting a Wood Section in Worksheet View

You can delete a wood section in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a wood section:

- 1. Click on the wood section to select it.

Masonry Sections (Worksheet View)

A masonry section shows where brick, stone or concrete is used in a design. You can use the Masonry Section tool to add a masonry section detail to a worksheet. Once you have defined the desired dimensions for the bricks and joints, you just pick two points to define the length of the detail, and a third point to define the width of the detail.

Once you have drawn a masonry section you can move, rotate or stretch the section, edit its properties, or edit its line style.

Drawing a Masonry Section in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add a masonry section to a 2D worksheet to represent an area where brick, stones or concrete blocks are used. You create a masonry section by specifying the dimensions of one masonry unit and joint, and then picking points to define the length and direction of the section.

To draw a masonry section:

- Select Draw > Details > Masonry Section, or click the down arrow next to the Details button 臣 臣 on the Draw toolbar and select Masonry Section.
- 2. In the **Masonry Section** dialog, select either **Brick** or **Block** to define how you want the masonry to be represented graphically in the section.
- 3. Specify the following:

Masonry Height. The height of one masonry unit (e.g. brick) in the section.

Masonry Width. The width of each masonry unit in the section.

Joint Height. The distance between masonry units.

Joint Width. The offset of the mortar from the face of the masonry units.

- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. In your drawing, click two points to define the length of the masonry section, keeping in mind that the line you are defining will represent the exterior face of the masonry. Then, move your pointer away from the base line and click a third point to define the direction of the section relative to the base line.



Moving a Masonry Section in Worksheet View

You can move a masonry section by clicking and dragging its center grab handle.

To move a masonry section:

- 1. Click on the masonry section to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the center grip.
- 3. Click and drag the section to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Masonry Section in Worksheet View

You can rotate a masonry section about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a masonry section:

- 1. Click on the masonry section to select it.
- Select Modify > Rotate, or click UU on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select the point that you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the object's grips.
- 4. Move your mouse to rotate the masonry section about the selected point.
- 5. When the masonry section is at the desired rotation, click to finish.

Stretching a Masonry Section in Worksheet View

You can make a masonry section longer or shorter by simply clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a masonry section:

- 1. Click on the masonry section to select it. Blue grips are displayed at each corner point.
- 2. Click and drag a grip in the direction you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Editing Masonry Section Properties in Worksheet View

Once you have created a masonry section, you can edit the dimensions of the masonry units and joints by accessing the masonry section properties.

To edit masonry section properties:

- 1. Click on the masonry section to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Masonry Section Properties.
- 3. In the **Masonry Section Properties** dialog, edit the values as desired.

Masonry Height. The height of one masonry unit (e.g. brick) in the section.

Masonry Width. The width of each masonry unit in the section.

Joint Height. The distance between masonry units.

Joint Width. The offset of the mortar from the face of the masonry units.

4. Click **OK**.

Editing the Line Style of a Masonry Section in Worksheet View

By default, masonry sections are drawn using the color, line type and line weight assigned to the layer that the masonry section was drawn on. You can easily change the line style of a masonry section after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of a masonry section:

- 1. Click on the masonry section to select it.
- In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the Color, Line Pattern and Line Weight drop boxes.

Deleting a Masonry Section in Worksheet View

You can delete a masonry section in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a masonry section:

- 1. Click on the masonry section to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in the Modify toolbar.

Cut Lines (Worksheet View)

A cut line is a standard drafting symbol used to represent a break in the drawing. It indicates that the object continues in the same manner after or between the break lines. You can use the Cut Line tool to add a cut line detail to a worksheet. All you have to do is select two points to define the length of the cut line, and a third point to define its width.

Once you have drawn a cut line you can move, rotate or stretch the cut line, or edit its line style.

Drawing a Cut Line in Worksheet View

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A cut line is a standard drafting symbol used to represent a break in the drawing. It indicates that the object continues in the same manner after or between the break lines. You can add a cut line to a 2D view by picking points to define the length and extent of the cut line.

To draw a cut line:

- In Worksheet View, select Draw > Details > Cut Line, or click the down arrow next to the Details button E E on the Draw toolbar and select Cut Line.
- Click two points to define the length of the cut line, then move your pointer away from the base line and click a third point to define the extent of the break symbol's sharpness.



Moving a Cut Line in Worksheet View

You can move a cut line by clicking and dragging its center grip.

To move a cut line:

- 1. Click on the cut line to select it.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the center grip.
- 3. Click and drag the cut line to move it where you want it, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Cut Line in Worksheet View

You can rotate a cut line about a selected base point using the Rotate tool.

To rotate a cut line:

- 1. Click on the cut line to select it.
- Select Modify > Rotate, or click O on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select the point that you want to rotate around. Typically this is one of the object's grips.
- 4. Move your mouse to rotate the cut line about the selected point.
- 5. When the cut line is at the desired rotation, click to finish.

Stretching a Cut Line in Worksheet View

You can make a cut line longer, shorter, narrower or wider by simply clicking and dragging its grips.

To stretch a cut line:

- Click on the cut line to select it. Blue grab handles are displayed at the ends and center of the cut line.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the grip that you want to move.
- 3. Click and drag the grip in the direction you want to stretch, then release your mouse button.

Editing the Line Style of a Cut Line in Worksheet View

By default, cut lines are drawn using the color, line type and line weight assigned to the layer that the cut line was drawn on. You can easily change the line style of a cut line after you have inserted it.

To change the line style of a cut line:

- 1. Click on the cut line to select it.
- 2. In the Object Properties panel, select the desired settings from the **Color**, **Line Pattern** and **Line Weight** drop boxes.

Deleting a Cut Line in Worksheet View

You can delete a cut line in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a cut line:

- 1. Click on the cut line to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click and on the Modify toolbar.

Roof Symbol (Worksheet View)

A roof symbol indicates the slope of a roof. Use the Roof Symbol tool to define and insert a roof symbol.

Once you have inserted a roof symbol you can move the symbol or its text, or edit its properties.

Inserting a Roof Symbol

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A roof symbol indicates the slope of a roof. When inserting a roof symbol you first define its properties, then click to insert it on your worksheet.

To insert a roof symbol:

- In Worksheet View, select Draw > Details > Roof Symbol, or click the down arrow next to the Details button 티 티 이 on the Draw toolbar and select Roof Symbol.
- 2. In the **Roof Slope Symbol** dialog, specify the following properties:

Slope Type. Select the method for specifying the slope: **? in 12** or **1 in ?**.

Slope Value. Enter the value that completes the slope measurement. For example, if you selected **? in 12** as the method, you would enter **8** for an 8 in 12 slope.

Text Style. Select a text style for the slope measurement.

Length. The overall length of the angled line in the symbol.

Alignment. Specify the orientation of the symbol: **Left** or **Right**. The symbol below is left-aligned:



- 3. Click **OK**.
- 4. Click to insert the symbol on your worksheet.

Moving a Roof Symbol

You can move a roof symbol using the Move tool.

To move a roof symbol:

- 1. Click on the edge of the roof symbol to select it.
- 3. Select a base point for the move, such as an endpoint.
- 4. Select the point you want to move to.

Note: If you want to move only the text, click on the text and then click and drag its solid grip.

Editing a Roof Symbol

Once you have inserted a roof symbol, you can modify it in a variety of ways.

- To stretch the symbol, click on the edge of it and then click and drag its grip points.
- To move the symbol's text, click on the text and then click and drag the text's solid grip.
- To edit the font, height, color or value of the symbol's text, click on the text and then specify the desired settings in the Object Properties panel.

Deleting a Roof Symbol

You can delete a roof symbol in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a roof symbol:

- 1. Click on the edge of the symbol to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click and on the Modify toolbar.

Member Spacing Note (Worksheet View)

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite A member spacing note indicates the spacing between members (e.g. floor joists), and can include other information about the members, such as their type.

Once you have inserted a note, you can edit its contents and appearance, or adjust its position.

Inserting a Member Spacing Note

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A member spacing note is typically found on working drawings that show framing (for example, floor joist layouts). It is used to indicate the spacing between members, and can include other relevant information that you want to convey. When using the Member Spacing Note tool you can have it automatically detect the member type that you are annotating, enabling you to create the note quickly and easily.

To insert a member spacing note:

- 2. Pick two points to define the width and location of the spacing symbol. For example, if you want the symbol to be the width of the space between two members, you would select the edge of one member, then select the edge of the adjacent member.
- 3. In the **Member Spacing Note** dialog, specify the content and appearance of the note:
 - To edit the dimension style applied to the note, which controls the appearance of the symbol and text, click



and select a style from the

Dimension Styles dialog.

• To automatically detect the member type in the drawing, click and

type in the drawing, click where and then click on a member in your drawing. The member type is reported in the top line of the note.

Edit the text of each line as desired.

- Member Spa	icing Note	?	×
M Dime	nsion Style: Standard		
Note Text:			
2x1 2x1	(Member)		
Above Line:	2x10 JOISTS @ 12* O.C.		
Below Line:	ON LUS28Z HANGERS		
	OK Cancel		

4. Click **OK**.

The note appears where you specified the symbol insertion points:



Editing a Member Spacing Note

You can edit the content and appearance of a member spacing note after it has been inserted. You can edit the individual lines of text and the symbol independently of each other.

- To stretch the lines of the spacing symbol, click on a line and then click and drag its end grip points.
- To move text or a symbol line, click on the item to move, then click and drag its solid grip.
- To rotate text, click on the text, then click and drag its triangular grip.
- To edit a line of text, click on the text and then specify its properties in the **Object Properties**

panel. You can edit the text's font, height, color, background, and contents.

 To edit the spacing symbol, click on the symbol and then specify its properties in the **Object Properties** panel. You can edit the symbol's color, line type, and line weight.

Blocks

Drawing an object once, with the ability to insert it into other worksheets and projects, is a huge timesaving feature.

A block is a single object that is composed of many other objects. A block can be a symbol, detail, note or entire drawing that you need to use more than once. You can use the Define Block tool to capture a group of objects in a block. You can then use the Insert Block tool to insert the block onto any worksheet. The Insert Block from File tool lets you insert a block created in another Envisioneer project.

You can attach textual information to a block in the form of attributes. These are handy for entering text that changes with each insertion of a block, like the designer's name, or current date.

Creating a Block

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A block is a single object that is composed of many other objects. A block can be a symbol, detail, note or entire drawing that you need to use more than once. You can use the Define Block tool to capture a group of objects in a block. To create the block you specify a block insertion point, then select the objects that you want to capture in the block.

To create a block:

- In Worksheet View, select Insert > Blocks > Define Block, or click on the Insert toolbar.
- 2. In the **Block Name** edit box, type a name for the block.
- Click
 Click Click Council (the Pick Point button) in the Define Block dialog. You are taken out to your drawing.
- 4. Select a point to serve as the block's insertion point. This is the point that will be attached to your crosshairs when you insert the block

later.

The **Define Block** dialog reappears. If an insertion point was successfully selected, the message *"base point defined"* is displayed in the *Base point* area of the dialog.

- Click Click Click Click Content of the Select Objects button) in the Define Block dialog. You are taken out to your drawing again.
- 6. Select the objects that you want to capture in the block, then press Enter (or right-click and select **Enter**).

The **Define Block** dialog reappears and displays the number of objects selected in the *Objects* area of the dialog.

- To leave the original objects in the drawing in their original state, enable the **Retain** radio button.
- 8. To convert the objects you selected to a block, enable the **Convert to block** radio button.
- 9. To remove the objects you selected from the drawing, enable the **Delete** radio button.
- 10. Click **OK**. The block is now created and saved.

Inserting a Block

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have used the Define Block tool to capture objects in a block, you can use the Insert Block tool to insert the block at any time, on any worksheet, in any project.

To insert a block:

- In Worksheet View, select Insert > Blocks > Insert Block, or click the down arrow next to the Blocks button 2 on the Insert toolbar and select Insert Block.
- 2. From the **Block Name** drop box, select the block that you would like to insert.
- 3. Click **OK**. The block is attached to your crosshairs.
- 4. Click to insert the block where you want it.

Note: If you want to insert a block created in another project, use the **Insert Block from File** tool on the Blocks menu. If you want to insert a block created in another program (DWG or DXF file), use the **Import CAD File** tool on the Insert menu.

Inserting a Block from Another Project

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have created blocks in another Envisioneer project, you can import them into the current project using the Insert Block from File tool.

To insert a block from another project:

- In Worksheet View, select Insert > Blocks > Insert Block from File. Or, click the down arrow next to the Blocks button arrow next to the Blocks button arrow the Insert toolbar and select Insert Block from File.
- In the Open dialog, locate and select the Envisioneer project (*.bld file) containing the block that you want to import, then click Open.
- In the Block Selection dialog, select the block that you want to import, then click OK. The block is attached to your crosshairs.
- Click to insert the block in your drawing area.

Note: If a block by the same name already exists in the current project, you will have the option of replacing it with the incoming block, or renaming the incoming block.

Note: If you want to insert a block created in another program (DWG or DXF file), use the **Import CAD File** tool on the Insert menu.

Moving a Block

You can move a block by clicking and dragging it.

To move a block:

- 1. Select the block.
- 2. Click and drag the square blue grip to move the block, then release your mouse button.

Rotating a Block

You can rotate a block by clicking and dragging its rotation grip.

To rotate a block:

- 1. Select the block.
- Click and drag the triangular blue grip in the direction that you want to rotate.
- 3. When the block is at the desired angle, release your mouse button.

Scaling a Block

You can use the Scale tool to increase or decrease the size of a block to suit your drawing needs.

To scale a block:

- 1. Select the block.
- Select Modify > Scale, or click on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select a base point to scale from. Typically this is a point on the block.
- 4. Enter the desired scale factor in the Scale edit box. For example, to double the size of the block, type 2. To reduce the size by half, type 0.5.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Note: If the block contains a dimension, the dimension value does not scale. If you need to scale the dimension value, double-click the block, select the dimension, then edit the Value Scale in the Object Properties panel.

Editing a Block

If you have inserted a block on your worksheet, whether it be with one of the Blocks tools or the Import CAD File tool, you can edit the contents of the block if needed. You can edit its individual components or add objects to it. Any changes or additions you make are automatically saved to the block's definition, and any instances of the block in your project are automatically updated.

To edit a block:

- Double-click the block, or select the block and then click Edit in the Definition field of the Object Properties panel. Everything except the block is dimmed, indicating that you are now in block editing mode.
- 2. Make the desired changes to the block.

3. Press ESC on your keyboard to return to your worksheet.

Deleting a Block

You can delete a block that you have inserted in Worksheet View in a couple of easy steps.

To delete a block:

- 1. Select the block.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click and on the Modify toolbar.

Deleting Unreferenced Blocks

When you insert a block in your drawing, a copy of the block is stored in memory, and the inserted block *references* that stored block. If you delete a block from your drawing, the block that it references remains in memory. Having too many unreferenced blocks in your project can increase drawing file size. You can alleviate this problem by deleting unreferenced blocks from memory.

To delete unreferenced blocks:

- Select Insert > Blocks > Delete Unreferenced Blocks, or click the down arrow next to the Blocks button 2 on the Insert toolbar and select Delete Unreferenced Blocks.
- 2. The **Delete Unreferenced Blocks** dialog lists all of the blocks that are not being used by the drawing. Enable the check boxes beside the blocks that you want to delete. You can select all blocks simultaneously by clicking the top check box beside the **Block Name**label.
- 3. Click **Delete Delete** . A dialog warns you that you will not be able to undo changes to your drawing since your last save if you proceed with deleting unreferenced items.
- 4. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion.

Defining Attributes

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Attributes allow you to attach textual information to blocks. They are useful for entering text that changes

with each insertion of a particular block. For example, you can add attributes to a title block that prompt for the designer's name, current date or drawing sheet number each time someone inserts the title block into a drawing. Once you've defined the attribute, you insert it in the drawing (for example, on your title block), then capture the object and attribute in a block.

To create an attribute:

- In Worksheet View, select Insert > Blocks > Insert Attribute, or click the down arrow next to the Blocks button in the Insert toolbar and select Insert Attribute.
- 2. In the **Tag** edit box, type the name of the attribute as you would like it to appear when the attribute is inserted. For example, if the attribute is for a person's name, type *Name*. Or, to use a project setting as the tag name, click the arrow in the **Tag** edit box and select a project setting from the drop box (e.g. **#Project_name**). When you insert a block that contains the attribute, the tag name will be autopopulated with the value of that setting in the **Project Manager** dialog box.
- 3. In the **Prompt** edit box, type a prompt that asks what value you want the attribute to have when it is inserted. (For example, *Enter your name*.) If you selected a project setting as the tag name, this field is disabled, because the value will be taken from the **Project Manager** dialog box.
- Select a style for the text from the text styles drop box. If you would like to add or edit a text style, click do not be access the Text Styles library.
- To make text bold, select the text that you want to make bold in the editing window, then click "B.
- 6. To italicize text, click \mathbf{I} .
- 7. To underline the text, click <u><u>u</u>.</u>

- To change the justification of the text, click the appropriate justification¹ button.
 - ∎ Eeft Justify
 - E Center Justify
 - 📲 Right Justify
- 9. If you want the attribute to have a predefined (default) value when you insert the block that contains it, enter the desired text in the editing window. The value will be displayed after you have captured in the attribute in a block, and then insert the block. At that time you can accept or overwrite the default value that you have assigned. If you do not want the attribute to have a predefined value, leave the editing window blank. Note that you cannot specify a default value if a project setting has been selected as the tag name.
- 10. Click **OK**. The text is attached to your crosshairs.
- 11. Insert the text attribute in your drawing. You can now go ahead and create a block containing the attribute.

Editing an Attribute Before it is Captured in a Block

After you have used the Insert Attribute tool to define and insert an attribute, you can edit the attribute before it is captured in a block. For example, you can move and rotate it, change the text style, or change the tag name. Simply click on the attribute, and then edit it just as you would any other type of text.

If you want to edit attribute properties, double-click the attribute to access the **Edit Attribute** dialog. If the attribute is already selected, clicking the browse button in the **Contents** field of the Object Properties panel displays the **Edit Attribute** dialog.

Creating a Block with Attributes

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Once you have defined and inserted an attribute using the Insert Attribute tool, you can capture it in a block.

To create a block with attributes:

- In Worksheet View, select Insert > Blocks > Define Block, or click on the Insert toolbar.
- 2. Define the block just as would any other block, making sure that you select the attributes as well any other objects that you want to include in the block. For example, if you added attributes to a title block, select the entire title block including the attributes, then press **Enter**.
- 3. Click **OK** in the **Define Block** dialog.

Inserting a Block with Attributes

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Once you have created a block containing attributes you can use the Insert Block tool to insert the block and define the attribute values.

To insert a block with attributes:

- In Worksheet View, select Insert > Blocks > Insert Block, click the down arrow next to the Blocks button is on the Insert toolbar and select Insert Block.
- 2. In the **Insert Block** dialog, select the block to insert, then click **OK**.
- 3. To define a value for an attribute, click on the attribute name in the *Value* column, type the desired value, then press **Enter**.
- 4. Click **OK**. The block is attached to your crosshairs.
- 5. Insert the block in your drawing.

Editing Block Attribute Values

If a block with attributes is present in your drawing, you can use the Edit Block Attributes tool to edit the attribute values that have been specified.

To edit attribute values:

In Worksheet View, select Insert > Blocks > Edit Block Attributes, or click the down arrow next to the Blocks button arrow on the Insert toolbar and select Edit Block

¹Justification refers to the way lines of text "line up" in relation to the window that contains them. A "left" justification lines the left side of the text up with the left side of the window, leaving the right side ragged.

Attributes. (In Express, use the Tools menu.)

- 2. Click on the block containing the attributes, then press **Enter**.
- 3. Edit the values in the **Edit Block Attributes** dialog, then click **OK**.

Editing Objects in Worksheet View

Worksheet View offers a full suite of editing tools, located on the **Modify** menu: Delete, Move, Rotate, Duplicate, Array, Offset, Stretch, Scale, Mirror, Break, Extend, Trim, Chamfer, Fillet, and Explode. Many of these tools are available in Model View, and generally work in the same way.

A unique feature of Worksheet View is that you can select an editing tool *before* selecting the object to edit, or vice versa. (In Model View, you always select the object first.) If you select the tool first, you need to select the object by clicking, windowing or crossing it, then press Enter (or right-click and select **Enter**) to complete the selection. You can then proceed with the editing function. For example, if you want to break a line, select Modify > Break, select the line and press Enter, then select the break point.

If you select the object first, you can either select a tool from the **Modify** menu or right-click menu.

Note: Throughout the online help, the procedures for editing objects in Worksheet View describe the method where the object is picked first.

Selecting Objects in Worksheet View

There are three ways to select objects in Worksheet View: by clicking, by windowing, and by crossing.

The simplest way to select an object is to just click on it. If you want to select a number of objects, click on the first one, then Shift+click the rest of the objects that you want to select. Objects that are defined through dialogs, such as text and attributes, can be double-clicked to display their property dialogs.

If you are trying to select multiple objects, you may find it easier to *window* or *cross* the objects.

To select objects by windowing:

 Starting to the left of the objects, click and drag a selection window around the objects. All objects that you want to select must be totally enclosed by the selection window.



To select objects by crossing:

 Starting to the right of the objects, click and drag a selection window through the objects that you want to select. The objects do not need to be totally enclosed in the window. As long as they are inside or touching the selection window, they will be selected.



To select all objects on the current worksheet:

1. Select **Edit > Select All**.

- To re-select the objects you last selected:
- 1. Select Edit > Select Previous.

To deselect individual objects:

- 1. Hold down your Shift key.
- 2. Click the object that you want to deselect.
- To deselect everything in your selection set:
- Select Edit > Deselect All, or simply click in a blank spot somewhere else in the drawing area.

Moving Objects in Worksheet View

With the exception of polygons and dimensions, objects in Worksheet View can be moved by simply clicking and dragging. If you have your Commander turned on and would like to be able to enter precise values for the move, you need to select the Move tool instead of doing a straight drag-and-drop.

To move an object using drag-and-drop:

- 1. Select the object.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the object's square blue grip at the center of the object.
- 3. Click and drag to move the object.
- 4. When the object is where you want it, release the mouse button.

To move an object using the Move tool:

- 1. Select the object.
- 3. Select a base point for the move. The move distance and direction will be measured from this point.
- 4. Without holding your mouse button down, move your mouse to move the element. Select the point you want to move the object to, or enter a distance and direction in the Commander.

Nudging Elements

You can nudge an element or object slightly using the arrow keys on your keyboard. By default, the element is nudged 1" (or 25mm). You can change the nudge distance in your program settings before nudging if you like.

For an additional level of control, a secondary nudge distance is also available in your program settings. By default it is set to 1'-0" (or 300mm). This distance is used if you press and hold down the CTRL key while using the arrow keys.

To nudge an element:

- 1. Select the element that you want to nudge.
- 2. Use the arrows on your keyboard to nudge the element up, down, left or right. This uses

the primary nudge distance defined in your program settings.

To nudge an element using the CTRL key:

- 1. Select the element that you want to nudge.
- 2. Press and hold down the CTRL key on your keyboard.
- While holding down the CTRL key, use the arrows on your keyboard to nudge the element up, down, left or right. This uses the secondary nudge distance defined in your program settings.

Rotating Objects in Worksheet View

Objects that were inserted with a single click can be rotated by clicking and dragging their rotation grip, which is triangular in shape. Such objects include text, blocks, inserted views, inserted images, and inserted CAD files.

For most other objects, you need to use the Rotate tool. You also need to use the Rotate tool if you want to be able to enter a precise rotation angle in the Commander, or you want to rotate the object about a point other than the center point of the object.

If your Angle Snap is on, the object will rotate in increments of whatever angle is set for the Angle Snap. If you are using the Commander, you can override the Angle Snap by entering the desired angle in the Commander. If the Angle Snap is off, the object will rotate in increments of 1° provided Ortho is turned off.

To rotate an object by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Select the single-click object that you want to rotate.
- 2. Hover your pickbox over the object's triangular grip.
- 3. Click and drag to rotate the object.
- 4. When the object is at the desired rotation, release your mouse button.

To rotate an object using the Rotate tool:

- 1. Select the object.
- Select Modify > Rotate, or right-click and select Rotate, or click on the Modify toolbar.

- 3. Select a base point for the rotation. The base point can be any point on the object (e.g. center point or corner point), or any point in the drawing area. The point you pick establishes an automatic baseline that runs through the point at 180°. You can rotate full-circle around this baseline.
- 4. Without holding your mouse button down, move your mouse to rotate the object. The object will rotate from the defined base point in the direction you move the mouse. If the Commander is turned on, you can view the angle of rotation as you rotate, or enter a precise angle. Positive angle values are read in a counter-clockwise direction, while negative values are read in a clockwise direction.

Duplicating Objects in Worksheet View

The Duplicate tool creates a copy of a selected object that you can then position where you like on the same sheet.

To duplicate an object:

- 1. Select the object to copy.
- Select Modify > Duplicate, or right-click and select Duplicate, or click on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select a base point for the copy movement. Typically you would select one of the object's grips, but you can click anywhere in the drawing. The base point is simply a reference point used to define the move distance.
- 4. Select the point you are copying the object to. You can do this by moving your mouse and then clicking to insert the copy, or by typing a distance and direction in the Commander.

Note: If you want to copy an object to another worksheet, use the Copy and Paste tools on the **Edit** menu instead.

Cutting/Copying/Pasting Objects in Worksheet View

You can cut or copy an object from one worksheet and paste it onto another worksheet using the **Cut**, **Copy** and **Paste** tools.

- 1. Select the object.
- Select Edit > Cut to remove the object from the worksheet, or Edit > Copy to make a copy of the object.
- Go to the worksheet where you want to paste the object, then select Edit > Paste. The object is attached to your cursor.
- 4. Click to insert the object on the worksheet.

Note: If you want to copy an object within the same worksheet, you may want to use the **Modify** > **Duplicate** tool instead, so that you have better control over its placement.

Arraying Objects in Worksheet View

You can create copies of objects in a rectangular or polar (circular) pattern called an array.

When you create a rectangular array, objects are arranged in a pattern of rows and columns. You can control the number of rows and columns, the spacing between the rows and columns, and the array's rotation angle.



When you create a polar array, objects are arranged in a circular pattern about a selected center point. You can specify criteria such as the total number of objects you want to include in the array, the angle to fill, or the angle between objects.



To create a rectangular array:

- 1. Select the object that you want to array.
- Select Modify > Array, or right-click and select Array, or click and on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. In the **Array** dialog, enable the **Rectangular** radio button.
- 4. In the **Number of Rows** box, type the number of horizontal rows you want or use the arrows to select a value.
- 5. In the **Number of Columns** box, type the number of vertical columns you want.
- 6. In the **Distance Between Rows** box, type the spacing you want between rows. This determines the distance between objects appearing in columns (vertical spacing).
- 7. In the **Distance Between Columns** box, type the spacing you want between columns. This determines the distance between objects appearing in rows (horizontal spacing).
- 8. In the **Array Rotation Angle** box, type the degree of rotation for the array.
- 9. Click **OK**. The array is created.

To create a polar array:

- 1. Select the object that you want to array.
- Select Modify > Array, or right-click and select Array, or click == == on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. In the **Array** dialog, enable the **Polar** radio button.

- Click B , and then select the point in your drawing area that will serve as the center of the array.
- 5. To rotate the items as they are arrayed, enable the **Rotate Items** check box. If you disable this check box, each item in the array will have the same orientation as the selected object.



- 6. From the Method drop box, select the criteria that you want to use to create the array. Total Number of Items & Angle to Fill Total Number of Items & Angle Between Items Angle to Fill & Angle Between Items
- 7. Enter values for the two parameters that support the method you selected.

Total number of items. The total number of items in the array, including the selected object.

Angle to fill. The distance to fill around the circumference of the array.

Angle between items. The distance between each item.

Arrays are generated counterclockwise from the selected object. To produce a clockwise array, enter a negative value in the *Angle to fill* edit box.

8. To preview the array, click **Preview**. The array is displayed in your drawing area. If you are satisfied with the array, click **Yes** in

the dialog to create it. Otherwise, click **No** to return to the **Array** dialog.

If you do not want to preview the array, just click **OK** in the **Array** dialog to create the array.

Offsetting Objects in Worksheet View

Offsetting creates a new object whose shape is the same as the shape of a selected object. Offsetting a circle, for example, creates a larger or smaller circle, depending on which side you specify for the offset. You can offset lines, polylines, circles, arcs and polygons.

To offset an object:

- 1. Select the object to offset.
- Select Modify > Offset, or right-click and select Offset, or click
 on the Modify toolbar.
- In the Offset dialog, enter the distance that you would like to offset the object, then click OK.
- 4. In the drawing, click on the side that you would like to offset to.

Stretching Objects in Worksheet View

Any object that can be stretched manually (by editing grips) can also be stretched using the Stretch tool. With this method you can specify a stretch distance and direction with the Commander.

To stretch an object:

- Select Modify > Stretch, or right-click and select Stretch, or click A on the Modify toolbar.
- 2. Click and drag a crossing selection window (from right to left) around the line end or corner that you want to stretch.
- 3. Press Enter, or right-click and select **Enter**.
- 4. Select a base point to stretch from. This can be any point in the drawing.
- 5. Move your crosshairs in the direction that you want to stretch, then either click when the object is the desired length, or enter a stretch distance in the Commander.

Scaling Objects in Worksheet View

You can use the Scale tool to increase or reduce the size of an object.

To scale an object:

- 1. Select the object.
- Select Modify > Scale, or right-click and select Scale, or click on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select a base point to scale from. Typically this is a point on the object.
- 4. Enter the desired scale factor in the **Scale** edit box. For example, to double the size of the object, type 2. To reduce the size by half, type 0.5.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Note: If you are scaling a block, and the block contains a dimension, the dimension value does not scale. If you need to scale the dimension value, double-click the block, select the dimension, then edit the Value Scale in the Object Properties panel.

Mirroring Objects in Worksheet View

You can create a mirror image of a selected object using the Mirror tool. You mirror the object by specifying a mirror line — an imaginary line about which the object is flipped. Once the object has been mirrored, you can choose whether or not you want to delete the original object.

To mirror an object:

- 1. Select the object that you want to mirror.
- Select Modify > Mirror, or right-click and select Mirror, or click on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Click two points to define a mirror line. The element is mirrored. Example



4. When prompted to choose whether or not you want to delete the original object, click
Yes to delete the original object, or click No to leave the original intact.

Breaking Objects in Worksheet View

You can use the Break tool to create a break in a line, polyline, arc, or polygon. This divides the object into segments which can be edited individually, and adds a grip at the break point.

To break a line, polyline, arc or polygon:

- 1. Select the object.
- 2. Select **Modify > Break**, or right-click and select **Break**, or click (a) on the Modify toolbar.
- 3. Select the point where you want to break the object.

Extending Objects in Worksheet View

You can use the Extend tool to extend one object to another.

To extend an object to another:

- Select Modify > Extend, or right-click and select Extend, or click in on the Modify toolbar.
- Select the object you want to extend to, then press Enter (or right-click and select Enter). The object must be in the path of the object that you want to extend.

3. Select the object that you want to extend. The object is extended to the first object you selected.

Trimming Objects to Other Objects (Worksheet View)

When two drafting objects cross each other, you can use the Trim tool to trim one object to the other.

To trim an object to another object:

- In Worksheet View, select Modify > Trim, or right-click and select Trim, or click X on the Modify toolbar.
- Select the object that you want to trim to, then press Enter (or right-click and select Enter). In the following example, you would select the circle as the object to trim to.



2. Select the object that you want to trim, clicking near the end you want to trim.



The line is trimmed automatically to the nearest border.



In the above example, if you clicked on the center of the line, the portion inside the circle would be trimmed:



Chamfering Objects in Worksheet View

Use the Chamfer tool to create a beveled connection between two lines or polylines.

To chamfer objects:

1. Select **Modify > Chamfer**, or click



- on the Modify toolbar.
- 2. In the Chamfer Distances dialog, specify the first and second chamfer distance (the distance each object will be cut back). The distances that you specify will be applied in the order that you select the objects.
- 3. Select the first object, then select the second object. The chamfer is created.

In the following example, line **1** will be cut back (horizontally) by the First Distance specified, and line 2 will be cut down (vertically) by the Second Distance specified. A line will then be drawn between the two endpoints to create the angled connection.



Filleting Objects in Worksheet View

Filleting connects two lines together at a point where they would naturally meet if both were extended. If the objects already intersect, one object is trimmed to the other. The Fillet tool can be used on lines, polylines, arcs, and circles. Example



There are two fillet options available. The Fillet - Join tool performs a straight connection, causing the lines to meet at a single point, while the Fillet - Radius tool connects two lines with a curve.

To join objects at a single point:

1. Select **Modify > Fillet > Fillet - Join**, or click the arrow next to 📅 🎁 on the Modify toolbar and select Fillet - Join.

- Select the first object that you want to join. If the object is a line or arc, click near the specific end that you want to extend.
- Select the second object that you want to join. The objects are connected.

To join objects with a curve:

- Select Modify > Fillet > Fillet Radius, or click the arrow next to read on the Modify toolbar and select Fillet - Radius.
- 2. In the **Radius** dialog box, specify the desired radius for the curve, then press Enter or click **OK**.
- 3. Select the first object that you want to fillet.
- 4. Select the second object that you want to fillet. The objects are connected with a curve.

Exploding Objects in Worksheet View

You can use the Explode tool to "blow up" an object into its component parts. You could use this on objects such as blocks, inserted model views and inserted CAD files (such as a detail or title block). Once an object has been exploded you are free to edit its individual components.

To explode an object:

- 1. Select the object.
- Select Modify > Explode, or right-click and select Explode, or click of on the Modify toolbar.

Deleting Objects in Worksheet View

You can delete an object from your drawing in two quick steps.

To delete an object:

- 1. Select the object.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or right-click and select Delete, or click and select on the Modify toolbar.

Measuring Distance and Angle in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the handy Measure tool you can measure the distance and angle between any two points in your drawing.

To measure in Worksheet View:

- Select Tools > Measure, or click . on the Tools toolbar.
- 2. Click the first point that you want to measure from. As you move your crosshairs away from this point, distance and angle information is reported on the status bar:

Distance: 14'-1 1	./4" Angle:	45°
Distance 21'-10"	Direction	45°

3. Click the second point that you want to measure to. All calculations, including the distance along the X axis and Y axis, are reported in the **Measure** dialog.

Drafting Settings

In your Drafting Settings you can select a default line style to be used for drafting objects (lines, circles, arcs, rectangles) when they are drawn. You can also set a default line style for revision clouds, hatched polygons, and details.

You can also assign a layer to objects created in Model View that are not building elements. These include lines and shapes, revision clouds, hatched polygons, details, room division lines, CAD blocks, text, dimensions, schedules, room regions, site boundaries, terrain lines, and wall panel components.

When these objects are imported into Worksheet View, they will reside on the layer assigned to them if you explode the block that they are part of.

Selecting a Default Line Style for Drafting Objects

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can select a default line style for lines, arcs, circles and rectangles in Model View.

To select a default layer for drafting objects:

- Select Settings > Drafting Settings, or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Drafting Settings** dialog, select the *Drafting Objects* item.
- 3. Click **Settings**, and then select the desired layer in the **Line Style** dialog. The layer determines the color, line type, and line weight of the object.
- You can override the color, line type or line weight by clicking on the desired property and making a different selection from the drop box.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Drafting Settings** dialog.

Note: You can edit the line style of a drafting object after it has been drawn.

Selecting a Default Layer for Details

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can select a default line style to use when drawing batt insulation, rigid insulation, wood sections, masonry sections and cut lines in Model View.

To specify default settings for details:

- Select Settings > Drafting Settings, or click
 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Drafting Settings** dialog, select the *Details* item.
- 3. Click Settings.
- By default, details are drawn on the CAD layer. To select a different layer, click the browse button next to the Layer box, then select a layer from the Layers dialog.
- 5. To override the color, line type, or line weight, click on the property and make a selection from the drop box.
- 6. Click **OK** in the **Drafting Settings** dialog.

Note: You can edit the properties of a detail after it has been drawn.

Specifying Default Revision Cloud Settings

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can define the settings that you would like your revision clouds to have prior to drawing them. You can select a line style and hatch pattern, and define an arc size.

To define revision cloud settings:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click



- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Revision Cloud** in the left column.
- By default, revision clouds are drawn on the Drafting - Hatch layer. To select a different layer, click the browse button next to the Layer box, then select a layer from the Layers dialog.
- To override the color, line type, or line weight, click in the Color, Line Types, or Line Weight box and make the desired selection.
- To apply a pattern to revision clouds which is visible in Patterned display mode, enable the Include check box in the Pattern area. Click Select in the Pattern area to select a pattern from the Patterns library.
- To define the size of the arcs in the revision cloud, enter values in the Minimum Arc Length and Maximum Arc Length edit boxes..
- 7. Click **OK**.

Specifying Default Polygon Hatch Settings

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can define the settings that you would like hatched polygons to have prior to drawing them, such as the line style and hatch pattern.

To define polygon hatch settings:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

🔄 🐼 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Polygon Hatch** in the left column.
- By default, polygons are drawn on the Drafting - Hatch layer. To select a different layer, click the browse button next to the Layer box, then select a layer from the Layers dialog.
- To override the color, line type, or line weight assigned to the selected layer, click in the Color, Line Types, or Line Weight box and make the desired selection.
- To apply a pattern to polygons, which is visible in Patterned display mode, enable the Include check box in the Pattern area. Click Select in the Pattern area to select a pattern from the Patterns library.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Assigning Layers to Objects in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can assign a layer to objects created in Model View that are not building elements. These include lines and shapes, revision clouds, hatched polygons, details, room division lines, CAD blocks, text, dimensions, schedules, room regions, site boundaries, terrain lines, and wall panel components.

When these objects are imported into Worksheet View, they will reside on the layer assigned to them if you explode the block that they are part of.

A layer definition includes settings for an object's line style, line weight and color.

To assign layers to objects in Model View:

- 1. Select Settings > Drafting Settings.
- 2. In the **Drafting Settings** dialog, select the object to which you want to assign a layer.
- 3. Click the drop box in the *Layer* column, and then select the desired layer from the drop list.

Dratting Settings			E.
Element	Layer		
Electrical Wiring	Electrical	-	Settings
Drafting Objects	Drafting - Dimensions		
Dimensions	Drafting - Hatch		
Text	Drafting - Text		
Revision Cloud	Electrical		
Boom Division	Int Furniture		
BoomBealon	wint Lighting =		***
Polygon Hatch	Members		
Polygon Halon Diskella	Opening		
Details	Plants		
CAD Blocks	Boofs		
Terrain	Roofs - Elevation		
Schedules	Site Boundaries		
Schedule Tags	Terrain		
Site Boundary	TitleBlock		
Panel Dimension Lines	TitleBlockNodes		
Panel Label Lines	Trim	=	
Panel Sobedule Lines	Walls		
Tariel Schedule Lines	Walls - 2D Core		
	Walls - 2D Exterior Sur		
	Walls - 2D Left Interior		
	Walls - Air Snace	-	
	Walls - Core		
	■Walls - Exterior Surface		
	 Walls - Interior Surface 	-	
	Windows	-	
	Uther	-	



4. Click **OK**.

Note: Building elements have a layer assignment on their Appearance property page.

Chapter 20: Estimating and Analysis

Estimating and Analysis

There are several powerful tools available to help you analyze your project and generate various types of reports and information.

Area/Perimeter. You can use the Area/Perimeter Calculator to display the area (e.g. square footage) and perimeter length of each location in your model, as well as the total area and total perimeter (of all locations).

Room Measurements. You can use a Room Region tool to instantly calculate the area, perimeter and volume of a room or selected area in your model and insert the information in your drawing.

When you use a Room Region tool, a boundary is created around the room or area. This boundary defines a *room region* in your model that can be used in the Area/Perimeter Calculator and for creating a room region schedule.

Project Estimate. Any elements that you insert in your drawing are tracked internally, making it possible to generate a project estimate automatically. You can also generate a partial estimate for selected elements when needed.

When you generate an estimate for your project, the estimate comprises a quantity report as well as a cut list. The quantity report, or bill of materials, lists all of the materials used to build your house, as well as the quantity, unit price and total cost of each material. The cut list reports all the timber and steel members in your drawing calculates the number of members you need to purchase using realistic cut lengths of your choice. **Quote**. A quote is a list of products with quantities, pricing and other important information. Quotes are used by building material supply retailers, wholesalers, distributors and contractors to facilitate the design, sale and installation of construction projects. You can use the Generate Quote tool to instantly generate a quote that opens in Quote Generator software (included). You can then edit the quote to suit your needs.

Schedules. You can display, print and insert complete door, window, member or room region schedules for each location in your project. By default, doors, windows or members are tagged with schedule marks that link them to the associated schedule.

Upload to ERP. If your organization uses an Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) system, you can connect to it directly from **Envisioneer** and upload an order to it using the Upload to ERP tool.

You can edit a schedule's layout, text styles and line styles, and control the content and style of schedule marks.

REScheck Export. You can use the REScheck Export tool export data from your Envisioneer model to a REScheck file to determine if it meets IECC or certain state code requirements.

Area & Perimeter

Calculating area and perimeter measurements is an important part of the design process. The Area/Perimeter Calculator reports these measurements instantly at any given time. The Area/Perimeter Calculator displays the area (e.g. square footage) and perimeter length of each location in your model. It also displays the total area and total perimeter (of all locations). If your model changes, the Area/Perimeter Calculator adjusts its measurements automatically.

If you have created room regions in your model (such as a garage region), they are listed under their associated location names in the Area/Perimeter Calculator. You can subtract room regions from your area measurements if you want.

Calculating Area and Perimeter

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite The Area/Perimeter Calculator displays the area (e.g. square footage) and perimeter length of the building footprint on each location in your model. It also displays the total area and total perimeter (of all locations). You can use the calculator at any given point in time. The values in the calculator update automatically as your model increases or decreases in size.

Note that the calculations are taken from the exterior side of the building's perimeter walls.

To measure area:

1. Select **Tools > Analyze > Area/Perimeter**, or

click control on the Analyze toolbar. Area measurements are displayed on the *Area* tab of the **Area/Perimeter Calculator** dialog. Perimeter measurements are shown on the *Perimeter* tab.

Name	Include	Area	~
Foundation			
Footprint Area	Add	0.0 ft ²	
Sub-total		0.0 ft ^e	
Ground Floor			
Footprint Area	Add	■ 1183.8 ft ²	
Sub-total		1183.8 ft ^e	
Second Floor			
Footprint Area	Add	■ 0.0 ft ²	
Sub-total		0.0 ft ^e	
Total		1183.8 f€	
		a autoida	

If you have created room regions in your model, they are listed under their associated location names. For example, if you have calculated the area of your garage using the Room Region by Room tool, you will see the garage listed under the Ground Floor location, or whatever location it was built on. By default, the sub-total of each location is the total area or perimeter of that location, including all regions on that location. You can omit selected locations or room regions from the total if you want. If a calculation is included in the total, it is highlighted green.

2. To omit a location or region from the calculation, select **Omit** from the drop box in the *Include* column. By default, room regions are already omitted because they are part of the overall calculation for the location.

- 3. To subtract the area or perimeter of a region from a location's sub-total, select **Subtract** from the drop box in the *Include* column. For example, if you want to remove the garage from the calculation, select **Subtract** next to the Garage room region. The garage's measurement then highlights red, indicating that it has been subtracted.
- 4. To add a location that you have omitted back into the calculation, select **Add** from the drop box in the *Include* column.
- 5. To turn the grid lines off, uncheck the **Show Grid** check box.
- 6. To print the calculations, click **Print**.
- When you are done viewing the area calculations, click **OK**.

Note: The units of measure used for the area and perimeter can be changed on the Units of Measure page in your program settings.

Room Measurements

Room measurements are one of the most common notations on a floor plan. You can use a Room Region tool to automatically calculate the measurements of a room or area in your design, and then insert the measurement in the design. If you want to measure the space in a room (with a closed wall layout), use the Room Region by Room option. If you want to calculate measurements for a particular area in your design, use the Room Region by Picking Points option to define the outline of the area being measured.

When using the Room Region tool you can specify settings for the text that is inserted, and choose which measurements you want to include — area, volume or perimeter.

Once you have inserted a room region note in your drawing, you can edit the settings pertaining to the content and style of the note, and the style of the room region boundary and pattern. You can also resize or reshape a room region, and move room region text.

Defining the Extents of Room Regions to be Inserted in Rooms

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, a room region inserted with the Room Region by Room tool extends to the inside edge of the wall core (e.g. stud wall). If you prefer you can set the room region to extend to the interior edge of the interior wall surface (e.g. drywall) instead. This is an insertion setting that is defined in your program settings. Changing this setting has no effect on room regions that have already been inserted. It only affects room regions that you are going to insert with the Room Region by Room tool. If you want to change the extents of an existing room region you can click and drag its editing grips.

To define the extents of room regions to be inserted with the Room Region by Room tool:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, click **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Insertion by Room* area, click the drop box next to the **Room Regions** item.
- 4. If you want room regions in rooms to extend to the wall core, select **Wall Core**. If you want them to extend to the interior wall surface, select **Wall Surface**.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Editing Room Region Properties

Once you have inserted a room region note in your drawing, you can edit the settings pertaining to the content and style of the note, and the style of the room region boundary and pattern.

To edit room region properties:

- 1. Click inside the room region to select it.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the settings in the Room Region dialog.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Resizing or Reshaping a Room Region

You can resize or reshape a room region boundary by clicking and dragging its edges and corners. The calculations in the room region note update automatically.

To resize or reshape a room region:

- 1. Click inside the room region to select it.
- To resize the region, click and drag the solid blue grips located at the center of each edge. Alternatively you can use the **Move Edge** tool on the right-click menu to move an edge.
- 3. To reshape the region, click and drag the hollow blue grips located at the corners. Alternatively you can use the **Stretch** tool on the right-click menu.

Note: Room regions are linked to their associated walls and update automatically if walls are stretched.

Moving Room Region Text

By default, the space calculation note appears at the center of a room region. You can move the title or body of a room region note using the Move Text tool.

To move room region text:

- 1. Click inside the room region to select it.
- Right-click and select Move Text, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move Text.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the solid blue grip displayed over the text, then click and drag to move the text where you want it. Note that the title and body of the note are moved separately.
- 4. Release your mouse button.

Deleting a Room Region

You can delete a room region in a couple of easy steps. This removes the region boundary, pattern (if present) and calculation note.

To delete a room region:

- 1. Click inside the room region to select it.
- Right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

Estimating

The Project Estimate tool automatically generates a quantity report and cut list at any time during the design process. If you make changes to your model, the estimate will update automatically.

The quantity report, or bill of materials, lists all of the materials used to build your house, as well as the quantity, unit price and total cost of each material. The quantity report also lists assemblies, which are part of an element's properties. For example, a wall may have assemblies such as studs, drywall, insulation, vapor barrier, and drywall screws.

The cut list reports all the timber and steel members in your drawing calculates the number of members you need to purchase from your supplier using realistic cut lengths of your choice.

When you view your project estimate, you can choose a report template to apply to the estimate. The template determines what information is reported, how it is reported, and the file type created when you save the estimate. Some templates generate files that are compatible with popular estimating programs. You can edit report templates to suit your needs, or even create new ones.

If you are using *Construction Suite* or *Building Essentials,* you can use the Generate Quote tool to instantly generate a quote that opens in Quote Generator software (included). You can then edit the quote to suit your needs.

If you are using an ERP system to manage and interpret data, you can upload data to an ERP system directly from Envisioneer.

Quantitative Data

Every element in your drawing has various types of information attached to it. The information on an element's Quantity property page is used when estimates are generated. The Quantity property page contains several quantity variables that you can specify, such as Manufacturer, Supplier, Part Number, Price, and Unit of Measure. You can export the quantitative properties of all catalog elements to a text file if needed. There is also an area for specifying assemblies for the element. Assemblies are quantifiable items that are associated with an element but are not actually drawn. For example, an interior wall assembly can include things like drywall sheets, drywall screws and paint.

Pricing and Other Data

Every element has a Quantity property page that contains various data fields associated with quantity reporting, such as Price, Supplier, Part Number, Phase and Category. The values you enter in these fields will be used when an estimate is generated. Some fields can also be used to determine the sort order of information in your reports as defined in the report template. You can edit pricing and other quantity data for elements in the catalog or in your drawing.

Editing the Quantitative Properties of Elements

Building Essentials | Construction Suite Included among the property pages of every element is a Quantity property page. This page contains a number of *variables* that are commonly used in inventory control, quoting and estimating — fields such as Manufacturer, Part Number, Price and Unit of Measure. The information on this page is used when a project estimate is generated.

🖋 Wall	5		
Name:	2x4 Interior Wall		
Basic	Top and Bottom	Trim	Appearance
Quar	itity		
Manuf	acturer		None Selecte
Suppli	er		
Price			\$0.00
Phase			Wall Framing
Phase Category		Walls	
Category Division		09250	
Division Part No		24INT	
AltCode		if(or(Phase="F	
Usage)		Interior Wall
Usage Interior Unit of Measure SF		SF	
Mark			Off
Includ	e in Quantities		\checkmark
Repla	ce with Assemblies		\checkmark
	- 1		

ame:	2x4 Interior Wall		Autoname	
Basic	Top and Bottom Trim	Appearance Quantity		
Quar Manuf Suppli Price Phase Categ Divisio Part N AltCoo Usage Unit o Mark	htiy facturer e ony on lo de e e f Measure	None Selected \$0.00 Wall Framing Walls 09250 24INT f(or(Phase="Floor System",P Interior Wall SF Off	Assemblies Description 1/2" Drywall 1/2" 4" x 8' Drywall Joint Tape 500' Joint Compound Bulk Drywall Screws Wall Framing Stick Nails Dreumatic Framing Stick Nails Dringer and Paint	Add Sett Calculated Quantity (Interior Wall Area + ((Interior Wall Area / 25 (Interior Wall Area / 25 (Interior Wall Area / 25 Length / 3000
Includ Repla	le in Quantities ce with Assemblies	<u>र</u> । र	Primer - S Gallon Paint - S Gallon Common Measurements Interior Wall Surface Exterior Wall Surface Interior Wall Length	Interior Wall Area / 19 Interior Wall Area / 80 Interior Wall Area Exterior Wall Area Interior Length

(Interi

Lengt

Interio

Interio

Interio

Exterio

Interio

5

s

Some of the fields on the Quantity page are used to define the sort order of information in quantity reports, as defined by the report template used. These fields include Division, Alt Code, Phase, Usage and Category.

You can edit the quantitative properties of elements in the catalog, or in your drawing. Alternatively you can generate and save a project estimate, then edit the fields in the estimate's associated editor, such as *Excel* or *Notepad* (depending on the report template used).

To edit the quantitative properties of elements in your drawing:

- 1. Select the element in your drawing.
- 2. Right-click and select **Properties**.
- 3. In the properties dialog, select the **Quantity** tab.

To edit the quantitative properties of elements in your catalog:

- Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Element Manager. You can also rightclick inside the catalog panel and select Element Manager.
- 2. Select the element(s) that you want to edit.
- 3. In the properties pane, select the **Quantity** tab.

Note: Editing elements in a catalog has no effect on elements already inserted in your drawing. It only affects future insertions of the element.

Below is a description of each available property.

Manuf: The Manufacturer of the product. Click the browse button to access the Manufacturers library where you can add, edit and select manufacturers.

Supplier: The company or store who will be supplying the product.

Price: The unit price of the product. This value correlates with the selection in the **Units** field. For example, if Linear Feet is specified in the **Units** field, you would enter the price per linear foot here.

Phase: Materials are often shipped to the building site in phases, such as the Site Work, Foundation or Framing phase. The selection here indicates the phase this particular element is associated with. Phases can be used as sort keys in estimates and quotes. Click the browse button to select a phase from the Phase library.

Category: Elements can be grouped into categories according to their type, such as sheathing or pre-cut lumber. Categories can be used as sort keys in estimates and quotes. Click the browse button to select a category from the Category library.

Division: A construction division identification. In North America, CSI divisions are used.

Part No.: Part Number. A series of numbers that identifies the product. This could be a vendor part number, manufacturer part number, etc.

Alt Code: An alternate code for identifying the item. You might use this to link to an inventory control database or estimating system. Vendors may use Alt Codes as alternate lookup keys or product IDs, often to facilitate product substitutions. The Alt Code can be used as a sort key in estimates and quotes.

An Alt Code can be any series of numbers or characters, and you can also incorporate element variables into the code by creating a custom Alt Code formula. The Alt Code is a great way to combine two or more variables into one for simpler sorting. For example, instead of grouping materials by Location first and then by Phase in your report template, resulting in materials from the same Phase being spread out into multiple location groups, you could group them by Location AND Phase at the same time by specifying an Alt Code formula that includes both of these variables. By using the Alt Code as the primary sort key, this would put all items sharing the same Location and Phase into onto one group, which would make it easier to create delivery and distribution lists. For example, if you specified an Alt Code formula of **Location_Phase**, you might see headings and groups such as 'Ground Floor_Wall Systems', 'Second Floor_Wall Systems', etc. in your project estimate.

To create a custom formula, click the browse button next to the **Alt Code** field, then define a formula in the **Define Formula** dialog. See Specifying Formulas on page 642.

Usage. An element's usage can help make it more clear what the element is to be used for. For example, a 2" x 4" member could be used for Blocking, or for a Stud. Usages can be used as sort keys in estimates and quotes. Click the browse button to select a usage in the Usages library.

Unit of Measure. The unit of measure used to quantify the element. You can quantify an element in terms of a *Count, Length, Area* or *Volume*. For example, if you purchase vapor barrier in rolls, you might select **Roll** as the unit of measure. In this case you would be quantifying a *Count*. If you would rather measure your vapor barrier in linear feet, you would select **LNFT** instead, which is a *Length* measurement. You might want to quantify drywall in terms of *Area*, in which case your unit of measure might be **SQFT** or **SQMM**.

Units of measure are stored in a library for your convenience. You can add and edit units of measure in the Units of Measure library. Each unit of measure has a set of properties that determine what the unit quantifies (Count, Length, Area or Volume), the unit format (Decimal, Inches, etc.), the unit precision, and the unit text displayed after the numerical value. Most importantly, each unit of measure contains a conversion factor. The program measures all quantities in millimeters initially. The conversion factor is the number you need to multiply by to convert from millimeters to the unit you want. Click the browse button next to the **Units** field to select a unit of measure from the Units of Measure library.

Note: The Unit of Measure selected on element's Quantity property page is not necessarily the unit that will be used in the project estimate. This is determined by the report template used to display your estimate, specifically the Record defined for that element in the report template. If the **Unit** in a Record is set to the **Quantity** variable, or to a formula that uses the **Quantity** variable, the program will use the measurement calculated from the Quantity page settings.

Mark. Displays a text mark on the element in 2D. Selecting Auto displays an auto-generated mark whose properties are determined by the default Element Mark Settings in your Program Settings. Selecting Custom enables you to type a custom text in the Mark field. If you do not want to display a mark, select Off.

Include in Quantities. Specifies whether or not the element will be included in quantity reports.

Replace with Assemblies. If disabled, and an element has assemblies defined on the **Quantity** tab, both the element and its assemblies will appear in quantity reports. If enabled, only the element's assemblies will be reported.

Include cut lengths?. (Members and columns only) If enabled, tally lines containing cut lengths will be added to the quantity report, preceding the total linear length calculation of a member or column.

Quantify each Member. (Timber Frames only) If enabled, each member that makes up a timber frame will be quantified separately in the quantity report.

Editing Material Pricing

Most elements have a default unit price set for them in their properties. These prices are used in the project estimate.

You can specify prices for elements in the catalog, or elements in your drawing. If you have already created your design, you can edit the prices of inserted elements by selecting them in the drawing, then editing their properties. Alternatively you can generate and save a project estimate, then edit the pricing in the estimate's associated editor, such as *Excel* or *Notepad* (depending on the report template used).

Note: You can specify pricing for material finishes (brick, paint, wallpaper, etc.) that are applied to elements by adding an assembly to the material. See Editing Material Properties.

To edit the price of an inserted element:

- Select the element in your drawing. You can select multiple elements of the same type using Shift+click.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the properties dialog, select the Quantity tab.
- Edit the value in the **Price** edit box. Note that prices are unit prices. For a carpet, for example, you would enter the price per square foot, not the price of the entire carpet.
- 5. Click **OK** in the properties dialog.

If you edit the price of any element in the catalog, the price change will affect all new insertions of the element.

To edit material pricing in the catalog:

- Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or right-click an element in the catalog and select Element Manager.
- 2. Select the element that you want to edit.
- 3. In the properties pane, select the Quantity tab.
- Edit the value in the **Price** edit box. Note that prices are unit prices. For a carpet, for example, you would enter the price per square foot, not the price of the entire carpet.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Exporting the Quantitative Properties of all Catalog Elements to a Text File

You can use the Export TXT File tool in the Element Manager to export the description and key quantitative properties of all catalog elements to a tabseparated text file. Each entry in the file includes the element Name, Part Number, Category, Phase, Usage, and Unit of Measure. Sample entries are shown below.

	📃 catalog.txt - Notepad	
	File Edit Format View Help	
	2 x 4 Clay Brick	24C1a
I	2 x 4 Concrete Brick	24Con
I	2 x 6 Clay Brick	26C1a
I	2 x 6 Concrete Brick	26Con
I	2 x 4 Castle Stone	24Cas
l	A vit to vot 21 to the to the to the total to the total tota	$ne^{}$
ĺ	🔲 catalog.txt - Notepad	
I	File Edit Format View Help	
I	2 x 4 Clay Brick 24ClayBri	ck
I	2 x 4 Concrete Brick 24ConcBri	ck
I	2 x 6 Clay Brick 26ClayBri	ck
I	2 X 6 Concrete Brick 26ConcBri	CK

2 x 4 Castle Stone 24CastStone To export the quantitative properties of elements to a text file:

- 1. Make sure that the catalog that you want to export is the current catalog.
- Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Element Manager. You can also rightclick an element in the catalog panel and select Element Manager.
- 3. In the Element Manager dialog, select File > Export TXT File.
- 4. In the **Save As** dialog box, type a name for the file in the **File name** edit box (without extension).
- Select the desired save location, then click Save.

Assemblies

Assemblies are items or parts that are linked to an element, but do not exist in the drawing. For example, a door may have a Lock Set assembly attached to it which includes a door lock and a set of hinges. A wall may have a Drywall assembly that includes drywall sheets, drywall screws, and paint. If an element has assemblies attached to it on its Quantity property page, the parts in that assembly will be reported in the estimate. If no assemblies are selected for an element or you would like to add more to the element, you can attach assemblies to the element very easily. You can also choose to replace an element with its assemblies in quantity reports, or remove assemblies from an element so that they are not reported.

Assemblies are stored in an assemblies library that you can customize to suit your needs.

Accessing Assemblies

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Assemblies are parts that are linked to an element, but do not exist in the drawing. For example, a door may have a Lock Set assembly attached to it which includes a door lock and a set of hinges. A wall may have a Drywall assembly that includes drywall sheets, drywall screws, and paint. By default assemblies are included in estimates and quotes.

You can specify assemblies in the catalog before inserting an element, or edit the properties of an element that has already been inserted.

To access assemblies for an inserted element:

- 1. Select the element in your drawing.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the property dialog, select the **Quantity** tab.

To access assemblies for an element in the catalog:

- 1. Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager.
- 2. In the **Element Manager**, select the element that you want to edit.
- 3. In the properties pane, select the **Quantity** tab.

Once you have accessed an element's Quantity page, you can attach assemblies to it in the *Assemblies* area.

Attaching Assemblies to Elements

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Assemblies are parts that are linked to an element, but do not exist in the drawing. For example, a door may have a Lock Set assembly attached to it which includes a door lock and a set of hinges. A wall may have a Drywall assembly that includes drywall sheets, drywall screws, and paint. If an element in your project has an assembly assigned to it in its properties, the materials in that assembly will be included in the quantity report. You can attach one or more assemblies to an element.

To attach assemblies to an element:

 To attach assemblies to an inserted element, select the element, and then right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties. You can select multiple elements of the same type using Shift+click, or the Select All Similar tool.

To attach assemblies to an element in the catalog, select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**. In the **Element Manager**, select the element in the left pane.

- 2. In the property dialog, select the **Quantity** tab.
- 3. Click 🍓 Add... 🍓 Add... in the Assemblies area.
- 4. In the **Assembly** dialog, select the assembly that you want to attach to the element, then click **OK**. The contents of the assembly are displayed in the *Assemblies* pane on the Quantity page.

- Assemblies _ 🏤 A	dd 🜰 Edit
Description	Calculated Quantity
Brick Construction	
Common Modular Brick	Exterior Wall Area *
Mortar	(Exterior Wall Area ⁴
Mortar Sand	(Exterior Wall Area ⁴
Wall Ties	(Exterior Wall Area *
OSB Sheathing w/ House W	/rap
House Wrap 9' x 100' Roll	(Exterior Wall Area -
Sheathing Tape	(Exterior Wall Area +
7/16" 4x8 OSB Sheathing	(Exterior Wall Area -
Pneumatic Sheathing Stick Nails	(Exterior Wall Area -
Staples	(Exterior Wall Area -
1/2" Drywall	
1/2" 4' x 8' Drywall	(Interior Wall Area +
Joint Tape 500'	(((Interior Wall Area
loint Compound	Interior Wall Area /



To edit an assembly that is attached to the element,

select the assembly and click 😘 Edit...

Content Edit..... You can then define the assembly in the **Assembly** library.

Tip: You can customize the **Assembly** library by adding or editing assemblies if needed.

Removing an Assembly from an Element

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can remove assemblies from an element using the Remove tool on the element's Quantity property page.

To remove an assembly from an element:

- Access the element's Quantity property page. How to
- 2. In the *Assemblies* area, select the assembly that you want to remove.
- 3. Click 🏠 Remove... 🍖 Remove....
- 4. Click **OK**.

Replacing an Element with its Assemblies in Quantity Reports

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, if an element has assemblies defined on its Quantity property page, both the element and its assemblies will appear in quantity reports. You can choose to report only an element's assemblies if you want.

To replace an element with its assemblies in the quantity report:

- 1. Access the element's Quantity property page. How to
- 2. In the *Quantity* panel, enable the **Replace element with assemblies** check box. If this check box is disabled, the element will appear in the quantity report along with all of its assembly items.
- 3. Click **OK**.

Quantity Report

You can use the Project Estimate tool to instantly view a quantity report for your project. A quantity report, or bill of materials, lists all of the materials used to build your house, as well as the quantity, unit price and total cost of each material. The quantity report also lists assemblies, which are part of an element's properties. For example, a wall may have assemblies such as studs, drywall, insulation, vapor barrier, and drywall screws. You can specify assemblies for elements by editing their properties. Everything is precisely accounted for, as quantity information is extracted directly from your 3D model. If your model changes, so does your estimate.

Material prices are set on an element's Quantity property page. Most elements have an average price assigned to them. You can edit material pricing to reflect prices in your area. You can also define other quantitative properties on an element's Quantity property page, such as the unit of measure that you would like to use to quantify the element.

While viewing a quantity report you can choose to omit selected locations from the report, or filter elements from it.

You can print and save a quantity report. The content and format of the report are determined by the report template that you select while viewing the quantity report. Some templates produce files that are compatible with various estimating programs so you can take your estimating to another level.

Viewing a Quantity Report

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The quantity report, or bill of materials, lists all of the materials used to build your house, as well as the quantity, unit price and total cost of each material. The quantity report also lists assemblies, which are part of an element's properties. For example, a wall may have assemblies such as studs, drywall, insulation, vapor barrier, and drywall screws.

The quantity report is displayed on the Quantity Report page of the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog.

To view a quantity report:

To view a quantity report for the full project, select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project
 Estimate, or click on the Analyze toolbar.

To view a quantity report for specific elements only, select the elements in your drawing, then right-click and select **Generate Estimate**.

2. Make sure the Quantity Report tab is

selected.

le Templates				
Standard Report Form				
Quantity Report Cut List				
Project Estimat	e			
Division	Description	Quantity	Unit	
03110	Poured Concrete	848 148	CF	
03200	Footing Concrete	229	CF	
03210	Reinforcing Bars	636 11	LF	
06450	Treated Sil Plate	155.333	LF	
07050	Bituminous Coating (Damproofing)	1294.44	SF	
07050	1" Rigid Insulation	1294.44	SF	
99999	Foundation Wall Length	155.333	LF	
99999	Footing Length	152.667	LF	
Ground Floor				
Division	Description	Quantity	Unit	
06110	5/8" 4' x 8' OSB Sheathing	54.542	EA	
06110	10' Drip Edge	16.0167	EA	
06110	Ice and Water Shield	9.70707	ROLL	
06110	.10" Oradas Orda	1.57030	DND	
06110	Asphalt Shingles	52.8892	BNDL	
06110	Hip and Ridge Cap	0.433333	BNDL	
06110	Ridge Vent 20' Roll	0.65	ROLL	
06110	16' Fascia Board	10.0104	EA	
•				•

Selecting a Report Template

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the quantity report uses the *Standard Report Form* template, which generates a TXT file. You can select a different report template to use if you want. Below is a list of the available templates.

- Standard Report Form
- Microsoft[®] Excel XLS
- BuilderTREND Link
- CG Visions BIM Pipeline
- Constellation Buildsoft
- Constellation FAST
- Constellation HomeDev
- Constellation NEWSTAR
- Estimator (CSV)
- PrioSoft File Format (CSV)
- ProEst Quantity Template (TXT)
- Quote Generator
- CSG TakeOff Plus (TXT)
- UDA Construction Office™ (XLS)

If you created a custom template in an older version of the program, or would like to use a template that you have copied to your system but don't see in the list, you can open it using the Open Template tool.

To select a report template:

1. In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select the template you want to use from the template drop box.



To open a report template that is not in the list:

1. In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, click



- In the Open dialog, locate the template that you want to open. If the template was created in the current version of the program, it will have an *.RXML extension. If the template was created in an older version of the program, click the drop box next to the File Name edit box and select Report Template (pre-version 8.0), then locate the template. It will have an *.RPT extension.
- 3. Click Open.
- 4. In the **Report Template** dialog, click **Save**. The template is added to the list, and your estimate is displayed using that template.

Filtering Locations from an Estimate

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

In a project estimate, materials are grouped by location, and there is a terrain category for
landscaping materials. You can omit a location from your quantity report and/or cut list if you want.

To filter locations from the estimate:

- In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, make sure the correct tab is selected (Quantity Report or Cut List). The location filter applies to the current tab only.
- 2. Click \mathbf{v} beside the report form drop box.
- 3. To omit a location and its elements from the report, click the location's filter icon. You can omit landscaping elements from the report by filtering the terrain out.
- 4. Click **OK**. The estimate is updated.

Ignoring Assemblies Attached to Materials

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If an element has a material applied to it on its Appearance property page, that material may have an assembly attached to it. By default, the information contained in those assemblies is included in the quantity report so that material pricing is included in the overall project cost.

To ignore the information in assemblies that are

attached to materials, click **EVALUATE** in the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog box. The estimate will regenerate itself.

If you have chosen to ignore material assemblies, you

can choose to include them again by clicking

Printing a Quantity Report

FO

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can print the quantity report directly from the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog. Alternatively you can open the quantity report in its associated editor and print it there.

To print the quantity report:

- 1. If you are in the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the Quantity Report tab.
- Select File > Print, or click is to the left of the report form drop box.

3. In the **Print** dialog, select the printer you want to use, then click **Print**.

Tip: You can also print a saved report by opening it in its associated editor, and printing it from there.

Saving a Quantity Report

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The **Generate Project Estimate** dialog acts like a viewer for your quantity report. If you want to save the quantity report to a file, you need to use the Save and Close tool. By default, quantity reports are saved in the same directory where the project is saved. The file extension depends on the currently selected report template.

To save the current quantity report:

- In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select File > Save and Close, or click the Save and Close button at the bottom of the dialog.
- 2. In the **Save As** dialog, select the folder where you want to save the file, then type a name for the report in the **File Name** edit box.
- 3. Click Save.

Opening a Quantity Report in its Associated Editor

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can choose to open your quantity report in its associated editor. For example, if the report is using the Standard Report Form template, which generates a TXT file, the report will open in *Notepad*. You can do this directly from the Generate Project Estimate dialog, or by using the View Project Estimate tool.

To open a quantity report from the Generate Project Estimate dialog:

 In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select File > Open with Associated Editor.

To view a saved quantity report:

- Select Tools > Analyze > View Project Estimate, or click Q on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Project Estimate** dialog, click , then locate the file to open.
- 3. Click **Open**. The report opens in its associated editor.

Tip: If you have already saved your quantity report, an alternative way of opening the quantity report is to double-click the file in *Windows Explorer*, or to open the associated editor and use that program's Open function.

Closing the Generate Project Estimate Dialog

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you are finished viewing the current project estimate, you can close the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog without saving the estimate.

To close the Generate Project Estimate dialog:

 Select File > Exit, or click x in the top right corner of the dialog.

Note: This does not save the estimate. If you want to save before closing, click the **Save and Close** button in the dialog.

Excluding Elements from a Quantity Report

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can prevent an element from appearing in the quantity report by changing a setting on the element's Quantity property page.

To prevent an element from appearing in a quantity report:

- 1. Select the element in your drawing.
- 2. Right-click and select **Properties**.
- 3. In the properties dialog, select the Quantity tab.
- 4. Disable the **Include Element in Quantities** check box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Note: You can also apply this change to elements in the catalog. The change will affect all new insertions of the element.

Note: As an alternative, you can filter selected elements from your quantity report by editing the report template.

Cut List

You can use the Project Estimate tool to view a detailed cut list for your project. The cut list reports all the timber and steel members in your drawing, such as studs, rafters and joists, and calculates the number of members you need to buy from your supplier using realistic lengths of your choice. **Note**: Currently the cut list does not report deck boards — only beams and joists. Deck boards are, however, included in the quantity report.

All members have a Purchased Items property page with some default purchased lengths defined. Purchased lengths are the lengths of lumber you would actually buy at the lumber yard. If you want to use purchased lengths in your cut list, you must specify the purchased lengths that you want to use in a member's properties. If a member has no defined purchased lengths, it will be reported in terms of total linear length.

You can optimize the cut list so that it calculates the best combination from the stock lengths available and therefore minimize waste. You can set a number of different rules that determine how members are cut, as well as options such as the saw cut allowance and maximum scrap length. You can also define how you want the items in your cut list to be sorted and displayed.

You can view the cut list in the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, and print it if you like.

Viewing a Cut List

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The cut list is displayed on the Cut List page of the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog. The cut list reports all the timber and steel members in your drawing. It calculates the number of members you need to buy from your supplier using the purchased lengths specified in each member's properties.

To view a cut list:

 To view a cut list for the full project, select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project Estimate, or click is on the Analyze toolbar. To view a cut list for specific elements only, select the elements in your drawing, then right-click and select **Generate Estimate**.

2. In the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the Cut List tab.

	erate Proi	ect Estimate					0
ie		and showing of					-
	tandad D	anat Exm	• • • • • • •				
- (*		Chan a chan					
Quanti	ly Report	Curtier					
	Court	Description			Length	Unane	
Law	dian - Co	and Bear					
-	193	24493.5/8 Pur			7.85.9	9.4	
ä	63	2ndell			20	Canala Str.	
ň.	11	24410			10-0	Pate	~
ă	6	2+4+12			12.0	Header	
Ť.	5	2n4x14			14-01	Pate	
	21	2x4x16			16-01	Plate	
	7	2/6/8			8.0	Header	
•	2	2x6x10			10-01	Header	
•	19	246			8.0	Rater	
÷	9	2x8x10			10-01	Rater	
÷	28	2(8)(12			12-01	Rater	
÷	46	2x8x14			14-01	Joist	
±	71	2x8x16			16-01	Joist	
±	10	2(0:18			18-01	Rater	
±	38	2:8:20			20-0	Joig	
Lee	ation : Gn	ound Floor - Skipp	ed herrs				
	2	3/8"x 3-7/8" M	OF Baseboard (#ipped)		11.5 1/8	Tren	
	1	3/8" x 3-7/8" M	OF Baseboard (skipped)		11-75/16	Trim	
	2	3/8"x37/8"M	OF Baseboard (skipped)		14'-8 1/8'	Tren	
	1	3/8" x 3-7/8" M	OF Baseboard (skipped)		14-10/9/16	Trim	
4	-	5.80.0 5.00114	March Look March M		10.71.00	****	
_							
2							
					Save and Close		Ext
					Save and Close		Ent
Gene	erate Proj	ect Estimate			Save and Dose		
Gene le T	erate Proj emplates	ect Estimate			Save and Oose		
Gene le T	erate Proj emplates andard Re	ect Estimate			Save and Dose		
Gene e T	erate Proj 'emplates :andard Re	ect Estimate	· F • F ×	7	Save and Dose		
Gene e T St	erate Proj 'emplates :andard Re ty Report	ect Estimate port Form Cut List	- HOEY		Save and Ose		
Gene e T St	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description	• 6 9 6 6		Seve and Osse	Isage	
Gene le T St Quanti Loca	erate Proj 'emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description pund Floor	• 6 9 6 2		Save and Osse	Ilsage	
Gene e T St Quanti Loca	erate Proj Templates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description und Floor 2 x 6 x 8'	- FOL E R		Seve and Dose) ength 8:0"	Isage	C+4
Gene le T St Quanti Loca	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description pund Floor 2 x 6 x 8' 2 x 6 x 10'	• F I C F		J ength 8:0" 10:0"	Ilsaor	C+4
Gene le T St Quanti Loca	erate Proj 'emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135 34	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description 2x 6x 8' 2x 6x 10' 2x 6x 12'	- HOY Y		Save and Osce J ength 8:0" 10:0" 12:0"	Ilsace	
Gene le T St Quanti Loca	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135 34 15	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description pund Floor 2x 6x 8 2x 6x 10 2x 6x 12 2x 6x 14			Save and Dave J ength 8:0" 10:0" 10:0" 12:0" 14:0"	Lisane	
Gene le T St St Loca	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135 34 15 8	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description Dund Floor 2 x 6 x 8' 2 x 6 x 10' 2 x 6 x 12' 2 x 6 x 14' 2 x 6 x 15'	• C O C E		Jength 8-0° 10-0° 12-0° 14-0° 16-0°	Lisane	
Gene le T St Quanti Loca	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135 34 15 8 49 9 27	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description bund Floor 2x 6x 10° 2x 6x 10° 2x 6x 14° 2x 6x 14° 2x 6x 16° 2x 6x 8°	• FO C F		Save and Dave Jength 8:-0" 12:-0" 14:-0" 14:-0" 8:-0" 8:-0"	Lisape	
Gene le T St Quanti Loca	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135 34 15 8 49 87 87	ect Estimate port Form CutList Description sund Floor 2x 6x 8' 2x 6x 10' 2x 6x 12'			Save and Dave I ength 8-0" 12-0" 12-0" 12-0" 14-0" 16-0" 10-0"	Ilsape	
Gene le T St Quanti Loca	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135 34 15 8 49 87 57 57 27	ect Estimate port Form Cut Lint Description 2x 6x 8' 2x 6x 10' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 14' 2x 6x 16' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 12	• C O C E		Save and Dave J ength 8:0" 10:0" 12:0" 14:0" 16:0" 8:0" 10:0" 10:0" 10:0" 10:0"	Ikaqe	
Gene le T St Locz + + + + + + + +	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135 34 135 34 15 8 49 87 57 27 27 27	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description bund Floor 2x 6x 8' 2x 6x 10' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 16' 2x 6x 10' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 14'	• FO C F		Save and Dave Jength 8:0" 10:0" 12:0" 14:0" 16:0" 10:0" 10:0" 10:0" 10:0" 10:0" 10:0" 10:0"	Lisaoe	
Gene le T St Uuanti Loca + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +	erate Proj remplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135 34 15 8 49 87 57 27 16 9	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description und Floor 2x 6x 8' 2x 6x 10' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 12			Save and Dave I ength 8:0" 12:0" 12:0" 14:0" 10:0" 12:0" 10:0"	Lisape	
Gene e T St Juanti Loca t t t t t t t t t t	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135 34 15 8 49 87 57 27 16 8 31	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description 2x 6x 8' 2x 6x 10' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 14' 2x 6x 16' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 14' 2x 6x 16' 2x	• 6 9 6 2		Save and Dave J enotb 8:0° 10:0° 12:0° 14:0° 16:0° 12:0° 14:0° 10:0° 12:0° 14:0° 12:0°	Ikaqe	
Gene le T St Locz	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135 34 135 34 15 8 49 87 57 57 16 8 31 27 16 8 31 27 16 8 31 27	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description bund Floor 2 × 6 × 10° 2 × 6 × 10			Save and Dave Jength 8-0° 10-0° 12-0° 14-0° 16-0° 12-0° 14-0° 16-0° 16-0° 16-0° 16-0° 16-0° 16-0° 16-0° 16-0° 16-0° 16-0° 10-0° 12-0°	Itsae	
Gene le T St Locz	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count ation : Gro 36 135 34 15 8 49 87 57 27 16 8 31 12 8 31 28 31	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description 2x 5x 8' 2x 6x 10' 2x 5x 12' 2x 5x 12' 2x 5x 14' 2x 5x 12' 2x 5x 14' 2x 5x 12' 2x 5x 14' 2x 5x 12' 2x 5x 12			Save and Dave I ength 8-0" 12-0"	Ilsape	
Gene le T St Loca	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count tition : Groco 36 135 34 15 8 49 34 15 8 7 7 16 8 8 7 27 16 8 31 12 8 7 7	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description 2x 6x 8' 2x 6x 10' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 14' 2x 6x 15' 2x 6x 14' 2x 6x 14			Save and Dave J enotab 8:-0" 10:-0" 12:-0" 14:-0" 12:-0" 10:-0"	Ikaqe	
Gene le T St Quanti Loca + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report to ty Report to t	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description bund Floor 2×6×8' 2×6×10' 2×6×12' 2×6×16' 2×6×16' 2×6×16' 2×6×16' 2×6×16' 2×6×16' 2×6×112' 2×10×112'' 2×10×112'' 2×6×112'' 2×10×112'''			Save and Dave Jength 8-0° 10-0° 12-0° 14-0° 15-0° 12-0° 14-0° 16-0° 16-0° 16-0° 16-0° 16-0° 12-0° 14-0° 16-0° 12-0° 14-0° 16-0°	Lisaor	
Gene le T St Uuanti Uuanti Uuanti Uuanti Uuanti Uuanti Uuanti Uuanti Uuanti Uuanti Uuanti Uuanti Uuanti	erate Proj emplates andard Re ty Report Count To 36 135 34 49 31 15 8 7 57 27 16 8 7 7 8 31 12 8 7 7 3 3 53	ect Estimate port Form Cut List Description 2x 6x 8' 2x 6x 10' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 8' 2x 6x 12' 2x 6x 8' 2x 6x			Save and Dave J ength 8-0° 12-0° 10-0° 12-0° 12-0° 10-0° 12-0° 10-0°	Ilsape	

 By default, purchased items are grouped by building location and usage. You can set different grouping options in your Optimization Settings. For example, you can group by Usage if you want. The cut list is color-coded to make it easy to read and understand. Purchased items are the main entries and are highlighted in blue. You can expand each purchased member entry to see

8

0

2 x 6 x 12

2 x 6 x 14'

2 x 6 x 16

exactly how the number of members was calculated (i.e. how the members in your 3D model were cut down into purchased lengths). To expand an entry, click the plus

sign **H** to the left of the entry. The breakdown list is highlighted in an alternating gray and white pattern.

Expand or			
collapse an entry		~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	
to view more or		1	2x10x26
less detail		46	2x10x10
		2	2x10x Floor Joist
		14	2x10x Floor Joist
		6	2x10x Floor Joist
		13	2x10x Floor Joist
		9	2x10x Floor Joist
		3	2x10x Floor Joist
	- -	24	2x10x16
		75	2x4x8
		~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	Ch. ACL
Expand or		1	2x10x26
	18	46	2x10x10
collapse an		2	2x10x Floor Joist
entry to view		14	2x10x Floor Joist
onary to now		6	2x10x Floor Joist
more or less		13	2x10x Floor Joist
detail		9	2x10x Floor Joist
dotaii		3	2x10x Floor Joist
	+	24	2x10x16
		75	3.4.0

**Note**: Currently the cut list does not report deck boards — only beams and joists. Deck boards are, however, included in the quantity report.

**Note**: To optimize the cut list and define settings that determine how the content is sorted and displayed, you need to edit the report template that you are using to display the estimate. See *Optimizing a Cut List* on page 454.

#### **Printing a Cut List**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can print a cut list directly from the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog.

#### To print a cut list:

1. In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select the Cut List tab.

12'-0'

14'-0"

16'-0'

Exit

Save and Close

- Select File > Print, or click is to the left of the report form drop box.
- 3. In the **Print** dialog, select the printer you want to use, then click **Print**.

## Specifying How Members and Columns are Reported in the Quantity Report

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Members and columns can be reported in terms of **total linear length**, or in **purchased lengths** in the quantity report. Purchased lengths are the lengths of lumber you would actually buy at the lumber yard. This option is set in the report template that you select for your estimate.

## To specify how you want members and columns to be reported:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project Estimate, or click on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the template you want to use for the quantity report.
- 3. Select **Templates > Edit**, or click **for** on the toolbar.
- 4. In the **Report Template** dialog, select the **Cut List Optimization** tab.
- If you want to report the item in terms of total linear length, enable the Calculate Total Linear Length Only check box.
- If you want to report the item in purchased lengths, disable the Calculate Total Linear Length Only check box. You will then need to define purchased lengths for members/columns in your project.

**Tip**: You can optimize the way members are cut to reduce waste as much as possible. See Optimizing a Cut List on page 454. If you want to include cut lengths for a member/column type in your Quantity Report, enable the *Include Cut Lengths* option in the item's properties. See *Editing the Quantitative Properties of Elements* on page 440.

## Specifying Purchased Lengths for Members and Columns

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Members and columns can be reported in terms of **total linear length**, or in **purchased lengths** in the quantity report. Purchased lengths are the lengths of lumber you would actually buy at the lumber yard.

If you want to use purchased lengths in your quantity report, you must specify that you want to use purchased lengths in your report template (see Specifying How Members and Columns are Reported in the Quantity Report on page 451), and define purchased lengths on a member or column's **Purchased Items** property page. Otherwise, members and columns are reported in terms of total

linear length. For example, if you have 1000 feet worth of 2" x 6" floor joists in your model, the cut list will report 1000 feet of 2" x 6" floor joists if you don't have purchased lengths specified for 2" x 6" floor joists in your model. If, however, you specify an 8', 10' and 12' purchased length for the floor joist members, the cut list will report a certain number of 8' floor joists, a certain number of 10' floor joists, etc. whatever is needed to account for that 1000 feet of floor joist material.

The **Purchased Items** property page also has a direct relationship with the Cut Down Long Members option on a report template's Cut List Optimization page. If this option is enabled, members that exceed the longest purchased length will be reported using a combination of cut lengths specified on a member's **Purchased Items** property page.

For example, you might have 40' of top plate on one wall, but you likely wouldn't buy a 40' member. It would be more realistic to buy several smaller lengths to make up that 40' of top plate.

## To specify purchased lengths for a member or column:

 To specify purchased lengths for wall, floor, ceiling or surface members in your drawing, select the element in your drawing, then right-click and select **Properties**. For walls, click the **Framing member** button in the properties dialog. For floors, ceilings, roofs and surfaces, click the **Specify Framing** button in the properties dialog. In the framing dialog, select the member to edit, then click **Select**. In the **Catalog Access** dialog, right-click the member to edit and select **Edit Element**.

To specify cut lengths for a member or column in the catalog, double-click the element in the catalog panel, or select it in the catalog panel and then right-click and select **Edit Element**. You can also open the Element Manager, then select the member or column that you want to edit.

To specify cut lengths for members in an existing deck, click on the edge of the deck to select it, then right-click and select

**Properties**. In the **Decks** dialog, select the Frame tab. Then, click the **Select** button in the *Joists* or *Beams* area. Note that it is not currently possible to specify cut lengths for deck boards (planking). In the **Catalog Access** dialog, right-click the member to edit and select **Edit Element**.

 In the properties dialog, select the **Purchased Items** tab. All cut lengths currently defined for the item are displayed.

牙 Members			
Name: 2x4x Plate	1		
Basic Purchased	Items Details Ap	pearance Qua	ntity
Add. Fr	dit. Delete	2x4x8	
2x4x8 2x4x10 2x4x12		Length: Price: Part No:	8'-0" \$0.00 248F EA
2x4x14 2x4x16 2x4x18 2x4x20		Units:	EA
	Clear All	Used for any (	søje.
			OK
Members			8 2
Basic Purchased Items Details App Add Edt Delete 2x4x8 2x4x10 2x4x14 2x4x16 2x4x18 2x4x20 Clear All	Length: 8'-0" Price: 90.00 Part No: 249F Units: EA		
	ОК	Cancel	

- 3. To delete a purchased length from the list, select it and then click **Delete**. To delete all purchased lengths from the list, click **Clear All**.
- To add a purchased length to the list, click
   Add. To edit an existing purchased length, select it in the list, then click Edit.

5. Define the properties of the purchased length in the **Define Purchased Member** dialog.

Define Purch	ased Item
Name:	2x6 SPF
- Purchased	Member Use:
Length:	7'-8 5/8''
- Ilee this I	ength for:
Osecuse	engerior.
	usages
💿 On	y these usages:
💿 Any	y usage except these:
⊂ Quantitv: –	
Price	¢0.00
Flice.	\$0.00
Part No.	26925
Units:	EA
Define Purchased Item	
Purchased Member User Length: 7:8 5/8" Add Use	ge Delete Usage
Use this Length for: Stud All usages Only these usages:	
Any usage except these:	
Quantity: Price: \$0.00	
Part No. 26929 Unite: EA	
ĺ	0K Cancel
Specify a name for	the purchased length as

 Specify a name for the purchased length as you would like it to appear in your estimate. If you want to name it automatically using a pre-defined naming convention, click the **Autoname** button. (See *Using Automatic Name Generation* on page 607.)

- Enter the desired length for the item in the Length edit box.
- 8. In the *Purchased Member Use* area, specify which usages the purchased length can be used for. (Usages can be used as sort keys in estimates and quotes.)

If the purchased length can be used for any usage, enable the **All usages** radio button.

If you want the purchased length to be used for certain usages only, enable the **Only these usages** radio button, then Click

Add Usage... to select the desired usages from the Usages library. When you select a usage in the library, it is added to the usage list in the Define Purchased Items dialog.

If the purchased length can be used for most usages with some exceptions, enable the **Any usage except these** radio button, then click

Add Usage... Add Usage... to

select the usages that you do not want the purchased length to be used for. When you select a usage in the **Usages** library it is added to the usage list.

To delete a usage from the usage list, select it

and then click Delete Usage Delete Usage

9. In the *Quantity* area, specify the *Price*, *Part Number* and *Unit of Measure* for the member. This information may appear in estimates and quotes, and can be used to sort information in reports.

**Tip**: Appending *-TALLY* to a part number marks it as a tally item in Quote Generator.

- Once you have defined the purchased length, click **OK** in the **Define Purchased Items** dialog.
- 11. Once you have defined all desired purchased lengths for the member, click **OK** in the properties dialog.

**Note**: If you want to include cut lengths for a member type in your Quantity Report, enable the *Include Cut Lengths* option in the member's

S

properties. See *Editing the Quantitative Properties of Elements* on page 440.

#### **Optimizing a Cut List**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can optimize your cut list in a variety of ways to calculate the best combination from the stock lengths available and therefore minimize waste. You can set a number of different rules that determine how members are cut, as well as options such as the saw cut allowance and maximum scrap length. You can also define how you want the items in your cut list to be sorted and displayed. Optimization settings are defined in the report template.

#### To optimize a cut list:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project Estimate, or click is on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the template you want to use from the template drop box.
- Select Templates > Edit, or click if on the toolbar.
- 4. In the **Report Template** dialog, select the **Cut List Optimization** tab.



Rules:		Options:	
Calculate total linear length only.		Tolerance:	1/:
Cut down long members.     Cut one piece from each purchased	length	Saw out allowance	1
Group similar length items.	lengen	Saw cut allowance:	1
		Maximum scrap length:	1'-
		Group by Location	
This rule applies to all items     This rule only applies to items with the     Rim Joist     Eoffit & Pasca	Add	Group by Usage Show Skipped Items	
(e) This rule applies to all items This rule only applies to items with the Rim Joist Bottle & Fascha	Add	Group by Usage Show Skipped Items Show Scrapped Items	

5. To set rules that determine how members should be cut or reported, enable or disable the appropriate check boxes in the **Rules** pane. Below is a description of each available rule.

**Calculate total linear length only**. Reports members in the quantity report in terms of total linear length. If disabled, purchased lengths are reported in the quantity report.

**Cut down long members**. For members with specific usages whose length exceeds the maximum purchased length defined on the member's *Purchased Items* property page, this lets you cut down the member into shorter pieces. For example, if a member is 20' long in the drawing but the longest purchased length defined in that member's properties is 16', the member may be broken down into a 12' piece and 8' piece if **Cut down long members** is turned on.

To select the usages to which you want this rule to apply, enable and select the rule in the

list, then click Add Add next

to the usage pane to access the **Usages** library. When you select a usage in the library and click **OK**, it is added to the usage pane below the list of rules.

To remove a usage from the usage pane,

select the usage, then click Bemove

Remove .

Note: If Cut down long members is turned off and a member is detected that is longer than the maximum purchased length defined in the member's properties, the member will become a skipped item, which is an item that cannot be cut according to the defined purchased lengths and cutting rules. You can display skipped items in the cut list by enabling the Show Skipped Items check box. Cut one piece from each purchased length. Cuts only one piece from each purchased length provided that the leftover piece is short enough to be scrapped. You can define the Maximum Scrap Length in the dialog's Options pane. If you disable the Cut one piece from each purchased length option,

you are allowing more than one piece to be cut from each purchased length. **Group similar length items**. Cuts items of

similar length from the same purchased length whenever possible. This reflects the way many contractors work on site.

Note that when purchased lengths of members are cut, the quantity optimizer evaluates the leftover piece a second time to ensure optimal lumber usage.

- 6. To specify a tolerance for member lengths, enter the desired value in the **Tolerance** edit box. For example, if you have a member that is 8'-1/32" and your tolerance is set to 0, the member would be bumped up to the next available purchased member length (e.g. 10'). If the tolerance is set to 1/32", however, it would use the 8' purchased member length because the extra 1/32" is less than or equal to the allowable tolerance.
- 7. To account for the scrap resulting from the gauge of the saw's cutting blade, enter the saw blade width in the **Saw Cut Allowance** edit box.
- To specify the maximum length a piece can be to be considered scrap, enter the desired value in the Maximum Scrap Length edit box. When members are cut, any leftover pieces that exceed the Maximum Scrap

Length are not considered scrap and will be used for other usages if possible.

- 9. To group members by building location in the cut list, enable the **Group by Location** check box.
- 10. To group members by usage, enable the **Group by Usage** check box.
- 11. To display items that do not fit within the purchased member definitions and cutting rules, enable the Show Skipped Items check box. For example, if the Cut down long members rule is disabled and there is a member in the drawing that is longer than the maximum purchased length defined in the member's properties, the member will not be displayed in the cut list unless you enable the Show Skipped Items check box. Skipped items are shown in red in the cut list.

## Location : Second Floor - Skipped Items

- 3 2x6x Misc. (skipped)
- 2 2x4x Misc. (skipped)
- 2x4x Misc. (skipped)
- 2 2x8x Rafter (skipped)

Location : Second Floor - Skipped Items

- 3 2x6x Misc. (skipped)
- 2 2x4x Misc. (skipped)
- 1 2x4x Misc. (skipped)
- 2 2x8x Rafter (skipped)
- 12. To display all scrapped items in the cut list, enable the Show Scrapped Items check box. A scrapped item is the piece left over after a member has been cut from a purchased length. Scrapped items are highlighted in alternating fields of green and white at the end of the cut list.

## Location : Second Floor - Scrapped Items

	1	2x6x8
	2	2x6x10
	1	2x6x20
	2	2x6x16
	1	2x6x20
	4	2x6x14
	1	2x6x14
١.,		
Lo	cation : Second Fl	oor - Scrapped Items
	1 2x6x	8
	2 2x6x	10
	1 2x6x	20
	2 2x6x	16
	1 2x6x	20
	4 2x6x	14
	1 2x6x	14
	2.0	

13. Once you have defined your optimization settings, click Save in the Report Template dialog. The cut list updates automatically.

### Disabling or Enabling Cut List Generation

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you are not interested in viewing a cut list, you can disable cut list generation if you want. If you do so, the Cut List page of the Generate Project Estimate dialog will be blank. This option is set in your report template.

To disable or enable cut list generation:

- 1. Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project Estimate.
- 2. In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select the template you would like to use.
- 3. Select **Templates > Edit**, or click **Select** on the toolbar.
- 4. In the Report Template dialog, on the General page, disable the Optimize Cut List check box.
- 5. Click Save.

## **Report Templates**

When you view a project estimate, the style, content and format of the estimate are controlled by a report template. There are several report templates to choose from in the Generate Project Estimate dialog. Many of the templates are designed to be directly compatible with popular estimating programs. If you created a custom report template in an older version of the progr versio

**'4''** 

1"

2"

2"

2"

MISC.

MISC

MISC.

MISC

MISC.

MISC

MISC

1100

	2'
version.	4"
You can edit a report template to suit your needs, or	
copy an existing report template and then edit it to	
create a new one. You can also create a new report	
template from scratch. Each template has a detailed	
set of properties that determine what information is	
reported, and how it is reported. For example, you	
can choose to use purchased member lengths in your	
estimate, change the sort order of materials, edit the	
file type generated, edit headers and footers, edit	

element entries, or add fields to a record. With so many customization options, you can be sure

to get the exact results you want in your project estimate.

## Creating a New Report Template

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The content and appearance of a project estimate are determined by a report template. There are a variety of report templates that you can edit to suit your needs. You can also create new templates if you prefer.

#### To create a new report template:

- 1. Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project **Estimate**, or click **b** on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select **Templates > New**, or click **b** on the toolbar.
- 3. Define your template settings in the **Report** Template dialog.
- 4. Click Save. The current estimate updates automatically in the Generate Project Estimate dialog.

## **Opening a Report Template**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you created a custom template in an older version of the program, or would like to use a template that you have copied to your system but don't see listed in the Generate Project Estimate dialog, you can open it using the Open Template tool.

#### To open a report template that is not in the list:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project
   Estimate, or click on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select Templates > Open, or click the Open



- 3. In the **Open** dialog, locate the template that you want to open. If the template was created in the current version of the program, it will have an *.RXML extension. If the template was created in an older version of the program, click the drop box next to the **File Name** edit box and select **Report Template** (**pre-version 8.0**), then locate the template. It will have an *.RPT extension.
- 4. Click **Open**. The template's properties are displayed in the **Report Template** dialog box.
- 5. In the **Report Template** dialog, click **Save**. The template is added to the list, and your estimate is displayed using that template.

**Note**: When you save a template that was created in an older version of the program, a copy of the template is saved in the current *.RXML format. The original file will remain on your system in its original format.

## **Copying a Report Template**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can create a copy of an existing report template by saving it under a different name. You can then edit the copied template to suit your needs.

#### To create a copy of an existing report template:

Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project
 Estimate, or click is on the Analyze

toolbar.

- In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select the template to copy from the report form drop box, then click for on the toolbar.
- 3. In the Report Template dialog, click



- 4. In the **Save As** dialog, type a name for the new file in the **File Name** edit box. It will be saved in RXML format.
- 5. Click **Save**... Save . The template is added to your list of report templates.

## **Editing a Report Template**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The content and appearance of a project estimate are determined by a report template. You can edit any of the report templates to suit your needs.

#### To edit an existing report template:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project Estimate, or click is on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the template to edit from the report template drop box.
- Select Templates > Edit, or click [™] on the toolbar.
- Edit your template settings in the **Report** Template dialog. See Report Template Properties on page 458.
- Click Save. The current estimate updates automatically in the Generate Project Estimate dialog.

## **Deleting a Report Template**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can delete a report template from your list of templates if you want.

#### To delete a report template:

 Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project Estimate, or click is on the Analyze toolbar.

- 2. In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select the template to delete from the report template drop box.
- 3. Select **Templates > Delete**, or click K on the toolbar.
- 4. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion. The template is deleted. By default the report now uses the previous template in the list.

## Report Template Properties

Report templates have a detailed set of properties that you can customize to suit your needs. When creating or editing a template, you can specify the following:

## General Settings

To access general report template properties, select the General tab in the Report Template dialog.

General settings, such as the template name, report file extension, sort order for information, and element filter. You can also choose to generate a cut list if you want.

**Description**: This is the description of the template as it appears in the list of available templates in the Generate Project Estimate dialog.

Report Extension. Determines the type of file the estimate is written to when you save it. The file type you choose in part determines what application launches when you select the Open with Associated Editor tool in the Generate Project Estimate dialog. You can use Windows Explorer to associate a file extension with a particular application.

Display Currency Symbol. Controls the display of the currency symbol (e.g. dollar sign).

Optimize Cut List: Enable this check box if you want to produce a cut list in addition to the quantity report. You can specify cut list optimization settings on the Cut List Optimization tab.

Use Cut List Results in Report. Applies the cutting rules specified on the Cut List Optimization tab to the members in the quantity report.

#### Sort Options

Quantity information can be sorted by Location, Division, Category, Phase, Usage, Supplier, and Alternate Code. All of these fields (except Location) are specified on an element's Quantity property page. You can specify up to six levels of sorting in your report, and

choose either Ascending or Descending for each level. The order in which sort keys appear in the Sort Options pane determine the order in which information is sorted. For example, if you choose to sort by Location and then by Division, the program will find the first location, list the first division of that location, then list all of the elements in that division. It will then list subsequent divisions and their elements until all divisions have been listed for that location.

Add Level Adds a sort level below the currently selected sort level. Once the level has been added, select the desired sort level from the drop box.

Delete Level Removes the currently selected sort level from the list.

Promote Sort Level. Moves the currently selected sort level up in the list.

Demote Sort Level. Moves the currently selected sort level down in the list.

**Template Element Filter** 

The Template Element Filter determines which elements are included in the project estimate, and which are not.

Element will be included in the estimate.

T Element will be omitted from the estimate.

Note that there is also a location filter in the Generate Project Estimate dialog that filters locations in your report.

## Optimization Settings

These settings apply to the cut list. For more information, see Optimizing a Cut List on page 454. Rules

Calculate Total Linear Length Only. Reports members in terms of total linear length instead of purchased member lengths in the quantity report.

Cut down long members. For members with specific usages whose length exceeds the maximum purchased length defined on the member's Purchased Items property page, this lets you cut down the member into shorter pieces. For example, if a member is 20' long in the drawing but the longest purchased length defined in that member's properties is 16', the

member may be broken down into a 12' piece and 8' piece if **Cut down long members** is turned on.

**Cut one piece from each purchased length**. Cuts only one piece from each purchased length provided that the leftover piece is short enough to be scrapped. You can define the **Maximum Scrap Allowance** in the dialog's **Options** pane. If you disable the **Cut one piece from each purchased length** option, you are allowing more than one piece to be cut from each purchased length.

**Group similar length items**. Cuts items of similar length from the same purchased length whenever possible. This reflects the way many contractors work on site.

**This rule applies to all items**. Applies the currently selected rule to all items, regardless of their usage.

This rule only applies to items with these usages.

Applies the currently selected rule to items with specific usages only (those usages displayed in the box below this setting). To add a usage to the usage

pane, click **Add** Add and then select a usage from the Usage library. To remove a usage from the usage pane, select the usage, then click

Remove Remove

#### Options

**Tolerance**. The allowable tolerance for member lengths. For example, if you have a member that is 8'-1/32" and your tolerance is set to 0, the member would be bumped up to the next available purchased member length (e.g. 10'). If the tolerance is set to 1/32", however, it would use the 8' purchased member length because the extra 1/32" is less than or equal to the allowable tolerance.

**Saw cut allowance**. The width of the saw's cutting blade.

**Maximum scrap length**. The maximum length a piece can be to be considered scrap. When members are cut, any leftover pieces that exceed the Maximum Scrap Length are not considered scrap and will be used for other usages if possible.

#### Report Display

**Group by Location**. Groups items by building location in the cut list. (e.g. Ground Floor, Second Floor, etc.)

**Group by Usage**. Groups items by usage in the cut list. (e.g. Stud, Plate, Floor Joist, etc.)

Show Skipped Items. Displays items that do not fit within the purchased member definitions and cutting rules. For example, if the **Cut down long members** rule is disabled and there is a member in the drawing that is longer than the maximum purchased length defined in the member's properties, the member will not be displayed in the cut list unless you enable the **Show Skipped Items** check box. Skipped items are shown in red in the cut list.

**Show Scrapped Items**. Displays all scrapped items in the cut list. A scrapped item is the piece left over after a member has been cut from a purchased length.

## **Record Settings**

To access record properties, select the **Records** tab in the Report Template dialog.

Record settings, which determine how report headers, footers and element entries appear in the report. Each element type has its own default format with an appropriate listing of fields. You can add, edit and delete fields if you want. If you do this, however, make sure your headers correspond to the information being reported.

#### **Headers and Footers**

Headers are words or strings of text (titles) that appear at the beginning of a document, or that introduce a block of information. For example, the default report header includes the title *Project Estimate* and the name of the drawing file. In addition to the main report header, you can specify up to three levels of subsequent headers. For example, Level 1 headers could include titles like Description, Quantity and Price, which identify specific types of information that follow them.

Footers are words or strings of text that appear at the bottom of reports or blocks of information. You can specify a main report footer as well as additional levels of footers if you want. See Editing Headers and Footers in a Report Template on page 463.

#### Elements

Each element type can be reported differently in your quantity report using a format that you specify. For example, walls are generally reported in terms of length (linear feet), while elements like doors are counted as individual items. Floors and ceilings are reported in terms of area (square feet), in which case a formula is used to determine the quantity value.

Each element type has its own default format with an appropriate listing of fields. You can add, edit and delete fields if you want. If you do this, however, make sure your headers correspond to the information being reported. See Editing Element Entries in a Report Template on page 465.

## Editing the Name of a Report Template

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can edit the name of any report template on the template's General property page. This is the name you see in the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog's report form drop box.

To edit the name of a report template:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project Estimate, or click on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the template to edit from the report template drop box.
- Select Templates > Edit, or click [™] on the toolbar.
- 4. On the General page of the **Report Template** dialog, edit the name in the **Description** edit box.
- 5. Click Save.

## Editing the File Extension of Generated Quantity Reports

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you save a quantity report, it is written to a file whose type is determined by the report template you are using. For example, the file type created when using the Standard Report Form template is a TXT file. You can edit the file type generated by editing the report template.

#### To edit the file extension of generated reports:

Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project
 Estimate, or click is on the Analyze toolbar.

- 2. In the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the template you want to edit from the report template drop box.
- 3. Select **Templates > Edit**, or click **F** on the toolbar.
- On the General page of the Report Template dialog, edit the file extension in the Report Extension edit box.
- 5. Click Save.

The file type you choose in part determines what application launches when you select the Open with Associated Editor tool in the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog.

## Controlling the Display of the Currency Symbol in a Quantity Report

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Prices and costs in the quantity report usually include a currency symbol, such as a dollar sign. You can disable the display of the currency symbol by editing the report template.

#### To control the display of the currency symbol:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project Estimate, or click is on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the template you want to edit from the report template drop box.
- 3. Select **Templates > Edit**, or click **g [ f ]** on the toolbar.
- 4. On the General page of the **Report Template** dialog, check or uncheck the **Display Currency Symbol** check box.
- 5. Click Save.

## Using Optimized Results for Members and Columns in the Quantity Report

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

For those members and columns which are set to be reported in purchased lengths instead of total linear length, you can choose whether or not you want to apply optimization settings to those purchased lengths in your quantity report. Optimization settings are defined in the report template that you apply to your project estimate.

To use optimized results for members and columns in your quantity report:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project Estimate, or click on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the template you want to use for the quantity report.
- 3. Select **Templates > Edit**, or click **f** on the toolbar.
- 4. In the **Report Template** dialog, on the General page, make sure the **Optimize Cut List** check box is enabled, and then enable the **Use Cut List Results in Report** check box.
- 5. Click Save.

## Specifying the Sort Order of Materials in a Quantity Report

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Sorting rules for materials are specified in the report template that is applied to the project estimate. Quantity information can be sorted by Location, Division, Category, Phase, Usage, and Alternate Code in the quantity report. All of these fields (except Location) are specified on an element's Quantity property page. You can specify up to six levels of sorting in your report, and choose either Ascending or Descending for each level. The order in which sort keys appear in the Sort Options pane determine the order in which information is sorted. For example, if you choose to sort by Location and then by Division, the program will find the first location, list the first division of that location, then list all of the elements in that division. It will then list subsequent divisions and their elements until all divisions have been listed for that location.

	LL av all			5
	Level	Delete Level		
Sort by	Loca	ition		
Then by	y Divis	ion		
Sort Option	s:	Delete Level 📄 🚍		
Add Le				
Sort by	Location		•	Ascending
Sort by Then by	Location Division		• •	Ascending
Sort by Then by	Location		•	Ascending Ascending
Sort by Then by	Location		• •	Ascending Ascending
Sort by Then by	Location		•	Ascending Ascending

To specify the sort order of materials in an estimate:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project Estimate, or click is on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the template you want to edit from the report template drop box.
- Select Templates > Edit, or click g
   ^m f
   ^m on the toolbar.
- 4. On the General page of the **Report Template** dialog, specify your sort options in the *Sort Options* area.

The first entry in the list is the primary **Sort Level** for the report. Once materials have been sorted according to the first sort level, they are then sorted according to the next sort level in the list, and so on. You can specify up to 6 sort levels for your report. The order in which sort keys appear in the list is the order in which materials will be sorted. To add a sort level to the report template,





. The sort level is added

below the one that was selected prior to adding a level. Once the sort level is added to the list, click the drop box and select the key that you want to sort by (Location, Division, Phase, etc.).

To remove a sort level from the report template, select the sort level in the list, and



To move a sort level up in the list, select the

sort level in the list and then click



To move a sort level down in the list, select

the sort level in the list and then click  $\blacksquare$ 

5. Click **Save** to save your changes.

## Filtering Elements from the Quantity Report

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can omit specific types of elements from your quantity report by editing the report template. For example, if you wanted to create a window schedule, you would enable the Windows element group and disable all other element groups.

#### To filter elements from a project estimate:

- In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select Templates > Edit, or click is on the toolbar.
- In the **Report Template** dialog, click the filter icon of the element you want to filter. When the filter icon is white, the element will not appear in the estimate.
  - Element will be included in the estimate.

 $\overline{\square}$  Element will be omitted from the estimate.

 Click Save. The quantity report updates automatically in the Generate Project Estimate dialog.

**Note**: You can also prevent an element from appearing in the quantity report by editing the element's properties. See *Excluding Elements from a Quantity Report* on page 449.

## Specifying How Information is Displayed in a Quantity Report

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The settings on a template's Records page determine how report headers, footers and element entries appear in a project estimate. Records are made up of individual fields. You can edit, add, delete or copy fields within a record, giving you complete control over how information is reported.

#### To access the Records page:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project
   Estimate, or click is on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the template you want to use for your estimate.
- Select Templates > Edit, or click _g f if on the toolbar.
- In the Report Template dialog, select the Records tab.

#### To display a record:

1. In the *Record Content* window, expand the item you want to view records for (Report Header, Report Footer or Elements).



2. Select the record that you want to view. The record is displayed in the adjacent Record Field Definition window. Sample record Below is a sample element record that contains six fields:

#### 08210 32" Hinged Door 3.00 Ea. \$40.00 \$120.00

Here are the fields that make up the record:

<b>08210</b> : Division (variable)
32" Hinged Door: Description (variable)
<b>3.00</b> : Count (variable)
Ea.: Unit (constant)
<b>\$40.00</b> : Price (variable)
<b>\$120.00</b> : Cost (formula: Count*Price)
What do you want to do?
Edit a header or footer

Edit a header or footer
Edit an element entry
Add a field
Delete a field

## Editing Headers and Footers in a Report Template

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Headers are words or strings of text (titles) that appear at the beginning of a document, or that introduce a block of information. For example, the default report header includes the title "Project Estimate" and the project name. In addition to the main report header, you can specify up to three levels of subsequent headers. For example, Level 1 headers could include titles like Description, Quantity and Price, which identify specific types of information that follow them.

Footers are words or strings of text that appear at the bottom of reports or blocks of information. You can specify a main report footer as well as additional levels of footers if you want.

#### To edit a header or footer:

- 1. Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project **Estimate**, or click **b** on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select **Templates > Edit**, or click **Select** on the toolbar.
- 3. In the **Report Template** dialog, select the Records tab.
- 4. In the Record Content window, expand the Headers or Footers group.
- 5. Select the record you want to edit (e.g. Main Header).



1	Save	As.



 Click on the field you want to edit. Then, depending on the type of field it is, either type a value (in the case of the *Description* field, for example), or make a selection from a drop box. **Description**. Identifies the field by name.

Value. To specify a value for a header/footer field, click in the Value field and then click  $_$ to access the Specify Value dialog. For headers and footers, this will likely be either a Constant or Variable. For example, if you wanted to specify a title, you would select the Constant option and then type the desired title (e.g. 'Project Estimate' or 'Location') in the edit box. If you wanted to specify a value that changes depending on the project, such as the project name, you would select the Variable option and then select the desired variable from the list (e.g. Project Name). Most header/footer variables are directly linked to fields in the Project Manager dialog.

Variable Project Name Address City Company Name Contact Name Country Current Date Document Name Document Path E-Mail Fax Home Phone Mobile Phone Notes Office Phone Project Name Project Number Project Type State/Province ZIP/Postal Code Variable Project Name Address City Company Name Contact Name Country Current Date Document Name Document Path E-Mail Fax Home Phone Mobile Phone Notes Office Phone Project Name Project Number Project Type State/Province ZIP/Postal Code



**Width**. The maximum width of the field. If the field entry exceeds the field width, the entry will be shortened to fit.

**Delimiter**. An item that separates one field from another. Choose from *Comma*, *Tab*, *New Line* or *None*.

 When you are finished editing fields, click Save. The estimate updates automatically to reflect your changes.

## Editing Element Entries in a Report Template

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Each element type can be reported differently in your project estimate using a format that you specify. For example, walls are generally reported in terms of length (linear feet), while elements like doors are counted as individual items. Floors and ceilings are reported in terms of area (square feet), in which case a formula is used to determine the quantity value.

Each element type has its own default format with an appropriate listing of fields. You can add and delete fields if you want. If you do this, however, make sure your headers correspond to the information being reported.

- Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project
   Estimate, or click is on the Analyze toolbar.
- In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select Templates > Edit, or click is on the toolbar.
- 3. In the **Report Template** dialog, select the **Records** tab.
- 4. In the *Record Content* window, expand the **Elements** group.
- 5. Select the element whose fields you want to edit.



Hecord Content:	_	Hecord Held Definit	ion:		
Headers	^	Description	Value	Width	Delimiter
Main Header Set Level 1 Header		Division	Division	0	-none
Sort Level 1 Heading	=	Description	Description	0	-none
Sort Level 3 Heading		Quantity	Count	0	-none
E Footers		Unit	Unit of Measure	0	-none
Main Footing		Price	Price	0	-none
Sort Level 1 Footing		Cost	Count * Price	0	-none
Sort Level 2 Footing		Usage	Usage	0	-none
Sort Level 3 Footing		Phase	Phase	0	-none
Bements     Default     Appliances     Cabinets     Celinos					
Columns Comer Details				Add	Delete

6. Click on the field that you want to edit. Then, depending on the type of field it is, either type a value (in the case of the Description field, for example), or make a selection from a drop box. Below is a list of field types.

**Description**. Identifies the field by name.

**Value**. Click in the Value field and then click to display the **Specify Value** dialog.



In this dialog you can specify whether the value is a *Constant, Variable* or *Formula*. These are described below.

<u>Constant</u>: A value that remains fixed, such as the word EACH.

<u>Variable</u>: A value that changes, such as a name or numerical value. If the source is a variable, select the desired variant from the drop box. In the case of elements, choose from items such as *Count, Length, Area, Volume, Description, Type, Division, Manufacturer, Supplier, Price, Part Number* and *Alternate Code*.

For certain variables, such as *Length*, *Area* and *Volume*, you can specify the output units for the item, such as *Millimeters*, *Feet-Inches*, *Square Meters* or *Cubic Yards*. For some units you can also select a level of precision for the measurement.

* Note that the *Quantity* variable refers to the calculated quantity of the material as calculated according to the Unit of Measure setting in the object's properties.

*Formula*: Lets you select or specify a formula for calculating a value. For example, to calculate the Cost of doors in your project, you might specify a formula of **Count * Price** in the Value field of the Cost entry (the number of doors multiplied by the unit price of the door). See Specifying Formulas on page 642.

**Width**. The maximum width of the field. If the field entry exceeds the field width, the entry will be shortened to fit.

**Delimiter**. An item that separates one field from another. Choose from Comma, Tab, New Line or None.

**Cost**. Click in the Cost field to include the total cost calculated for the item. A check

mark  $\checkmark$  indicates that the cost will be reported.

To add a field to the element record, position your cursor in the list of fields and then click

8. To delete a field from the record, select the

field and then click Delete

 When you are finished editing fields, click Save. The estimate updates automatically to reflect your changes.

#### **Editing Fields in a Record**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Each entry in your project estimate is based a *record* in the report template. Each record is made up of several fields. Fields that constitute a value can be defined as either a *constant*, *variable* or *formula*.

As an example, the entry for a door may look something like this:

#### 08210 32" Hinged Door 3.00 Ea. \$40.00 \$120.00

This entry is made of up of the following six fields: **08210**: Division (variable)

32" Hinged Door: Description (variable)

3.00: Count (variable)

Ea.: Unit (constant)

**\$40.00**: Price (variable)

\$120.00: Cost (formula: Count*Price)

You can edit the fields for any record in your report template to suit your needs.

#### To edit a field in a record:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project
   Estimate, or click is on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the **Generate Project Estimate** dialog, select the template you want to use for your estimate.
- Select Templates > Edit, or click if on the toolbar.
- 4. In the **Report Template** dialog, select the **Records** tab.
- 5. In the left pane, select the element whose record you want to edit.
- Click on the field that you want to edit. Then, depending on the type of field it is, either type a value (in the case of the Description field, for example), or make a selection from a drop box. Below is a list of field types.

**Description**. Identifies the field by name.

**Value**. Click in the Value field and then click to display the **Specify Value** dialog.



In this dialog you can specify whether the value is a *Constant, Variable* or *Formula*. These are described below.

<u>Constant</u>: A value that remains fixed, such as the word EACH.

<u>Variable</u>: A value that changes, such as a name or numerical value. If the source is a variable, select the desired variant from the drop box. In the case of elements, choose from items such as *Count, Length, Area, Volume, Description, Type, Division, Manufacturer, Supplier, Price, Part Number* and *Alternate Code*.

For certain variables, such as *Length*, *Area* and *Volume*, you can specify the output units for the item, such as *Millimeters*, *Feet-Inches*, *Square Meters* or *Cubic Yards*. For some units you can also select a level of precision for the measurement.

* Note that the *Quantity* variable refers to the calculated quantity of the material as calculated according to the Unit of Measure setting in the object's properties.

*Formula*: Lets you select or specify a formula for calculating a value. For example, to calculate the Cost of doors in your project, you might specify a formula of **Count * Price** in the Value field of the Cost entry (the number of doors multiplied by the unit price of the door). See Specifying Formulas on page 642.

**Width**. The maximum width of the field. If the field entry exceeds the field width, the entry will be shortened to fit.

**Delimiter**. An item that separates one field from another. Choose from Comma, Tab, New Line or None.

**Cost**. Click in the Cost field to include the total cost calculated for the item. A check

mark  $\checkmark$  indicates that the cost will be reported.

7. To add a field to the element record, position your cursor in the list of fields and then click



added above the one that was selected prior to adding a field.

8. To delete a field from the record, select the



the changes to your template.

### **Specifying Formulas**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you are defining an assembly, or adding or editing a value field on the Records page of the Report Template dialog, you can choose to specify a formula for calculating the quantity of that item. Formulas are mathematical equations (e.g. Count x Price) that are used to calculate a value (e.g. Cost). You can create and edit formulas to suit your needs. Once you have created a formula you can test it with sample values to make sure that it is working correctly.

You can save a formula for future use. You can then load a saved formula into the **Define Formula** dialog if you want to edit it or use it to create a new formula. Below is an overview of the **Define Formula** dialog.



Save y

#### To create a formula:

Build your formula by typing directly in the formula window as well as clicking any of the available variables, numbers, operators and functions displayed in the dialog. The available variables vary according to element type. For example, if you are defining fields for a door, variables such as *Count*, *Height* and *Width* will be included in the list. For a wall you are likely to see variables such as *Exterior Wall Area* and *Interior Wall Area*.

As an example, if you are creating a formula to count door hinges, and there are two hinges per door, you might specify a formula of **Count * 2** (the number of doors multiplied by 2), which would count two door hinges for every instance of the door in your drawing. To create this formula, you would do the following:

- 1. Click the **Count** variable in the list of variables.
- 2. Click .
- 3. Click **2** or type **2** after the multiplication symbol.

#### Input Units

If you are using *Length, Area* or *Volume* variables in your formula, you can specify the units in which you want to measure those values by making the desired selections from the **Length, Area** and **Volume** drop boxes in the *Input* area. Initially, all quantities are measured in millimeters regardless of the units of measure used in your project. Making selections from the **Length, Area** and **Volume** drop boxes converts the millimeter values into the units you want. This saves you a lot of time and effort because you do not have to specify conversion factors in your formula the conversion is done for you.

For example, if your formula contains the *Area* variable and you would like the area of the item to be measured in square feet, you would select **Square Feet** from the **Area** drop box.

Input		
Length		
Inches		
Area		
Square Feet		-
Volume		
Cubic Feet		•
Input		
Length		
Inches	•	
Area		
Square Feet	•	
Volume		
Cubic Feet	-	

**Note**: The Length option applies to all distance measurements including Height and Width.

#### Output Units

If you are defining a record in a report template, the **Define Formula** dialog will contain an *Output* area containing unit choices for **Length**, **Area** and **Volume**. These are the units of measure that will be used to display the calculated quantity in the quantity report.

Output -	
Units	

Square Feet

Precision

#.#

Units	
Square Feet	•
Precision	
#,#	•

**Note**: Output units are absent from the dialog if you are specifying a formula for an assembly because assemblies are simply calculated values. Reports on the other hand involve both calculating values and *reporting* calculated values.

#### To test a formula:

- Click Test... Test... at the top of the dialog. The formula appears in the Test Formula dialog.
- In the *Variables* window, click on one of the variables that your formula contains, then type a value for that variable and press Enter. For example, our door hinge formula contains a *Count* variable. If we type **4** for the *Count* and press Enter, the formula will display an answer of **8**, which is correct (4 x 2=8).



3. When you are finished testing the formula, click **Close** to return to the **Define Formula** dialog.

#### To save a formula:

- Click Save... Save... at the top of the dialog.
- In the Save Formula dialog, type a name or description of the formula for easy identification.

Save Formula	
Formula Description:	
Number of Door Hinges	
Count*2	
OK Cancel	
Save Formula	2
Formula Description:	
Number of Door Hinges	
Count*2	
OK Cancel	

3. Click **OK**.

#### To load a saved formula:

- Click Load... Load... at the top of the dialog.
- 2. In the **Load Formula** dialog, select the formula that you would like to load.

Load Formula				
Select a formula to load:				
Put your formula description here	Formula			
Number of Door Hinges	Count*2			
•				
ОК	Cancel			
Load Formula				
Select a formula to load:				
Put your formula description here	Formula			
Number of Door Hinges	Count*2			
ОК	Cancel			

3. Click **OK**.

## Adding Fields to a Record

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When defining a report template, you can add information to a record by adding fields to it.

#### To add a field to a record:

1. Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project **Estimate**, or click **b** on the Analyze toolbar.

- 2. In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select **Templates > Edit**, or click **f** on the toolbar.
- 3. In the **Report Template** dialog, select the Records tab.
- 4. In the Record Content window, expand the Elements group.
- 5. Select the element whose fields you want to edit.
- 6. Position your cursor in the list of fields.
- Add 7. Click Add . A field will be added above the one that was selected prior to adding a field.
- 8. Define the field. See Editing Fields in a Record on page 466.

## Deleting Fields from a Record

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When editing a report template, you can delete one or all fields in a record.

#### To delete a field from a record:

- 1. Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Project **Estimate**, or click **b** on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. In the Generate Project Estimate dialog, select **Templates > Edit**, or click **f** on the toolbar.
- 3. In the **Report Template** dialog, select the Records tab.
- 4. In the Record Content window, expand the Elements group.
- 5. Select the element whose fields you want to edit.
- 6. Select the field that you want to delete, then

Delete Delete . If you want to delete all fields in the record, click



click

. You are promp-

ted to confirm the deletion. Click Yes to delete all fields, or click No to leave the fields intact.

#### Quote

A quote is a list of products with quantities, pricing and other important information. Quotes are used by building material supply retailers, wholesalers, distributors and contractors to facilitate the design, sale and installation of construction projects. You can use the Generate Quote tool to instantly generate a quote that opens in Quote Generator software (included). You can then edit the quote to suit your needs.

**Note**: Quote Generator is only available in *Construction Suite*.

#### **Generate Quote**

A quote is a list of products with quantities, pricing and other important information. Quotes are used by building material supply retailers, wholesalers, distributors and contractors to facilitate the design, sale and installation of construction projects. When you select the Generate Quote tool, a quote is instantly generated and displayed in Quote Generator software (included). In Quote Generator you can manipulate the data to suit your needs, generate a variety of reports, and export the quote to a POS system or accounting program.

**Note**: Quote Generator is only available in *Construction Suite*.

## Generating a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

A quote is a list of products with quantities, pricing and other important information. Quotes are used by building material supply retailers, wholesalers, distributors and contractors to facilitate the design, sale and installation of construction projects. You can use the Generate Quote tool to instantly generate a quote that opens in Quote Generator software (included). You can then edit the quote to suit your needs. For example, you can import SKU numbers, edit pricing, and account for things like labor and markup.

#### To generate a quote:

1. Select Tools > Analyze > Generate Quote, or



on the Analyze toolbar. The

quote is opened in Quote Generator.

2. If there are any products with a \$0.00 Cost value, the following dialog will appear:

## Test for \$0 Cost

## There are Products with a \$0.00 Cost Price The Cost Price for these records has been set to



This is simply a warning that some Cost values will need your attention. The cells are highlighted in red in the quote.

**Note**: If you have already generated a quote in QG and you are generating one again, a dialog will appear that gives you the option of reloading the previously saved quote, or loading a new quote from Envisioneer. Click **Yes** to open a quote from Envisioneer, or click **No** to reload the previously saved quote.

**Note**: Quote Generator is a separate application. To view its online help, select **Help > View Help** in Quote Generator. Information is also included in the main **Envisioneer** help file.

#### **Quote Generator Overview**

Quote Generator (QG) is a powerful software tool that displays a **quote** for your project — a list of products with quantities, pricing and other information. Quote Generator offers a variety of tools to help you customize, print and export the quote as well as generate various types of reports, such as an order summary and pull list. You can add, edit and delete product records, edit the data in individual cells, and import actual SKUs and other product information from a CSV file.

Overview of Quote Generator

Overview of a Quote

## Overview of Quote Generator (QG)

Construction Suite only

Quote Generator (QG) is a powerful software tool that displays a list of products with quantities, pricing and other information. Quotes can be saved and exported. The information in the quote is derived from your Envisioneermodel. Many of the fields, including Phase, Category, Usage and Unit, correspond to information on the Quantity property page associated with elements in Envisioneer.

In QG you can manually add more product records to the quote as well as import product records from other applications. One-time or special order items can be added on the fly and margins/markups and gross profit calculated automatically. You can also edit data to suit your needs. For example, you can manipulate margins and markups.

You can automatically generate a number of different reports in QG, such a Total Pricing quote or internal Pull List. You can print a report or even produce a PDF of it. When your quote is ready you can send it to a POS or accounting system with the click of a button.

#### **Quote Modes**

There are four quote modes in QG. When you first generate a quote, the quote is displayed in **Product Details Mode**, which shows general information such as Category, Phase and Usage. If you switch to **Admin Mode**, price columns and price controls such as Markup and Margin are displayed. Here you can manipulate price-related data that you would otherwise not want the customer to see. There is also a **Project Details Mode** and a **Manufacturing Details Mode**. Regardless of which mode you are in, certain columns and controls are always displayed, such as the SKU and Description columns and Grand Total control.

#### **Menus and Toolbars**

You can select various tools from the File, Tools, Window and Help menus at the top of QG, or by clicking buttons on the toolbar below the menus. Since QG is being used specifically with Envisioneer, the **New** and **DTools Quote Details** tools are not available for use.

The top toolbar contains buttons that correspond to tools on the menus.



The lower toolbar provides access to different quote modes and types of information.





#### **Editing Tools**

If you right-click in the grid, a menu of editing tools appears. These tools allow you to make modifications to the records in the current quote. The menu differs depending on the mode you are in. If you are in **Product Details Mode**, which is the general information mode you are in when you generate the quote, the editing menu looks like this:

Add	Comme	ent	
Add	Stock Ite	em	
Dele	ete Items	(s)	
SUB	SITUTE It	em	
UN-	MAP rec	ord	
Disa	ble Item	(s)	
Ena	ble Item	(s)	
Loc	k Item(s)	)	
un-	Lock Iter	m(s)	
Cha	nge Cate	gory	
Cha	nge CPh	ase	
Cha	nge Usag	je	
0			
Opt	imize Pro	aucts	
Gro	up - Sort		
Veri	fy Record	ls	

Add Comment	
Add Stock Item	
Delete Items(s)	
SUBSITUTE Item	
UN-MAP record	
Disable Item(s)	
Enable Item(s)	
Lock Item(s)	
un-Lock Item(s)	
Change Category	
Change CPhase	
Change Usage	
Optimize Products	
Group - Sort	
Verify Records	

If you are in **Admin Mode** or **Mfg Details Mode**, the edit menu looks like this:

	Add Comment
	Add Stock Item
	Delete Items(s)
	SUBSITUTE Item
	Disable Item(s)
	Enable Item(s)
	Lock Item(s)
	un-Lock Item(s)
	Apply Cost Surcharge
	Change Markup
	Change Margin
	Change Price Level
	Tax Status
	Optimize Products
	Group - Sort
	Verify Records
Add Add Delet SUBS	Comment Stock Item e Items(s) ITVE Item
Disat Enab	ole Item(s) le Item(s)
Lock un-L	Item(s) ock Item(s)
Appl	y Cost Surcharge
Char Char	ige Markup
Char	ige Price Level
Tax S	tatus 🕨
Optin	nize Products
Grou	
Verify	p - Sort y Records

If you are in **Project Details Mode**, the edit menu looks like this:

## Add Comment

Add Stock Item

Delete Items(s)

## SUBSITUTE Item

Disable Item(s)

Enable Item(s)

Lock Item(s)

un-Lock Item(s)

## Optimize Products

Group - Sort

Verify Records

Add Comment
Add Stock Item
Delete Items(s)
SUBSITUTE Item
Disable Item(s)
Enable Item(s)
Lock Item(s)
un-Lock Item(s)
Optimize Products
Group - Sort
Verify Records

#### Status Bar

The Status Bar displays information about the current quote.

ENV_TEMPQGTMPFILE

## GroupBy: DEFAULT, SortBy: DEFAULT

GroupBy: DEFAULT, SortBy: DEFAULT

The left side of the status bar displays messages regarding the status of an operation being run (e.g. validating records, reading in records, etc.). The right side displays the number of the currently selected record and the total number of records in the quote.

## Overview of a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

In Quote Generator (QG), the quote is displayed in a grid, which is like a spreadsheet. The grid consists of

**columns** and **rows**. Each individual rectangle in the grid is called a **cell**.

#### **Grid Symbols**

At the top of the grid, columns are identified by **column names**. Each row in the grid contains a **record**. On the left side of the grid, the arrow in the record selector column indicates which record is current.



The number of the currently selected record and the total number of records is displayed in the bottom right corner of the screen.

You can add, edit and delete records in the grid. When a record is being edited, the arrow changes to a pencil icon in the record selector column.

		248F
		2412F
		2418F
		268F
	Ø	2613F
		2614F
		2616F
	248F	
	2412	F
2418F		F
11	268F	F
	2614	F
	2616	F

#### Selecting Records

When you select a record in the record selector column, the row is highlighted in yellow (if it is active).

	Sku	Description
		Ground Floor
_	INTDOOR	32" Hinged Door
►	ENTDOOR	36" Decorative Entry Door 1 - 2x4 Wall
	GARDOOR	16' X 7' Decorative Fold-Up Door 1
	WOODFL	Hardwood Floor 1
	268F	2x6x8 Doug Fir/L(N) or better - Header
$\sim$	2495	2xdxpDrv/Fir/U/ADarbattre-944

You can select more than one record at a time, making it possible to make the same change to multiple records simultaneously. To select multiple records, hold down the CTRL key on your keyboard and click in the record selector column beside each record that you want to include in your selection set. If you want to select a bunch of records that are grouped together, select the first record in the group, then hold down your SHIFT key and select the last record in the group. All records between the first and last that you clicked on will be selected.

#### **Types of Records**

There are different types of records that can be displayed in the grid. Each has its own distinguishing color scheme. These are outlined below.

**Product records**. These display product information and are used to calculate prices and other data. Rows are displayed in alternate colors of white and light blue. This makes it easier to distinguish product information in each row.

**Comment records**. These serve to provide extra information or to break up the records into groups. Comment records have a dark gray background with white text.

#### Ground Floor

Sample comment record

**Disabled records**. These are product records which are still displayed but are no longer included with the quote. They cannot be edited, do not show in reports, do not get exported and are not included when generating price totals. Disabled records have a light gray background with dark gray text. They also display an **X** in the Sku column for further identification.

2 x 6 x 14" 2 x 6 x 14" 2 x 6 x 14" 10.00 EACH \$1,191.00 06 Sample disabled record Locked records. These are product records that have been locked from editing. Although they cannot be edited, they are still included in price totals and reports and get exported. Locked records display a lock icon in the Sku column for further identification.

\$1,191.00 0

Sample locked record

#### **Product Issues that Need Attention**

Any cell that has a 0 value (e.g. \$0.00 cost or retail) will be highlighted in red to warn you that the value may not be valid. This can occur when a product is added, imported, or modified, or when the value in another cell is modified, causing the value in the highlighted cell to change. When the Cost and Retail Price of a product are the same, they are highlighted in green to draw your attention to them.

#### **Product Database (QG)**

Construction Suite only

Quote Generator ships with an empty database that is ready to be populated with your products. If you use a spreadsheet or accounting package for inventory control, and that program can export your product data to a CSV file, you can import that data into the QG database via the CSV file provided the file has a particular structure. If you want you can also export the records in the QG database to a text file that can be opened in other programs like Microsoft® Office Excel.

Once you have populated the QG database with your products you can substitute stock items for products in the quote via their Sku numbers. This is called *mapping*. When you map a record to an item in the database, the record's cells update automatically with the values set for the item in the database. You can also add new records to your quote that contain stock items.

When records are added from the database the file starts to grow in size. You can create a compacted version of the original database file. When you compact a database, a backup copy of the original file is created and then a new compacted version of the

000

original database file is created. It is recommended that you do this every now and then.

If you have more than one copy of QG you can export your QG database to an XML file that others can then import. This allows you to update product records on other systems without having to send the entire database.

Tip: Envisioneerships with a CSV file that contains all of the elements in the Envisioneercatalog. You can use this file as a starting point for a product database and input your own unique Sku numbers, prices and other data if desired, or simply open it to see how your own CSV files should be structured prior to import into QG. The file, called **EnvisioneerSKUs.csv**, is located in the following folder: C:\Program

Files \ Cadsoft \ Envisioneer \ QuoteGenerator \ Data.

## Preparing a Product Database for Import into Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

Quote Generator ships with an empty database that is ready to be populated with your products. If you use a spreadsheet or accounting package for inventory control, and you can export your products to a CSV or tab-delimited TXT file in that application, you can import that data into the QG database via the CSV or TXT file. This makes it easy to add stock items to a quote by simply typing in the Sku# in the Sku column on an empty row, or by using the Add Stock Item tool. If you import a database you can also map the product records in your quote to items in that database, either by entering the Sku or using the Substitute Item tool.

To be able to import records into QG, your file must have the following fields (columns) in the following order:

#### Sku, Description, Unit, Category, Cost, Retail1, Retail2, Retail3, Retail4, Retail5, MfgSku, MfgID

Here are some basic rules to follow:

- Each field must be separated by a comma.
- The end of each record (line) should contain the CR LF (Carriage Return/Line Feed) characters (the program should automatically do this for you).

- All fields must have a value in them and cannot be left blank. If you do not use a field then it should be populated with a dummy value. For example, string fields should have **NA** and numeric fields should have a **0**.
- String values (text) cannot contain a comma.
- If possible have your program export the header information (column names) in the 1st line. If that is not possible then put garbage data in the 1st line as QG ignores the 1st line when importing records. In other words, do not put a valid product record in the 1st line.

If you follow these few simple guidelines, you should have no problem importing your database into QG.

Tip: Envisioneerships with a CSV file that contains all of the elements in the Envisioneercatalog. You can use this file as a starting point for a product database and input your own unique Sku numbers, prices and other data if desired, or simply open it to see how your own CSV files should be structured prior to import into QG. The file, called EnvisioneerSKUs.csv, is located in the following folder: C:\Program Files \ Cadsoft \ Envisioneer \ QuoteGenerator \ Data.

## Importing Products from a CSV or TXT File (QG)

Construction Suite only

Quote Generator (QG) ships with an empty database that is ready to be populated with your products. If you use a spreadsheet or accounting package for inventory control, and you can export your products to a CSV or tab-delimited TXT file in that application, you can import that data into the QG database via the CSV or TXT file. This makes it easy to add stock items to a quote by simply typing in the Sku# in the Sku column on an empty row, or by using the Add Stock Item tool. If you import a database you can also map the product records in your quote to items in that database, either by entering the Sku or using the Substitute Item tool.

If you have already populated the QG database and are importing an updated CSV or TXT file, current product records will not be overwritten by new ones. The data in existing records will be updated, and any records that are not in the database will be added. If you do not want any new records to be added, or you want all your prices to be set to \$0.00, you need to change your price update options. See *Setting Price Update Options in Quote Generator* on page 501.

#### To import a product database:

- 1. Make sure that the structure of the file that you want to import follows the guidelines outlined in *Preparing a Product Database for Import into Quote Generator* on page 477.
- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quotes are open. If a quote is currently open you can quickly close it by selecting File > Open and then clicking Cancel in the Open dialog.
- Select Tools > Data > Import Products
   (CSV)if you have a CSV file, or Tools > Data
   > Import Products (TAB) if you have a tabdelimited text file.
- 4. In the **Update Records** dialog, locate and select the file that you want to import, then click **Open**. The records are imported.

Data:UDBT Produc	ts (	X
Product Update	completed !	
	ОК	
Data:UDBT Products		
Product Update completed !		
ок		

5. Click **OK**.

If the QG database already contains records (i.e. you have imported records previously), the following dialog may appear:



- QG wants to know if you want to compare the contents of the QG database with the contents of the file you are importing. If you click Yes, any Skus that exist in the QG database but do not exist in the update file will be marked as discontinued in the QG database. If you want to bypass this process, click No.
- 7. When the update is complete, click **OK**.

**Note**: If you have exported your QG database to an XML file, you can import that database into QG using the Import Products (XML) tool (if, for example, you have multiple copies of QG and want to keep product records updated on all systems).

If the product records in the Quote Generator database have been exported to an XML file, you can useImporting Product Records from an XML File Construction Suite only the Import Products (XML) tool to import those products records into another copy of QG. This is an easy way to update product records on multiple machines without having to export the complete database. When you import product records from an XML file, existing product records are overwritten.

#### To import product records from an XML file:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quotes are open. If a quote is currently open you can quickly close it by selecting File > Open and then clicking Cancel in the Open dialog.
- Select Tools > Data > Import Products (XML).
- 3. Click **Yes** in the warning dialog to proceed.
- 4. In the **Open Update File** dialog, locate and select the XML file that you want to open, then click **Open**. The product records are imported one at a time, and existing records are overwritten. When it is done, the following dialog appears:

Data:update_tblProducts()	×
Records successfully updated	!
ОК	
Data:update_tblProducts()	
ОК	

# Exporting Product Records to a CSV File (QG)

Construction Suite only

You can use the Export Product Records to CSV File tool to export the product records in the Quote Generator database to a text file that can be opened in other programs like Microsoft® Office Excel.

To export the QG database to a CSV File:

 In Quote Generator, select Tools > Data > Export Products (CSV). The product records are saved to a TXT file in a specific Quote Generator folder. Make note of the location shown in the dialog on your screen so that you can retrieve the file later.



**Tip**: You may want to view the 'Using Import | Export to Maintain the Database ' tutorial in Quote Generator's online help.

# Exporting Product Records to an XML File (QG)

Construction Suite only

You can export the product records in the Quote Generator database to an XML file. This is useful if you have more than one copy of QG as it allows you to update product records on other systems without having to send the entire database.

#### To export product records to an XML file:

 In Quote Generator, select Tools > Data > Export Products (XML). The product records are saved to an XML file in a specific Quote Generator folder. Make note of the location shown in the dialog on your screen so that you can retrieve the file later.

Data:Save Products		
File Saved to C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\ 7\QuoteGenerator\Data\QGproducts.xm	Envisioneer 1	
	ОК	
Data:Save Products		
File Seved to CAProgram Files/Cadcoff/Envisioneer 7/QuoteGenerator/Data/QGproducts.xml		
ОК		

**Tip**: You may want to view the 'Using Import | Export to Maintain the Database ' tutorial in Quote Generator's online help.

## Backing Up the Quote Generator Database

Construction Suite only

When records are added from the Quote Generator database the file starts to grow in size. In order to keep your file size manageable, it is recommended that you back up your database every so often using the Backup Database tool. This compacts and saves the database in the same folder where the original database is located. You can then use the Load Database tool to load any saved database at any time.

#### To back up the QG database:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quotes are open. If a quote is currently open you can quickly close it by selecting File > Open and then clicking Cancel in the Open dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Data > Backup Database**or click on the toolbar. A dialog appears that confirms the backup and displays the name of the file that was created. The file name includes the current date so that you know when it was created.

### dBase:Backup

Database successfully Backed up ! (Backup Database: C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envi 7\QuoteGenerator\Data\QG_BU_6202011.mdb)

X

ОК

## Loading a Saved Database in Quote Generator

Database successfully Backed up ! (Backup Database: C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envisi 7\QuoteGenerator\Data\QG_BU_6202011.mdb)

Construction Suite only

dBase:Backup

You can use the Load Database tool to load any database file that you have saved in Quote Generator. This can be a database that you have saved using the Backup Database tool, or the original one. By default database files are saved in Quote Generator's "Data" folder.

#### To load a saved QG database:

- In Quote Generator, select Tools > Data > Load Database.
- 2. In the **Open QG Database File** dialog, select the database that you would like to load, then click **Open**. The database is loaded.

## **Customer Database (QG)**

Construction Suite only

Having a customer database readily available makes it quick and easy to specify customer information for the current quote — all you have to do is select the customer in the database and the information fields are filled out for you automatically. To create a customer database in Quote Generator you can import customer records from a tab-delimited (TAB) file that you have created in another application. You can then view the customer database when specifying customer information for the current quote.

# Importing Customer Records into Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

If you have a database of customer records in tabdelimited (TAB) format you can import those records into Quote Generator. To be able to import customer records, your file must have the following fields (columns) in the following order:

ID, Company, First Name, Last Name, Address, City, State/Prov, Zip/Postal, Country, Phone, Fax, E-mail

Once you have imported customer records you will have a database from which to choose customers when specifying customer information for the current quote. This saves you from manually inputting a customer's information each time, as all the fields will be automatically filled in for you.

#### To import customer records:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quotes are open. If a quote is currently open you can quickly close it by selecting File > Open and then clicking Cancel in the Open dialog.
- Select Tools > Data > Import Customers (TAB).
- 3. In the **Update Records** dialog, locate and select the tab-delimited TXT file containing customer records, then click **Open**.
- 4. Click **Open**. The records are imported.

Data:UDBT Customer	s	×
Records successfully	y updated !	
	ОК	
Data:UDBT Customers		
Records successfully updated !		
ОК		

## Viewing the Customer Database in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

If you have imported customer records using the Import Customers (TAB) tool, you can view the resulting database through the Customer Information dialog.

#### To view the customer database:

- 1. Click 🚵 🚵 on the toolbar above the quote grid.
- 2. In the **Customer Information** dialog, click on



The **Customer** dialog displays your customer database. You can change the sort order of customer records by making a selection from the **Sort** drop box. You can choose to sort by customer ID, company name, first name or last name, and choose to sort in ascending or descending order alphabetically. To view all of a customer's details, including their address and contact information, select the customer in the list and then click the **Customer Details** button.

## **Records (QG)**

Construction Suite only

Each row in your quote contains either a **product record** or **comment record**. There are a number of different ways that you can edit the content of the quote. You can:

- Add a comment record
- Add a product record
- Add a stock item to the quote
- Replace products with stock items
- Replace products with custom items
- Edit cells
- Change a record's Category
- Change a record's CPhase
- Change a record's Usage
- Unmap a record
- Delete a record
- Disable a product record

- Lock a record from editing
- Verify records using a set of predefined parameters

# Adding a Product Record to a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

You can add a product record to a quote by simply typing in the cells in a blank row. There is usually an empty row at the bottom of the quote. Note that when you enter a value in a cell or click on an empty row, default values will appear in certain cells.

1.00 Ea

#### 

Product records can be added in any mode. To add a product record to a quote:

- In Quote Generator, locate an empty row in the quote, then click in one of its cells and sn
- the quote, then click in one of its cells and specify the desired information for that cell.2. Specify values for the remaining cells. Unless
- 2. Specify values for the remaining cells. Onless a row has been disabled or locked, you can edit any cell in the row. Note that the **Total** column is *read-only* because those values are calculated automatically.

Numeric columns (**Cost**, **Quantity**, **Margin**, **Markup**) will not accept non-numeric characters. For this reason, if you are entering a dollar amount, do not include the dollar sign (\$). The dollar sign will be added automatically after you press Enter or leave the cell.

Columns **PL**, **Unit**, **Status**, **Category** and **CPhase** use drop down lists which means you cannot type in a value. You can only select an item from the drop down list. Clicking in one of these columns displays a down arrow on the right side of the cell. Simply click the arrow to display the drop down list for that cell.

If you have imported product records from a CSV or XML file into Quote Generator's database, and the **Type Ahead** setting is enabled in your Options, a drop list will appear when you start typing a value in the SKU or Description column if the string

matches the beginning characters of an item found in the database. This allows to enter or editing products more quickly. In the example below, typing 'PC' in the Sku column displays a list of Skus that begin with 'PC'.



PC1008 PC1010 PC12 PC1210

You can then select an item from the list or keep typing. Once you select the correct item (double-click an item in the list or press Enter after typing), the other cells will automatically fill in with the correct information. The Quantity column will use a default of 1. You can then modify this and any other column.

For additional rules on cell editing, see *Editing Cells in a Quote (QG)* on page 485.

**Tip**: If you have populated the QG database (i.e. imported product records from a CSV or XML file) you can quickly add product records to your quote that contain stock items using the Add Stock Item tool on the right-click menu. The cells will then be filled in for you based on the data in the imported file.

# Adding a Stock Item to a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

If you have imported product records from a CSV or XML file into Quote Generator, you can add product records containing stock items to your quote. When creating the new record you will be asked to select a SKU and specify a Quantity for the item. Margins/markups and gross profit will be calculated automatically.

#### To add a stock item:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that you are in Product Details Mode by clicking on the lower toolbar.
- 2. Select the record that you want to appear below the new record by clicking in the record selector column to the left of the record.
- 3. Right-click and select Add Stock Item.
- 4. In the **Select a Sku** dialog, click the drop box and select the SKU number of the item that you want to add. Click **OK**.
- 5. In the **Enter a Quantity** dialog, type or select a quantity for the item. Click **OK**.

**Note**: By default stock items are selected by SKU. You can choose a different selection method in your Options. For example, you can choose to display a list of products instead of a list of SKUs. See *Specifying a Selection Method for Stock Items (QG)* on page 499.

**Note**: If you want to replace existing products in the quote with stock items from your database, see *Replacing Products with Stock Items in a Quote (QG)* on page 483.

# Replacing Products with Stock Items in a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

If you have imported product records from a CSV or XML file into Quote Generator, you can substitute the stock items in that file for existing products in your quote. This is referred to as *mapping* a record. Once you have selected the stock item that you want to map to the record, the information in the record's cells will update automatically to reflect the information stored in the imported product record.

You can simultaneously map all records containing the same product by simply replacing the SKU number or description in one of the records (direct substitution). Alternatively you can use the Substitute Item tool to map a single record or all records containing the same product.

To replace a product with a stock item through direct substitution:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that you are in Product Details Mode by clicking on the lower toolbar.
- 2. Click in the **Sku** cell for one of the products that you want to replace. If you prefer to replace the product by its description, click in the **Description** cell instead.
- Highlight the existing Sku number (or description) and start typing the Sku number (or description) of the stock item that you want to use as the replacement. If the **Type Ahead** setting is enabled in your Options, a drop list will appear when you start typing a value in the SKU or Description column if the string matches the beginning characters of an item found in the database. In the example below, typing 'PC' in the Sku column displays a list of Skus that begin with 'PC'.

PCI	
PC08	
PC0808	
PC0810	
PC10	
PC1008	
PC1010	
PC12	
PC1210	
C08	
C0810	
C0810 C10	
C0810 C10 C1008 C1008	
C0810 C10 C1008 C10108 C1010 C12	

 You can then select an item from the list or keep typing. Once you select the correct item (double-click an item in the list or press Enter after typing), the other cells will automatically fill in with the correct information. All records in the quote that contain the product that you are replacing will update.

## To replace a product with a stock item using the Substitute Item tool:

1. In Quote Generator, make sure that you are

in Product Details Mode by clicking 뉦 🗓
on the lower toolbar.

- 2. Select the product record that you want to substitute with a stock item by clicking in the record selector column to the left of the record. The row is highlighted in yellow.
- 3. Right-click and select Substitute Item.
- In the Stock/Custom Products dialog, click the drop box and select the product that you want to replace the currently selected product with.
- 5. Click **OK**. You are prompted to specify which records you want to update.



 Specify which records you want to update. To replace the product in the current record only, click **Yes**. To replace the product in all records that contain the product, click **No**. The product information is updated.

## Replacing Products with Custom Items (QG)

Construction Suite only

You can substitute custom products for existing products in your quote using the Substitute Item tool. **To replace a product with a custom item:** 

- In Quote Generator, make sure that you are in Product Details Mode by clicking on the lower toolbar.
- 2. Select the product record that you want to substitute with a custom item by clicking in the record selector column to the left of the record. The row is highlighted in yellow.
- 3. Right-click and select **Substitute Item**.
- 4. In the **Stock|Custom Products** dialog, enable the **Create Custom Product** check box.
- Enter the details for the custom product by filling out the Sku, Description, Unit and Cost fields.

storn   castorn	Products			×
Method #1: se	ect a Stock Product			
List Product	By option 💿 Sku 🕜	Description		
				-
Create Cu	tom Product			
Method #2: E	<i>tom Product</i> ter Custom Product details	s		
Method #2: E	tom Product ter Custom Product details 2416F	s		
✓ Create Cu Method #2: E Sku Description	<i>tom Product</i> ter Custom Product detail: 2416F 2x4x16	5		
✓ Create Cu Method #2: E Sku Description Unit	<i>tom Product</i> ter Custom Product details 2416F 2x4x16 PC	s	Cost 0	.00 ÷
✓ Create Cu Method #2: E Sku Description Unit	<i>tom Product</i> ter Custom Product details 2416F [2x4x16 [PC	S	Cost 0	.00 +

 Click **OK**. The product information is updated.

### Adding a Comment Record (QG)

Construction Suite only

A comment record is a way of adding extra information to a quote or breaking up the product records. For example, you could use a comment record to add a title above a groups of records. A comment record has a dark gray background with white text.

### To add a comment record to a quote:

1. In Quote Generator, make sure that you are

in Product Details Mode </u> 🖸 or Admin



2. Right-click your mouse on the record that you want to appear below the new comment record, then select **Add Comment**.

- 3. In the **Select Comment Type** drop box, select the type of comment you are adding, such as Quote Footer, then click **OK**.
- Type the desired comment in the Enter a Comment dialog, then press Enter or click OK. The comment record is added to the quote.

## Editing Cells in a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

As long as a record has not been disabled or locked, you can modify the value in any cell, either by typing or selecting a value from a drop down list depending on the column in which the cell is located. To select a cell to edit, simply double-click it. If it is a cell in which you type a value, you can highlight the text to replace or click once more to highlight all of the text in the cell. As you type, the highlighted text will be overwritten.

Numeric columns (**Cost**, **Quantity**, **Margin**, **Markup**) will not accept non-numeric characters. For this reason, if you are entering a dollar amount, do not include the dollar sign (\$). The dollar sign will be added automatically after you press Enter or leave the cell.

Columns **PL**, **Unit**, **Status**, **Category**, **CPhase** and **Usage** use drop down lists which means you cannot type in a value. You can only select an item from the drop down list. Clicking in one of these columns displays a down arrow on the right side of the cell. Simply click the arrow to display the drop down list for that cell.

If you have imported product records from a CSV or XML file into Quote Generator's database, and the **Type Ahead** setting is enabled in your Options, a drop list will appear when you start typing a value in the **Sku** or **Description** column if the string matches the beginning characters of an item found in the database. This allows to enter or editing products more quickly. In the example below, typing 'PC' in the Sku column displays a list of Skus that begin with 'PC'.



You can then select an item from the list or keep typing. Once you select the correct item (double-click an item in the list or press Enter after typing), the other cells will automatically fill in with the correct information. The Quantity column will use a default of 1. You can then modify this and any other column.

### **Cell Editing Rules**

There may be a time when you edit a cell and the change does not take effect. Most likely one of the cell editing rules has been broken. These rules have been set up to prevent data from being modified from its original source or to limit what information can be modified.

- Existing records that contain stock items (from the internal QG database) can only be replaced with other stock items. They cannot be replaced with non-stocked items.
- You can map a product record to an existing Sku in the QG database by entering the stock item's Sku in the product record's **Sku** cell.
- A product can be unmapped, but only if one record is selected. All records mapped to the Sku in that record will be unmapped.
- Numeric columns (Cost, Quantity, Margin, Markup) will not accept non-numeric characters. For this reason, if you are entering a dollar amount, do not include the dollar sign (\$). The dollar sign will be added automatically after you press Enter or leave the cell.
- Values in the **Cost** column cannot be changed unless the **Column Edit** option is enabled in your Options.

- You cannot enter a negative **Cost** value. You can, however, enter a 0 or negative number for the **Margin**, **Markup** or **Retail** (i.e. Retail discount) value.
- If the QG database is empty (i.e. you have not imported product records from a CSV or XML file), the **Price Level** control will be grayed out.
- When selecting a different **Price Level** value using the **Price Level** control at the bottom of the screen, only products that match products in the QG database will change.
- When selecting a different price level from the grid's Price Level column, the value will not change if a price for this product does not exist at that level. The value in the cell will be set back.
- The **Total** column is *read-only* because those values are calculated automatically.
- If you enter a **Retail** value that is greater than 0 when the **Cost** is 0, **Markup** = Infinity and **Margin** = 0.
- If you enter a **Cost** value of 0, the **Retail** value will be 0 even if **Retail** was originally greater than 0. When Cost is changed Retail is re-cal-culated based on the current Margin/Markup values, but multiplying anything by 0 will equal 0.
- For comment records, changes can only be made in the **Description** column. All other columns are ignored.
- When the **Type Ahead** feature is enabled, adding the wildcard symbol (*) to a string is not necessary. If it is used, anything after it will be ignored. For example, PC*108 would have a search string of PC*.

## Unmapping a Record in a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

When you replace an item in a product record with a stock item in the QG database, that record is said to be *mapped* to a product in the QG database. You can use the Unmap Record tool to revert the product record to its original state if desired.

### To unmap a product record:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that you are in Product Details Mode by clicking on the lower toolbar.
- Select the record that you want to unmap by clicking in the record selector column to the left of the record. Note that only one record can be selected prior to selecting the Unmap Record tool. All records mapped to the Sku in the selected record will be unmapped.
- 3. Right-click and select **Unmap Record**.
- In the Unmap Record dialog, click OK to proceed. All records mapped to the current Sku revert back to their original state.

## Deleting a Record from a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

You can remove a product record or comment record from a quote using the Delete Items tool on the rightclick menu.

### To delete a record:

1. In Quote Generator, make sure that you are

in Product Details Mode 🔛 🖸 or Admin Mode 🔟 🔟.

- 2. Select the row that you want to delete by clicking in the record selector column to the left of the record. You can select multiple rows if you want (CTRL+click to select individually, or SHIFT+click to select a group of rows). The row is highlighted in yellow.
- 3. Right-click and select **Delete Items**. The selected row is deleted from the quote.

## Disabling/Enabling Product Records in a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

When you disable a product record it is still displayed but is no longer included with the quote. Disabled records cannot be edited, do not show in reports, do not get exported and are not included when generating price totals. Disabled records have a light gray background with dark gray text. They also display an  $\mathbf{X}$  in the Sku column for further identification.

2 x 6 x 14'

Sample disabled record

### To disable a product record:

1. In **Quote Generator**, make sure that you are

in Product Details Mode 뉦 된 or Admin



- 2. Select the product record that you want to disable by clicking in the record selector column to the left of the record. You can select multiple rows if you want (CTRL+click to select individually, or SHIFT+click to select a group of rows). The row highlights yellow.
- 3. Right-click and select **Disable Item(s)**. The record is disabled.

### To enable a record that has been disabled:

- Select the disabled record by clicking in the record selector column to the left of the record. The row highlights yellow.
- 2. Right-click and select **Enable Item(s)**. The record is no longer disabled.

## Locking/Unlocking Product Records (QG)

Construction Suite only

When you lock a product record it cannot be edited. Although they cannot be edited, they are still included in price totals and reports and get exported.

Locked records display a lock icon 😰 🛃 in the Sku column for further identification.

🚘 2 x 6 x 14'

Sample locked record **To lock a record**:

1. In **Quote Generator**, make sure that you are

in Product Details Mode 🔛 🖸 or Admin Mode 🔲 🗐 .

2. Select the product record that you want to lock by clicking in the record selector column to the left of the record. You can select multiple rows if you want (CTRL+click to select individually, or SHIFT+click to select a group of rows). The row highlights yellow.

3. Right-click and select **Lock Item(s)**. The record is locked.

### To unlock a locked record:

- Select the locked record by clicking in the record selector column to the left of the record. The row highlights yellow.
- Right-click and select Unlock Item(s). The record is no longer locked.

## Price Controls (QG)

Construction Suite only

All price-related values including various totals are displayed in Admin Mode in Quote Generator. Some are read-only, and some can be edited. There are a number of different ways that you can review and manipulate pricing in a quote. You can:

- View totals such as the Total Cost and Total Profit
- Adjust the Price Level on one or multiple items.
- Adjust the Retail Price of individual items.
- Adjust the Cost Price of individual items provided that cost price editing is enabled in your Options.
- Apply current pricing from an imported database.
- Adjust Margin or Markup rates.
- Apply Tax to one or multiple items.
- Enter a Discount on individual items.
- Adjust the Grand Total to a lesser value. The program will then adjust individual record pricing to meet the value entered into the Grand Total.

A change to any price column automatically recalculates the other price columns for that record as well as the Grand Total.

### Working in Admin Mode (QG)

Construction Suite only

When you switch to Admin Mode in Quote Generator, the grid displays various price columns and price controls such as Cost price, Retail price, Margin, Markup, Price Level, Profit, Tax and Discount. This allows you to keep sensitive information hidden until needed.

A Totals control is also displayed below the quote grid which includes the Total Cost price, Margin, Markup, and Total Profit. These values are read-only.

\$102515.75	33.33%	25%
Total Cost	Markup	Margin
\$102515.75 33.33% 25%	\$34168.41	

The **Total Cost** value is the sum of all Cost prices in the quote.

The **Markup** is the the % difference between Cost and Retail price, calculated using the following formula: ((Grand Total - Cost Extension) / Cost Extension) * 100.

The **Margin** is the % of Retail Price that is Gross Profit, calculated using the following formula: ((Grand Total - Cost Extension) / Grand Total) * 100.

The **Total Profit** is the amount of Retail made on the quote, calculated by subtracting the Cost Extension from the Grand Total.

Although this mode focuses on pricing, you can still add or delete records and map Skus in Admin Mode. To switch to Admin Mode, click the Admin Mode button on the toolbar above the quote grid.



Tools Windo	ow Help				
🚔 🖶 🔹	🔹 🖬 🕑 🛃 🚳 🖻				
X 🔳	5 🗖 🛣 🗖				
Sku	Description	Qty	Unit	Total	Cos
	Foundation				
2610F	2X5X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	2.00	PC	\$0.00	
2610F	2X5X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	2,358.17	PC	\$0.00	
WOODFL	2 x 10 Floor Frame System	306.75	SQ.FT	\$0.00	
2610F	2X5X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	2.00	PC	\$0.00	
PressureTreated	P.T. 2 x 6 Sill Plate	10.00	EACH	\$0.00	
21018F	2x10x18 Doug Fir/L(N) or bet	3.00	PC	\$0.00	
21018F	2x10x18 Doug Fir/L(N) or bet	15.00	PC	\$0.00	
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	2.00	PC	\$0.00	
FLOOR	3/4" 4x8 Plywood Subfloor S	9.59	PC	\$0.00	
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	11.00	PC	\$0.00	
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	11.00	PC	\$0.00	
	1st Floor Walls				
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	2.00	PC	\$0.00	
2610F	2X5X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	1.00	PC	\$0.00	
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	8.00	PC	\$0.00	
2610F	2X5X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	1.00	PC	\$0.00	
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	3.00	PC	\$0.00	
2610F	2X5X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	1.00	PC	\$0.00	
WOODFL	Hardwood Floor	1,913.85	SQ.FT	\$0.00	
SLAB	4" Concrete Floor	442.62	CU.FT	\$0.00	
SLAB 2610F	4" Concrete Floor 2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	442.62	CU.FT PC	\$0.00 \$0.00	
20105	2500 TINE NOR	20.00		00.00	

🛎 🖬 🛸	📲 🖬 🙆 🖬 🚳 🖬	9											
17	1 🗖 🛣 🗷												
Sku	Description	Qty	Unit	Total	Cost	Markup	Margin	Retail	PL	Profit	Tax1	Tax2	Tax3
	Foundation												
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	2.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00	0.00	0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	2.358.17	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00	0.00	0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
WOODFL	2 x 10 Floor Frame System	306.75	SQ.FT	\$0.00	\$0.00	0.00	0.00	\$0.00	С	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	2.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00	0.00	0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
PressureTreated	P.T. 2 x 6 Sill Plate	10.00	EACH	\$0.00	\$0.00	0.00	0.00	\$0.00	С	\$0.00			
21018F	2x10x18 Doug Fir/L(N) or bet	3.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00	0.00	0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
21018F	2x10x18 Doug Fir/L(N) or bet	15.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00			\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	2.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00			\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
FLOOR	3/4" 4x8 Plywood Subfloor S	9.59	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00			\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	11.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00		0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	11.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00		0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	2.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00			\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	1.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00		0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	8.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00		0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	1.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00	0.00	0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	3.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00	0.00	0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	1.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00	0.00	0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			
WOODFL	Hardwood Floor	1,913.85	SQ.FT	\$0.00	\$0.00	0.00	0.00	\$0.00	- C	\$0.00	- 🗔 -	· 🗆 ·	- E
SLAB	4" Concrete Floor	442.62	CU.FT	\$0.00	\$0.00		0.00	\$0.00	С	\$0.00			
2610F	2X6X10 DOUG FIR/L(N)OR	25.00	PC	\$0.00	\$0.00	0.00	0.00	\$0.00	Retail	\$0.00			

## Adjusting Price Levels (QG)

Construction Suite only

If you have imported product records from a CSV or XML file that contain price level values, and you have mapped items in your quote to those products, you can use the Price Level control in QG to adjust the current price level on one or more selected records to another level. QG has the ability to store up to 5 different Price Levels for each product which gives you the ability to assign different levels to different products in the quote. You can also assign a unique Price to each product. In this case a **C** is displayed in the Price Level column for that record (indicating that it is a Custom price).

### To adjust the price level for records:

- In Quote Generator, select the record for which you want to change the price level. You can select multiple records by holding down the CTRL key during selection.
- 2. Click the **Price Level** drop box below the quote grid, then select the desired price level.

Price Level	Retail	-	Apply
Price Level Retai			

If you are in Admin Mode or Mfg Details Mode you can also right-click in the quote grid and select **Change Price Level**, or click in the grid's **PL** column and select a price level.

3. Click **Apply**. The program will search for each product in the QG database (imported product database). If a price at the selected level is found it will be changed. If the selected product cannot be found no change is made. If the price at the selected level is \$0.00 a higher level will be searched until a value above \$0.00 is found or until Level 1 is reached. The matched price and level is then assigned to the product. (If Level 1 = \$0.00 it will be displayed in Red which should warn you of \$0.00 Prices.) A message will indicate if any records do not get assigned to the applied price level.

**Note**: This feature only works if there are product records in the QG database (i.e. you have imported products from a CSV or XML file). Otherwise the Apply button is disabled.

**Tip**: You can assign names to price levels in your Options. See *Specifying Price Level Names (QG)* on page 499.

### Editing Prices in a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

When you enter Admin Mode you can see the Cost price and Retail price for each item in the quote. You can adjust prices for one or multiple items by adjusting the Price Level of those items (provided they are mapped to product records in the QG database that have price level values assigned to them).

If you have imported a CSV file into Quote Generator that contains the current pricing for store products, you can automatically apply the pricing in that file to items in the quote using the Apply Current Pricing to Quote option at the bottom of the quote window.

Alternatively you can assign unique prices to individual items by editing the values in the Retail or Cost price columns. If you assign a unique price to a product in your quote, a **C** is displayed in the Price Level column for that record (indicating that it is a Custom price).

### To edit prices in a quote:

 In Quote Generator, go into Admin Mode by clicking the Admin Mode button on the toolbar above the quote grid.



- To edit the retail price for an item, doubleclick the current value in the **Retail** column and then type the new value (do not type the dollar sign \$). When you press Enter or click outside the retail field, the values in the other price columns are re-calculated automatically.
- 3. To edit the cost price for an item, double-click the current value in the Cost column, and then type the new value (do not type the dollar sign \$). Note that you can only edit cost prices if Cost Price Editing is enabled in your Options. (See *Allowing or Preventing Cost Price Editing in Quote Generator* on page 500.)

## Applying Current Pricing to Products in a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

When you enter Admin Mode you can see the Cost price and Retail price for each item in the quote. If you have imported product records from a CSV or XML file into Quote Generator that contain the current pricing of store products, you can apply the product prices in that file to products in the quote provided those products exist in the imported file. This ensures that the products in your quote have current pricing.

## To apply current pricing from an imported database:

 In Quote Generator, go into Admin Mode by clicking the Admin Mode button on the toolbar above the quote grid.



 At the bottom of the Admin Mode screen, click the Apply button next to the Apply current Pricing to Quote option.



Quote Products that also exist be Updated to the Database R

Press OK to Continue. Press Cancel to exit operation



3. Click **OK** to proceed. The prices are updated for products in the quote that exist in the imported database. You will be notified if any of the products do not exist in the database (the prices for these products will remain unchanged.) You can see which products were not updated by viewing the program log.



## Adjusting Margin and Markup Rates (QG)

Construction Suite only

The Margin | Markup control is used to adjust the current rate value on one or more selected records to another level. You can adjust the Margin or Markup for all records simultaneously, or change the rate for individual records or a group of records. When the new rate is applied the other rates as well as the Retail and Total Price columns will be re-calculated.

### To adjust the Margin or Markup rate for all records:

1. In Quote Generator, go into Admin Mode by clicking the Admin Mode button on the toolbar above the quote grid.



You can also adjust Margin and Markup rates

in Mfg. Details Mode

2. Select either the Margin or Markup option in the Margin | Markup price control below the quote grid.

```
set 🖲 Margin C Markup Rate for AL
```

set 
Margin C Markup Rate for ALL Products to 25.00 +

- Enter the desired rate in the Rate for ALL Products to edit box, or use the arrow keys to scroll through a list of values in increments.
- Click Apply. The value in the Margin or Markup column automatically updates for all records.
- 5. Click **OK** in the message dialog.

**Note**: Always select the Rate Type (Margin or Markup) before setting the Rate Value. Otherwise the Rate Value will get set back to its default value when you select the Rate Type.

## To adjust the Margin or Markup rate for selected records:

 Select the record for which you want to adjust the Margin or Markup rate by clicking in the record selector column. You can CTRL+click to select multiple records if you want.

- Right-click and select Change Margin or Change Markup depending on which rate you want to change.
- Enter the desired rate in the dialog, then click OK. The rate is changed for the selected record(s).

### To adjust an individual Margin or Markup rate:

- 1. Double-click the value that you want to change (in the Margin or Markup column).
- 2. Type the desired rate. When you press Enter or click outside the field, the other price values will be re-calculated.

**Tip**: You can set default Margin and Markup rates in your Options. See *Specifying Default Margin and Markup Rates (QG)* on page 500.

## Applying Tax to Items in a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

Once you have defined tax rates in your Options, you can apply them to items in your quote. Taxes are applied in Admin Mode. You can apply taxes to individual items or a group of items.

### To apply tax to items:

1. In Quote Generator, go into Admin Mode by clicking the Admin Mode button on the toolbar above the quote grid.



2. To apply tax to an individual item, enable the appropriate **Tax** check box.



- To apply tax to a group of items, select the records by clicking in the record selector column (CTRL+click to select multiple records), then right-click and select Tax
   Status > Apply Tax1 Rate (or Apply Tax2 Rate).
- To remove tax that has been applied to an item, uncheck the item's Tax check box, or select the record and then right-click and select Tax Status > Remove Tax1 Rate (or Remove Tax2 Rate).

## Entering Discounts in a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

You can apply discounts to individual items in a quote.

### To apply a discount to an item in a quote:

 In Quote Generator, go into Admin Mode by clicking the Admin Mode button on the toolbar above the quote grid.



2. To apply a discount to an individual item, double-click in the item's **Discount** field and enter the discount value (as a percentage), then press ENTER or click in another field.

## Adjusting the Grand Total in a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

You can adjust the Grand Total in a quote to a lesser value. When you change a quote's Grand Total price, the program adjusts the Markup of products by the Grand Total Adjustment Rate. By default this rate is 0.2% (you specify a different Grand Total Adjustment Rate in your Options if desired). The Total Price is then re-calculated, and the difference between the old Total Price and the new Total Price is subtracted from the Grand Total. The process is repeated until it gets as close as possible to the amount entered for the Grand Total.

You can adjust the Grand Total in any mode.

### To adjust the Grand Total in a quote:

1. In Quote Generator, highlight the current value in the **Grand Total** control below the quote grid.

Grand Total \$ 99,533.95 -



Grand Total \$ 99,533.95 - Undo

- 2. Type the new desired Grand Total (must be less than the original), or use the down arrow key to lower the total in increments. Press Enter.
- To revert to the previous Grand Total value, click the Undo button next to the Grand Total edit box.

### **Categories (QG)**

Construction Suite only

When you generate a quote, the categories shown for each product record are the categories assigned to elements in Envisioneer. You may have your own set of categories that you use in your business. If so you can incorporate your categories into the quote by setting up the category database in Quote Generator and then changing the categories for product records in the quote.

## Setting Up Categories in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

Elements can be grouped into categories according to their type, such as Sheathing or Pre-cut Lumber. A quote includes a Category column which you can use to show the category assigned to each product. You may have your own set of categories that you use in your business. If so you can incorporate your categories into the quote by setting up categories in Quote Generator and applying the categories to product records in the quote.

### To set up categories:

1. In Quote Generator, select Tools > Groups **Editor** or click **©** on the toolbar.

- 2. In the Groups Editor dialog, click the Group drop box and select Category. All available categories are listed.
- 3. To add a category, click the New Record but-

ton at the top of the dialog. When prompted, type an ID for the category, and then at the next prompt, type its name. When you click **OK**, the category is added to the bottom of the list.

- 4. To edit a category, double-click the text that you want to edit, then type the desired text.
- 5. To delete a category from the list, select the category and then click the Delete Current

Record button at the top of the dialog.

- 6. To prevent a category from being edited, enable the check box in the Lock column.
- 7. To move a category up or down in the list (to re-order the list), click the up arrow or down arrow on the right side of the dialog.
- 8. When you are finished setting up categories,

click the Save button at the top of the dialog. When the save is complete, click OK.

### Changing the Category in a Record (QG)

Construction Suite only

A quote includes a Category column which you can use to show the status of each product. For example, a product may be a stock item, special order item, or labor item. You can change the Category for an individual record or for multiple records simultaneously. Categories are defined and saved in the Groups Editor.

### To change a record's category:

- 1. In **Quote Generator**, make sure that you are in Product Details Mode by clicking 뉦 🔛 on the lower toolbar.
- 2. If you want to change the category for one record, click in the record's Category cell and then select the desired category from the drop list. The category is changed.
- 3. If you want to change the category for multiple records simultaneously, select the records to change (CTRL+click to select individually, or SHIFT+click to select a group of records). The rows are highlighted in yellow.
- 4. Right-click and select Change Category.
- 5. In the Select a Category dialog, click the drop box and select the category you want to apply to the selected records.

Select a Category



6. Click **OK**. The records' category updates instantly.

**Construction Phases (QG)** 

Construction Suite only

Misc Labour

When you generate a quote, the construction phases shown for each product record are the phases assigned to elements in Envisioneer. If you have your own set of phases that you use in your business, you can incorporate them into the quote by setting up the construction phase database in Quote Generator and then changing the phases in product records in the quote.

## Setting Up Construction Phases in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

When you generate a quote, the construction phases shown for each product record are the phases assigned to elements in Envisioneer. If you have your own set of phases that you use in your business, you can incorporate them into the quote by setting up construction phases in Quote Generator and applying the phases to product records in the quote.

To set up construction phases:

1. In **Quote Generator**, select **Tools > Groups** 

Editor or click 🙋 🍘 on the toolbar.

- 2. In the **Groups Editor** dialog, click the **Group** drop box and select **Construction Phase**. All available construction phases are listed.
- 3. To add a phase, click the New Record button

at the top of the dialog. When prompted, type an ID for the phase, and then at the next prompt, type its name. When you click **OK**, the phase is added to the bottom of the list.

- 4. To edit a phase, double-click the text that you want to edit, then type the desired text.
- 5. To delete a phase from the list, select the phase and then click the Delete Current

Record button **X** at the top of the dialog.

- 6. To prevent a phase from being edited, enable the check box in the **Lock** column.
- To move a phase up or down in the list (to re-order the list), click the up arrow or down arrow on the right side of the dialog, or right-

click the phase and select **Move Up** or **Move Down**.

8. When you are finished setting up phases,

click the Save button **main at the top of** the dialog. When the save is complete, click **OK**.

## Changing the Construction Phase in a Record (QG)

Construction Suite only

In a quote you can change the Construction Phase (CPhase) for an individual record or for multiple records simultaneously. Phases are defined and saved in the Groups Editor.

### To change a record's construction phase:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that you are in Product Details Mode by clicking I on the lower toolbar.
- 2. If you want to change the phase for one record, click in the record's *CPhase* cell and then select the desired phase from the drop list. The phase is changed.
- 3. If you want to change the phase for multiple records simultaneously, select the records to change (CTRL+click to select individually, or SHIFT+click to select a group of records). The rows are highlighted in yellow.
- 4. Right-click and select Change CPhase.
- 5. In the **Select a CPhase** dialog, click the drop box and select the phase that you want to apply to the selected records.
- 6. Click **OK**. The records' phase updates instantly.

## Usages (QG)

Construction Suite only

When you generate a quote, the usages shown for each product record are the usages assigned to elements in Envisioneer. If you have your own set of usages that you use in your business, you can incorporate them into the quote by setting up usages in Quote Generator and then changing the usages in product records in the quote.

## Setting Up Usages in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

A quote includes a Usage column which you can use to show the usage of each product. For example, a product may be used as a Stud, Rim Joist, Rafter, etc. You may have your own set of usages that you use in your business. If so you can incorporate your usages into the quote by setting up usages in Quote Generator and applying the usages to product records in the quote.

### To set up usages:

1. In Quote Generator, select Tools > Groups

**Editor** or click 0 on the toolbar.

- 2. In the **Groups Editor** dialog, click the **Group** drop box and select **Usage**. All available usages are listed.
- 3. To add a usage, click the New Record button

at the top of the dialog. When prompted, type an ID for the usage, and then at the next prompt, type its name. When you click **OK**, the usage is added to the bottom of the list.

- 4. To edit a usage, double-click the text that you want to edit, then type the desired text.
- 5. To delete a usage from the list, select the usage and then click the Delete Current

Record button **X** at the top of the dialog.

- 6. To prevent a usage from being edited, enable the check box in the **Lock** column.
- To move a usage up or down in the list (to reorder the list), click the up arrow or down arrow on the right side of the dialog.
- 8. When you are finished setting up usages,

click the Save button **at the top of** the dialog. When the save is complete, click **OK**.

### Changing the Usage in a Product Record (QG)

Construction Suite only

A quote includes a Usage column which you can use to show the usage assigned to each product. For example, a product may be used as a Stud, Rim Joist, Rafter, etc. You can change the Usage for an individual record or for multiple records simultaneously. Usages are defined and saved in the Groups Editor.

### To change a record's usage:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that you are in Product Details Mode by clicking on the lower toolbar.
- 2. If you want to change the usage for one record, click in the record's *Usage* cell and then select the desired usage from the drop list. The usage is changed.
- 3. If you want to change the usage for multiple records simultaneously, select the records to change (CTRL+click to select individually, or SHIFT+click to select a group of records). The rows are highlighted in yellow.
- 4. Right-click and select Change Usage.
- 5. In the **Select a Usage** dialog, click the drop box and select the usage you want to apply to the selected records.

## Manufacturers and Suppliers (QG)

Construction Suite only

Quote Generator's Manufacturing Details Mode displays manufacturer or supplier information for each product record in the quote. You can assign a manufacturer or supplier to each product record. You can define and save manufacturers and suppliers in the Groups Editor.

In Manufacturing Details Mode you can also specify Cost, Markup, Margin and Retail price values, and view the resulting profit for each item.

## Setting Up Manufacturers and Suppliers in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

Quote Generator contains a database of manufacturers and suppliers that you can customize. You can then choose from this database when assigning manufacturers to products in Manufacturer Details Mode.

### To set up manufacturers and suppliers:

- 1. In Quote Generator, select **Tools > Groups** 
  - **Editor** or click 0 on the toolbar.
- 2. In the **Groups Editor** dialog, click the **Group** drop box and select **Category**. All available categories are listed.
- 3. To add a manufacturer or supplier, click the
  - New Record button **t** at the top of the dialog. When prompted, type an ID for the manufacturer, and then at the next prompt, type their name. When you click **OK**, the manufacturer is added to the bottom of the list.
- 4. If Sku numbers from a manufacturer include a prefix, enter the prefix in the **SkuPrefix** field. Note that this does not assign the prefix to Sku numbers in existing records. Sku prefixes must be specified in the application from which the quote is generated (Envisioneer) or in the product database file (CSV) that you import.
- 5. To edit a manufacturer's **ID** or **Name**, doubleclick in the appropriate field, delete the existing text, then type the new text.
- 6. To delete a manufacturer from the list, select the manufacturer and then click the Delete

Current Record button **K** at the top of the dialog.

- 7. To prevent a manufacturer from being edited, enable the check box in the **Lock** column.
- To move a manufacturer up or down in the list (to re-order the list), click the up arrow or down arrow on the right side of the dialog.
- 9. When you are finished setting up man-

ufacturers, click the Save button **[a]** at the top of the dialog. When the save is complete, click **OK**.

### Specifying Manufacturer Information for Products in Quote Generator

**Construction Suite only** 

You can assign manufacturers and suppliers to products in your quote in Manufacturing Details Mode. Using the Change Mfg tool you simply select manufacturers from the customizable manufacturer/supplier database in Quote Generator. While in this mode you can perform the same operations that you can in Product Details Mode and Admin Mode, such as replace Sku numbers, add stock items, and change prices.

### To specify manufacturer information for products:

- In Quote Generator, click the Manufacturing Details Mode button
   Image: Constraint of the toolbar above the quote grid.
- Select the record to which you want to assign a manufacturer by clicking in the record selector column. The row is highlighted in yellow.
- 3. Right-click in the quote window and select **Change Mfg**.
- Expand the drop box in the Select a Manufacturer dialog and select the manufacturer that you want to assign to the currently selected product.
- 5. Click **OK**. The manufacturer name is displayed in the **Mfg Name** column.

## Quote Generator Settings and Options

Construction Suite only

There are a number of different options that you can set in Quote Generator. You can:

- Specify the Company Information that will appear on reports, including the name, address and company logo
- Set the default Margin and Markup rates
- Assign names to Price Levels
- Specify how you want to select stock items when using the Add Stock Item tool (by Sku, by Product Description, etc.)

- Allow or prevent Cost price editing
- Edit the Grand Total Adjustment rate
- Specify Price Update options
- Set up Tax Rates
- Specify Export Options
- Enable or disable the Type Ahead feature
- Add estimators
- Enable and set up the Customer Verification feature
- Enable and set up the Product Verification feature
- View the Program Log

## Specifying Company Information in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

By default, reports generated in Quote Generator include a header with company information, such as the name and address of the company and the company logo. You can edit the default company information to suit your business.

### To specify company information:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- 3. Fill out the fields on the **Store Information** tab in the **Options** dialog.

Options	
Store Information Quote Export Saving Customer	Verification
Company Cadsoft Corp.	
Address 3-727 Speedvale ave. W	
City Guelph	
State/Prov ON	
Zip/Postal N1K 1E6	
Country Canada	
Phone 519.836.3990	
Fax	
E-Mail sales@cadsoft.com	
Web Site www.cadsoft.com	
Contact	
Company Long Total Total Company	
Use Company Logo xxx File in the Data Folder	Clear
Company Banner C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envisioneer 6\Q	Clear
use CompanyBanner.xxx File in theData Folder	
Close	

Options
Store Information Quote Export Saving Customer
Company Cadsoft Corp.
Address 3-727 Speedvale ave. W
City Guelph
State/Prov ON
Zip/Postal N1K 1E6
Country Canada
Phone 519.836.3990
Fax
E-Mail sales@cadsoft.com
Web Site www.cadsoft.com
Contact
Company Logo C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envisioneer 6\Q
use CompanyLogo.xxx File in the Data Folder
Company Banner C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envisioneer 6\Q
use CompanyBanner.cox File in the Data Folder
Close

 To use your own company logo, click the Clear button next to the Company Logo field to clear the existing logo. The Clear button changes to a Browse button. Click Browse and then locate and select the logo file on your system. You can use a BMP, GIF, JPG or PNG file. The inclusion of a logo or banner is specified in the Report Designer.





5. To use your own company banner, clear the existing one and then click **Browse** next to the **Company Banner** field to select your banner file.

Sam Banr	ple — Ter	<b>(</b> Ca	dsofť	
		<b>BillTα</b> TrainingModel_pt	nas e2. bld	
		, NA. Phone: E-Mail:	Fax:	
				0
Sample <u>—</u> Banner		adsoft		Cadsoft 727 Speedvale A Guelph, Onta www.
	Bill Ta TrainingMod	el_phas e2. bid	Ship To:	
	, NA. Phone: E-Mail:	Fax:	, NA. Phone:	Fax
			Anial #Blacar-	

6. To save time when setting up company information for quotes you can copy your company logo and banner into Quote Generator's Data folder, then enable the Use CompanyLogo.xxx File in the ...\Data Folder or Use CompanyBanner.xxx File in the ...\Data Folder check box. This way you don't have to search for logo and banner files on your system every time. OC's Data folder is located here by default:

QG's **Data** folder is located here by default: *C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envisioneer* 

\QuoteGenerator\Data

When you copy your logo or banner file into the **Data** folder you need to rename it **ReportLogo** or **ReportBanner** so that QG can find it. (The file extension can remain the same.)

- 7. When you are finished specifying company information, click **Close**. Your changes are saved.
- 8. Click **OK**.

### Creating a Default External Text File for Use in Quote Generator Reports

Construction Suite only

When you set up reports in Quote Generator's Report Designer, you have the option of including a custom text file at the bottom of the report. If you have a text file that you commonly use in reports, you can make it the default external text file by giving it a specific name and saving it in Quote Generator's Data folder. When setting up reports in the Report Designer you can then simply choose the **Use ExtFile.xxx File in the...\Data folder** option without having to search for the file every time. For more information see *Customizing Reports in Quote Generator* on page 510.

### To create a default external text file:

- 1. In a text editor, open or create the text file that you would like to use as your default.
- 2. Save the file as **ReportExtFile.txt** in the following folder:

C:\Program Files**Cadsoft\Envisioneer** \QuoteGenerator\Data

### Specifying a Selection Method for Stock Items (QG)

Construction Suite only

By default when you use the Add Stock Item tool to add an item to your quote from an imported database, you choose the item by selecting its SKU. You can choose a different selection method if you want. For example, you can choose to display a list of products instead of SKUs, or search by category first and SKU second.

### To specify a selection method for stock items:

 In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.

- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- 3. In the **Options** dialog, select the **Quote** tab.
- 4. In the *Stock Item Selection* area, select the desired option for selecting stock items.

Stock Item selection
select by Category then Sku
Select by Category then Product
✓ select by Sku only
Select by Product only
Stock Item selection



If the **Select by Category then Sku** option is selected, a list of categories will first be displayed when adding a stock item to a quote, and then once you have selected a category, a list of SKU numbers specific to that category will be displayed. You are essentially creating a category filter which can make it much easier to select an item when there are hundreds or even thousands of products in the database. The **Select by Category then Product** option works the same way, except the second list displays product descriptions instead of SKU numbers.

5. Click Close. Your settings are saved.

## Specifying Price Level Names (QG)

Construction Suite only

Quote Generator allows up to 5 different Price Levels to be used on products. You can assign your own description (Name) to each level for easy identification.

### To specify price level names:

1. In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently

loaded, select **File > Open**, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click **Cancel** in the **Open QG Quote** dialog.

- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- 3. In the **Options** dialog, select the **Quote** tab.
- 4. Specify price level names in the *Price Level Name Assignments* area. To edit an existing name, select it and then double-click it, delete the existing name, then type the new name.

Price Level N	lame Assignments
Price Level	Name
1	Retail
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5

5. When you are done, click **Close**. Your settings are saved.

## Specifying Default Margin and Markup Rates (QG)

Construction Suite only

You can define a default margin and markup rate in your Quote Generator options. By defining default margin/markup rates in your options, you will avoid having to set the rates manually when you generate a quote. They will already be set for you.

### To specify default margin and markup rates:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- 3. In the **Options** dialog, select the **Quote** tab.
- 4. Set the default rates in the *Default Rates* area. You can set either the Margin or Markup as the default rate to use in the quote.



5. When you are done, click **Close**. Your settings are saved.

## Allowing or Preventing Cost Price Editing in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

When you import a company's product database into Quote Generator, the products may already have a cost assigned to them. By default, cost prices can be edited in QG. If you do not want anyone to be able to edit cost prices, you can disable cost price editing in Quote Generator. This is set in your Options.

### To set the cost price editing control option:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- 3. In the **Options** dialog, select the **Quote** tab.
- In the *Misc* area, check or uncheck the **modify** Cost Prices option depending on whether or not you want to permit cost price editing.
- 5. Click **Close**. Your settings are saved.

## Setting the Grand Total Adjustment Rate (QG)

Construction Suite only

When you change a quote's Grand Total price, the program adjusts the Markup of products by the Grand Total Adjustment rate. By default this rate is 0.2%. The Total Price is then re-calculated, and the difference between the old Total Price and the new Total Price is subtracted from the Grand Total. The process is repeated until it gets as close as possible to the amount entered for the Grand Total. You can edit the Grand Total Adjustment rate to suit your needs.

### To set the Grand Total Adjustment rate:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- 3. In the **Options** dialog, select the **Quote** tab.
- In the *Misc* area, type the desired rate in the Grand Total Adjustment edit box, or use the

arrow keys to increase or decrease the rate in 0.1% increments.

5. Click **Close**. Your settings are saved.

## Setting Price Update Options in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

When you import product records into Quote Generator for the purpose of updating product pricing and other data, there are two settings in your Options that determine how pricing is updated.

If the **Update Prices only** option is enabled, only prices on products that already exist in the QG database will be updated. If it is disabled, existing products will be updated and any new products will also be added to the database, which will take more time. By default, this option is disabled.

If the **set Price Update Pricing to \$0.00** option is enabled, all prices will be set to \$0.00 when an update is performed. The prices in the update file will not be used. By default, this option is disabled.

### To set price update options:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- 3. In the **Options** dialog, select the **Quote** tab.
- 4. Check or uncheck the options in the *Price Update options* area (described above).

# Price Update options

5. Click **Close**. Your changes are saved.

set PriceUpdate Pricing to \$0.00

## 0.....

### Specifying Tax Rates in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

Price Update optio

Update Prices only

You can define up to three different taxes in your Quote Generator options. Defined tax rates are listed on the *Taxes* tab of the **Reports** window when viewing reports, allowing you to choose which taxes to apply when viewing a report.

### To set up tax rates:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- In the Options dialog, select the Misc. Options tab.
- 4. Define taxes by specifying a name and rate for each tax in the *Tax Setup* area. For each tax rate you can specify whether or not you want the tax to be automatically applied to product records when a quote is generated. If you enable the **Apply to Import Records** check box next to a tax rate, the corresponding **Tax** check box will be automatically enabled for all product records in Admin Mode. You can then disable tax for individual records where necessary.

Tax Setup		
Tax1 Name	Tax1 Rate	
Tax2 Name	Tax2 Rate	
Tax3 Name	Tax3 Rate	0

5. When you are done, click **Close**. Your settings are saved.

## Using the Type Ahead Feature in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

If the **Type Ahead** setting is enabled in your Options, a drop list will appear when you start typing a value in the SKU or Description column for new or existing records if the string matches the beginning characters of an item found in the database. You can then select an item from the list or keep typing. In the example below, typing 'PC' in the Sku column displays a list of Skus that begin with 'PC'.

#### PC080 PC0800 PC0800 PC100 PC100 PC100 PC12 PC12 PC22 PC220 PC22 PC220 PC0808 PC0808 PC0808 PC0810 PC10 PC1008 PC1008 PC1010 PC12 PC1210

Once you select the correct item (double-click an item in the list or press Enter after typing), the other cells in the record will automatically fill in with the correct information.

By default the Type Ahead feature is enabled, but you can disable it if you want to.

### To enable or disable the Type Ahead feature:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select Tools > Options.
- 3. In the **Options** dialog, select the **Quote** tab.
- In the *Misc* area, check or uncheck the **Enable** Type Ahead feature check box.
- 5. Click **Close**. Your settings are saved.

## Adding Estimators to Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

The Options in Quote Generator include a database of estimator names. Any names that you enter in this database will then be available when specifying estimator information for a quote.

### To add estimators to QG:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.

- In the Options dialog, select the Misc.
   Options tab.
- To add a new estimator to the list, click the Add button in the *Estimators* area.
- 5. Enter the estimator's name, then press Enter or click **OK**.
- 6. To edit an existing name, double-click the name in the list and then type the desired name.
- 7. To remove a name from the list, select the name and then click the **Delete** button.
- 8. When you are done, click **Close**. Your changes are saved.

## Verifying Customer Information in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

Each quote can be verified to make sure it contains basic Customer Information. If you enable the Customer Verification option you can choose which fields that you want to be mandatory. The selected fields will then be checked to make sure they are filled out when you save and/or export the quote, and/or when you generate reports, depending on the options you have selected. If one of the mandatory fields is blank upon verification, you will be prompted to fill it out. By default, the Customer Verification option is disabled.

### To set Customer Verification settings:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- 3. In the **Options** dialog, select the **Customer Verification** tab.
- 4. If you want to verify customer information, enable the **Verify Customer Information** check box.

Store Information Quote Options Misc. O	ptions Customer
Verify Customer Information	
Verify when	
Saving Quote Exporting Quote	Generating Reports
No. 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	
Fields to Verify	
Customer ID	Cor
Company Name	E Pho
First Name	🗆 Fao
Last Name	□ E-M
☐ Address	E Pur
□ City	E Qu
State   Province	Est
E Zie   Bestel Code	
Default State NA  Default Country Canada	☐ Est
Default State NA  Default Country Canada	☐ Est
Default State NA  Default Country Canada Close	☐ Est
Default State NA  Default Country Canada Close	☐ Est
	☐ Est
Lip Postal Code	☐ Est
	☐ Est
	_ Est
	☐ Est
	☐ Est
	☐ Est

- Specify when you would like customer verification to occur. Options are Saving Quote, Exporting Quote and Generating Reports.
- 6. In the *Verify Fields* area, select the fields that you want to verify by enabling their check boxes. Note that checked fields are marked with an asterisk (*) in the Customer Information window when you are entering customer information.
- 7. To set a default province or state for the Customer Information window, make a selection from the **Default State** drop box. This can

save you a step when you are entering customer information. (You will be able to override the default if needed.)

- 8. To set a default country for the Customer Information window, make a selection from the **Default Country** drop box.
- 9. When you are done specifying customer verification settings, click **Close**. Your changes are saved.

## Verifying Product Information (QG)

Construction Suite only

Each quote can be verified to make sure that product records are complete. If you enable the Product Verification option you can choose which fields that you want to be mandatory. The selected fields will then be checked to make sure they are filled out when you save and/or export the quote, and/or when you generate reports, depending on the options you have selected. If one of the mandatory fields is blank upon verification, you will be prompted to fill it out. By default, the Product Verification option is disabled.

### To verify product information:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- Scroll over in the **Options** dialog and select the **Product Verification** tab.
- To enable product verification, check the Verify Production Information check box.

Misc. Options   Customer Ve	rification Product Verification
Verify Product Information	
Verify when	_
Saving Quote Expo	orting Quote Generating Rep
Fields to Verify	
Product Sku	
Delete Sku	a an destruction of provide structures.
Product Name	
Cost Price	
Order Quantity	
Retail Price	
Total (Product) Price	
Verify Failed Action	_
Verify Failed Action	Cancel One
Verify Failed Action	Close
Verify Failed Action	e Cancel.One
Verify Failed Action	Close
Verify Failed Action  Control Customer Verification  Product Verification Verify Product Verification	Close
Verify Failed Action  Verify Failed Action  Option Display Warping message  Option Custoer Verification  Protect Verification  Prote	Close
Verify Failed Action  Verify Failed Action  Other Content of the second	Close
Verify Failed Action  Control Contener Verification  Product Verification  Verify Paale  Control Contener Verification  Product Veri	Close
Verify Failed Action  Verify Failed Action  Cotors Custoer Verification  Product Verification  Verify Product Information  Information  Cotors Custoer Verification  Product Information  Cotors Custoer Verification  Product Name  Product Name  Product Name	Close
Verify Failed Action  Verify Failed Action  Options Contener Vertication  Product Vertication  Vertify Product Information  Vertify Product Sta  P	Close
Verify Failed Action  Verify Failed Action  Control Casteer Verification  Product Verification  Verify Product Information  Verify Product Information  Verify Product Information  Product Sta  Product	Close
Verify Failed Action  Verify Failed Action  Control Casteer Verifation  Protect Verification  Verify Product Information  Verify Product Infor	Close
Verify Failed Action  Verify Failed Action  Control Custoer Verification  Product Verification  Verify Product Information  Verify Product Information  Verify Product Information  Product Sta  Product	Close
Verify Failed Action  Verify Failed Action  Control Casteer Verifation  Product Verifa	Close
Verify Failed Action  Verify Failed Action  Control Catener Verifation  Verify Product Verifation  Verify Product Verifation  Verify Product Verifation  Product Verifation  Product Verifation  Product Name  Cost Proc  Proc  Proc  Proc  Proc  Proc Proc	Close

- Specify when you would like customer verification to occur. Options are Saving Quote, Exporting Quote and Generating Reports.
- 6. In the *Fields to Verify* area, select the fields that you want to verify by enabling their check boxes. Be aware of the **Delete Sku** option. If it is enabled, any record that does not have a Sku number when products are verified will be deleted.
- 7. In the *Verify Failed Action* area, specify whether you want to display warnings during the product verification process or stop

the process until issues with products are resolved.

8. Click **Close**. Your settings are saved.

## Viewing and Managing the Quote Generator Program Log (QG)

Construction Suite only

The Program Log in Quote Generator keeps track of the program's general operations and any errors that occur during work sessions. You can view this log at any time, and you can e-mail it to others as well. As time goes on and entries continue to be added, the Program Log will grow in size. When you are finished with a particular project, you may want to clear the program log to reduce its size.

### To view the Program Log:

In Quote Generator, select Tools > Program
 Log > View. The Program Transaction
 Logbook is displayed.

Program Transaction Logbook

EntryDate: March-05-10 EntryTime: 2:44:52 PM Transaction: dBase:Add Products Details: Total records in Update file = 1892, Records Updated

EntryDate: March-05-10 EntryTime: 2:44:52 PM Transaction: Data: Update Product records Details: Product Update completed I

EntryDate: March-08-10 EntryTime: 9:42:34 AM Error = TRUE Transaction: Data:Update DTool Mapping File Details: DTools folder was not found ! Mapped Sku Update fil

EntryDate: March-08-10 EntryTime: 9:42:34 AM Transaction: Data:Update DTool Mapping File Details: Mapped records Updated to dBase = 3

EntryDate: March-08-10 EntryTime: 1:05:18 PM Transaction: dBase:Add Products Details: Total records in Update file = 1892, Records Updates

EntryDate: March-08-10 EntryTime: 1:05:19 PM Transaction: Data:Update Product records Details: Product Update completed !



 When you are done viewing the log, click Close in the log book.

#### To clear the Program Log:

- Select Tools > Program Log > Clear. All entries are cleared from the log.
- 2. Click OK in the message dialog.

#### To e-mail the Program Log:

- 1. Select **Tools > Program Log > E-mail**. Your e-mail program opens.
- 2. In your e-mail program, select the e-mail address to which you want to send the program log.
- Attach the LuxwoodAppLog.xml file to the email. This file is found in the main Quote Generator folder (e.g. C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envisioneer\QuoteGenerator)
- 4. Send the e-mail.

### **Reports (QG)**

Construction Suite only

Once you have manipulated the data in the quote grid to suit your needs, you can instantly view reports based on the data in the quote and the quote settings. Reports are displayed in the **Reports** window. There are a number of pre-defined reports available product quotes, a pull list, a price quote, and an order summary. When viewing a report you can filter selected information from the report, and specify how you would like to group and sort records. You can also choose to apply tax.

You can use the Customer Information tool to customize the customer information and estimator information that appears on the report. If you want to customize the company information, you need to modify your QG Options.

When you are viewing a report you can print the report as well as create a PDF of the report directly from the **Reports** window.

You can customize the existing reports or create new ones using the Report Designer. When customizing a report you can specify a custom company header, customize the footer, control column widths and settings, specify custom grouping and sorting options, select font styles for the headings and body text, define page margins, and choose a page orientation.

### Specifying Customer Information in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

By default, reports generated in Quote Generator include fields for customer information in the report header. This appears as the 'Bill To' and 'Ship To' information. When you generate a quote you can use the Customer Information tool to enter a customer's information. The customer information fields will then be filled out properly in your reports.

### To specify customer information:

- 1. In Quote Generator, click 🍓 🚵 on the toolbar above the quote grid.
- Fill out the fields in the Customer Information dialog. If you have imported customer records into Quote Generator with the Import Customers tool, you can click on

### Select Customer

Select Customer and select a customer

from the customer database. The fields in the **Customer Information** dialog will then be automatically filled out with the customer's information.

The **Sold To Information** tab has the same fields as the **Ship To Information** tab. You can specify different information on each tab (so the billing address is different than the shipping address), or click

### same as SoldTo

same as SoldTo ON

the **Ship To Information** tab to automatically match the 'Ship To' information to the 'Sold To' information.

⁻ denotes Manda	iory rield				
SoldTo Informat	on Ship	To Informati	on Estima	tor Information	Misc Information
Customer ID	project .b	ld			
Company					
First Name					
Last Name					
Address					
City					
State/Prov	NA	-	·		
Zip/Postal					
Country	Canada		-		
Phone					
Fax					
E-Mail					

To specify additional information, such as the Purchase Order number, Invoice number and Delivery Date, select the **Misc Information** tab and fill out the fields there.

* denotes Mandatory Field			
SoldTo Information   Ship	To Information Est	imator Informa	ion Misc Information
Purchase Order#			
Invoice#		Date 02/03/	2010 👻
Order#		Date 02/03/	2010 -

3. When you are done, click **OK**.

## Specifying Quote and Estimator Information in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

When a quote is generated you can specify various types of information that can appear on reports, such as the Quote ID, Quote Name, Creation Date, Status, Expiry Date, estimator name and estimator notes.

- In Quote Generator, click A on the toolbar above the quote grid.
- 2. In the **Customer Information** dialog, select the *Estimator Information* tab.
- 3. Fill out the fields on that tab.

denotes Mandatory	Field			
SoldTo Information	ShipTo Information	Estimator Informa	ation	Misc Information
Quote ID		Creation Date Mar	ch-02-	10
Quote Name	м	odification Date Mar	ch-02-	10
Quote Description				
Statu		•		
	Quote Length (Days)	0 🛨		
Expiry Dal	March-02-10			
Estimator				-
Notes				
				<u>^</u>
				Ŧ

4. To specify additional information, such as the Purchase Order number, Invoice number and Delivery Date, select the **Misc Information** tab and fill out the fields there.

denotes Mandatory	Field			
SoldTo Information	Ship To Information	Estimator	Information	Misc Information
Purchase Ore	ler#			
Invoi	ce#	Date	02/03/2010	-
Ore	ier#	Date	02/03/2010	-

5. When you are done, click **Close**.

## Viewing Reports in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

Once you have set up your product records in the quote grid, you can view reports based on the information in the quote. There are five pre-defined reports available when you view reports:

Main Quote. Products and sub-totals per phase.

**Product Quote**. Products and total price.

Total Price Quote. No products, total price only.

Pull List. Products by SKU.

**Order Summary**. Itemized quote with sub-totals and total price.

While you are viewing a report you can filter out selected information from the report, change the sort order of information, and apply tax. You can also print reports and create PDF files directly from the **Reports** dialog. You can use the Report Designer to modify the design of existing reports, and create new reports as well.

To view reports for the current quote:

1. In Quote Generator, select **File > Reports** or

click on the toolbar below the menus. The **Reports** window is displayed.

Categories		Reports	Quote - Complete
Calegones	Select All	<b>s</b> 🗈 2	, - ₿ ₿ ₿
Status	Include 🔺		
02	✓		
09	✓		
20	✓		
22	✓		
27	✓		
31	✓		Cadsoft
46	✓		
48	✓ 🔤		
NΔ			
CPhases (Delivery Load)		Custom	er.
Critiases (Derivery Load)	Select All	pe_proje	setbol
CPhase	Include 🔺	, NA	
0003 - Wall Systems	⊻	Phone	Fax
0004 - Roof Systems	⊻	- 101	
0005 - Exterior Openings	⊻		
0007 - Interior Wall Surfaces	⊻	sku	Description
0008 - Interior Trim & Doors	⊻	ENV/8/0	ONER
0009 - Exterior Finish	⊻	3224888	E 30 Hinges Door Ev18 32' Build Wood Door w' Buelle
0010 - Interior Finish		NOO DF	L1 Hardwood Floor 1 <default></default>
0011 - Exterior Construction	✓ ↓	Fireplace 268F	12 MartelFiteplace 2 2x6x8 Doug Fit // Nior better - Hi
0013 - MISC		21085	2x10x8 Doug F k/L(N) or better - k
		24125	2x4x12
Usage	Dou	2414F 2416F	2x4x14 2x4x16
	Select All	2108F 21010F	2xr10x8 2xr10x10
		210125	2x10x12
Usage	Include 🔺	21016	2x10x16
0007 - Sill Plate		210205	2x10x26
UUIU - Header		21028F CLAYER	2x10x28 RICK Common City Brick
UUI2 - Wall Insulation		WALLTE	E Common Wall Tie
UUI3 - Wall Sheathing		Ouste:	
0016 - Drywall			
0018 - Paint / Finish			
0022 - Trim			
0027 - Rafter	¥ _		
0035 - Roof Sheathing			
		A Levi	

- To select a report to view, click the **Reports** drop box at the top of the dialog and make your selection.
- 3. To filter categories, phases or usages from the report, click the **Filter 1** tab in the top left corner of the dialog.

To omit selected categories from the report, disable their check boxes in the *Categories* area.

To omit selected construction phases from the report, disable their check boxes in the *CPhases (Delivery Load)* area.

To omit selected usages from the report, disable their check boxes in the *Usage* area.

To see filter changes that you have made,

click re-Generate Report

4. To filter project information, manufacturers or comment records from the report, select the **Filter 2** tab.

In the *Projects* area in the left pane, make sure that the **Envisioneer** option remains checked. If you want to remove any entries that have no data assigned to them, disable the **NA** check box.

To omit selected manufacturers from the report, disable their check boxes in the *Manufacturers* area.

If you want to include comment records in the report, enable the **Include Comment Records** check box.

To change the sort order of information in the report, click the **Group-Sort** tab at the top of the dialog.

In the **Group By** area, select the option that you want to group information by (Category, CPhase, etc.). Selecting the **No Grouping** option displays items in the same order as they appear in the quote grid. If the **Combine Similar Products** option is selected, any records in the same Group which contain the same Sku# will be combined into one record. If the **Include Group sub-Totals** option is selected, sub-totals will be displayed within each group.

You can choose to sort products by **Sku** or by **Description**. Choose the desired option in the **Sort By** area. You can sort items in ascending or descending order.

To see sorting changes that you have made,



 To filter product records from the report, select the **Display** tab. Click **Display All** to instantly select all products in the list. Click **Hide All** to instantly de-select all products in the list. You can also select or de-select individual products in the list by clicking inside their check boxes. To update the report with your changes, click

ļ	re-Generate Report	
,	re-Generate Report	

**Note**: Hidden products are still included in all price calculations.

7. To apply tax to products, select the **Taxes** tab at the top of the dialog. You can apply up to three taxes. To apply a tax, enter a name for the tax in the edit box, then enter a percentage in the adjacent edit box, or use the arrow keys to scroll through a list of values. To apply the tax, enable the **Apply Tax** check box next to the defined tax. To update the report, click



8. To specify page settings for the current report, such as paper size, orientation or

margins, click the Page Setup button above the report preview window, then specify the desired settings in the **Page Setup** dialog.



When you click **OK**, you will be asked if you want to reflow the document with the new settings. Selecting **Yes** applies the new settings to the report preview.

To print the current report, click solution
 above the report preview window. In the

**Print** dialog, select a printer and specify your print settings, then click **OK**.

10. To change the size of the page in the preview window, select one of the options above the report preview window.

**Actual Size**. Displays the report using the page size selected in the Page Setup dialog.

**Full Size**. Ensures that the entire page (including margins) is visible inside the preview window.

**Page Width**. Extends the report page to the extents of the preview window.

11. To zoom in or out in the preview window,

- 12. To change the zoom level inside the preview window, make the desired selection from the zoom level drop box 5%
  6%
  below the preview window.
- 13. If the report has more than one page, you can go from page to page using the page navigation drop box in the page navigation drop box in the preview window.
- 14. To create a PDF of the current report, click the Create PDF button at the bottom of the dialog. The PDF is created automatically and is saved in Quote Generator's 'Exports' folder. (e.g. C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envisioneer\QuoteGenerator\Exports)

## Printing Reports in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

When you view reports using the Reports tool in Quote Generator, you can print the reports directly from the Reports dialog.

To print reports:

- In Quote Generator, select File > Reports or click on the toolbar below the menus. The Reports window is displayed.
- Click the **Reports** drop box at the top of the dialog and select the report that you want to view.
- 3. To specify page settings for the current report, such as paper size, orientation or

margins, click the Page Setup button above the report preview window, then specify the desired settings in the **Page Setup** dialog.



When you click **OK**, you will be asked if you want to reflow the document with the new settings. Selecting **Yes** applies the new settings to the report preview.

To print the current report, click solution
 above the report preview window. In the Print dialog, select a printer and specify your print settings, then click OK. The report is printed.

## Creating a PDF of a Report in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

When you view reports using the Reports tool in Quote Generator, you can instantly create a PDF file of the current report which can be e-mailed to others and viewed and printed in Adobe® Reader®.

### To create a PDF of a report:

1. In Quote Generator, select **File > Reports** or

click 📕 🗔 on the toolbar below the

menus. The **Reports** window is displayed.

- 2. Click the **Reports** drop box at the top of the dialog and select the report that you want to view.
- 3. To specify page settings for the current report, such as paper size, orientation or

margins, click the Page Setup button above the report preview window, then specify the desired settings in the **Page Setup** dialog.



When you click **OK**, you will be asked if you want to reflow the document with the new settings. Selecting **Yes** applies the new settings to the report preview.

 Click the Create PDF button at the bottom of the dialog. The PDF is created automatically and is saved in Quote Generator's 'Exports' folder. (e.g. C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envisioneer\QuoteGenerator\Exports)

## Customizing Reports in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

There are a number of different ways that you can customize reports in Quote Generator — you can even create new ones. Using the Report Designer you can customize the **report content**, such as the header and footer information, grouping, and sort order of products, and the **report layout**, including fonts, margins and spacing. The Report Designer provides a preview of your report design so you can see what it will look like.

To customize reports:

1. In Quote Generator, select **Tools > Report** 

**Designer** or click **I and Constant** on the toolbar below the menus. The **Report Designer** dialog appears.

Report Designer

Reports Report Layout Group-Sort Product Filter Prev

Report Name	Report Title
Quote - Complete	General E
Quote - Main Quote	Quote by P
Quote - Products	Products a
Quote - NO Products - Total Price only	Quote
Pull List	Pull List
Quote - Deck Railings	Basic Repo
Order Summarv	Order Sum

	Report Header options (1st page only)	Report
	Company Header Section Height (Inches)	□ inclu
	<ul> <li>✓ include Company Header</li> <li>○ Text only</li> <li>○ Text and Logo</li> <li>④ Banner</li> <li>✓ include Customer Information</li> </ul>	☐ inclu ☐ inclu ☐ inclu ☐ inclu ☐ inclu ☐ inclu ☐ inclu
	Misc options Display Individual records Include Comment records	use l
c	lose -	

Report	Name	Report Title
Quote -	Complete	General Estimate by Phase & U
Quote -	Main Quote	Quote by Phase
Quote -	Products	Products and Pricing
Quote -	NO Products - Total Price only	Quote
Pull List	Daah Dailian	Pull List
	Deck Railings	Basic Report
	1.5 🚖 clude Company Header Text only Text and Logo Banner clude Customer Information	include Estimator Notes include Quote Totals include Customer Signature include Estimator Signature include DTools Details include DTools Images include DTools Postframe S
Misc Dis Inc	options play Individual records Iude Comment records	include External File

- 2. The order in which reports appear in the list on the **Reports** tab is the order in which they will appear in the **Reports** dialog when you view reports. To change the order in which reports appear, select the one in the list that you want to move, then click the up or down arrow to the right of the list box or right-click and select **Move Up** or **Move Down** to move it up or down in the list.
- To delete a report from the list, select the report and then right-click and select **Delete Report**. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 4. To prevent a report from appearing in the **Reports** dialog when you view reports, disable its check box in the *Active* column.
- 5. To edit the design of an existing report, select it in the list. It will be highlighted. Edit the settings in the dialog to suit your needs (see step 7).
- 6. To create a new report, right-click in the report list and select **New Report**. You will be prompted to specify a name for the report (as it appears in the list) as well as the title that you would like to appear on the actual report.

7. Specify the settings for the currently selected report. There are five tabs in the **ReportDesigner** dialog. The settings on each tab are described below.

### **REPORTS TAB**

The Reports tab lets you determine which information you would like to appear in the report.

Report Header options (1st page only)

The header is the area at the top of the report.

#### **Company Header Section Height (Inches).**

The amount of space at the top of the report allotted for company information (logo and/or address). You can specify a height between 0" and 6". Note that the defined space remains on the report even if you choose not to include a company header.

**Include Company Header**. Displays company information in the header section at the top of the report. Company information (including the logo) is specified in your Quote Generator Options. See *Specifying Company Information in Quote Generator* on page 497. If you are printing on company letterhead (that already has company information on it), you will want to disable this option.

**Text only**. Displays only the company address and contact information as defined in your Options.

**Text and logo**. Displays the company information and the company logo (a small graphic) as defined in your Options.

**Banner**. Displays the company banner (larger graphic), which usually includes a logo and company address.

Include Customer Information. Adds a section below the company header that includes the customer's information ('Bill To' and 'Ship To' information). You can specify customer information using the Customer Information tool on the toolbar above the quote grid. If the Customer Information option is turned on, but you have not entered customer information, customer data fields will still appear on the report, but they will be empty.

#### **Misc Options**

**Display Individual Records**. Displays product records in the report. You would disable this option if you wanted to display only Groupings with totals.

**Display Comment Records**. If you have chosen to display product records in the report, this lets you choose whether or not you want to include comment records as well.

<u>Report Footer Options (last page only)</u> The footer is the area below the product list where things like price totals are displayed.

**Include Taxes and Grand Total**. Displays the tax names and total tax amounts as well as the total price. Taxes are specified on the *Taxes* tab in the **Reports** dialog when you view reports.

**Include Estimator Notes**. Adds a 'Notes' section at the bottom of the report that includes the estimator's notes, estimator's name, preparation date, and the number of days the quote is valid for. All of this information is specified on the Estimator Information tab in the Customer Information dialog. See *Specifying Quote and Estimator Information in Quote Generator* on page 506.

**Include Quote Totals**. Displays the total *Retail* price, *Cost Extension*, and *Total Profit*.

**Include Quote Details**. Displays the *Markup Average* and *Margin Average*.

Include Customer Signature Line. Adds a Customer section at the bottom of the report that includes lines for the Customer Signature, Customer Name, Title, and Date. Include Estimator Signature Line. Adds an Estimator section at the bottom of the report that includes lines for the Estimator Signature, Estimator Name, Title, and Date.

**DTools options**. If you are using the version of Quote Generator that ships with Envisioneer, the **DTools** options are not applicable. If you have Luxwood's *Design* 

*Tools* application installed and are using the full version of Quote Generator from Luxwood, you can choose to include details, images and postframe specifications from *Design Tools* quotes that you have imported into Quote Generator.

**Include External File**. Displays a custom note at the bottom of the report. If you would like to include a custom note in a report's footer, enable the **Include External File** check box. You can then choose the text file to display, or use a default external TXT file that you have created and placed in Quote Generator's *Data* folder.

To select a custom file on your system, click the **Browse** button associated with this option, then, locate and select the TXT or RTF file containing the note. The file name will then be displayed in the edit box below the **Include External File** option. (To undo your choice and clear the field, click **Clear**.)

To use a default note that you have created and saved in QG's Data folder, enable the **use ExtFile.xxx File in the...\Data Folder** check box. For more information see Creating a Default External Text File for Use in Quote Generator Reports on page 499.

#### **REPORT LAYOUT TAB**

On the Report Layout tab you can choose which columns you want to include in the report, the order of columns, and the width and spacing of columns. You can also select the font style and size you want to use for headings and body text, select a page orientation, and set your page margins.

#### Column Settings

**Column**. A list of columns that you can include in the report is displayed.

**Include**. Enable the Include check boxes of the columns that you want to include in the report. When you enable a column, it is automatically assigned the next available Order ID number.

**Column Name**. The column heading as it appears in the report.

**Order ID**. The numbers indicate where each column appears in the report. The column with the Order ID of **1** will be the first column. A column with an ID of **2** will appear second, and so on.

**Alignment**. Choose either a *Left*, *Right* or *Center* alignment for the column text. Numeric data usually gets filled in starting from the right so it stays aligned.

**Width**. The width of a column in twips. Twip is an abbreviation for 'twentieth of an inch point'. It is a unit of measure that determines the width of something in print or on the screen. It equals 1/1440 inch or 1/567 of a centimeter.

**Spacing**. The spacing between one column and the next (in twips).

**Wrap**. If the data in a column is too long to fit the column width, enabling the Wrap option will wrap it onto another line. Otherwise the data may be cut off.

#### Font Settings

You can select a font type, size and style for report Headings and for body text. Selecting different font settings for headings and body text helps to differentiate headings from actual data, making the report easier to read.

### Margins

Margins create space between the edges of the paper and the report text. You can specify a different margin size for each side of the page.

### Page Orientation

The report page can have either a Portrait (vertical) or Landscape (horizontal) orientation. If you have a lot of columns in your report or your columns are fairly wide, you may be warned that the current layout exceeds the size of the report. Switching to a Landscape orientation may solve this problem.

### **GROUP-SORT TAB**

#### Group By

Select the option that you want to group information by (Category, CPhase, etc.).

Selecting the **No Grouping** option will display all records line by line with no breaks whereas selecting one of the other Group options will break the records into their respective groups with a Group Heading.

If the **Combine Similar Products** option is selected, any records in the same Group which contain the same Sku# will be combined into one record. If the **Include Group sub-Totals** option is selected, sub-

totals will be displayed within each group.

Records with Group names that do not exist in the Group list will be added to the report below the Group list names. You can choose to list groups in ascending or descending order, or in the order in which they appear in Quote Generator. Select either **Asc**, **Desc** or **QG List** in the *GroupBy* area.

#### Sort By

You can choose to sort products by **Product Sku** or by **Product Description**.

Note that the Group by and Sort by options are *defaults*. These same options are found in the Reports window which allows you to override the defaults.

#### GroupBy Filter

Once you have select a Group option in the *GroupBy* area on the left side of the **Group-Sort** page, a list of groups appears in the *GroupBy Filter* area on the right side of the page. Here you can choose which groups you want to display in the report. You can click **Display All** to instantly select all the groups in the list, or click **Hide All** to instantly deselect all the groups in the list. You can also select or de-select individual groups by clicking inside their check boxes.

To include any groups that are not shown in the list, enable the **Include Non-Listed Groups in Report** check box.

### PRODUCT FILTER TAB

Once you have specified your Group and Sort options, you can filter individual products from the report. Note that these settings only apply if the **Include Individual Records** option is enabled on the *Reports* tab.

Click **Display All** to instantly select all products in the list. Click **Hide All** to instantly de-select all products in the list. You can also select or de-select individual products in the list by clicking inside their check boxes.

To hide non-stock items in reports (items that are not in the database), enable the **Hide Non-Stock Records** check box.

#### Notes:

Product filtering in the Report Designer applies to products in the database only.

Product filtering applies to all reports.

Hidden records are still included in all price calculations.

Remember that these are simply the default settings. Products in reports can be displayed or hidden individually on the *Display* tab of the **Reports** dialog.

### PREVIEW TAB

This tab displays a preview of the currently selected report using generic data. It shows you what the report will look like with the settings that you have specified. You can scroll up and down in the preview window as well as left and right depending on the zoom level. You can zoom in using the Zoom tool above the preview window. Arrows at the top of the window allow you to navigate from one page to the next.

 When you are done customizing a report, right-click in the **Report Designer** and select **Save Changes**. (Otherwise, you will be prompted to save changes when you close the dialog.)

### Quote Files (QG)

Construction Suite only

Quote Generator's 'File' menu contains tools for managing your quote files. You can save your quote, open a saved quote, and export a quote to a POS or accounting system.

As you work on your quote, the program keeps track of operations in the quote log, which you can view at any time. You can also view the total retail price for a project in the quote summary.

### Saving a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

You can save the current quote under its current name using the Save tool. You can also save the quote under a different name using the Save As tool. Quotes are saved in XML format. Quote Generator will prompt you to save a quote when you exit the program, so you don't have to worry about losing any changes.

#### To save a quote:

1. In Quote Generator, select **File > Save** or

click **I** on the toolbar. The file is saved. By default, the file is saved in Quote Generator's 'QGquotes' folder (e.g. *C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envisioneer\QuoteGenerator\QGquotes*).

2. Click **OK.** 

**Note**: Quote Generator automatically assigns a file name and saves it in a default folder. If a quote is sent to QG again, you have the option of reloading the saved QG version or loading the new one from Envisioneer. Having the ability to reload a quote is especially useful if you have modified skus, pricing, and other data. To be able to reload a quote, you should accept the default file name and folder that QG assigns. Otherwise, QG will not be able to find the saved quote. If you decide to change the file name or save folder, you can open the saved quote using the Open tool.

**Note**: If a quote is generated more than once from the same source, a number is added to the end of the file name (e.g. ENV_TEMPQGTMPFILE_1.xml) to differentiate it from other quotes that have been generated.

#### To save a quote under a different name:

- 1. In Quote Generator, select **File > Save As**.
- In the Save Quote dialog, specify a name and location for the file, then click Save.
- 3. Click **OK**.

**Tip**: You can enable the Auto Save setting in your Options to save your file at regular intervals while you working.

### Specifying a Default Save Location for Quotes (QG)

Construction Suite only

If you want quotes to be saved in a location other than the default location, you can specify the default save location in your QG Options.

#### To specify a default save location for quotes:

- 1. In Quote Generator, select **Tools > Options**.
- 2. In the **Options** dialog, select the **Saving** tab.
- 3. In the Local Folder area, click

Browse... Browse...

4. In the **Browse for Folder** dialog, select the location where you want quotes to be saved by default, then click **OK**. The location path is displayed in the **Local Folder** edit box on the Saving page.

If no folder is selected, files will be saved in the following folder: *C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envisioneer* \QuoteGenerator\QGquotes.

## Setting the Auto Save in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

The Auto Save option saves your quote for you automatically when you close the program. With Auto Save enabled you will not be prompted for a file name or location when it is time to save. Instead the file will simply be saved in the default save location specified in the Options dialog. If the quote currently does not have a name, a default one will be assigned.

#### To turn on the Auto Save feature:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- 3. In the **Options** dialog, select the **Saving** tab.

- 4. To turn Auto Save on, enable the **Auto Save** check box.
- 5. To specify a default save location for files,

click Browse Browse
---------------------

then select the desired folder and click **OK**. If no folder is selected, files will be saved in the following folder: *C:\Program Files\Cadsoft\Envisioneer* *QuoteGenerator\QGquotes*.

### **Opening a Saved Quote (QG)**

Construction Suite only

You can use the Open tool to open any quote in Quote Generator that you have saved with the Save or Save As tool.

#### To open a quote:

 In Quote Generator, select File > Open, or click on the toolbar. If another quote

is currently open, you will be prompted to save it.

 In the Open QG Quote dialog, locate and select the quote that you want to open, then click Open. The quote is loaded.

**Tip**: If more than one quote is open, you can switch between quotes using the Window menu in Quote Generator.

### Exporting a Quote (QG)

Construction Suite only

Once you have generated and prepared a quote in Quote Generator you can export it to a variety of Point of Sale (POS) and accounting systems. By default Quote Generator prompts you to select an export format, and exports the records in the order they appear in Quote Generator. You can set export options prior to exporting a quote.

The following formats are supported:

- Dimensions Canada | Silk POS
- Eagle | Falcon | Triad POS
- Enterprise Computer System (ECS)
- Generic (Export only)
- Luxwood Design Tools

- Luxwood On-Site Estimator
- Otto POS (Export only)
- Prism POS
- Profit Master POS
- Professional Estimating
- Quick Books (Export only)
- Spruce POS

### To export a quote to another program:

- 1. In Quote Generator, select **File > Export**, or
  - click 🗾 ᇘ on the toolbar.
- 2. In the **Export File Name** dialog, type a name for the exported file, then click **OK**.
- 3. Click the drop box arrow in the **Select the Destination Application** dialog, then select the application that you want to export the quote to, and click **OK**. Note that if you have selected a default export format in your export options, you will not be prompted to select a format.
- 4. Specify your export options in the Export Options dialog. If you have enabled the Display Export Filter-Group Options setting in your export options, you can set Filter, Group and Sort options in the Export Options dialog. As you set these options on the left side of the dialog, the preview pane on the right side of the dialog updates to show you how the records will be exported. If you want to revert to the original sort order, click Default Order at the bottom of the dialog. Note that the options available depend on the export format selected.

1248PLY 1248PLY 12CONC 12DRYWALL	1/2" 4x8 Standard Sheathing 1/2" 4x8 Standard Sheathing	31	000
1248PLY 12CONC 12DRYWALL	1/2" 4x8 Standard Sheathing		
12CONC 12DRYWALL		31	000
12DRYWALL	12" Thick 3000psi Concrete	31	000
	1/2" Standard Sheetrock Dry	31	000
12DRYWALL	1/2* Standard Sheetrock Dry	31	000
12SHEATH	4' x 8' Plywood Sheathing	31	000
1586CS	1-5/8" x 6" Concrete Sill	46	001
1586VCS	1-5/8" x 6" Vinyl Clad Sill	46	001
21010F	2x10x10	27	Flo
21010F	2x10x10	27	Floo
21010F	2x10x10	27	Floo
21010F	2x10x10	27	Floo
21012F	2x10x12	27	Floo
21012F	2x10x12	27	Floo
21014F	2x10x14	27	Floo
21014F	2x10x14	27	Floo
21016F	2x10x16	27	Floo
21016F	2x10x16	27	Floo
21020F	2x10x20	27	Floo
21020F	2x10x20	27	Floo
21022F	2x10x22	27	Floo
21022F	2x10x22	27	Floo
21026F	2x10x26	27	Floo
21026F	2x10x26	27	Floo
2108F	2x10x8	27	Floo
2108F	2x10x8	27	Floo
2410F	2x4x10	27	Wal
2410F	2x4x10	27	Wal
2412F	2x4x12	27	Wal
2412F	2x4x12	27	Wal
2414F	2x4x14	27	Wal
2414F	2x4x14	27	Wal
2416F	2x4x16	27	Wal
2416F	2x4x16	27	Wal
2418F	2x4x18	27	Wal
2418F	2x4x18	27	Wal
248F	2x4x8	27	Wal
1248E	2~1~2	27	1./2
	1586CS           1586VCS           21010F           21010F           21010F           21010F           21010F           21010F           21010F           21010F           21010F           21012F           21012F           21014F           21016F           21020F           21022F           21026F           2102F           2410F           2410F           2414F           2416F           2418F           2418F           2418F           2418F           2418F           2418F           2418F	1586CS       1-5/8" x 6" Concrete Sill         1588VCS       1-5/8" x 6" Vinyl Clad Sill         21010F       2x10x10         21010F       2x10x12         21012F       2x10x12         21014F       2x10x14         21016F       2x10x16         21010F       2x10x16         21010F       2x10x16         21010F       2x10x20         21020F       2x10x20         21020F       2x10x20         21020F       2x10x26         21020F       2x4x10         2410F       2x4x10	1586CS       1-5/8" x 6" Concrete Sill       46         1586VCS       1-5/8" x 6" Vinyl Clad Sill       46         21010F       2x10x10       27         21010F       2x10x12       27         21012F       2x10x12       27         21012F       2x10x14       27         21014F       2x10x14       27         21016F       2x10x16       27         21016F       2x10x16       27         21020F       2x10x20       27         21020F       2x10x20       27         21020F       2x10x20       27         21020F       2x10x20       27         21020F       2x10x26       27         21020F       2x10x26       27         21020F       2x10x26       27         21020F       2x10x26       27         21020F       2x10x8       27         21020F       2x10x8       27         2410F       2x4x10       27         2410F

New C.C.	Sku	Description	Cate
None Category	1248PLY	1/2" 4x8 Standard Sheathing	31
Project CPhase	1248PLY	1/2" 4x8 Standard Sheathing	31
	12CONC	12" Thick 3000psi Concrete	31
Mfg O Usage	12DRYWALL	1/2" Standard Sheetrock Dry	31
	12DRYWALL	1/2" Standard Sheetrock Dry	31
	12SHEATH	4' x 8' Plywood Sheathing	31
	1586CS	1-5/8" x 6" Concrete Sill	46
	1586VCS	1-5/8" x 6" Vinyl Clad Sill	46
	21010F	2x10x10	27
roup by	21010F	2x10x10	27
None C Category	21010F	2x10x10	27
D 1 1 C CD	21010F	2x10x10	27
Project CPhase	21012F	2x10x12	27
Mfg C Usage	21012F	2x10x12	27
ing couge	21014F	2x10x14	27
🛛 Asc 🛛 🗘 Desc 🔿 QG Lis	21014F	2x10x14	27
	21016F	2x10x16	27
Display Group Hdrs - Total	s 21016F	2x10x16	27
	21020F	2x10x20	27
NLY Display Group Totals	21020F	2x10x20	27
by	21022F	2x10x22	27
ku C Description	21022F	2x10x22	27
· Sku · Description	21026F	2x10x26	27
	21026F	2x10x26	27
	2108F	2x10x8	27
	2108F	2x10x8	27
	2410F	2x4x10	27
sc Options	2410F	2x4x10	27
Combine Similar Products	2412F	2x4x12	27
	2412F	2x4x12	27
Remove Comments	2414F	2x4x14	27
Set ALL Prices to 0	2414F	2x4x14	27
Contract Prices to 0	2416F	2x4x16	27
ONLY Display GRAND Tota	al 2416F	2x4x16	27
EVCLUDE Deminus I.	2418F	2x4x18	27
exported records	2418F	2x4x18	27
exported records	248F	2x4x8	27

**Filter By**. Allows you to choose the information that you want to include, and that which you want to omit. For example, if you want to omit records with a particular Usage, enable the *Usage* radio button, and then uncheck the usage that you want to omit in the list that appears. To disable all filtering (so everything is included), enable the *None* radio button.

**Group By**. Determines if records should be grouped together by a common factor. Selecting *None* will display all records line by line with no breaks whereas selecting one of the other Group options will break the records into their respective groups.

If the **Display Group Hdrs - Totals** check box is enabled, group headers along with group totals will be displayed.

If the **ONLY Display Group Totals** option is enabled, only group totals will be displayed

instead of all the individual items within each group.

**Sort By**. Determines the order that the records appear. Records can be sorted either in Ascending or Descending order. The Sort order works in conjunction with the Grouping options — records are Grouped then Sorted in each Group.

**Combine Similar Products**. If enabled, any records in the same Group which contain the same SKU# will be combined into one record.

**Remove Comments**. Removes comment records from the exported file.

**Set ALL Prices to 0**. Sets all prices in the exported file to 0.

**ONLY Display GRAND Total**. Exports the Grand Total only (one record).

**EXCLUDE Previously exported records**. If you have already exported products in the current file to your POS system, this option ensures that the same products are not exported again.

Note that when the **Combine Similar Products** is checked it affects the number of records exported. Also, when certain options are selected they may disable other options. For example, when **ONLY Display Group Totals** or **Display Grand Total only** are checked, the **Combine Same Skus**, **Set ALL Prices to Zero**, etc. options are disabled. Other options only affect the currently displayed records. For example, you can group by **CPhase** and then **Remove Comments** and/or **Set Prices to Zero** on the existing records.

- 5. To display the records as they appear in the quote window, click the **Quote Order** button at the bottom of the dialog.
- To save the current settings as the default, click the Save (Default Order) Options button. When the save has been confirmed, click OK.
- Once you have set your export options, click Export.

 In the Save Quote dialog, specify a file name and save location for the quote, then click Save.

**Note**: If you have specified in your export options that you want to run the external program on export, the program will launch automatically right after export.

### Setting Export Options in Quote Generator

Construction Suite only

If you plan to export your quote to an external POS or accounting program, you can set a number of options prior to export. You can select a default export format, and choose to launch an external program automatically upon export if you want. If you enable filtering in your export options, you will be prompted to specify filtering and sorting options during the export, providing precise control over the output.

You can also choose whether you want to save exported files in a local folder or on a remote server via FTP.

### To set export options:

- In Quote Generator, make sure that no quote is currently loaded. If a quote is currently loaded, select File > Open, then save or cancel the current quote. Then click Cancel in the Open QG Quote dialog.
- 2. Select **Tools > Options**.
- 3. In the **Options** dialog, select the **Export** tab.
- 4. If you want to select a default format to export to, scroll through the options in the **Default Export format** field until the format that you want is displayed. Note that if NONE is selected, you will prompted to select a format during export.
- 5. To run an external program automatically right after the quote is exported, enable the **Run External Program on Export** check box, then click **Browse**. Locate the file on your system. If this is not specified, QG will not be able to launch the external program upon export. The program can be an actual applic-

ation or a batch file that copies the files to a different location.

- 6. If you want to be able to specify what is included in the exported quote, and how records are sorted, enable the **Display Export** Filter-Group Options check box. For more information on these options, see *Exporting a Quote (QG)* on page 515.
- 7. If you want to save exported files to a folder on your system, enable the **Use Local Folder**

check box, then click

Browse...

**Browse...** next to the Local Folder edit box and select the desired folder. If no folder is selected, the file will be saved in the default save location: *C*:*Program Files**Cadsoft**Envisioneer**QuoteGenerator**Exports*.

 If you want to save exported files to a remote location, disable the Use Local Folder check box, then specify the details of the remote location in the Remote Serve (via FTP) area. To test the settings you have specified, click

Test Test

9. Click Close.

### Viewing the Quote Log (QG)

Construction Suite only

The Quote Log displays operations that have taken place in the current quote.

#### To view the quote log:

 In Quote Generator, select Tools > Quote Log.



2. When you are finished viewing the quote log, click **Close**.

### Viewing a Quote Summary (QG)

Construction Suite only

The Quote Summary displays each project and its Total Retail Price.

### To view a quote summary:

Click the Quote Summary button on the toolbar above the quote grid. The Quote Summary dialog box appears.

Quote Summary		l
Project ENVISIONEER		Total \$68,907.1
Quote Summary Project ENVISIONEER	Total \$68,907.18	

2. When you are finished viewing the summary, close the dialog.

### Quote Generator Program Settings

Construction Suite only

If you have upgraded from the standard version of Quote Generator and would like the upgraded version to launch when you select the Generate Quote tool in Envisioneer, you need to change the Quote Generator executable setting in Envisioneer.

If you have acquired a custom Quote Generator template (*.QGRPT file), you can specify that you want to use that custom template by editing your Quote Generator settings.

## Using a Different Version of Quote Generator

Construction Suite only
When you install Envisioneer, the standard version of Quote Generator is installed on your system. If you upgrade to a different version of Quote Generator, such as Quote Generator Pro, you can specify that you want the upgraded version to launch when you select the Generate Quote tool in Envisioneer.

#### To specify the Quote Generator executable to use:

- 1. In Envisioneer, select Settings > Quote Generator Settings.
- 2. In the **Quote Generator Settings** dialog, click **Select** next to the *Current Executable* edit box.
- 3. Locate the executable (*.exe) file for the Quote Generator program you want to use, then click **Open**. The executable is now set.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Using a Custom Quote Generator Template

Construction Suite only

A template determines how and what information is passed from Envisioneer to Quote Generator. If you have acquired a custom template (*.QGRPT file), you can specify that you would like Envisioneer to use that custom template.

#### To use a custom Quote Generator template:

- 1. Select Settings > Quote Generator Settings.
- 2. In the **Quote Generator Settings** dialog, click **Select** next to the *Current Template* edit box.
- 3. Locate the desired template (*.QGRPT file), then click **Open**. The template is now set.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Upload to ERP

If your organization uses an Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) system, you can connect to it directly from Envisioneer and upload an order to it using the Upload to ERP tool.

# Uploading Data to an ERP System

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite You can use the **Upload to ERP** tool to upload a drawing's quantitative data to a remote Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) system. Initially you will need to define the URL of the ERP system, enter your sign-in credentials, and specify upload options.

### To upload data to an ERP system:

1. Select Tools > Analyze > Upload to ERP, or

click on the Analyze toolbar.

To set up a link to an ERP system, click is next to the ERP System drop box. Or, to edit the details of an existing link, select it from the drop box, then click is in the ERP Link Details dialog box:

ERP Link Details	
Description:	1
Template:	Standard Report Form
Page UDL -	
base UKL:	
Validate Co	ntract Number
Request Dr	awing Uploads
Validate Es	timate Before Upload
User Na	me:
Passwor	rd:
	ОК

ERP Link Details	
Description:	
Template:	Standard Report Form $\checkmark$
Base URL:	
🗌 Validate Co	ontract Number
Request D	rawing Uploads
Validate Es	timate Before Upload
User Na	ime:
Passwo	rd:
	OK Cancel

The following is a brief description of the settings:

**Description**: The name to be displayed in the **ERP System** drop box.

**Template**: The report template that will be used to format the data.

Base URL: Example: http://www.your.com/

Validate Contract Number: Displays the following panel in the Upload to ERP System dialog box:

Project Information		
Contract Number		]
		-
Description of Lab		
Project Information		
Contract Number	Customer Name	
	Area	

**Request Drawing Uploads**: Displays a browse feature in the **Upload to ERP System** dialog box, enabling you to upload drawings from your local machine.

Drawings	Select
Drawings Select	

Validate Estimate Before Upload: Enables the online system to confirm that all elements in the estimate are valid. Elements may be considered invalid if they are not recognized by the system, if they are outside of the user's price range, and so on.

**User Name/Password**: The credentials you use to sign in to the ERP system.

- Once you have specified a link to an ERP System, it will become an available option in the ERP System drop box. Select it to continue.
- If Request Drawing Uploads is enabled in the link's details, you can click Select, then use the file browser to select drawings for upload.

A report is displayed in the dialog which combines data from the report template with data pulled from the online ERP system.

- From the Please Choose Upload Type drop box, select either Original Order, Changed Order, or Final Order to identify the identify the status of the order.
- 6. Click **OK** to begin the upload.

## Schedules

You can display, print and insert complete door, window, member or room region schedules for each location in your project. By default, doors, windows or members are tagged with schedule marks that link them to the associated schedule. By default, doors and windows are tagged with schedule marks that link them to the associated schedule.

You can edit a schedule's layout, text styles and line styles, and control the content and style of schedule marks.

## Generating a Door Schedule

You can instantly view a door schedule for any location in your project. The schedule displays a detailed description of each door type on the selected location, as well as the count for each door type. You can insert the schedule in your project with a simple mouse click. By default, the doors in your project are tagged with schedule marks when you insert the schedule.

### To generate a door schedule:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Schedules > Door Schedule, or click : on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. To edit the title of the schedule, edit the heading in the **Schedule Title** edit box.
- To view a schedule for another building location, select the desired location from the Reference Building Location drop box.
- To prevent the doors in your project from being tagged with schedule marks, disable the Tag Elements with Schedule Mark check box.
- To edit the layout or appearance of the schedule or schedule marks, click Setup. See the following topics:

Defining the Field Layout of a Schedule

Defining the Text Styles in a Schedule

Defining the Line Styles in a Schedule Defining Schedule Marks

6. To print the schedule, click **____**, then make the desired selections in the **Print** dialog.

- To insert the schedule in your project, click OK. (Otherwise, click Cancel to exit the dialog.) The schedule is attached to your cursor, ready to be inserted.
- 8. Position the schedule where you want it, then click to insert it.

**NOTE:** Doors that have the *Include in Quantities* option disabled on the Door's Quantity properties page will not be included in the schedule.

## **Generating a Window Schedule**

You can instantly view a window schedule for any location in your project. The schedule displays a detailed description of each window type on the selected location, as well as the count for each window type. You can insert the schedule in your project with a simple mouse click. By default, the windows in your project are tagged with schedule marks when you insert the schedule.

### To generate a window schedule:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Schedules > Window Schedule, or click and on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. To edit the title of the schedule, edit the heading in the **Schedule Title** edit box.
- To view a schedule for another building location, select the desired location from the Reference Building Location drop box.
- To prevent the windows in your project from being tagged with schedule marks, disable the Tag Elements with Schedule Mark check box.
- 5. To edit the layout or appearance of the schedule or schedule marks, click Setup.
  See the following topics:
  Defining the Field Layout of a Schedule
  Defining the Text Styles in a Schedule
  Defining the Line Styles in a Schedule
  Defining Schedule Marks
- 6. To print the schedule, click **[]**, then make the desired selections in the **Print** dialog.
- To insert the schedule in your project, click OK. (Otherwise, click Cancel to exit the dialog.) The schedule is attached to your cursor, ready to be inserted.

8. Position the schedule where you want it, then click to insert it.

**NOTE:** Windows that have the *Include in Quantities* option disabled in the Windows Quantity properties will not appear in the Window schedule.

### **Generating a Member Schedule**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can instantly view a member schedule for any location in your project. The schedule displays members inserted with the Members tool. Roof, floor, ceiling and surface framing is not included. However, you can convert framing to members so that they appear in the member schedule.

The schedule displays a detailed description of each member type on the selected location, as well as the size and length for each member type. You can insert the schedule in your project with a simple mouse click. By default, the members in your project are tagged with schedule marks when you insert the schedule.

#### To generate a member schedule:

- Select Tools > Analyze > Schedules > Member Schedule, or click and on the Analyze toolbar.
- 2. To edit the title of the schedule, edit the heading in the **Schedule Title** edit box.
- To view a schedule for another building location, select the desired location from the Reference Building Location drop box.
- To prevent the members in your project from being tagged with schedule marks, disable the Tag Elements with Schedule Mark check box.
- To edit the layout or appearance of the schedule or schedule marks, click Setup. See the following topics:

Defining the Field Layout of a Schedule Defining the Text Styles in a Schedule Defining the Line Styles in a Schedule Defining Schedule Marks

- 6. To print the schedule, click **[]**, then make the desired selections in the **Print** dialog.
- To insert the schedule in your project, click
   OK. (Otherwise, click Cancel to exit the

dialog.) The schedule is attached to your cursor, ready to be inserted.

8. Position the schedule where you want it, then click to insert it.

### **Converting Framing to Members**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When roofs, floors, ceilings and surfaces are created, their framing cannot be selected for editing, and does not appear in member schedules. Using the Convert Framing to Members tool you can instantly convert a surface's framing into actual members that can be selected, edited, and quantified in schedules.

### To convert framing to members:

- Select Insert > Members > Convert Framing to Members, or click the down arrow next to the Members button toolbar and select Convert Framing to Members.
- 2. Select the roof, floor, ceiling or surface whose framing you want to convert. If you are in 2D plan view, click on the edge of the element. If you are in 3D, click anywhere on the surface of the element. (**Note**: Automatic floors can only be selected in 3D.)

The framing is automatically converted.

3. Right-click and select Finish.

# Generating a Room Region Schedule

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have calculated the space in rooms and areas using a Room Region tool, you can generate a room region schedule. The schedule lists any rooms for which you have created a room region. It displays the area, perimeter and volume of each room. You can insert the schedule in your project with a simple mouse click.

To generate a room schedule:

 Select Tools > Analyze > Schedules > Room Region Schedule, or click for the Analyze toolbar.

- 2. To edit the title of the schedule, edit the heading in the **Schedule Title** edit box.
- To view a schedule for another building location, select the desired location from the Reference Building Location drop box.
- 4. To edit the layout or appearance of the schedule, click Setup.

See the following topics:

Defining the Field Layout of a Schedule Defining the Text Styles in a Schedule

Defining the Line Styles in a Schedule

- 5. To print the schedule, click **[]**, then make the desired selections in the **Print** dialog.
- To insert the schedule in your project, click OK. (Otherwise, click Cancel to exit the dialog.) The schedule is attached to your cursor, ready to be inserted.
- 7. Position the schedule where you want it, then click to insert it.

## Moving a Schedule

Once you have inserted a schedule, you can move it by simply clicking and dragging it with your mouse.

## To move a schedule:

- 1. Click on the schedule to select it.
- 3. Click and drag the schedule to where you want it, then release your mouse button.

## **Rotating a Schedule**

You can rotate an inserted schedule using the Rotate tool.

### To rotate a schedule:

- 1. Click on the schedule to select it.
- 2. Right-click and select Rotate.
- 3. Select a point to rotate around, such as the center grip.
- 4. Move your mouse to rotate the schedule.
- 5. When the schedule is at the desired angle, click to finish.

## **Printing a Schedule**

You can print a door, window or member schedule directly from the Schedule dialog.

### To print a schedule:

- If you have already inserted the schedule in your project, click on it to select it, then rightclick and select **Properties**. If you have not inserted it yet, select **Tools > Analyze > Schedules**, then select the type of schedule you want to print.
- 2. In the Schedule dialog, click
- 3. In the **Print** dialog, select the desired printer to use, then click **Print**.

# Defining the Field Layout of a Schedule

Each type of schedule has a default layout of fields. You can remove any of these fields, as well as add new fields if you want. You can also control the content and size of each field.

### To define the layout of a schedule:

1. In the **Schedule** dialog, click **Setup**. Note that if you have already inserted the schedule, the inserted schedule will be deleted, and a new one will be generated in the dialog.

In the **Schedule Setup** dialog, the current layout is displayed in the *Layout* area of the dialog.

- 2. To delete a field, click on it to select it, then click **Remove**.
- To edit a field's title, click on the field to select it, then edit the title in the **Heading** edit box.
- To edit a field's content, click on the field to select it, then make a selection from the Content drop box.
- 5. To edit the width of a field, click on the field to select it, then edit the value in the **Width** edit box.
- To insert a new field, click on the field that you want to appear to the right of the new field, then click **Insert**. A blank field is added to the left of the currently selected field. Define the Heading, Content and Width

variables. Content options include Auto Mark, Description, Type, Height, Width, Height x Width, Width x Height, Thickness, Height Rough Opening, Width Rough Opening, Grill Style, Glass Area, Count, Location, Division, Category, Manufacturer, Supplier, Price, Part Number, Alternate Code,Frame Type, Frame Color, Glaze Type, U-Factor, SHGC and Catalog Mark.

 Click **OK**. The schedule is updated with your new settings.

**Note**: You cannot edit the layout of an inserted schedule by selecting the Properties tool. A new schedule will have to be generated.

# Defining the Text Styles in a Schedule

You can control the text styles used for a schedule's title, headings and content, as well as the justification of text within each field.

### To define the text styles in a schedule:

- If you have already inserted the schedule in your project, click on it to select it, then rightclick and select **Properties**. If you have not inserted it yet, select **Tools > Analyze > Schedules**, then select the type of schedule you want to generate.
- 2. In the Schedule dialog, click Setup.
- To edit the text style used for the schedule title, field headings or content, click the Title, Headings or Content button in the *Schedule Appearance* area. In the Text Styles dialog, select the text style you want to use for the selected item, then click OK.
- To edit the justification of text in each column, click the desired justification button. A left justification aligns all the text on the left side of the column. A right justification aligns the text on the right side of the column. With a centered justification, each line of text is centered in each column.
- 5. Click **OK**.

**Note**: Text style settings apply only to the inserted schedule, not the schedule displayed in the dialog.

# Defining the Line Styles in a Schedule

You can change the line styles used for a schedule's border and division lines.

### To define the line styles in a schedule:

- If you have already inserted the schedule in your project, click on it to select it, then rightclick and select **Properties**. If you have not inserted it yet, select **Tools > Analyze > Schedules**, then select the type of schedule you want to generate.
- 2. In the Schedule dialog, click Setup.
- 3. To select a line style for the schedule's border, click the **Border** button, then make a selection from the **Line Styles** dialog.
- 4. To select a line style for the lines between columns and rows, click the **Division** button, then make a selection from the **Line Styles** dialog.
- 5. Click **OK**.

**Note**: Line style settings apply only to the inserted schedule, not the schedule displayed in the dialog.

# **Defining Schedule Marks**

When defining schedule marks, you can choose either a circle, square, hexagon or octagon shape. You can also control the line style used for the mark, as well as the text style of the mark content.

### To define schedule marks:

- If you have already inserted the schedule in your project, click on it to select it, then rightclick and select **Properties**. If you have not inserted it yet, select **Tools > Analyze > Schedules**, then select the type of schedule you want to generate.
- 2. In the Schedule dialog, click Setup.
- 3. To select a shape for the schedule marks, click on the appropriate graphic in the *Mark Style* area of the **Schedule Setup** dialog.
- To select a text style for the schedule mark text, click the **Text Style** button in the *Mark Style* area, then select the desired style in the **Text Styles** dialog.

- 5. To select a line style for the mark line, click the **Line Style** button in the *Mark Style* area, then select the desired line style in the **Line Styles** dialog.
- 6. Click **OK**.

## Removing Schedule Marks

If you do not want doors or windows to be tagged with schedule marks, you can prevent them from appearing by editing your schedule settings.

### To remove schedule marks:

- If you have already inserted the schedule in your project, click on it to select it, then rightclick and select **Properties**. If you have not inserted it yet, select **Tools > Analyze > Schedules**, then select the desired type of schedule.
- 2. In the Schedule dialog, disable the **Tag Elements with Schedule Mark** check box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

**Note**: You can also hide schedule marks from view using the View Filter.

## **Deleting a Schedule**

You can delete a schedule that you have inserted in a few easy steps. When deleting a schedule, you have the option of leaving the schedule marks on the doors or windows.

### To delete a schedule:

- 1. Click on the schedule to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.
- If you want to delete the schedule marks on the associated elements, click Yes. If you want to leave the schedule marks displayed, click No.

**Note**: You can also hide schedules from view using the View Filter.

## **Energy Analysis**

For information about conserving energy and going green, visit the Green 3D Home web site.

You can access the site directly from the application.

### Green 3D Home.com

The Green 3D Home web site is dedicated to helping you "go green". The site provides comprehensive information on greening your home, energy use, and energy resources. Some of the things you can find on this site include:

- BIM catalogs of manufacturers' products for download
- Tips on how you can green each room in your home
- Detailed analysis of your home
- Information on how we use energy, and how much
- Information on various energy sources
- Green products and services
- · Sharing projects and ideas with others

### To access the Green 3D Home web site:

 Select Tools > Analyze > Green 3D Home.com or click on the Help toolbar. Or, go to http://www.green3dhome.com in your Internet browser.

## **REScheck Export**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

REScheck software enables builders, designers and contractors to determine whether new homes, additions, and alterations meet the requirements of the International Energy Conservation Code (IECC), or a number of state energy codes.

You can use the REScheck Export tool export data from your Envisioneer model to a REScheck file.

# Exporting Model Data to REScheck

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the REScheck Export tool to export data from your Envisioneer model to a REScheck XML (*.rxl) file. You can then open this file in REScheck to determine whether new homes, additions, and alterations meet the requirements of the International Energy Conservation Code (IECC), or a number of state energy codes.

### To export model data to REScheck:

- 1. Select Tools > Analyze > REScheck Export.
- 2. In the **Save As** dialog, select a save location and file name, then click **Save**.

# Chapter 22: Rendering & Animation

## **Rendering & Animation**

3D RealView[™] Rendering adds light and shadow to a textured 3D view to achieve photo-realistic images of both the interior and exterior of your home. You can save rendered images in BMP, JPG or TGA format, or open them directly in image editing applications where you can further edit and enhance them. Once you've set up your scene, creating a 3D RealView rendering involves only a mouse click or two. In a short time you'll have a vivid, life-like view to enjoy! Use the Render Panoramic View tool to generate a realistic, wide-angle view that can be viewed using the VR app.

The powerful Animation tool lets you record an actual tour through your 3D model that you can play back at any time. You can even add realistic sounds to your animation, such as a doorbell ringing. You can also choose to ray trace the animation for a photorealistic display that includes light, shadows and reflection. To create an animation, all you need to do is draw one or more paths for the camera to follow. Then, just sit back and watch your design come to life!

Attaching sounds to elements is a great way to add realism and excitement to your design. For example, you can attach the sound of a doorbell to a door, or even a voice-over. Once you've attached a sound to an element you can play it any time using the Play Sound tool. The catalog includes a number of predefined sounds for your convenience, including a creak, knock, doorbell, phone, clock chime, horn and ignition. You can attach sounds to individual elements in your drawing, or to elements in the catalog.

# 3D RealView[™] Rendering

Rendering is a process of generating an image from a 3D model. The image is like a photograph, and contains texture, lighting and shadows. In fact, it is sometimes difficult to distinguish a 3D RealView[™] rendering from an actual photograph. 3D RealView[™] renderings are great to use when presenting designs to clients. Their photorealistic nature captures attention and gives clients a true sense of the design. Renderings are easy to create — just set up your 3D view, make sure you have lighting in place, and then use the **Render 3D RealView** tool to create the rendering.

Before creating a rendering you can select a quality level for the rendered image, and define various settings that affect the image output.

The progress of the rendering is displayed in real time, and you can adjust the brightness of the image and any highlighted areas either during rendering or after rendering. Once the image has been rendered, you can save it as a BMP, JPG or TGA file, or open it directly in an image editing program for further enhancement.

How it works

## **How Rendering Works**

A rendered view is a photo realistic 3D view that includes light and shadows. To render a view, two algorithms are used: *global illumination* and *raytracing*. *Global illumination* is an algorithm that simulates the many reflections of light around a scene, generally resulting in softer, more natural shadows and reflections.

The first part of the global illumination process involves finding those element surfaces that are visible to direct light and calculating how much light is transferred to each element. Some elements will receive more light than others depending on their surface properties, and different surfaces will reflect different amounts of light. Still, each element will absorb some of the light, so the total amount reflected back into the scene will be less than that emitted by the light fixtures. *Raytracing* is a direct illumination algorithm that traces the path taken by a ray of light from the camera through the scene, then calculates the reflection, refraction, or absorption of the ray when it intersects objects in the scene.

The process begins by finding the element that reflects the most light. The element is considered a secondary light source, so we need to calculate how much of its light is transferred to other elements in the scene. Multiple *passes* are performed until the amount of light remaining in the scene is negligible in comparison to the light originally emitted by the light fixtures. When the passes have been completed, that's when raytracing can begin.

Material properties define how light reflects off a surface. Direct light and ambient light levels define the light that is reflected. Direct light is light that is emitted from light fixtures. It has a specific color, intensity and direction. Ambient light can be thought of as a general level of light that is everywhere in the scene. Every light in a scene contributes to the overall ambient light in a scene.

All of this may seem complicated, but Envisioneer takes care of it all in one mouse click.

## Setting the Viewpoint for a Rendering

When you create a 3D RealViewTM rendering, your model is captured at the angle currently shown on the screen. Some topics you may want to look at:

Displaying 3D Camera Views on page 260

Changing Your Viewpoint on page 263

Changing the Viewing Field Angle on page 264

## Setting the Lighting for a Rendering

Even though creating a 3D RealView[™] rendering involves nothing more than a mouse click, there are a few things you should consider beforehand.

#### Exterior Shots

If you want to do an exterior shot, the most important factor to consider is sunlight. This is determined by your global position and time of day. By adjusting these settings, you control how much sunlight is in the scene, and from what angle it shines.

#### **Night Shots**

To create a night shot, you need to first set your background to a night scene. Once your background is set, all you need to do is set the time to a time of day when there is no sun. If you do want to create a night shot, you will probably want to insert some exterior lighting in your design.

#### Interior Shots

When creating interior shots, light comes from light fixtures that you have inserted in the room, and can also come through the windows if it is daytime. You can turn lights on and off as well as change their bulbs for different light intensity and effect.

### **Defining Your Location**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Setting your global position determines how much daylight there will be in a scene relative to the time of day in the scene's properties.

#### To define your location:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings, or

click on the Settings toolbar. You can also click the **Options** button in the **3D RealView** dialog.

- 2. In the left pane, select **Global**.
- Select a country and city from the appropriate drop boxes. You can add or edit a city if needed. Just click the **Add** or **Edit** button. You will need to know the longitude, latitude and time zone of the city.
- 4. To set the angle from true north, enter a value in the Angle edit box, or simply click and drag the arrow indicator to rotate it. This is the "geographic" North, as opposed to the "magnetic" North which you see on a compass. The value you specify determines where North is on your screen, and affects the angle of the sun for daylight rendering. The number in degrees that you enter is in relation to the 90° perpendicular orientation of your drawing. A value of 1° makes the top of the screen North. A value of 90° makes the top of the screen East, and the left side of the screen North.

It is assumed that information regarding building orientation to True North can be taken from, or calculated from, a surveyor's certificate. However, True North can be calculated from a Magnetic North reading taken at your building site. For more information, see *Calculating True North from Magnetic North* on page 531. See *Calculating True North from Magnetic North* in the online help.

5. Click **OK**.

## Calculating True North from Magnetic North

#### What is True North?

True North is the geographic North Pole. It is located at 90° North latitude and all lines of longitude converge at the pole. The Earth's axis connects the north and south poles. The Earth's axis is the line around which the Earth rotates. The North Pole is approximately 450 miles (725 km) north of Greenland in the middle of the Arctic Ocean.



#### What is Magnetic North?

Magnetic North is the magnetic north pole. It is the focus of the planet's magnetic field and is the point magnetic compasses point toward. Unlike the geographic North Pole, the magnetic north pole moves (even daily). It moves approximately 9 miles (15 km) each year. It is presently located about 1000 miles (1600 km) south of the geographic North Pole at 78° 18' North and 104° West (southwest of Nunavut in Northern Canada).

#### How do you calculate True North from Magnetic North?

The difference between Magnetic North and True North is called the variation. To convert magnetic readings to true, you need to find the variation for your particular location. Maps such as U.S. Geological Survey maps, aviation charts and marine charts all list the variation. Because variation changes from location to location, you need to get a map for your area. Variation is listed in terms of degrees east or west. If it is east variation, you subtract the number of degrees from the magnetic direction to obtain the true direction. If it is west variation, you add the number of degrees to the magnetic direction to obtain the true direction.

**Note**: If you use a compass to determine Magnetic North in relation to the building line that you plan to orient at 90° to the perpendicular in your drawing, and factor in your local variation, you should easily be able to calculate True North in relation to your plan.

### Setting the Season

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

90 Setting the season can determine how plants will look in a rendered scene, relative to your global location.

#### To set the season:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings, or

click and on the Settings toolbar. You can also click the **Options** button in the **3D RealView** dialog.

- 2. In the left pane, select Global.
- 3. Click the **Plant Season** drop box and select either **Summer**, **Winter**, **Fall**, or **Spring**.
- 4. Click **OK**.

# Creating a 3D RealView[™] Rendering

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can render any 3D view in a matter of minutes, with the click of a button. The result is an impressive, photo-like image that incorporates light, shadows, reflections, and other realistic attributes.

The 3D RealView tool uses both global illumination and raytracing to produce an image of exceptional quality. The 3D RealView feature begins by reading in the model's geometry, and then proceeds with the global illumination calculation, which occurs in multiple passes. *Global illumination* is an algorithm that simulates the many reflections of light around a scene, resulting in soft, natural shadows and reflections. Once global illumination is complete, raytracing begins automatically. *Raytracing* is a direct illumination algorithm that traces the path taken by a ray of light from the camera through the scene, then calculates the reflection, refraction, or absorption of the ray when it intersects objects in the scene.

The 3D RealView dialog lets you see the progress of the rendering in real time, and lets you know how much time is remaining in each pass. You can adjust the brightness of the image, as well as the intensity of highlighted areas. Once the rendering is complete, you can save the image, open it in an editing application, or reset the view and render again.

### To create a 3D RealView rendering:

- 1. Display the 3D view that you want to render.
- 2. Select View > Render 3D RealView.
- 3. In the **3D RealView** dialog, make sure the scene is how you want it to appear. You can change the scene using tools below the preview window, such as Zoom In, Zoom Out and Walk Around.



4. To define the image output size, make a selection from the Size drop box in the *Image* area. You can select one of the common output sizes or select Custom Size to define a custom size. The dialog box will resize

#### accordingly.

**Note**: If you select a size that is larger than your screen, the image will be rendered in pieces or *tiles* off-screen. The rendered tiles will be put together behind the scenes to form a complete image that will be saved at the specified size.

5. Click the **Start render** button to begin.







First, the model's geometry is analyzed. Once that is done, the global illumination calculation begins. Global illumination determines how much light is given off by the sun or by lighting fixtures, and how much light is reflected off the surface of elements. Global illumination occurs in two or more passes. Once global illumination is complete, raytracing begins automatically. The view is updated in real time during these calculations, and the **Remaining Time** and **Elapsed time** of each pass is displayed in the *Progress* area.

- To adjust the overall brightness of the image, adjust the value in the **Brightness** edit box. Lower values darken the image, while higher values make it brighter.
- To adjust the intensity of highlighted areas, adjust the value in the **Burn** edit box. This can be a decimal value between 0 and 1. Lower burn values will decrease the intensity of the highlights to avoid "burned out" areas in the image.
- 8. To control the overall brightness of an image, adjust the **Gamma** value.

When the rendering is complete, the message **Render Complete!** appears in the *Progress* area. Now you can either save the image, open it in an editing application, or reset the view and render again.

 If you want to create a grayscale image, enable the **Convert to grayscale** check box before saving. This will produce a monochromatic image containing varying shades of gray.

- 10. To save the rendered image to a file, click Save. In the Save As dialog, navigate to the location where you want to save the image, select a file type (BMP, JPG or TGA) from the Save as type drop box, and then type a name for the file in the File name edit box. Click Save to save the image.
- 11. To open the image in an image editing application, where you can edit or enhance it further, click the down arrow next to the Save button and select Launch Viewer. The application that launches is the one that is associated with image files in *Windows Explorer*. For example, a BMP file may open in *Microsoft Paint*, or whatever program that normally launches when you attempt to open a BMP file from *Windows Explorer*.
- 12. If you do not want to keep the rendered image, click **Reset**. This resets the view to its original state, and you can render again if you wish.
- 13. If you want to make changes to the actual scene, like add a light fixture or apply a different material to an element, click Close, and then make the desired changes. When you are ready to render again, select View > Render 3D RealView. If you want to return to the camera position and zoom level that you were at when you first rendered the scene, select Last Camera Position from the Camera drop box at the top of the dialog.
- 14. When you are finished viewing the 3D RealView rendering, click **Close**.

# Rendering a Panoramic View for VR Viewing

Use the Render Panoramic View tool to generate a rendered, wide-angle view that can be viewed using a VR app. The resulting image incorporates light, shadows, reflections, and other realistic attributes for the ultimate virtual reality experience.

The Render Panoramic View tool uses some of the same algorithms as the Render 3D RealView tool to produce an image of exceptional quality. The rendering process occurs in two distinct stages, and each stage may include multiple passes.

Once the view has been generated, you will be prompted to upload it for viewing with the VR app.

For more information visit

https://www.cadsoft.com/products/virtual-reality/.

#### To render a panoramic:

- 1. Display the 3D view that you want to render.
- Select View > Render Panoramic, or click
   in on the View Control toolbar.
- 3. In the **Generate Panoramic View** dialog, click the **Step #1 Generate GI** button to begin. The Global Illumination calculation begins. Global illumination determines how much light is given off by the sun or by lighting fixtures, and how much light is reflected off the surface of elements. Global illumination occurs in two or more passes. Once global illumination is complete, raytracing begins automatically. The view is updated in real time during these calculations, and the **Remaining Time** and **Elapsed time** of each pass is displayed in the *Progress* area.





- When the first stage is complete, click the Step #1 Generate Faces button.
- To adjust the overall brightness of the image, adjust the value in the **Brightness** edit box. Lower values darken the image, while higher values make it brighter.
- To adjust the intensity of highlighted areas, adjust the value in the **Burn** edit box. This can be a decimal value between 0 and 1. Lower burn values will decrease the intensity of the highlights to avoid "burned out" areas in the image.
- 7. To control the overall brightness of an image, adjust the **Gamma** value.

When the rendering is complete, the message **Render Complete!** appears in the *Progress* area. Now you can either save the image, open it in an editing application, or reset the view and render again.

- 8. If you do not want to keep the rendered image, click **Reset**. This resets the view to its original state, and you can render again if you wish.
- 9. If you want to make changes to the actual scene, like add a light fixture or apply a different material to an element, click Close, and then make the desired changes. When you are ready to render again, select View > Render Panoramic View.
- When the panoramic rendering is complete, you will be prompted to upload it for viewing with the VR app:

Jpload	×
Sign in	
Upload Properties	
Project Name:	
View	
Front View	
Upload Panoramic	View
	_
	OK
	ОК
Jpload	ок
Jpload	ОК
Jpload Sign in	ок
Jpload Sign in Upload Properties	к
Jpload Sign in Upload Properties Project Name:	к
Jpload Sign in Upload Properties Project Name:	ОК
Jpload Sign in Upload Properties Project Name: View Front View	ок
Jpload Sign in Upload Properties Project Name: View Front View	OK
Jpload Sign in Upload Properties Project Name : View Front View Upload Panoran	ок

## Setting the Rendering Quality

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite By default, the quality level chosen for the ray trace quality is Level 2 - Low (fast). You can select a different quality level before rendering if you want. Note that the higher level of quality you choose, the longer the rendering process takes. You can set the default quality level for all renderings in your Program Settings. If you want you can override the default quality level directly within the 3D RealView dialog when creating a rendering.

### To set the default rendering quality for the project:

- 1. Select Settings > Document Settings.
- In the Document Settings dialog, select 3D RealView in the left column.
- In the *Ray Trace Quality* area, select the quality level you want from the Level drop box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

To adjust the rendering quality for a particular rendering:

- 1. Select View > Render 3D RealView.
- 2. In the **3D RealView** dialog, click the **Options** button.
- In the Document Settings dialog, select 3D RealView in the left column.
- 4. In the *Ray Trace Quality* area, select the quality level you want from the **Level** drop box.
- Click OK to return to the 3D RealView dialog.

## Using Antialiasing in Rendering

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Antialiasing blends pixels in areas where two colors or two materials meet to reduce artifacts (or "stair steps") and produce a more natural look to the scene. By default, antialiasing is set to 1 to increase rendering speed. You can select varying levels of antialiasing. You can set the default antialiasing value for all renderings in your Program Settings. You can also override the default antialiasing value for a particular rendering while the 3D RealView tool is active.

### To set the default antialiasing value:

- 1. Select Settings > Document Settings.
- In the Document Settings dialog, select 3D RealView in the left column.

3. Use the arrow keys next to the **Antialiasing** edit box to increase or decrease the level of antialiasing. The higher the level, the cleaner the image, but the longer the rendering process takes.

### 4. Click **OK**.

# To adjust the antialiasing for a particular rendering:

- 1. Select View > Render 3D RealView.
- 2. In the **3D RealView** dialog, click the **Options** button.
- 3. In the **Document Settings** dialog, select **3D RealView** in the left column.
- 4. Use the up arrows key next to the **Antialiasing** edit box to increase the level of antialiasing. The higher the level, the cleaner the image, but the longer the rendering process takes.
- Click OK to return to the 3D RealView dialog.

## Adjusting the Noise Reduction Level When Rendering

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Noise in a rendered image refers to areas of graininess. This can happen in interior scenes that mix sunlight and interior lighting, or when sunlight comes through a skylight. If you see noise in a rendering, you can increase the noise reduction level in your 3D RealView settings, and then render the view again. Note that increasing the noise reduction level may increase the rendering time.

### To set the default noise reduction level:

- 1. Select Settings > Document Settings.
- In the Document Settings dialog, select 3D RealView in the left column.
- 3. Adjust the **Electrical lights noise reduction** and **Skylight noise reduction** values using the scroll arrows.
- 4. Click **OK**.

To change the noise reduction level for a particular rendering:

- 1. Select View > Render 3D RealView.
- 2. In the **3D RealView** dialog, click the **Options** button.
- In the Document Settings dialog, select 3D RealView in the left column.
- 4. Adjust the **Electrical lights noise reduction** and **Skylight noise reduction** values using the scroll arrows.
- Click OK to return to the 3D RealView dialog.

# Controlling the Intensity of Trees and Billboards

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can adjust the brightness and contrast of trees and billboards in a rendered scene by editing your rendering settings.

To set defaults for tree/billboard intensity:

- 1. Select Settings > Document Settings.
- In the Document Settings dialog, select 3D RealView in the left column.
- 3. Adjust the **Tree and billboard intensity** value.
- 4. Click **OK**.

To specify the tree/billboard intensity for a particular rendering:

- 1. Select View > Render 3D RealView.
- 2. In the **3D RealView** dialog, click the **Options** button.
- In the Document Settings dialog, select 3D RealView in the left column.
- 4. Adjust the **Tree and billboard intensity** value.
- Click OK to return to the 3D RealView dialog.

## Allowing the Background Brightness to Adjust when Rendering

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the brightness of the background adjusts along with the rest of the scene when a rendering is being generated. If you want the background brightness to remain unchanged, you can disable background brightness adjustment.

# To allow or prevent background brightness adjustment for all renderings:

- 1. Select Settings > Document Settings.
- In the Document Settings dialog, select 3D RealView in the left column.
- 3. In the **Background** area, enable or disable the **Allow brightness adjustment** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

# To allow or prevent background brightness adjustment for a particular rendering:

- 1. Select View > Render 3D RealView.
- 2. In the **3D RealView** dialog, click the **Options** button.
- 3. In the **Document Settings** dialog, select **3D RealView** in the left column.
- 4. In the **Background** area, enable or disable the **Allow brightness adjustment** check box.
- Click OK to return to the 3D RealView dialog.

## Using the Background Texture as a Light Source when Rendering

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When rendering, the **Use texture as light source** option enables you to apply a tint to the scene which is based on the color of the scene's background texture.

# To use the background texture as a light source for all renderings:

- 1. Select Settings > Document Settings.
- In the Document Settings dialog, select 3D RealView in the left column.
- 3. In the **Background** area, enable the **Use texture as light source** check box. Edit the **Texture intensity** as desired.
- 4. Click **OK**.

To allow or prevent background brightness adjustment for a particular rendering:

- 1. Select View > Render 3D RealView.
- 2. In the **3D RealView** dialog, click the **Options** button.
- In the Document Settings dialog, select 3D RealView in the left column.
- 4. In the **Background** area, enable the **Use texture as light source** check box. Edit the **Texture intensity** as desired.
- Click OK to return to the 3D RealView dialog.

# Adjusting the Light Coming from Light Fixtures

To adjust the color or intensity of light coming from a light fixture, you can add light bulbs, change a light bulb to a different type, adjust the intensity of the light, select a different color for the light, or turn a light off completely.

See the following topics:

Editing a Light Fixture's Light Source on page 215 Turning a Light On or Off on page 215

# Editing the Surface Properties of Materials

Different materials have different finishes. Surface finishes include Dull, Low Gloss, Semi Gloss, High Gloss, Liquid, Fully Reflective, Partially Reflective, Shiny, Fully Transparent, and Partially Transparent. The finish determines how much a material reflects, emits and absorbs light. These factors can affect the lighting in a rendered scene.

# To edit the surface properties of an element's materials:

- 1. Select the element in your drawing.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the properties dialog, select the Appearance tab.
- On the Appearance page, click the Select button, or click the texture swatch to access the Materials dialog.
- In the Materials dialog, select the material to edit, then select Edit > Edit Material, or rightclick and select Edit Material.

- 6. To change the surface finish of the material (dull, shiny, etc.), make a selection from the **Preset Effects** drop box. If you want to specify a custom surface finish, select **Custom** in the list, then enable the **Display settings details** check box.
- 7. Specify the properties of the finish. These are described below.

**Specular**. Reflection that creates highlights on materials, making them appear shiny.

**Emissive**. The amount of light given off by a material. The more emissive a material is, the more self-luminous it appears.

**Color Bleed**. The degree to which different colors blend where they meet.

- 8. Click **OK** in the **Material Properties** dialog.
- 9. Click OK in the Materials dialog.
- 10. Click **OK** in the properties dialog.

# Troubleshooting a 3D RealView[™] Rendering

Problem: Rendering is too light or too dark If you find that your rendering is too light or too dark, or that you want to create different lighting effects, consider the following concepts:

**Time of Day**. Your location and time of day determine how much daylight is in a scene.

**Light Fixtures**. You may need to add interior light fixtures or exterior light fixtures to increase the amount of light in a scene. This is particularly important for interior shots and night shots. Note that rooms without light fixtures will be illuminated by the camera's headlight when viewing and navigating in 3D, but this light is not used in rendering.

**Light Sources**. You can change the bulbs in your light fixtures to achieve different lighting effects. For example, you can choose a bulb with a stronger or weaker wattage, or one that is a different color.

**Turning Lights Off**. If you have light fixtures in your scene and want to decrease the amount of light in the scene, you can turn selected light fixtures off.

**Gamma**. Gamma correction controls the overall brightness of an image. Lower values darken the image, while higher values make it brighter. Images

that are not properly corrected can look either bleached out, or too dark.

**Scene Properties**. You can adjust certain options in your Scene Properties to control factors such as daylight and brightness. For example, you can edit the sun and sky conditions.

#### Problem: The quality of the rendering is poor

If your rendering looks blurry, has areas of graininess, or has jagged edges, try the following:

**Quality Level**. There are five quality levels to choose from. By default, the **Low (fast)** quality level is used. Selecting a higher quality level may improve the general appearance of your rendering.

**Antialiasing**. During the raytracing process, antialiasing blends pixels in areas where two colors or two materials meet to reduce artifacts (or "stair steps"). By default, antialiasing is set to 1 to increase rendering speed. To reduce jagged edges and create a more natural-looking scene, try increasing the antialiasing value.

**Noise reduction level**. Noise in a rendered image refers to areas of graininess. This can happen in interior scenes that mix sunlight and interior lighting, or when sunlight comes through a skylight. Increasing the noise reduction value will reduce noise in your renderings.

Problem: A wall looks black instead of textured Sometimes when a single wall is drawn (to fill in a gable end, for example), it appears black when rendered because it is seen as an interior wall instead of an exterior wall. You can force either side of a wall to be exterior by editing the wall's settings. The wall will then be rendered with the proper materials.

To force wall sides to be exterior, go into the wall's properties (select the wall and then right-click and select Properties), then enable the **Force Surface To Be Exterior** check box in either the *Left Interior Surface* or *Right Interior Surface* area. For more information see

## Animations

Animations are like movies — series of images that, when viewed in rapid succession, create the illusion of movement through a scene. Animations are the perfect way to walk a client through their home and give them a true feel for the design. To create an animation, you need to draw a path through your 2D plan for the camera to follow. You can draw more than one path if you want, and specify the order of paths for the camera to follow. You can edit a path if necessary and even add sounds to it, such as a voiceover or doorbell ringing. You can then preview the animation and record it to a file.

When you record an animation, it is output to an AVI file. You can control the animation's speed, video compression, resolution and frame rate. You can also opt to ray trace the animation for optimal effect.

## **Drawing an Animation Path**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The first step in creating an animation is defining a path for the camera to follow. You can specify where you want the camera to look (along the path or at a specific target), as well as the view angle.

You draw the path by selecting a camera start point and subsequent control points. The path automatically curves between points to create a smooth motion for the camera. Once you have drawn the path, you can add, remove and elevate control points if you want.

You can draw more than one path if you want. By default, all paths will be included in the animation, and will be followed in the order in which they were drawn. You can, however, choose which paths you want to include in the animation, as well as the order of paths for the camera to follow.

### To draw an animation path:

- 1. Make sure that the location on which you want to capture the animation is the current building location. Also, it is recommended that you draw the path while in 2D plan view.
- 2. Select **Tools > Animation > Insert Path**, or click **(a)** on the Animation toolbar.

Path Properties	
Description	
Unnamed Path1	
Behavior	
Follow Path	
Specify Target	
View Angle	
10	17
Speed	
Duration:	Velocity:
min.	sec.
	ПК
	ОК
Path Properties	OK P XX
Path Properties Description	OK 8 X
Path Properties Description Unnamed Path1	OK P 🖾
Path Properties Description Unnamed Path1  Behavior	OK 8 X
Path Properties Description Unnamed Path1  Behavior © Follow Path	OK P 🛛
Path Properties Description Unnamed Path1  Behavior	OK PX
Path Properties Description Unnamed Path1  Behavior	
Path Properties         Description         Unnamed Path1         Behavior         Image: The second seco	OK ? 23
Path Properties         Description         Unnamed Path1         Behavior         Image: The second seco	OK 8 53 170 70°
Path Properties         Description         Unnamed Path1         Behavior         Image: Specify Target         View Angle         10         Speed         Duration:         min.       sec.	OK ? 33 

3. In the **Path Properties** dialog, specify a name for the path for identification purposes.

- 4. In the *Behavior* area, specify what you want the camera to focus on during the animation. If you select **Follow Path**, the camera will focus on a different target along the path in each frame. If you select **Specify Target**, the camera will always point towards a target point that you specify.
- In the *View Angle* area, specify how wide you want the view angle to be by either sliding the ruler or entering a value in the edit box. Higher values produce a wide-angle view; lower values produce a close-up view.
- 6. Click **OK**.
- Select a start point for the camera. For example, if you want to start your animation by walking through the front door, select a point outside the front door.
- 8. If you selected the **Specify Target** option, select the point you want to the camera to remain focused on during the animation.
- Select the next point of the path. Each point you select is called a control point. The camera will move to each control point and capture an image of the view at that point. Basically, control points are the key to drawing and shaping your path. Example



Camera start point ——



- 10. Continue selecting control points until your path is finished.
- 11. Right-click and select **Finish**. You can now preview the animation.

### Drawing Separate Camera and Target Paths

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you want you can draw two paths for an animation: one for the camera to move along (**camera path**), and a separate one for the camera to focus on (**target path**). This would be like watching an airplane from a moving car.

If you want your camera to focus on a target path, you need to draw the camera path using the Specify Target option. Once you have drawn both paths, you need to snap the camera path's target point to the target path.

#### Step One: Draw the Target Path

- Select Tools > Animation > Insert Path, or click i i i on the Animation toolbar.
- 2. In the **Path Properties** dialog, give the target path a name.
- 3. Click **OK**.
- 4. Pick points to define the target path, then right-click and select **Finish**.
- Select Tools > Animation > Animation Properties, or click and on the Animation toolbar.
- If you do not want to include the target path in your animation, uncheck the **Include** check box beside the target path's name in the **Animation Properties** dialog.
- 7. Click **OK**.

#### Step Two: Draw the Camera Path

- 1. Select **Tools > Animation > Insert Path**, or click **(a)** on the Animation toolbar.
- 2. In the **Path Properties** dialog, give the camera path a name.
- 3. Enable the **Specify Target** option.
- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. Select the start point of the camera path.

- 6. Select a random target point. You will snap the target to the target path later.
- 7. Select the remaining points of the camera path, then right-click and select **Finish**.

### Step Three: Connect the Paths

- 1. Click on the camera path to select it.
- 2. Click and drag the target point (the point at the end of the arrow) to the target path, then release your mouse button. The target point automatically snaps to the camera of the target path. You are now ready to preview the animation.

When you preview the animation, you'll notice that the camera moves along the camera path and focuses on points along the target path as the animation plays.

## **Previewing an Animation**

Once you have drawn one or more paths for your animation, you can preview the resulting animation. You can play the animation automatically, or step through it frame by frame.

### To preview an animation:

- 1. Make sure you have drawn a suitable path for your camera.
- Select Tools > Animation > Create Animation, or click @ @ on the Animation toolbar.

<i>(</i>	
Create Animation	
Save to file	
Save Sho	
20 Baskiew Net Arthus	
SD Reamew Not Active	and the second second second second second second
Overall Progress:	
Image Output size: 640 x 480 Brightness: Burn: Animation Properties Close	
Create Animation	£
0	
Save to file	
3D RealView Not Active	
Overal Progress:	
Image Output size: 640 x 490	
Brightness:	
Burn:	
Animation Properties	
Close	

3. In the **Create Animation** dialog, click to automatically play the animation. To pause

the animation, click **II** 

 To play the animation manually by stepping through each frame, click →→. To step back to the previous frame, click  $\checkmark$ . Alternatively you can click and drag the slider to play it manually or skip to specific frames of the animation.

5. To return to the start of the animation so you can play it again, click **K**.

**Note**: By default, the animation plays once during the preview. You can set it to repeat if you want.

**Note**: To be able to view the animation outside of **Envisioneer**, you need to save the animation to a file.

**Note**: If you enabled the Ray Trace Animation option in your Animation Properties, the ray tracing will not appear in the preview. It will only appear when you save the animation to a file.

# Repeating an Animation During the Preview

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, an animation is played once when you preview it. You can set the animation to repeat during the preview, meaning it will play continuously until you close the preview window.

### To repeat an animation during the preview:

- Select Tools > Animation > Animation Properties, or click is on the Animation toolbar. You can also access properties from the Create Animation dialog.
- 2. In the Animation Properties dialog, enable the Repeat Animation during preview check box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

# Changing the Path Order in an Animation

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have drawn more than one path for your animation, the paths will be followed in the order in which they were drawn. You can change the path order if you want.

#### To change the path order in an animation:

- Select Tools > Animation > Animation Properties, or click and access properties from the Create Animation dialog.
- In the Animation Properties dialog, use the Move Up or Move Down buttons to move selected paths up or down in the list.
- 3. Click **OK**.

# Choosing the Paths to Include in an Animation

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, all animation paths that are present in your drawing will be included in the resulting animation. You can choose to prevent selected paths from being included if you want.

To choose which paths you want to include in the animation:

- Select Tools > Animation > Animation Properties, or click is on the Animation toolbar. You can also access properties from the Create Animation dialog.
- 2. In the **Animation Properties** dialog, uncheck the boxes in the **Include** column for any paths you do not want to include.
- 3. Click **OK**.

# Moving an Animation Path's Control Points

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can adjust an animation path by moving its control points. When you move a control point, the path automatically adjusts to maintain a smooth, curved path. If the path was created using the 'Specify Target' option, you can move the target point also.

### To move control points on a path:

 Click on the camera or any point on the path to select the path. Blue grips appear at each control point.

- Hover your pointer over the control point you want to move. This displays the Move cursor.
- 3. Click and drag the point to the desired location, then release your mouse button.

## Adding Control Points to an Animation Path

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Once you have drawn a path for your animation, you can easily add control points to the path if you want. Adding control points can help you expand your path where needed, or provide a point to attach a sound to.

### To add a control point to your path:

- Select Tools > Animation > Add Control Point, or click on the Animation toolbar.
- 2. Click where you want to add the control point. A control point is automatically added to the path.

# Removing a Control Point from an Animation Path

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can easily remove a control point from an animation path using the Remove Control Point tool.

### To remove a control point from a path:

- Select Tools > Animation > Remove Control Point, or click on the Animation toolbar.
- 2. Click on the control point you want to remove.

**Note**: Removing a control point can change the shape of the path slightly depending on the location of adjacent control points to ensure a smooth, curved path.

## Editing the Elevation of a Control Point

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, control points are 5'-6" above the floor level of the current building location. You can edit the elevation of a control point on an animation path using the Elevate Control Point tool. This adjusts the path so it goes up or down depending on the elevation you specify. For example, if your path is on the ground floor and you have a control point at either end of a staircase, elevating the top control point will make it seem as if you're walking up the stairs.

### To edit the elevation of a control point:

- Select Tools > Animation > Elevate Control Point, or click 3 3 on the Animation toolbar.
- 2. Click on the control point you want to edit.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, the value currently shown is the current elevation of the control point. Edit the elevation as desired.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Editing the Elevation of the Target in an Animation

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you used the *Specify Target* option when defining an animation path, you can raise or lower your target point. This essentially changes the tilt of your camera up or down. You can change the elevation of the target point using the Commander.

### To edit the elevation of the target in an animation:

- 1. Click on the animation path in 2D Plan view to select it. Grips appear at the path's control points and target point.
- Hover your cursor over the target point, then click and hold down your left mouse button. The Commander becomes active.
- While holding down your left mouse button, press the TAB key twice to enter the third edit box in the Commander. This is the Z value (elevation).

4. Type the desired elevation for the target point, then press ENTER.

### Adding Sounds to an Animation

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add a variety of sounds to your animation, such as a doorbell ringing or the creak of a door opening. Sound is added to an animation by inserting a sound node at a selected path control point, and choosing the sound file you want to play at that point. The sound will be played when the camera reaches that point during the playback of the animation.

### To add a sound to an animation:

- 2. Click on the control point on your animation path where you want to insert the sound.
- 3. In the **Open** dialog, select the sound file you want to insert. Sound files have a *.wav extension. A number of sounds can be found in the program's Sounds directory. To hear the selected sound, click the **Play Sound** button.
- 4. Click **Open**. A small node is inserted next to the control point.

**Note**: Sound nodes can only be placed at control points. You can add control points to your path if necessary.

## Removing Sounds from an Animation

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can easily remove sounds that you have inserted in your animation using the Remove Sound Node tool.

To remove a sound from an animation:

- With your 2D plan displayed, select Tools >
   Animation > Remove Sound Node, or click

   on the Animation toolbar.
- 2. Click on the control point that the sound has been added to. The sound node is removed.

### Saving an Animation to a File

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Once you have previewed your animation and are satisfied with it, you can record it to an *.avi file which can be played using any digital media application that supports the *.avi file format, such as Windows Media Player. When you save an animation, the 3D view is *rendered* to achieve high quality results. Rendering is a process that involves the calculation of light in a scene, resulting in naturallooking shadows and reflections. For even more photorealism you can enable ray tracing in your Program Settings.

#### To save an animation to a file:

- Select Tools > Animation > Create Animation, or click @ @ on the Animation toolbar.
- 2. In the **Create Animation** dialog, click **Save**.
- 3. In the Save As dialog, specify a file name and save location for the animation file, then click Save. The animation begins recording. The process begins by reading in the model's geometry, and then proceeds with the global illumination calculation. Global illumination is an algorithm that simulates the many reflections of light around a scene, resulting in soft, natural shadows and reflections. If you have specified that you want to ray trace animations in your Program Settings, ray tracing begins immediately after the global illumination calculations have been made. Raytracing is a direct illumination algorithm that traces the path taken by a ray of light from the camera through the scene, then calculates the reflection, refraction, or absorption of the ray when it intersects objects in the scene.

The **Create Animation** dialog displays the progress of the recording in real time, and lets you know how much time is remaining in each pass.

Save to file
Save Cancel
RayTracing Image
2 C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C
Overall Progress:
Calculating Global Illumination
(Pass 2 / 2) Flansed Time: 00:01:56
Estimated Remaining Time: 00:02:46
Save to file
Save Cancel
RayTracing Image
Overall Progress:
1
Calculating Global Illumination
(Pass 2 / 2) Elapsed Time: 00:01:56
Estimated Remaining Time: 00:02:46

 The process pauses after the first frame of the animation has been rendered, enabling you to adjust the **Brightness** and **Burn** values (described below). When you are ready to resume recording, click **Continue**.

**Brightness** refers to the overall brightness of the scene. Lower values darken the scene, while higher values make it brighter.

**Burn** is a parameter that controls the intensity of highlighted areas. Lower burn values will decrease the intensity of the highlights to avoid "burned out" areas in the animation. This can be a decimal value between 0 and 1.

- If you click **Cancel** while an animation is being rendered, the rendering will stop, and the view in the preview window will be reset.
- 6. When the recording is complete, click **Close**.

**Note**: By default, the animation is saved at a size of 640 x 480 pixels. To save it at a different size, see

Specifying an Output Size for Animation Files on page 547.

**Note**: You can choose to save the individual frames of your animation as well. See Saving Individual Animation Frames on page 545.

### Editing the Default Name or Save Location of Animation Files

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can specify the default name and save location of animation files by editing your Program Settings. The name and path you choose will automatically appear in the Save As dialog when you save animations. Note that you can still override the default name and location when saving an animation.

# To edit the default name or save location of animation output files:

 Select Settings > Document Settings, and then select Animations in the left pane of the Document Settings dialog. Alternatively you can select Tools > Animation > Animation Properties, or click animation > Animation toolbar, and then click the Animation Settings button in the Animation Properties dialog. You can also access the Animation Properties dialog directly from the Create

**Animation** dialog when previewing an animation.

- In the Document Settings dialog, click the browse button next to the Filename edit box.
- In the Save As dialog, navigate to the location where you want to save animations, then enter a default name for *.avi files in the File name edit box.
- 4. Click Save.

### Saving Individual Animation Frames

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can specify that you want to save the individual frames of your animations to individual files by

editing your Program Settings. Frame images are saved in JPG format in the same folder where your AVI file is saved.

#### To save individual animation frames:

- Select Settings > Document Settings, and then select Animations in the left pane of the Document Settings dialog. Alternatively you can select Tools > Animation > Animation
   Properties, or click animation > Animation toolbar, and then click the Animation Settings button in the Animation Properties dialog. You can also access the Animation
   Properties dialog directly from the Create Animation dialog when previewing an animation.
- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, enable the **Save individual frames to disc** check box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

## Changing the Speed of an Animation

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the speed of an animation is 80 inches per second if working in feet and inches, or 2.032 meters per second if working in metric units. You can speed up or slow down an animation by editing either the duration or velocity setting in a path's properties. Note that a different speed can be set for each path in your drawing.

### To change the speed of an animation:

- Click on the path whose speed setting you want to change. The path is highlighted with blue grips.
- 2. Right-click and select **Properties**.
- 3. In the **Path Properties** dialog, edit either the **Duration** or **Velocity** value. The duration is based on the specified velocity and length of the path. Increasing the duration value will slow the animation down, and decreasing the duration value will speed it up. The velocity determines what distance in covered in one second. Increasing the velocity value will increase animation speed.



### 4. Click **OK**.

**Note**: The Speed setting affects only the output file. It does not apply to the preview.

### **Compressing Animation Files**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, animations are uncompressed when you save them. This can result in very large files. Compressing an animation converts the data into a format that requires fewer bits, usually so that it can be stored or transmitted more efficiently. If you would like your animation files to be compressed when you save them, you can specify this in your Program Settings. There is an extensive list of video compression coders that you can choose from.

### To compress animation output files:

- Select Settings > Document Settings, and then select Animations in the left pane of the Document Settings dialog. Alternatively you can select Tools > Animation > Animation Properties, or click is a on the Animation toolbar, and then click the Animation Settings button in the Animation Properties dialog. You can also access the Animation Properties dialog directly from the Create Animation dialog when previewing an animation.
- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, select the desired coder from the **Video Compression** drop box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

## Specifying an Output Size for Animation Files

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, animations are recorded at a size of 640 x 480 pixels. You can specify a different output size for animations in your Program Settings.

To specify an output size for animation files:

- Select Settings > Document Settings, and then select Animations in the left pane of the Document Settings dialog. Alternatively you can select Tools > Animation > Animation
   Properties, or click is an on the Animation toolbar, and then click the Animation Settings button in the Animation Properties dialog. You can also access the Animation
   Properties dialog directly from the Create Animation dialog when previewing an animation.
- In the Document Settings dialog, select the desired size from the Size drop box. Pre-defined sizes include 640 x 480, 800 x 600, and 1024 x 768. Selecting the Custom option lets you define a custom size by entering values in the Width and Height edit boxes.
- 3. Click **OK**.

# Specifying a Frame Rate for Animations

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The frame rate is the number of images displayed per second. More simply, it is the video playback rate of the AVI animation. The playback rate directly relates to the perceived smoothness of its playback. The higher the number of frames playing per second, the smoother the video playback appears. Lower rates can result in a choppier playback. You can specify the desired frame rate for animations in your Program Settings.

To specify a frame rate for animations:

 Select Settings > Document Settings, and then select Animations in the left pane of the Document Settings dialog. Alternatively you can select Tools > Animation > Animation Properties, or click is on the Animation toolbar, and then click the Animation Settings button in the Animation Properties dialog. You can also access the Animation
Properties dialog directly from the Create Animation dialog when previewing an animation.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, enter a value between 1 and 32 in the **Frame Rate** edit box. You can enter a value manually or use the arrow buttons to scroll through a list of values.
- 3. Click **OK**.

## **Ray Tracing an Animation**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Ray tracing involves the calculation and display of light, shadows and reflection for a photorealistic effect. Light comes from lighting fixtures as well as through windows, and is bounced off of surfaces that have reflective properties.

By default, animations are not ray traced. If you want to create a ray traced animation, you need to enable ray tracing in your Program Settings before saving the animation. Note that ray tracing can increase the recording time significantly.

Ray tracing begins automatically after the global illumination calculations.

### To create ray traced animations:

- Select Settings > Document Settings, and then select Animations in the left pane of the Document Settings dialog. Alternatively you can select Tools > Animation > Animation
   Properties, or click animation > Animation toolbar, and then click the Animation Settings button in the Animation Properties dialog. You can also access the Animation
   Properties dialog directly from the Create Animation dialog when previewing an animation.
- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, enable the **Ray Trace Animation** check box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

**Note**: Ray tracing occurs only when you record the animation. It is not applied when previewing the animation. The recording pauses before ray tracing is completed so that you can review the image and make brightness adjustments if needed.

### Turning Animation Paths On and Off

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can instantly hide or show all animation paths using the Animation Paths On/Off tool.

#### To turn animation paths on or off:

Select View > Viewing Aids > Animation
 Paths On/Off, or click the down arrow next
 to the Viewing Aids button 200 on the View
 Control toolbar and select Animation Paths
 On/Off.

### **Deleting an Animation Path**

You can remove an animation path from your drawing in a couple of easy steps.

### To delete an animation path:

- 1. Click on the path to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, rightclick and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

### Sounds

Attaching sounds to your drawing is a fun way of adding realism and excitement to your project. For example, you can attach the sound of a doorbell ringing to your front door.

You can use the **Attach Sound File** tool to attach sounds to elements in your drawing, or elements in your catalog. If you attach a sound to an element in the catalog, the sound will automatically be attached to the element when you insert it in your drawing.

Once you have attached a sound to an element, you can play the sound with the Play Sound tool.

**Note**: The method of adding sounds to animations is different than the method of adding sounds to

elements. In animations you need to add a sound node to your animation path.

# Attaching Sounds to Elements in Your Drawing

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Attaching sounds to elements is a great way to add realism and excitement to your design. You can use the Attach Sound File tool to attach

sounds to selected elements in your drawing. For example, you can add the sound of a doorbell or even a voice-over to your front door.

### To attach a sound to an element in your drawing:

- 1. Select **Tools > Sounds > Attach Sound File**. The Sounds cursor is displayed  $\frac{1}{24}$ .
- Click on the element you want to add the sound to. You can select multiple elements if you want using Shift+click.
- 3. In the **Open** dialog, select the *.wav file you want to attach, then click **Open**. Note that there are a number of pre-defined sounds in the program's Sounds directory. You can also use your own *.wav files if you want. A dialog appears telling you that the sound was attached successfully.
- 4. Click **OK**.

**Note**: Only one sound can be attached to an element. If you attempt to attach a sound to an element that already has a sound attached to it, the new sound will replace the old sound.

# Attaching Sounds to Elements in the Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Attach Sound File tool to attach sounds to elements in your catalog. For example, you can add the sound of a door creak to an interior door. Each time you insert the element in your drawing, it will have the sound attached to it.

#### To attach a sound to an element in the catalog:

- Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or right-click any element in the catalog panel and Element Manager.
- 2. In the **Element Manager**, select the element that you want to add a sound to.
- 3. Click *J* below the properties pane, then select **Attach Sound File**.
- 4. In the **Open** dialog, select the *.wav file you want to attach, then click **Open**. Note that there are a number of pre-defined sounds in the program's Sounds directory. You can also use your own *.wav files if you want. A dialog appears telling you that the sound was attached successfully.
- Click **OK**. The name of the sound file is displayed next to the Sounds button.
- To test the sound, click n in again and select Play Sound.
- 7. Click **OK**.

**Note**: Attaching a sound to an element in the catalog affects only future insertions of that element. Elements that already exist in your drawing are not affected.

### Playing Sounds

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have attached a sound to an element, you can play the sound by selecting the Play Sound tool, then clicking on the element with the attached sound.

#### To play a sound:

- Select Tools > Sounds > Play Sound. The Sounds cursor is displayed. ⁺∕
- 2. Select the element with the sound attached to it. The sound plays.

**Note**: A notification dialog appears if the element does not have a sound attached to it.

### Removing Sounds from Elements in Your Drawing

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite If you have attached a sound to an element in your drawing, you can remove it using the Remove Sound tool.

# To remove a sound from an element in your drawing:

- 1. Select Tools > Sounds > Remove Sound.
  - The Sounds cursor is displayed.
- 2. Click on the element. A dialog tells you that the sound has been successfully removed.
- 3. Click **OK**.

## Removing Sounds from Elements in the Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have attached a sound to an element in the catalog, you can remove it by editing the element's properties. Note that this does not remove the sound from elements already inserted in your drawing.

#### To remove a sound from an element in the catalog:

- Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or right-click any element in the catalog panel and select Element Manager.
- 2. In the **Element Manager**, select the element you want to remove the sound from.
- 3. Click ^[n] below the properties pane, then select **Remove Sound**. A dialog tells you that the sound has been successfully removed.
- 4. Click **OK**.

### Selecting a Default Sounds Directory

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the program's Sounds folder is displayed in the Open dialog when attaching sounds to elements or animations. You can select a different default directory to display if you want.

#### To select a default Sounds directory:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. On the General pane, click on the **Sounds Dir**ectory in the *File Paths* area.
- 3. Click Modify.

- 4. In the **Browse For Folder** dialog, select the directory you want to use as your default temporary files directory, then click **OK**.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Program Settings** dialog.

# Chapter 23: Drawing Aids

### **Drawing Aids**

While designing you have a variety of powerful drawing aids at your fingertips that can help you insert elements easily and precisely where you want them in your drawing. The Drawing Aids are docked in the Status bar in the lower right of your screen. Solid Fill, toggles the fill associated to objects on and off. If you want you can display a drawing grid in your drawing area, as well as set up a snap grid so that your cursor snaps to the grid when you are inserting elements. The Object Snap feature automatically snaps your pointer to existing objects, and the Angle Snap snaps your pointer to specified angles. Snap tracking helps you draw objects at specific angles or positions relative to other objects. The Collision Control feature prevents you from inserting elements where they do not fit. You can set up drawing aids in your program settings, and toggle them on and off using the buttons on the Status bar.

For very precise control when inserting or editing elements, you can use a tool called the Commander, which lets you view or enter exact values for distance, direction and angles. It is especially handy for users with some CAD experience.

## **Drawing Aids**

There are a variety of drawing aids at your disposal during the design process. Each tool can be toggled on or off in the drawing aids portion of the Status Bar. SOLIDFILL SNAPTRACK GRIDSNAP OBJSNAP ANGLESNAP

Solid Fill. Turns the solid color associated to a wall or object on so it is filled with the color. Used most often with walls for a presentation plan appearance. Snap Tracking. Helps you draw objects at specific angles or positions relative to other objects. When snap tracking is turned on, temporary alignment paths appear that are based on object snap points, such as endpoints and midpoints.

Drawing Grid. A visual aid comprising a set of horizontal and vertical lines in the drawing area. You can control the spacing between grid lines.

Grid Snap. Snaps your pointer to an invisible grid when inserting elements. You can match the grid snap to your drawing grid if desired, or specify the desired spacing between grid snap lines.

Object Snap. Snaps elements that you are currently inserting to existing elements in your drawing.

Angle Snap. Snaps your pointer to specific angles when rotating an element. For example, if your snap angle is set to 15°, your pointer will snap at 15°, 30°, 45°, and so on.

Ortho. Restricts your cursor movement to 90-degree angles when you are inserting elements.

Collision Control. Prevents objects from being inserted where they do not fit.

## Setting Up a Drawing Grid

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A drawing grid is simply a set of horizontal and vertical lines that can help you orient objects to one another. By default, the spacing between grid lines is 4', but you can change this if you want. You can also control the color and style of the grid. Note that the drawing grid is a visual aid only, and will not be included in printouts. By default a grid is displayed in the drawing area, but you can turn it off if you like. **To set up a drawing grid:** 

1. Select **Settings > Document Settings** or click

on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, select **Drawing Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Grid* area, check the **Enable** (F7) check box.
- Click the **Color** swatch, then select a color for the grid from the **Color** dialog.

- From the Style drop box, select a style for the grid – Dots or Lines.
- 6. Specify the desired distance between vertical grid lines in the **X Spacing** edit box.
- 7. Specify the desired distance between horizontal grid lines in the **Y Spacing** edit box.
- By default, the grid is 160' x 160', which is the default size of the terrain. To change the overall size of the grid, enter the desired width in the X Limit edit box, and the desired height in the Y Limit edit box.
- 9. Click **OK**.

# Turning the Drawing Grid On and Off

You can toggle the drawing grid on and off in one of two ways:

- Press **F7** on your keyboard
- Click the **GRID** button on the Status bar

## Using the Grid Snap

The Grid Snap feature snaps your pointer to an invisible grid when inserting elements. By default, the spacing between the grid lines in the invisible grid is 4', but you can change this if you want. If you enable the **Match Grid** option, the invisible snap grid becomes the same size as the drawing grid. This will make it seem like you are snapping to the drawing grid while drawing.

### To set up a snap grid:

1. Select **Settings > Document Settings** or click

on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, select **Drawing Aids** in the left column.
- To turn the grid snap on, enable the Grid Snap (F4) check box.
- 4. If you want the snap grid to be the same size as the drawing grid, check the **Match Grid** check box in the *Grid Snap* area.
- 5. To specify a custom distance between vertical grid lines, enter a value in the **X Spacing** edit box.

- To specify a custom distance between horizontal grid lines, enter a value in the Y Spacing edit box.
- 7. Click **OK**.

**Tip**: You can toggle the grid snap on and off by clicking the GRIDSNAP button on the drawing aids toolbar or pressing F4 on your keyboard.

# Turning the Grid Snap On and Off

You can toggle the grid snap on and off in one of two ways:

- Press **F4** on your keyboard
- Click the **GRIDSNAP** button on the Status bar

## Using Object Snaps in Model View

When inserting an element, the Object Snap feature makes your cursor automatically snap to common points on existing elements in your drawing. This allows you to select an insertion point or start point more easily and precisely. When the Object Snap is turned on, the Endpoint, Midpoint, Nearest and Perpendicular snaps become active. Your cursor icon changes when your cursor comes close to a snap point, providing a visual indicator that snapping is occurring.

**Endpoint**. Snaps to the endpoint of an object.

**Midpoint**. Snaps to the midpoint of an object.

Nearest. Snaps to a point directly on an object.

**Perpendicular**. Snaps to a point on an object that forms a perpendicular from the current point to the selected object.

You can set the pixel search distance for the object snap, which determines how close your pointer needs to be to an element for it to snap to the element.

### To turn the Object Snap on or off:

- Press **F5** on your keyboard, or
- Click the **OBJSNAP** button on the Status bar, or
- Select Settings > Document Settings, then on the Drawing Aids pane, check or uncheck the Object Snap (F5) check box in the *Snap Behavior* area

### To set the pixel search distance:

- 1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click
  - 🕙 🗟 on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, select **Drawing Aids** in the left column.
- Below the *Object Snap (F5)* setting, type the desired number of pixels in the **Pixel Search Distance** edit box, or use the arrows to scroll up or down through a list of values.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Using Angle Snap

When the Angle Snap feature is turned on, your cursor snaps to specific angles when rotating an element. If you set your snap angle to 10°, for example, your cursor will snap at 10° intervals as you rotate the element.

By default, the Angle Snap is on and is set to 15°.

### To turn the Angle Snap on or off:

- Press **F6** on your keyboard, or
- Click the **ANGLESNAP** button on the Status bar, or
- Select Settings > Document Settings, then on the Drawing Aids pane, check or uncheck the Angle Snap (F6) check box

### To change the snap angle:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click

🛃 🗟 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, select **Drawing Aids** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Snap Behavior* area, type the desired snap angle in the **Snap Angle** edit box, or use the arrows to scroll up or down through a list of values.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Setting the Snap Priority

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When inserting line-drawn elements, you can specify how you want the object to snap when there is a Snap Angle defined.

### To set the snap priority:

1. Select Settings > Document Settings or click



🙀 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Document Settings** dialog, select **Drawing Aids** in the left column.
  - To ensure that a line-drawn object snaps to the defined Snap Angle, even if a snap point is encountered that does not fall on the snap angle line, enable the **Angle Priority** radio button. In this case, it will snap to a point on the snap angle line that is closest to the encountered snap point.
  - To ensure that a line-drawn object always snaps to snap points, even if they are not aligned with the defined Snap Angle, enable the **Snap Priority** radio button.

## **Object Snap Tracking**

The Snap Tracking feature helps you draw objects at specific angles or positions relative to other objects. When snap tracking is turned on, temporary alignment paths appear that are based on object snap points, such as endpoints and midpoints. Such points are marked with a small, solid square when you move your cursor over their drawing paths. You can acquire points on up to five elements at one time. Alignment paths are horizontal and vertical, and can also be angled if your Angle Snap is turned on. Snap tracking can be turned on and off as needed. In order for snap tracking to work, the Object Snap (OBJSNAP) must be enabled. Snap tracking is available in both Model View and Worksheet View.

Let's say in the following example that we want the end of the wall being drawn to be in alignment with point **A**. When you hover over point **A** and then stretch your wall towards the drawing path of point **A**, a horizontal dotted line appears indicating the path of alignment with point **A**. This makes it easy to select an end point for the wall that is aligned with point **A**.



## To turn Snap Tracking on or off:

- Press **F3** on your keyboard, or
- Click the **SNAPTRACK** button on the Status bar, or
- Select Settings > Document Settings > Drawing Aids, then check or uncheck the Snap Tracking check box

## **Using Ortho**

The Ortho feature restricts your cursor movement to 90-degree angles when you are inserting elements. This can be especially helpful when drawing elements like walls.

By default, Ortho is enabled. You can toggle it on and off using one of three methods.

### To turn Ortho on or off:

- Press **F8** on your keyboard, or
- Click the **ORTHO** button on the Status bar, or
- Select Settings > Document Settings, then on the Drawing Aids pane, check or uncheck the Ortho (F8) check box

To temporarily disable Ortho while drawing, press and hold the **Shift** key. When you release the **Shift** key, Ortho mode will resume.

## **Collision Control**

The program's intelligent Collision Control feature prevents objects from being inserted where they do not fit. By default, Collision Control is on, but you can turn it off whenever you like using one of three methods.

### To turn Collision Control on or off:

- Press **F9** on your keyboard, or
- Click COLLISION on the Status bar, or
- Select Settings > Document Settings, then on the Building Aids pane, check or uncheck the Enable Collision Control (F9) check box

**Note**: Collision control affects building elements on the current building location only. It does not affect landscape elements.

## Commander

The Commander lets you enter precise values when inserting or editing elements. Initially the Commander will look grayed out because it is inactive. It will become active when you insert or edit elements.

Polar 🔻	Distance 0"		Direction 0°
Polar 🔻	Distance 0"	Direction 0°	

Using the Commander you can:

- Specify the insertion height of an element before it is inserted
- Select a precise insertion point for an element
- Specify a precise length and direction for elements like walls and railings
- Specify a precise distance and direction when stretching or moving an element
- Specify a precise angle when rotating an element
- Specify a precise radius/included angle when curving an element

Even if you don't want to enter precise values, you can still use the Commander to view measurements as you draw and edit elements. The values in the Commander are linked to your cursor movement and update as you proceed through a command.

# Turning the Commander On or Off

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Commander is a multi-functional tool that lets you enter precise values when inserting or editing elements. Even if you don't need a high level of precision, you may want the Commander displayed so you can see lengths and angles as you draw or edit elements.

Polar 🔻	Distar	nce O"	
Polar 🔻	Distance 0"	Direction 0°	

The Commander is displayed in the lower part of the screen, just above the Status Bar. Initially the Commander will look grayed out because it is inactive. It will become active when you insert or edit elements.

To turn the Commander on or off:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. Check or uncheck the **Commander** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Using the Commander

The Commander can be a very useful tool when inserting or editing elements. Using the Commander you can:

- Specify the insertion height of an element before it is inserted
- Select a precise insertion point for an element
- Specify a precise length and direction for elements like walls and railings
- Specify a precise distance and direction when stretching or moving an element
- Specify a precise angle when rotating an element
- Specify a precise radius/included angle when curving a wall, ceiling, deck or opening

Even if you don't want to enter precise values, you can still use the Commander to view measurements as you draw and edit elements. The values in the Commander are linked to your cursor movement and update as you proceed through a command.

The Commander becomes instantly active when inserting elements. It is most useful for things like walls and railings, because it lets you enter a precise length for the element.

The Commander also becomes active when you are moving, stretching or rotating elements. If you have started moving, stretching or rotating an element using your mouse, the Commander displays the move distance or rotation angle as you move your mouse. If you want to be able the enter values in the Commander when moving, stretching or rotating an element, you need to first select an appropriate editing tool from the right-click menu or Edit > Modify Elements menu such as Move, Stretch, Lengthen, or Rotate.

### **Displaying the Coordinate Icon**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Coordinate Icon marks the current point from which an action will be performed. In other words, it identifies the current reference point when using the Commander. By default, this icon is turned off. If you plan to use the Commander while working, you should turn on the Coordinate Icon.

# L, L,

Di

### To display the Coordinate Icon:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Visual Aids* area, check the **Show Coordinate Icon** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Specifying the Insertion Height of an Element Before Inserting It

If you have the Commander turned on, it will display a **Base Height** edit box as soon as an insertion tool becomes active.

> Base Height 0" Base Height 0"
The value shown in the **Base Height** edit box is the height at which the element will insert in your drawing. You can change the insertion height before selecting an insertion point for the element by typing a value in the **Base Height** edit box and pressing TAB. If the element is a building element, the height is measured from the floor level of the current building location to the element's insertion point. If the element is a landscape element, the distance is measured from the terrain to the element's insertion point. Most elements have their insertion point at the bottom of the element. Exceptions are windows and wall openings, in which the insertion point is located at the top of the element. In the case of windows and wall openings, the edit box reads "Head Height".

# Selecting a Reference Point When Inserting and Editing Elements

To use the Commander, you must first specify a reference point, or base point, from which values can be measured. If you are drawing a wall, for example, the first point you click on the screen is considered the reference point. The Commander then becomes active, and you can enter a Distance and Direction (or X and Y values) for the wall.

If you want to use the Commander to edit an element (e.g. move or rotate it), you must select a point from which to measure the move distance/direction, or rotation angle. Most often you would select one of the element's grab handles, which are the small blue squares that appear on the major points of an element when you select the element.

# Entering Values in the Commander

The Commander is intelligent and changes depending on the tool you are using. For example, if you are drawing walls, the Commander's edit boxes become *Distance* and *Direction*. If you are curving walls, however, the edit boxes change to *Radius* and *Included Angle*. You can move easily from one edit box to the next using your Tab key. Pressing Enter after typing a value completes the current action.

When entering values in the Commander, especially when inserting or moving elements, it is important to be aware of the current coordinate system in the Commander.

The Commander offers two coordinate systems. In the Polar system, you enter a distance and direction. In the Cartesian system, you enter X, Y and Z coordinates.

Note that you can switch between the Polar and Cartesian coordinate system once you have selected a reference point to draw from or move from. You do this by making a selection from the coordinate system drop box on the left side of the Commander.

**Note**: If moving, stretching or rotating elements, and you want to enter values in the Commander, you need to first select an appropriate editing tool from the right-click menu or Edit > Modify Elements menu such as Move, Stretch, Lengthen or Rotate.

# Specifying Distance and Direction in the Commander

The Polar coordinate system becomes active in the Commander once you have selected a reference point to draw from, or start a move from. In the Polar coordinate system, you specify a distance and direction (angle) when drawing or moving an element.

Polar 🔻	Distance 0"		Direction 0°
Polar 🔻	Distance 0"	Direction 0°	

**Distance**. Enter a positive value to specify the length of the element, or the move distance.

**Direction**. Enter the direction you want the element to run, or the direction in which you want to move an element. For information about how direction is specified, see Direction and Angle of Rotation.

**Z**. This value is only available when inserting members. Enter the distance you want to move the member vertically. You can enter a positive or negative value to move it up or down. The *Z* value is measured from the floor level of the current building location.

# Defining X, Y and Z Coordinates

While using the Commander to insert or edit elements, you may choose to work in the Cartesian coordinate system instead of the Polar coordinate system. This lets you specify a precise reference point to draw or move from by entering X and Y coordinate values.

To switch to the Cartesian coordinate system, select **Cartesian** from the Commander's left drop box.

Cartesian 🔻	X 2'-1 1/4"	Y -9'-3
Cartesian 🔻	X 0"	Y 8'-7 3/8"

**X**. Enter an X coordinate to specify a horizontal (left/right) distance in 2D plan view.

**Y**. Enter a Y coordinate to specify a vertical (up/down) distance in 2D plan view.

**Z**. This coordinate is only available when inserting members. Enter a Z coordinate to indicate elevation, or height. The Z value is measured from the floor level of the current building location.

Remember that the coordinates are measured from the current reference point, which is marked by the Coordinate Icon if it is enabled.

In the Cartesian system, you can enter both positive and negative values for any of the coordinates.

## **Direction and Angle of Rotation**

Direction in a drawing is specified in degrees of an angle. The angle is calculated counterclockwise from the positive X axis.





Although the four primary drawing directions are the ones you will probably be working with the most, any angle is possible. If you disable Ortho and Angle Snap, and move an element randomly in your drawing area, there is no restriction on angles at all. Even if Ortho and Angle Snap are enabled, you can enter any angle you want in the Commander.

# Rotating Elements Using the Commander

When you select the Rotate tool from the right-click menu or Edit > Modify Elements menu, then select a base point for the rotation, the Commander displays an **Enter Rotation Angle** edit box.



To specify the desired angle of rotation for the element, type the angle in the **Enter Rotation Angle** edit box and press ENTER. For information on how angles are measured, see Direction and Angle of Rotation.

# Curving Elements Using the Commander

When curving an element such as a wall or floor opening, you can use the Commander to specify a precise curve angle.

Cartesian 🔻 🛛	Rad	lius 15'-8 9/16"	Included Angle
Cartesian 🔻	Radius 15'-8 9/16"	Included Angle 91°	

**Radius**. The distance from the element (in its uncurved state) to the center point of the curve.

**Included Angle**. The angle formed between two radius lines extending from the center of the circle implied by the curve out to the endpoints of the arc. The larger the angle, the rounder and larger the curve.



It is not necessary to enter both the Radius and Included Angle values. If you enter one, the program automatically supplies the other. Also, if you enter a value and nothing happens after you press ENTER, then the value is not valid in relation to the dimensions of your element.

# Measure/Query

There are a couple of handy tools available for measuring distance and displaying information about elements in your design.

Use the Measure tool in Model View to measure the distance between any two points in a 2D view. If you keep selecting points, a running total is kept. If you use the Measure tool in Worksheet View, both distance and angle are reported.

Using the Query Element/Location tool you can select any element in your drawing and instantly view its name and building location.

# Measuring Distance in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Use the Measure tool to measure the distance between any two points in your 2D plan.

## To use the Measure tool:

- Select Tools > Measure, or click , on the Tools toolbar.
- 2. Click your first point on the screen.
- 3. Move your cursor in the direction you want to measure. A ruler is displayed that stretches as you move your cursor.



4. Click your second point on the screen. The distance is shown on the ruler as well as on the Status bar at the bottom of the screen.

 Once you have measured your first distance, you can keep selecting points to measure additional distances from the last point selected. A running total is displayed on the Status bar.

Pick next point on screen <Distance8'-5 11/32" Total Distance: 8'-5 11/32" >
Pick next point on screen:
Obstance: 12'-4", Total Distance: 12'-4" >

6. When you have finished measuring, rightclick and select **Finish**.

# Measuring Distance and Angle in Worksheet View

Express | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the handy Measure tool you can measure the distance and angle between any two points in your drawing.

## To measure in Worksheet View:

- Select Tools > Measure, or click . on the Tools toolbar.
- Click the first point that you want to measure from. As you move your crosshairs away from this point, distance and angle information is reported on the status bar:

Distance: 14'-1-1,	/4" Angle: 45°
Distance 21'-10"	Direction 45°

3. Click the second point that you want to measure to. All calculations, including the distance along the X axis and Y axis, are reported in the **Measure** dialog.

# **Querying Elements**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Using the Query Element/Location tool you can select any element in your drawing and instantly view its name and building location.

## To query an element/location:

- 1. Select Tools > Query Element/Location.
- With the Query Element/Location cursor active *? If *? If , click on the element you want to inquire about. The Query Element/Location dialog displays the element's name and building location.

?: Query El	ement / Location	8 23
Element:	60'' Double French Door	
Location:	Ground Floor	
		ОК

3. When you are finished viewing the element and location information, click **OK**.

**Note**: For landscaping and terrain elements, which are associated with the terrain, the Location box displays *Terrain* rather than a building location.

**Note**: The Query Element/Location tool can only be used on elements that were inserted from the catalog. You cannot use it on drafting objects.

# Chapter 24: Project Management

# **Project Management**

Envisioneer offers the standard Open tool for opening saved projects. Save features include Save, Save As, and Save All.

Each view in your project has its own set of Print Properties. These include settings for the printer selection, paper size, scaling, and print quality. These settings will automatically appear in the Print dialog when you print the view. You can print across multiple sheets of paper if needed, and print to a file. The Batch Printing tool lets you process the printing of multiple views at the same time.

There are a number of different items that you can import into your drawing. Use the Project Trace Image tool to import a BMP, JPG or TGA file, such as a scanned floor plan, and then trace over it using real 3D elements. The Photo Board Wizard lets you import digital photographs or scanned images that are then oriented vertically in 3D view.

Perhaps one of the most versatile tools is the Object Import Wizard, which lets you quickly import custom 3D objects in DWG, DXF, SKP or 3DS format.

You can export your drawing to different 2D and 3D file formats. To export to a BMP, JPG or TGA file, use the 2D Image export tool. To export your 2D plan to a DWG or DXF file, use the 2D Drawing export tool. To export your 3D model to a DWG or DXF file, use the 3D Model export tool.

To specify general project information, such as the project name, type and number, fill out the fields in the Project Manager. This dialog also has a Work History tab where you can keep track of who has done what, and when.

# **Opening and Saving**

Once you have started and saved a project, you can work on it whenever you like. You can open a saved project by selecting Open on the File menu. If the project is one that you have worked on recently, it will be listed at the bottom of the File menu. You can also open saved projects from the Startup screen. Once you have opened a project, you can edit, save, print and export it, as well as save it as a template for future projects.

You can have more than one project open at a time. If you have more than one project open, you can switch between projects using the Window menu.

As you edit your drawing, the changes you make are stored temporarily in your computer's memory until you save them. The Save function saves the current project under its current name. You can use Save As to save a project under a different name, and Save All to save all currently open projects. You can also use the Save As tool to save a drawing as a template for use in future projects. By default, one backup of your drawing is saved along with the drawing, but you can save multiple backups if you want.

# **Opening a Saved Project**

You can open any saved project using the Open tool. **To open a saved project:** 

- Select File > Open, or click in the Standard toolbar.
- 2. In the **Open** dialog, navigate to the location where you saved the project.
- 3. Select the project to open, then click **Open**.

**Tip**: If the project you want to open is one that your recently worked on, it may be listed in the recently used file list near the bottom of the **File** menu, or in the Projects section on the Startup screen. Just select it to open it. You can also open a saved project from the Startup screen by selecting **Open Existing**.

**Note**: For information about opening projects from older versions of the program, see *Opening a Project from an Older Version* on page 27.

# Changing the Number of Files on the Recently Used File List

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, a maximum of four projects are listed in the recently used file list near the bottom of the **File** menu. You can increase or decrease this number if you want.

# To change the number of files in the recently used file list:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. On the *General* pane, type the maximum number of files to display in the **Recently used file list** edit box, or use the arrows to select a number. You can list a maximum of 9 files.

# **Repairing Damaged Projects**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Occasionally a drawing may become damaged, usually when drawing walls. The Repair Project tool scans the project for elements that have caused damage, and either fixes or removes them.

## To repair a damaged project:

1. Select File > Repair Project.

If the recovery is successful, a dialog appears with the message, "Recovery Successful".

If the recovery is not successful, a dialog appears telling you why it was not successful.

# **Saving Projects**

The program has three save functions: Save, Save As and Save All. They are located on the File menu. When saving a new project for the first time, or when saving a project under a different name, you have the option of saving it in a format that is compatible with an older version of Envisioneer.

If you plan to share the project with others, you can choose to pack any resources that it uses, and include them in the saved project.

By default, projects are stored in the following location:

C:\Users*username*\Documents\Envisioneer\Projects

## To save a project:

- To save the current project for the first time, or save changes to a project that you have already saved, select File > Save, or click already on the Standard toolbar. To save the project under a different name (and create a copy of it), select File > Save As.
- 2. If you are saving for the first time, or saving under a different name, the **Save As** dialog appears. Type a name for the file in the **File name** edit box.
- If you want to save the file in a format that is compatible with an older version of Envisioneer, click the Save as Type drop box and select the desired version.
- 4. If you want to pack resources with the saved project, such as textures and linestyles, enable the **Pack Resources** check box. This enables you to share the project with others who may not have those resources on their system.
- 5. Click Save.

## To save all currently open projects:

# **Sharing Projects**

If you would like to share a project with other Envisioneer users, you can simply send them a copy of the original .bld file. Note the following considerations:

- If a user has an older version of Envisioneer, you can use the Save As tool to save a copy of the project in an older format. In the Save As dialog box, the Save as type drop box contains a list of previous version formats.
- If your project uses any custom resources that may not be available on other users' systems, such as custom textures or linestyles, use the Save As tool to save a copy of the project. In the Save As dialog box, make sure that you enable the Pack Resources check box. Although this will result in a larger file size, you can be assured that others will be able to properly visualize all aspects of your project.

## Setting the Automatic Save

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Auto Save option saves your project for you at regular intervals. This is a great way to make sure you save your changes regularly and avoid any loss should a power failure or system error occur.

#### To set the Automatic Save:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. On the *General* pane, enable the **Auto Save** check box.
- 3. From the **Save time (min)** drop box, select the desired save interval in minutes, or use the arrows to select a value.
- 4. Click **OK**.

**Note**: Disabling the Auto Save applies to the current project only. It is turned on by default for all new projects.

**Note**: If you have not saved your project yet, the Auto Save will save the project to a temporary *autosave.bld* file.

## Setting the Number of Backups

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, one backup drawing is created when you save your drawing. You can choose to save multiple backups if you want.

Backup files are saved in the same folder as your project files. The format of the first backup file is *ProjectName_1.bkp*. If you choose to save additional backups, the number increments by one for each backup file (e.g. *ProjectName_2.bkp*).

The first backup file is always a copy of the drawing as it is saved currently. If the number of backups is set to 2, the second backup drawing is a copy of your drawing as it was at the previous save. If the number of backups is set to 3, the third backup drawing is a copy of your drawing two saves back, and so on.

#### To set the number of backups:

Select Settings > Program Settings or click
 on the Settings toolbar.

- 2. In the **Number of Backups** edit box on the *General* pane, type the number of backup files you would like to save, or use the arrow keys to increase or decrease the number.
- 3. Click **OK**.

# Specifying a Default Save Location for Projects

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, new (unsaved) projects are saved in the following folder unless you specify otherwise:

C:\Users*username*\Documents\Envisioneer\Projects

You can specify a different default save directory if you want.

- To specify the default save location:
- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. On the *General* pane, click on the **Projects Dir**ectory in the *File Paths* area.
- 3. Click Modify.
- 4. In the **Browse For Folder** dialog, select the directory you want to use as your default save directory, then click **OK**.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Program Settings** dialog.

# Saving a Project as a Template

By default you are prompted to select a template when starting a new project. A template determines what settings new projects will have. These include the following:

- Building Location Settings
- Program Settings (unit of measure, drawing aids, etc.)
- View Window Setup
- Wall Framing Configurations
- Dimension Settings
- Drafting Preferences

You can even include drafting objects and building elements in a template if you want. For example, if you use a standard set of drawing borders and title blocks in all your projects, you can insert them on your worksheets and save them in your template so that they are already present when new projects are started.

You can create a template out of any drawing by simply saving it in your Templates directory. If you want to use the same template for every new project, you can specify this in your startup options.

## To create a template:

- Unless you have already created the drawing you want to use as a template, start a new project (File > New).
- 2. Specify the settings you want to save with the template, such as your building locations and program settings. Note that any elements in your drawing will be saved as well, so unless you want these elements to appear in new projects, you should delete the elements from your drawing.
- 3. By default, the last open view is used as the thumbnail for the template. Template thumbnails are displayed in the **New** dialog that appears when you start new projects. If you want to create a thumbnail image of one of the project's views, make sure that view is current before saving the project. (Note that you can attach an image file such as a BMP or JPG instead.)
- 4. Select File > Save As.
- 5. In the **Save As** dialog, navigate to the program's Templates folder. By default, this is in the following location:

C:\ProgramData**Cadsoft****Envisioneer** \Templates

- 5. In the **File name** edit box, type a name for the template.
- To create a thumbnail and/or a description of the template which will be displayed in the New dialog box when you start new projects,

click	Options	Options
CIICK		

Dptions	
Thumbnail Preview	
Use Last Open View	
C Attach image file	
Notes:	
This is a template specified in feet and inches. Default scale is 1/4"=1'-0". Steel frame construction.	
* Ctrl + Enter for next line	OK
Options	
Thumbnail Preview	
Thumbnail Preview Use Last Open View	
Thumbnail Preview <ul> <li>Use Last Open View</li> <li>Attach image file</li> </ul>	
Thumbnail Preview Use Last Open View Attach image file	
Thumbnail Preview	
Thumbnail Preview  Use Last Open View  Attach image file  Notes:	
Thumbnail Preview  Use Last Open View  Attach image file  Notes:  This is a template specified in feet and inches. Default scale is 1/4"=1'-0". Steel frame construction.	
Thumbnail Preview  Use Last Open View  Attach image file  Notes:  This is a template specified in feet and inches. Default scale is 1/4"=1'-0". Steel frame construction.	
Thumbnail Preview  Use Last Open View  Attach image file  Notes:  This is a template specified in feet and inches. Default scale is 1/4"=1'-0". Steel frame construction.]	
Thumbnail Preview      O Use Last Open View      Attach image file  Notes:  This is a template specified in feet and inches. Default scale is 1/4"=1'-0". Steel frame construction.	
Thumbnail Preview  Use Last Open View  Attach image file  Notes:  This is a template specified in feet and inches. Default scale is 1/4"=1'-0". Steel frame construction.]	
Thumbnail Preview  Use Last Open View  Attach image file  Notes:  This is a template specified in feet and inches. Default scale is 1/4"=1'-0". Steel frame construction.	
Thumbnail Preview  Use Last Open View  Attach image file  Notes:  This is a template specified in feet and inches. Default scale is 1/4"=1'-0". Steel frame construction.]  * Ctrl + Enter for next line	

To create a thumbnail based on the project's last open view, enable the **Use Last Open View** radio button in the *Thumbnail Preview* area. To create a thumbnail based on an image file, enable the **Attach Image File**  radio button, then click _____ to browse for and select the desired image. You can attach a BMP, JPG, PNG or GIF image to the template.

To create a description of the template, type the desired information in the *Notes* pane, pressing **CTRL + Enter** for each new line of text. Click **OK**.

7. When you are ready to save the project as a template, click **Save**.

**Note**: If you do not save a template in the Templates folder (or the folder that is selected as the default templates folder in your program settings), it will not be immediately available in the **New** dialog when starting new projects. You will have to browse for it every time.

# Setting the Path to the Templates Directory

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have moved your Templates directory, or have chosen to store your templates in a different directory, you should reset the path to the template directory in your Program Settings. The path you set determines which templates are displayed in the New dialog when you start new projects as well as the default folder displayed when browsing for templates.

By default, your templates are stored in the following directory:

C:\ProgramData\Cadsoft\Envisioneer\Templates

## To set the path to your templates directory:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. On the *General* pane, click on the **Templates Directory** in the *File Paths* area.
- 3. Click **Modify**.
- 4. In the **Browse For Folder** dialog, select the directory containing your templates, then click **OK**.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Program Settings** dialog.

# Selecting a Directory for Temporary Files

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Certain functions of the program create temporary files which are stored in a directory on your computer system. By default, the path to the temporary directory is as follows:

*C*:*Users***username***AppData**Local**Temp* 

You can specify a different directory to store your temporary files in if you want.

To set a different temporary files directory:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. On the *General* pane, click on the **Temporary Directory** in the *File Paths* area.
- 3. Click Modify.
- 4. In the **Browse For Folder** dialog, select the directory you want to use as your default temporary files directory, then click **OK**.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Program Settings** dialog.

# **Closing Projects**

Projects remain open until you close them or exit the program. You can close the active project without exiting the program. If you have more than one drawing open, make sure the drawing you want to close is the active one.

## To close a drawing:

- Select File > Close, or click in on the Standard toolbar.
- 2. In the dialog, click **Yes** or **No** when you are asked to save changes.
- 3. If you haven't named the project yet and you clicked **Yes** in the previous step, specify a name for the project in the **Save As** dialog, then click **Save**.

# Printing

Each view window in your project has its own set of print properties such as printer/plotter selection, page size, scaling, and print quality. These are the settings that are used when you use the Print tool to print the current view, or when you use the Batch Printing tool to print a number of selected views.

If your drawing exceeds the selected page size, it will print across multiple sheets of paper. You can also print to a file if needed.

# Defining a View's Print Properties

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Each view window in your project, whether it be a Model View or Worksheet View window, has its own set of print properties. These properties include the printer/plotter selection, paper size, print area, page setup, print scaling, print quality, and line weight printing.



Having view-specific print properties lets you define and save unique print properties for each view, and therefore eliminates the need to specify print settings every time you want to print a view. It also makes it possible to perform batch printing, where a number of different views (with different print settings) can be printed at once.

You can access a view's print properties using the View Properties tool, or through the View Manager.

### To define a view's print properties:

- Right-click in the view window and select View Properties, or select View > View Properties. Or, select View > View Manager and select the view window whose properties you want to define.
- 2. Select the Print Properties tab.
- Define the view's print properties. The properties are described below.
   <u>Printer/Plotter</u>

**Name**. Click this drop box to select the printer or plotter to use when printing this view.

**Properties** Click to define various properties for the currently selected printer such as paper and output settings, and print quality.

**Paper Size**. Click this drop box to select the size of paper you want to print on.

**Orientation**. Choose either **Portrait** or **Landscape**. The Portrait option gives the paper a vertical orientation, while the Landscape option gives it a horizontal orientation.

**Print to file**. If enabled, the view is printed to a print file, such as a Postscript file, rather than a printer.

**Copies**. The number of copies you want to print.

## Print Area

**All (Extents)**. Prints the entire view, even if part of it is currently not visible.

**Window**. Prints a selected area of your drawing. To select the area, click the Window button. Note that this option is not available for 3D perspective views.

**Display**. Prints exactly what you see on the screen in the current view. If only part of your drawing is currently visible, only that part will appear in the printout.

Window Click to temporarily access your drawing area and draw a selection window around the area you want to print. This button is only available if the *Window* print area option is selected.

### Page Setup

**Placement**. The **Lower Left** option prints the image in the lower left corner of the paper. The **Center on Paper** option centers the image on the paper.

**Print all colors as black**. (*Worksheet View only*) If enabled, this will produce a black-and-white printout.

#### Print Scaling

**Fit to Page**. Scales the drawing to fit the selected paper size. Note that this is the default setting for 3D views, since 3D views are not affected by changes in scale.

**Print to Scale**. Prints the current view according to the **Scale** set below, regardless of the paper size. This option does not work with 3D views, since 3D views cannot be scaled.

View Scale. The drawing scale of the current view as set on the View Properties page in the view's properties. This is the ratio of units on paper to real-world units. For example, if the view scale is 1/4'' = 1'-0'' (or 1:48), this means that every 1'-0" of your actual model is represented by 1/4" on paper. If you are using the Print to Scale option, this gives you a sense of how you are scaling the drawing. For example, if your view scale is set to 1/4'' =1'-0" and you set the print scale to 1/2" = 1'-0", you know that you are scaling the drawing up in the printout. The drawing would be larger when printed at the 1/2"= 1'-0" scale than it would at the 1/4'' = 1'-0'' because every 1'-0" of the model is being represented by 1/2" on paper instead of only 1/4" on paper.

**Print Scale**. Click the drop box to select a print scale for the view (if using the **Print to Scale** option). When you change the print scale, things like text and dimensions will be

scaled in such a way that they are proportional to the rest of the drawing.

Note that if you change the print scale, your 2D plan does not scale on the screen. It will only be scaled on paper when you print the drawing. Changing the print scale has no effect in 3D views, neither on the screen nor in printouts, unless it is an elevation view. This is because a model being viewed in 3D does not have concrete measurements like a flat, 2D view has.

## Line Work

**Print Line Weights**. Prints the lines in your drawing using the weight (thickness) assigned to them in element properties. Otherwise, all lines print with the same thickness.

## Preview

**Show View Contents**. Disabling this check box turns off the view inside the preview window. You may want to take advantage of this feature if you are having issues with your graphics display (if graphics are slow to load or refresh, for example). Your choice will also be applied in the Print dialog and Batch Printing dialog.

## **Printing Drawings**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The program uses the standard *Windows* Print routine with a few added features, such as a print preview, print area selection, scaling options, and paper placement. When you open the Print dialog, the print settings in the dialog reflect the print settings defined for the current view window.

## To print a drawing:

- Select File > Print, or click 🖶 🖶 on the Standard toolbar.
- 2. In the **Print** dialog, specify your print settings.

Printer/Plotter

**Name**. Click this drop box to select a printer or plotter to use when printing this view.

**Eroperties** Click to define various properties for the currently selected printer such as paper and output settings, and print quality.

**Paper Size**. Click this drop box to select the size of paper you want to print on. Note that if you are printing to scale, and the scale of the drawing is too large for the selected paper size, the drawing will be automatically tiled across multiple sheets of paper.

**Orientation**. Choose either **Portrait** or **Landscape**. The Portrait option gives the paper a vertical orientation, while the Landscape option gives it a horizontal orientation.

**Print to file**. If enabled, the project is printed to a print file rather than a printer.

**Copies**. Select the number of copies to print. Print Area

**Print Area -All (Extents)**. Prints the extents of your drawing, which is the portion of your drawing that currently contains elements. As you add new elements, the extents update automatically.

**Print Area - Display**. Prints exactly what you see on the screen in the current view. If only part of your drawing is currently visible, only that part will appear in the printout.

**Print Area - Window**. Prints a specific area of your drawing that you define by drawing a bounding window around it. Click the **Window** button, then click two points in your drawing to define the selection window. You can snap the window to elements in your drawing if desired. The preview in the **Print** dialog will update automatically. Note that the Window option is not available for 3D perspective views.

#### Page Setup

**Placement**. If you select **Lower left**, the image is printed in the lower left corner of the paper. If you select **Center on paper**, the image is centered on the paper.

**Print all colors as black.** (*Worksheet View only*) If enabled, this will produce a black-and-white printout.

Print Scaling

**Fit to Page**. Scales the drawing to fit the selected paper size. Note that this is the default setting for 3D views, since 3D views are not affected by changes in scale (unless they are elevation views).

**Print to Scale**. Prints the current view according to the **Scale** set below, regardless of the paper size. This option does not work with 3D views, since 3D views cannot be scaled.

View Scale. The drawing scale of the current view as set on the View Properties page in the view's properties. This is the ratio of units on paper to real-world units. For example, if the view scale is 1/4" = 1'-0" (or 1:48), this means that every 1'-0" of your actual model is represented by 1/4" on paper. If you are using the Print to Scale option, this gives you a sense of how you are scaling the drawing. For example, if your view scale is set to 1/4'' =1'-0" and you set the print scale to 1/2" = 1'-0", you know that you are scaling the drawing up in the printout. The drawing would be larger when printed at the 1/2"= 1'-0" scale than it would at the 1/4'' = 1'-0'' because every 1'-0" of the model is being represented by 1/2" on paper instead of only 1/4" on paper.

**Print Scale**. Click the drop box to select a print scale for the view (if using the Print to Scale option). When you change the print scale, things like text and dimensions will be scaled in such a way that they are proportional to the rest of the drawing.

Note that if you change the print scale, your 2D plan does not scale on the screen. It will only be scaled on paper when you print the drawing. Changing the print scale has no effect in 3D views, neither on the screen nor in printouts. This is because a model being viewed in 3D does not have concrete measurements like a flat, 2D view has. When you change the print scale, things like text and dimensions will be scaled in such a way that they are proportional to the rest of the drawing.

### Line Work

**Print Line Weights**. Prints the lines in your drawing using the weight (thickness) assigned to them in element properties. Otherwise, all lines print with the same thickness.

#### Preview

The preview window on the right displays a preview of how the drawing will fit on the paper. If the drawing is too large for the selected paper size, it will be automatically tiled across multiple sheets of paper. Separation marks will then appear in the preview indicating where the drawing will be divided.

**Show View Contents**. Disabling this check box turns off the view inside the preview window. You may want to take advantage of this feature if you are having issues with your graphics display (if graphics are slow to load or refresh, for example). Your choice will also be applied in the Batch Printing dialog and View Properties dialog.

3. Click **OK**.

**Note**: If you click Apply in the Print dialog, the dialog's print settings will be applied to the view's Print Properties.

# Printing Across Multiple Sheets of Paper

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You may want to print out your drawing at a large scale, but do not have a piece of paper big enough to fit it. In this case you can print the drawing in sections onto smaller sheets of paper, then attach the sheets together after printing. You can specify paper and print scale settings in the Print dialog, or in a view's print properties.

## To set print settings in the Print dialog:

- Select File > Print, or click 🖶 🖶 on the Standard toolbar.
- 2. In the **Print** dialog, click **Properties** to select the paper size to use.
- 3. From the **Print Scaling** drop box, select **Print to Scale**.

The print preview displays separation marks representing the individual sheets of paper. You can adjust the print scale if you want.

4. Click **OK**. The drawing is printed onto multiple sheets of paper.

### To set print settings for a specific view:

- If the view is current, right-click in the drawing area and select View Properties. Otherwise, select View > View Manager, or click
   on the View Control toolbar. In the left pane of the View Manager dialog, select the view whose print properties you would like to define.
- 2. Select the **Print Properties** tab.
- 3. From the **Paper Size** drop box, select the paper size that you want to use.
- 4. In the *Print Scaling* area, select **Print to Scale** from the drop box. You can adjust the print scale if you want.
- 5. Click **OK**. You can proceed with printing the view.

## Editing the Print Scale of a View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The view scale of every view is 1/4" = 1'-0" (or 1:48) unless you select a different scale in the view's properties. This means that every 1'-0" of your actual model is represented by 1/4" on paper when the **Print to Scale** option is used. If you want the view to be larger or smaller when printed, you can change the print scale of the view without having to change the original view scale or annotation settings. To do this you need to select the **Print to Scale** option on your view's Print Properties page, then select the scale that you want to use. When you change the print scale, things like text and dimensions will be scaled in such a way that they are proportional to the rest of the drawing when it is printed. (Note, however, that the original size definitions of text and dimensions are retained in the drawing — text and dimensions are only scaled in the printout if the **Print to Scale** option is used.)

Note that if you change the print scale, your 2D plan does not scale on the screen. It will only be scaled on paper when you print the drawing. Also, changing the print scale has no effect in 3D views, neither on the screen nor in printouts. This is because a model being viewed in 3D does not have concrete measurements like a flat, 2D view has.

You can edit the print scale of a view by accessing the view's properties.

# To edit a view window's print scale when it is the current view window:

- Select View > View Properties, or right-click in the view window and select View Properties.
- 2. In the **View Properties** dialog, select the **Print Properties** tab.
- 3. Click the top drop box in the *Print Scaling* area and select **Print to Scale**.
- 4. Select the desired scale from the **Print Scale** drop box. Note that the view scale of the current view is displayed above the **Print Scale** drop box so that you can get a sense of how you are scaling the drawing. For example, if your view scale is set to 1/4" = 1'-0" and you set the print scale to 1/2" = 1'-0", you know that you are scaling the drawing up in the printout. The drawing would be larger when printed at the 1/2"= 1'-0" scale than it would at the 1/4" = 1'-0" because every 1'-0" of the model is being represented by 1/2" on paper instead of only 1/4" on paper.
- 5. Click **OK**.

# To edit a view window's print scale in the View Manager:

- Select View > View Manager, or click 
   Image: Select View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the left pane of the **View Manager** dialog, select the view whose scale you want to edit.
- 3. In the right pane, select the **Print Properties** tab.
- 4. Click the top drop box in the *Print Scaling* area and select **Print to Scale**.

- 5. Select the desired scale from the **Print Scale** drop box.
- 6. Click **OK**.

# Printing to a File

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you print to a file, you need to first determine which printer — for example, a PostScript printer will ultimately print the file. This way you can specify an appropriate file type to print to (e.g. *.ps).

A print file allows others to print your *Envisioneer* drawing, even if *Envisioneer* is not installed on their computer. All they need is a printer that prints the specified file type.

## To print to a file:

- Select File > Print, or click 🖶 🖶 on the Standard toolbar.
- 2. In the **Print** dialog, enable the **Print to file** check box.
- 3. Click Print.
- 4. In the **Save As** dialog, navigate to the folder where you want to save the print file.
- 5. In the **File name** edit box, type a name and extension for the print file (e.g. *Project1.ps*).
- 6. Click **Save**. The project is written to the print file.

# **Creating a PDF File**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

To create a PDF file of a view you need to have a PDF writer installed on your computer. This is like a special print driver or utility that has the capability of producing PDF files. When a PDF writer is installed on your system it will appear in the list of printers in the Print dialog, just like any other printer.

Some PDF writers are free and can be downloaded from the Internet, and some can be purchased from companies such as Adobe. Check out the following web sites, or do a search on the Internet: www.adobe.com, www.cutepdf.com, or www.pdf995.com.

## To create a PDF File:

- 1. Display the view that you would like to print.
- Select File > Print, or click 🖶 🖶 on the Standard toolbar.
- 3. In the **Print** dialog, select the PDF print driver in the list of available printers.
- 4. Make sure the **Print to File** option is <u>disabled</u>.
- 5. Once you have defined your print settings, click **Print**.
- 6. In **Save PDF File As** dialog, select a save location for the PDF file, then type a name for the file in the *File name* edit box.
- 7. Click **Save**. The PDF file is created in the specified location.

# **Batch Printing**

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Batch printing refers to the process of printing multiple views or worksheets at the same time. When using the Batch Printing tool, all you need to do is select the views that you want to print, define the print settings that you want to use for each view, then click Print.

## To batch print:

1. Select File > Batch Printing



2. In the Batch Printing dialog, enable the views that you want to print by clicking the check boxes beside the view names. To make all views printable, select Views > Make All Printable, or right-click in the left pane and select Make All Printable. To make all views non-printable, select Views > Make All Non-Printable, or right-click in the left pane and

#### select Make All Non-Printable.

Views in the **Batch Printing** dialog are organized in the same way that they are organized in the View Manager. You can expand a group by clicking its plus sign (+), or collapse a group by clicking its minus sign (-). To expand or collapse all groups you can use the **Expand All** or **Collapse All** options on the **Arrange** menu (or right-click menu).

- Views print in the order in which they appear in the left pane. To change the print order of views use the Move Up or Move Down tools on the Arrange menu (or right-click menu).
- To set a view as current in the drawing area, select the view in the list, and then select Views > Set Current.
- 5. To define a view's print properties, such as the printer/plotter selection, paper size and print scale, select the view in the list, and then select the **Print Properties** tab in the right pane. For more information about these settings, see *Defining a View's Print Properties* on page 566.
- 6. Click **Print**. Batch printing begins.

# Vector Printing vs. Raster Printing

Vector graphics use geometrical primitives such as points, lines, curves and polygons to represent objects on your screen. By default, the Print tool in Envisioneer uses **vector printing** when printing from Worksheet View. This means that only actual objects will be included in the output. Non-objects, such as the background color, will not be printed. Because vector printing is vector-based and resolutionindependent, your output will be sharp and highquality regardless of any scaling you do.

If you disable vector printing in your program settings, **raster printing** will be used instead. Raster images (also known as bitmap images) represent objects as an array of pixels, as in a photograph. Pixels are tiny dots of individual color that make up what you see on your screen. The size and quality of a raster image depend on the resolution selected. Resolution refers to the number of pixels in an image, and is measured in terms of DPI (Dots Per Inch). Often, scaling a raster image to a larger size has a negative impact on the image quality. The software has to create pixels and estimate the color values of these pixels. Also, the blending of pixels where one object meets another can often result in blurriness. This does not occur in vector printing since vector images are not pixel-based.

When raster printing is used, everything you see in the view window is included in the output, including the background color. When printing a raster image, the printer requires more image data than your monitor. This is one of the reasons that raster printing results in a larger file size than vector printing.

# Disabling Vector Printing in Worksheet View

Construction Suite only

By default, the Print tool uses the vector printing method in Worksheet View. This is a superior form of printing that results in sharp, high-quality images. If for some reason vector printing is problematic for you, you can disable vector printing and revert to raster printing instead.

## To disable vector printing:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Worksheet View Behavior* area, disable the **Enable Vector Printing** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Importing

You can use the Import PDF File to import the contents of any PDF file into your Envisioneer project. You can define the size and angle of the imported block prior to importing it. If the PDF contains a floor plan, you can scale the plan to the correct size upon import, then trace the imported plan using building tools such as the Walls tool to create an accurate 3D model in Envisioneer.

You can use the Import CAD File tool to import an AutoCAD DWG or DXF file into your project, such as a title block, detail or drafting symbol.

Using the Project Trace Image tool you can import a BMP, JPG or TGA file into your drawing space. You can then trace the image using elements from the catalog, creating a true Envisioneer model. This is the perfect tool to use if you have sketched out ideas in a drawing program or scanned a floor plan that you have permission to use, and want to recreate the plan in Envisioneer. You can resize the image if you need to before tracing, and delete it once you're done tracing. Most floor plans are copyrighted, so make sure you have permission to copy them.

You can use the Photo Board Wizard to import digital photographs or scanned images into your work space. The image is oriented vertically in 3D view, much like a billboard. You could, for example, import a picture of your backyard, so when you look out the window, it feels like you're home.

Using the Object Import Wizard you can quickly import custom 3D objects in DWG, DXF, SKP, OBJ or 3DS format directly into your drawing.

You can use the Import 20-20 Design XML tool to import a kitchen or bathroom layout that you have created in 20-20 Design software.

## **Import PDF File**

Portable Document Format (PDF) is a file format created by Adobe Systems for the purpose of sharing documents. You can use the Import PDF File to import the contents of any PDF file into your Envisioneer project. If the PDF contains a floor plan, you can scale the plan to the correct size upon import, then trace the imported plan using building tools such as the Walls tool to create an accurate 3D model in Envisioneer. You can even snap to points on the imported plan while tracing.

# Importing a PDF File in Model View

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Import PDF File to import the contents of any PDF file into your **Envisioneer** project. You can define the size and angle of the imported block prior to importing it. If the PDF contains a floor plan, you can scale the plan to the correct size upon import, then trace the imported plan using building tools such as the Walls tool to create an accurate 3D model in Envisioneer.

### To import a PDF file in Model View:

- Select File > Import > Import PDF File, or Tools > Layout > Import PDF File, or click
  - 🚺 🎵 on the Layout toolbar.
- In the **Open** dialog, locate and select the PDF file that you want to import, and then click **Open**. (If the **Font Support Issue** dialog appears, see the note below.)

The PDF file is displayed in the **Import** dialog. You can zoom and pan in the PDF preview pane using the zoom/pan controls below the pane. Note that changing the zoom level inside the preview pane has no effect on the image when it is imported.



3. If the PDF has more than one page, navigate to the page that you want to import by clicking the buttons in the *Page* area of the **Import PDF** dialog.



 Before importing the PDF you will need to define the size or scale of the imported image. This is especially important if you are importing a floor plan because you want the walls to be the correct length when you trace them.

Initially the size of the image is the same as the page size in the PDF file. You can set a custom size by editing the values in the **Width** and **Height** edit boxes. When you do so, the **Scale** values adjust accordingly.

If you are importing a floor plan and you know the scale at which it was drawn originally, you can enter that value in the Scale edit boxes. For example, if the plan was drawn at a 1/4" = 1'-0" (1:48) scale, you would enter 48 in the Scale (X) or Scale (Y) edit box. There are separate X and Y (horizontal and vertical) scale settings. By default, whatever you enter in one edit box will automatically be displayed in the other edit box, maintaining the same scale in both directions. If you want the X scale to be different than the Y scale, you need to click the lock icon beside the Scale (X) and Scale (Y) edit boxes. With the lock 'unlocked' you can enter a different value in each edit box. Another way of specifying the scale is to

draw a reference line along an existing object in the PDF image and specify the length of that object in real-world units. To do this,

click the Pick Scale button  $\square$  next to the **Scale (X)**or **Scale (Y)** edit box, then pick two points along an object in the PDF image to define a reference line. (If the X scale and Y scale will differ, you should pick points along a horizontal object for the X scale, and pick points along a vertical object for the Y scale.) Then in the **Scale by Reference** dialog, enter the length of the reference line and click **OK**. For example, if you know that a particular wall in your plan is 12' long, draw a line along that wall and then enter 12' in the **Scale by Reference** dialog.

Scale by Refere	ence	X
New Distance	12'	Pick
	ОК	Cancel

The **Scale** values in the **Import** dialog will then adjust to reflect the scale you defined.

5. To specify the angle of the imported image, enter a value in the **Angle** edit box, or click

the Pick Angle button **D** next to the **Angle** edit box and pick two points along an object in the PDF image to define the angle. If you are picking points to define the angle, the **Angle by Reference** dialog appears and reports the angle that you defined. You can edit the angle here if you want.

6. If you want to import only a portion of the

image, click **Set Set** next to the **Crop Box** item, then click two points diagonally in the PDF window to define a box around the portion that you want to import. A blue box is displayed around the selected portion. To remove the crop box,

click **Clear Clear**, then click **OK** to confirm that you want to clear the crop box.

- 7. To dim the imported image, slide the **Dim-ming** slider to the desired dim level. The higher the percentage, the more dim the image will be.
- 8. To import the file as an image with no vector information, make sure that the Convert to Image check box is enabled. This option is particularly useful for large files that take a long time to open. If this option is enabled you can adjust the quality of the resulting image by dragging the Quality slider to the desired position. Note that increasing the quality may also increase the time needed to load the image.

**Note**: If the PDF is converted to an image, you will not be able to snap to points on the image like you can on a vector-based PDF.

9. If you want the **Import** dialog to appear again after you insert the PDF so that you can insert another PDF, enable the **Multiple Insert** check box.

- 10. To import the image into the current view window, click **Insert**. The image is attached to your cursor.
- 11. Position the image where you want it, then click to insert it.

**Note**: If the PDF file that you are importing contains fonts that are not available on your computer, the **Font Support Issue** dialog will appear. Before importing the PDF, you need to specify how you want to handle this issue.

# Font Support Issue

There appears to be fonts in this file that are not suppor How would you like to proceed?



Raster Format

Choosing this format will rasterize t contained in the file to display but s will not be possible.



## Vector Format

Choosing this format will leave any intact. Snapping to linework will be may be displayed incorrectly.



You can choose to rasterize the text by selecting the

**Raster Format** option. This maintains the display of the text, but you will not be able to snap to linework once the PDF is inserted in your project. If you choose the **Vector Format** option, all vector geometry will remain intact so that you can snap to linework once the PDF is inserted, but the text may not display properly.

**Tip**: If the PDF is a vector PDF (one that was generated from vector-based design software), you can snap to points on the imported plan while tracing. Note that the Ortho snap takes precedence over the Object Snap when tracing to facilitate the creation of straight lines.

**Tip**: You can hide the imported image from view by disabling the visibility of Drafting objects in your View Filter.

# **Resizing a PDF Image**

If you have imported a PDF file into your project, you can scale the image using the Resize tool. You can scale in the X or Y direction, or both directions simultaneously to maintain the aspect ratio.

## To resize a PDF image:

- 1. Click on the PDF image to select it.
- Right-click and select Resize, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Resize.
- 3. Pick two points on the PDF image to create a reference line. Typically you would pick two points along an object in the PDF image whose length you know, such as a wall. The length of the reference line is displayed in real-world units in the **Resize Block** dialog.





- 4. In the **Resize Block** dialog, enter the new length that you want the reference line to represent. Entering a greater value will make the image bigger, and entering a lesser value will make the image smaller.
- 5. If you want the image to be scaled in both directions, enable the **Maintain Aspect Ratio** radio button.
- If you want the image to be scaled in only one direction, enable either the Horizontal Only or Vertical Only radio button.
- 7. Click **OK**. The image is resized.

# Moving a PDF Image

If you have imported a PDF file into your drawing you can move the image if necessary.

## To move a PDF image in Model View:

- 1. Click on the PDF image to select it.
- Right-click and select Move, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Move.
- 3. Click and drag to move the image, or pick a start point for the move and specify a move distance and direction in the Commander.

## To move a PDF image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Hover your pointer over the square blue grip at the center of the image, then click and drag to move it. Alternatively you can use the Modify > Move tool if you want to specify a precise move distance in the Commander.

# **Rotating a PDF Image**

If you have imported a PDF file into your drawing, you can rotate the image if necessary.

## To rotate a PDF image in Model View:

- 1. Click on the PDF image to select it.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.

3. Pick a point on the image, then click and drag to rotate the image around this point.

## To rotate a PDF image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Hover your pointer over the triangular blue grip on the edge of the image, then click and drag to rotate the image. Alternatively you can use the Modify > Rotate tool if you want to specify a precise rotation distance.

# **Deleting a PDF Image**

If you have imported a PDF file you can delete the image when you don't need it anymore.

## To delete a PDF image in Model View:

- 1. Click on the PDF image to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

## To delete a PDF image in Worksheet View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, select Modify > Delete, or click in in on the Modify toolbar.

# Import CAD File (Model View)

If you have a drawing sheet border, title block, drafting symbol, detail or other drawing in AutoCAD® DWG or DXF format that you would like to import into your Envisioneer project, use the Import CAD File tool.

When importing a CAD file you will need to specify how you want colors and linetypes to be handled, and select an appropriate scale for the image. Once that is done, just click in the drawing area to insert the image.

Once you have inserted a CAD file you can move or rotate it to suit your design needs.

**Tip**: There are a number of drafting symbols, details and title blocks in DWG format available in the program's Drafting Objects folder.

# Importing CAD Files in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Import CAD File tool lets you bring an AutoCAD DWG or DXF file into your project as a 2D image. You may, for example, want to bring in a drawing sheet border, title block, drafting symbol, or detail. You can define the size and angle of the imported block prior to importing it.

## To import a CAD file in Model View:

- In Model View, select Tools > Layout > Import CAD File, or click 2 on the Layout toolbar. You can also select File > Import > Import CAD File.
- 2. In the **Open** dialog, select the type of file you want to import from the **Files of type** drop box.
- 3. Select the file you want to import, then click **Open**.
- 4. In the **Component Options** dialog, specify how you would like colors and linetypes to be displayed. If **By Layer** is selected, the resulting image will use the colors and linetypes assigned to the layers of the CAD drawing. If **By Color** is selected, it will use the colors and linetypes of individual entities in the CAD drawing.
- 5. Click **OK**. The image is displayed in the **Import** dialog. You can zoom and pan in the preview pane using the zoom/pan controls below the pane. Note that changing the zoom level inside the preview pane has no effect on the image when it is imported.





6. If the document has more than one page, navigate to the page that you want to import by clicking the buttons in the Page area of the Import dialog.

🔝 Import

File:

Title:

Author

Page

1

13

Document



7. Before importing the image you will need to define the size or scale of the imported image. Initially the size of the image is the same as the size in the CAD file. You can set a custom size by editing the values in the Width and Height edit boxes. When you do so, the Scale values adjust accordingly.

If you are importing a floor plan and you know the scale at which it was drawn originally, you can enter that value in the Scale edit boxes. For example, if the plan was drawn at a 1/4" = 1'-0" (1:48) scale, you would enter 48 in the Scale (X) or Scale (Y) edit box. There are separate X and Y (horizontal and vertical) scale settings. By default, whatever you enter in one edit box will automatically be displayed in the other

edit box, maintaining the same scale in both directions. If you want the X scale to be different than the Y scale, you need to click the lock icon beside the Scale (X) and Scale (Y) edit boxes. With the lock 'unlocked' you can enter a different value in each edit box. Another way of specifying the scale is to draw a reference line along an existing object in the CAD image and specify the length of that object in real-world units. To do this,

click the Pick Scale button 🔂 🔂 next to the Scale (X) or Scale (Y) edit box, then pick two points along an object in the CAD image to define a reference line. (If the X scale and Y scale will differ, you should pick points along a horizontal object for the X scale, and pick points along a vertical object for the Y scale.) Then in the Scale by Reference dialog, enter the length of the reference line and click **OK**. For example, if you know that a particular wall in your plan is 12' long, draw a line along that wall and then enter 12' in the Scale by Reference dialog.

Scale by Refere	ence	×
New Distance	12'	Pick
	ОК	Cancel

The Scale values in the Import dialog will then adjust to reflect the scale you defined.

To specify the angle of the imported image, enter a value in the **Angle** edit box, or click

Pick Angle button 💟 next to the Angle edit box and pick two points along an object in the CAD image to define the angle. If you are picking points to define the angle, the Angle by Reference dialog appears and reports the angle that you defined. You can edit the angle here if you want.

9. If you want to import only a portion of the

Set image, click Set under the Crop Box option, then click two points diagonally in the preview window to define a box around the portion that you want to import. A blue box is displayed around the

selected portion. To remove the crop box,

Clear

click

Clear, then click OK

to confirm that you want to clear the crop box.

- To dim the imported image, slide the Dimming slider to the desired dim level. The higher the percentage, the more dim the image will be.
- If you want the **Import** dialog to appear again after you insert the image so that you can insert another image, enable the **Multiple Insert** check box.
- 12. To import the image into the current view window, click **Insert**. The image is attached to your cursor.
- 13. Position the image where you want it, then click to insert it.

**Tip**: For your convenience, there are also a number of pre-defined drafting symbols, details and title blocks in DWG format available in the program's Drafting Objects directory.

# Resizing a CAD Image in Model View

If you have imported a CAD file into your project, you can scale the image using the Resize tool. You can scale in the X or Y direction, or both directions simultaneously to maintain the aspect ratio.

## To resize a CAD image:

- 1. Click on the CAD image to select it.
- Right-click and select Resize, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Resize.
- 3. Pick two points on the CAD image to create a reference line. If possible pick two points along an object in the CAD image whose length you know. The length of the reference line is displayed in real-world units in the **Resize Block** dialog.



- 4. In the **Resize Block** dialog, enter the new length that you want the reference line to represent. Entering a greater value will make the image bigger, and entering a lesser value will make the image smaller.
- 5. If you want the image to be scaled in both directions, enable the **Maintain Aspect Ratio** radio button.
- If you want the image to be scaled in only one direction, enable either the Horizontal Only or Vertical Only radio button.
- 7. Click **OK**. The image is resized.

# Moving a CAD Image in Model View

If you have used the Import CAD File tool in Model View, you can move the resulting 2D image around on the screen.

## To move a CAD image in Model View:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- 3. Click and drag to move the image where you want it, then release your mouse button.

# Rotating a CAD Image in Model View

You can use the Rotate tool to rotate a CAD image that you have inserted in Model View using the Import CAD File tool.

## To rotate a CAD image:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Click and drag the image's center grip to rotate the image, then release your mouse button.

# Deleting a CAD Image in Model View

If you have used the Import CAD File tool, you can delete the CAD image in a couple of easy steps.

## To delete a CAD image:

- 1. Click on the image to select it.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

# Specifying a Default Drafting Objects Directory

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you use the Import CAD File tool, you are prompted to select a DWG or DXF file to open. By default, the program's Drafting Objects folder is displayed in the **Open** dialog, where you can find a number of pre-defined drafting symbols and title blocks. This folder is in the following location:

C:\ProgramData**Cadsoft****Envisioneer**\Drafting Objects

You can specify a different default directory to display if you want.

To specify a default drafting objects directory:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select the General tab.

- 3. In the *File Paths* area, scroll down and select the **Drafting Settings Directory**.
- 4. Click Modify.
- In the Browse for Folder dialog, locate and select the directory you want to use as the default drafting objects directory, then click OK.
- 6. Click **OK** in the **Program Settings** dialog.

# Importing an Image to Trace

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can import a BMP, JPG or TGA image, such as a floor plan that you have scanned or sketched out in a drawing program, and trace it using elements from the catalog, creating a true *Envisioneer* model.

## To import an image to trace:

- In 2D plan view, select File > Import > Project Trace Image.
- In the **Open** dialog, select the file type you are importing from the **File type** drop box. You can import BMP, JPG or TGA files.
- Locate the file to import, then click **Open**. The image is displayed in the **Import** dialog. You can zoom and pan in the preview pane using the zoom/pan controls below the pane. Note that changing the zoom level inside the preview pane has no effect on the image when it is imported.



4. Before importing the image you will need to define the size or scale of the imported image.

If you are importing a floor plan and you know the scale at which it was drawn originally, you can enter that value in the **Scale** edit boxes. For example, if the plan was drawn at a 1/4" = 1'-0" (1:48) scale, you would enter **48** in the **Scale (X)** or **Scale (Y)** edit box. There are separate X and Y (horizontal and vertical) scale settings. By default, whatever you enter in one edit box will automatically be displayed in the other edit box, maintaining the same scale in both directions. If you want the X scale to be different than the Y scale, you need to click the lock icon beside the **Scale (X)** and **Scale (Y)** edit boxes. With the lock 'unlocked' you can enter a different value in each edit box. Another way of specifying the scale is to

draw a reference line along an existing object in the CAD image and specify the length of that object in real-world units. To do this,

click the Pick Scale button  $\square$  next to the **Scale (X)**or **Scale (Y)** edit box, then pick two points along an object in the image to define a reference line. (If the X scale and Y scale will differ, you should pick points along a horizontal object for the X scale, and pick points along a vertical object for the Y scale.) Then in the **Scale by Reference** dialog, enter the length of the reference line and click **OK**. For example, if you know that a particular wall in your plan is 12' long, draw a line along that wall and then enter 12' in the **Scale by Reference** dialog.

Scale by Reference			
New Distance	12	Pick	
	ОК	Cancel	

The **Scale** values in the **Import** dialog will then adjust to reflect the scale you defined.

5. To specify the angle of the imported image, enter a value in the **Angle** edit box, or click

the Pick Angle button **O** next to the **Angle** edit box and pick two points along an object in the image to define the angle. If you are picking points to define the angle, the **Angle by Reference** dialog appears and

reports the angle that you defined. You can edit the angle here if you want.

6. If you want to import only a portion of the

image, click **Set set** next to the **Crop Box** item, then click two points diagonally in the preview window to define a box around the portion that you want to import. A blue box is displayed around the selected portion. To remove the crop box,

click **Clear Clear**, then click **OK** to confirm that you want to clear the crop box.

- To dim the imported image, slide the Dimming slider to the desired dim level. The higher the percentage, the more dim the image will be.
- 8. If you want the **Import** dialog to appear again after you insert the image so that you can insert another image, enable the **Multiple Insert** check box.
- 9. To import the image into the current view window, click **Insert**. The image is attached to your cursor.
- 10. Position the image where you want it, then click to insert it. You can now trace the image.

**Note**: Most floor plans are copyrighted, so make sure you have permission to copy them.

# **Resizing a Project Trace Image**

If you import a project trace image and it is not the right size, you can scale it up or down to match the plan's drawing scale. Having a correct drawing scale is important for tracing purposes so elements can be created at the correct size.

## To resize a project trace image:

- 1. Select the trace image.
- Right-click and select Resize, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Resize.
- 3. Find a wall with a known length, then select a point at each end of the wall to create a reference line. The length of the reference line is displayed in real-world units in the **Resize**

#### Block dialog.

Resize Blo	ock		
Enter the	desired distance bet	wee	en two poin
	- Resize Behaviour-		
	💿 Maintain Asp	ect	Ratio
	🦳 Horizoptal Or	shu	O Vertica
		ny	O YORIOG
		"Y	- Voldo
Resize Block		"y	? X
Resize Block Enter the desired Resiz	distance between two points:	30'-0''	2 8 22

- 4. In the **Resize Block** dialog, enter the new length that you want the reference line to represent. Entering a greater value will make the image bigger, and entering a lesser value will make the image smaller.
- 5. If you want the image to be scaled in both directions, enable the **Maintain Aspect Ratio** radio button.
- If you want the image to be scaled in only one direction, enable either the Horizontal Only or Vertical Only radio button.
- 7. Click **OK**. The image is resized.

# **Tracing the Imported Floor Plan**

Tracing an imported image is easy — just use the tools on the **Insert** menu. Below are links to topics that may help you:

- Drawing Walls on page 5
- Inserting Doors...page 45
- Inserting Windows...page 51
- Inserting Wall Openings...page 57
- Inserting Stairs and Ramps...page 85
- Inserting Cabinets...page 158
- Inserting Appliances...page 163

# Displaying/Hiding Project Trace Images

If you have used the Project Trace Image tool to import a plan into your project, you can hide the image if you want using the View Filter. This is an alternative to deleting the image.

To filter project trace images from view:

- Select View > View Filters > View Filter, or click 3 3 on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **View Filter** dialog, select the Notation tab.
- 3. In the **Project Trace Images** row, click the eye icon in the *Display* column to turn project trace images on or off.
  - (™) The set of the se
  - 👷 Project trace image is turned off
- 4. Click **OK**.

# **Deleting a Project Trace Image**

Once you're done tracing a floor plan, you can delete the trace image from your drawing, leaving just your *Envisioneer* model on the screen.

#### To delete a project trace image:

- 1. Select the trace image.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

**Note**: If you prefer you can just hide the project trace image from view instead of deleting it.

## Importing a Photo Board

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A photo board is simply a digital image that is oriented vertically in your 3D workspace. You can import any image you want — your family, pets, neighbor's house — the only limit is your imagination. The handy Photo Board Wizard does it all in a few quick steps.

## To import a photo board:

1. Select File > Import > Photo Board Wizard.



2. Click Next.

🛃 Photo Board Wizard			8
Select the Param	eters	of the	Photo Board
1. Give the Photo Board object a	name:	New Photo Boa	rd
2. Select the image file you wish to	o use:	Select	
3. Define the size of the image:			
a. Width: 3'-	3"	]	
b. Height: 3'-	3"	]	
			J
		< Back	Next > Cance

- 3. Type a name for your photo board.
- Click the **Select** button, then select the image you want to import. You can import BMP, JPG and TGA files. The image is displayed in the preview window.
- 5. Define the size of the image by entering values in the **Height** and **Width** edit boxes.
- 6. Click Next.



- 7. Specify whether you want the photo board to be stationary or active. If **Stationary** is selected, the board will always remain oriented the same way, regardless of changes in your camera angle. If **Billboard** is selected, the photo board will rotate toward the camera so it will always face you in 3D.
- 8. Click Next.



- 9. Click **Finish**. The photo board is attached to your cursor, ready to be inserted.
- 10. Position the photo board where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 11. Right-click and select Finish.

# Saving Imported Photo Boards to the Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can save a photo board that you have imported using the Photo Board Wizard to your catalog so you can insert it again in any project.

## To save your photo board to the current catalog:

 Select File > Catalogs > Save Element to Catalog. Your pointer changes to a catalog



- 2. Click on the photo board in your drawing.
- 3. Click **Yes** to save the photo board. The photo board is added to the current catalog.

# Inserting a Photo Board from the Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The catalog contains a collection of photo boards containing pictures of people, animals, flags, and other objects. If you have saved your imported photo board to the catalog, it is also displayed with the existing photo boards in the catalog.

## To insert a photo board from the catalog:

- 1. Select Insert > Photo Board.
- 2. In the catalog panel, select the photo board you want to insert.
- 3. Position the photo board where you want it, then click to insert it.
- 4. Right-click and select **Finish**.

# Moving a Photo Board

You can move a photo board easily by just clicking and dragging it.

## To move a photo board:

- 1. Select the photo board.
- 3. Click and drag to move the board.
- 4. When the board is where you want it, release your mouse button.

# Rotating a Photo Board in 2D

You can use the Rotate tool to rotate a photo board about a selected point in 2D plan view.

## To rotate a photo board:

- 1. Select the photo board.
- Right-click and select Rotate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Rotate.
- 3. Hover your pointer over the point you want to rotate the photo board around.
- 4. Click and drag to rotate the photo board, then release your mouse button.

# Changing the Elevation of a Photo Board

You can raise or lower a photo board using the Elevate tool on the right-click menu.

## To raise or lower a photo board:

- 1. Select the photo board.
- Right-click and select Elevate, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Elevate. The value in the Elevate dialog is the current elevation of the photo board.
- 3. In the **Elevate** dialog, specify the desired elevation of the photo board above the terrain.
- 4. Click **OK**.

**Tip**: You can also change a photo board's elevation by changing the **Distance above current location or terrain** variable on the photo board's Behavior property page.

# Changing a Photo Board from Stationary to Rotating and Vice Versa

You can choose whether a photo board is stationary or rotating after it has been inserted. A stationary board keeps the same orientation regardless of changes in the camera angle. A rotating board always rotates towards the camera.

## To change a photo board's type:

- 1. Select the photo board.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

- 3. In the *Type* area, click **Stationary** for a stationary photo board, or **Billboard** for a rotating photo board.
- 4. Click **OK**.

# Editing the Size of a Photo Board

You can edit the height and width of a photo board after it has been inserted.

## To edit the size of a photo board:

- 1. Select the photo board.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. Edit the **Height** or **Width** in the *Properties* area. If **Maintain Aspect Ratio** is checked, the height will automatically change if you edit the width, and vice versa. This ensures the image doesn't get distorted.
- 4. Click **OK**.

# **Deleting a Photo Board**

You can delete a photo board in a couple of easy steps.

## To delete a photo board:

- 1. Select the photo board.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or right-click and select Delete, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Delete.

# Creating Transparency in Photo Board Images

You may find that you want to make portions of your photo board image transparent for a more realistic effect. If the image is of a person, for example, you may want to make the background in the image transparent so that when you insert the photo board in your drawing, you see just the person in your 3D view.



Photo board with no transparency



Photo board with transparency

To create transparency in your photo board image, you need to use a graphic editing program such as Microsoft® Paint to apply a magenta color to those portions you want to make transparent.



The RGB color settings for magenta are as follows: **Red**: 255 **Green**: 0 **Blue**: 255

Once you have finished editing the image in the graphic editing program, you can re-import the image into *Envisioneer* using the Photo Board Wizard.

# Importing Custom Objects into Your Drawing

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have any custom 3D objects in DWG, DXF, SKP (Google[™] SketchUp), 3DS. OBJ, or IFC format, you can import them into your Envisioneer drawing. Many sites on the Internet offer free downloading of objects for your convenience. Typically, these are objects such as furniture and appliances.

You can import a custom object directly into your drawing using the Object Import Wizard. Once inserted, you can edit its properties just as you would edit any element in your drawing.

## To import a custom object into your drawing:

### 1. Select File > Import > Object Wizard.

- 2. In the first edit box, type a name for the element.
- 3. From the element drop box, select the type of element you are importing.
- 4. If you selected Exterior Furniture, Exterior Accessories or Exterior Lighting, you have the option of inserting the element on the floor of the current building location, or the terrain. Select either the **Insert on location** or **Insert on terrain** radio button. (All other element types have one of the options pre-selected for you, with the other option disabled.)
- 5. Click the **Select** button.
- 6. In the **Open** dialog, locate and select the file that you want to import, then click **Open**. You can import DWG, DXF, SKP, OBJ, 3DS and IFC files.

**Note:** If the imported file is larger than 4MB it is considred a very large block (VLB) and a dialog box will appear, noting that VLB files will be optimized due to their potential size. The VLB import will have additional steps regarding plan and elevation views. Click **OK** to accept the message.

 Specify how you want the components created by making a selection from the next drop box. For DWG and DXF files you can choose from **Colors** or **Layers**. Since 3DS and IFC objects are essentially an assembly of materials, the only selection for 3DS and IFC objects is **Materials**. (This step does not apply to SketchUp files.)

- 8. Click Next.
- On the Orient your element screen, use the arrows to rotate the model so that it will be oriented correctly when inserted in a drawing.
- 10. Click Next.
- 11. If the object is a door or window, the Position the insertion point of your element screen will appear. Specify where along the object's height (Z Axis) you would like to position the object's insertion point. Use the slider to move the insertion point up or down. To offset the door/window frame from the wall surface, enter an offset value in the Frame Offset edit box.
- 12. Click Next.
- 13. For some file types, the program needs to know what units were used to create the object originally so that it can be converted into an appropriate size.

If you know what units were used to create the object, select the units from the units drop box. Otherwise, select the unit of measure that will result in a logical **Resultant Width**, **Resultant Depth** and **Resultant Height**. Selecting **Custom** lets you specify a custom scale in the **Custom Scale** edit box.

The scale is the multiplication factor of the units used for objects in the block. For example, if you're converting a file that you assume was created in feet and inches, the scale is 25.4.

14. Click Next.

**NOTE:** Block files that are over 4MB are considered very large blocks (VLBs) and will be treated differently in the following next steps. Just one dialog box appears. That dialog allows you to accept the plan view and elevation view that was generated upon import or import a separate view by checking "Replace with Custom" and then clicking **Select** to find a plan view or an elevation view. Please note that if "Replace with custom" is used the imported elevation must have a closed polyline around the elevation or an error message will appear "No valid

geometry". A valid outline is a polyline - the import will disregard lines.

15. The next screen lists the object's individual components. Specify which components you want to display or hide in 3D by clicking the appropriate eye icons.

tomponent is displayed 🍅

😞 Component is not displayed

#### Enabling the Show only selected

**component** check box displays only the currently selected component in the object preview. This helps you distinguish between the object's individual components.

To rename a component, double-click it, then type the new name and press Enter.

- 13. Click Next.
- The next screen lists the object's components again, but this time you can specify which components you want to display or hide in 2D plan view.

To create a custom plan view, select either **Outline** or **Slice** below the preview window to specify how the plan view is to be created. To create a simple outline based on the footprint of the object, select **Outline**. To create a slice through the object, select **Slice**, and then use the slider control next to the preview window to specify the position of the slice.

To control the visibility of components within

the custom plan view, click **W** and **W** next to the drop box, then specify which components you want to hide or show in the **Display Components to Generate Plan View** dialog.

Once the plan view has the desired appearance in the preview window, click

to add the view to the list of components. You can delete custom plan views from the list if desired, but you cannot delete components of the original object.

- 15. Click Next.
- 16. Click Finish.
- 17. Click to insert the new element in your draw-

ing.

18. Right-click and select **Finish**.

**Tip**: You can save the imported element in your catalog using the Save Element to Catalog tool.

# Importing Custom Objects into Your Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have any custom 3D blocks in DWG, DXF, SKP (Google[™] SketchUp), OBJ, 3DS, or IFC format, you can import them into your *Envisioneer* catalog so that they are available to be inserted in your drawing. Many sites on the Internet offer free downloading of objects for your convenience. Typically, blocks are objects such as furniture and appliances.

## To import a custom object into your catalog:

- Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Element Manager. You can also rightclick an element in the catalog panel and Element Manager.
- 2. Open the element folder that you want to add the object to.
- 3. Select Edit > Add Element.
- In the Define Element dialog, select the Custom Block option.
- 5. Click **OK**.
- In the **Open** dialog, select the appropriate file type from the **Files of type** drop box (DWG, DXF, OBJ, , SKP, 3DS, IFC, IFCzip).
- Locate and select the file to import, then click Open.

**Note:** If the imported file is larger than 4MB it is considred a very large block (VLB) and a dialog box will appear, noting that VLB files will be optimized due to their potential size. The VLB import will have additional steps regarding plan and elevation views. Click **OK** to accept the message.

 In the Block Import Options dialog, specify what you want the components created from by making a selection in the Create Components From drop box. For DWG and DXF files you can choose from *Colors* or *Layers*. Since 3DS and IFC objects are essentially an assembly of materials, the only selection for 3DS objects is *Materials*. (This step does not apply to SketchUp files.)

- 9. On the **Orient your element** screen, use the arrows to rotate the model so that it will be oriented correctly when inserted in a drawing.
- 10. If the object is a door or window, the Position the insertion point of your element screen will appear. Specify where along the object's height (Z Axis) you would like to position the object's insertion point. Use the slider to move the insertion point up or down. To offset the door/window frame from the wall surface, enter an offset value in the Frame Offset edit box.
- 11. For some file types, the program needs to know what units were used to create the object originally so that it can be converted into an appropriate size. If you know what units were used to create the object, select the units from the Convert File From drop box. Otherwise, select the unit of measure in the Convert File From drop box that will result in a logical Resultant Width, Resultant Depth and Resultant Height. Selecting *Custom* lets you specify a custom scale in the Custom Scale edit box. (This step does not apply to SketchUp files.) Once logical dimensions are displayed, click OK.
- 12. The next screen lists the object's individual components. Specify which components you want to display or hide in 3D by clicking the appropriate eye icons. Skip to **NOTE** below if the file is an OBJ file. The steps will be different.

tomponent is displayed

Component is not displayed Enabling the **Show only selected component** check box displays only the currently selected component in the object preview. This helps you distinguish between the object's individual components. To rename a component, double-click it, then type the new name and press Enter.

- 13. Click Next.
- 14. The next screen lists the object's components again, but this time you can specify which components you want to display or hide in 2D plan view.

To create a custom plan view, select either **Outline** or **Slice** below the preview window to specify how the plan view is to be created. To create a simple outline based on the footprint of the object, select **Outline**. To create a slice through the object, select **Slice**, and then use the slider control next to the preview window to specify the position of the slice.

To control the visibility of components within

the custom plan view, click **W** and **w** next to the drop box, then specify which components you want to hide or show in the **Display Components to Generate Plan View** dialog.

Once the plan view has the desired appearance in the preview window, click

to add the view to the list of components. You can delete custom plan views from the list if desired, but you cannot delete components of the original object.

**NOTE:** Block files that are over 4MB are considered very large blocks (VLBs) and will be treated differently. Just one dialog box appears. That dialog allows you to accept the plan view and elevation view that was generated upon import or import a separate view by checking "Replace with Custom" and then clicking Select to find a plan view or an elevation view. Please note that if "Replace with custom" is used the imported elevation must have a closed polyline around the elevation or an error message will appear "No valid geometry". A valid outline is a polyline - the import will disregard lines.

- 15. Click Next.
- 16. Click Finish.
- 17. In the **Element Manager**, enter a name for the element in the **Name** edit box.

- 18. Define the element's properties. The element will already have size properties assigned to it that are taken from the original file, but you can change these. You may need to edit the orientation of the element so that it inserts correctly in the drawing.
- 19. If you want to select a different file to apply to your new element, click the **Select** button in the *Imported Element* area of the Basic property page.
- 20. Click **OK**. The new element is added to the catalog.

# Importing a 20-20 Design Project

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have created a kitchen or bathroom layout in 20-20 Design software, you can import that design into Envisioneer. When you do so, the objects and textures in the 20-20 Design file are imported into your project and can be edited just like any other objects of their kind in Envisioneer.

## To import a 20-20 Design project:

- 1. In 20-20 Design, save the project to an Envisioneer XML file.
- In Envisioneer, select File > Import > 20-20 Design XML.
- 3. In the **Open** dialog, locate and select the XML file that you want to import, then click **Open**.
- 4. Specify how you want to insert the objects from your 20-20 Design file.



If you previously exported your Envisioneer model to 20-20 Design, selecting the **Automatic Placement** option automatically positions the objects on the walls that were previously exported.

If you want to manually place the layout of objects in the model, choose the **Custom Placement** option, and then click on one of the points in the adjacent diagram to select an insertion point for the layout. This is the point that will be attached to your cursor as you are positioning the layout. You can choose one of the four corners or the center.

5. Once you have selected an insertion option, click **Continue**.

6. If you selected the **Custom Placement** option, position the layout in the desired room, then click to insert it.

## **Importing BIM Files**

A Building Information Management file, or BIM file, contains elements or libraries from a catalog, or from a specific project.

If you have exported content from another catalog to a BIM file, you can use the Import BIM to Catalog tool to import that content into the current catalog.

If you have exported content from a project to a BIM file, you can use the Import BIM to Document tool to import that content into the current project. This tool is specifically designed to import project-specific information such as layer definitions.

# Importing Catalog Content from a BIM File

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Any catalog content that has been exported to a BIM file can be imported into another catalog using the Import BIM to Catalog tool.

#### To import catalog content from a BIM file:

- 1. Make sure that the catalog into which you want to import content is the current catalog.
- Select File > Import > BIM to Catalog. You can also launch this feature from the Element Manager or Library Manager by selecting File > BIM File > Import.
- 3. In the **Open** dialog, select the BIM file from which you want to import items, then click **Open**.
- In the right pane of the Import Items from BIM File dialog, select the group or item that you want to transfer into the current catalog.

- 5. Click Transfer.
- 6. When you are finished transferring items into your catalog, click **OK**.

# Importing Project Content from a BIM File

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have exported project-specific content such as layer definitions to a Building Information Modeling (BIM) file, you can import the custom content contained in that BIM file into another project.

### To import project content from a BIM file:

- 1. Select File > Import > BIM to Project.
- In the **Open** dialog, select the BIM file from which you want to import items, then click **Open**.
- In the right pane of the Import Items from BIM File dialog, select the folder or item that you want to transfer into the current project.
- 4. Click Transfer.
- 5. When you are finished transferring items into your project, click **OK**.

## Import IFC File

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Industry Foundation Classes (IFC) data model describes building and construction data. It is a platform-neutral, open file format designed to facilitate file sharing between individuals working with different CAD applications.

Use the Import IFC File tool to import an IFC model into Envisioneer. Walls, doors and windows will be recognized during import and represented appropriately as building elements in Envisioneer.

# Importing an IFC File

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you import an IFC file, Envisioneer intelligently interprets the building and construction data and transforms it into a true 3D model comprising actual wall, door and window elements.

To import an IFC file:

- 1. Select File > Import > Import IFC File.
- 2. In the warning dialog, note that importing an IFC will delete all existing building elements in the current project. When you are ready to proceed, click **Yes**.
- In the Component Options dialog, specify how you would like colors and linetypes to be displayed. If By Layer is selected, the resulting image will use the colors and linetypes assigned to the layers of the CAD drawing. If By Color is selected, it will use the colors and linetypes of individual entities in the CAD drawing.
- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. In the **Open** dialog, select the desired IFC file, then click **Open**. The model is imported.

# Exporting

There are several different Export tools available.

The 2D Image tool lets you export the image on the screen to a BMP, JPG or TGA file, which can be opened in a variety of graphic editing applications. With the 2D Drawing tool you can export your 2D plan to an AutoCAD DWG or DXF file.

The 3D Model tool lets you export your 3D model to a variety of file formats, including DWG, DXF, SKP and 3DS (3D Studio). When you open the file in the

associated application, you will see an actual 3D model in that application.

You can export your 3D model to 20-20 Design software using the 20-20 Design XML export tool.

If you are using Construction Suite, the following export tools are also available: Weyerhaeuser Javelin®, CSD iStructTM, MiTek® SAPPHIRE StructureTM, Boise BC Framer, Keymark® GS Software Suite, and Simpson Component Solutions®.

# Exporting the Current View to a 2D Image File

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The 2D Image export tool lets you save the current view to a BMP, JPG or TGA file, which can be opened in most graphic editing applications.

## To export a view:

- 1. Select File > Export > 2D Image.
- In the Save As dialog, click on the Save as type drop box and select the file format you want to export to.
- 3. Locate the directory where you want to save the exported file.
- 4. In the **File name** edit box, type a file name.
- 5. Click **Save**. The **Export View** dialog appears.



- From the Color drop box, select the desired color setting. Choose from *Grayscale*, 256 *Color*, *High Color* (16-bit), *High Color* (24-bit) or *True Color* (32-bit).
- 7. From the **Size** drop box, select the desired output size. By default, *Current View* is selected, which saves the image at the size currently shown on the screen. You can choose from a list of preset sizes, or select *Custom*

and enter the desired values in the **Width** and **Height** edit boxes.

8. Click Save. The view is exported.

**Note**: This tool is only available in Model View windows.

# Exporting the 2D Drawing to a 2D AutoCAD File

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The 2D Drawing export tool saves your 2D plan or 2D worksheet in a 2D, vector drawing format that can be opened in AutoCAD or any application that accepts DWG and DXF files.

## To export your 2D drawing:

- 1. Select File > Export > 2D Drawing.
- 2. Select the directory where you want to save the exported file.
- 3. In the **File name** edit box, type a file name.
- 4. Click **Save**. A dialog appears confirming the model has been exported successfully.
- 5. Click **OK**.

**Note**: If you are exporting to the DWG or DXF file format, the layers assigned to elements in your model will be replicated in AutoCAD, providing a seamless transition between the two applications.

## **Exporting the 3D Model**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The 3D Model export tool lets you save your 3D model to the following formats:

- AutoCAD Drawing (*.dwg)
- AutoCAD DXF (*.dxf)
- Autodesk 3D Studio (*.3ds)
- SketchUp (*.skp)
- VRML (*.wrl)
- Art*lantis (*.opt)
- Lightscape (*.lp)
- IFC File (*.ifc)

- FBX File (*.fbx)
- OBJ File (*.obj)

When you open the file in its associated application, you will see an actual 3D model in that application.

## To export your 3D model:

- 1. Select File > Export > 3D Model.
- In the Save As dialog, click on the Save as type drop box and select the file format you want to export to.
- 3. Click **Browse Folders** and select the directory where you want to save the exported file.
- 4. In the **File name** edit box, type a file name.
- 5. Click **Save**. A dialog appears confirming the model has been exported successfully.
- 6. Click **OK**.

**Note**: If you are exporting to the DWG, DXF or SKP file format, the layers assigned to elements in your model will be replicated in AutoCAD or Sketchup, providing a seamless transition between the two applications.

# Exporting to Weyerhaeuser Javelin®

Construction Suite only

Javelin software allows Weyerhaeuser dealers to specify optimized combinations of residential engineered wood products and dimension lumber in floor, wall and roof layouts. You can export your 3D Envisioneer model to a Javelin XML file and then open the file in Javelin.

## To export to Javelin:

- 1. Select File > Export > Weyerhaeuser Javelin .BIMXML.
- 2. In the **Save As** dialog, specify a save location and filename for the file.
- 3. Click Save.

## Exporting to CSD iStruct™

Construction Suite only

You can export your 3D Envisioneer model to an XML file and then open the file in CSD iStruct[™].
### To export to CSD iStruct:

- 1. Select File > Export > CSD iStruct .BIMXML.
- 2. In the **Save As** dialog, specify a save location and filename for the file.
- 3. Click Save.

## Exporting to MiTek® SAPPHIRE Structure™

Construction Suite only

Based on its legacy TrussFramer application, MiTek's SAPPHIRE Structure[™] application provides powerful structural modeling, editing, and estimating functionality. You can export your 3D Envisioneer model to an MXF file that can be opened in SAPPHIRE Structure[™].

#### To export to MiTek SAPPHIRE Structure™:

- Select File > Export > MiTek SAPPHIRE Structure™ .MXF.
- 2. In the **Save As** dialog, specify a save location and filename for the file.
- 3. Click Save.

## Exporting to Boise BC Framer®

Construction Suite only

Boise BC Framer® is software that helps users create floor and roof framing layouts. You can export your 3D Envisioneer model to an MXF file that can be opened in BC Framer.

#### To export to Boise BC Framer:

- 1. Select File > Export > Boise BC Framer® .MXF.
- 2. In the **Save As** dialog, specify a save location and filename for the file.
- 3. Click Save.

## Exporting to Keymark® GS Software Suite

Construction Suite only

Keymark® GS Software Suite is a suite of building design and engineering software for light gauge steel. You can export your 3D Envisioneer model to a LAY file and then open the file in GS Software Suite.

## To export to Keymark GS Software Suite:

- 1. Select File > Export > Keymark GS Software Suite .LAY.
- 2. In the **Save As** dialog, specify a save location and filename for the file.
- 3. Click Save.
- In the Floor Location Associations dialog, match the building locations in your 3DEnvisioneer model to floor names in GS Software Suite, then click OK.

# Exporting to Simpson Component Solutions®

Construction Suite only

You can export your 3D Envisioneer model to a LAY file and then open the file in Simpson Strong-Tie® Component Solutions® software.

#### To export to Simpson Component Solutions:

- 1. Select File > Export > Simpson Component Solutions .LAY.
- 2. In the **Save As** dialog, specify a save location and filename for the file.
- 3. Click Save.
- In the Floor Location Associations dialog, match the building locations in your 3DEnvisioneer model to floor names in Component Solutions, then click OK.

## Exporting to 20-20 Design

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

20-20 Design is 3D interior design software that allow designers, remodelers, and builders to communicate with the kitchen and bath design industry. You can export your 3D Envisioneer model to a 2020XML file and then open the file in 20-20 Design.

## To export to 20-20 Design:

- 1. Select File > Export > 20-20 Design .XML.
- 2. In the **Save As** dialog, specify a save location and filename for the file.
- 3. Click Save.

## **Exporting to Sketchfab**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite Sketchfab is a website where you can publish and share interactive 3D files. If you have an account on Sketchfab, you can use the **Sketchfab Export** tool in Envisioneer to upload your 3D Envisioneer model to Sketchfab. To learn more about Sketchfab, visit https://sketchfab.com/.

#### To export to Sketchfab:

1. Select File > Export > Sketchfab Export.

2. In the **Upload to Sketchfab** dialog box, specify the settings described below. Settings with an asterisk (*) are required settings.

**Title** *. The name of the model as you would like it to appear in Sketchfab.

**Description**. A brief description of the model.

**Tags**. Keywords or phrases that users can use to search for your model.

Note that the tags 'Cadsoft' and 'Envisioneer' will be automatically applied to the model.

Visibility. Select **Public** if you want the model to be visible to everyone, or **Private** if you want it to be visible only to users who have the specified **Password**. Note that the **Private** option is only available if you have a premium Sketchfab account.

**Email Address** *. The email address associated with your Sketchfab account.

**Password** *. The password for your Sketchfab account.

# Exporting Project Content to a BIM File

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have customized content in your project and would like to use that content in another project, you can export the custom content to a Building Information Modeling (BIM) file for import into other projects. For example, if you have edited layer definitions, which are project-specific, you can export those layer definitions to a BIM file and then import the BIM file into other projects to make those layer definitions available in those projects.

#### To export project content to a BIM file:

- 1. Open the project whose content you want to export to a BIM file.
- In Model View, select File > Export > Project to BIM. The Export Items to a BIM File dialog box appears.

Export Items to a BIN	File			
Document: Project1				BIM
ાં અટે Manufac	turers	*	Transfer >	- 1
🗄 🖂 Labels				
🕀 册 Shed Wi	zard			÷.
🗄 📝 Material	Usages			
🗄 🖓 Material	Filters			
🗄 🧹 Profiles				
🗄 😓 Layer Ta	ible			
🗄 👬 Bathroo	n Wizard			
🗄 📊 Head Sil	Jamb Library			
🕀 🔜 Wall Inte	ersection Library			
🗄 📘 Intersec	tion Lookup Library			
🕀 📊 Wall Spa	n Table Library			
	l Library			
H Wall End	Condition	=		
Horizont	al Backer			
	1			
🕀 🚑 Phase				
• Assembl	У			
E Categor	У			
	leasure	-		
Status: Done.				
				Cancel
				Carreer

- 3. By default, the content will be copied to a new, blank BIM file. If you want to export the content to an existing BIM file (i.e. add to a BIM file), click above the right pane and open the BIM file that you want to export to.
- 4. In the left pane of the dialog, select a folder or item that you want to export. Note that the left pane will only contain elements that exist in the current project.
- 5. Click **Transfer** to add the item to the BIM file in the right pane.
- 6. Continue transferring content if desired.
- When you are finished transferring items, click **OK**.

 In the Save As dialog, type a name for the BIM file in the File name edit box, then click Save.

**Note**: When you transfer a group or item to a BIM file, other content may be copied as well. This additional content is associated with the items you are transferring, and is necessary for the items to be properly defined. For example, if you copy a Layer Table to the BIM file, the Line Types and Line Weights used in the table's layer definitions will be also be copied to the BIM file.

## **Project Manager**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Project Manager to capture basic project information, such as the project name, company address and phone numbers. You can also use it to keep track of revisions, and who has worked on the project, and when.

## Accessing the Project Manager

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the Project Manager to capture basic project information, such as the project name, company address and phone numbers. You can also use it to keep track of who has worked on the project, and when.

#### To access the Project Manager:

1. Select File > Project Manager.

## **Specifying Project Information**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Project Information page of the **Project Manager** dialog lets you capture basic information about your project, such as the project name, project number, company name, company address, and important phone numbers. You can also enter notes about the project.

#### To enter project information:

1. Select File > Project Manager.

🗊 Project Manager	·	8 23
Project Information	Work History	
Project Name:		
Project Type:	Residential - Project Number:	
- Company and A	ddress	
Company:		
Contact Name:		
Address:		
City:	St/Prov:	
Zip/Postal:	Country:	
Phone Numbers		
Home:	Office:	
Fax	Mobile:	
E-mail:		
Notes:		
	OK Cancel	

- 2. In the **Project Manager** dialog, select the Project Information tab.
- 3. Enter the project information.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## **Keeping Track of Revisions**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The **Project Manager** dialog's Work History page lets you keep track of who has worked on the project, and when. You can make note of what was worked on, as well as enter additional notes. This provides a detailed system of revision control that can be accessed by anyone working on the project.

#### To enter a revision:

- 1. Select File > Project Manager.
- 2. In the **Project Manager** dialog, select the Work History tab.
- 3. Click **Add**.
- In the Author edit box, enter your name or the name of the person who completed the work.
- 5. In the **Date** edit box, verify the date of the revision. The current date is shown by default.
- 6. In the **Subject** edit box, enter the general subject of the revision.
- 7. In the **Notes** window, enter details about the work that was completed.

- 8. Click **OK**.
- 9. Click **Yes** to add the revision to the work history list.
- 10. Click **OK**.

## Customization

One of the great things about **Envisioneer** is that its content and interface are totally customizable.

Catalogs can be customized in many ways. You can edit a catalog or create a new catalog. You can edit elements in a catalog, add new elements to a catalog, and even import custom objects into a catalog.

Elements have a complete set of properties that you can edit to suit your needs. For example, you can edit an element's size or appearance. You can edit an element in your drawing, or edit an element in the catalog using the Element Manager.

Libraries are part of the catalog. Library types include Materials, Material Usages, Material Filters, Patterns, Manufacturers, Text Styles, Dimension Styles, Line Styles, Line Types, Line Weights, Light Sources, Assemblies, Framing, Usages, Phases, Categories and Units of Measure as well as configurations for the House Builder Wizard, Kitchen Builder Wizard, Bathroom Builder Wizard, and Shed Builder Wizard. When it comes to the Envisioneer interface, you can move things like toolbars and panels around, and adjust your Workspace settings to create an environment that displays the tools you need, and is suited to the way you like to work.

# Chapter 25: Catalogs

## Catalogs

When you start the program, a catalog of elements is displayed on the right side of the screen. This is where you choose the elements that you want to insert. A catalog also contains various libraries, such as Materials, Text Styles and Dimension Styles libraries.

The Element Manager lets you add, edit and delete elements in a catalog to suit your needs. You can also customize the way a catalog is organized by adding, deleting or renaming groups.

The Library Manager lets you customize any library in the catalog by adding, editing and deleting library items.

You can create new, custom catalogs that contain a specific selection of elements.

You can export the content of a catalog to a TXT file, edit the items in the TXT file, and then import the edited content back into the catalog in Envisioneer.

You can export selected libraries and elements to a BIM file for import into other catalogs. You can also import content from any external BIM file.

You can view or edit catalog properties such as the catalog's name and author. You can lock a catalog to prevent others from making unwanted edits to the catalog. While designing you can open any catalog you want to gain access to the elements you want.

# Adding a Group or Subgroup to a Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Most elements and library items are organized by group. For example, walls are organized into groups such as Brick Veneer, Interior Partition, and Poured Concrete. This helps you locate specific element types quickly. You can add groups to any catalog or library using the Add Group tool. To create a deeper level of organization you can add a subgroup to any existing group using the Add Subgroup tool.

## To add a group or subgroup to the current catalog:

 Open either the Element Manager or Library Manager depending on where you want to add the group.

To open the Element Manager select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button

**Element Manager**. You can also right-click an element in the catalog panel and select **Element Manager**.

To open the Library Manager select **File >** Catalogs > Library Manager.

- 2. Select the element catalog or library that you want to add a group to.
- Select the category that you want to add a group to, then select Edit > Add Group, or right-click and select Add Group. To add a subgroup to an existing group, select the group then select Edit > Add Group, or rightclick the group and select Add Group.
- 4. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

## Moving a Subgroup to the Root

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

In an element catalog or library, if you have a group within a group, you can move that subgroup to the root of the tree. In other words, you can promote the subgroup to a group.

## To move a subgroup to the root:

 Open either the Element Manager or Library Manager depending on where the group resides.

To open the Element Manager select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button **Manager**. You can also right-click an element in the catalog panel and select **Element Manager**.

To open the Library Manager select **File >** Catalogs > Library Manager.

- 2. Display the element catalog or library that you want to edit.
- Click and hold down your mouse button over the subgroup that you would like to move, then drag it to the root folder.

## Renaming a Group in a Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

In an element catalog or library, you can change the name of any group using the Rename Group tool.

#### To rename a group:

 Open either the Element Manager or Library Manager depending on where the group resides.

To open the Element Manager select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button on the Standard toolbar and select **Element Manager**. You can also right-click an element in the catalog panel and select **Element Manager**.

To open the Library Manager select **File >** Catalogs > Library Manager.

- 2. Open the element catalog or library containing the group that you want to rename.
- Select the group that you want to rename, then select Edit > Rename Group, or rightclick it and select Rename Group.
- 4. Type the new name and press ENTER.

## Changing the Order of Groups in a Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can change the order in which groups appear in an element catalog or library by moving groups up or down in the list. You may, for example, want to arrange your groups alphabetically, or by popularity.

### To change the order of groups in a catalog:

 Open either the Element Manager or Library Manager depending on where you want to reorder groups.

To open the Element Manager select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button

in the Standard toolbar and select **Element Manager**. You can also right-click an element in the catalog panel and select **Element Manager**.

To open the Library Manager select **File >** Catalogs > Library Manager.

- 2. Display the element catalog or library that you want to edit.
- Click and hold down your mouse button over the group that you would like to move, then drag it to the desired location in the list.

## Deleting a Group from a Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can delete a group in an element catalog or library provided it contains no elements or objects.

## To delete a group in a catalog:

 Open either the Element Manager or Library Manager depending on where you want to add the group.

To open the Element Manager select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**, or click the

down arrow next to the Catalogs button on the Standard toolbar and select Element Manager. You can also right-click an element in the catalog panel and select Element Manager.

To open the Library Manager select **File > Catalogs > Library Manager**.

- 2. Display the element catalog or library that you want to edit.
- 3. Select the group that you want to delete. Note that the group can only be deleted if it contains no elements or objects.
- Select Edit > Delete Group, or right-click and select Delete Group.

## **Creating a New Catalog**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you plan to edit or add elements in the Master Catalog, you may want to create a new catalog instead of editing the existing one. That way, the custom elements you create are distinguishable from the defaults and are stored in one place. When you create a new catalog, you specify a name and where you want to store the catalog.

Once you have created a new catalog it becomes the current catalog in the catalog panel. Initially the catalog will be empty. You can import content into it from another catalog using the BIM File Import tool. You can also add elements to it using the Element Manager, and library items using the Library Manager.

To create a new catalog:

 Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button for and select Element Manager. You can also rightclick an element in the catalog panel and select Element Manager.

The New Catalog tool is also available in the Library Manager (**File > Catalogs > Library Manager**).

- 2. Select File > New Catalog.
- 3. In the **Create a new catalog** dialog, type a name (without extension) in the **File Name** box.
- 4. Click _____ next to the **Location** edit box and select the directory where you want to store the new catalog. The default is the program's Catalogs directory, which is where you should store all catalogs.
- From the **Type** drop box, select the unit of measure you would like to use for elements in the catalog.
- 6. From the **Precision** drop box, select the level of precision you would like to use for measurements. For example, selecting #'-# #/16" sets the level of precision to 1/16th of an inch when working in feet and inches.
- 7. In the **Name** edit box, type your name.

- 8. In the **Company** edit box, type the name of your company, if applicable.
- If you want to prevent the catalog from being edited by unauthorized persons, enable the Lock Catalog to Editing check box. Then, enter and re-enter a password in the Password dialog.
- Click **OK**. A new, blank catalog is created. You can now add groups and elements to the catalog, or import elements from another catalog. Remember to save the catalog after you make changes to it.

## Locking a Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can prevent a catalog from being edited by unauthorized persons by locking it. Once locked, a password must be entered to unlock it.

#### To lock a catalog:

- Select File > Catalogs > Catalog Properties, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button for and select Catalog Properties. You can also access catalog properties from the Element Manager and Library Manager by selecting File > Catalog Properties.
- 2. In the **Catalog Properties** dialog, enable the **Lock Catalog to Editing** check box.
- 3. In the **Password** dialog, enter the password that you want to use to unlock the catalog. Then, enter the password again in the second edit box to confirm it. For security reasons, the actual characters of your password do not appear as you type them.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## **Unlocking a Catalog**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If a catalog has been locked to editing, you can unlock it by entering the password that was created when the catalog was locked.

#### To unlock a catalog:

- Select File > Catalogs > Catalog Properties, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Catalog Properties. You can also access catalog properties from the Element Manager and Library Manager by select File > Catalog Properties.
- 2. In the **Catalog Properties** dialog, disable the **Lock Catalog to Editing** check box.
- 3. Enter the password needed to unlock it, then click **OK**.

## Downloading Manufacturer Content

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Green 3D Home web site contains various BIM catalogs of manufacturer materials that you can download and import into your Envisioneer catalog. Some examples are Anderson windows, Kohler faucets and Maytag appliances.

To download manufacturer content:

1. Select File > Catalogs > Browse More Catalog Content <u>or</u> Help > Browse More Catalog

**Content**. You can also click **EXAMPLE** on the Help toolbar, or click the **Download More** link in the catalog panel.

- Locate the BIM catalog that you want to download, then click **Download Catalog**.
- 3. Download the catalog to your computer.
- 4. Use the Import BIM to Catalog tool to import the content of the manufacturer catalog into your Envisioneer catalog.

**Note**: You must log in to be able to download catalogs. Registration on the Green 3D Home web site is quick and free.

## **Opening a Catalog**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite You can use the Open Catalog tool to open any catalog and make it the current catalog in the catalog panel. The Open Catalog tool is also available in the Element Manager and Library Manager.

#### To open a catalog:

- Select File > Catalogs > Open Catalog, or click and on the Standard toolbar and select Open Catalog. You can also open a catalog in the Element Manager or Library Manager by selecting File > Open Catalog.
- 2. In the **Open** dialog, locate the catalog that you want to open.
- 3. Click **Open**. The catalog you opened becomes the active catalog.

## Selecting a Default Catalog Directory

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, the program's Catalogs directory is displayed in the Open dialog when opening a catalog. You can select a different default directory to display if you want.

#### To select a default catalog directory:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. On the *General* pane, click on the **Catalogs Directory** in the *File Paths* area.
- 3. Click Modify.
- 4. In the **Browse For Folder** dialog, select the directory you want to use as your default catalog directory, then click **OK**.
- 5. Click OK in the Program Settings dialog.

## **Viewing Catalog Properties**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can view the properties of the current catalog (file name, location, etc.) using the Catalog Properties tool.

## To view the properties of the catalog currently displayed in the catalog panel:

 Select File > Catalogs > Catalog Properties, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button 🗐 🗐 on the Standard toolbar and select **Catalog Properties**. You can also access the Catalog Properties tool in the **Element Manager** and **Library Manager** by selecting **File > Catalog Properties**.

## Saving a Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Whether you have a created a new catalog or are editing an existing one in the Element Manager or Library Manager, you will want to save your changes. Note that when you click OK in the Element Manager or Library Manager, the current catalog saves automatically.

#### To save the current catalog:

 In the Element Manager or Library Manager dialog, select File > Save Catalog.

## Creating a Copy of a Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can create a copy of a catalog using the Save Catalog As tool.

## To create a copy of a catalog under a different name:

- 1. Make sure the catalog you want to save is the current catalog.
- Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button in on the Standard toolbar and select Element Manager. You can also rightclick an element in the catalog panel and select Element Manager.
- In the Element Manager dialog, select File > Save Catalog As.
- 4. In the **File name** edit box, type the name you want to save under (without extension).
- 5. Click Save.

**Note**: The newly saved catalog becomes the current catalog.

# Exporting Catalog Content to a Text File

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can export the contents of the current catalog to a tab-delimited TXT file. You can then edit the catalog items in an external text editor, and import the edited catalog back into Envisioneer. This is an efficient way to make multiple changes to a catalog all at once. For example, you can edit the cost of all of the items that you commonly use.

#### To export catalog content to a text file:

- 1. Make sure that the catalog from which you want to export content is the current catalog.
- Select File > Catalogs > Export catalog items. You can also launch this feature from the Element Manager or Library Manager by selecting File > Export Text File.
- In the Save As dialog, select a save location for the text file. Then, specify a name in the File name edit box, and click Save.

## Importing Catalog Content from a Text File

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have exported a catalog to a TXT file from Envisioneer, you can import the catalog back into Envisioneer.

The content of the text file will be imported into the catalog that is currently open in Envisioneer. If you edited any items in the text file after you exported it, and those items exist in the current catalog, those items will be updated with your changes. If you changed the unique ID number that is associated with each catalog item, or added a new item to the text file, a new element will be created.

#### To import catalog content from a text file:

- 1. Make sure that the catalog into which you want to import content is the current catalog.
- Select File > Catalogs > Import catalog items.
- 3. In the **Open** dialog, select the text file containing the catalog content, then click **Open**.

# Exporting Catalog Content to a BIM File

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you would like to transfer elements or libraries in the current catalog to another catalog, you first need to export the desired content to a BIM (Building Information Management) file. You can then use the Import BIM File tool to import the content into the other catalog.

By exporting content to a BIM file you can also share your catalog content with other **Envisioneer** users by simply giving them the BIM file.

#### To export catalog content to a BIM File:

- 1. Make sure that the catalog from which you want to export content is the current catalog.
- Select File > Export > Catalog to BIM. You can also launch this feature from the Element Manager or Library Manager by selecting File > BIM File > Export.

atalog: ENV6 Master Catalog_original.bdb		BIM File: Untitled.bim	
∰ Document ang Benents ang Libraries	Transfer >	Document	
atus: Ready.			

- 3. By default, the content will be copied to a new, blank BIM file. If you want to export the content to an existing BIM file (i.e. add to a BIM file), click above the right pane and open the BIM file that you want to export to.
- 4. In the left pane of the Export Items to BIM File dialog, select the content that you want to export to a BIM file. To expand a group, click its plus sign (+). You can select an entire element group (e.g. Windows), individual groups (e.g. Fixed Windows), or individual elements within a group (e.g. 4' x 4' Fixed Window). The same goes for libraries.
- 5. Click **Transfer**. The selected content is copied to the BIM file in the right pane.
- 6. Continue transferring content if desired.

- 7. When you are finished transferring content, click **OK**.
- In the Save As dialog, type a name for the BIM file in the File name edit box, then click Save.

**Note**: When you transfer a group or item to a BIM file, other content may be copied as well. This additional content is associated with the items you are transferring, and is necessary for the items to be properly defined. For example, if you copy the Doors group to the BIM file, the Parts group will copy over as well, because doors have parts such as hinges and doorknobs included as assemblies in their properties. Similarly, if you copy the Materials library to the BIM file, other libraries such as Patterns, Line Styles and Manufacturers will copy over as well because materials have patterns, line styles and manufacturers defined in their properties.

**Note**: When you copy individual groups or items to a BIM file, the structure which the group or item is part of is mimicked in the BIM file pane. For example, if you copy the 4' x 4' Fixed Window to the BIM file pane, it will appear in a folder named "Fixed", and the Fixed folder will appear under a "Windows" folder.

# Chapter 25: Elements

## Elements

The Master Catalog contains thousands of elements. You can add, edit and delete elements in the catalog using the Element Manager.

When you want to add or edit an element in a catalog, you need to define the element's properties, such as its size and appearance. Some elements will have more settings than others. When you edit an element in a catalog, your changes will be applied to any future insertions of that element.

You can also edit elements that you have inserted in your drawing. When you edit an inserted element, the changes you make are specific to that insertion of the element, and have no effect on the catalog or future insertions of the element.

If you have edited the properties of an inserted element, you can save that element (and its custom properties) to the current catalog using the Save Element to Catalog tool.

## Using the Element Manager

The Element Manager contains a list of all the elements in the current catalog. Using the Element Manager you can add and edit elements, import elements from another catalog, and create new catalogs.

To access the Element Manager:

 Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button in the Standard toolbar and select Element Manager. You can also rightclick an element in the catalog panel and

#### select Element Manager.



All catalog elements are found in the left navigation pane. The properties of the currently selected element are displayed on the right side of the dialog. Each set of properties has its own tab (Basic, Appearance, Quantity, etc.). Simply select a tab to view and/or edit those properties. You can find an element by searching through the tree in the navigation pane. Elements are grouped by type (Walls, Doors, Windows, etc.), and each element folder may have sub-folders for additional organization. The Element Manager includes a Search feature above the navigation pane that you can use to quickly find a specific element in the catalog.

## Searching for Elements in the Element Manager

The Element Manager includes a Search feature that you can use to quickly find a specific element in the catalog. You can search by keyword or by part number. If you do a keyword search, the feature will look at element names. If you do a part number search, it will look at the Part No. values assigned to elements on their Quantity property page. Search terms are saved for your convenience so that you can activate them again in the future.

#### To search the catalog:

 Click the drop box in the Search area above the navigation pane and select either
 Description to search by keyword, or Part No. to search by part number. An edit box appears next to the drop box.

😥 Element Manager	
File Edit	
Search:	
Description 🔻	
🧝 Element Manager	
File Edit	
Search:	
Description 🔻 🔎	

2. In the edit box, enter the keyword(s) or part number to search for, then press Enter or

click click

Note that if you enter two or more keywords, the keywords must appear consecutively in an element's name in order for the element to appear in the search results. For example, if you enter the keywords "wood edging", an element named Wood Rail Edging would not appear in the search results.

Once search results are obtained they are displayed in the navigation pane.

- To return the catalog to its default state, where all elements are displayed, select Show All from the Search drop box.
- 4. Search terms that you have used are saved in the **Search** window. To activate a search that you performed previously, select the desired search term from the search drop box.

## **Viewing Element Properties**

Every element has a set of properties that defines the element's size, type and physical appearance. You can customize an element's properties to suit your needs. Property pages vary depending on the element type, as do the properties available on those pages.

You can access element properties through the Element Manager or the catalog panel, or through an inserted element. You can edit the properties of inserted elements as well as elements in the Element Manager.

## To view element properties through the Element Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or right-click an element in the catalog panel and select Element Manager.
- 2. Select the element whose properties you want to view. The element's properties appear on the right side of the Element Manager.

## To view element properties through the catalog panel:

1. In the catalog panel, right-click the element and select **Edit Element**.

#### To view the properties of an inserted element:

- 1. Select the element in your drawing.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

## Adding Elements to a Catalog

You can create a new element in a catalog by defining a number of different properties that determine its size, geometry and appearance.

#### To add a new element to the current catalog:

 Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Element Manager. You can also rightclick an element in the catalog panel and select **Element Manager**.

- 2. In the **Element Manager**, expand the appropriate element type, then select the group that you want to add the element to.
- 3. Select **Edit > Add Element**, or right-click and select **Add Element**.
- Elements like furniture, appliances and accessories can be defined based on a set of general parameters, or by importing a DWG, DXF, 3DS or SKP file. If this is the case, you will see the **Define Element** dialog.
- 5. To define the element by specifying size properties, select the specific element type you want to create (chair, table, etc.), then click **OK**.
- To import a 3DS, DWG, DXF or SKP block, select the Custom Block option, then click OK. Some elements, like electronics, will prompt you directly for a file because they do not have a parametric template. For more information, see *Importing Custom Objects into Your Catalog* on page 586.
- 7. Define the element's properties on the right side of the dialog. (See *Working with Property Pages* on page 607.)
- 8. If you want to name the element automatically using a pre-defined naming convention, click the **Autoname** button. (See *Using Automatic Name Generation* on page 607.)
- Click **OK**. The element is added to the catalog.

## Saving Edited Elements in Your Drawing to a Catalog

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have edited the properties of an inserted element, you can save that element (and its custom properties) to the current catalog.

## To add an edited element from your drawing into the current catalog:

 Select File > Catalogs > Save Element to Catalog, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button 📳 🗐 on the Standard toolbar and select **Save Element to Catalog**.

Your pointer changes to a catalog cursor.

- 2. Select the element in your drawing.
- Click **Yes** to save the element. You are asked if you want to save another element to the catalog.
- Click Yes if you want to save another element to the catalog, or No to finish.

**Note**: If the element that you select already exists in the catalog, you will be asked if you want to create a copy in the catalog to work with. If you click **Yes**, a copy of the element is created in the catalog, with a number appended to its name to differentiate it from the original.

## **Editing Elements in a Catalog**

Every element has a number of different properties that determine its size, geometry and appearance. You can edit these properties to suit your needs. The Element Manager contains a list of all elements in the current catalog. You can edit a single element or multiple elements simultaneously.

#### To edit an element in a catalog:

- Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button on the Standard toolbar and select Element Manager. You can also rightclick an element in the catalog panel and select Element Manager.
- 2. In the **Element Manager**, select the element that you want to edit. You can select multiple elements if you want by holding down the Shift key and clicking on elements.
- If you want to name the element automatically using a pre-defined naming convention, click the **Autoname** button. More info
- Edit the properties on the right side of the dialog. If multiple elements are selected, property values that differ are shown in red.
   Values shown in black are common to all the elements selected. Values shown in red can still be edited, but be aware that the value

will be applied to all elements in your selection set.

#### 5. Click **OK**.

**Note**: Editing elements in a catalog has no effect on elements already inserted in your drawing. It only affects future insertions of the element.

## Tracing and Replacing Elements in a Catalog

Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Items such as assemblies and infill configurations reference one or more elements in the catalog. You can use the Trace Element tool to see where a particular element is referenced, and swap out the element with a different one in that item's definition. For example, let's say that all of the batt insulation assemblies in the catalog reference Fiberglass Insulation, but you want to use Mineral Wool Insulation for all of your batt insulation applications. You could use the Trace Element tool to quickly find all items that reference Fiberglass Insulation, then replace all or selected references with Mineral Wool Insulation.

#### To trace an element:

- Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button in on the Standard toolbar and select Element Manager. You can also rightclick an element in the catalog panel and select Element Manager.
- 2. In the **Element Manager**, locate the element that you want to trace, then right-click the element and select **Trace Element**.
- If the element is not referenced in any definition (assembly, infill configuration, etc.), a 'No references found' message is displayed. If the element can be traced to one more item definitions, the **Trace Element** dialog appears, and displays a list of items that reference the element:

Trace Element          Name:       R30 Fiberglass Batt Insulation         References:       Assembly Library         R30 Batt Insulation Surface       R30 Batt Insulation         R30 Batt Insulation       Insulation         Replace with:       R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation         OK       OK			
Name:       R30 Fiberglass Batt Insulation         References:       Assembly Library         R30 Batt Insulation Surface       R30 Batt Insulation         R30 Batt Insulation       Insulation         Replace with:       R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation         OK       OK	Trace Ele	ment	
References:          Assembly Library         R30 Batt Insulation Surface         R30 Batt Insulation         Replace with:       R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation         OK	Name:	R30 Fiberglass Batt Insulation	
Assembly Library R30 Batt Insulation Surface R30 Batt Insulation Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK	Referen	ices:	
R30 Batt Insulation R30 Batt Insulation Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK	Asse	mbly Library	
R30 Batt Insulation Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK OK	R30 Ba	att Insulation Surface	
Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK OK	R30 Ba	att Insulation	
Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK OK			
Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK OK			
Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK			
Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK			
Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK			
Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK			
Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK OK			
Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK OK			
Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK			
Replace with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation OK OK			
OK OK	Replace	with: R30 Mineral Wool Batt Insulation	I
OK OK			
o replace the element everywhere that is		or	
o replace the element everywhere that is		OK	
	o replac	e the element everywhere that is	

 To replace the element everywhere that is referenced in the catalog, click the browse button and select the desired replacement element in the **Replace** dialog. Then, click **Replace All**. When prompted, confirm your choice to globally replace the element.

To replace the element in a specific item only, double-click the item in the list to display an edit dialog for that item. For example, if you select an assembly, the **Edit Assembly** dialog appears. In the edit dialog, click the browse button next to the element's name and select the desired replacement element in the **Catalog Access** dialog. Click **OK** to update that item definition.

**Note**: When using the Trace Element tool to replace element references, the replacement applies to the catalog (and future element insertions) only. It does not apply to elements that you have already inserted in your drawing.

## Deleting Elements from a Catalog

You can delete any element from a catalog.

### To delete an element from a catalog:

- Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button in on the Standard toolbar and select Element Manager. You can also rightclick an element in the catalog panel and select Element Manager.
- 2. Select the element that you want to delete.
- 3. Select **Edit > Delete Element**, or right-click and select **Delete Element**.

## Working with Property Pages

When you access an element's properties, the properties are displayed on various tabbed pages. The tabs and properties vary depending on the element. The most common property pages are Basic, Appearance, Line Work, Quantity and Behavior. The notes and hyperlinks properties are common to all property pages.

A preview of the element is shown in the preview window. By default, the image is displayed in a 3D rendered view. You can switch between 3D and 2D as well as select different display modes by rightclicking in the preview window and making a selection from the menu.

When the image is in a 3D view, you can rotate it around by clicking and dragging with your mouse.

# Using Automatic Name Generation

Names of elements are based on pre-defined formulas. The name 8" Concrete Wall is made up of three variables:



Each variable is separated by a space. These variables and spaces are defined in the name's formula.

If you add or change an element, and select Auto Name, the element's name updates automatically in the catalog. For example, if you create a concrete wall, and define a width of 10", the name automatically becomes 10" Concrete Wall.

Automatic name generation:

- Saves typing a name every time you add or edit an element
- Ensures consistency in catalogs
- Prevents duplicate entries if you forget to change a name

To use automatic name generation when adding or editing an element, click the **Autoname** button next to the **Name** edit box in the element's properties dialog.

**Note**: Even if you have used the Autoname feature, you can still add to or edit the name.

See Also: Modifying the Name Generation Formula

# Modifying the Name Generation Formula

You can modify the formula used to generate an element's name when the **Autoname** feature is used in the catalog or in an element's properties. Formulas are made up of variables (like Element Class and Element Type) and separators (spaces, symbols or characters).

Editing an element's name generation formula sets the formula for any new elements you create of that type. For example, if you edit the name generation formula for an 8" Brick Wall, any new walls you add to the catalog will use the new formula if you use automatic name generation.

## To modify the formula used for an element's automatic name generation:

 Select File > Catalogs > Element Manager, or right-click an element in the catalog panel and select Element Manager. In the catalog, select the element to edit.

## or

Select an element in your drawing, then right-click and select **Properties**.

2. On the Basic property page, click next to the **Autoname** button. The **Automatic Name Generation** dialog for that element type is

displayed. The right pane (titled *Used Variables* and *Separators*) displays the current formula.

- 3. To remove a component from the formula, select it and click **Remove**, or press the left arrow key on your keyboard.
- To add a component to the formula, select the desired variable or separator in the *Available Variables* or *Available Separators* window and click Add, or press the right arrow key on your keyboard.
- To move a component in the formula, select the component and click Move Up or Move Down.
- When you have finished modifying the formula, click OK to close the Automatic Name Generation dialog.
- 7. Click **OK** to close the **Element Manager**.

See Also: Using Automatic Name Generation

# Editing the Size and Composition of an Element

You can edit the physical make-up of an element as well as its dimensions by accessing the element's Basic property page. Some elements have additional property pages that control its composition. For example, cabinets have Leaf and Details property pages.

When you edit the properties of elements that exist in your drawing, only selected elements are changed. Other occurrences of the element in your drawing remain unchanged. You can, however, select and edit multiple elements at the same time provided they share the same properties.

#### To edit the properties of an inserted element:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- Adjust the properties as desired. Clicking a dimension marked with an alphabetical character (a, b, c, etc.) highlights the corresponding dimension in the element graphic, and vice versa, if one exists.
- 3. Click **OK**. The selected elements are updated in the drawing.

**Note**: Editing the properties of an element in your drawing has no effect on the element's property definition in the catalog it came from. If you want to edit an element in a catalog, see *Editing Elements in a Catalog* on page 605. Editing an element in a catalog affects all future insertions of that element in your drawing.

## Changing an Element's Orientation

Symbol elements, such as furniture and light fixtures, are oriented in a logical fashion when you insert them in your drawing. For example, tables are inserted in a flat, upright position on the floor, and electrical outlets are inserted in a vertical position on the face of walls. You can edit the orientation of most symbol elements. For example, you may want to flip an air register so that you can insert it on the ceiling in your basement.

#### To change an element's orientation:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. On the Basic property page, click the appropriate arrow keys in the *Orientation* area to rotate the element.

**X Axis**: Rotates the element front to back, and vice versa.

**Y Axis**: Rotates the element towards its left or right side in 3D.

**Z Axis**: Rotates the element left or right in 2D plan view.

**Note**: Orientation control is only available for simple block elements like furniture and appliances. It does not apply to elements with customizable components, such as fireplaces or cabinets.

## Controlling What Parts of an Element are Displayed

You can hide certain parts of a block element from view by changing its display properties.

## To control what parts of an element are displayed:

- 1. Access the element's properties. How to
- 2. In the property dialog, click **Display**.

3. To display or hide a component from view in 2D and/or 3D view, select it in the list, then click the appropriate eye icon.

() ★ Component is displayed

Q Component is not displayed

- 4. Click **OK** to return to the properties dialog.
- 5. Click **OK** in the properties dialog.

**Note**: The Display control feature is only available for simple block elements like furniture and appliances. It does not apply to elements with customizable components, such as fireplaces or cabinets.

## Simplifying an Element

If an element looks too complex in the preview window, you can simplify it by reducing the number of polygons used to display it.

#### To simplify an imported element:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. In the property dialog, click Simplify.
- 3. To simplify the element, slide the ruler to the left. The **Number of vertices in object** and **Percentage of simplification** values update accordingly.
- To put a limit on how much simplification can take place, enter a value in the Min number of vertices per component edit box. The larger the number, the less simplified the element will become.
- 5. Click **OK** to return to the properties dialog.
- 6. Click **OK** in the properties dialog.

**Note**: The Simplify feature is only available for simple block elements like furniture and appliances. It does not apply to elements with customizable components, such as fireplaces or cabinets.

# Editing an Element's Insertion Point

Some elements have a defined Insertion Point, which is the point on the element that is attached to the cursor when you are inserting the element. For most elements, the insertion point is at the bottom of the element. For windows and wall openings, the insertion point is at the top of the element. When changing the elevation of an element, the distance is measured from the floor or terrain to the element's insertion point.

#### To edit an element's insertion point:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. Select the Behavior tab.
- Edit the values in the X Axis, Y Axis and Z Axis edit boxes, or use the sliders beside these edit boxes.

An X value moves the insertion point left or right. A Y value moves the insertion point forwards or backwards. A Z value moves the insertion point up or down on the element.

4. Click **OK**.

## Editing an Element's Snap Edge

Some elements have a defined Snap Edge, which determines which edge of the element will snap to the wall if you position it near a wall.

#### To edit an element's snap edge:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. Select the Behavior tab.
- 3. Click on the desired snap edge graphic in the *Snap Edge* area. Choose from *None, Left, Right, Front* or *Back*.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Editing an Element's Insertion Height

You can change the height at which single-click elements are inserted by editing their behavior properties. The **Distance above current location or terrain** option lets you control the height at which the element is inserted relative to the floor or terrain. The value entered is the distance from the floor or terrain to the insertion point of the element. (For most elements except windows and wall openings, the insertion point is at the bottom of the element.)

#### To edit an element's insertion height:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. Select the Behavior tab.
- 3. Edit the value in the Distance above current

location or terrain edit box.

4. Click **OK**.

## Editing an Element's Layer Assignments

Each of an element's components has a specific layer assigned to it. Layer definitions determine the color, line type and line weight used to display a component's lines in 2D plan view. You can edit an element's layer assignments on its Line Work property page.

## To edit an element's layer assignments:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. Select the Line Work tab.
- In the *Components* pane, select the component whose layer assignment you want to change.
   Select the desired layer from the **Layer** drop box. The layer's color, line type and line weight are displayed below the drop box.



 To override the layer's Color, Line type or Line weight setting, click on the property that you want to override and then make a selection from the drop box that appears.

Continuous

Medium

5. When you are finished editing layer assignments, click **OK**.

# Editing an Element's Material Settings

Black

An element's material properties are displayed in Rendered and Rendered Outline mode. If you choose to edit an element's material through its Appearance property page, you can select different materials for each of the element's components.

## To change an element's material through the Appearance property page:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. Select the Appearance tab.
- 3. In the *Components* pane, select the component whose material you want to change.
- 4. To select a texture for the component, which will be displayed in Rendered and Rendered outline display mode, click the material swatch or the browse button in the *Material* area, then make a selection from the **Materials** dialog.



Material		
	Brick 2	
	Mapping	

 To edit the way the material is applied to the component in Rendered and Rendered Outline mode, click the **Mapping** button in the *Material* area, then define your mapping settings. These are described below.

Auto Texture Mapping. Applies a UV map, which is a flat, 2D representation of the vertices of the 3D model. It defines where the 2D pixels in your texture will be placed on the 3D surface. For imported elements, selecting Auto uses the mapping already applied to the element.

*Face Texture Mapping*. Applies the texture to every single face of the element component. This is the most common texture mapping option used in the program.

*Box Texture Mapping*. Creates a rectangular bounding box around the element, then applies a texture to each of the box's 6 sides. This would be useful for an element such as a sofa. *Predefined texture mapping*. If using a texture from an outside source, this uses the texture mapping that was assigned to the texture originally.

*Override tile size.* Allows you to specify a custom tile size for the material. Tile height refers to the height of one bitmap tile. The program uses tiled rendering to display images, meaning images are generated in pieces (tiles) vertically and horizontally. Changing the tile height of a brick material, for example, would make the bricks look taller. Changing the tile width would make the bricks look wider.

Note that the *Override tile size* option lets you customize the tile size for this instance only without creating a new material.

*Position*. Allows you to shift the material on the element (left, right, up or down) by clicking the appropriate arrows.

*Rotation.* Specifying an angle here rotates the material on the element in a clockwise direction.

6. When you are finished defining materials, click **OK**.

**Note**: When you edit the material of an element in your drawing, the element's material definition in the catalog does not change. The change only applies to the selected element. If you want to change the element's properties in the catalog, see *Editing Elements in a Catalog* on page 605. Editing an element in a catalog affects all future insertions of that element in your drawing.

## Editing an Element's Pattern Settings

An element's pattern properties are displayed when you view a model in Patterned mode. If you choose to edit an element's pattern settings through its Line Work property page, you can select different patterns for each of the element's components.

#### To change an element's pattern settings:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. Select the Line Work tab.

- 3. In the *Components* pane, select the component whose pattern you want to change.
- 4. To select a pattern for the component, click the pattern swatch or the browse button in the *Pattern* area, then make a selection from the **Patterns** dialog.
- To edit the way the pattern is applied to the element in Patterned display mode, click the **Mapping** button in the *Pattern* area, then define your mapping settings. These are described below.

*Rotation*. Specifying an angle here rotates the pattern on the element in a clockwise direction.

*Position*. Allows you to shift the pattern on the element (left, right, up or down) by clicking the appropriate arrows.i

- 6. To specify a color and line weight for the pattern's lines, select Layer below the pattern swatch which has the desired color/line weight properties. You can override the color or line weight by clicking the Color swatch or the Line Weight drop box.
- 7. When you are finished, click **OK**.

# Adding Notes to an Element's Properties

The Notes function in the properties dialog lets you enter a note about the element. This additional information can be anything you want.

#### To add a note to an element's properties:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. Below the properties pane, click .
- 3. Enter your note in the **Notes** dialog.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Adding a Hyperlink to an Element's Properties

When defining an element's properties, you can create a link to an external file (e.g. Word document) or Web address. You can then open the hyperlink any time you are viewing the element's properties. You can add multiple hyperlinks to an element's properties if you want. When a hyperlink is added to an element, the right click menu will be updated to include **Open**  **Current Link** that will go directly to the hyperlink without having to open the object's properties dialog.

#### To add a hyperlink to an element's properties:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- Below the properties pane, click 
   Output: Outp
- 3. In the **Manage Hyperlinks** dialog, click **Add**. A new entry is added to the hyperlinks window. An icon appears to the left of the new hyperlink indicating that it is the current hyperlink.
- 4. Type a name for the hyperlink in the **Name** field (e.g. My Web Site).
- 5. Press the Tab key to move to the Links field, then type the web address (e.g. http://www.mywebsite.com) or path to the file you are linking to. If you are linking to a file, you can click Browse to search through the directories on your computer. Once you've located the file in the Open dialog, click Open. The path to the file is automatically displayed in the Links field.
- 6. To view the link, select it in the hyperlink window, then click **Open**.
- 7. To delete a hyperlink, select it in the hyperlink window, then click **Delete**.
- 8. Click **OK**.

Once the element is inserted into a model, if selected the right click menu will display **Open Current Link** to directly link to the first hyperlink listed for the element.

**Note**: You can create a link to another **Envisioneer** (*.bld) file. However, if that file uses the same catalog as the current drawing, you cannot access the catalog in the linked file.

## **Opening an Element's Hyperlink**

If you have attached a hyperlink to an element, you can open the hyperlink when viewing the element's properties.

To open an element's hyperlink:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. Below the properties pane, click the arrow

next to the Hyperlinks button , then select **Open Current Link**. The hyperlink is opened.

**Note**: If you have attached multiple hyperlinks to the element, the one marked current in the **Hyperlinks** dialog will be opened.

## Making a Hyperlink Current

When you attach more than one hyperlink to an element's properties, the current one is marked with an icon in the **Hyperlinks** dialog.



When you use the tools in the **Hyperlinks** dialog (Browse, Open, Delete), they apply to the currently selected hyperlink. Also, when you select the **Open Current Link** tool from the Hyperlinks flyout, it opens the currently selected hyperlink.

To make a specific hyperlink current in the **Hyperlinks** dialog, just click on any of its fields.

## Grouping Elements in Your Drawing to Create a Single Element

You can select a group of elements in your drawing and automatically create a new, single element in the catalog which comprises all of the elements in the group. For example, if you have added an extension such as a sunroom to your model, you can select all of the walls, doors, windows, roof and other elements that make up that sunroom and create a new 'Sunroom' element in the catalog. You can then use the **Insert Group** tool to insert the custom 'Sunroom' element into any drawing.

#### To add a grouped element to the catalog:

- 1. Select the elements that you want to group, preferably by windowing or crossing through them.
- 2. Select Edit > Modify Elements > Add Group, or right-click and select Add Group.
- 3. In the Add Group dialog box, give the new element a name, and then confirm that the elements listed are the ones that you would like to include in the group.

📐 Group (Catalog)	3/8" x 3" MDF S4S Casing 3/8" x 4" MDF S4S Baseboard
Name: Sunroom	5'-0" X 5'-6" Picture Window 4/12 Slope Hip Roof - Shingles
Element Elements: 2x4 Brick Wall 1-1/2" x 3" Concrete Sill 1-1/2" x 3/4" MDF Sill 3/8" x 5" MDF S4S Baseboard 3/8" x 3" MDF S4S Casing 3/8" x 4" MDF S4S Baseboard 5'-0" X 5'-6" Picture Window 4/12 Slope Hip Roof - Shingles	4. Click <b>OK</b> .
	Inserting Grouped Elements If you have used the Add Group tool to gr multiple elements into one, the grouped elements added to the catalog for future reuse. To insert a grouped element:
R 🔍 - D	1. Select Insert > Insert Group, or click

0

## ped Elements

Add Group tool to group to one, the grouped element is for future reuse.

- on the Building toolbar.
- 2. In the catalog panel, select the grouped element that you would like to insert.
- 3. Position the element in your drawing, then click to insert it.

## **Editing Grouped Elements**

When you use the Insert Group tool to insert a grouped element into your drawing, the grouped element remains selected upon insertion. At that point you can right-click to access editing tools that will act on the group as a whole. These include Delete, Cut/Paste, Move, Rotate, Duplicate, Duplicate to Locations, Mirror, and Generate Estimate. Once you click away from the grouped element, it becomes deselected, and is no longer considered a group. You can now select and edit individual elements within the group if desired.

# Chapter 26: Libraries

## Libraries

Items such as materials, patterns, text styles and dimension styles are stored in customizable libraries. The Library Manager provides access to all the libraries of items and styles used in the display of elements, text and dimensions. By accessing a library you can add content, or edit existing content. For example, if you access the Text Styles library, you can add or edit a text style.

View list of libraries Materials Material Usages Material Filters

Patterns

Manufacturers

Text Styles

**Dimension Styles** 

Line Styles

Line Types

Line Weights

Light Sources

Assemblies

Usages

Phases

Categories

Units of Measure

House Builder Configuration

Kitchen Builder Configuration

Shed Builder Configuration

Bathroom Builder Configuration

Framing Libraries

Library types include Materials, Material Usages, Material Filters, Patterns, Manufacturers, Text Styles, Dimension Styles, Line Styles, Line Types, Line Weights, Light Sources, Framing, Assemblies, Phases, Categories, Usages and Units of Measure, as well as configurations for the House Builder Wizard, Kitchen Builder Wizard, Bathroom Builder Wizard, and Shed Builder Wizard.

## Using the Library Manager

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Library Manager provides access to all the libraries of items and styles used in the display or creation of elements, text and dimensions. By accessing a library you can add content, or edit existing content. For example, if you access the Text Styles library, you can add or edit a text style.

#### To access the Library Manager:

 Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button for on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.



2. To display a library, select it from the **Librar**ies menu.

## To add a group:

To add a group:

- Select Edit > Add Group, or right-click in the upper pane and select Add Group.
- 2. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

#### To rename a group:

To rename a group:

- 1. Select the group in the upper pane.
- Select Edit > Rename Group, or right-click and select Rename Group.
- 3. Type the new name, then press ENTER.

#### To delete a group:

To delete a group:

- 1. Select the group in the upper pane.
- Select Edit > Delete Group, or right-click and select Delete Group.

**Note**: A group cannot be deleted if it contains materials.

#### To add a new item to the library:

To add a new item to the library:

- 1. If the library contains a filter, select the appropriate filter from the **Filter** drop box (applies to materials and assemblies).
- 2. In the upper pane, select the group you want to add the item to (if applicable). Some libraries do not contain groups.
- Select Edit > Add [item], or right-click in the upper pane and select Add [item].
- 4. Define the new item, then click **OK**.

## To edit an item:

To edit an item:

- 1. Select the item to edit.
- Select Edit > Edit [item], or right-click and select Edit [item].
- 3. Edit the item's properties.

## To delete an item:

#### To delete an item:

- 1. Select the item to delete.
- Select Edit > Delete [item], or right-click and select Delete [item].

**Note**: If the item is being used by an element, it cannot be deleted. In this case, a dialog appears telling you this. If you want to see a

list of which elements are using the item, click **Yes**.

## **Materials Library**

The Materials library contains a wide variety of materials and textures that can be applied to element components. The Materials library is displayed in the catalog panel when the Materials Paintbrush is active. In the Materials library, materials are listed in groups (Concrete, Brick, Wood, etc.) so you can organize and find them easily. You can add, rename and delete groups as needed. You can use the material filter to filter the materials list according to specific usages, such as *Flooring*. You can also sort the materials alphabetically, chronologically or by popularity.

Alphabetical A->Z
 Alphabetical Z->A
 Newest to Oldest
 Oldest to Newest
 Usage: most popular

You can add new materials to the library, as well as edit and delete existing materials. When adding or editing materials, you can select a color or texture file to apply to the material, and specify a number of different material properties.

The Materials library is part of the catalog. Any changes that you make to the Materials library will be available in future projects.

# Customizing the Materials Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The materials library contains a vast array of materials that you can apply to elements. Even so, you may find that you want to customize it at some point in time.

In the materials library, materials are listed in groups (Concrete, Brick, Wood, etc.) so you can organize and find them easily. You can add, rename and delete groups as needed.

You can add new materials to the library, as well as edit and delete existing materials.

## To access the materials library through the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Materials.

## To access the materials library through the Materials Paintbrush:

- 1. Go into a 3D view or 2D Designer's View.
- Select Edit > Materials Paintbrush, or click
   on any tabbed toolbar.

## To access the materials library through an element:

- 1. Select an element either in your drawing or in the catalog panel.
- 2. Access the element's properties.
- 3. In the properties dialog, select the Appearance tab.
- 4. Click the material swatch or the **Select** button in the *Material* pane.

## To filter the material list:

To filter the material list:

1. Select a filter from the **Filter** drop box. This displays a particular set of material groups and types in the library. You can customize the Material Filters library if you want.

## To add a group:

To add a group:

- Select Edit > Add Group, or right-click in the upper pane and select Add Group.
- 2. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

## To rename a group:

To rename a group:

- 1. Select the group in the upper pane.
- Select Edit > Rename Group, or right-click and select Rename Group.
- 3. Type the new name, then press ENTER.

#### To delete a group:

To delete a group:

- 1. Select the group in the upper pane.
- Select Edit > Delete Group, or right-click and select Delete Group.

**Note**: A group cannot be deleted if it contains materials.

#### To add a new material:

To add a new material:

- 1. In the upper pane, select the group you want to add the material to.
- Select Edit > Add Material, or right-click in the material list and select Add Material.
- 3. In the **Material Properties** dialog, specify the name and properties of the material, then click **OK**.

#### To edit a material:

To edit a material:

- 1. Select the material to edit.
- Select Edit > Edit Material, or right-click and select Edit Material.
- 3. Edit the material properties in the **Material Properties** dialog.

#### To delete a material:

To delete a material:

- 1. Select the material to delete.
- Select Edit > Delete Material, or right-click and select Delete Material.

**Note**: If the material is being used by an element, it cannot be deleted. In this case, a dialog appears telling you this. If you want to see a list of which elements are using the material, click **Yes**.

## **Editing Material Properties**

When you are adding or editing a material in the materials library, you need to specify the material's properties. These properties determine the texture or color is used to display an element in the Rendered or Rendered Outline display mode, and the texture characteristics (for example, how it interacts with light). Adjusting these properties can help you achieve photorealistic results in 3D RealView renderings.

#### To edit the properties of a material:

1. Select the material to edit in the materials library.

- Select Edit > Edit Material, or click the preview swatch.
- Edit the properties in the Material Properties dialog. The properties are described below. <u>Properties Tab</u>

**Material Type**. Determines the luminance or reflectance of the surface. When you choose a material type, only those settings that apply to that type are available for editing.

Choose one of the following:

*Generic*. Material used to simulate most surface types. Lets you define each of the available factors (Opacity, Specular, Reflection, etc.) without the restriction of any particular lighting model.

*Diffuse*. Simulates a rough or matte material that appears similarly bright from all viewing directions. Suited for materials such as brick or matte paint.

*Lambert*. Simulates a matte or non-shiny surface with no specular highlights. Ideal for materials such as chalk, pottery, matte paint, or unpolished surfaces.

*Phong*. Simulates a shiny surface with specular highlights. Commonly used for materials such as polished wood floors, and metals.

**Energy Preservation**. Refers to the notion that the outgoing energy cannot be greater than the incoming energy. Based on the combination of diffuse, opacity, and reflectivity components, this value will adjust automatically as you edit these properties. For more realistic materials, this value should be equal to or less than 1.0.

**Diffuse**. The color or texture that you want to apply to the material, as seen in 3D rendered or rendered outline display mode.

Enable the **Color** radio button to display the material in a solid color. Click the color swatch, then select the color you want to use in the **Color** dialog. Use the slider to adjust the luminance of the diffuse color.

Enable the **Texture** radio button to apply a texture to the surface. To select a texture or

specify texture mapping properties, click the texture swatch to display the **Texture Map** dialog. See *Editing Texture Mapping Properties* on page 619.

**Bump**. Simulates bumps and wrinkles through small displacements on the surface. The modified surface is then used for lighting calculations (for example, when using the Phong reflection model), giving the appearance of detail instead of a smooth surface.

To use the texture selected in the **Diffuse** section as the **Bump** texture, ensure that the lock icon next to the **Bump** texture swatch is closed. To select a different texture to use for the **Bump** texture, click the lock icon to unlock it, and then make a selection the **Texture Map** dialog, ensuring that you set the **Type** to **Normal Map**. See *Editing Texture Mapping Properties* on page 619.

To control the amount of bump mapping applied, edit the **Bump Scale** value. A value of 0 means no bump mapping will be applied.

**Emissive**. The amount of light given off by a material. Click the **Color** swatch to select the color of light emitted. Use the slider to adjust the level of emissivity. The more emissive a material is, the more self-luminous it appears.

**Opacity**. Determines how transparent the material is. Think of this as a mask being applied over the surface. Click the **Color** swatch to select a color for the opacity mask. Use the **Transparent/Opaque** slider to adjust the level of transparency. Use the **Dull/Glossy** slider to specify the glossiness of the opacity mask.

**Specular**. Reflection that creates highlights on materials, making them appear shiny. Click the **Color** swatch to select a color for the specular highlights. Use the slider to adjust the intensity of the highlight color. The higher the value, the lighter (and therefore shinier) the color. Use the **Dull/Shiny** slider to adjust the size of the highlights. **Reflection**. Refers to the throwing back of light by a surface. Used to simulate used to reflective objects like mirrors and shiny surfaces. Click the **Color** swatch to select a color for the reflected light. Use the slider to adjust the amount of reflection. Use the **Sharp/Blurred** slider to determine whether the surface reflects the selected color, or its surroundings. Note that the blurred effect may increase rendering time.

**IOR**. The Index of Refraction. This describes the way light bends when crossing the material surface. A value of 1.0 means the light will not change direction. Selecting a material from the drop box (e.g. *Air, Water, Crystal, Glass,* etc.) populates the **IOR** edit box with the Index of Refraction for that material. If you would prefer to specify a custom value, select *Custom* from the drop box, then specify a value in the **IOR** edit box.

**Fresnel**. When enabled, the reflection strength becomes dependent on the viewing angle of the surface. Some materials in nature (glass, etc.) reflect light in this manner. Note that the Fresnel effect depends on the Index of Refraction as well.

**Sphere/Box**. Specifies the way the 2D texture is applied to a 3D object. The basis of **Sphere** mapping is to treat the object as if it were a sphere. A single texture is applied to the whole object, and the texture mapping coordinates are generated based on the angle of the surface at each point. **Box** mapping creates a rectangular bounding box around the element, then applies a texture to each of the box's 6 sides. This would be useful for an element such as a sofa.

#### Information Tab

From the **Material Usage** drop box, select a usage for the material. You can access the Material Usages library by clicking _____ next to this drop box. Usages can be applied to material filters, which are used for filtering the materials list.

To apply an assembly to the material, click next to the **Assembly** drop box, then select an assembly from the **Assembly** library. Assemblies enable you to apply pricing information to a material so that it is accounted for in the project cost. You can then see the material pricing in the project estimate, or choose to ignore it if you wish. From the **Manufacturer** drop box, select the material's manufacturer. You can access the Manufacturers library by clicking _____ next to this drop box.

## Editing Texture Mapping Properties

If you are using a texture to represent a material, you can specify a number of settings that determine the appearance of the texture.

You can access texture mapping properties in the **Material Properties** dialog, by clicking a **Texture** swatch. (See *Editing Material Properties* on page 617.)

This displays the Texture Map dialog:



Here you can click **Select** to choose a BMP, JPG, TGA or PNG file from the Textures directory. If you want to use textures from outside sources, see *Using Textures from Outside Sources* on page 620 for guidelines.

If you are selecting a **Bump** texture, you must set the **Type** to **Normal Map**. Normal mapping is a technique used for simulating the lighting of bumps and dents. The **Standard** mapping type simply maps and wraps the pixels to a 3D surface.

If you want to change the scale of the texture, enter new values in the **Tile Height** and **Tile Width** edit boxes. Tile height refers to the height of one bitmap tile. The program uses tiled rendering to display images, meaning images are generated in pieces (tiles) vertically and horizontally. Changing the tile height of a brick material, for example, would make the bricks look taller. Changing the tile width would make the bricks look wider.

By default, the **Tile Height** and **Tile Width** have the Maintain Aspect Ratio lock closed. When the lock is closed, the Tile Width changes to match the Tile Height, and vice versa. This prevents distortion. If you want to specify different values for each, you need to open the Maintain Aspect Ratio lock by clicking on it.



To repeat the bitmap tile horizontally, enable the **Tile Horizontally** check box.

To repeat the bitmap tile vertically, enable the **Tile Vertically** check box.

If you want to make portions of a texture transparent, use a graphical editor to apply a magenta color to those areas that you want to make transparent. Then, in the **Texture Map** dialog, enable the **Make magenta color transparent** check box.

The **Texture Intensity** setting lets you control the brightness and contrast of the texture. Specify a value from 0.00 to 2.00.

# Using Textures from Outside Sources

When changing a material's texture assignment, you can use textures (bitmaps) from outside sources provided they are appropriately sized and not too large. As a rule, the texture's dimensions should be a power of 2:

2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024, etc.

If the dimensions are not powers of 2, the texture will be cropped (from the top and right side) to the next smallest size. For some textures, this will make it look like the texture is cut off.

For example, if your texture is  $500 \times 500$ , it will be cropped down to  $256 \times 256$ , since 500 is not a power of 2. If the texture were  $512 \times 512$ , however, it would not be cropped.

Cropping is not that important if the texture is a grid pattern (such as brick), since such a texture is uniform throughout. However, cropping can have an undesirable result if the texture is something like a tree.

# Specifying the Location of the Textures Directory

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, textures are located in the following directory:

C:\ProgramData\Cadsoft\Envisioneer\Textures

If you move your Textures directory to another location on your system, or would like to link to another Textures directory (such as one from an older version of the program), you will need to specify the location of the Textures directory so that textures appear properly in the program.

#### To specify the location of your Textures directory:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select the General tab.
- 3. In the *File Paths* area, click on the **Textures Directory** to select it.
- 4. Click **Modify**.

- In the Browse For Folder dialog, locate the folder containing your textures, then click OK.
- 6. Click OK in the Program Settings dialog.

## Material Usages Library

Material usages are a way of defining what a material is used for. For example, Carpet is typically used for floors and surfaces, but not for doors or walls. Most materials in the materials library have a usage assigned to them in their properties. Usages are used to create material filters, which can be used in the materials library to filter the display of materials.

You can add, edit and delete material usages to suit your needs.

By default, you can apply any material to an element. However, if you enable the Enforce Material Usages option in your program settings, you can prevent materials from being applied to an element for which the materials are not intended.

## **Enforcing Material Usages**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, you can apply any material to an element. However, if you enable the Enforce Material Usages option in your program settings, you can prevent materials from being applied to an element for which the materials are not intended. For example, you would be warned if you tried to apply a brick material to a roof.

#### To enforce material usages:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click the Program Settings button on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, select **Building Aids** in the left column.
- 3. Enable the **Enforce Material Usages** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

If the Enforce Material Usages option is enabled and you try to apply a material to an element for which it is not intended, the **Material Usage Conflict** dialog appears. At this point you can click **Yes** to apply the material anyway, or click **No** to select another material to apply.

**Note**: Materials are assigned usages in their properties. Usages are defined in the Material Usages Library.

# Customizing the Material Usages Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Material usages are a way of defining what a material is used for. For example, Carpet is typically used for floors and surfaces, but not for doors or walls. Most materials in the materials library have a usage assigned to them in their properties. Usages are used to create *material filters*, which can be used in the materials library to filter the display of materials.

You can add, edit and delete material usages to suit your needs.

## To access the Material Usages library through the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button file file on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Material Usages.

## To access the Material Usages library through a material:

- 1. Select the material in the Materials library, then right-click and select **Edit Material**.
- 2. In the Material Properties dialog, click next to the Material Usage drop box.

#### To add a new usage:

 Select Edit > Add Material Usage, or rightclick in the Material Usages window and select Add Material Usage.

#### To edit an existing usage:

 Select it in the list, then select Edit > Edit Material Usage, or right-click in the Material Usages window and select Edit Material Usage.

#### To define a usage:

- 1. In the **Material Usage Properties** dialog, specify or edit the usage name in the **Name** edit box.
- To select or de-select elements to include in the usage, just click on them. Elements marked with a red 'X' will not be included.
- Click OK to return to the Material Usages library.

#### To delete a usage from the library:

- Select it, then select Edit > Delete Material Usage, or right-click and select Delete Material Usage.
- To view the properties of an existing usage:
- Select the usage, then select Edit > View Material Usage, or right-click and select View Material Usage.
- 2. Click **OK**.

## Material Filters Library

Material filters are used in the materials library to filter the materials list according to specific usages. For example, the *Flooring* filter will list material types such as carpet, tile, concrete and wood. This can make it easier to find the material you're looking for when editing materials or using the Materials Paintbrush.

You can edit a material filter by selecting the usages that you want it to include. You can also add or delete material filters.

# Filtering or Sorting the Materials Library

You can use a filter in the materials library to filter the materials list according to specific usages. For example, the Flooring filter will list material types such as carpet, tile, concrete and wood. This can make it easier to find the material you're looking for when editing materials or using the Materials Paintbrush.

#### To filter the materials library:

 In the Materials library, make a selection from the **Filter** drop box.

## To Sort the Materials:

1. Select the Material Sort button. aZ

2. Select from either of the selections listed to sort the materials alphabetically, chronologically or by popularity.

~	Alphabetical A->Z
	Alphabetical Z->A
	Newest to Oldest
	Oldest to Newest
	Usage: most popular

# Customizing the Material Filters Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Material filters are used in the materials library to filter the materials list according to specific usages. For example, the Flooring filter will list material types such as carpet, tile, concrete and wood. This can make it easier to find the material you're looking for when editing materials or using the Materials Paintbrush. You can add and edit material filters in the Material Filters library to suit your needs.

#### To customize the Material Filters library:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Material Filters.
- To add a new filter, select Edit > Add Material Filter, or right-click in the Material Filters window and select Add Material Filter.
- To edit an existing filter, select it in the list, then select Edit > Edit Material Filter, or right-click in the Material Filters window and select Edit Material Filter.
- In the Material Filter Properties dialog, you can specify or edit the filter name in the Name edit box.
- 6. To select or de-select usages, just click on them. Usages marked with a green check mark will be included in the filter. For more information about usages, see *Customizing the Material Usages Library* on page 621.
- Click **OK** to return to the **Material Filters** library.

- To delete a filter from the library, select it, then select Edit > Delete Material Filter, or right-click and select Delete Material Filter.
- To view the properties of an existing filter, select it, then select Edit > View Material Filter, or right-click and select View Material Filter.
- 10. Click **OK**.

## Patterns Library

The Patterns library contains an excellent selection of pre-defined patterns that you can apply to materials, and use when creating hatching. Patterns are displayed when you set your display mode to Patterned.

You can create, edit and import patterns to suit your needs. Each pattern has a set of properties that determine its appearance, such as the number of lines, line pattern definition, angle, and offset.

## Customizing the Patterns Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The patterns library contains an excellent selection of pre-defined patterns that you can apply to materials. You can create, edit and import patterns to suit your needs.

## To access the patterns library through the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button file file on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Patterns.

## To access the patterns library through an element:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. In the properties dialog, select the Appearance tab.
- 3. In the *Pattern* pane, click the pattern swatch or the **Select** button.

## To add a pattern:

 Select Edit > Add Pattern, or right-click in the Patterns window and select Add Pattern. 2. Define the pattern properties, then click **OK**.

## To edit a pattern:

- 1. Select the pattern in the list.
- 2. Select **Edit > Edit Pattern**, or right-click in the Patterns window and select **Edit Pattern**.
- 3. Define the pattern properties, then click **OK**.

#### To delete a pattern from the patterns list:

- 1. Select the pattern in the list.
- Select Edit > Delete Pattern, or right-click and select Delete Pattern, or simply click the Delete key on your keyboard.

**Note**: You cannot delete the pre-existing patterns that come with the program — only those that you have created or imported.

## To import a pattern (PAT file):

- 1. Click Load.
- 2. In the **Open** dialog, locate the PAT file you want to import, then click **Open**. The pattern is added to the patterns library.

**Note**: Some pattern files, such as those from applications like AutoCAD®, can be compound pattern files. If importing a compound pattern file, you may see a number of patterns added to your patterns list.

## **Editing a Pattern**

You can edit a pattern's scale and line definition. **To edit a pattern:** 

- 1. In the Patterns library, select the pattern you want to edit.
- 2. To edit the scale of a pattern, enter a value in the **Scale** edit box. A value of 2 doubles the original scale, while a value of .5 halves the original scale.
- 3. To edit the pattern's line definition, fill out the fields in the *Pattern Definition* pane.

**No. of Lines**. The number of lines that will repeat in the pattern. Usually, this will be 1 or 2, but it could be more depending on the complexity of the pattern.

Edit Line. The line you are currently editing.

**Definition**. Generally, the segment lengths and spaces in the line's pattern.

A single value (other than 0) creates a solid line.



### No. of Lines: 2

Line Definition: 1.00 (both lines) Angle: 45° (line 1) and 135° (line 2) Offset: 20 (both lines)

No. of Lines: 2 Line Definition: 1 (both sides) Angle: 45 deg. (line 1), 135 deg. (line 2) Offset: 20 (both lines)

For dashed patterns, segments and spaces can be different lengths, but spaces must be preceded by a negative sign to indicate they are spaces.

For example, a definition of 20,-5,10,-5 (in Metric) creates the following pattern: 20 mm dash, 5 mm space, 10 mm dash, 5 mm space.



No. of Lines: 1 Line Definition: 20,-5,10,-5 Angle: 45°

Offset: 5

No. of Lines: 1 Line Definition: 20,-5,10,-5 Angle: 45 Offset: 5

**X Origin**. The point on the X axis the line passes through.

**Y Origin**. The point on the Y axis the line passes through.

Angle. The angle of the line in degrees.

Offset. The spacing between lines as the line is repeated (offset) parallel to the original throughout the pattern.

Shift. The distance each offset line is shifted (left or right) from the origin of the previous line. This creates a staggered effect.



No. of Lines: 1

Line Definition: 10,-5 Angle: 0º

Offset: 5



No. of Lines: 1 Line Definition: 10,-5

Angle: 0 Offset: 5

Shift: 5

## Manufacturers Library

The Manufacturers library contains several manufacturers of materials found in the materials library. You can add manufacturers to the library, as well as edit and delete existing manufacturers. Manufacturer information includes the manufacturer name, logo and contact information. You can then attach manufacturer information to elements and materials.

You can choose to display manufacturer logos in the catalog, on the property pages of elements, and in the Materials dialog.

## Setting Up the Manufacturers Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | **Construction Suite** 

The manufacturers library contains several manufacturers of materials found in the materials library. You can add manufacturers to the library, as well as edit and delete existing manufacturers. Each manufacturer has name, logo and contact information. You can then attach manufacturer information to elements and materials.

## To access the manufacturers library directly:

1. Select File > Catalogs > Manufacturers. Or, open the Library Manager and select Libraries > Manufacturers.

## To access the manufacturer's library through an element:

- Access the element's properties.
- 2. In the properties dialog, select the Quantity tab.
- 3. Click next to the **Manuf** edit box.

#### To access the manufacturers library through a material:

- 1. Select the material in the Materials library, then right-click and select Edit Material.
- 2. In the Material Properties dialog, click next to the Manufacturer drop box.

## To add a new manufacturer to the list:

1. Select Edit > Add Manufacturer, or rightclick in the list window and select Add Manufacturer.

#### To edit an existing manufacturer:

- Select the manufacturer in the list, then select Edit > Edit Manufacturer, or right-click and select Edit Manufacturer.
- 2. In the **Manufacturer Properties** dialog, fill out the name and contact information fields. To select a logo if you have one, click inside the Logo pane, then select the logo file in the **Open** dialog. You can use JPG, BMP and TGA files.
- 3. Click **OK** to return to the **Manufacturers** dialog.
- To delete a manufacturer, select it in the list:
- 1. Select Edit > Delete Manufacturer, or rightclick and select Delete Manufacturer.

## Attaching Manufacturer Information to an Element

You can attach manufacturer information to an element in the catalog, or in the drawing. You can then view the manufacturer information any time you are viewing the element's properties.

#### To attach manufacturer information to an element:

- 1. Access the element's properties.
- 2. In the properties dialog, select the Quantity tab.
- 3. Click _____ next the **Manuf:** edit box.
- 4. In the **Manufacturers** dialog, select the manufacturer you want to attach to the element. You can add or edit manufacturers if necessary.
- 5. Click **OK**.

**Note**: Attaching a manufacturer to an element in your drawing applies the information to that particular instance of the element only. Other instances or future insertions of the element are unaffected.

## Attaching Manufacturer Information to a Material

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can attach manufacturer information to materials in your materials library. You can then view the manufacturer information any time you are viewing the material's properties.

#### To attach manufacturer information to a material:

- 1. Access the Materials library.
- Select the material that you want to edit, then select Edit > Edit Material, or right-click and select Edit Material, or simply click on the swatch.
- 3. In the **Material Properties** dialog, click the manufacturer drop box and select the desired manufacturer from the list.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Displaying Manufacturer Logos in the Catalog and Property Pages

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have attached manufacturer information to elements or materials, and that information includes logos, you can choose to display the logos in the catalog, on the property pages of elements, and in the Materials dialog. The logo appears above the preview of the element or material.

#### To display manufacturer logos:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Tool Display* area, enable the **Manufacturer Logos** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## **Text Styles Library**

A text style determines the font, style, size and color of the text it is applied to. The Text Styles library is accessible from the Text dialog whenever you are inserting text in your drawing.

You can add your own text styles to the Text Styles library as well as edit and delete the existing text styles.

## Customizing the Text Styles Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add your own text styles to the text styles library as well as edit and delete the existing text styles.

#### To customize the text styles library:

 If you are currently in the **Text** dialog, click the **Text Style** button. If you are not currently in the **Text** dialog you can launch it by selecting a Text tool.

For direct access to text styles library, select File > Catalogs > Library Manager. In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Text Styles.

- To add a new text style to the list, select Edit
   Add Text Style, or right-click in the text style window and select Add Text Style.
- To edit an existing text style, select it in the list, then select Edit > Edit Text Style, or right-click and select Edit Text Style. You can also click inside the lower pane of the Text Styles dialog.
- 4. In the **Text Style Properties** dialog, type a name for the text style in the **Name** edit box.
- 5. From the **Font** drop box, select a font to use.
- From the Font Style drop box, select a style for the font. Choices can include Regular, *Italic*, Bold, and *Bold Italic*.
- 7. In the **Height** edit box, specify the desired text height.
- Click the Color swatch to access the Color dialog, where you can select a color for the text.
- 9. Click **OK** to return to the **Text Styles** dialog.
- To delete an existing text style, select it in the list, then select Edit > Delete Text Style, or right-click in the style window and select Delete Text Style.
- 11. Click **OK**.

## **Dimension Styles Library**

A dimension style determines the appearance of the dimension it is applied to. You can add, edit and delete dimension styles in the Dimension Styles library to suit your needs.

Dimension styles have a variety of customizable properties that define the dimension line, extension lines, leader, and dimension text.

# Customizing the Dimension Styles Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add your own dimension styles to the dimension styles library as well as edit and delete the existing dimension styles.

#### To customize the dimension styles library:

 If you have inserted dimensions in your current project, you can access the dimension styles library by selecting a dimension, then right-clicking and selecting Change Style. If you do not have dimensions inserted yet you can select Settings > Current Dimension Style and click Select in the Current Dimension Style dialog.

For direct access to the dimension styles library, select File > Catalogs > Library Manager. In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Dimension Styles.

- To add a new dimension style to the list, select Edit > Add Dimension Style, or rightclick in the dimension style window and select Add Dimension Style.
- To edit an existing dimension style, select it in the list, then select Edit > Edit Dimension Style, or right-click and select Edit Dimension Style. You can also click inside the lower pane of the Dimension Styles dialog.
- 4. In the **Dimension Style Properties** dialog, type a name for the dimension style in the **Name** edit box.
- 5. Define the dimension style. More
- 6. To delete an existing dimension style, select it in the list, then select **Delete Dimension**

**Style**, or right-click in the style window and select **Delete Dimension Style**.

7. Click **OK**.

## **Dimension Style Properties**

#### Anatomy of a Dimension

## Dimension Line Goes from the dimension

text outward to indicate the size of the dimension.

Arrow, Tick or Dot — Shows where the dimension line ends.



#### Dimension tab

**Arrow Type**. You can select the type of symbol you want displayed at the ends of the dimension line. Choose an arrow, dot or tick for your arrow type.



The properties below the Arrow Type selection window (Extension Offset, Baseline Offset, etc.) vary depending on the arrow type selected. As you make different selections, the dimension updates in the preview window.

a - Extension Offset		1/8''
b - Dimension Lap		1/8''
c - Extension Lap		1/8''
d - Tick Width		1/8''
Baseline Offset		1"
a - Extension Offset	1/8''	
b - Dimension Lap	1/8"	
c - Extension Lap	1/8"	
d - Tick Width 1/8"		
Baseline Offset	1"	

Some of the common properties include:

**Extension Offset**. The distance between the end of the extension line and the object being dimensioned.

**Dimension Lap**. The distance the dimension line extends past the ends of the dimension. (The "ends" of the dimension are where the dimension line and extension lines intersect.)

**Extension Lap**. The distance the extension lines extend past the dimension line.

**Baseline Offset**. The distance between dimensions when the Baseline Dimension tool is used.

## Leader tab

**Arrow Type**. You can specify the type of symbol you want to display at the end of leaders. (Leaders are used with the Text with Leader tool.) Choose an arrow, dot or tick for your arrow type.



The properties below the Arrow Type selection window (Arrow Length, Landing Gap, Leader Position, etc.) vary depending on the arrow type selected. As you make different selections, the dimension updates in the preview window.

	a - Arrow Length		1/16"		*
b - Arrow Thickness		1/4"			
	c - Landing Gap		1/2"		
	Leader Position			Middle	
3	a - Arrow Length	1/16"			
ł	o - Arrow Thickness	1/4"			
c - Landing Gap		1/2"			
l	Leader Position		Middle		

Common properties include:

**Landing Gap**. The distance between the end of the leader line and the object being annotated.

**Leader Position**. The justification of the leader in relation to the text (choose *Top*, *Middle* or *Bottom*). For example, a *Top* leader position aligns the leader with the top of the text.

<u>Text tab</u>
Text Style... Click to select a style for the dimension text. A text style determines the font, font style, text height and color of text.

#### **Vertical Text Position**

This is the vertical position of the dimension text relative to the dimension line.

**Vertically Centered**: Text is placed inside the dimension line.

**Horizontal Text**: Forces the dimension text to always be horizontal, regardless of the dimension line's angle.

**Above Dimension Line**: Text is placed above the dimension line.

**Distance**: Distance between the text and the dimension line when placing text above the dimension line.

### **Horizontal Text Position**

This is the position of the dimension text relative to the ends of the dimension line.

**Centered**: Centers the text inside the dimension line.

**Distance from first end**: Places the text a specific distance from the first end of the dimension. Specify the distance in the *Distance* edit box.

**Distance from the second end**: Places the text a specific distance from the second end of the dimension. Specify the distance in the *Distance* edit box.

### Units

**Override system units**: Uses the unit of measure specified in the Dimension Style Properties dialog instead of the unit of measure specified in the Program Settings.

**Units\Distance**: The units used for dimensions that measure a distance.

**Type**: Choose from Feet-Inches, Millimeters, Centimeters, Meters or Inches.

**Precision**: For Feet-Inches, the choices are whole units (0, 1/2, 1/4 and so on). For metric units, the choices are number of decimal places you can use.

Units\Angle: The units used for angular dimensions.

**Type**: Choose either Decimal Degrees or Degrees/Minutes/Seconds.

**Precision**: Choose the number of decimal places you would like angular dimensions to have (if using Decimal Degrees).

### Line Styles tab

Refers to the line styles of the dimension line, extension lines and arrows. You can select a different line style for the dimension line, extension lines and arrows. A line style determines the pattern, color and weight of a line.

To assign a different line style to a dimension component, select the component in the left pane, then click **Select** in the center pane to access the **Line Styles** dialog.

# Setting the Current Dimension Style in Model View

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

When you add dimensions to your drawing, they use the current dimension style, which by default is the Standard dimension style. You can select a different dimension style to be the current one if you want.

#### To set the current dimension style:

- 1. Select Settings > Current Dimension Style.
- 2. In the **Current Dimension Style** dialog, click the **Select** button..
- 3. In the **Dimension Styles** dialog, select the style you want to set as current.
- 4. Click **OK** in the **Dimension Styles** dialog.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Current Dimension Style** dialog.

### Line Styles Library

A line style defines the pattern, color and thickness of a line. The Line Styles library contains a wide selection of line styles that you can apply to elements, drafting objects, electrical wiring and dimension styles.

In the Line Styles library, line styles are listed in groups so you can organize and find them easily. You can add, rename and delete groups as needed.

You can add new line styles to the library, as well as edit and delete existing line styles.

### Customizing the Line Styles Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite A line style defines the pattern, color and thickness of a line. The line styles library contains a wide selection of line styles that you can apply to elements, drafting objects, electrical wiring and dimension styles. You can access the line styles library by editing the properties of an element, drafting object, wiring or dimension style, or through the Libraries menu in the Library Manager.

In the line styles library, line styles are listed in groups so you can organize and find them easily. You can add, rename and delete groups as needed. You can add new line styles to the library, as well as edit and delete existing line styles.

## To access the line styles library through the Library Manager:

To access the line styles library through the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button for on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Line Styles.

## To access the line styles library through an inserted element:

To access the line styles library through an inserted element:

- 1. Select the element.
- 2. Right-click and select Properties.
- 3. In the properties dialog, select the Appearance tab.
- 4. Click the **Select** button in the *Linestyle* area.

## To access the line styles library through a drafting object:

To access the line styles library through a drafting object:

- 1. Select the drafting object (line, circle, etc.).
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

## To access the line styles library through inserted electrical wiring:

To access the line styles library through inserted electrical wiring:

- 1. Select the wiring in your drawing.
- Right-click and select **Properties**, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.

## To access the line styles library by editing a dimension style:

To access the line styles library by editing a dimension style:

- Select Settings > Dimension Styles. Or, select a dimension in your drawing, then right-click and select Change Style.
- 2. In the Dimension Styles dialog, Edit > Edit Dimension Style.
- 3. In the **Dimension Style Properties** dialog, select the Line Styles tab, then click **Select**.

### To add a group:

To add a group:

- Right-click an existing group and select Add Group, or select Edit > Add Group. An entry is added to the list.
- 2. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

### To rename a group:

To rename a group:

- 1. Select the group in the upper pane.
- Right-click and select Rename Group, or select Edit > Rename Group.
- 3. Type the new name and press ENTER.

### To delete a group:

To delete a group:

- 1. Select the group to delete.
- Right-click and select **Delete Group**, or select Edit > Delete Group.

**Note**: A group cannot be deleted if it contains line styles.

### To add or edit a line style:

To add or edit a line style:

- In the upper pane, select the group that you want to add the line style to, or that contains the line style to edit.
- To add a new line style, select Edit > Add Line Style, or right-click and select Add Line Style.
- To edit an existing line style, select it in the list, then select Edit > Edit Line Style, or right-click and select Edit Line Style.
- 4. In the **Line Style Properties** dialog, define the line style's properties.

**Name**. Type a name for the line style as you would like it to appear in the list of line styles.

**Line Type**. Click the browse button to select a line type (continuous, dashed, etc.) from the line type library. You can customize the line types library if needed.

**Line Weight**. Click the browse button to select a line weight (light, heavy, etc.) from the line weight library. You can also customize the line weights library.

**Color**. Click the color swatch to select a color for the line from the Color dialog.

5. Click **OK**.

### To delete a line style:

To delete a line style:

- 1. Select the line style to delete.
- Select Edit > Delete Line Style, or right-click and select Delete Line Style.

If the line style is being used by an element, a dialog appears telling you this. You can click Yes to view a list of elements using the line style.

## Line Types Library

The term "line type" refers to the style of a line — dashed, continuous, dotted, etc. Line types are one of the properties that define a line style. Therefore, the Line Types library is accessible from the Line Styles library when you are defining a line style. You can also access the Line Types library when defining a layer.

The Line Types library contains a list of pre-defined line types that you can apply to line styles. You can add, edit or delete line types to suit your needs.

## Customizing the Line Types Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Line type refers to the style of a line (dashed, dotted, continuous, etc.). It is one of the properties of a line style and a layer. The Line Types library contains a list of pre-defined line types for your convenience. You can add or edit line types to suit your needs.

### To access the line types library:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager. You can also access the line types library while defining a line style or layer.
- In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Linetypes.

### To add a new line type:

To add a new line type:

 Select Edit > Add Item, or right-click in the Line Types window and select Add Item. A new entry is added to the list.

To edit a line type:

### To edit a line type:

- 1. Select the line type in the list.
- 2. In the **Name** edit box, type a name for the line type as you would like it to appear in the list of line types.
- 3. In the **Definition** edit box, edit the line type's definition. Lines are defined by a series of distances separated by commas. Each number represents the length of either a line segment or space. Positive numbers create a line segment of the specified length. Negative numbers create a space of the specified length. For example, a dashed line may have a definition like 1/4", -1/4".
- 4. Once you've edited the line type, click **OK**.

### To delete a line type from the list:

To delete a line type from the list:

- 1. Select the line type in the list.
- Right-click and select **Delete Item**, or select **Edit > Delete Item**.

**Note**: You cannot delete the existing, predefined line types because they are being used.

### Line Weights Library

Line weight refers to the thickness of a line, and is one of the properties of a line style. You can access the Line Weights library when defining a line style or a layer.

The Line Weights library contains a list of pre-defined line weights that you can apply to line styles. You can add, edit or delete line weights to suit your needs.

# Customizing the Line Weights Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Line weight refers to the thickness of a line, and is one of the properties of a line style, as well as a layer. You can add and edit line weights to suit your needs.

### To access the line weights library:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager. You can also access the line weights library while defining a line style or layer.
- 2. In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Lineweights.

### To add a new line weight:

To add a new line weight:

 Select Edit > Add Item, or right-click in the Line Weight window and select Add Item. A new entry is added to the list.

### To edit a line weight:

To edit a line weight:

- 1. Select the line weight in the list.
- 2. In the **Name** edit box, type a name for the line weight as you would like it to appear in the list of line weights.
- 3. In the **Thickness** edit box, type the desired thickness for the line.
- 4. Once you've edited the line weight, click **OK**.

### To delete a line weight from the list:

To delete a line weight from the list:

- 1. Select the line weight in the list.
- Right-click and select **Delete Item**, or select **Edit > Delete Item**.

**Note**: You cannot delete the existing, predefined line weights because they are being used.

### **Enabling/Disabling Line Weights**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, line weights are not displayed. All lines are displayed using the same thickness. If you enable the Show Line Weights option, line weights will display in your drawing area as well as in printouts. **To enable or disable the display of line weights:** 

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Linework* area, check or uncheck the **Show Line Weights** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

### Layers Library

Layers control the color, style and weight of lines used to display objects in 2D plan view. Layers are assigned to components in an element's properties. They are also used to lay out drawing information in Worksheet View.

The Layers Library contains a wide variety of predefined layers for your convenience. You can add, edit, rename and delete layers in the Layers Library. Layers defined in the Layers Library are saved to the catalog and will be available in all projects. If you want to create or edit layers that are specific to the current project only, go to Worksheet View and select **View > Layer Properties**.

### **Customizing the Layers Library**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can add, edit, rename and delete layers in the Layers Library. When you define a layer you can specify its name, color, line type and line weight. Layers defined in the Layers Library are saved to the catalog and will be available in all projects. Layers can be assigned to element components on the element's Appearance property page. Layers are also used to organize information in Worksheet View.

## To access the layers library through the Library Manager:

To access the layers library through the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button in on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Layers.

### To access the layers library through an element:

To access the layers library through an element:

- Double-click an element in your drawing or in the catalog panel.
- 2. In the properties dialog, select the Appearance tab.
- 3. Click the **Layer** drop box, and then select *Other* in the layer list.

## To access the layers library through the catalog panel:

To access the layers library through the catalog panel:

- Right-click in the catalog panel and select Library Manager.
- In the Library Manager select Libraries > Layers.

### To add or edit a layer:

To add or edit a layer:

To create a new layer, click
 Add , or right-click in the layer list and select Add. You can also click

More Options...

and select **Add**. A new layer called *Layer 1* is added below the currently selected layer.

2. To edit an existing layer, select it in the list, then click on the properties that you want to change. These are described below.

**Name**. The name of the layer as you would like it to appear in the list of layers. Double-click to edit, or select it and click

Rename Rename

**Color**. The color of objects on the layer. Click the box to display a list of colors. Select the desired color, or select *Other* to access the **Color** dialog.

**Line Type**. The style of line used to display objects on the layer. Click the box to display a list of line types. Select the desired line type, or select *Other* to access the **Line Types** dialog.

**Line Weight**. The weight of the line used to display objects on the layer. Click the box to display a list of line weights. Select the

desired line weight, or select *Other* to access the **Line Weights** dialog.

#### To delete a layer:

To delete a layer:

- 1. Select the later to delete.
- Click Delete Delete, or right-click and select Delete.

### **Light Source Library**

The Light Source library contains an assortment of light sources, mainly fluorescent and incandescent light bulbs, that can be applied to lighting fixtures.

Light sources are organized by group in the library so you can find them easily. You can add, rename or delete groups in the Light Source library.

Each light source has an .IES photometric data file assigned to it. It also has a Scale setting that determines the light's intensity, and a Color setting that determines the color of the light. You can add, edit and delete light sources in the Light Source library to suit your needs. Most manufacturers of lighting equipment provide downloadable .IES photometric data files free of charge on their web sites for use in lighting calculations.

# Customizing the Light Source Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The light source library contains an assortment of light sources, mainly fluorescent and incandescent light bulbs, that can be applied to lighting fixtures.

You can customize the light source library by adding and editing light sources. Most manufacturers of lighting equipment provide downloadable .IES photometric data files free of charge on their web sites for use in lighting calculations. You can also define a light as a Point or Spot light. Once you've added a light source to your library, you can edit its intensity and color if you want.

Light sources are listed in groups so you can organize and find them easily. You can create, rename and delete groups.

## To access the light source library in the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Light Sources.

## To access the light source library through an inserted light fixture:

- 1. Select the light fixture.
- Right-click and select Properties, or select Edit > Modify Elements > Properties.
- 3. In the Lights dialog, select the Lights tab.
- 4. Click **Add** or **Edit** to access the light source library.

### To add a group:

To add a group:

- Right-click an existing group and select Add Group, or select Edit > Add Group. An entry is added to the list.
- 2. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

### To rename a group:

To rename a group:

- 1. Select the group to rename.
- Right-click and select Rename Group, or select Edit > Rename Group.
- 3. Type the new name and press ENTER.

### To delete a group:

To delete a group:

- 1. Select the group to delete.
- Right-click and select **Delete Group**, or select Edit > Delete Group.

**Note**: A group cannot be deleted if it contains light sources.

To add or edit a light source:

### To add or edit a light source:

- 1. Select the group you want to add the light source to, or that contains the light source.
- To add a new light source, select Edit > Add Light, or right-click and select Add Light.
- To edit an existing light source, select it in the list, then select Edit > Edit Light, or rightclick and select Edit Light.

4. In the **Light Source Properties** dialog, define the light source's properties.

**Name**. Type a name for the light source as you would like it to appear in the list of light sources.

**Type**. Choose either *IES*, *Point* or *Spot*. **IES** files are photometric data files provided by lighting manufacturers for the purposes of lighting calculations. A **Point** light spreads its light out equally in all directions. A **Spot** light spreads light in one direction from its source to the target, and there is no light behind the source. The spot light sheds its light only within a limited cone that grows wider as light moves further away from its origin. A good example of a spot light is a flashlight.



**Load**. If **IES** is selected as the type, click **Load** to select an *.ies file to apply to the

light source. Many *.ies files can be found in the program's Lights folder.

**Intensity (lumens)**. The level of brightness, measured in lumens. Lumens measure how much light you are getting from a bulb. More lumens means a brighter light; fewer lumens means a dimmer light. This value can be edited for **Point** and **Spot** lights only.

**Intensity scale**. This is the intensity of the light expressed as a percentage. For example, if the light source is a 60 Watt bulb, a value of 50% would make the bulb function like a 30 Watt bulb.

**Spot light cone angle**. Available if the light source type is set to **Spot**, this value determines the width of the cone in which light is spread. A wider angle means that the light has a larger spread.

**Color temperature**. A measurement in degrees kelvin that indicates the hue of a light source. Color temperatures over 5,000K are called cool colors (bluish white), while lower color temperatures (2,700–3,000 K) are called warm colors (yellowish white through red).

**Choose color**. To change the color of the light, click the color swatch and select a color from the Color dialog.

5. Click **OK**.

### To delete a light source:

To delete a light source:

- 1. Select the light source in the list.
- Right-click and select **Delete Light**, or select **Edit > Delete Light**, or just press the Delete key on your keyboard.

### Specifying the Location of the Light Source Directory

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, light sources are located in the following directory:

C:\ProgramData\Cadsoft\Envisioneer\Lights

If you move your Lights directory to another location on your system, you will need to specify the location of the Lights directory so that light sources can be accessed by the program.

## To specify the location of your light source directory:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. On the General pane, click on the **Lights Dir**ectory in the *File Paths* area.
- 3. Click **Modify**.
- 4. In the **Browse For Folder** dialog, locate the folder containing your light sources, then click **OK**.
- 5. Click **OK** in the **Program Settings** dialog.

### **Profiles Library**

The term "profile" refers to the outline of an object when viewed from the side. Profiles can be applied to members and columns.

In the Profiles library, profiles are listed in groups so you can organize and find them easily. You can add, rename and delete groups as needed.

You can edit profiles in the Profiles library, but it is easier to create a new profile. You create a profile by drawing a series of lines and/or arcs, and specifying the angle of each segment. You can also draw a profile using the Polyline tool in Worksheet View and then export the polyline to the Profiles library.

You can delete unwanted profiles from the library if you want.

### **Customizing the Profiles Library**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The profiles library contains a variety of custom profiles that can be applied to members and columns. In the profiles library, profiles are listed in groups so you can organize and find them easily. You can add, rename and delete groups as needed. You can add new profiles to the library, as well as edit and delete existing profiles.

You can access the profiles library by editing the properties of a member or column, or through the Libraries menu in the Library Manager.

To access the profiles library through the Library Manager:

To access the profiles library through the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Profiles.

## To access the profiles library through an inserted member or column:

To access the profiles library through an inserted member or column:

- 1. Select the column or member in your drawing, then right-click and select **Properties**.
- 2. In the *Type* area of the Basic property page, scroll over and select **Custom**.
- 3. Click the **Select Profile** button at the bottom of the dialog.

### To access the profiles library through the catalog:

To access the profiles library through the catalog:

- Select the column or member in the catalog panel, then right-click and select Edit Element.
- 2. In the *Type* area of the Basic property page, scroll over and select **Custom**.
- 3. Click the **Select Profile** button at the bottom of the dialog.

### To add a group:

To add a group:

- Right-click an existing group and select Add Group, or select Edit > Add Group. An entry is added to the list.
- 2. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

### To rename a group:

To rename a group:

- 1. Select the group to edit.
- Right-click and select Rename Group, or select Edit > Rename Group.
- 3. Type the new name and press ENTER.

### To delete a group:

### To delete a group:

- 1. Select the group to delete.
- Right-click and select **Delete Group**, or select Edit > Delete Group.

**Note**: A group cannot be deleted if it contains profiles.

### To add a new profile:

To add a new profile:

- 1. Select the group that you want to add the profile to.
- Select Edit > Add Profile, or right-click and select Add Profile. See *Creating Custom Profiles* on page 635.

### To edit a profile:

To edit a profile:

- 1. Select the profile that you would like to edit.
- Select Edit > Edit Profile, or right-click and select Edit Profile. See Editing a Custom Profile on page 637.

### To delete a profile:

To delete a profile:

- 1. Select the profile that you would like to delete.
- Select Edit > Delete Profile, or right-click and select Delete Profile.

### **Creating Custom Profiles**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can create your own profiles for members, columns and strip footings. To create a custom profile you simply define the length and angle of each of the profile's segments. Segments can be straight or curved.

### To add a profile to the profiles library:

- 1. Access the profiles library. How to
- In the Profiles dialog, right-click in the *Pro*files window and select Add Profile. Or, select Edit > Add Profile.
- In the Profile Properties dialog, enter a name for the profile in the Name edit box. You are now ready to start defining each of the profile's segments. Each segment is automatically joined to the previous one to help you form the shape.
- 4. To draw a line, click in the *Properties* area, then enter a length in the **Distance** edit box and a direction in the **Angle** edit box.

Click **Insert** to insert the line in the preview window.

Note that the segment lengths you specify are simply units (not inches or millimeters) and have no relation to the actual member size — they determine how long one segment is in relation to another.

- 5. To draw an arc, click Construction of the arc in the **Distance** edit box. This is the distance between the start point and end point. Enter a direction in the **Angle** edit box. Enter the radius for the curve of the arc in the **Radius** edit box, then select either *Left* or *Right* from the **Arc Direction** drop box to specify the direction in which you want the arc to curve from the start point. Click **Insert** to insert the arc in the preview window.
- To remove the last segment created, click Remove. Clicking Remove again continues to remove segments in reverse sequence.
- 7. To close the shape, click **Close**. A line is drawn from the end point of the last segment created to the start point of the first segment created.
- 8. When the profile is complete, click **OK**.

### Exporting a Polyline to the Profile Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can export any polyline or polygon that you have drawn or imported in Worksheet View to the profile library. You can then apply that profile to any member in your drawing or in the catalog. This tool is ideal for creating custom baseboards, crown moulding, chair rail and other types of trim, or any custom member.

Many moulding and millwork companies offer downloadable CAD drawings of their trim profiles on the Internet. You can import these into Envisioneer using the Import CAD File tool in Worksheet View provided they are in DWG or DXF format.

### To export a polyline to the profile library:

1. In Worksheet View, draw a polyline in the desired profile shape, or import a profile

using the Import CAD File tool. Note that the shape must be closed and cannot intersect itself. If the profile will be used for trim, make sure that the flat side is on the left and the shaped side is on the right.

- In Worksheet View, select File > Catalogs > Export Polyline to Profile Library.
- 3. Click on the polyline that you want to export to the profile library. Note that if the polyline is one that you imported, you may need to explode it first.
- 4. In the **Profile Properties** dialog, type a name for the profile in the **Name** edit box.

🥜 Profile Prop	erties		
Name:	Custom Profile		Overall Height
Properties			
Distance:	1.00	90	
Angle:	0.00	180 - 0	
Radius:	0.00	270	
Arc Directio	n: Right	-	
Insert	Remove	Close	
			1

🥜 Profile Propertie	5		
Name: Du	stom Profile		Overall Height: 589 Overall Width: 440
Properties			
Distance:	1.00	90	
Angle:	0.00	180 - 0	
Radius:	0.00	270	
Arc Direction:	Right	T	
Insert	Remove	Close	
			L

- 5. Click **OK**. The profile is added to the *Imported Profiles* group in the profile library.
- 6. In the **Profile Library** dialog, click **OK**.

### **Editing a Custom Profile**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can edit existing profiles by removing and redrawing segments.

### To edit an existing profile:

- 1. Access the profiles library. How to
- 2. In the **Profiles** dialog, select the profile that you would like to edit.
- Right-click in the *Profiles* window and select Edit Profile. Or, select Edit > Edit Profile.
- 4. Make your changes in the **Profile Properties** dialog. Note that you cannot select specific segments to edit. You can remove segments in reverse sequence (starting with the last one drawn) and then insert new segments.
- 5. Click **OK**.

**Note**: Due to the nature in which profiles are created, it may be easier to create a new profile rather than edit an existing one.

### Door Leafs Library

The Door Leafs library contains door leafs that can be applied to doors in the catalog or in your drawing. You can customize the door leafs library by adding or editing groups, and adding and editing door leafs. You add door leafs to the library by importing DWG, DXF, SKP or 3DS files.

# Customizing the Door Leafs Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Door Leafs library contains door leafs that can be applied to doors in the catalog or in your drawing.

You can add, rename and delete door leaf groups, and add new door leafs by importing a DWG, DXF, SKP or 3DS drawing. You can also edit and delete existing door leafs.

You can access the Door Leaf library by editing the properties of a door, or through the Libraries menu in the Library Manager.

## To access the Door Leafs library through the Library Manager:

To access the Door Leafs library through the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Door Leafs.

## To access the Door Leafs library through an inserted door:

To access the Door Leafs library through an inserted door:

- 1. Select the door in your drawing, then rightclick and select **Properties**.
- 2. Select the **Properties** tab, then in the *Type* area, scroll over and select **Custom**.

## To access the Door Leafs library through the catalog:

To access the Door Leafs library through the catalog:

- 1. Select a door in the catalog panel, then rightclick and select **Edit Element**.
- 2. Select the **Properties** tab, then in the *Type* area, scroll over and select **Custom**.

### To add a group:

To add a group:

 Right-click an existing group and select Add Group, or select Edit > Add Group. An entry is added to the list.

2. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

### To rename a group:

To rename a group:

- 1. Select the group to edit.
- Right-click and select Rename Group, or select Edit > Rename Group.
- 3. Type the new name and press ENTER.

### To delete a group:

- To delete a group:
- 1. Select the group to delete.
- Right-click and select **Delete Group**, or select Edit > Delete Group.

**Note**: A group cannot be deleted if it contains door leafs.

### To add a new door leaf:

To add a new door leaf:

- 1. Select the group that you want to add the door leaf to.
- Select Edit > Add Door Leaf, or right-click and select Add Door Leaf.
- 3. In the Door Leaf Properties dialog, click Import New Leaf.
- 4. Use the **Door Leaf Import Wizard** to import the door leaf. See *Importing a Custom Door Leaf* on page 638.

### To edit a door leaf:

### To edit a door leaf:

- 1. Select the door leaf that you would like to edit.
- Select Edit > Edit Door Leaf, or right-click and select Edit Door Leaf. See Editing Door Leaf Properties on page 639.

### To delete a door leaf:

To delete a door leaf:

- 1. Select the door leaf that you would like to delete.
- 2. Select **Edit > Delete Door Leaf**, or right-click and select **Delete Door Leaf**.

### Importing a Custom Door Leaf

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite You can use the **Door Leaf Import Wizard** to import a door leaf in DWG, DXF, SKP or 3DS format into the Door Leafs library. Once imported, you can apply the door leaf to any door in your drawing or catalog.

### To import a custom door leaf:

- 1. Access the Door Leafs library. How to
- Select the group that you want to add the door leaf to, then select Edit > Add Door Leaf, or right-click and select Add Door Leaf.
- 3. In the Door Leaf Properties dialog, click Import New Leaf.

Door Leaf Import Wizard



1. Give the new element a name	Custom Door Leaf
2. What type of door leaf do you want this to be?	Door Leaf
4. Select how you want the components created By Materials V	

- 4. In the **Door Leaf Import Wizard**, enter a name for the new door leaf as you would like it to appear in the library.
- Specify whether the door leaf is to be a Door Leaf or Cabinet Leaf. This ensures that the leaf will be properly mapped to the object, ensuring a realistic display in your drawing.
- 6. Click Select. In the Open dialog, select the file type that you want to import (DWG, DXF, SKP or 3DS), then locate and select the desired file. When you click Open, a preview of the door leaf appears in the preview pane. You can click and drag in the preview pane to rotate the door leaf, and right-click to access various viewing options.
- For DWG and DXF files, specify how you want the components created by making a selection from the drop box. You can choose from **Colors** or **Layers**. For 3DS and SKP files, the only selection available is **Materials**.
- 8. Click Next.
- 9. On the Orient your element screen, use the arrows to rotate the door so that it will be oriented correctly when inserted in a drawing. In most cases you want to make sure that the door is oriented vertically and sits flush with the wall.
- 10. Click Next.

- 11. The next screen lists the object's individual components. Specify which components you want to display or hide in 3D by clicking the appropriate eye icons.
  - tomponent is displayed
  - 😞 Component is not displayed

Enabling the **Show only selected component** check box displays only the currently selected component in the object preview. This helps you distinguish between the object's individual components.

To rename a component, double-click it, then type the new name and press Enter.

12. Click Finish.

### **Editing Door Leaf Properties**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can edit the name, type and component properties of a door leaf in the Door Leafs library.

### To edit a door leaf:

- 1. Access the Door Leafs library. How to
- 2. In the **Library Manager** dialog, select the door leaf that you would like to edit.
- Right-click in the *Door Leafs* window and select Edit Door Leaf. Or, select Edit > Edit Door Leaf.
- Make your changes in the Door Leaf Properties dialog.

**Name**. The name of the door leaf as it appears in the library.

**Leaf Type**. Select either **Door Leaf** or **Cabinet Leaf** to specify how the leaf will be used. This ensures that the leaf will be properly mapped to the object to which it will be applied.

**Components**. Specify which components you want to display or hide in 3D by clicking the appropriate eye icons.

tomponent is displayed

🚕 Component is not displayed

To rename a component, double-click it, then type the new name and press Enter.

5. Click **OK**.

## Assembly Library

Assemblies are items or parts that are linked to an element, but do not exist in the drawing. For example, a door may have a Lock Set assembly attached to it which includes a door lock and a set of hinges. A wall may have a Drywall assembly that includes drywall sheets, drywall screws, and paint. If an element has an assembly assigned to it in its properties, both the element and assembly items are reported in the project estimate by default.

Assemblies are stored in a library for your convenience. You can add, edit and delete assemblies in the library to suit your needs.

### Customizing the Assemblies Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The assemblies library contains a variety of predefined assemblies that you can customize. Assemblies contain parts and other non-graphical items that are associated with elements, but are not physically present in the drawing. For example, a door may have a Lock Set assembly attached to it which includes a door lock and a set of hinges. A wall may have a Drywall assembly that includes drywall sheets, drywall screws, and paint. If an element has an assembly attached to it in its properties, the parts in that assembly will be reported in the project estimate.

Assemblies are organized by element in the assemblies library. You can add, rename and delete groups as needed. You can add new assemblies to the library, as well as edit and delete existing assemblies.

You can access the assemblies library through an element's Quantity property page, or through the Library Manager.

## To access the assemblies library through the Library Manager:

To access the assemblies library through the Library Manager:

 Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.  In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Assembly.

## To access the assemblies library through an element's properties:

To access the assemblies library through an element's properties:

- Select an element in your drawing, then right-click and select **Properties**. Or, select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**, then select an element.
- 2. In the properties dialog, select the **Quantity** tab.
- In the Assemblies area, click S Add...
   Add....

### To add a group:

To add a group:

- Right-click an existing group and select Add Group, or select Edit > Add Group. An entry is added to the list.
- 2. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

### To rename a group:

To rename a group:

- 1. Select the group to edit.
- Right-click and select Rename Group, or select Edit > Rename Group.
- 3. Type the new name and press ENTER.

### To delete a group:

To delete a group:

- 1. Select the group to delete.
- Right-click and select **Delete Group**, or select Edit > Delete Group.

**Note**: A group cannot be deleted if it contains assemblies.

#### To add a new assembly:

To add a new assembly:

- 1. Select the group that you want to add the assembly to.
- Select Edit > Add Assembly, or right-click and select Add Assembly. See *Defining an Assembly* on page 641.

### To edit an assembly:

To edit an assembly:

- 1. Select the assembly that you would like to edit.
- Select Edit > Edit Assembly, or right-click and select Edit Assembly. See *Defining an Assembly* on page 641.

#### To delete an assembly:

To delete an assembly:

- 1. Select the assembly that you would like to delete.
- Select Edit > Delete Assembly, or right-click and select Delete Assembly.

### **Defining an Assembly**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Assemblies are parts or non-graphical items that are linked to an element, but do not exist in the drawing. For example, a door may have a Lock Set assembly attached to it which includes a door lock and a set of hinges. A wall may have a Drywall assembly that includes drywall sheets, drywall screws, and paint. If an element has assemblies attached to it in its properties, those assemblies will be reported in the project estimate.

Assemblies are stored in a customizable assemblies library. Defining an assembly involves selecting an element from the catalog, then specifying a formula to quantify it. For example, if you wanted to add a dead bolt to a door assembly, you would choose the Dead Bolt from the Parts category in the catalog, then specify a simple Count formula to quantify it since it is a single item of a preset size, and there is one per door.

#### To define an assembly in the assemblies library:

 Access the assemblies library. You can do this by selecting File > Catalogs > Library Manager and then Libraries > Assembly. From the Filter drop box, select the element type for which you want to define assemblies. You can also access the library from an element's Quantity page. Right-click the element and select Properties, then select the Quantity

tab. 🍓 Add... 🍓 Add... in the Assemblies area.

- 2. In the *Groups* pane of the assemblies library, select the group that you want to add an assembly to, or that contains the assembly that you want to edit.
- If you want to create a new assembly, select Edit > Add Assembly, or right-click in the Assembly pane and select Add Assembly. If you want to edit an existing assembly, select the assembly in the Assembly pane, then select Edit > Edit Assembly or right-click and select Edit Assembly.
- 4. Define the assembly in the **Edit Assembly** dialog.

Edit Assembly						
Name:						
Common Interior Wall - Drywall Both Sides						
Included Elements:						
Description	Calculated Quantity					
I Pound Drywall Screws	0.0095 * Interior Wall Area					
🗇 4x8 Drywall Sheet Count	Interior Wall Area / 32					
1/2" Standard Sheetrock Drywall	Interior Wall Area					
Paint	Interior Wall Area					

Common Interior Wall - Drywall Both S	ides			
iduded Elements:			송 Add.	솒 Remon
Description	Calculated Quantity	Units	Usage	Phase
1 Pound Drywall Screws	0.0095 * Interior Wall Area	LBS	< From Part >	< From Part >
4x8 Drywall Sheet Count	Interior Wall Area / 32	EA	< From Part >	< From Part >
1/2" Standard Sheetrock Drywall	Interior Wall Area	SF	< From Part >	< From Part >
Paint	Interior Wall Area	SF	< From Part >	< From Part >

To edit the name of the assembly, type or edit the name in the **Name** edit box.

To add an item to the assembly, click



Add... , then make a selection from the **Catalog Access** dialog. For example, if you wanted to add a dead bolt to a door assembly, you would select **Parts** from the filter at the top of the **Catalog Access** dialog, then select **Dead Bolt** in the Door Hardware folder.

To remove an item from the assembly, select the item in the list, then click

### 🖹 Remove... 🏠 Remove...

To define a formula for calculating the quantity of the item, click in the item's **Calculated Quantity** field, then click **Calculated Quantity** for wall a formula that quantifies the item correctly. For example, for wall insulation you might select the 'Exterior Wall Area' variable so that the quantity of insulation is reported in terms of square feet or square meters. See *Specifying Formulas* on page 642.

The unit of measure in the **Units** field is the unit of measure that will appear after the calculated quantity in the project estimate. This is taken from the Unit of Measure field on the part's Quantity property page.

To assign a usage to the item, click in the **Usage** field and make a selection from the drop box. Choices are **From Part**, **From Parent**, and **Library**. If **From Part** is selected, the *Usage* assigned to part on its Quantity property page is used. If **From Parent** is selected, the *Usage* assigned to the element to which the assembly is attached will be used. If you select **Library** in the *Usage* field, the **Usages** dialog appears and you can assign any usage you want to the item.

To assign a phase to the item, click in the **Phase** field and make a selection from the drop box. The choices for Phase are the same as the choices for Usage: **From Part, From Parent** and **Library**.

5. When you have finished defining the assembly, click **OK** to save your changes.

### **Specifying Formulas**

#### Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you are defining an assembly, or adding or editing a value field on the Records page of the Report Template dialog, you can choose to specify a formula for calculating the quantity of that item. Formulas are mathematical equations (e.g. Count x Price) that are used to calculate a value (e.g. Cost). You can create and edit formulas to suit your needs. Once you have created a formula you can test it with sample values to make sure that it is working correctly.

You can save a formula for future use. You can then load a saved formula into the **Define Formula** dialog if you want to edit it or use it to create a new formula. Below is an overview of the **Define Formula** dialog.

#### To create a formula:

Build your formula by typing directly in the formula window as well as clicking any of the available variables, numbers, operators and functions displayed in the dialog. The available variables vary according to element type. For example, if you are defining fields for a door, variables such as Count, Height and Width will be included in the list. For a wall you are likely to see variables such as Exterior Wall Area and Interior Wall Area.

As an example, if you are creating a formula to count door hinges, and there are two hinges per door, you might specify a formula of Count * 2 (the number of doors multiplied by 2), which would count two door hinges for every instance of the door in your drawing. To create this formula, you would do the following:

- 1. Click the **Count** variable in the list of variables.
- 2. Click
- 2 3. Click 2 or type 2 after the multiplication symbol.

#### Input Units

If you are using Length, Area or Volume variables in your formula, you can specify the units in which you want to measure those values by making the desired selections from the Length, Area and Volume drop boxes in the Input area. Initially, all quantities are measured in millimeters regardless of the units of measure used in your project. Making selections from the Length, Area and Volume drop boxes converts the millimeter values into the units you want. This saves you a lot of time and effort because you do not have to specify conversion factors in your formula the conversion is done for you.

For example, if your formula contains the Area variable and you would like the area of the item to be measured in square feet, you would select Square Feet from the Area drop box.



### d numbers of nematicalo o your formu

prackets and tions in you formula

report temp rds, specify put units to d in the qua report



Cubic Feet

•

For report template records, specify the ou tput units to be used in the quantity report

-

•

Input
Length
Inches 🔻
Area
Square Feet 🔹
Volume
Cubic Feet 🔻
Input
Length
Inches 🔹
Area
Square Feet 🔹
Volume
Cubic Feet 🔹

**Note**: The Length option applies to all distance measurements including Height and Width.

### Output Units

If you are defining a record in a report template, the **Define Formula** dialog will contain an *Output* area containing unit choices for **Length**, **Area** and **Volume**. These are the units of measure that will be used to display the calculated quantity in the quantity report.

Output	
Units	
Square Feet	
Precision	
#.#	-
Output	
Output Units	
Output Units Square Feet	
Output Units Square Feet Precision	
Output Units Square Feet Precision #.#	
Output Units Square Feet Precision #.#	
Output Units Square Feet Precision #.#	

**Note**: Output units are absent from the dialog if you are specifying a formula for an assembly because assemblies are simply calculated values. Reports on the other hand involve both calculating values and *reporting* calculated values.

### To test a formula:

- Click Test... Test... at the top of the dialog. The formula appears in the Test Formula dialog.
- In the *Variables* window, click on one of the variables that your formula contains, then type a value for that variable and press Enter. For example, our door hinge formula contains a *Count* variable. If we type **4** for the *Count* and press Enter, the formula will display an answer of **8**, which is correct (4 x 2=8).





3. When you are finished testing the formula, click **Close** to return to the **Define Formula** dialog.

To save	e a formula:	(	
		Load Formula	
1. Cli	ick Save at the	Select a formula to load:	
top	o of the dialog.	Put your formula description here	Formula
2. In	the <b>Save Formula</b> dialog, type a name or	Number of Door Hinges	Count*2
des	scription of the formula for easy		
luc C			
2	ave Formula		
	Formula Description:		
	Number of Door Hinges		
	Count-2		
		•	11
	OK Cance	OK	Cancel
Sa	ave Formula	Load Formula	
	Formula Description		
	Number of Door Hinges	Select a formula to load:	
	Number of Door Hinges	Put your formula description here	Formula
	Count*2	Number of Door Hinges	Count*2
	OK Cancel		
3. Cli	ick UK.		
1. Cli	ick 🚺 Load 🛅 Load at the	<	
top	o of the dialog.		]
2. In	the Load Formula dialog, select the	OK	Cancel
for	mula that you would like to load.	Click <b>OK</b>	
	0.		

### **Usages Library**

An element's usage can help make it more clear what the element is to be used for. For example, one particular member could be used for Basement Beams, while another might be used for Studs. An element's usage is defined on its Quantity property page and may be reported in estimates.

The usages library contains a list of usages that you can apply to elements in the catalog or in your

project. You can customize the usages library by adding, editing and deleting usages.

### **Customizing the Usages Library**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

An element's usage can help make it more clear what the element is to be used for. For example, one particular member could be used for Basement Beams, while another might be used for Studs. The usages library contains various usages that you can assign to elements on their Quantity property page. Usages may appear in estimates and can be used as a sort key in report templates. You can add, edit and delete groups and usages in the usages library.

You can access the usages library through an element's Quantity property page, or through the Library Manager.

## To access the usages library through the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Usages.

## To access the usages library through an element's properties:

- Select an element in your drawing, then right-click and select **Properties**. Or, select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**, then select an element.You can also select an element in the catalog panel and then right-click and select **Edit Element**, or simply doubleclick the element.
- 2. In the properties dialog, select the Quantity tab.
- 3. Click _____ next to the **Usage** edit box.

### To add a group:

- To add a group:
- Right-click an existing group and select Add Group, or select Edit > Add Group. An entry is added to the list.
- 2. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

### To rename a group:

To rename a group:

- 1. Select the group to edit.
- Right-click and select Rename Group, or select Edit > Rename Group.
- 3. Type the new name and press ENTER.

### To delete a group:

To delete a group:

- 1. Select the group to delete.
- Right-click and select **Delete Group**, or select Edit > Delete Group.

**Note**: A group cannot be deleted if it contains usages.

### To add a new usage:

To add a new usage:

- 1. Select the group that you want to add the usage to.
- Select Edit > Add Usage, or right-click and select Add Usage.
- 3. In the **Usage Properties** dialog specify a name and ID for the usage, then click **OK**.

### To edit a usage:

To edit a usage:

- 1. Select the usage that you would like to edit.
- Select Edit > Edit Usage, or right-click and select Edit Usage.
- 3. Edit the properties of the usage in the **Usage Properties** dialog, then click **OK**.

### To delete a usage:

To delete a usage:

- 1. Select the usage that you would like to delete.
- 2. Select **Edit > Delete Usage**, or right-click and select **Delete Usage**.

### **Phases Library**

Materials can be grouped into building phases, such as Foundation, Exterior Construction, and Exterior Finish. Every element has a Phase field on its Quantity property page. Phases may appear in estimates and can be used as sort keys in report templates.

The phases library contains a list of phases that you can apply to elements in the catalog or in your project. You can customize the phases library by adding, editing and deleting phases.

## **Customizing the Phases Library**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The phases library contains various phases that you can assign to elements on their Quantity property page. A phase refers to a stage in the building process. Examples are Foundation, Exterior Construction, and Exterior Finish. Phases are often reported in estimates, and can be used as sort keys in report templates.

You can access the phases library through an element's Quantity property page, or through the Library Manager. You can customize the phases library by adding, editing and deleting groups and phases.

## To access the phases library through the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Phases.

## To access the phases library through an element's properties:

- Select an element in your drawing, then right-click and select **Properties**. Or, select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**, then select an element. You can also select an element in the catalog panel and then right-click and select **Edit Element**, or simply doubleclick the element.
- 2. In the properties dialog, select the Quantity tab.
- 3. Click next to the **Phase** edit box.

### To add a group:

To add a group:

- Right-click an existing group and select Add Group, or select Edit > Add Group. An entry is added to the list.
- 2. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

### To rename a group:

To rename a group:

- 1. Select the group to edit.
- Right-click and select Rename Group, or select Edit > Rename Group.
- 3. Type the new name and press ENTER.

### To delete a group:

To delete a group:

- 1. Select the group to delete.
- Right-click and select **Delete Group**, or select Edit > Delete Group.

**Note**: A group cannot be deleted if it contains phases.

### To add a new phase:

To add a new phase:

- 1. Select the group that you want to add the phase to.
- Select Edit > Add Phase, or right-click and select Add Phase.
- 3. In the **Phase Properties** dialog specify a name and ID for the phase, then click **OK**.

### To edit a phase:

To edit a phase:

- 1. Select the phase that you would like to edit.
- Select Edit > Edit Phase, or right-click and select Edit Phase.
- 3. Edit the properties of the phase in the **Phase Properties** dialog, then click **OK**.

### To delete a phase:

To delete a phase:

- 1. Select the phase that you would like to delete.
- 2. Select **Edit > Delete Phase**, or right-click and select **Delete Phase**.

### **Categories Library**

Elements can be grouped into categories according to their type, such as Sheathing or Pre-cut Lumber. You can assign a category to an element on its Quantity property page. Categories can be reported in estimates, and can also be used as a sort key in report templates.

The categories library contains a list of categories that you can apply to elements in the catalog or in your project. You can customize the categories library by adding, editing and deleting categories.

# Customizing the Categories Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The categories library contains a variety of categories that you can assign to elements on their Quantity property page. Categories are sometimes used in estimates, and can also be used as a sort key in report templates.

You can add, edit and delete groups and categories in the categories library. You can access the categories library through an element's Quantity property page, or through the Library Manager.

## To access the categories library through the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button file file on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Categories.

## To access the categories library through an element's properties:

- Select an element in your drawing, then right-click and select **Properties**. Or, select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**, then select an element.You can also select an element in the catalog panel and then right-click and select **Edit Element**, or simply doubleclick the element.
- 2. In the properties dialog, select the Quantity tab.
- 3. Click next to the **Category** edit box.

### To add a group:

To add a group:

- Right-click an existing group and select Add Group, or select Edit > Add Group. An entry is added to the list.
- 2. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

### To rename a group:

### To rename a group:

- 1. Select the group to edit.
- Right-click and select Rename Group, or select Edit > Rename Group.

3. Type the new name and press ENTER.

### To delete a group:

To delete a group:

- 1. Select the group to delete.
- Right-click and select **Delete Group**, or select Edit > Delete Group.

**Note**: A group cannot be deleted if it contains categories.

### To add a new category:

To add a new category:

- 1. Select the group that you want to add the category to.
- Select Edit > Add Category, or right-click and select Add Category.
- 3. Specify a name for the category, then click **OK.**

### To edit a category:

To edit a category:

- 1. Select the category that you would like to edit.
- Select Edit > Edit Category, or right-click and select Edit Category.
- 3. Edit the name of the category, then click **OK**.

### To delete a category:

### To delete a category:

- 1. Select the category that you would like to delete.
- Select Edit > Delete Category, or right-click and select Delete Category.

### **Units of Measure Library**

The units of measure library contains various units of measure that you can assign to elements in the Units field on their Quantity property page. Examples of units are Each, Roll and Pckg. Units are reported for each element in estimates to indicate how they are being quantified. For example, doors are purchased as individual items and will have the 'Each' unit, while something like vapor barrier is purchased in rolls. The units of measure library contains a list of units that you can apply to elements in the catalog or in your project. You can customize the units of measure library by adding, editing and deleting units of measure.

### Customizing the Units of Measure Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Units of Measure library contains a variety of units that you can assign to elements on their Quantity property page. There are units for measuring single items, area, volume and length. Units are reported for each element in estimates to indicate how they are being quantified. For example, doors are purchased as individual items and will have the 'Each' unit, while something like insulation may be measured in Square Feet.

Each unit of measure has a set of properties that determine how it quantifies the material, including a Conversion Factor for converting measurements from millimeters to the unit you want, Unit Format (Decimal, Feet & Inches, etc.) and a level of Precision. The program will perform the necessary calculations and conversions for you when you generate the project estimate, resulting in an accurate material take-off.

You can add, edit and delete groups and units of measure in the Units of Measure library. You can access the units of measure library through an element's Quantity property page, or through the Library Manager.

## To access the Units of Measure library through the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button file file on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Units of Measure.

## To access the Units of Measure library through an element's properties:

- Select an element in your drawing, then right-click and select **Properties**. Or, select **File > Catalogs > Element Manager**, then select an element. You can also select an element in the catalog panel and then right-click and select **Edit Element**, or simply doubleclick the element.
- 2. In the properties dialog, select the Quantity

### tab.

3. Click _____ next to the **Units** edit box.

### To add a group:

#### To add a group:

- Right-click an existing group and select Add Group, or select Edit > Add Group. An entry is added to the list.
- 2. Type a name for the group, then press ENTER.

#### To rename a group:

To rename a group:

- 1. Select the group to edit.
- Right-click and select Rename Group, or select Edit > Rename Group.
- 3. Type the new name and press ENTER.

### To delete a group:

#### To delete a group:

- 1. Select the group to delete.
- Right-click and select **Delete Group**, or select Edit > Delete Group.

**Note**: A group cannot be deleted if it contains units of measure.

#### To add a new unit of measure:

To add a new unit of measure:

- 1. Select the group that you want to add the unit to.
- Select Edit > Add Unit of Measure, or rightclick in the lower pane and select Add Unit of Measure. The Unit of Measure dialog appears:

🔁 Unit of measure	:	
Name:		
Quantify:	Count	
Unit scale:	1	
Unit format:	Decimal	
Precision:	#	
	ОК	
		_
Vnit of measure		
Name:		
Quantify: Count		
Unit scale: 1		
Predsion:		
OK Cancel		
On Concer		

3. In the **Unit of Measure** dialog, define the unit's properties.

**Name**. The name of the unit of measure as it will appear in the Unit of Measure library and in the Units field in the project estimate. This is the text that appears after the numerical value (e.g. SQFT).

**Quantify**. Select either **Count**, **Length**, **Area** or **Volume** to specify what you are quantifying.

**Unit Scale**. Specify the factor that will convert millimeters to the desired unit of measurement. For example, if you wanted to quantify a material in square inches, you would enter a conversion factor of 0.0015500031, because 1 square millimeter = 0.0015500031 square inches.

**Unit Format**. Select the format in which you want the quantity measurement to appear. Select either **Decimal**, **Inches**, **Feet-Inches**, or **Feet-Inches-Sixteenths**.

**Note**: Measurements are always calculated in millimeters initially, regardless of what is selected in the Unit Format field. If you want to quantify a material using a different unit, you must specify a Conversion Factor in the unit's properties.

**Precision**. Select a level of precision for the measurement. For example, selecting a precision of #'-# #/16" sets the level of precision to 1/16th of an inch when measuring distances in feet and inches.

4. Click **OK**.

### To edit a unit of measure:

To edit a unit of measure:

- Select the unit of measure that you would like to edit.
- 2. Select Edit > Edit Unit of Measure, or rightclick and select Edit Unit of Measure.
- Edit the properties in the Unit of Measure dialog, then click OK. For more information about the available properties, see the section on adding a unit of measure to the library (above).

### To delete a unit of measure:

To delete a unit of measure:

- Select the unit of measure that you would like to delete.
- Select Edit > Delete Unit of Measure, or right-click and select Delete Unit of Measure.

### **Wizard Configurations**

When you use the House Builder Wizard, Kitchen Builder Wizard, Bathroom Builder Wizard, or Shed Builder Wizard, you are prompted to select a style for the house, kitchen, bathroom, or shed. Each style has a default set of materials assigned to it. You can edit the materials assigned to each configuration, or even create a new configuration of materials. You can also rename and delete configurations from the library. Select the type of configuration you would like to define: Building Configuration Kitchen Configuration Shed Configuration Bathroom Configuration

### Creating a Custom House Builder Wizard Configuration

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A House Builder Wizard configuration determines what elements are used for exterior walls, roofs, floors, ceilings, foundation walls and footings. You are asked to select a configuration for your house when you run the House Builder Wizard.

You can edit any of the existing configurations that are available in the House Builder Wizard, or create your own. Customized configurations are saved automatically and will be available when you run the House Builder Wizard in the current project, or any other project.

### To access the building configuration library:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Building Configuration.

### To add a new configuration to the list:

- Select Edit > Add Configuration, or rightclick in the Building Configurations window and select Add Configuration. An entry named 'New Configuration' is added to the list.
- Select the new configuration in the list. If you want to rename it, select Edit > Rename Configuration, or right-click and select Rename Configuration. Then, type the new name and press ENTER.

### To edit a building configuration:

- Select the configuration in the list. The element selections for the configuration are listed in the center pane.
- 2. In the center pane, select an element type you want to specify a style for (e.g. Main Wall).
- 3. Click the **Select** button.

- 4. In the **Catalog Access** dialog, select the specific style you want to apply to the selected element type, then click **OK**.
- 5. Continue selecting styles for the remaining element types.

### To delete a configuration from the list:

- 1. Select the configuration in the list.
- Select Edit > Delete Configuration, or rightclick and select Delete Configuration, or simply press the Delete key on your keyboard.

### Creating a Custom Kitchen Wizard Configuration

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A Kitchen Builder Wizard configuration determines what types of cabinets and appliances are used in your kitchen. You are asked to select a configuration for your kitchen when you run the Kitchen Builder Wizard.

You can edit any of the existing configurations that are available in the Kitchen Builder Wizard, or create your own. Customized configurations are saved automatically and will be available when you run the Kitchen Builder Wizard in the current project, or any other project.

### To access the kitchen configuration library:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button is on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Kitchen Configuration.

### To add a new configuration to the list:

- Select Edit > Add Configuration, or rightclick in the Kitchen Configurations window and select Add Configuration. An entry named 'New Configuration' is added to the list.
- Select the new configuration in the list. If you want to rename it, select Edit > Rename Configuration, or right-click and select Rename Configuration. Then, type the new name and press ENTER.

### To edit a kitchen configuration:

- Select the configuration in the list. The element selections for the configuration are listed in the center pane.
- 2. In the center pane, select an element type you want to specify a style for (e.g. Refrigerator).
- 3. Click the **Select** button.
- 4. In the **Catalog Access** dialog, select the specific style you want to apply to the selected element type, then click **OK**.
- 5. Continue selecting styles for the remaining element types.

### To delete a configuration from the list:

- 1. Select the configuration in the list.
- Select Edit > Delete Configuration, or rightclick and select Delete Configuration, or simply press the Delete key on your keyboard.

### Creating a Custom Shed Builder Wizard Configuration

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A Shed Builder Wizard configuration determines what elements are used for a shed's roof, walls, floor, door and window. You are asked to select a configuration for your shed when you run the Shed Builder Wizard.

You can edit any of the existing configurations that are available in the Shed Builder Wizard, or create your own. Customized configurations are saved automatically and will be available when you run the Shed Builder Wizard in the current project, or any other project.

### To access the shed configuration library:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button en on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Shed Configuration.

### To add a new configuration to the list:

 Select Edit > Add Configuration, or rightclick in the Shed Configuration window and select **Add Configuration**. An entry named 'New Configuration' is added to the list.

Select the new configuration in the list. If you want to rename it, select Edit > Rename Configuration, or right-click and select Rename Configuration. Then, type the new name and press ENTER.

### To edit a shed configuration:

- Select the configuration in the list. The element selections for the configuration are listed in the center pane.
- 2. In the center pane, select an element type you want to specify a style for (e.g. Wall).
- 3. Click the **Select** button.
- In the Catalog Access dialog, select the specific style you want to apply to the selected element type, then click OK.
- 5. Continue selecting styles for the remaining element types.

### To delete a configuration from the list:

- 1. Select the configuration in the list.
- Select Edit > Delete Configuration, or rightclick and select Delete Configuration, or simply press the Delete key on your keyboard.

# Creating a Custom Bathroom Wizard Configuration

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

A Bathroom Builder Wizard configuration determines what types of cabinets and plumbing fixtures are used in your bathroom. You are asked to select a configuration for your bathroom when you run the Bathroom Builder Wizard.

You can edit any of the existing configurations that are available in the Bathroom Builder Wizard, or create your own. Customized configurations are saved automatically and will be available when you run the Bathroom Builder Wizard in the current project, or any other project.

### To access the bathroom configuration library:

 Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I III on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.

 In the Library Manager dialog, select Libraries > Bathroom Configuration.

#### To add a new configuration to the list:

- Select Edit > Add Configuration, or rightclick in the Bathroom Configurations window and select Add Configuration. An entry named 'New Configuration' is added to the list.
- Select the new configuration in the list. If you want to rename it, select Edit > Rename Configuration, or right-click and select Rename Configuration. Then, type the new name and press ENTER.

#### To edit a bathroom configuration:

- Select the configuration in the list. The element selections for the configuration are listed in the center pane.
- 2. In the center pane, select an element type you want to specify a style for (e.g. Vanity).
- 3. Click the **Select** button.
- 4. In the **Catalog Access** dialog, select the specific style you want to apply to the selected element type, then click **OK**.
- 5. Continue selecting styles for the remaining element types.

### To delete a configuration from the list:

- 1. Select the configuration in the list.
- 2. Select **Edit > Delete Configuration**, or rightclick and select **Delete Configuration**, or simply press the Delete key on your keyboard.

### **Framing Libraries**

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

There are five wall framing libraries that you can customize to suit your construction needs.

Wall Span Table Library. Wall span tables contain a list of opening span sizes and associated head/sill/jamb configurations to be used in framing wall openings.

Head Sill Jamb Library. Contains head/sill/jamb configurations that are used to frame around wall openings. Head/sill/jamb configurations are found in wall span tables which are assigned to building locations in your project.

Wall Infill Library. Infill refers to the material that fills the volume of a framed wall — studs, top plate, bottom plate, and very top plate. An infill configuration determines what type of member is used for the infill, and the position and alignment of each component within the frame.

Intersection Lookup Table Library. An intersection lookup table contains a number of framing configurations for intersections. If you define custom intersection framing configurations in Framing Mode, you can save them to an intersection lookup table that can be used in other projects.

End Condition Library. End condition configurations determine the number, position and rotation of studs at the end of a wall. End conditions are included in the framing configuration of each wall intersection.

### Wall Span Table Library

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Wall Span Table Library contains tables that determine which head/sill/jamb configurations are to be used to frame wall opening spans of varying sizes. For example, there is a specific head/sill/jamb configuration assigned to a 2' opening, one assigned to a 4' opening, and so on and so forth. The library ships with some pre-defined span tables, but you can edit these tables or create your own that comply with the building codes in your area and satisfy your construction needs.

Every building location in your model has a span table assigned to it. You can select a custom span table to use for individual walls in your model, or for individual openings.

# Customizing the Wall Span Table Library

#### Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Wall Span Table Library contains tables that determine which head/sill/jamb configurations are to be used to frame wall opening spans of varying sizes. Each table contains a list of opening span sizes (2', 4', 6', etc.) with a specific head/sill/jamb configuration assigned to each one. You can add, edit and delete span tables in the Wall Span Table Library.



## To access the Wall Span Table Library from the Library Manager:

 Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button and toolbar and

select Library Manager.

2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Framing Libraries > Wall Opening Span Table.

To access the Wall Span Table Library from your building location settings:

- Select Settings > Building Locations, or click : on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **Building Locations** dialog, click in the **Framing Options** column.
- 3. In the **Location Framing Options** dialog, double-click the span table listing.

## To access the Wall Opening Span Table Library from an inserted opening (in Framing Mode):

- Go into Framing Mode (View > Framing Mode On/Off).
- Double-click an opening, or select the opening and then right-click and select Properties.
- 3. In the **Edit Opening Configurations** dialog, enable the **Use custom span table** radio button, and then click the **Select span table** button.

### To edit an existing span table:

- Double-click the span table in the list, or select the span table and select Edit > Edit Wall Span Table Configuration, or rightclick and select Edit Wall Span Table Configuration.
- Edit the configuration in the Wall Framing Span Table dialog. See *Defining a Wall Opening Span Table* on page 654.

### To add a new span table to the library:

- Select Edit > Add Wall Span Table Configuration, or right-click in the span table pane and select Add Wall Span Table Configuration.
- Define the table in the Wall Framing Span Table dialog. See *Defining a Wall Opening Span Table* on page 654.

### To delete a span table from the library:

- 1. Select the table to delete.
- Select Edit > Delete Wall Span Table Configuration, or right-click and select Delete Wall Span Table Configuration.

### To view a span table without editing it:

- 1. Select the table to view.
- Select Edit > View Wall Span Table Configuration, or right-click and select View Wall Span Table Configuration.

## Defining a Wall Opening Span Table

Building Essentials | Construction Suite Wall openings are framed according to wall opening span tables that determine which head/sill/jamb configurations are to be used for opening spans of varying sizes. A span table contains a list of opening sizes (2', 4', 6', etc.) and the head/sill/jamb configuration that is to be used for each size.

Span tables are stored in the Wall Opening Span Table Library. Every building location in your model has a span table assigned to it. You can select a custom span table to use for individual walls in your model, or for individual openings.

### To define a wall opening span table:

 Open the Wall Opening Span Table Library, and then select either the Add Wall Span Table Configuration or Edit Wall Span Table Configuration tool.

Wall Framing	Span Table
Name:	General 2 Ply Span Table
🕂 Add 🔒	Remove
Span	Head Sill Configuration
3'-0''	2 Ply 2x4 Header - 2x4 Sill
6'-0''	2 Ply 2x6 Header - 2x4 Sill
10'-0''	2 Ply 2x8 Header - 2x4 Sill

- 2. In **the Wall Framing Span Table** dialog, specify a name for the table in the **Name** edit box as you would like it to appear in the Wall Opening Span Table Library.
- 3. To add a span to the table, select the span in the list that you want the new one to come

after, then click Add A new span is added below the currently selected one. By default, its width will be an increment higher than the previous one. For example, if you select a 3' foot span in the list and then add a new one, the newly added span will have a width of 4'. You can edit this value if you want. When you edit a span's width value, the span automatically moves to the correct position in the list to keep the list ordered.

To select a head/sill configuration for the span, simply click the currently assigned head/sill configuration and select the desired one from the drop list. If you want to add, edit or view a head/sill configuration, click the browse button _____ next to the current head/sill selection to access the Head Sill Jamb Library.

- 4. To edit an existing span you can adjust its width value or assign a different head/sill configuration to it by clicking on the currently assigned configuration and selecting the desired configuration from the drop list.
- 5. To remove a span from the table, select the span, then click **Remove Remove**

### Head/Sill/Jamb Library

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Head/Sill/Jamb Library contains head/sill/jamb configurations that can be used to frame openings in walls. Head/sill/jamb configurations are found in wall span tables which are used to determine how openings of various sizes should be framed. A span table is assigned to each building location in your project. You can override a wall's span table setting and assign a specific head/sill/jamb configuration to an individual opening in a wall.

A head/sill/jamb configuration determines what members are used for the king studs, jack studs, header, cripples and window sill, as well as each member's position, alignment, etc.

You can add, edit and delete configurations in the Head/Sill/Jamb Library.

## Customizing the Head/Sill/Jamb Library

### Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Head/Sill/Jamb Library contains head/sill/jamb configurations that can be used to frame openings in walls. Head/sill/jamb configurations are used in wall span tables which determine how openings of various sizes should be framed.

A head/sill/jamb configuration determines what members are used for the king studs, jack studs, header, cripples and window sill, as well as each member's position, alignment, etc.

You can add, edit and delete configurations in the Head/Sill/Jamb Library.



To access the Head/Sill/Jamb Library in the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button in on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Framing Libraries > Head Sill Jamb Configuration.

## To access the Head/Sill/Jamb Library through an inserted opening (in Framing Mode):

- Go into Framing Mode (View > Framing Mode On/Off).
- Double-click an opening, or select the opening and then right-click and select Properties.
- 3. In the Edit Opening Configurations dialog, select the Use custom head sill jamb configuration radio button, then click the Select configuration button.

## To add a configuration to the Head/Sill/Jamb Library:

- Select Edit > Add Head Sill Jamb Configuration, or right-click an existing configuration and select Add Head Sill Jamb Configuration.
- Define the configuration in the Head Sill Configuration dialog. See *Defining a Head/Sill/Jamb Configuration* on page 656.

## To edit a configuration in the Head/Sill/Jamb Library:

- Double-click the configuration in the list, or select the configuration in the list and select Edit > Edit Head Sill Jamb Configuration, or right-click and select Edit Head Sill Jamb Configuration.
- Edit the configuration in the Head Sill Configuration dialog. See *Defining a Head/Sill/Jamb Configuration* on page 656.

## To delete a configuration in the Head/Sill/Jamb Library:

- 1. Select the configuration to delete.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or select Edit > Delete Head Sill Jamb Configuration, or right-click and select Delete Head Sill Jamb Configuration.

### To simply view a configuration without editing it:

- 1. Select the configuration to view.
- Select Edit > View Head Sill Jamb Configuration, or right-click and select View Head Sill Jamb Configuration.

### Defining a Head/Sill/Jamb Configuration

### Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Used in framing a wall opening, a head/sill/jamb configuration determines what members are used for the king studs, jack studs, headers and window sill, as well as each member's position, alignment, etc. It also defines the cripple regions above and below the opening.

Head/sill/jamb configurations are stored in the Head/Sill/Jamb Library, and are used to define wall span tables.

### To define a head/sill/jamb configuration:

 Access the Head/Sill/Jamb Library, then choose either the Add Head Sill Jamb Configuration or Edit Head Sill Configuration tool.

Name: 1' - 3' Span						
Members:		Para	ameters:			Preview
分 Right King Stud	New		General		*	
😼 Right Jack Stud		5	Name	Right King Stud		
撞 Left King Stud	Сору		Orientation	Vertical		
🛫 Left Jack Stud	Delete	ı I	Use member from	Wall Properties		
Tieader 1	Leven	i (	Member	Wall Frame Member	11	
🔧 SII			Rotation	0*	Ξ	
Upper Cripple			Quantity Info			
Lower Cripple			Usage	None Selected		
The Header 2			Phase	None Selected		
			Position along w	all		
			Anchor to	Right Jack Stud	-	
			Alignment	Lt to Rt.		
			Shift	0"		
			Position front to	back		
			Anchor to	Wall Core		
			Alignment	Mid. to Mid.		
			Shift	0''	Ŧ	

- To edit a member in the configuration, select it in the *Members* pane on the left side of the Head Sill Configuration dialog (e.g. *Left King Stud* or *Header*).
- 3. To add a new member to the configuration,

click New New . In the Add Member dialog, type a name for the member in the top edit box.

If the member is not part of the cripple region, enable the **Add member** radio button, and then select an orientation (**Horizontal** or **Vertical**) from the lower edit box. This determines whether the member is oriented horizontally or vertically in the opening frame.

If you are adding a cripple region, enable the **Cripple region** radio button. **Note**: Cripples are defined as an area of members rather than as individual members.

Add
Name: New Member
Add member     Member orientation: Horizontal
O Cripple region
? OK Cancel

4. To add a new member by copying an existing one, select the member to copy, then click



5. To remove a member from the configuration, select the member to delete, then click



 Define the member in the *Parameters* pane. The settings vary depending on the type of member. Settings are described below.
 Opening Members (King studs, Jack studs,

Headers, Sill)

- General -

**Name**. The name of the member as it appears in the configuration's list of members (e.g. *Left King Stud or Header 1*).

**Orientation**. The direction of the member in the frame (*Horizontal* or *Vertical*). A header would have a horizontal orientation, while a king stud would have a vertical orientation.

**Use member from**. To use the member type assigned to the wall on the wall's Framing property page, select **Wall Properties**. To use a specific member from the member library, select **Member Library**, then make a selection from the **Catalog Access** dialog. The latter option overrides the Framing Member selection on the wall's Framing property page.

**Member**. If *Wall Properties* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays a generic description, 'Wall Frame Member', indicating that the member to be used is the one selected on the wall's Framing property page. If *Member Library* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays the member type to be used (as selected from the Member library). To select a different member, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Catalog Access** dialog.

**Rotation**. The rotation of the member about its center line (core). Click the down arrow in this field to select the angle of rotation (0°, 90°, 180° or 270°).

### - Quantity Info -

**Usage**. What the member will be used for. Usages can be used as sort keys in estimates and reports. To select a usage, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Usages** library. **Phase**. The building stage or process in which this member will be used. Phases can be used as sort keys in estimates and quantity reports. To select a phase, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Phases** library.

#### - Position Along Wall/Position Vertically-

**Anchor to**. The component to which the member is anchored when looking at the member's position along the length of the wall (if it is vertical) or vertically in the wall (if it is a horizontal). For example, a Left King Stud is typically anchored to the Left Jack Stud. The header, jack studs and window sill are typically anchored to the opening since they are the members that form the opening.

Alignment. The way in which the member is aligned with the anchor member/component. For example, if a Left King Stud is anchored to the Left Jack Stud, and has a 'Rt. to Lt.' alignment, this means that the right side of the king stud is anchored to the left side of the jack stud. If a Header is anchored the opening and has a 'Bot. to Top' alignment, this means that the bottom of the header is anchored to the top of the opening. To change the alignment, click in the Alignment field, then click ______ to display the Member Alignment dialog.





Use the sliders to adjust the position of the member relative to the anchor component or relative to the alignment line.

**Shift**. The distance the member is shifted from its anchor position. A positive value shifts the member to the right (for vertical members) or up (for horizontal members), while a negative value shifts the member to the left or down depending on its orientation.

#### - Position Front to Back -

**Anchor to**. The component to which the member is anchored when looking at the member's position within the width of the wall (from the front of the wall frame to the back). In other words, the member's position is relative to the anchor component's position. Most members except for the window sill are anchored to the *Wall Core*, which means their position inside the frame is relative to the wall core. You can anchor a member to a specific component of the wall core, such as the top plate or bottom plate, or to another member in the opening frame.

Note that "wall core" refers to the configuration of studs, top plate, bottom plate and very top plate as a whole.

**Alignment**. The way in which the member is aligned with the anchor component. For example, if a king stud is anchored to the core, and has a 'Mid. to Mid.' alignment, this means that the middle of the king stud lines up with the middle of the wall core. A 'Mid. to Fnt.' alignment would mean that the middle of the king stud lines up with the front of the wall core when looking at the wall frame face-on. If the window sill is anchored to the header, and has a 'Fnt. to Fnt.' alignment, this means that the front of the window sill lines up with the front of the header.

To change the alignment, click in the Alignment field, then click in the **Member Alignment** dialog. Use the sliders to adjust the position of the member and/or anchor component to achieve the alignment you want between the front and back of the wall frame.

**Shift**. The distance the member is shifted toward the front or back of the wall frame from its anchor position. A positive value shifts the member toward the back, while a negative value shifts it toward the front.

- Top/Bottom End or Left/Right End -

The labels of the bottom two sections depend on whether the member is oriented horizontally or vertically. A vertical member will display 'Top End' and 'Bottom End', while a horizontal member will display 'Left End' and 'Right End'.

**Anchor to**. The component to which the end of the member is attached. For example, the top of a king stud is typically anchored to the top plate. The left end of a header is usually anchored to the left king stud.

Align at anchors. The point on the anchor component to which the member end extends. For vertical members the selections are *Bottom, Center* and *Top*. For horizontal members the selections are *Left, Center* and *Right*. For example, if the bottom of a king stud is anchored to the bottom plate, and has a 'Top' alignment, this means that the bottom of the king stud sits on the top face of the bottom plate. If it had a 'Bottom' alignment, it would extend down to the bottom face of the bottom plate. **Extend**. The distance the member end is shifted from its anchor point. For example, if your king stud were anchored to the bottom of the bottom plate but you wanted to raise the end of the stud up by 1/4", you would enter 1/4 in the Extend field. A positive value shifts the member end upward or to the right, while a negative value shifts it downward or to the left from its anchor point (depending on its orientation).

#### Cripple Region

- General -

**Name**. The name of the member as it appears in the configuration's list of members (e.g. *Upper Cripple*).

**Double cripple ends**. Inserts double cripple members at each end of the cripple region. - *Quantity Info* -

**Usage**. What the member will be used for. Usages can be used as sort keys in estimates and reports. To select a usage, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Usages** library.

**Phase**. The building stage or process in which this member will be used. Phases can be used as sort keys in estimates and quantity reports. To select a phase, click in this field and then click ______ to display the **Phases** library.

#### - Top extent -

**Anchor to**. The component to which the top of the cripple region is anchored. Typically the top of an upper cripple region will be anchored to the top plate. The top of a lower cripple region is usually anchored to the sill.

**Alignment**. The part of the anchor member to which the top of the cripple region extends. If the top of an upper cripple region is anchored to the top plate, and a *Bottom* alignment is selected, the top of the cripple region will be aligned with the bottom of the top plate. Other choices are *Center* and *Top*.

**Shift**. The distance the top of the cripple region is shifted from its anchor position. A positive value shifts it up, and a negative value shifts it down.

- Bottom extent -

**Anchor to**. The component to which the bottom of the cripple region is anchored. Typically the bottom of an upper cripple region is anchored to the header. The bottom of a lower cripple region is usually anchored to the bottom plate.

**Alignment**. The part of the anchor member to which the bottom of the cripple region extends. If the bottom of an upper cripple region is anchored to the header, and a *Top* alignment is selected, the bottom of the cripple region will be aligned with the top of the header. Other choices are *Center* and *Bottom*.

**Shift**. The distance the bottom of the cripple region is shifted from its anchor position. A positive value shifts it up, and a negative value shifts it down.

- Left extent -

**Anchor to**. The component to which the left end of the cripple region is anchored. Typically the left end of an upper cripple region is anchored to the Left King Stud, and the left end of a lower cripple region is anchored to the Left Jack Stud.

Align at anchors. The point on the anchor component to which the left end of the cripple region extends. Choices are *Left*, *Right* and *Center*. For example, if the left end of an upper cripple region is anchored to the Left King Stud, and a *Right* alignment is selected, the left end of the cripple region will extend to the inside face of the King Stud. If a *Left* alignment were selected, the cripple region would extend to the outside of the King Stud.

**Extend**. The distance the cripple region end is shifted from its anchor point. A positive

value shifts it right, and a negative value shifts it left.

- Right extent -

**Anchor to**. The component to which the right end of the cripple region is anchored. Typically the right end of an upper cripple region is anchored to the Right King Stud, and the right end of a lower cripple region is anchored to the Right Jack Stud.

**Align at anchors**. The point on the anchor component to which the right end of the cripple region extends. Choices are *Left, Right* and *Center*. For example, if the right end of an upper cripple region is anchored to the Right King Stud, and a *Left* alignment is selected, the right end of the cripple region will extend to the inside face of the King Stud.

**Extend**. The distance the cripple region end is shifted from its anchor point. A positive value shifts it right, and a negative value shifts it left.

### Wall Infill Library

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Wall Infill Library contains a number of wall infill configurations in both wood and steel. Infill refers to the material that fills the volume of a framed wall — studs, top plate, bottom plate, and very top plate. An infill configuration determines what type of member is used for the infill, and the position and alignment of each component.

Every building location has a wall infill configuration assigned to it. This determines how walls on each location are to be framed. You can override this setting for a specific wall in your model by selecting a custom infill configuration for the wall in Framing Mode.

You can add, edit and delete infill configurations in the Wall Infill Library.

# Customizing the Wall Infill Library

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite The Wall Infill Library contains wall infill configurations in both wood and steel that determine how the infill of a wall should be framed. Infill refers to the material that fills the volume of a framed wall — studs, top plate, very top plate, bottom plate and blocking. An infill configuration determines what type of member is used for the infill, the spacing between studs, and the position and alignment of each component in the frame.

Each building location has an infill configuration assigned to it that determines how walls on each location are to be framed. You can override this setting for individual walls in your model by applying a custom infill configuration to a wall in Framing Mode.

You can add, edit and delete infill configurations in the Wall Infill Library.



To access the Wall Infill Library from the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button en on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Framing Libraries > Wall Framing Infill.

## To access the Wall Infill Library from your building location settings:

- Select Settings > Building Locations, or click : on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **Building Locations** dialog, click in the **Framing Options** column.
- 3. In the Location Framing Options dialog, double-click the Infill configuration item.

## To access the Wall Infill Library from an individual wall (in Framing Mode):

- Go into Framing Mode (View > Framing Mode On/Off).
- 2. Double-click a wall, or select the wall and then right-click and select **Properties**.
- 3. In the Edit Infill Configuration dialog enable the Use custom infill configuration radio button, then click the Select configuration button.
- To create a new infill configuration:
- In the Infill Configuration dialog, select Edit
   > Add Wall Infill Configuration, or right-click in the infill pane and select Add Wall Infill Configuration.
- 2. Define the configuration in the **Infill Configuration** dialog. See *Defining a Wall Infill Configuration* on page 662.

### To edit an existing infill configuration:

- Double-click the configuration to edit, or select the configuration and select Edit > Edit Wall Infill Configuration, or right-click and select Edit Wall Infill Configuration.
- 2. Define the configuration in the **Infill Configuration** dialog. See *Defining a Wall Infill Configuration* on page 662.

### To delete an infill configuration:

- 1. Select the configuration to delete.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or select Edit > Delete Wall Infill Configuration, or right-click and select Delete Wall Infill Configuration.

### To view an infill configuration without editing it:

- 1. Select the configuration to view.
- Select Edit > View Wall Infill Configuration, or right-click and select View Wall Infill Configuration.

## Defining a Wall Infill Configuration

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Infill refers to the material that fills the volume of a framed wall — studs, top plate, very top plate, bottom plate, and blocking. An infill configuration determines what type of member is used for the infill, the spacing between studs, and the position and alignment of each component in the frame. An infill configuration is assigned to each building location in your project, and you can select a custom infill configuration for individual walls in your model using the Infill tool in Framing Mode.

Infill configurations are stored in the Wall Infill Library where you can add and edit configurations to suit your construction needs.

### To define a wall infill configuration:

 Open the Wall Infill Library, then choose either the Add Wall Infill Configuration or Edit Wall Infill Configuration tool.

		_	an a state		
Members:	1	Par	ameters:		
<ul> <li>Infill Properties</li> <li>Bottom Plate</li> <li>Studs</li> <li>Studs</li> <li>Blocking</li> <li>Blocking</li> <li>Top Plate</li> <li>Very Top Plate</li> </ul>	New	-	General		
	Conv	1	Stud spacing	1.4.	
	Delete	1	Interference		Neares
			Lut opening botto.		8
			Projection into	plates	
			I op extension	0	
			Base extension	U"	
			Generate end s	tuds	
			Start end stud		
			End end stud		8

### **Defining Infill Properties**

To define stud behavior, select **Infill Properties** in the left pane, then define the following settings in the right pane:

Stud spacing. The distance between studs.

**Interference**. Refers to the presence of an object (such as another member) where a stud would go. This may occur, for example, where one wall intersects another, or at the end of a wall. Selecting 'Nearest' shifts the stud to one side of the interfering member. Selecting

'Remove' prevents a stud from being inserted where there is interference.

**Cut opening bottom plate**. Cuts the bottom plate out at the bottom of wall or door openings.

### Projection into plates

**Top extension**. The distance the studs project into the top plate. This is particularly useful for incorporating framing channels in steel-framed walls.

**Base extension**. The distance the studs project into the bottom plate.

Generate end studs

**Start end stud**. If unchecked, the stud at the start of the wall is removed.

**End end stud**. If unchecked, the stud at the end of the wall is removed.

### **Defining the Bottom Plate**

- 1. To edit the bottom plate, select a *Bottom Plate* item in the **Bottom Plate** group in the left pane, then define its parameters in the right pane. You can add new members to this group if needed.
- To add a bottom plate member to the configuration, select the **Bottom Plate** group or an existing Bottom Plate item and click

New New . A new member is added to the list.

 To add a bottom plate member to the configuration by copying an existing member, select the member to copy and then click

Сору	
	Сору

4. To delete a member from the configuration, select the member to delete and then click



- 5. Define the parameters described below.
  - Use member from. To use the framing member assigned to the wall in its properties, select Wall Properties. To use a specific member from the member library, select
    Member Library, then make a selection from the Catalog Access dialog. The latter option overrides the Framing Member selection in the wall's properties.

**Member**. If *Wall Properties* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays a generic description, 'Wall Frame Member', indicating that the member to be used is the one selected in the wall's properties. If *Member Library* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays the member type to be used (as selected from the Member library). To select a different member, click in this field and then click ______ to display the **Catalog Access** dialog.

**Rotation**. The rotation of the member about its center line (core). Click the down arrow in this field to select the angle of rotation (0°, 90°, 180° or 270°).

**Double**. If you want the bottom plate to be doubled, click in the Double field and then select **Yes** from the drop box. For a single bottom plate, select **No**.

**Usage**. What the member will be used for. Usages can be used as sort keys in estimates and reports. To select a usage, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Usages** library.

**Phase**. The building stage or process in which this member will be used. Phases can be used as sort keys in estimates and quantity reports. To select a phase, click in this field and then click **____** to display the **Phases** library.

6. To cut the bottom plate out at the bottom of wall or door openings, select the Infill Properties folder in the left pane, then in the right pane, enable the Cut opening bottom plate check box.

### **Defining the Studs**

1. To edit stud properties, select the *Stud* item in the **Studs** group in the left pane. By default there is one stud item listed. This will result in a standard framed wall with a single stud at every spacing interval. If you want multiple studs in the configuration (e.g. double studs), you can add more stud items to the **Studs** group.

- To add a stud to the configuration, select the Studs group or an existing Stud item and click New New . A new member is added to the list.
- To add a stud to the configuration by copying an existing stud, select the stud to copy and then click Copy Copy.
- 4. To delete a stud from the configuration, select the stud to delete and then click



 To define parameters for a stud component, select the stud component in the left pane, then define the parameters in the right pane. The parameters are described below.

### General

**Name**. The name of the stud item as it appears in the Studs group in the left pane.

Use member from. To use the framing member assigned to the wall in its properties, select **Wall Properties**. To use a specific member from the member library, select **Member Library**, then make a selection from the **Catalog Access** dialog. The latter option overrides the Framing Member selection in the wall's properties.

**Member**. If *Wall Properties* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays a generic description, 'Wall Frame Member', indicating that the member to be used is the one selected in the wall's properties. If *Member Library* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays the member type to be used (as selected from the Member library). To select a different member, click in this field and then click ______ to display the **Catalog Access** dialog.

**Rotation**. The rotation of the member about its center line (core). Click the down arrow in this field to select the angle of rotation  $(0^{\circ}, 90^{\circ}, 180^{\circ} \text{ or } 270^{\circ})$ .

#### Quantity Info

**Usage**. What the member will be used for. Usages can be used as sort keys in estimates
and reports. To select a usage, click in this field and then click **____** to display the **Usages** library.

**Phase**. The building stage or process in which this member will be used. Phases can be used as sort keys in estimates and quantity reports. To select a phase, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Phases** library.

#### Position Along Wall

**Anchor to**. The item that the stud is relative to in defining its position along the length of the wall frame. If there is only one stud in the configuration, the only available option is *Stud Reference Line*, which is like an imaginary chalk line that marks your stud spacing. If there is more than one stud in the configuration, you can anchor the stud to another stud in the list, meaning its position is relative to the stud to which it is anchored.

Alignment. The position of the stud relative to the stud reference line or other stud. If the stud is anchored to the Stud Reference Line, you can align the stud on the left side, right side, or center of this line. If the stud is anchored to another stud, you can control which side of the other stud you want to anchor to. For example, a 'Lt. to Rt.' alignment would mean that the left side of the stud is anchored to the ride side of the anchor stud. To change the alignment, click in the Alignment field, then click to display the Member Alignment dialog. Use the slider controls to shift the anchor position.

**Offset**. The distance the stud is shifted from its anchor position. A positive value shifts the member to the right, while a negative value shifts the stud to the left.

#### Position Front to Back

**Anchor to**. The item that the stud is relative to in defining its position within the width of the wall (from the front of the wall frame to the back). If there is only one stud item in the configuration, the studs will be anchored to the *Bottom Plate*. If there is more than one

stud in the configuration, you can anchor the stud to another stud in the configuration.

**Alignment**. The position of the stud relative to the anchor item. A 'Mid. to Mid.' alignment means that the middle of the stud lines up with the middle of the anchor stud. A 'Mid. to Fnt.' alignment would mean that the middle of the stud lines up with the front of the anchor stud when looking at the wall frame face-on.

To change the alignment, click in the Alignment field, then click _____ to display the **Member Alignment** dialog. Use the slider to adjust the position of the stud to achieve the alignment you want between the front and back of the wall frame.

**Offset**. The distance the stud is shifted toward the front or back of the wall frame from its anchor position. A positive value shifts the stud toward the back, while a negative value shifts it toward the front.

#### **Defining Blocking**

- To edit blocking member properties, select the *Blocking* item in the **Blocking** group in the left pane. By default there is one blocking member listed. If you want multiple blocking members in your configuration, you can add more blocking members to the **Blocking** group.
- To add a blocking member to the configuration, select the **Blocking** group or an existing Blocking item and click New
   New
   A new member is added to the list.
- 3. To add a blocking member to the configuration by copying an existing blocking member, select the blocking member to copy and then click Copy Copy.
- 4. To delete a blocking member from the configuration, select the blocking member to

delete and then click		Delete
Delete		

 To define parameters for a blocking component, select the blocking component in the left pane, then define the parameters in the right pane. You The parameters are described below.

#### General

**Name**. The name of the blocking item as it appears in the Blocking group in the left pane.

**Use member from**. To use the framing member assigned to the wall in its properties, select **Wall Properties**. To use a specific member from the member library, select **Member Library**, then make a selection from the **Catalog Access** dialog. The latter option overrides the Framing Member selection in the wall's properties.

**Member**. If *Wall Properties* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays a generic description, 'Wall Frame Member', indicating that the member to be used is the one selected in the wall's properties. If *Member Library* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays the member type to be used (as selected from the Member library). To select a different member, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Catalog Access** dialog.

**Rotation**. The rotation of the member about its center line (core). Click the down arrow in this field to select the angle of rotation ( $0^{\circ}$ ,  $90^{\circ}$ ,  $180^{\circ}$  or  $270^{\circ}$ ).

#### Quantity Info

**Usage**. What the member will be used for. Usages can be used as sort keys in estimates and reports. To select a usage, click in this field and then click **____** to display the **Usages** library.

**Phase**. The building stage or process in which this member will be used. Phases can be used as sort keys in estimates and quantity reports. To select a phase, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Phases** library.

#### Behavior Along Wall

**Break at Stud**. If you select **Yes**, the blocking will be broken at each stud, resulting in separate members between each set of studs. If you select **No**, one solid member will run across the wall.

#### Position Bottom to Top

**Placement**. Select the component from which you want to offset the blocking a specific distance - **from bottom plate** or **from top plate**.

**Initial Offset**. The distance the blocking is offset from the top or bottom plate (whichever you selected in the Placement drop box).

**Spacing**. Specifying a value here creates copies of the blocking member vertically within the wall, from the initial offset point. The Spacing value represents the spacing between blocking members.

**Stagger**. If you have set your blocking member to break at studs, selecting **Yes** here will stagger the blocking members across the wall. If you select **No**, the members will all be even with each other. The stagger distance is the thickness of the member.

#### Position Front to Back

**Alignment**. The front-to-back position of the blocking member relative to the stud. A 'Mid. to Mid.' alignment means that the middle of the blocking member lines up with the middle of the stud. A 'Back to Fnt.' alignment would mean that the back of the blocking member is attached to the front of the studs.

**Offset**. The distance the blocking member is shifted toward the front or back of the wall frame from its anchor position. A positive value shifts the member toward the back, while a negative value shifts it toward the front.

#### Defining the Top Plate

 To define the top plate, select Top Plate in the left pane, then define the parameters in the right pane. The parameters are described below.

#### General

**Use member from**. To use the framing member assigned to the wall in its properties, select **Wall Properties**. To use a specific member from the member library, select **Member Library**, then make a selection from the **Catalog Access** dialog. The latter option overrides the Framing Member selection in the wall's properties.

**Member**. If *Wall Properties* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays a generic description, 'Wall Frame Member', indicating that the member to be used is the one selected in the wall's properties. If *Member Library* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays the member type to be used (as selected from the Member library). To select a different member, click in this field and then click ______ to display the **Catalog Access** dialog.

**Rotation**. The rotation of the top plate about its center line (core). Click the down arrow in this field to select the angle of rotation  $(0^{\circ}, 90^{\circ}, 180^{\circ} \text{ or } 270^{\circ})$ 

#### Quantity Info

**Usage**. What the member will be used for. Usages can be used as sort keys in estimates and reports. To select a usage, click in this field and then click **____** to display the **Usages** library.

**Phase**. The building stage or process in which this member will be used. Phases can be used as sort keys in estimates and quantity reports. To select a phase, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Phases** library.

#### Position Front to Back

**Anchor to**. (Bottom Plate) The top plate is anchored to the bottom plate. This means that the front-to-back position of the top plate within the frame is relative to the position of the bottom plate (see Alignment below). **Alignment**. The position of the top plate relative to the position of the bottom plate. For example, a 'Mid. to Mid.' alignment would mean that the middle of the top plate lines up with the middle of the bottom plate. A 'Mid. to Fnt.' alignment would mean that the middle of the middle of the top plate lines up with the front of the bottom plate, and so on and so forth.

To change the alignment, click in the Alignment field, then click _____ to display the **Member Alignment** dialog. Use the sliders to adjust the position of the top plate relative to the bottom plate.

#### **Defining the Very Top Plate**

- To define the very top plate, select the Very Top Plate item in the left pane.
- 2. Define the parameters in the right pane. The very top plate has the same parameters available as the top plate (see above).

# Intersection Lookup Table Library

#### Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Intersection Lookup Table Library contains a list of intersection lookup table names. If you customize framing configurations for intersections in Framing Mode, you can save your custom configurations to an intersection lookup table that can be used in future projects.

Because there are so many different types of possible intersections, it is not possible to define intersection framing configurations externally (i.e. independently from an actual model). They can only be defined in Framing Mode. Therefore, the entries in the Intersection Lookup Table library are simply table names that act as holders of information defined within the model.

You can add, edit and delete table names in the Intersection Lookup Table Library.

# Customizing the Intersection Lookup Table Library

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Intersection Lookup Table Library contains a list of intersection lookup table names. If you customize framing configurations for intersections in Framing Mode, you can save your custom configurations to an intersection lookup table that can be used in future projects.

Since intersection framing configurations can only be defined in Framing Mode (with an actual model), the Intersection Lookup Table Library contains only table names. You can add, edit and delete table names in the Intersection Lookup Table Library.



To access the Intersection Lookup Table Library from the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button I on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Framing Libraries > Intersection Lookup Table.

## To access the Intersection Lookup Table Library from your building location settings:

- Select Settings > Building Locations, or click : on the View Control toolbar.
- 2. In the **Building Locations** dialog, click in the **Framing Options** column.
- 3. In the **Location Framing Options** dialog, double-click the intersection lookup table listing.

#### To add a lookup table to the list:

- Select Edit > Add Intersection Lookup Configuration, or right-click in the lookup table pane and select Add Intersection Lookup Configuration.
- 2. In the **Lookup table** dialog, type a name for the table, then click **OK**.

**Note**: Adding a lookup table name to the library is only useful if the lookup table library is empty and you have been prompted for a lookup table. You cannot save custom intersection framing configurations (that you have defined in Framing Mode) to an existing lookup table. You can only create a new one. To create a new table that is populated with intersection configurations, go to Framing Mode and then click on a wall intersection. Then, in the **Edit Intersection** dialog, click **Export**.

#### To edit the name of an existing lookup table:

- 1. Select the table in the list.
- Select Edit > Edit Intersection Lookup Configuration, or right-click in the lookup table pane and select Edit Intersection Lookup Configuration.
- Edit the name in the Lookup table dialog, then click OK.

#### To delete a lookup table from the list:

- 1. Select the table to delete.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or select Edit > Delete Intersection Lookup Table Configuration, or right-click in the lookup table pane and select Delete Intersection Lookup Table Configuration.

## **End Condition Library**

The End Condition Library contains a number of different end condition configurations that you can use when defining framing at wall intersections. End conditions are selected in the Wall Intersection dialog when defining framing options for intersections in Framing Mode.

End condition configurations determine the number of studs at the end of a wall, the rotation of each stud, and the position of each stud relative to the wall core or other studs.

You can add, edit and delete end condition configurations in the End Condition Library.

# Customizing the End Condition Library

#### Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The End Condition Library contains a number of different end condition configurations that you can use when defining framing at wall intersections. End conditions are selected in the Wall Intersection dialog when defining framing options for intersections in Framing Mode. End condition configurations determine the number of studs at the end of a wall, the rotation of each stud, and the position of each stud relative to the wall core or other studs.

You can add, edit and delete end condition configurations in the End Condition Library.



To access the End Condition Library in the Library Manager:

- Select File > Catalogs > Library Manager, or click the down arrow next to the Catalogs button in on the Standard toolbar and select Library Manager.
- 2. In the Library Manager, select Libraries > Framing Libraries > Wall End Conditions.

## To access the End Condition Library from an intersection in Framing Mode:

- Go into Framing Mode (View > Framing Mode On/Off).
- 2. Double-click an intersection, or select the intersection and then right-click and select **Properties**.
- 3. In the **Edit Intersection** dialog, click either **Add** or **Edit**.
- 4. In the **Wall Intersection** dialog, click in the *End Condition* field, then click _____ in that field.

## To add a new end condition configuration to the library:

- Select Edit > Add End Condition Configuration, or right-click in the end condition pane and select Add End Condition Configuration.
- 2. Define the configuration in the **End Condi**tion dialog. See *Defining an End Condition Configuration* on page 668.

#### To edit an existing end condition configuration:

- Double-click the end condition in the list, or select the end condition to edit and select
   Edit > Edit End Condition Configuration, or right-click and select Edit End Condition Configuration.
- 2. Define the configuration in the **End Condi**tion dialog. See *Defining an End Condition Configuration* on page 668.

## To delete an end condition configuration from the library:

- 1. Select the configuration to delete.
- Press the Delete key on your keyboard, or select Edit > Delete End Condition Configuration, or right-click and select Delete End Condition Configuration.

## To view an end condition configuration without editing it:

- 1. Select the configuration to view.
- Select Edit > View End Condition Configuration, or right-click and select View End Condition Configuration.

## Defining an End Condition Configuration

Building Essentials | Construction Suite

End condition configurations determine the number of studs at the end of a wall, the rotation of each stud, and the position of each stud relative to the wall core or other studs. End conditions are selected in the Wall Intersection dialog when defining framing options for intersections in Framing Mode.

End condition configurations are stored in the End Condition Library, where you can add, edit and delete configurations.

#### To define an end condition configuration:

1. Open the End Condition Library, and then choose either the **Add End Condition** 

### Configuration or Edit End Condition Configuration tool.



- 2. To add a stud to the configuration, click
  New New . A new member is
  added to the list.
- To add a new stud by copying an existing stud in the configuration, select the stud to copy and then click Copy Copy. A copy of the stud is added to the list.
- 4. To remove a stud from the configuration, select the stud to remove and then click



5. To define the parameters of a stud in the configuration, select it in the left pane, and then define its parameters in the right pane. The parameters are described below.

#### General

**Name**. The name of the stud as it appears in the list of studs in the end condition configuration (e.g. End Stud).

Use member from. To use the framing member assigned to the wall in its properties, select **Wall Properties**. To use a specific member from the member library, select **Member Library**, then make a selection from the **Catalog Access** dialog. The latter option overrides the Framing Member selection in the wall's properties.

**Member**. If *Wall Properties* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays a generic description, 'Wall Frame Member', indicating that the member to be used is the one selected in the wall's properties. If *Member Library* is selected in the 'Use member from' field, the Member field displays the member type to be used (as selected from the Member library). To select a different member, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Catalog Access** dialog.

**Rotation**. The rotation of the member about its center line (core). Click the down arrow in this field to select the angle of rotation  $(0^{\circ}, 90^{\circ}, 180^{\circ} \text{ or } 270^{\circ})$ .

- Quantity Info -

**Usage**. What the member will be used for. Usages can be used as sort keys in estimates and reports. To select a usage, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Usages** library.

**Phase**. The building stage or process in which this member will be used. Phases can be used as sort keys in estimates and quantity reports. To select a phase, click in this field and then click _____ to display the **Phases** library.

#### Position Along Wall

**Anchor to**. The item to which the stud is anchored or lined up with when looking at the stud's position along the length of the wall. If there is only one stud in the list, the only available option is 'Wall End'. If there is more than one stud in the list, you can choose to anchor the stud to the wall end or to another stud in the configuration.

Alignment. The position of the stud relative to the anchor object. If the stud is anchored to the Wall End you can position the stud to the left or right of the wall end, or center it on the wall end. If the stud is anchored to another stud in the configuration, you can specify which side you want the stud to be positioned on. For example, if the First Stud is anchored to the End Stud and has a 'Lt. to Rt.' alignment, the left edge of the First Stud is anchored to the right edge of the End Stud. In other words, the First Stud would appear after the End Stud when looking along the length of the wall.

To change the alignment, click in the Alignment field, then click **I** to display the **Member Alignment** dialog. Use the sliders to adjust the anchor or alignment position.

**Offset**. The distance the stud is shifted from its anchor position. A positive value shifts the stud to the right, while a negative value shifts the stud to the left.

#### Position Front to Back

**Anchor to**. The component to which the stud is anchored when looking at the member's position within the width of the wall (from the front of the wall frame to the back). In other words, the stud's position is relative to the anchor component's position. If there is only one stud in the configuration, the only choice here is 'Wall Core'. If there is more than one stud in the configuration, you can anchor to the wall core or to another stud in the configuration.

Note that "wall core" refers to the configuration of studs, top plate, bottom plate and very top plate as a whole.

Alignment. The position of the stud relative to the anchor item. A 'Mid. to Mid.' alignment means that the middle of the stud lines up with the middle of the wall core or anchor stud. A 'Mid. to Fnt.' alignment would mean that the middle of the stud lines up with the front of the wall core or anchor stud when looking at the wall frame face-on.

To change the alignment, click in the Alignment field, then click _____ to display the **Member Alignment** dialog. Use the sliders to achieve the alignment you want between the front and back of the wall frame.

**Offset**. The distance the stud is shifted toward the front or back of the wall frame from its anchor position. A positive value shifts the stud toward the back, while a negative value shifts it toward the front.

# Chapter 27: Workspace Settings

## Workspace Settings

You can customize many aspects of your work environment to maximize your design experience and create a space that is tailored to the way you like to do things. For example, you can turn toolbars on and off, move toolbars, move the information panel, and control the toolbar area color and drawing area color.

You can also control the way the program responds graphically, by enabling or disabling Hardware Acceleration, or adjusting Interactive Lighting settings.

If you have problems with your graphics display, see *Improving Graphics Display* on page 676.

## **Interface Settings**

Many aspects of the Envisioneer interface are totally customizable, making it easy to create a work environment that suits your personal taste and needs. For example, you can select which toolbars you want to display, whether you want to display a toolbar as tabbed or non-tabbed, and even change their color. You can move non-tabbed toolbars around on the screen by simply clicking and dragging them.

The Information Panel on the right side of the screen, which displays things like the catalog and camera properties, can be hidden from view, resized or moved.

You can also hide the status bar or scroll bars if desired.

By default, the drawing area is white, but you can change the drawing area color if you want.

You can also control whether or not the Startup Screen launches every time you start the program.

## **Displaying/Hiding Toolbars**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

There are several toolbars available for display in both Model View and Worksheet View. (By default, not all of them are displayed.) You can hide or show individual toolbars by editing your program settings. When you display a toolbar, it is displayed in one of the toolbar areas which are located directly above and below the drawing area. Note that if you hide a toolbar that is displayed in a tab, the tab is hidden from view as well.

#### To hide or show toolbars:

- 1. Select **Settings > Toolbars**.
- 2. Click in the *Tabbed* column next to the toolbar's name.
- To display the toolbar in tabbed format, select Tabbed from the drop box.
- 4. To display the toolbar in non-tabbed (floatable) format, select **Normal**.
- 5. To hide the toolbar from view, select **Off**.
- 6. Click **OK**.

**Tip**: If a toolbar is currently floating freely on the screen, you can hide it by clicking the close button on its title bar, or right-clicking its title bar and selecting **Hide**.

## Displaying Toolbars in a Tabbed Format

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can display any toolbar in tabbed format, meaning a tab will be added to the row of toolbar tabs below the menu bar.

#### To display a toolbar in a tab:

- 1. Select Settings > Toolbars.
- Click in the *Tabbed* column next to the toolbar's name, then select **Tabbed** from the drop box.
- 3. Click OK.

## Displaying Toolbars in a Non-Tabbed Format

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can change any tabbed toolbar to be displayed as a non-tabbed, floatable toolbar.

#### To display toolbars in non-tabbed format:

- 1. Select **Settings > Toolbars**.
- Click in the *Tabbed* column next to the toolbar's name, then select **Normal** from the drop box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

## Changing the Color of Toolbar Areas

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The program has two toolbar areas: one directly above the drawing area, and one directly below the drawing area. You can change this color in your workspace Program Settings.

#### To change the color of toolbar areas:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- Click the color swatch next to the **Toolbar** Areas option.
- In the Color dialog, select or create the desired color for your toolbar areas, then click OK to return to the Program Settings dialog.
- 5. Click **OK**.

# Customizing Toolbar Colors and Effects

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Every toolbar has a set of advanced settings that control its appearance. These settings include the background color, text color, and whether the background color is solid or has a gradient effect. You can customize the colors and effects of each individual toolbar.

To customize toolbar colors and effects:

- 1. Select Settings > Toolbars.
- 2. In the Program Settings dialog, click



- In the **Toolbar Colors** dialog, select the toolbar that you want to customize in the left pane.
- To edit the color of text, click the color swatch above the **Text** item, and then make a selection from the **Color** dialog.
- To edit the toolbar's background color, click the color swatch above the **Background** item, and then make a selection from the **Color** dialog.
- 6. To display the background color as a solid, enable the **Solid** radio button.
- To create a gradient effect with the background color, enable the **Gradient** radio button. A gradient effect involves the gradual transition from one shade to another.
- 8. Click **OK**.

**Tip**: You can save your toolbar color settings to a **.theme* file that can be loaded at any time. See *Saving a Toolbar Color Theme* on page 672.

## Saving a Toolbar Color Theme

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you have customized your toolbar color settings you can save the color settings to a theme file. Once you have saved your color settings to a theme file you can then load the theme at any time without having to set all your toolbars colors again.

#### To save a toolbar color theme:

- 1. Select **Settings > Toolbars**.
- 2. Set up your toolbar colors as desired. In addition to the background color, you can define advanced settings such as text color and gradient color effects (see *Customizing Toolbar Colors and Effects* on page 672).
- 3. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click the **Save Theme** button.
- 4. In the **Save As** dialog, type a name for the theme in the *File name* edit box. You can also select an existing theme file to overwrite.
- 5. Click Save.

## Loading a Toolbar Color Theme

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can instantly load any saved toolbar color theme using the Load Theme tool in your toolbar settings.

#### To load a toolbar color theme:

- 1. Select Settings > Toolbars.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click the **Load Theme** button.
- 3. In the **Open** dialog, select the theme you would like to load.
- 4. Click Open.

## **Moving Toolbars**

You can drag any non-tabbed toolbar to any location on the screen. At window edges, the toolbar will automatically dock itself according to the location. For example, if you drag it to the right edge of the screen, it will assume a vertical orientation.

If you drag it into the drawing window, it will float freely. You can then move it by dragging it by its title bar.

#### To move a toolbar:

1. Click and hold your mouse button over the left grip end of the toolbar (or its title bar if it is currently in the drawing area).



- 2. Drag the toolbar to the desired location.
- 3. Release the mouse button.

## Displaying/Hiding the Information Panel

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, an information panel is displayed on the right side of the screen. When you are in Insertion mode, the panel displays the catalog of elements. In Worksheet View, the panel displays object properties. You can hide the information panel from view if you want.

#### To display or hide the information panel:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Tool Display* area, check or uncheck the **Info Panel** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## **Resizing the Information Panel**

When the information panel is docked at one side of your screen, you can make it narrower or wider by simply clicking and dragging its edges. If you have moved the panel away from the edge, so it is freefloating, you can resize it by clicking and dragging its corners.

#### To resize the information panel if it is docked:

 Position your pointer over the panel's left outside edge. (If you have moved the panel to the left side of the screen, position your pointer over the right edge.) Watch for the Resize cursor to appear.





- 2. Click and drag the edge of the panel to stretch it in the desired direction.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

#### To resize the information panel if it is free-floating:

- 1. Position your pointer over one of the panel's corners.
- 2. Click and drag to stretch the panel.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

## Moving the Information Panel

If the information panel is docked on one side of the screen, you can move it by clicking and dragging its outside edge. If you move a panel to the side of the screen, it will automatically dock itself to the edge of the screen. Otherwise, the panel is displayed as a free-floating window.

If the panel is free-floating, you can move it by clicking and dragging its title bar.

#### To move the information panel when it is docked:

1. Position your pointer over the panel's outside edge. Watch for the Move cursor.





- 2. Click and drag the panel to move it.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

## To move the information panel when it is free-floating:

- 1. Position your pointer over the panel's title bar.
- 2. Click and drag the panel to move it.
- 3. Release your mouse button.

## **Displaying/Hiding the Status Bar**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

The Status bar is located at the bottom of the screen. It displays helpful prompts while you are working on your design project. For example, if you are inserting a wall, it may display "Pick first insertion point". The Status bar also includes a selection of drawing aid buttons such as ORTHO and OBJSNAP. The Status bar can be toggled on and off as needed.

#### To display/hide the Status bar:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Tool Display* area, select or clear the **Status Bar** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Changing the Color of the Drawing Area

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can select a different color for your drawing area. There are settings for both Model View and Worksheet View.

#### To change the color of the drawing window:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. To change the color of the drawing area background in Model View, click the color swatch next to the **Model View** option in the *Workspace Colors* area. To change the color of the workspace in Worksheet View, click the color swatch next to the **Worksheet View** option.
- In the Color dialog, select or create the desired color, then click OK to return to the Program Settings dialog.
- 5. Click **OK**.

## Displaying/Hiding the Scroll Bars

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

There are scroll bars on the bottom and right side of the drawing area. You can toggle them on and off.

#### To display/hide the scroll bars:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Tool Display* area, select or clear the **Scroll Bars** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

**Note**: Disabling the scroll bars does not disable the auto-scroll feature. The Auto Scroll control is located on the Drawing Aids page of the Program Settings dialog.

## Enabling a Virtual Keyboard

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

You can use the **Enable Virtual Keyboard** option to display a virtual keyboard on the screen that will enable you to type on the screen without using a keyboard. This is ideal for touchscreen devices.

#### To enable a virtual keyboard:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Work-space** in the left column.
- 3. In the *Visual Aids* area, enable the **Enable Vir-tual Keyboard** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

# Controlling the Launch of the Startup Screen

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, a Startup screen appears every time you start the program. The Startup screen lets you quickly open new and saved projects, and provides instant access to a variety of learning and support resources. If you prefer you can disable the launch of the Startup screen.

#### To control the launch of the Startup screen:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. On the General page of the **Program Set**tings dialog, check or uncheck the **Launch Startup Screen** check box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

**Tip**: If the Startup screen is currently displayed, you can disable its future launch by disabling the **Display on startup** check box at the bottom of the screen. To view the Startup screen any time, select **Help > Launch Startup Screen**.

## Viewing the Startup Screen

The Startup screen lets you quickly open new and saved projects, and provides instant access to a variety of learning and support resources. Any time the Startup screen is not displayed you can launch it instantly through the Help menu.

#### To view the Startup screen:

click

1. Select Help > Launch Startup Screen, or

🕺 🦹 on the Help toolbar.

**Note**: To launch the Startup screen automatically on program startup (or prevent it from launching) you need to set the Launch Startup Screen option in your program settings. Launching it from the Help menu or toolbar will not cause it to launch automatically at startup.

## **Keyboard Shortcuts**

Keyboard shortcuts let you access tools quickly without having to make selections from menus or toolbars. A keyboard shortcut can be a single button on your keyboard (such as the F1 key), or a sequence of buttons that you press to invoke a command. For example, to select the Walls tool you would type **I** (for Insert) and then **W** (for <u>W</u>alls) on your keyboard. In this example, the letters typed are the underlined letters in the Insert menu name and Walls menu item. You can customize keyboard shortcuts to simplify and speed up your design process.

## Customizing Keyboard Shortcuts

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

Many commands have keyboard shortcuts assigned to them in your Program Settings. You can create and edit shortcuts for all commands in the program.

#### To customize a keyboard shortcut:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Keyboard** in the left column.
- From the Mode drop box, select either Model View or Worksheet View depending on where the command is located.
- 4. Locate the command whose shortcut you would like to specify in the list of available commands. If the command is not listed, it is not eligible for a shortcut.
- If a shortcut is currently assigned to the command, the shortcut is displayed in the Current Quick Key for Command edit box. To remove the current shortcut from the command, click Remove.
- 6. To assign a new shortcut to the command, place your cursor in the **Press Keys** edit box, then press the desired key sequence on your keyboard, just as if you were using the shortcut to execute the command. The keys you press appear in the edit box as you type.
- Once you've entered the key sequence, click
   Assign. The new shortcut now appears in the
   Current Quick Key for Command edit box.

**Tip**: You can use any character (letter or number) on your keyboard, as well as the SHIFT and CTRL keys when defining your shortcut sequence.

**Note**: If the shortcut that you have entered is already assigned to another command, the command is displayed in the **Currently Used By** drop box. You will need to specify a different shortcut.

8. To save your keyboard shortcut settings to a file, click **Export**. In the **Save As** dialog, type a name for the file in the *File name* edit box,

then click **Save**. Shortcuts are saved to a special *.qck file.

 To import keyboard shortcuts that you have saved, click **Import**. In the **Open** dialog, locate and select the *.qck file that you want to import, then click **Open**.

## Graphics

The type of graphics card you have in your computer can affect the way the program's graphics are displayed and behave on your screen. You may find that graphics are choppy or display a lot of artifacts. There a number of different things you can try to improve the graphics display. For example, you could try lowering your screen resolution, or lowering your *Windows* color settings. To speed up performance you can disable interactive lighting, or disable tool tips. Use the System Check utility to get a recommendation on the best driver to use for optimal graphics display. If you view in Virtual Reality mode, you can make VR viewing stereoscopic for a more immersive experience.

## Improving Graphics Display

The type of graphics card you have in your computer can affect the way the program's graphics are displayed on your screen. If the display seems unstable or contains some graphic **artifacts**¹, here are some tips on how you may be able to improve the display:

- Lower your screen resolution (to 1024 x 768, for example) in the *Windows* Display Properties dialog. To access this dialog, right-click your *Windows* desktop and select Properties. In the Display Properties dialog, select the Settings tab.
- Lower the color setting in the *Windows* Display Properties dialog box. For example, if your colors are set to True Color (32 bit), change the setting to High Color (16 bit).
- 3. Disable interactive lighting, which is the realtime lighting effect you see when you insert

¹Fuzz or distortion in a graphic image or sequence of video images. Large digital pixels ("blocks") and jerkiness in the video stream are examples of artifacts.

light fixtures in Rendered or Rendered Outline display mode.

4. Disable tool tips. By default, tool tips are displayed as you hover over elements with your cursor.

# Performing a Graphics System Check

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

If you are having issues with the graphics display, or simply want to find out if you can improve graphics display, you can use the system check utility to check which graphics card is installed on your computer, as well as the version of the driver. The utility may then recommend a different driver to use. Installing the recommended driver may improve your graphics display.

#### To perform a graphics system check:

- Select Settings > Program Settings and select Graphics in the left pane of the Program Settings dialog.
- 2. The **Video Card** pane displays information about the currently installed graphics card and driver.

It also recommends the best driver for graphics performance.

## Changing the Quality Level of Interactive Lighting

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

As you insert light fixtures in your design you can see real-time lighting effects if working in Rendered or Rendered Outline display mode. By default, the quality level of interactive lighting is set to *Low*, which provides an adequate lighting display for the average computer. If your computer has a powerful video card, you can select a higher level of quality for your interactive lighting.

#### To change the quality of interactive lighting:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Graphics** in the left column.

- In the *Lighting* area, select either Low, Medium or High.
- 4. Click **OK**.

**Note**: Selecting a higher quality level can slow down your graphics display.

## **Disabling Interactive Lighting**

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, you can see real-time lighting effects as you insert light fixtures in Rendered or Rendered Outline display mode. If interactive lighting slows down your graphics display, or you simply do not want to use it, you can disable it.

To disable interactive lighting:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Graphics** in the left column.
- 3. Disable the **Enable interactive lighting** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## Stereoscopic VR Viewing

Personal Architect | Pro Architect | Building Essentials | Construction Suite

By default, a standard 360° view is produced during virtual reality viewing in Presentation Mode. If you switch to a stereoscopic view, depth data is added between the foreground and background, creating a more immersive experience.

#### To enable or disable stereoscopic VR viewing:

- Select Settings > Program Settings or click
   on the Settings toolbar.
- 2. In the **Program Settings** dialog, click **Graphics** in the left column.
- In the VR pane, check or uncheck the Stereoscopic check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

### Glossary

#### #

#### 2D Designer's Plan

A flat, overhead view with colors and textures applied. A 2D plan view in rendered display mode.

#### 2D Plan

A flat, overhead view.

#### **3D Overview**

A predefined 3D Camera view where the camera is elevated to provide an aerial view of the model.

#### **3D Perspective**

A three-dimensional view in which the scale of an element decreases according to its distance from the viewer. This produces the same impression of distance and relative size as that received by the human eye.

#### **3D QuickView**

A 3D view of your model from a predefined angle.

#### **3D RealView**

A rendered image with photorealistic properties such as textures, lighting, and shadows.

#### 3DS File

3D Studio file. The program can convert these files for use as Furnishings elements.

#### Α

#### **Aligned Dimension**

A dimension that lies at the same angle as the element it is dimensioning.

#### Alkaline

Having a PH of more than 7.

#### Alt Code

Alternate Code. An extra identification code that is used to link an element in the program's catalog to the databases of other applications like Timberline.

#### **Ambient Light**

The available light in a scene. Ambient light comes from all directions and has no visible source.

#### **Angle of True North**

The location on the horizon directly below the North Star. In other words, it is the geographic North, as opposed to magnetic North, which is the direction indicated on a compass.

#### Angle Snap

Makes elements move/rotate at specific increments (angles).

#### Animation

A movie. A series of images that, when viewed in rapid succession, create the illusion of movement through a scene.

#### Antialiasing

A method of improving image quality by smoothing out jagged edges. This is achieved by adjusting pixel positions or setting pixel intensities so that there is a more gradual transition between the color of a line and the background color.

#### Array

A method of copying an element into a pattern of rows and/or columns.

#### Artifacts

Fuzz or distortion in a graphic image or sequence of video images. Large digital pixels (blocks) and jerkiness in the video stream are examples of artifacts.

#### **Aspect Ratio**

The ratio of width to height.

#### Assembly

Items or parts that are linked to an element, but do not exist in the drawing. For example, walls have assemblies such as insulation, vapor barrier, and drywall screws.

#### **Auto Texture Mapping**

Applies a UV map, which is a flat, 2D representation of the vertices of the 3D model. It defines where the 2D pixels in your texture will be placed on the 3D surface. For imported elements, selecting Auto uses the mapping already applied to the element.

#### **Automatic Save**

Saves your drawing for you at specified intervals without prompting.

#### AVI

Audio Video Interleaved. A common video file format by Microsoft that can be used to record animations.

#### **Awning Window**

A window having a sash hinged on pins at the two top or bottom corners of the frame. It opens outward.

#### В

#### **Back Bearing**

The bearing of a back station as observed from the station next in advance.

#### Backsplash

The rear portion of a countertop that sits against the wall, or a splash guard that is fastened to the wall and sits above the countertop.

#### Balustrade

A railing consisting of balusters (spindles) attached to a top rail. Used along stairs, landings, porches, decks, etc. Also called a banister.

#### Baseboard

A board or moulding along the base of a wall. Also called skirting.

#### **Batch Printing**

A process of printing a number of selected views at once.

#### **Batt Insulation**

Pre-cut, flexible insulation that fits inside wall cavities between the studs.

#### **Bay Window**

A window made up of three sash units that project out from the wall. Usually includes a roof structure.

#### Beam

In a deck frame, structural member supported by posts that acts to support the decks floor joists.

#### Bearing

A surveying term used to designate direction. The bearing of a line is the acute horizontal angle between the North meridian and the line.

#### Berm

A mound or bank of soil without formal sides. You often see large berms on the sides of highways, which are used for noise control.

#### **Bi-Fold Doors**

Narrow doors that are hinged to fold against each other and flat against the jamb.

#### **BIM File**

Building Information Modeling file. BIM is the process of generating and managing building data.

#### **Bird's Mouth**

The notch cut in the lower end of a rafter to fit it to the top plate of a wall.

#### **BLD File**

BUILD file. The drawing file produced by the program. The extension given to the program's drawing files.

#### Block

A single object that is composed of many other objects.

#### Blocking

Members that run perpendicular to studs in order to provide reinforcement, or attachment sites for mounted hardware.

#### ВМР

Bitmap. An image file whose bits are referenced to pixels.

#### **Board-and-Batten**

A type of exterior siding or interior paneling that has alternating wide boards and narrow wooden strips, called battens.

#### **Bottom Plate**

The bottom member of a framed wall. Also called base plate or sole plate.

#### **Boundary Hatch**

A tool that lets you define an area with hatching applied to it.

#### **Bow Window**

A type of bay window made up of several window units set at slight angles to form a curve.

#### **Box Mapping**

A texture mapping method that creates a rectangular bounding box around the element, then applies a texture to each of the box's 6 sides. This would be useful for an element such as a sofa.

#### Bullnose

A heavily rounded edge usually found on stair treads.

#### С

#### **CAD** File

A file created in a Computer-Aided Design program such as AutoCAD. The most common file types are DWG and DXF.

#### **Casement Window**

A window having a sash hinged on pins at the top and bottom corners of one side. It opens outward by means of a crank.

#### **Catalog Directory**

The directory containing the Master Catalog and other catalogs that you have created.

#### **Catalog Panel**

The window on the right side of the screen that displays the contents of the current catalog.

#### Category

A group, often named or numbered, to which items are assigned based on similarity or defined criteria.

#### **Cathedral Ceiling**

A high, open, usually slanting or pointed ceiling.

#### **Ceiling Height**

The height of the underside of a ceiling surface relative to the floor level.

#### **Center Object Snap**

Snaps to the center point of an arc or circle.

#### **Chair Rail**

A decorative molding applied horizontally to a wall inside a room at a height of about 3 feet. Used to prevent chairs from marring the wall.

#### **Collision Control**

An intelligent drawing aid that prevents elements from being inserted where they won't fit.

#### **Color Bleed**

The degree to which different colors blend where they meet.

#### Commander

An editing window that appears when certain functions are chosen. It provides precise control over such things as distance and direction.

#### Complexity

The level of detail shown when elements are displayed.

#### **Composite Wall**

A wall comprising a structural wall and veneer wall separated by an air space.

#### Compression

The conversion of data into a format that requires fewer bits, usually so that it can be stored or transmitted more efficiently.

#### **Coordinate Icon**

A small symbol displayed in the drawing area that marks the current point from which an action will be performed when using the Commander.

#### **Cove Molding**

A molding with a concave face used as trim.

#### Crawlspace

The shallow area beneath a house enclosed by the foundation walls.

#### Cripple

The short members used to frame under the sill or above the header in a rough opening for a window in a framed wall.

#### Crosshairs

Intersecting lines that represent the two coordinate axes.

#### **Crown Molding**

A decorative molding along the top of a wall.

#### **Cut Line**

A standard 2D drafting symbol used to represent a break in the drawing. It indicates that the object continues in the same manner after or between the break lines.

#### **Cylinder Mapping**

A texture mapping method that creates a cylindrical bounding box around the element. The texture is then mapped to the cylinder. This might be an ideal option for elements such as round columns.

#### D

#### **Daylight Saving Time**

Time usually one hour ahead of standard time.

#### Delimeter

A character that marks the beginning or end of a unit of data.

#### Diffuse

The amount of color that is reflected when an element is illuminated by a light.

#### **Display Filter**

A dialog box used for displaying and hiding elements and/or locations.

#### Division

A construction division identification. In North America, CSI divisions are used.

#### **Double Roof**

A type of hip roof in which the slope to all four sides is broken into two slopes. Both slopes have a pitch.

#### DPI

Dots Per Inch. The measurement of resolution for printers.

#### **Drag-and-Drop Mode**

The default mode you are in when you select an element for editing. You can move

and rotate elements with your mouse when you are in Drag and Drop mode.

#### **Drawing Aids**

Tools that control the way your cursor works and the way elements are inserted.

#### Drywall

Gypsum, sometimes with additives, made into paper-covered sheets for use an interior wall or ceiling covering.

#### Duplicate

Copies a selected element on the same location.

#### **Dutch Gable**

A combination of a hip and gable roof. On either end, the lower segment is a hip roof and the upper segment is a gable end. Also known as a Dutch Hip Roof or a Full Return Gable.

#### DWG

Standard file format for saving vector graphics in applications like AutoCAD.

#### DXF

Drawing Exchange Format. An ASCII or binary file format of a CAD drawing.

#### **Dynamic Cutaway**

A 3D view of your model that you can strip away by sliding a clipping plane back and forth.

#### Е

#### Editor

A software application capable of editing text.

#### Element

A specific type of element, such as a door, having its own distinct properties (size, appearance, etc.).

#### Elevation

1. The front, back and side views of a building. 2. The height of an element above the floor or terrain.

#### Emissive

The amount of light given off by a material. The more emissive a material is, the more self-luminous it appears.

#### Estimate

A report containing a listing of materials, quantities, unit costs, and total cost.

#### F

#### **Face Mapping**

A texture mapping method that applies the texture to every single face of the element component. This is the most common texture mapping option used in the program

#### **Face Slider**

Two or more doors that open by sliding to the side in front or behind each other. Also called bypass doors.

#### Fascia

A flat wood or plywood strip nailed to the overhanging ends of rafters.

#### Fillet

Connects two lines together at a point where they would naturally meet if both were extended.

#### Filter

To exclude an element or location from being displayed, quantified or selected.

#### **Fixed Window**

A window whose sash is permanently fixed in the frame.

#### **Floor Level**

The height of a floor (location) above the ground (0).

#### **Fold-Back Stairs**

Stairs that have two flights separated by a landing and that make a complete 180-degree turn. Sometimes called Scissor Stairs.

#### **Fold-Up Door**

A door made up of a number of narrow panels that opens overhead by folding up like an accordian.

#### **Forward Bearing**

The direction of a line segment from the current station. Bearings are measured in degrees (360 in a full circle), clockwise from the North meridian.

#### Foundation

The supporting portion of a structure below the ground floor construction, or below grade, including the footings.

#### Frame Rate

The number of images displayed per second. The video playback rate of an AVI animation.

#### **Framing Mode**

A special display mode where individual walls, openings and intersections are displayed as "glass boxes" for ease of identification and selection. In this mode you can edit the framing configurations for individual wall openings and intersections.

#### **Framing Rule**

The direction and order in which walls are framed.

#### G

#### Gable Roof

A roof with two sloping sides (as opposed to a Hip Roof, with four sloping sides).

#### **Girt Wall**

A wall built up of horizontal structural members that are suspended between vertical columns. Usually found in industrial buildings.

#### **Glass Slider**

A door having a wood or aluminum frame fitted with one fixed glass panel and one sliding glass panel. Often called a patio door.

#### **Global Illumination**

An algorithm used in 3D computer graphics rendering. Global illumination simulates the many reflections of light around a scene, generally resulting in softer, more natural shadows and reflections.

#### Grayscale

An image in which colors are represented by shades of gray.

#### Grid

A visual aid consisting of a pattern of horizontal and vertical lines.

#### Grid Snap

An invisible grid whose lines you can snap to with your cursor when inserting elements.

#### Н

#### **Hardware Acceleration**

Takes advantage of any installed graphics card that supports hardware acceleration, increasing the speed of your graphics display.

#### Hatching

A pattern of lines used to represent a material, such as wood or concrete. Hatching is only visible in Patterned display mode.

#### Head

The top member of a window sash or door frame.

#### **Head Height**

The height at which the tops of openings, doors, and windows are located relative to the floor level.

#### Header

The structural members placed horizontally over doors, windows and wall openings.

#### **Hidden Line**

A view mode where hidden lines are removed from the view, leaving only surfaces displayed.

#### Highlite

A pane of glass located at the top of a window or door.

#### **Hinged Door**

Any type of door that swings open.

#### Hip Roof

A roof with four sloping sides (as opposed to a Gable Roof, with two sloping sides).

#### **Hopper Window**

A window in which the sash is hinged on pins at the two bottom corners, and which opens inward.

#### **Hung Window**

A window having two sashes, and whose lower sash slides up and over the fixed, upper sash on the inside.

#### Hyperlinks

Jumps (links) to external document files or web addresses.

#### Ι

#### IES File

Name derived from Illuminating Engineering Society. A photometric data file (Lights file) containing Luminaire definition and information.

#### IFC

A file format deriving from the Industry Foundation Classes (IFC) data model that describes building and construction industry data.

#### **Index of Refraction**

The amount that light bends as it passes from one material to another.

#### **Industry Foundation Classes**

A data model commonly used for Building Information Modeling (BIM) which describes building and construction data.

#### Infill

The framing material that fills the volume of a wall. Usually studs, top plate, bottom plate and very top plate.

#### Info Panel

The pane on the right side of the screen that displays the catalog in Model View, or object properties in Worksheet View.

#### **Insertion Object Snap**

Snaps to the insertion point of text, blocks, imported model views, and imported CAD objects.

#### **Interactive Lighting**

Real-time lighting effects displayed while you are inserting light fixtures in Rendered or Rendered Outline mode.

#### Interface

Program components that you see on the screen and use to perform tasks.

#### **Intersection Lookup Table**

An internal library of intersection framing configurations.

#### **Intersection Object Snap**

Snaps to the point where objects cross each other.

J

#### **Jack Stud**

The trimmer that supports a header in a framed wall opening.

#### Jamb

The wood or metal pieces that form the sides and top of a door or window enclosure.

#### Joist

One of a parallel set of structural members used to support floor and ceiling loads. They, in turn, are supported by beams, girders, or bearing walls.

#### Κ

#### **King Stud**

The stud next to a door or window opening to which the jack stud and header are nailed.

#### L

#### **L-Winder Stairs**

Stairs that ascend in an L-shape and that use wedge-shaped treads called winders to change direction.

#### Landing

A platform between flights of stairs or at the termination of a flight of stairs.

#### Layers

Like overlays used in paper-based drafting, layers are used to organize the content of a drawing and group information by function.

#### Line Style

Settings that determine the color, pattern and thickness of a line.

#### Line Type

The pattern of a line, such as dashed or solid.

#### **Line Weight**

The thickness (or heaviness) of a line.

#### **Linear Dimension**

A horiziontal or vertical dimension.

#### Lite

A pane of glass in a window or door.

#### Load-bearing

A structural member or combination of members, such as a wall, that supports a load in addition to its own weight.

#### Locations

Drawing layers containing definitions for wall height, floor level, head height and ceiling level.

#### **Louvre Window**

A small, slatted window placed high in a gable end. Used mostly for ventilation.

#### Lumen

A Lumen is equal to one foot-candle (the amount of light one candle generates one foot away) falling on one SQUARE foot of area.

#### Luminaire

The international term for a piece of lighting equipment. The complete unit including lamp, fixture, and other parts.

#### Μ

#### **Magnetic North**

Magnetic North is the magnetic north pole. It is the focus of the planet's magnetic field and is the point magnetic compasses point toward.

#### Mansard Roof

A type of hip roof in which the slope to all four sides is broken into two slopes. The upper slope is nearly or completely flat, while the lower slope has a sharp pitch.

#### Margin

% of Retail Price that is Gross Profit.

#### Markup

The % difference between the Cost and Retail price of an item.

#### Masonry

Brick, stone, concrete or concrete block.

#### **Masonry Section**

A 2D drafting symbol that indicates where masonry is used.

#### Material Usages

Determine which materials are suitable to be applied to specific elements.

#### **Materials Paintbrush**

A tool for instantly applying a selected material to the surface of an element.

#### Member

Pieces of lumber or steel used in the construction of a building, such as studs, rafters, beams and piers, or as decorative accents, such as baseboards and crown molding.

#### Midpoint Object Snap

Snaps to the midpoint of a line or arc.

#### Model View

A view window with a 3D environment where you create and edit a 3D model.

#### **Mono Footing**

A pad of masonry, usually concrete, that is wider than the column it supports. Used to transfer the load of the column.

#### Mullion

A thin, non-structural bar between window and door units.

#### **Muntin Bars**

The vertical and horizontal members that divide the individual panes of glass in a window.

#### Ν

#### **Nearest Object Snap**

Snaps to a point on a line, circle, arc or other object that is nearest to the center of the pickbox (where the crosshairs intersect).

#### Newel

The main post to which the end of a railing is attached.

#### Niche

A recess in a wall.

#### **Non-load-bearing**

A structural member or combination of members, such as a wall, that supports no load other than its own weight.

#### Nosing

The portion of a stair tread that projects over the riser.

#### **Nudge Distance**

The distance an object moves when you nudge it by pressing the arrow keys on your keyboard.

#### 0

#### **Object Snaps**

Drawing aids that snap your pickbox to common points on objects, such as endpoints and midpoints.

#### **Open GL**

A 3D graphics Application Programming Interface (API) that includes routines for shading, texture mapping, texture filtering, anti-aliasing, lighting, geometry transformations, etc.

#### Opening

A cutout in a wall.

#### Ortho

A Drawing Aid that restricts drawing to straight up, down, left, or right.

#### **Orthogonal View**

An alternate name for Parallel View in which all drawing lines are parallel and the effect of distance is eliminated. Contrasts with Perspective View.

#### Overhang

The part of the roof that extends over the side wall. Also, the distance from the side wall to the fascia.

#### Ρ

#### Pan

A control that allows you to move the onscreen view by dragging up, down, left, or right.

#### **Paper Margin Lines**

Displays dashed lines near the edges of the virtual paper, indicating the location of your page margins. They denote the non-printable areas of the paper.

#### **Paper Shadow**

A virtual piece of paper in the drawing area that represents the paper size selection in the view's Print Properties.

#### **Parallel View**

A 3D view that eliminates the effect of distance from a view. In Parallel View, all drawing lines are parallel. Contrasts with Perspective View. Parallel View is sometimes called Orthogonal View.

#### Parametric

Having a set of physical properties that determines the characteristics of an element.

#### PDF

Portable Document Format. A file format created by Adobe Systems for the purpose of sharing documents.

#### **Perpendicular Object Snap**

Snaps to a point on a line, arc or circle that forms a perpendicular from the current

point to the selected object.

#### **Perspective View**

A 3D view in which the scale of an element decreases according to its distance from the viewer. Drawing lines converge to a vanishing point. Perspective View represents the way an element would appear to the human eye.

#### Phase

A stage in the construction process, such as Foundation, Exterior Construction, or Exterior Finish.

#### **Photo Board**

A digital image that is oriented vertically in 3D view, much like a billboard.

#### **Photometric Data File**

A file that allows you to define complex light distributions based on physical lamp properties. When loading a photometric file, a photometric web is constructed that defines the intensity of light for any direction from a light source.

#### Pickbox

A square located at the center of the crosshairs, used for selecting objects.

#### Pixel

A word invented by combining the two words picture and element. The smallest unit of color on a computer display. The number of pixels per inch depends on the display device dimensions.

#### **Pixel Search Distance**

The Pixel Search Distance determines how close your cursor (which is attached to an element you are inserting) needs to be to an existing element before Object Snap occurs.

#### **Plan View**

A flat, 2D view from above.

#### Plate (top plate)

The top member of a framed wall upon which the rafters and ceiling joists rest.

#### Plateau

A relatively large, flat area of land situated above the adjacent land.

#### Pocket Door

A door that rolls on an overhead track into a frame or pocket hidden in the wall.

#### Polygon

A closed shape with three or more line segments.

#### **Polygon Hatch**

A tool that lets you draw a polygon (closed shape with 3 or more sides) with a hatch pattern applied to it.

#### Polyline

A continuous, multi-segmented line.

#### **Portal Frame**

A simple support structure comprising rafters atop a pair of columns.

#### **Print Scale**

The ratio of units on paper to units on the screen. For example, a scale of 1/4" = 1'-0" means that every foot of the model is represented by 1/4" on paper when the drawing is printed. A wall that is 12' long would be 3" on paper.

#### Profile

An outline of an object seen from the side, as in a section view.

#### **Project Directory**

The location of the default directory in which projects are stored.

#### **Project Estimate**

A report containing a listing of materials, quantities, unit costs, and total cost.

#### **Project Trace Image**

A BMP, JPG or TGA image that you can import into your drawing area.

#### Q

#### **Quadrant Object Snap**

Snaps to the 0-, 90-, 180- and 270-degree positions on a circle or arc.

#### **Quantity Report**

A list of the type and quantity of materials in your model. Also known as a Materials List or Bill of Materials.

#### Quoins

Stones or blocks reinforcing or accenting the corners of a building.

#### Quote

A list of products with quantities, pricing and other important information. Used by building material supply retailers, wholesalers, distributors and contractors to facilitate the design, sale and installation of construction projects.

#### R

#### Rafter

Structural members that make up the framing for a roof and roof overhang, and that support the sheathing and roofing materials.

#### **Raised Heel**

The vertical distance from the support point of a truss to the point where the roof slope intersects.

#### Rake

To incline from the perpendicular.

#### Raster

A digital image, or bitmap. A data file representing a rectangular grid of pixels, or points of color, on a computer monitor, paper, or other display device.

#### Raytracing

A method for rendering 3D computer graphic images. It traces the path taken by a ray of light from the camera through the scene, then calculates the reflection, refraction, or absorption of the ray when it intersects objects in the scene.

#### Render

To generate a photorealistic image of a 3D model using a raytracing and/or radiosity algorithm to perform lighting calculations.

#### **Rendered Mode**

A display mode where solid textures and colors are applied to surfaces, creating a realistic 3D effect.

#### **Rendered Outline Mode**

A display mode where solid colors and textures are applied to surfaces, and the surfaces are outlined with a dark line for high definition.

#### **Retaining Wall**

A wall constructed to contain a lateral force, such as a bank of dirt.

#### **Revision Cloud**

A cloud shape drawn around an area of your drawing to bring attention to that area.

#### **Rigid Insulation**

Non-flexible panels often used on roofs and walls to provide thermal insulation.

#### Riser

1. The vertical board placed between the treads of a staircase. 2. A vertical run of pipe.

#### **Roller Door**

A door made of hinged, horizontal steel or wood panels that move on rollers in overhead and side tracks.

#### **Room Division**

A tool used to split an automatic floor into multiple floor surfaces, or define an opening

in the floor.

#### **Rough Opening**

The opening created in a wall to receive a door or window frame.

#### S

#### Saddle

A small, double-sloping roof built behind upper-story walls or the back side of a chimney to divert water around the wall or chimney.

#### Sash

A frame that holds one or more panes of glass and that is set into the window frame.

#### Scale (print)

The ratio of units on paper to units on the screen. For example, a scale of 1/4" = 1'-0" means that every foot of the model is represented by 1/4" on paper when the drawing is printed. A wall that is 12' long would be 3" on paper.

#### Schedule

An itemized report of doors or windows in your project which includes a description and count for each item.

#### Seat Cut

The horizontal cut that is made when cutting a bird's mouth in a rafter.

#### Section

A cross-section view created by cutting through the building. Useful for clarifying construction details.

#### Separator

Any character used to separate words, such as a blank space or punctuation mark.

#### Setback

The amount of space local zoning regulations require between a lot line and a building line.

#### Shininess

The ability of a texture to reflect light.

#### Sill

A member located at the lower side of a rough or finished opening, as a window sill.

#### Site Boundary

A closed line that shows the legal property boundary (lot lines), and is annotated with bearing text, length text and peg numbers. You can specify setbacks as well, which define your building envelope.

#### Slab

Concrete pavement, i.e. driveways, garages, and basement floors.

#### Slope

Ground that forms an incline. Also, the incline angle of a roof surface.

#### SmartView

A view of your 3D model that you insert on a worksheet. It can be a 2D plan, elevation, section, 3D QuickView or 3D Camera view. A SmartView can be instantly updated if you make changes to your model.

#### Snap Angle

The increment angle your cursor will snap at (if Angle Snap is enabled).

#### Snap Tracking

Helps you draw objects at specific angles or positions relative to other objects. When snap tracking is turned on, temporary alignment paths appear that are based on object snap points, such as endpoints and midpoints.

#### Soffit

The area below the eave and overhang. The underside where the roof overhangs the walls.

#### Solid Filling

Solid shading applied between wall lines in 2D plan view.

#### Span Table

A list of wall opening widths (spans) with head/sill/jamb configurations for each.

#### Specular

Reflection that creates highlights on materials, making them appear shiny.

#### Split L-Shaped Stairs

Stairs that ascend in an L-shaped direction and whose landing is split on a diagonal to make the change in direction.

#### Spot Point

A point on a TIN terrain mesh that contains X, Y and Z coordinate data. Determines the elevation of the terrain at that point.

#### Spreadsheet

A table of values arranged in rows and columns.

#### **Status Bar**

The bar below the drawing area that contains the Help message for the current state or action.

#### **Stereo Vision**

A 3D view with the added perception of depth when 3D glasses are worn.

#### Stringer

The inclined side of a stair that supports the treads and risers.

#### **Strip Footing**

A flat, masonry section, usually concrete, that is wider than the wall it supports. Used to transfer the vertical load of the wall.

#### Studs

Members inserted vertically in a wall frame.

#### Suspended Ceiling

A grid of T-shaped bars hung on wires from overhead support framing, into which removable panels are inserted to form a finished ceiling that allows easy access to the area above it. Typically found in office buildings and basements.

#### Т

#### **Tangent Object Snap**

Snaps to a point on an object that forms a tangent between the object and another point.

#### Template

A set of pre-defined properties that determines the setup and outcome of something (like a report).

#### **Temporary Directory**

The default directory in which temporary files generated by the program are saved.

#### Terrain

A piece of land.

#### **Texture Mapping**

The way in which a texture (e.g. bitmap image) is applied to the surfaces of an element.

#### **Tile Height**

The height of one tile in a texture pattern. The program generates large images by tiling texture bitmaps horizontally and vertically.

#### **Tilt Door**

A door consisting of a single leaf that opens overhead by tilting up (e.g. Tilt Garage Door).

#### **TIN Mesh**

Triangulated Irregular Network mesh. A representation of the terrain's surface contours based on a set of spot level points.

#### **Title Block**

A rectangular area in the lower right corner of a construction document which reports information about the drawing, such as the drawing number, drawing title, and name of the person who prepared the drawing.

#### **Toe Space**

A recessed area between the bottom of a cabinet and the floor that allows you to stand close to the cabinet. Also called a toe kick.

#### **Top Plate**

The horizontal framing member nailed to the top of the vertical studs.

#### Transom

A small window sash above a door that is hinged at bottom so it can be opened inward.

#### Transparency

The degree to which a texture can be penetrated by light.

#### **Tray Ceiling**

A ceiling constructed with the sides angling at approximately 45 degrees or curving to another flat ceiling.

#### Tread

The horizontal part of a stair that is stepped on.

#### **True North**

True North is the geographic North Pole. It is located at 90 degrees North latitude and all lines of longitude converge at the pole. The Earth's axis connects the north and south poles. The Earth's axis is the line around which the Earth rotates.

#### Truss

A variety of members made up into a series of triangles. Used for constructing roofs.

#### Twip

Abbreviation for 'twentieth of an inch point'. A unit of measure that determines the width of something in print or on the screen. It equals 1/1440 inch or 1/567 of a centimeter.

U

#### **U-Winder Stairs**

Stairs that ascend in a U-shaped direction.

#### Usage

What an element is used for. For example, a piece of wood could be used as a stud or a beam.

#### **UV Mapping**

A UV map is a flat, 2D representation of the vertices of the 3D model. It defines where the 2D pixels in your texture will be placed on the 3D surface.

#### V

#### **Vector Graphic**

The representation of an image through the use of geometric objects such as curves and polygons.

#### **Vector Printing**

A vector-based, resolution-independent method of printing that yields sharp, highquality output. In vector printing, nonobjects such as the background color are not printed.

#### Velocity

Quickness of motion. The distance covered per second.

#### Veneer

A layer of stone, brick, stucco or other decorative material that is used to cover a framed wall.

#### Vent Window

A window made up of two or more segments with one segment acting as a vent.

#### Very Top Plate

The top member of a framed wall upon which the rafters and ceiling joists rest. Sits above the top plate.

#### Video Compression

The conversion of data into a format that requires fewer bits, usually so that it can be stored or transmitted more efficiently.

#### **View Filter**

A feature that allows you to turn the display of selected objects on or off as well as control their selectability.

#### **View Tabs**

Tabs below the drawing area that provide access to open view windows.

#### VRML

Virtual Reality Modeling Language. The open standard for virtual reality on the Internet.

#### W

#### Winder

One of the wedge-shaped treads that make up a winding or spiral staircase.

#### Windowing

A selection method where you click and drag a rectangle, from left to right, around elements you want to select.

#### Wireframe

The default 3D view where all lines making up elements are displayed. It allows you to see through elements.

#### Wood Section

A 2D drafting symbol used to indicate the presence of wood elements such as blocking or posts.

#### **Worksheet View**

A 2D drafting mode where you can prepare working drawings for print.

## X

#### X Axis

One of the three drawing axes. An X coordinate specifies a horizontal distance.

## Y

#### Y Axis

One of the three drawing axes. A Y coordinate specifies a vertical distance.

## Z

## Z Axis

One of the three drawing axes. The Z coordinate indicates either elevation or depth.

#### Z Buffer

A block of memory used to store the Z-axis value of a pixel on the screen. Higher depth values improve detail of 3D display but may slow the system.

#### Zenith

Culminating point.

#### Zoom Realtime

Magnifies or shrinks the view as you click and drag with your mouse.

#### Zoom to Fit

Zooms the drawing to the extents of the drawing area, creating a maximized view of your entire design.

### Zoom Window

Magnifies an area of your drawing that you select by windowing.

## **Tool Guide**

Click on a tool below to view information on how to use it, as well as handy notes and tips.

A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | L | M | O | P | Q | R | S | T | U | W | Z

#### 1-2-3

#### 3D QuickView

## Α

Add Control Point Add Sound Node Add Surface Node Adjust to Plane Align Dimension (Model View) Align Dimension (Worksheet View) Aligned Dimensions (Model View) Aligned Dimensions (Worksheet View) Angular Dimensions Appliances Arc - 3 Points (Model View) Arc - 3 Points (Worksheet View) Arc - Start, Center, End Tool (Model View) Arc - Start, Center, End (Worksheet View) Arc - Start, End, Radius (Model View) Arc - Start, End, Radius (Worksheet View) Array (Model View) Array (Worksheet View) Attach Sound File Auto Break Auto Interior Dimensions Auto Place Outlets |

## в

Baseline Dimension (Model View) Baseline Dimension (Worksheet View) Batt Insulation (Model View) Batt Insulation (Worksheet View) Berms/Trenches Boundary Hatch Break (Model View) Break (Worksheet View) €

## С

Cabinets Ceiling by Perimeter Ceiling by Picking Points Ceiling by Room Chamfer Change Style (dimension) Circle - 2 Points (Model View) Circle - 2 Points (Worksheet View) Circle - Center, Radius (Model View) Circle - Center, Radius (Worksheet View) Columns Continuous Dimension (Model View) Continuous Dimension (Worksheet View) Convert Framing to Members **Corner Details** Create New Elevation Create New Section Curve Cut Line (Model View) Cut Line (Worksheet View) Cut Opening ٠

## D

Decks
Deck Stairs
Define Block
Define SmartView
Delete
Delete Unreferenced SmartViews
Description
Description with Leader
Door Schedule
Doors
Dormer Roof
Duplicate (Model View)
Duplicate (Worksheet View)
Dynamic Cutaway

## Е

Edging Edit Block Attributes Edit Radius Electrical Elements Electronics Elevate Control Point Ellipse - Axis (Model View) Ellipse - Axis (Worksheet View) Ellipse - Center (Model View) Ellipse - Center (Worksheet View) Elliptical Arc - Axis (Model View) Elliptical Arc - Axis (Worksheet View) Elliptical Arc - Center (Model View) Elliptical Arc - Center (Worksheet View) Equipment Explode Export Polyline to Profile Library Extend (Model View) Extend (Worksheet View) Exterior Accessories on Location Exterior Accessories on Terrain Exterior Furniture on Location Exterior Furniture on Terrain Exterior Lighting on Location Exterior Lighting on Terrain **Exterior Structures** ٠

### F

Fences Fillet - Join Fillet - Radius Fills Floor by Perimeter Floor by Picking Points Floor By Room Fly Around €

## G

Gates

#### Н

Hide All Items Except Hills/Valleys HVAC Elements

#### I

Import CAD File (Model View) Import CAD File (Worksheet View) Import Image Insert Attribute Insert Block From File Insert Block Insert Path (animation) Insert SmartView Insert View (Model View) Interior Accessories Interior Furniture Interior Furniture Interior Lighting Intersect Planes Irrigation

## J

Join Dimension (Model View) Join Dimension (Worksheet View) Join Polyline ♠

#### L

Lengthen Arrow Lengthen Linear Dimensions (Model View) Linear Dimensions (Worksheet View) Line (Model View) Line (Worksheet View) Look Around

## м

Make All Items Non-Selectable Except Masonry Section (Model View) Masonry Section (Worksheet View) Match Planes Materials Paintbrush Measure (Model View) Measure (Worksheet View) Members by Matching Plane Members by Picking Points Member Schedule Mirror (Model View) Mirror (Worksheet View) Mono Footings Attached to Columns Mono Footings by Picking Points Move Dimension Line Move Dimension Line Move (Model View) Move (Worksheet View) Move Edge Move Edge - Adjust Support Height (roof) Move Edge - Maintain Support Height (roof)

#### 0

Offset (Model View) Offset (Worksheet View) Openings Overall Dimension (Model View) Overall Dimension (Worksheet View) €

#### Ρ

Pads Pan Paths Photo Board Pick Items to Hide Pick Items to Make Non-Selectable Place New Camera Plants Plateaus Play Sound **Plumbing Fixtures** Polygon Hatch (Model View) Polygon Hatch (Worksheet View) Polygon Polyline Portal Frames +

## Q

Query Element/Location

#### R

Railings on Stairs Automatically Railing by Picking Points Railing on Stair Center Railing on Stair Left Railing on Stair Right Rectangle Redefine SmartView Remove Control Point **Remove Opening** Remove Sound Node Remove Sound Resize (PDF, CAD and inserted model view images) **Retaining Walls** Rigid Insulation (Model View) Rigid Insulation (Worksheet View) Roof Accessories Roof by Perimeter Roof by Picking Points Room Dimensions Room Division Room Region by Picking Points Room Region by Room Room Region Schedule Rotate (Model View) Rotate (Worksheet View) ٠

## s

Scale Select/Edit Set Decking Direction Shutters Single Timber Frame Site Boundary Skylights Slopes Split Dimension (Model View) Split Dimension (Worksheet View) Stairs/Ramps Stretch (Model View) Strip Footings Attached to Walls Strip Footings by Picking Points Surfaces

### т

Text (Model View) Text (Worksheet View) Text with Leader (Model View) Text with Leader (Worksheet View) Timber Frames Trim (Model View) Trim (Worksheet View) Truss Run €

#### U

Update SmartView Update SmartView (Global) Update Style 👔

#### W

Walk Around Walls Walls by Baseline Windows Window Schedule Wiring Wood Section (Model View) Wood Section (Worksheet View) €

#### Ζ

Zoom Realtime Zoom Window

#### Index

#### #

# of Horizontal Panels 49, 53-54 # of Horizontal Panes 49, 53-54 # of Vertical Panels 49, 53-54 # of Vertical Panes 49, 53-54 2D Designer's Plan 259 2D display of members 43 2D Image export 590 2D Percent Open 196 2D Plan 257, 259 viewing 257, 259 2D Viewing 259 2D% Open (swing) 47 3D Camera Views 257, 260-264, 269-270 changing 261 changing target height 264 changing the camera height 263 changing viewing field angle 264 changing viewpoint 263 creating 261 displaying 260 displaying camera properties panel 262 flying around in 257, 269 moving cameras 263 moving the target 264 spinning the view 257, 270 walking around 257, 269 3D Model export 591 3D Model view 269 navigating in 269 3D Overview 260 3D Percent Open 196 3D Perspective 260 3D Quick View 257, 259 viewing 259 3D Real View 267-268, 529-532, 535-538, 677 about 529 adjusting brightness 533-534 adjusting burn 533-534 adjusting intensity of trees and billboards 536 adjusting lights 537 adjusting noise reduction level 536 allowing background brightness adjustment 536 checking system graphics 677 creating 532 creating grayscale output 533 editing sky settings 268 enabling reflections/shadows 268

quality level 535 saving 533 setting global location 530 setting plant season 531 setting the lighting 530 setting the viewpoint 530 specifying lighting exposure 268 surface properties of materials 537 troubleshooting 538 using antialiasing 535 using background texture as light source 537 using physically accurate lighting 267 3D Stereo View 283 3D Studio export 591 3D Studio files, importing 586 3D Viewing 259 3D% Open (swing) 47 3DS export 591 3DS import 585-586, 638 20-20 Design 588, 592 exporting to 592 importing XML file from 588

## Α

Accessories 165-166, 213-214 applying materials 166, 214 deleting 166, 214 editing size 165, 213 exterior 213 interior 165 moving 165, 213 raising/lowering 165, 213 rotating 165, 213 Activate View 260, 263-264, 276 Activation, program 24 Active with CTRL key only (Auto Scroll) 40, 49 Add Assembly 640-641 Add Catalog 599 Add City 530 Add Comment 484 Add Control Point 543 Add Element 604, 612 Add field 471 Add Group 597, 612 Add layer 361 Add location data before prefix (wall panel tag) 133-134, 143 Add location data before suffix (wall panel tag) 133-134.143 Add Member to Structural Floor 65
Add Node 70, 77, 203 ceiling 77 deck 203 floor 70 Add Opening Height after Width 313 Add product record 482 Add Profile 635 Add Sound Node 544 Add Stock Item 482, 499 Add Subgroup 597 Add Surface Node 106 Add Template 456 Add Text Style 308, 626 Adjust Height to Door 49 Adjust Height to Window 54 Adjust Support Height (Move Edge) 95 Adjust to Plane 38 Adjust Width 49, 54, 83, 86 Adjustment rate, Grand Total 500 Admin Mode (Quote Generator) 487 Adopting default fields 471 Advanced Members 31-33 Advanced toolbar color settings 672 Age, plants 178 Air conditioners, central 174 Air returns 174 Alian Dimension 321.392 Aligned dimensions 316, 388 All (Extents), printing 566 All Locations On/Off 289 Allow brightness adjustment 536 Alternate Code sorting in estimate 461 Analyzing a model in REScheck 527 Angle bearing method 240, 243 Angle from Joists 204 Angle from True North 530 Angle measurement, site boundary 243 Angle of Rotation 557 Angle precision 46, 324, 628 Angle Priority 553 Angle Snap 553 Angle units 324, 628 Angle, imported CAD file 349, 577 Angle, imported image 380, 580 Angle, PDF 352, 378, 574 Angle, roof accessory 103 Angle, slope 224 Angle, terrain mesh 227 Angled walls 15, 238

Angles, measuring 434, 558 Angular Dimensions 316, 388 Animation 538-548 adding control points 543 adding sounds 544 adjusting Burn value 545 changing path order 542 changing speed 546 choosing paths to include 542 compressing 546 creating 538 deleting path 548 drawing path 539 drawing target paths 540 editing elevation of target 543 editing frame rate 547 editing resolution size 547 elevating control points 543 moving control points 542 previewing 541 ray tracing 547 removing path control points 543 removing sounds 544 repeating during preview 542 saving individual frames 545 saving to file 544 specifying file name 545 specifying save location 545 tilting the camera 543 turning paths on/off 548 Animation Paths On/Off 548 Antialiasing 384, 535 renderings 535 text in Worksheet View 384 Apexed doors 48 App, VR 533 Appearance matching 256 Appearance properties 252, 610 Appliances 153, 155, 163-164, 651 applying colors/materials 164 deleting 164 editing size 163 in Kitchen Wizard configuration 155, 651 inserting 163 inserting with Kitchen Builder Wizard 153 moving 163 raising/lowering 163 rotating 163 Apply Current Pricing to Quote 490 Apply Name Changes to Selected Panel(s) 143 Apply to All Similar (paintbrush) 254

Approx. Edge Spacing 192 Arbors 210 Arc Direction 242 Arc Radius 242 Arc size, revision cloud 435 Arc, elliptical 333, 403 Arched doors 48 Arcs 291, 295, 328-331, 339, 400-403, 436 assigning a layer to 436 controlling selectability 295 converting to 3D building elements 339 copying in Model View 330 deleting in Model View 331 deleting in Worksheet View 403 drawing in Model View 328 drawing in Worksheet View 400 editing curve in Model View 329 editing curve in Worksheet View 402 editing line style in Model View 330 editing line style in Worksheet View 402 extending to other objects in Model View 329 extending to other objects in Worksheet View 402 filtering from view 291 moving in Model View 329 moving in Worksheet View 401 offsetting in Model View 330 rotating in Model View 329 rotating in Worksheet View 401 stretching in Model View 329 stretching in Worksheet View 402 trimming to other objects in Model View 330 trimming to other objects in Worksheet View 402 Area unit of measure 45 Area/Perimeter Calculator 437 Arraying 17, 38, 250, 327, 330, 429 arcs in Model View 330 elements in Model View 250 lines in Model View 327 members 38 objects in Worksheet View 429 walls by offset 17 Arrow keys, panning and navigating with 274 Arrow length 107 Arrow rotation 108 Arrow scaling 387 Arrow style, leader 310 Art*lantis export 591 Artifacts, eliminating 676 Ascending sort order in QG reports 513

Ascending sort order in quantity reports 461 Assemblies 444, 446, 448, 606, 619, 640-641 accessing 444 applying to materials 619 attaching to elements 444 customizing library 640 defining 641 deleting from library 640 ignoring for materials in estimate 448 removing from elements 446 replacing elements with in reports 446 tracing and replacing elements 606 Attach footings to all similar columns 27 Attach Sound File 548 Attic Truss 35 Attributes 425-426 creating blocks with 426 defining 425 editing before capturing in a block 426 editing values 426 inserting blocks with 426 Authorization, program 24 Auto Break walls 18 Auto Extend wall tops 15.93 Auto Exterior Dimensions 311, 315 creating 315 specifying settings for 311 Auto Interior Dimensions 313, 315 creating 315 specifying settings 313 Auto Name 607 Auto Place Outlets 170 Auto Save 515, 563 in Quote Generator 515 setting 563 Auto Scroll 40, 49 about 40 controlling speed 40, 49 setting to be active with CTRL key only 40, 49 turning on/off 40, 49 Auto texture mapping 252, 610 AutoCAD 591 exporting 2D plan to 591 exporting 3D model to 591 Auto-cut terrain around building 217 Automatic Name Generation 607 modifying formula for 607 using 607 Automatically Insert Floors 68 Auto-rename Openings 48, 54, 59 AVI export 544

Avoid Saddle Situations 92

#### B

Background 267, 674 color 674 scene 266-267 Background brightness adjustment, allowing 536 Background texture, using as light source 537 Backsplash, properties 162 Backup Database, in Quote Generator 480 Backup files 563 Baluster Depth 90 Baluster Spacing 90 Baluster Style 90 Baluster Width 90 Balustrades 87-88 Banner, company 511 Bark 189-190 Barn rafters 34 Base Height 555 Base Level, terrain 218 Base Offset 30, 246 Baseboards 20 Baseline dimensions 318, 390 Baseline Offset (for Baseline dimensions) 322, 627 Baseline offset for walls 7 Basement, creating 7 Batch file, running after QG export 518 Batch printing 571 Bathroom Builder Wizard 156-158, 652 creating bathroom with 156 custom configuration 157, 652 launching automatically at startup 158 Bathroom Configuration 157, 652 Bathrooms, designing 156 Bathtubs 173 Batt Insulation 339-340, 415-416, 436 assigning a layer to 436 deleting 340, 416 drawing in Model View 339 drawing in Worksheet View 415 editing line style in Model View 340 editing line style in Worksheet View 415 moving in Model View 340 moving in Worksheet View 415 stretching in Model View 340 stretching in Worksheet View 415 BC Framer export 592 Beams 31 Bearing format 244

Bearing Line 64-65 inserting in structural floor 64 moving/stretching 65 removing 65 Bearing text style 243 Beds 164 Beds, garden 189 Behavior, light 168 Benches 212 Berms/Trenches 220-221 creating 220 deleting 221 editing height 221 editing shape 221 moving 221 rotating 221 stretching 221 Bill of Materials 446 Bill To information 506 Billboard 582, 584 BIM file 589, 593, 600, 602 exporting catalog content to 601-602 exporting project content to 593 importing 589, 600 importing project content from 589 Bird baths 213 Bitmaps, custom 620 Black-and-white printing 567-568 Black-and-white renderings, creating 533 Blanket insulation 339, 415 Blinds 165 Block Import Options 586 Block section 343, 418 Block simplification 609 Blocking 417, 664 Blocks 150-151, 423-426 creating 423 creating with attributes 426 defining attributes 425 deleting 425 deleting unreferenced 425 editing 424 editing attribute values 426 inserting 423 inserting from other projects 424 inserting with attributes 426 moving 424 rotating 424 scaling 424 BMP export 590 BMP import 379, 579, 620

Board Depth 195-196 Board Offset 195-196 Board Spacing 195-196 Board Width 194, 196 Board-and-Batten shutters 61 Boards, corner 23 Boise BC Framer export 592 BOM from selected panel(s) 152 Bookshelves 164 Border lines 526 Borders, drawing 348, 371, 374, 576 deleting default 371 inserting in Model View 348, 576 inserting in Worksheet View 371, 374 Borders, garden 213 Borders, wallpaper 20 Bottom Plate 116 Bottom Plate, cutting out in openings 663 Bottom Plate, defining 662 Bottom Rail Depth 90 Bottom Rail Height 89, 194, 196 Bottom Rail Style 90 Bottom Rail Width 90 Boundary Hatch 412, 414 deleting 414 editing hatch pattern 414 editing hatch pattern line properties 414 moving 414 rotating 414 stretching 414 using 412 Boundary line, polygon 337 Boundary, terrain 219 Bowls 165 Box ceilings 75 Box mapping, material 617 Box texture mapping 252, 610 Break at Columns 38 Break at Members 38 Break at Walls 38 Break line 344, 420 Breaking 18, 27, 38, 97, 192-193, 237, 327, 397, 400.432 edging 192 fences 193 lines in Model View 327 lines in Worksheet View 397 members 38 members at other elements 38 objects in Worksheet View 432

polylines in Worksheet View 400 roofs 97 strip footings 27 walls 18, 237 Brick section 343, 418 Bridging channel 664 Brightness 533-534, 536, 545 in renderings 533-534 of animations 545 of rendered images 533-534 of trees and billboards in rendered images 536 Brightness adjustment, background 536 Browse More Catalog Content 600 Building a house 1 Building Configuration 3, 651 Building Locations 53-56, 115, 256, 289, 293, 447, 455.558 adding 54 checking which location is current 55 defining 53 defining wall framing options 115 deleting 55 dimming 56 displaying/hiding 289 editing 55 filtering from project estimate 447 grouping by in cut list 455 making a location current 55 making selectable/non-selectable 293 querying an element's location 256, 558 Building lot 239-240 Buildsoft template (Constellation) 447 Bulbs, light 169, 215 Bump mapping 617 Burn 533-534 in animations 545 in renderings 533-534 By Color component creation 348, 576 By Layer component creation 348, 576 **BYLAYER 363** 

### С

Cabinets 153, 155, 157-161, 165, 253-254, 324-325, 651-652 applying finishes 160 deleting 160 editing 2D display 159 editing properties 159 editing solid fill colors 253 enabling/disabling solid fill 254 in Bathroom Wizard configuration 157, 652

in Kitchen Wizard configuration 155, 651 inserting 158 inserting countertop over 161 inserting sinks 160 inserting with Kitchen Builder Wizard 153 medicine 165 moving 158 raising/lowering 159 rotating 158 solid filling 253 specifying mark method 324 specifying mark settings 325 Cable service boxes 166 CAD files 348, 350-351, 373, 376, 436, 576, 578-579 assigning a layer to inserted blocks 436 deleting in Model View 351, 579 deleting in Worksheet View 373, 376 importing in Worksheet View 371, 374 inserting in Model View 348, 576 moving in Model View 350, 578 moving in Worksheet View 373, 376 resizing in Model View 350, 578 rotating in Model View 351, 579 rotating in Worksheet View 373, 376 Calculate total linear length only 40, 451, 454, 458 Camera Properties 262-264 Camera Properties panel 262 closing 262 Camera views 257, 260-261, 263-264 changing 261 changing target height 264 changing the camera height 263 changing the viewing field angle 264 changing viewpoint 263 creating 261 displaying 260 moving cameras 263 moving the target 264 Cameras 257, 261-263, 269-270 changing height 263 displaying properties 262 moving 263 orbiting around model 257, 269 placing new 261 resetting 270 spinning 257, 270 turning on/off 262 Cameras On/Off 262 Carpet 71 Cars 213 Cartesian Coordinate System 556

Cascade Open Views 303 Catalog Manager 603 Catalog panel 31, 35, 38-39, 673-674 about 38 displaying/hiding 673 moving 674 resizing 673 searching for elements 35, 39 Catalog Properties 600 Catalogs 35, 38-39, 443, 586, 589, 597-605, 607, 609, 612, 615 about the catalog panel 38 accessing 603 accessing libraries 615 adding a group or subgroup 597 adding elements 604, 612 adding plants from Encyclopedia 180, 188 changing order of groups 598 copying 601 creating 599 deleting elements from 607 deleting groups 598 editing elements 605 exporting content to a BIM file 602 exporting content to a TXT file 601 exporting quantitative properties to text file 443 importing content from other catalogs 589 importing manufacturer content 600 importing objects 586 locking 599 moving subgroups to the root 597 opening 600 renaming groups 598 saving 601 saving elements in drawing to 605 searching 35, 39, 603 selecting default directory 600 simplifying an element 609 unlocking 599 viewing properties 600 Catalogs Directory 600 Categories 40, 440, 443, 451, 493, 495, 507, 648 assigning to elements 440 assigning to purchased items 40, 451 changing in quote 493, 495 customizing categories library 648 exporting for all elements to text file 443 filtering in QG reports 507 setting up in Quote Generator 493 Categories library, customizing 648 Cathedral ceilings 76 Cathedral Truss 35

CD stands 164 Ceiling by Perimeter 74 Ceiling by Picking Points 74 Ceiling by Room 74 Ceiling fans 167 Ceiling Height 53 Ceiling Openings 78,85 creating 78,85 curving 78 removing 78 reshaping 78 resizing 78 Ceilings 53, 43, 74-78, 85, 111, 124, 130-131, 524 about 74 adding a node 77 applying colors/materials 77 by Perimeter 74 by Picking Points 74 by Room 74 cathedral 76 converting framing to members 43, 124, 131, 524 creating manually 105 curving edges 77 curving openings 78 cutting openings 78,85 defining extents of ceilings inserted in rooms 75 defining height 53 deleting 78 framing 124 moving 76 raising/lowering 77 removing a node 77 removing openings from 78 reshaping 76 reshaping openings 78 resizing 76 resizing openings 78 stretching 77 tray 75 Cells, editing in quote 485 Center on wall 45, 51, 57 door 45 opening 57 window 51 Center snap 366 Center, inserting openings to 46, 52, 57 Central Air Units 174 Central Vac 166 Central Vac Outlets 170 Ceramic tiles 71

Chair Rails 20 Chairs 164 Chamfer 433 Change Category (in quote) 493, 495 Change CPhase (in quote) 494 Change Style 322 Check System (graphics) 677 Circles 291, 295, 331-332, 339, 406-407, 436 assigning a layer to 436 controlling selectability 295 converting to 3D building elements 339 deleting 332 deleting in Model View 332 deleting in Worksheet View 407 drawing in Model View 331 drawing in Worksheet View 406 editing line style in Model View 332 editing line style in Worksheet View 407 filtering from view 291 moving in Model View 332 moving in Worksheet View 406 rotating in Model View 332 rotating in Worksheet View 406 stretching in Model View 332 stretching in Worksheet View 407 City 530 Clay tiles 99 Cleaning equipment 166 Clear All fields 471 Clip Terrain 242 Clocks 164 Close 565 Close Properties 262, 277, 281 Close View 301 Closed Riser 209 Closing 262, 277, 281, 301, 399, 449, 565 Camera Properties panel 262 Elevation Properties panel 277 polylines 399 project estimate dialog 449 projects 565 Section Properties panel 281 view windows 301 Clouds, revision 338, 411 Cold Angle member 39 Cold Rolled C member 39 Collapse All (groups) 299 Collapsing groups 299 Collision Control 554

Color 251, 253-254, 361, 363, 551, 610-611, 617, 631, 672-674 applying with paintbrush 254 background 674 editing for element patterns 253, 611 editing for elements through lavers 251, 610 editing for layers in current project 361 editing for layers in layers library 631 editing solid fill for elements 253 grid 551 loading a toolbar color theme 673 material 617 overriding layer color 363 revision cloud line 412 saving toolbar color settings to a theme 672 toolbar areas 672 toolbars 672 Color Bleed 538 Color Temperature (light) 634 Columns 27, 29-30, 38-40, 213, 451, 460, 635 available profiles 29, 39 breaking members at 38 creating custom profiles 635 decorative 213 deleting 30 editing dimensions 30 editing elevation 30 editing shape 29 inserting 29 inserting mono footings under 27 moving 30 reporting in purchased lengths 451 specifying purchased lengths 40, 451 using optimized results in quantity report 460 Combine Similar Products 508 Combine Similar Products (QG) 513 Comfort Adjustment 283 Comma-delimited fields 466 Command shortcuts 41,676 Commander 31, 555-557 defining X, Y, Z coordinates 556 displaying 555 entering values 556 selecting a reference point 556 specifying distance/direction 556-557 specifying insertion heights 555 turning off 555 using 555 using to curve 557 using to rotate 557 Comment Records 484, 508, 512 adding 484

displaying in reports 512 including in a report 508 Common plant names 182 Compact Database (QG) 480 Company information 497, 594 Company logo 511 Component display 608 Component Solutions export 592 Composite walls 5, 12 Compost boxes 166 Compression, animation 546 Computers 164 Concrete floor 71 Concrete section 343, 418 Connection, railing 89 Constellation report templates 447 Construction Phases 494, 507 changing in quote 494 filtering in QG reports 507 setting up in Quote Generator 494 Contact information 30 Context-sensitive help 29 Continuous dimensions 317, 389 Continuous Motion setting 275 Contours, terrain 218, 224, 228-230 Contractor quote 472 Control Points 542-543 adding to animation path 543 elevating 543 moving 542 removing 543 Controller, viewing/navigation 257 Convert a Copy 27 Convert Framing to Members 43, 124, 131, 524 Convert Roof to Surfaces 99, 108 Convert the Original 27 Convert to grayscale 533 Convert to Image, PDF 353, 574 Convert to Structural Floor 71 Converting 27, 71, 93, 99, 108, 339 drafting objects to 3D elements 339 floors to structural floors 71 hip to gable 93 older projects 27 roofs to surfaces 99, 108 Cooling units 174 Coordinate Icon 555 Coordinates 556 Copies, print 566-567 Copy and Paste (Worksheet) 429

Copy Template 457 Copy View 300 Copying 7, 17, 38, 249-250, 300, 327, 330, 345, 429, 431, 457, 601 arcs in Model View 330 by array in Model View 250 by array in Worksheet View 429 catalogs 601 elements 249 elements to other locations 249 lines in Model View 327 members by offset 38 objects by offset 431 objects in Worksheet View 429 report templates 457 view windows 300 views 345 walls 7 walls by offset 17 Corner accents 213 Corner Boards 23 Corner Details 23-24 adding to walls 23 deleting 24 editing 23 Corner framing 119 Corrupted projects 562 Cost field 466 Cost Prices 500 allowing or preventing editing 500 Cost, unit 443 Countertops 161-162 curving 162 deleting 162 editing 162 inserting 161 moving 161 stretching 161 Country 530 Cove Molding 20 CPhase filtering in QG reports 507 Create New Elevation 276 Create New from Template 25-26 Create New Project 25-26 Create New Section 279 Create PDF (Quote Generator) 509 Cripples, defining 656 Cropped textures 620 Cropping 227, 349, 352, 378, 380, 574, 577, 580 CAD file during import 349, 577 image during import 380, 580

PDF during import 352, 378, 574 terrain mesh during import 227 Crosshairs 359 Crossing selection method 427 Cross-sections 261, 279 Crown Molding 20 CSD export 591 CSG TakeOff Plus template 447 C-Shape member 39 CSV export 479 CSV export, wall panels 152 CSV import, Quote Generator 477 CSV report template 447 Cups 165 Currency symbol, controlling display of 460 Current building location 55 Current view window 302 Cursor 359 Curtains 165 Curve removal (polyline) 399 Curving 17, 27, 70, 73, 77-78, 107, 162, 190, 192, 203, 206, 232-233, 236, 242, 248, 399, 557 ceiling edges 77 ceiling openings 78 countertops 162 deck edges 203 deck openings 206 edging 192 elements 248 fills 190 floor openings 73 floors 70 pads 233 paths 232 polylines 399 site boundary edges 242 slabs 233 strip footings 27 surfaces 107 using the Commander 557 walls 17, 236 Custom Block import 586, 605 Custom door leaf import 638 Custom elements 604-605, 612 Custom notes, including in QG reports 499, 512 Custom object import 585-586 Custom Products, substituting for products in a quote 484 Custom textures 620 Customer Care 30 Customer Signature Line 512

Customers 481, 502, 506, 511 importing into Quote Generator 481 including customer info in QG report 511 selecting in Quote Generator 481 specifying information in Quote Generator 506 verifying information in Quote Generator 502 viewing database in Quote Generator 481 Customizing 306, 308, 499, 510, 616, 621-623, 626, 628, 630, 632, 634, 637, 640, 676 assemblies library 640 dimension styles library 626 door leafs library 637 keyboard shortcuts 676 labels library 306 light source library 632 line styles library 628 line types library 630 line weights library 631 material filters library 622 material usages library 621 materials library 616 patterns library 623 profiles library 634 reports in Quote Generator 499, 510 title block 371 Cut an Opening Around Next Story 92 Cut and Paste (Model View) 249 Cut and Paste (Worksheet) 429 Cut Down Long Members 454, 458 Cut Lengths 40, 440, 451 including in quantity report 440 Cut Line 84, 344-345, 420-421 deleting in Model View 345 deleting in Worksheet View 421 drawing in Model View 344 drawing in Worksheet View 420 editing the line style in Model View 345 editing the line style in Worksheet View 420 moving in Model View 345 moving in Worksheet View 420 rotating in Model View 345 rotating in Worksheet View 420 stretching in Model View 345 stretching in Worksheet View 420 Cut List 40, 447, 449-451, 454, 456, 460 disabling generation 456 filtering locations 447 optimizing 454 preview 449 printing 450 specfiying settings for 454

specifying purchased lengths for members 40, 451 using results in quantity report 460 viewing 449 Cut one piece from each purchased length 455, 459 Cut Opening 66, 72, 78, 85, 99, 112, 206 ceilings 78,85 deck 206 floors 72 roofs 99 structural floor 66 surfaces 112 Cut opening bottom plate 663 Cutaway view 261 Cut-off textures 620 Cutting Allowance 455 Cutting terrain around building 217

## D

Damaged projects 562 Database 477-481 backing up in Quote Generator 480 compacting in Quote Generator 480 exporting to CSV file 479 exporting to XML file 479 importing customers into Quote Generator 481 importing product records from XML file 478 importing products into Quote Generator 477 loading in Quote Generator 480 preparing for use in Quote Generator 477 updating product information 477 viewing customer database in Quote Generator 481 Date, setting for a scene 266-267 Datum Lines 368 defining appearance 368 Day Scene 267 Daylight 267 Daylight Savings Time 267 Deck Builder Wizard 200, 202 launching automatically at startup 202 using 200 Deck Openings 206-207 curving edges 206 inserting 206 removing 207 reshaping 206 resizina 206 Deck Stairs 207-209 adding 207

controlling railing display 208 deleting 209 editing risers 208 editing size 207 editing stringers 208 editing treads 208 moving 207 Decks 70, 200, 202-207 adding a node 203 adding stairs 207 building with Deck Builder Wizard 200 building with Deck tool 202 changing decking direction 203 changing skirting material 205 controlling display of railings 205 controlling display of skirting 205 curving deck edge 203 deleting 206 displaying footings 204 editing footings 204 editing frame 204 editing height 204 editing posts 204 inserting openings 206 moving 202 railing style 205 removing a node 70, 203 reshaping 203 rotating 202 stretching 203 Decorative columns 213 Decurving polylines 399 Default Drafting Settings 172, 434-435 Default line style for wiring 172 Default Print Setup, wall panels 149 Default Rates in Quote Generator 500 Default save directory 515, 563 projects 563 quotes 515 Define Block 423, 426 Define Floors 72, 84 Define Surface 107 Definition, pattern 623 Degree precision 46 Delete Assembly 640 Delete Report 511 Delete Unreferenced Blocks 425 Delete Unreferenced SmartViews 370 Delete View 301 Deleting 55, 19, 24, 27-28, 30, 43, 50, 56, 60-61,

65-66, 72-73, 78, 84, 87, 90, 99, 101-103, 112, 151, 160, 162, 164, 166-167, 170-171, 173-175, 178, 190, 193, 195-196, 205-207, 209-210, 212, 214, 216, 220-222, 224, 232, 234, 239, 244, 256, 278, 283, 299, 301, 308-310, 324, 328, 331-332, 336, 338-342, 344-345, 348, 351, 355, 363, 370-371, 373, 376, 379, 381, 384, 387, 394, 397, 400, 403, 407-409, 411-412, 414, 416-419, 421, 425, 434, 439, 446, 457, 471, 486, 511, 527, 548, 576, 579, 581, 584, 598, 607, 626, 640 animation paths 548 appliances 164 arcs in Model View 331 arcs in Worksheet View 403 assemblies 640 assemblies from elements 446 batt insulation in Model View 340 batt insulation in Worksheet View 416 bearing line 65 berms/trenches 221 blocks 425 building locations 55 cabinets 160 CAD image in Model View 351, 579 CAD images in Worksheet View 373, 376 ceiling openings 78 ceilings 78 circles 332 circles in Model View 332 circles in Worksheet View 407 columns 30 countertops 162 cut line in Model View 345 cut line in Worksheet View 421 deck openings 207 deck railings 205 deck stairs 209 decks 206 default drawing border 371 default title block 371 dimensions in Model View 324 dimensions in Worksheet View 394 doors 50 dormers 101 edaina 193 electrical elements 171 elements 256 elements from catalog 607 elevations 278 equipment 167 exterior structures 212 fences 195

fields from records 471 fills 190 floor openings 73 floors 72 furnishings 166, 214 dates 196 groups from catalogs and libraries 598 groups from View Manager 299 hatching 414 hills 220 HVAC elements 175 inserted images 381 layers 363 lights 170, 216 lines in Model View 328 lines in Worksheet View 397 masonry section in Model View 344 masonry section in Worksheet View 419 members 43 members from structural floor 66 model view images in Model View 348 model view images in Worksheet View 371 mono footings 28 objects in Worksheet View 434 pads 234 paths 232 PDF image 355, 379, 576 photo board 584 plants 178 plateaus 222 plumbing 174 polygons in Model View 338 polygons in Worksheet View 409, 411 polylines in Worksheet View 400 project trace image 581 railings 90 records in a quote 486 rectangles in Model View 336 rectangles in Worksheet View 408 report templates 457 reports in Quote Generator 511 revision clouds in Model View 339 revision clouds in Worksheet View 412 rigid insulation in Model View 341 rigid insulation in Worksheet View 417 roof accessories 103 roofs 99 room regions 439 schedules 527 section views 283 shutters 61 site boundary 244

skylights 102 slabs 234 slopes 224 SmartViews 371 sprinklers 210 stairs 84.87 strip footings 27 surface openings 112 surfaces 112 text 309 text in Model View 309 text in Worksheet View 384 text styles 308, 626 text with leader 310, 387 unreferenced blocks 425 unreferenced SmartViews 370 unreferenced wall panels 151 view windows 301 wall openings 60 walls 19, 239 windows 56 wiring 173 wood section in Model View 342 wood section in Worksheet View 418 Delimiter 465 Delimiter field 466 Delivery Date 506 Depth below ground level 204 Descending sort order in QG reports 513 Descending sort order in quantity reports 461 Description adding in Worksheet View 382 Description field 463, 465 Description with Leader, adding in Worksheet View 385 Description, report template 460 Deselect All 50, 427 Deselecting elements 50 Designer's Plan, 2D 259 Desks 164 Detached garages 210 Details 23, 50, 55, 83, 208, 339-341, 343, 348, 371, 374, 415-418, 420-422, 435-436, 576 assigning a layer to 436 assigning default line style 435 batt insulation 339, 415 corner 23 cut line 344, 420 deck stairs 208 doors 50 inserting pre-defined 348, 371, 374, 576

masonry section 343, 418 member spacing note 422 rigid insulation 340, 416 roof symbol 421 stairs 83 windows 55 wood section 341, 417 Diagrams, wall panel 131, 137 Dialog help 29 Diffuse material properties 617 Dimension Lap 322, 627 Dimension Offset 322, 627 Dimension Settings 311, 313 Auto Exterior 311 Auto Interior 313 Dimension Styles 135, 146, 310-311, 322, 387, 393, 626, 628 adding 626 current 311, 387, 628 deleting 626 editing 626 editing dimensions in Model View 322 editing dimensions in Worksheet View 393 selecting for wall panel diagrams 135, 145-146 specifying for text with leader 310 updating globally 322 Dimension to Center 46, 52, 57 Dimension to Edge 46, 52, 57 Dimension to stud 313 Dimensions 10, 16, 135-136, 145-146, 234, 251, 290, 295, 311, 313, 315-322, 324, 387-394, 434, 436, 558, 608, 626-628 adding opening height after width 313 aligned 316, 388 aligning 321, 392 angular 316, 388 assigning a layer to 436 Auto Exterior Dimensions 315 Auto Interior 315 auto interior settings 313 baseline 318, 390 changing style globally 322 changing style in Model View 322 changing style in Worksheet View 393 continuous 317, 389 customizing styles 626 deleting in Model View 324 deleting in Worksheet View 394 dimensioning to stud 313 displaying/hiding 290 dynamic dimension settings 10 editing onscreen to move walls 16, 234

editing the separator in opening dimensions 313 element dimensions 251, 608 Exterior Dimension Settings 311 joining 321, 393 linear 316, 388 making selectable/non-selectable 295 moving dimension line 320, 392 moving text in Worksheet View 392 overall 319, 391 overriding text in Model View 321 overriding text in Worksheet View 393 properties 322, 627 resetting text position 392 room 320 scaling 394 scaling values 394 setting current style in Model View 311, 628 setting current style in Worksheet View 387 splitting 321, 393 stretching in Model View 320 stretching in Worksheet View 392 text style 322. 627 units 322, 627 using tape measure 434, 558 wall panel diagrams 135-136, 145-146 Dimming Percentage 56 Dimming, imported CAD file 350, 578 Dimming, imported image 380, 580 Dimming, PDF 353, 378, 574 Direction 556-557 Direction of deck boards 203 Direction, site boundary edges 241 Directories 351, 374, 376, 563, 565, 579, 620, 634 drafting settings 351, 374, 376, 579 light sources 634 project 563 save 563 temporary files 565 textures 620 Disable Item (in quote) 486-487 Disabling Ortho temporarily 554 Discount, entering in quote 492 Diseases, plant 186 Dishwashers 163 Display (Print) 566-567 Display All 288-289 Display All But Framing 114 Display Comment Records (QG reports) 512 Display Currency Symbol 458, 460

Display Filter 288-291, 581 filtering building elements from view 288 filtering building locations from view 289 filtering dimensions from view 290 filtering drafting objects 291 filtering electrical wiring from view 291 filtering elements on terrain 289 filtering elevation/section marks 290 filtering Framing Mode components 290 filtering notation objects 290 filtering project trace images from view 291, 581 filtering schedule marks from view 291 filtering schedules from view 291 filtering text from view 290 using 288 **Display Framing** 113 **Display Gable 98** Display Individual Records (QG reports) 512 Display layer 364 Display Mode 283-286 Hidden Line 285 Patterned 285 Realistic 286 Rendered 285 Rendered Outline 285 Wireframe 284 Display None 288-289 Display of element parts 608 Display on startup (Startup screen) 675 Display order, layer 365 Display Properties (screen) 27 Display Wall Tags, in wall panel diagrams 136, 144 Display, improving 676 Displaying 43, 230, 290, 364-365 Framing Mode components 290 lavers 364-365 members as lines in 2D 43 terrain contour labels 230 Disposals, garbage 166 Distance 434, 556, 558 measuring in Model View 558 measuring in Worksheet View 434, 558 specifying in Commander 556 Distance above current location or terrain 246, 609 Distance from line 243 Dividing rooms 69 Division 40, 440, 451 Division line, moving 69 Division lines 526 Division sorting in estimate 461 Dollar signs, controlling display of 460

Door Bells 170 Door Heads 20 Door Leaf Import Wizard 638 Door leafs 637-639 customizing library 637 editing properties 639 importing custom 638 Door mats 213 Door Schedule 291, 295, 525-527 controlling selectability 295 defining line styles 526 defining marks 526 defining text styles 526 deleting 527 hiding 291 moving 525 printing 525 removing schedule marks 527 rotating 525 Door Sills 20 Door Swing Direction 47 Door Trim 20 Doors 10, 45-52, 54, 57, 59, 324-325, 638, 662 adding height after width in dimensions 313 adding trim 20 cutting out bottom plate 663 deleting 50 displaying sidelites/highlites 48 editing details 50 editing dynamic dimension settings 10 editing leaf 49 editing shape 48 editing size 48 editing swing properties 47 editing type 48 energy properties 49 flip entire 46 flipping swing 46 importing custom door leafs 638 inserting 45 inserting to center 46, 52, 57 inserting to edge 46, 52, 57 lowering 47 moving 46 raising 47 removing trim from openings 50 sidelites/highlites 49 specifying definition of right-hand vs. lefthand 47 specifying mark method 324 specifying mark settings 325 stretching 48, 54, 59

turning marks on/off 325 U-Factor 49 Dormer 100-101 deleting 101 inserting 100 moving 101 stretching 101 Dormer Roof 99-100 Double Angle member 39 Down to current location 207 Down to deck location 208 Down to terrain 208 Drafting Settings 172, 434-435 default line style for details 435 default line style for drafting objects 434 default line style for wiring 172 Drafting Settings Directory 351, 374, 376, 579 Drafting symbols 348, 371, 374, 576 Drafting worksheets creating new 299 Drag and Drop mode 245 Drawing Aids 31, 366, 551-554 Angle Snap 553 Collision Control 554 Grid 551 Grid Snap 552 Object Snap 366, 552-553 Ortho 554 Snap Tracking 553 Drawing borders 348, 371, 374, 576 deleting default 371 inserting in Model View 348, 576 inserting in Worksheet View 371, 374 wall panel diagrams 135, 148 Drawing Grid 551-552 Drawing scale, project trace image 580 Drivers, checking 677 Driveways 231 Drop Exterior Face 12, 14 Dryers 163 Drywall 12 D-Section member 39 DST 267 Dull finish 537 Duplicate 249, 429 Duplicate to Locations 7, 249 DVD players 164 DWG export 591 DWG import 348, 371, 374, 576, 585-586, 638 DXF export 591

DXF import 348, 371, 374, 576, 585-586, 638 Dynamic Cutaway 261 Dynamic Dimensions 10, 16, 234 editing settings 10 editing to move walls 16, 234

### Е

Edge Height 192 Edge Width 192 Edge, inserting openings to 46, 52, 57 Edging 48, 191-193, 339 breaking 192 changing length 192 changing materials 192 cleaning up corners 191 converting drafting objects to 339 curving 192 deleting 193 editing size 192 inserting 191 moving 191 repeating 48 rotating 192 Edit Assembly 640-641 Edit Block Attributes 426 Edit block definition 424 Edit City 530 Edit dimension to move wall 16.234 Edit Door Leaf 639 Edit Line 623 Edit mode 50 Edit prevention in guotes 487 Edit prevention on layers 364 Edit Profile 637 Edit Radius 332 Edit SmartView definition 369 Edit Template 457 Edit Text Style 308, 626 Editing 50-51, 245, 426-427, 466, 605 attributes before capture 426 elements in catalog 605 elements in drawing 51, 245 elements in Model View 51, 245 fields in estimate records 466 objects in Worksheet View 427 Select/Edit mode 50 Editing restrictions 599 ELC member 39 Electrical Elements 170-171 applying colors/materials 171

deleting 171 editing size 171 inserting 170 moving 171 raising/lowering 171 Electrical Junction Box 166 Electrical lights noise reduction 536 Electrical Wiring 172, 291, 295, 436 assigning a layer to 436 displaying/hiding 291 inserting 172 making selectable/non-selectable 295 selecting default line style 172 Electronics 164-166, 213, 213-214 applying materials 166, 214 deleting 166, 214 editing size 165, 213 inserting 164 moving 165, 213 raising/lowering 165, 213 rotating 165, 213 Element fields, editing 465 Element Filter 288 Element Filter in Report Template 458 Element help 29 Element import 585 Element Manager 603 Element Properties 440, 443, 603-605, 607-609, 611-612 Elements 51, 245, 256, 462, 558, 603-605, 612 adding to catalog 604, 612 editing properties 603, 605 filtering from project estimate 462 modifying 51, 245 querying 256, 558 searching for in Element Manager 603 selecting 50 Elev from 0 556 Elev from Current 556 Elev from Location 556 Elevate 14, 39, 47, 53, 59, 71, 77, 159, 163, 165-166, 168, 171, 173, 175, 177, 213, 218, 246 about 246 accessories 165, 213 appliances 163 cabinets 159 ceilings 77 doors 47 electrical elements 171 electronics 165, 213 equipment 166

floors 71 furniture 165.213 HVAC elements 175 lights 168 members 39 plants 177 plumbing 173 terrain 218 wall openings 59 walls 14 window 53 Flevate Control Point 543 Elevation labels, contour 230 Elevation Marks 277, 290, 294 controlling selectability 294 displaying/hiding 290 moving 277 turning on/off 277 **Elevation Properties 278** Elevation Properties panel 276-277 closing 277 displaying 276 zooming and panning in 276 Elevation, contours 218 Elevation, terrain 218 Elevation, walls 14 Elevations 136, 144, 275-278, 367 creating custom 276 deleting 278 detailing 278 displaying properties 276 editing properties 278 including in wall panel diagrams 136, 144 missing or extra lines in inserted SmartViews 367 moving target 278 turning marks on/off 277 viewing 275 Ellipse 332, 334-335, 403, 405 deleting 335, 405 drawing in Model View 332 drawing in Worksheet View 403 editing line style 335, 405 moving 334, 405 rotating 335, 405 stretching 335, 405 Elliptical Arc 333-335, 403, 405 deleting 335, 405 drawing in Model View 333 drawing in Worksheet View 403 editing line style 335, 405 moving 334, 405

rotating 335, 405 stretching 335, 405 Emissive 538 Emissive property, material 617 Enable Sun Light 266, 268 Enable Antialiased Text 384 Enable Item (in quote) 486 Enable Screen Tips in Model Views 50 Encyclopedia 179-186, 188 about 180 accessing 180 adding plants to catalog from 180, 188 diseases page 186 inserting plants from 179, 188 main page 181 notebook page 185 picture page 185 plant care calendar 183 plant filter 186 searching for a plant 182 selecting a plant to view 182 viewing plant information 182 world map page 184 End conditions 40, 119, 311, 667-668 customizing library 667 defining a configuration 668 defining for members 40 selecting for intersection configurations 119 specifying for exterior dimensions 313 Endpoint snap 366 Energy calculations, door 49 Enforce Material Usages 621 Enter via spacebar 49 Enter, in Worksheet View 427 Entering wall lengths 555-556 Equipment 166-167 applying colors/materials 167 deleting 167 editing size 167 inserting 166 moving 166 raising/lowering 166 rotating 166 ERP, uploading data to 520 Estimate 111, 123-124, 126, 130, 440, 443, 446-450, 456-458, 460-463, 465, 471-472, 520 adding fields to 471 controlling inclusion of ceiling frame members 124 controlling inclusion of floor frame members 123

controlling inclusion of roof frame members 126 controlling inclusion of surface frame members 111, 130 creating new report template 456 disabling cut list generation 456 editing element entries 465 editing headers/footers 463 editing pricing 443 editing quantitative properties of elements 440 editing report template 457 excluding elements from 449 filtering elements from 462 filtering locations from 447 generating a quote 472 ignoring assemblies attached to materials 448 opening quantity report in editor 448 printing cut list 450 printing quantity report 448 replacing elements with assemblies 446 report template properties 458 saving quantity report 448 selecting report template 447 sort order of materials 461 specifying how information is reported 462 uploading to ERP 520 using optimized results for members 460 viewing quantity report 446 Estimator information 502, 506, 512 adding estimators to Quote Generator 502 including in QG reports 512 specifying in Quote Generator 506 Estimator Signature Line 512 Estimator template 447 Example projects 27 Excavated areas 221 Excel template 447 Executable, Quote Generator 519 Exercise equipment 166 Expand All (groups) 299 Expanding groups 299 Expiry Date (quote) 506 Explicit Height 207 Exploding 99, 108, 434 objects in Worksheet View 434 roofs 99, 108 Export catalog items 601 Export Options, quote 515, 518 Export Polyline to Profile Library 636 Export to BIM File 602 Export TXT File 443 Exporting 152, 443, 479, 509, 515, 518, 527, 570,

590-593.601-602 2D Drawing 591 3D Model 591 catalog content to a BIM file 602 catalog content to a TXT file 601 polylines to profile library 636 product records to CSV file 479 product records to XML file 479 project content to BIM file 593 quantitative properties of catalog elements to text file 443 auote 515 Quote Generator reports to PDF 509 to 3D Studio (3DS) 591 to 20-20 Design 592 to BMP 590 to Boise BC Framer 592 to CSD iStruct 591 to DWG 591 to DXF 591 to IFC file 591 to JPG 590 to Keymark GS Software Suite 592 to Lightscape (*.LP) 591 to MiTek SAPPHIRE Structure 592 to PDF file 570 to REScheck 527 to Simpson Component Solutions 592 to Sketchfab 592 to SKP 591 to TGA 590 to Weyerhaeuser Javelin 591 wall panels to CSV file 152 Exposure, scene 266, 268 Extend to Plane (member) 38 Extend/Trim to Cutting Edge (members) 37 Extending 11-12, 15, 37-38, 90, 93, 193, 236, 326, 329. 395. 398. 402. 432 arcs in Model View 329 arcs in Worksheet View 402 fences 193 lines 326.395 members to cutting edge 37 members to plane 38 objects in Worksheet View 432 polylines 398 railings 90 wall surface down 12 walls 11.236 walls to gable roof 15, 93 Extension (cut line) 84 Extension Below Base 14

Extension for Generated Reports 460 Extension Lap 322, 627 Extension Lines 313 Extension Offset 322, 627 Extension, gable ladder 127 Extension, head/sill trim 20 Extents of ceiling in a room 75 Extents of floors in rooms 69 Extents of room regions in rooms 439 Extents, printing 566 Exterior Accessories 213 inserting 213 Exterior Dimension Settings 311 Exterior dimensions 315 Exterior Furniture 212 inserting 212 Exterior Lighting 214 Exterior Side (wall) 22 Exterior Structures 210-212 applying materials 212 deleting 212 editing size 212 inserting 210 inserting house templates 211 moving 211 rotating 211 Exterior wall assembly option 444 Exterior wall surface 12 Exterior Wall Tops to Roof 15, 93 External Notes file 497 External Notes file in QG reports 512 Eyedropper 255

## F

Face slider 48 Face texture mapping 252, 610 Fascia board 126 Fascia Depth 110, 128 Fascia Distance 98 Fascia surface edge definition 108 FAST template (Constellation) 447 Faucets 173 Fax machines 164 Feet-Inches 45 in site boundary 243 working in 45 Fence line, trimming members to 37 Fences 48, 193-195 breaking 193 changing length 193

changing material 195 deleting 195 editing properties 194 inserting 193 parts 194 repeating 48 stretching 193 Field editing 462-463, 465 Field width 465 Fields 466.471 adding to records 471 deleting from records 471 editing 466 File name, animation 545 File Paths 351, 374, 376, 549, 563, 565, 579, 600, 620, 634 Catalogs Directory 600 Drafting Settings Directory 351, 374, 376, 579 Lights Directory 634 Projects directory 563 Sounds Directory 549 **Temporary Files 565** Textures Directory 620 Files, recently used 562 Fill, solid 253-254 Filler cabinets 159 Fillet 396, 433 Fillet - Join 396, 433 Fillet - Radius 396, 434 Filleted member 39 Fills 189-190. 253-254 changing fill material 190 creating 189 curving 190 deleting 190 editing solid fill colors 253 enabling/disabling solid fill 254 moving 189 reshaping 190 resizing 189 rotating 189 solid filling 253 Filter lock 288, 292 Filter, group (Quote Generator) 513 Filter, quote 515 Filtering 186, 288-296, 447, 462, 507, 581, 608, 622 building elements for selection 292 building locations for selection 293 building locations from view 289 dimensions for selection 295

dimensions from view 290 display 288 drafting objects for selection 295 drafting objects from view 291 electrical wiring for selection 295 electrical wiring from view 291 element parts from display 608 elements from project estimate 462 elements in Project Estimate 458 elements on locations 288 elevation marks 290 Framing Mode components for selection 294 Framing Mode components from view 290 landscape elements for selection 293 landscape elements from view 289 locations from project estimate 447 materials library 622 notation objects for selection 294 notation objects from view 290 plants 186 project trace images for selection 295 project trace images from view 291, 581 reports in Quote Generator 507 schedule marks for selection 296 schedule marks from view 291 schedules for selection 295 schedules from view 291 section marks 290 selectability 292 text for selection 294 text from view 290 viewing aids for selection 294 Find and Replace 383 text in Model View 308 text in Worksheet View 383 Finding elements in the catalog 35, 39 Finding text in Model View 308 Finding text in Worksheet View 383 Finishing commands 47 Fink Truss 35 Fireplaces 174 Fireplaces, outdoor 213 Fit to Page 567-568 Flat Truss 35 Flip End (intersection framing) 119 Flip Framing 117 Flip Opening 46, 52, 58, 196 doors 46 gates 196 wall openings 58 windows 52

Flip Swing 46, 196 door 46 gate 196 Flipping 46-47, 52, 58, 196 door swings 46-47 doors 46 gate swing 196 gates 196 wall openings 58 windows 52 Floating cabinet 160 Floor and Foundation Builder Wizard 7 Floor by Perimeter 68 Floor by Picking Points 68 Floor by Room 68 Floor joist note 422 Floor Locations 53, 256, 289, 293, 447, 558 defining 53 filtering from project estimate 447 filtering from view 289 making selectable/non-selectable 293 querying an element's location 256, 558 Floor plan import 351, 377, 572 Floor registers 174 Floor Structure 63-66 adding members 65 cutting opening in 66 editing properties 66 inserting a bearing line 64 inserting by perimeter 63-64 inserting by room 64 moving framing base point 65 moving/stretching a bearing line 65 removing a bearing line 65 removing added members 66 Floor to Floor Distance 54 Floors 53-56, 7, 43, 67-73, 84, 105, 123-124, 131, 253-254.524 about 67 adding a location 54 adding a node 70 applying materials to 71 building locations 53 building new levels with Wizard 7 converting framing to members 43, 124, 131, 524 converting to structural floors 71 creating manually 105 curving 70 curving openings 73 defining extents of floors inserted in rooms 69

deleting 72 dimming 56 disabling/enabling automatic insertion 68 dividing 69 editing building locations 55 editing solid fill colors 253 editing thickness 71 enabling/disabling solid fill 254 framing 123 inserting by perimeter 68 inserting by picking points 68 inserting by room 68 inserting openings in 72, 84 moving 70 moving defined edges 70 raising/lowering 71 removing openings 73 reshaping 70 reshaping openings 73 resizing 70 resizing openings 73 solid filling 253 stretching 70 Flowers 177, 179, 188 Fly Around 257, 269, 273-274 Fold-up door 48 Follow Path 540 Font 307 Font Style 307 Font support in imported PDFs 377 Fonts used in QG reports 513 Footers 463, 512 defining in Quote Generator 512 Footings 25, 27-28, 204, 339 converting drafting objects to 339 mono 27-28 strip 25 under deck posts 204 Forced gables 97 Formulas 465, 468, 642 defining 468, 642 loading 470, 645 saving 470, 645 selecting for element records 465 testing 470, 644 Foundation 15, 238 stepped 15.238 Foundation Builder Wizard 7 Fountains 213 Frame as Load Bearing 115 Frame Rate, animation 547

Frame, door 50 Frame, skylight 102 Frame, window 55 Frames, animation 545 Frames, portal 34-35 Frames, timber 34-35 Framing 111, 113-116, 123-124, 126, 128, 130, 288, 290, 294 ceilings 124 controlling selectability in Framing Mode 294 customizing for individual walls 116 displaying 113 displaying all but 114 filtering Framing Mode components from view 290 flipping in wall 117 floors 123 locking visibility 288 roofs 126, 128 selecting wall framing member 114 surfaces 111, 130 walls 114 walls as load-bearing 115 walls as non-load-bearing 115 Framing Base Point, structural floor 65 Framing libraries 653, 655, 660, 666-667 head/sill/jamb library 655 intersection lookup table 666 wall end condition 667 wall infill 660 wall opening span table 653 Framing Member (wall) 116 Framing Mode 116-119, 290, 294 controlling selectability of framing components 294 creating custom intersection framing configurations 119 editing framing rule for individual walls 117 editing head/sill/jamb configuration for individual openings 118 editing infill for individual walls 116 editing intersection framing 119 editing span table selection for individual walls 118 enabling/disabling 116 filtering framing components from view 290 Framing Options 115 defining in building locations 115 per building location 54-55 Framing panels, wall 131, 133, 137 Framing rule 117 selecting for building locations 115

selecting for individual walls or wall types 117 Freeze pick 296 Freezers 163 Fresnel 617 Front Elevation 275 Fully Reflective finish 537 Fully Transparent finish 537 Function (F) keys 41 Furnaces 174 Furniture 164-166, 212-214 applying materials 166, 214 deleting 166, 214 editing size 165, 213 exterior 212 interior 164 moving 165.213 raising/lowering 165, 213 rotating 165, 213 Furring channel 664

### G

Gable board 126 Gable dormer 100 Gable end appearance 15, 93-94 Gable end display 98 Gable end walls 94 Gable Front 100 Gable ladder 126 Gable return type 110, 128 Gable roof 93 Gable surface edge definition 108 Gable type 110 Gables, mid-fascia 97 Gamma correction 533-534 Garage door sill 50 Garages, detached 210 Garbage disposals 166 Garden Beds 189 Garden borders 213 Garden boxes 210 Gas Meters 166 Gate Height 196 Gate Width 196 Gates 195-196 deleting 196 editing properties 196 flipping 196 flipping swing 196 inserting 195 moving 195

Gazebos 210 Generate Quote 472 Girders 31 Global illumination 532-533 Global Position 530 Global update of SmartViews 370 Glossary 30 Google SketchUp import 585-586, 638 Grade Level (site data) 227 Gradient toolbars 672 Graininess, preventing in renderings 536 Grand Total Adjustment rate 500 Grand Total summary (quote) 519 Grand Total, adjusting in quote 492 Graphics 266, 676-677 improving display 676 problems with 676 specifying VR view type 266, 677 Graphics system check 677 Gravel 189-190 Grayscale renderings, creating 533 Green 3D Home.com 527 Greenhouses 210 Grid Color 551 Grid Snap 552 Grid Style 551 Grid, drawing 551-552 Group by Location, in cut list 455 Group by Usage, in cut list 455 Group filter in QG reports 513 Group similar length items 455, 459 Grouped Elements 612-613 creating 612 editing 613 inserting 613 Grouping elements 612 Grouping records in a quote 508, 513, 515 Groups 298, 597 adding to catalogs and libraries 597 adding to View Manager 298 Growing plants 178 GS Software Suite export 592 Gutter member 39

### Н

Half Truss 35 Handicap access 81, 85 Handle Style 160 Handles 160 Handrail Depth 90 Handrail Height 89 Handrail Style 90 Handrail Width 90 Handrails 87-88 Hardwood flooring 71 Hatching 253, 336-337, 410, 412, 414, 611 creating hatched polygons in Model View 336 creating hatched polygons in Worksheet View 410 creating with Boundary Hatch 412 deleting 414 editing for elements 253, 611 editing for polygons in Model View 337 editing for polygons in Worksheet View 410 editing line properties for hatched polygons 410 editing line properties in Worksheet View 414 editing pattern in Worksheet View 414 moving 414 rotating 414 stretching 414 Head Height 53, 555 Head, window/door 20 Head/Sill/Jamb configuration 115, 118, 654-656 assigning to a span table 654 customizing library 655 defining 656 selecting for individual openings 118 selecting in building locations 115 selecting span tables for individual walls 118 Head/Sill/Jamb Tool filter 290, 294 Header line style, openings 60 Headers 111, 123-124, 126, 130, 463, 511, 656 defining for ceiling openings 124 defining for floor openings 123 defining for roof openings 126 defining for surface openings 111, 130 defining in Quote Generator 511 defining in report templates 463 defining in wall framing 656 Heaters 170 Heating elements 174 Height 53, 12, 98, 204, 210, 220-223, 238, 246, 264, 555, 609 berm 221 ceiling 53 deck 204 floor 53 hill 220 insertion height 609 plateau 222 roof 98

slope 223 specifying before insertion 555 sprinkler 210 Target 264 wall 53, 12, 238 Height above current location 204 Height, opening 313 Height, terrain 218 Help 29-30 context-sensitive help 29 online help 29 technical support 30 Tutor 29 Help string 31 Hidden Line 285 Hidden Line display mode 283 Hide All Items Except 296 Hide Non-Stock Records (QG reports) 514 Hiding 230, 259, 288-291, 296, 364, 548, 581, 608, 671,673 all except picked 296 animation paths 548 building elements 288 building locations 289 by picking 296 catalog panel 673 dimensions 290 drafting objects 291 elements on terrain 289 elevation/section marks 290 Framing Mode components 290 information panel 673 layers 364 Navigator 259 notation objects 290 panel 673 parts of elements 608 project trace images 291, 581 schedule marks 291 schedules 291 terrain contour labels 230 text 290 toolbars 671 Hiding elements from view 288 High Gloss finish 537 Highlites 48-49, 54 doors 48-49 windows 54 Hills 219-220 deleting 220 editing height/shape 220

inserting 219 moving 220 Hip board 126 Hip surface edge definition 108 Hip to Gable 93 History, material usage 255 History, work 594 HomeDev template (Constellation) 447 Horiz. Distance 98 Horizontal Separation 50, 55 Horizontal Text 323, 628 Hot tubs 210 House Builder Wizard 1, 3, 651 custom configuration 3, 651 launching automatically at startup 3 running 1 House Templates 211 Hug Terrain 233 HVAC Elements 174-175 deleting 175 editing size 175 inserting 174 moving 174 raising/lowering 175 rotating 175 Hyperlinks 611-612 adding 611 making current 612 opening 612

### Ι

I-beams 31 Icon, coordinate 555 IFC export 591 IFC file importing 590 IFC import 590 Ignore assemblies attached to materials 448 Ignore Next Story 92 Ignore Wall Dimensions 313 Image import 379 Images 379, 381, 579 deleting 381 importing 579 inserting in Worksheet View 379 moving 381 rotating 381 scaling 381 Imperial Units 45, 243 Import BIM File 589, 600

Import CAD File 348, 371, 374, 576 Model View 348. 576 Worksheet View 371, 374 Import geometry from file 586 Import Scale, wall panel 135, 148 Importing 224, 305, 309, 345, 348, 351, 371, 374, 377, 379, 477-478, 481, 572, 576, 579, 581, 585-586, 588-590, 600, 623, 638 3D Studio files 586 20-20 Design XML file 588 BMP files 379. 579 CAD files in Model View 348, 576 CAD files in Worksheet View 371, 374 catalog content from a BIM file 589, 600 custom objects 585 customer records into Quote Generator 481 door leafs 638 DWG files 586 DXF files 586 IFC file 590 JPG files 379. 579 objects 586 patterns 623 PDF in Model View 351, 572 PDF in Worksheet View 377 photo board 581 product records from XML file 478 product records into Quote Generator 477 project content from BIM file 589 project trace image 579 site data 224 text files 305. 309 TGA files 379. 579 views in Model View 345 Inches 45 in site boundary 243 working in 45 Inclines 223 Include cut lengths 440 Include element in quantities 449 Include Elevation View 136, 144 Include First Post 89 Include Footings 204 Include Group Sub-Totals 513 Include in Framing 111, 123-124, 126, 130 ceiling members 124 floor members 123 roof members 126 surface members 111, 130 Include in Quantities 440 Include Last Post 89

Include Non-Listed Groups in Report (Quote Generator) 513 Include Opening Trim 50, 55, 59 Include Path 542 Include Posts 89, 204 Include Railings 208 Include Schedule (wall panel diagrams) 137, 146 Include Sill 50 Include Very Top Plates, wall panel diagrams 136, 144 Include Walls 100 Included Anale 557 Infill configuration 115-116, 606, 660, 662 customizing wall infill library 660 defining 662 defining in building locations 115 selecting for individual walls or wall types 116 tracing and replacing elements 606 Info Panel 673-674 hiding 673 moving 674 resizing 673 Inquiring about elements 256, 558 Insert Attribute 425 Insert Block 423, 426 Insert Block from File 424 Insert CAD File 348, 371, 374, 576 Model View 348. 576 Worksheet View 371, 374 Insert Image 379 Insert Panels 149 Insert SmartView 367 Insert View 345 Inserting 47, 5, 7, 25, 27-29, 31-33, 45, 51, 63-65, 68.71.74.81.85.87-88.91.100-101.149. 153, 158, 160-161, 163-167, 170, 172-174, 177, 179, 188-189, 191, 193, 195, 202, 209-214, 219-221, 223, 231-232, 234, 345, 348, 367, 371, 374, 423, 426, 576, 583, 613 accessories 165 appliances 163 berms/trenches 220 blocks 423-424, 426 cabinets 158 CAD files in Model View 348, 576 CAD files in Worksheet View 371, 374 ceilings 74-75 columns 29 countertops 161 decks 202 doors 45

dormer 100 edging 191 electrical elements 170 electronics 164 elements 47 equipment 166 exterior accessories 213 exterior furniture 212 exterior structures 210-211 fences 193 fills 189 floors 68-69.71 furniture 164 gates 195 grouped elements 613 heating elements 174 hills/valleys 219 HVAC elements 174 irrigation 209 kitchen 153 lights 167, 214 members 31-33 members in structural floor 65 mono footings 27-28 openings in walls 57 outlets 170 pads 232 paths 231 patio 232 photo board 583 plants 177 plants from Encyclopedia 179, 188 plateaus 221 plumbing 173 posts 29 railings 87-88 ramps 81,85 retaining walls 234 roofs 91 sinks 160 skylights 101 slopes 223 SmartViews 367 sprinklers 209 stairs 81, 85 strip footings 25 structural floors 63-64, 71 switches 170 views in Model View 345 walls 5.7 windows 51 wiring 172

Insertion behavior of members 38 Insertion by Room 69, 75, 439 ceilings 75 floors 69 room regions 439 Insertion height 609 Insertion method 48 line-drawn elements 48 single-click elements 48 Insertion Offset 47 single elements 47 Insertion offset 45, 52, 57 doors 45 openings 57 windows 51 Insertion point 609 Insertion Reference Point, member 36 Insertion settings, wall panel 135, 147 Insertion snap 366 Inside arc direction 242 Inside Line 243 Inside Niche Back 58 Insulation, batt 339, 415 Insulation, rigid 340, 416 Intensity, light 634 Intensity, tree and billboard 536 Interactive Lighting 677 changing quality 677 disabling 677 Interface tour 31 Interference, stud 662 Interior Accessories 165 Interior dimensions 315 Interior Furniture 164 Interior wall surface 12 Interior Wall Tops to Roof 16, 93 Interior Walls 311 dimension setting 311 dimension string 311 Intersect Planes 108 Intersection lookup table 115, 666 customizing library 666 selecting in building locations 115 Intersection snap 366 Intersection tool filter 290, 294 Intersections 119, 290, 667 creating custom framing configurations 119 customizing the end condition library 667 editing framing configuration 119 filtering display in Framing Mode 290

Interval, contour 218 Introduction 24 Inventory import into Quote Generator 477 Invert Orbit Navigation 274 Invert Selection (layers) 361, 631 Invisible in 2D, walls 14 Invoice number 506 IOR 617 Irrigation 209-210 deleting 210 editing spray range 210 editing sprinkler height 210 inserting 209 moving 210 iStruct export 591

# J

Jack studs, defining 656 Jacks 170 Jamb definition 656 Javelin export 591 Join Dimension 321, 393 Join Polyline 399 Joining objects to polyline 399 Joining surfaces 108 Joist Direction 111, 123-124, 130 Joist Member 111, 123-124, 130 Joist Spacing 111, 123-124, 130 Joist spacing note 422 JPG export 590 JPG import 379, 579 Justification of leader 323, 627 Justification of text 305, 308, 526

## K

Keyboard Shortcuts 32, 36, 41, 676 customizing 676 default 41 standard 41 using 32, 36, 41 Keyboard, virtual 675 Keymark GS Software Suite export 592 King studs, defining 656 Kitchen Builder Wizard 153, 155, 651 custom configuration 155, 651 launching automatically at startup 155 using 153 Kitchen Configuration 155, 651

## L

Label Display (contours) 230 Label Text Style (contours) 230 Label Text Style (wall panels) 135, 147 Labels 230, 305-306 controlling for terrain contour lines 230 customizing library 306 inserting 305 Labor item 493, 495 Ladder framing, gable 126 Lambert model, material properties 617 Lamps 167 Landing Gap (leader) 323, 627 Landing segments 82 Landing Thickness 84 Landscape Lighting 214 Landscape orientation 566, 568 Landscaping 177, 179, 188-189, 191, 193, 195, 202, 209-214, 231, 289, 293 decks 202 displaying/hiding elements 289 edging 191 exterior accessories 213 exterior furniture 212 exterior structures 210 fences 193 fills 189 filtering elements for selection 293 gates 195 inserting a house template 211 lighting 214 paths 231 plants 177, 179, 188 sprinklers 209 Latin plant names 182 Lattice, deck 205 Launch Startup Screen 675 Launch wizard when starting new project 3, 155, 158, 199, 202 Lawn edging 191 LAY export 592 Layers 251, 360-361, 363-365, 436, 589, 593, 610, 631 about 360 assigning to objects 436 controlling ability to select objects 361, 364, 631 controlling display order priority 365 controlling visibility 361, 364, 631 controlling whether plotted 361, 365, 631 creating 361

deleting 363 deleting in current project 361 deleting in layers library 631 editing for elements 251, 610 editing properties in current project 361 editing properties in layers library 631 editng priority 361 exporting from project to BIM file 593 importing project layers from BIM file 589 overriding settings 363 renaming in current project 361 renaming in layers library 631 selecting to draw on 360 setting current 360-361 transferring objects between 363 Layout 82,86 ramps 86 stairs 82 Leader 310. 386-387 changing style in Model View 310 changing style in Worksheet View 387 moving 310, 386 stretching 310, 386 updating dimension style globally 310 Leader gap 323, 627 Leader justification 323, 627 Leader position 323, 627 Leader text 310 Leader with description 385 Leader with text 309, 384 Leaf Depth 50 Leaf. cabinet 159 Leaf, door 49, 637-639 Learning the program 28 Left Elevation 275 Left Interior Side 20 Left Interior Side (wall) 22 Length reporting, member 40, 451, 458 Length text style 243 Length, measuring 434, 558 Length, site boundary edges 241 Lengthen Arrow 107 Lengthen to Fence (members) 37 Lengthening 11, 26, 37-38, 90, 193, 236, 326 fences 193 lines in Model View 326 members 37 members to cutting edge 37 members to plane 38 railings 90 strip footings 26

walls 11.236 Lengths, wall 555-556 Leveling walls 16 Levels, adding 7 Libraries 306, 308, 597-598, 601-602, 615-616, 621-623, 626, 628, 630, 632, 634, 637, 640, 646-649, 653, 655, 660, 666-667 adding a group or subgroup 597 assembly 640 categories 648 changing order of groups 598 customizing 615 deleting groups 598 dimension styles 626 door leafs 637 exporting to a BIM file 602 exporting to a TXT file 601 head/sill/jamb 655 intersection lookup table 666 labels 306 light source 632 line styles 628 line weights 631 linetypes 630 material filters 622 material usages 621 materials 616 moving subgroups to the root 597 pattern 623 phases 647 profiles 634 renaming groups 598 text styles 308, 626 units of measure 649 usages 646 wall end condition 667 wall infill 660 wall opening span table 653 Library Manager 615 Lifetime (plants) 182 Light posts 214 Light Sources 169, 215, 632, 634 customizing library 632 editing in light fixtures 169, 215 specifying path to directory 634 turning on/off 169, 215 Light switches 170 Lighting conditions 268, 530, 538 Lights 167-170, 214-216, 537, 677 adjusting for 3D Real View 537 changing appearance 170, 216 changing quality of interactive lighting 677

deleting 170, 216 disabling interactive lighting 677 editing light source 169, 215 editing size 168, 214 inserting 167, 214 moving 168.214 raising/lowering 168 rotating 168 snap options 168 turning on/off 169, 215 Lights directory 634 Lightscape export 591 Line Styles 60, 172, 219, 243, 322, 327, 330, 332, 335-337, 339-342, 344-345, 397, 400, 402, 405, 407-408, 410, 412, 415-416, 418-420, 434-435, 526, 627-628 2D headers 60 customizing library 628 default for details 435 default for drafting objects 434 default for electrical wiring 172 defining for revision clouds 435 defining in schedules 526 editing for arc in Model View 330 editing for arc in Worksheet View 402 editing for batt insulation in Model View 340 editing for batt insulation in Worksheet View 415 editing for circles in Model View 332 editing for circles in Worksheet View 407 editing for cut lines in Model View 345 editing for cut lines in Worksheet View 420 editing for elliptical object 335 editing for elliptical objects 405 editing for lines 327 editing for lines in Worksheet View 397 editing for masonry section in Model View 344 editing for masonry sections in Worksheet View 419 editing for polygons in Model View 337 editing for polygons in Worksheet View 410 editing for polylines in Worksheet View 400 editing for rectangles in Model View 336 editing for rectangles in Worksheet View 408 editing for revision clouds in Model View 339 editing for revision clouds in Worksheet View 412 editing for rigid insulation 416 editing for rigid insulation in Model View 341 editing for wood sections in Model View 342 editing for wood sections in Worksheet view 418

editing in site boundary 243 editing wiring 172 selecting for terrain 219 Line types 251, 361, 363, 414, 610, 630-631 customizing library 630 editing for elements 251, 610 editing for hatching 414 editing for layers in current project 361 editing for layers in layers library 631 editing for revision clouds in Worksheet View 412 editing in line styles 628 overriding layer line types 363 Line weights 251, 361, 363, 414, 566-567, 610, 628.631 customizing 631 editing for elements 251, 610 editing for hatching 414 editing for layers in current project 361 editing for layers in layers library 631 editing for revision clouds in Worksheet View 412 editing in line styles 628 enabling/disabling 631 overriding layer line weights 363 printing 567, 569 Line Work properties 251, 253, 610-611 Linear dimensions 316, 388 Linear Length 40, 451, 454, 458 Lines 291, 295, 325-328, 339, 360, 395-397, 436 assigning a layer to 436 breaking in Model View 327 breaking in Worksheet View 397 controlling selectability 295 converting to 3D building elements 339 deleting in Model View 328 deleting in Worksheet View 397 disabling page margin lines 360 drawing in Model View 325 drawing in Worksheet View 395 editing style 327 editing style in Worksheet View 397 extending 395 extending to other objects 326 filleting 396 filtering from view 291 moving in Model View 326 moving in Worksheet View 395 offsetting in Model View 327 rotating in Model View 326 rotating in Worksheet View 395 stretching in Model View 326

stretching in Worksheet View 395 trimming 326, 395 Links 611-612 Linoleum 71 Lip C member 39 Lip Z member 39 Liquid finish 537 Lites 49, 54 doors 49 windows 54 Load Database, Quote Generator 480 Load pattern 623 Load Theme 673 Load-bearing span table 118 Load-bearing, framing wall as 115 Loading a formula 470, 645 Location data, adding to wall panel tags 133-134, 138, 142-143 Location sorting in estimate 461 Location, global 530 Locations 53-56, 115, 256, 289, 293, 302, 447, 455, 558 adding 54 allowing a different current location per view window 56.302 checking the current location 55 defining 53 defining wall framing options 115 deleting 55 dimming 56 editing 55 filtering from project estimate 447 filtering from view 289 grouping by in cut list 455 making one current 55 making selectable/non-selectable 293 querying an element's location 256, 558 Lock Catalog to Editing 599 Locking items from filtering 288, 292 Locking layers 364 Log 504, 518 program log in Quote Generator 504 auote loa 518 Log member 39 Logo import 379 Logos, company 497, 511 Logos, manufacturer 624-625 Look Around 257, 270, 273-274 Look Through 262 Lot, building 239-240, 242 Loungers 212

Loveseats 164 Low Gloss finish 537 Lower Exterior Face Bottom 14 Lower Point location 107 Lower Width 86 Lowering elements 246 Lowering the terrain 218 Lowlites 54 LP export 591 Lumens (light intensity) 634 Luxwood Quote Generator 472 Μ Magnetic North 531 Mailboxes 213 Main wall assembly option 444 Maintain Aspect Ratio 379, 579, 584 Maintain Current Location Per View 56, 302 Maintain Support Height (Move Edge) 95 Make All Non-Selectable Except 296 Make Continuous 90 Make magenta color transparent 619 Manual 30 Manuals 28 Manufacturer content, importing 600 Manufacturer Logos 625 Manufacturers 40, 440, 451, 495-496, 508, 617, 624-625 adding to library 624 assigning to elements 440 assigning to materials 617 assigning to products in a quote 496 assigning to purchased items 40, 451 attaching to elements 625 attaching to materials 625 deleting from library 624 displaying logos on property pages 625 editing in library 624 filtering in QG reports 508 setting up in Quote Generator 495 Mapping, pattern 253, 611 Mapping, texture 252, 610, 619 Margin rate 490, 500 adjusting for quote records 490 setting default in Quote Generator 500 viewing total Margin 487 Margins, page 360, 513 Mark Text 278, 282 elevations 278 sections 282

Marks 290, 294, 296, 324-325, 440, 526-527 controlling selectability 294 defining for schedules 526 displaying/hiding 290 displaying/hiding in drawing 325 making schedule marks selectable/non-selectable 296 removing from schedules 527 specifying for elements 324, 440 specifying settings 325 turning on/off 324 Markup rate 490, 500 adjusting for quote records 490 settings default in Quote Generatotor 500 viewing total Markup 487 Masonry Section 343-344, 418-419, 436 assigning a layer to 436 deleting in Model View 344 deleting in Worksheet View 419 drawing in Model View 343 drawing in Worksheet View 418 editing line style in Model View 344 editing line style in Worksheet View 419 editing properties in Model View 344 editing properties in Worksheet View 419 moving in Model View 343 moving in Worksheet View 419 rotating in Model View 343 rotating in Worksheet View 419 stretching in Model View 343 stretching in Worksheet View 419 Match Appearance 256 Match case (Find and Replace) 308, 383 Match Grid 552 Match Planes, roof 96 Match whole word (Find and Replace) 308, 383 Matching a member to a plane 33, 38 Material Filters 622 customizing library 622 using in materials library 622 Material history list 255 Material Usages 617, 621 assigning to materials 617 customizing library 621 enforcing during material application 621 Materials 218, 252, 254-256, 440, 443, 446, 448, 461, 520, 537, 610, 616-617, 619, 622, 625 applying assemblies to 619 applying with Materials Paintbrush 254 attaching manufacturers 625 changing an element's appearance 252, 610 customizing filters 622

customizing library 616 editing pricing 443, 619 editing properties 617 editing quantitative properties 440 editing texture properties 619 filtering in library 622 ignoring assemblies in estimate 448 matching across multiple elements 256 selecting for terrain 218 setting maximum size for history list 255 sorting in project estimate 461 surface properties 537 uploading to ERP system 520 viewing quantity report 446 viewing recently used 255 Materials Library 616, 622 customizing 616 filtering 622 Materials List 446 Materials Paintbrush 19, 71, 77, 111, 160, 164, 166-167, 170-171, 174, 190, 192, 195, 212, 214, 216, 232, 234, 238, 254-255 appliances 164 cabinets 160 ceilings 77 edging 192 electrical elements 171 equipment 167 exterior structures 212 fences 195 fills 190 floors 71 furnishings 166, 214 light fixtures 170, 216 pads 234 paths 232 plumbing 174 sampling materials with eyedropper 255 setting maximum size for material history list 255 surfaces 111 undoing an application 255 using 254 viewing recently used materials 255 walls 19.238 Materials quote 472 Max Stringer Spacing 83 Max Z (site data) 226 Max. Post Spacing 194 Max. Riser Height 208 Maximize view window 303 Maximized view 272

Maximum Scrap Length 455, 459 Measure, unit 45 Measuring 434, 558 angles in Worksheet View 434, 558 distances in Model View 558 distances in Worksheet View 434, 558 Medicine cabinets 165 Member Schedule 43, 124, 131, 136, 146, 291, 295. 524-527 controlling selectability 295 converting framing to members 43, 124, 131, 524 defining line styles 526 defining schedule marks 526 defining text styles 526 deleting 527 displaying/hiding 291 editing in wall panel diagrams 136, 146 generating 524 moving 525 printing 525 removing schedule marks 527 rotating 525 Member Spacing Note 422 editing 422 inserting 422 Member tag style (wall panels) 146 Members 48, 29, 31-39, 39-40, 43, 66, 114, 124, 131, 253, 324-325, 339, 451, 460, 524, 635 adjusting to a plane 38 arraying 38 available profiles 29, 39 breaking 38 breaking at other members 38 converting drafting objects to 339 converting framing to 43, 124, 131, 524 creating custom profiles 635 deleting 43 displaying as line in 2D 43 editing dimensions 40 editing insertion point 36 editing shape 39 editing solid fill colors 253 editing timber frames 35 end conditions 40 extending to cutting edge 37 extending to plane 38 horizontal 32 inserting 31-32 inserting by matching a plane 33 inserting by picking points 32 inserting multiple simultaneously 33

inserting trusses 34 mitering 40 moving 36 offsetting 38 preventing breaking 38 quantifying by total linear length 458 raising/lowering 39 removing from structural floor 66 repeating 48 reporting in purchased lengths 451 rotating 37 rotating profile 37 selecting for wall framing 114 sloping 32 solid filling 253 specifying mark method 324 specifying mark settings 325 specifying purchased lengths 40, 451 stretching 37 trimming to cutting edge 37 using optimized results in quantity report 460 Menu shortcuts 41 Merging catalogs 589, 600-602 Mesh Spacing, terrain 218 Mesh, terrain 224, 228-230 Meters 45.166 in site boundary 243 utility 166 working in 45 Metric unit suppression 47 Metric Units 45, 243 Microwaves 163 Middle mouse button assignment 273 Middle Rail Height 194, 196 Midpoint snap 366 Millimeters 45 in site boundary 243 working in 45 Min number of vertices per component 609 Min Z (site data) 226 Mirroring 250, 431 elements in Model View 250 elements in Worksheet View 431 Mirrors 165 MiTek SAPPHIRE Structure export 592 Miter if Possible 40 Mitering intersections 119 Mitering members 40 Model View 299.674 background color 674 creating new window 299

Model view tab 302 Model view window 298-299 Model Views 345, 347-348, 371 deleting in Model View 348 deleting in Worksheet View 371 inserting in Model View 345 moving in Model View 347 moving in Worksheet View 371 resizing 348 Modify Elements 51, 245 Modify toolbars 672 Mono Footings 27-28 attaching to columns 27 attaching to multiple columns simultaneously 27 deleting 28 editing size 28 editing type 28 inserting 27 inserting by picking points 28 moving 28 rotating 28 Monochromatic renderings, creating 533 Monolithic foundation 7 Motion response, zoom and navigation 274-275 Mouse Controls 273 assigning action to middle button 273 zooming and navigating 273 Mouse response when zooming and navigating 274-275 Mouse scroll zooming 271 Move Camera 263 Move Dimension Line 320 Move Down (view) 301 Move Edge 70, 76, 95, 101, 106, 189, 203, 206, 233.439 ceiling 76 deck 203 deck opening 206 dormer roof 101 fill 189 floor 70 pad 233 roof 95 room region 439 surface 106 Move Framing Base Point (floor) 65 Move Group to Root 597 Move Group Up/Down 598 Move Target 264, 278 Move Text 310, 439 room region 439

text with leader 310 Move Up (view) 301 Movies 538 Moving 16, 26, 28, 30, 36, 46, 52, 56, 58, 65, 69-70, 76.81.85.95.101-103.106.140.158.161. 163, 165-166, 168, 171, 173-174, 177, 189, 191, 195, 198, 202, 207, 210-211, 213-214, 220-223, 231, 233-234, 241, 245-246, 249, 263-264, 277, 281, 301, 307, 310, 320, 326, 329, 332, 336-338, 340-343, 345, 347, 350, 354, 363, 371, 373, 376, 379, 381, 383, 386, 392, 395, 397, 401, 406-407, 409-411, 414-417, 419-420, 424, 428, 525, 542, 575, 578, 583, 673-674 accessories 165, 213 animation control points 542 appliances 163 arcs in Model View 329 arcs in Worksheet View 401 batt insulation in Model View 340 batt insulation in Worksheet View 415 bearing line 65 berms/trenches 221 blocks 424 by nudging 246, 428 cabinets 158 CAD image in Model View 350, 578 CAD images in Worksheet View 373, 376 cameras 263 catalog panel 674 ceilings 76 circles in Model View 332 circles in Worksheet View 406 columns 30 countertops 161 cut line in Model View 345 cut line in Worksheet View 420 deck stairs 207 decks 202 dimension line 320, 392 dimension text in Worksheet View 392 doors 46 dormer roof 101 edging 191 electrical elements 171 electronics 165, 213 elements 245 elements to other locations 249 elevation marks 277 equipment 166 exterior structures 211 fills 189 floor division line 69

floor edges 70 floors 70 furniture 165, 213 gates 195 hatching 414 hills 220 HVAC elements 174 images 381 info panel 674 irrigation 210 leader 310, 386 leader text 310, 386 lights 168, 214 lines in Model View 326 lines in Worksheet View 395 masonry section in Model View 343 masonry section in Worksheet View 419 members 36 model view images in Model View 347 model views in Worksheet View 371 mono footings 28 objects in Worksheet View 428 objects to other layers 363 paths 231 PDF image 354, 379, 575 photo board 583 plants 177 plateaus 222 plumbing 173 polygons in Model View 337 polygons in Worksheet View 409-410 polylines 397 ramps 81,85 rectangles in Model View 336 rectangles in Worksheet View 407 revision clouds in Worksheet View 411 rigid insulation in Model View 341 rigid insulation in Worksheet View 416 roof accessories 103 roofs 95 schedules 525 section marks 281 sheds 198 site boundary 241 skylights 102 slabs 233 slopes 223 SmartViews 371 sprinklers 210 stairs 81, 85 strip footings 26 surfaces 106

target of 3D view 264 text in Model View 307 text in Worksheet View 383 toolbars 673 view windows in View Manager 301 wall openings 58 wall panel tags 140 walls 16.234 windows 52 wood section in Model View 342 wood section in Worksheet View 417 Mulch 189 Mullions 50.55 door 50 window 55 Multiple Insert 350, 353, 373, 376, 378, 381, 574, 578, 580 Multiple member insertion 33 Multiple text insert 305, 309, 381 MXF export 592

### Ν

Name generation 607 about 607 modifying formula for 607 using 607 Name, report template 460 Naming convention, wall panel 138, 142 Navigating with the arrow keys 274 Navigating with the mouse 273-274 Navigation Speed, adjusting 274-275 Navigation tools 269 Navigator 257, 259 hiding 259 using 257 Nearest snap 366 New Catalog 599 New elements 604, 612 New Line delimiter 466 New Project 25-26 New Project from Template 25-26 New Report 511 New View 299 Newel Depth 90 Newel Spacing 90 Newel Style 90 Newel Width 90 NEWSTAR template (Constellation) 447 Niche 58 Niche Back Side 58

Night Scene 267 Node 70, 77, 106, 203 adding to ceiling 77 adding to deck 203 adding to floor 70 adding to surface 106 removing from ceiling 77 removing from deck 70, 203 Noise reduction, adjusting for renderings 536 Non-load-bearing span table 118 Non-printable area 360 Non-stock items, hiding in QG reports 514 Normal mapping, texture 619 Normal toolbar setting 672 North (True) 531 Nosing Depth 83 Nosing, counter 162 Nosing, stairs 208 Notation 290, 294 controlling selectability 294 controlling selectability of text 294 filtering from view 290 Notation filter 290-291 Notebook page (plants) 185 Notes 305, 422, 594, 611 adding to drawing 305 adding to element properties 611 in Project Manager 594 member spacing 422 Notes, external (in QG reports) 499, 512 Nudge Distance 246 Nudging elements 246, 428 Number field 466 Number of Backups 563 Number of Courses 23 Number of panels across in multi-insertion 135, 148 Number of vertices in object 609 Numbering wall panels 140, 142

## 0

Object Import Wizard 585 Object Properties 358, 673-674 about 358 hiding panel 673 moving 674 resizing panel 673 Object Snap Settings 366 Object Snap Tracking 553 Object Snaps 366-367, 552-553 overriding 366 selecting 366 turning on/off 367 using 552-553 using in Worksheet View 366 using snap tracking 553 using specific 366 **OBJSNAP 367** Offset below roof surface 15, 93 Offset from wall 20 Offset Member 38 Offset tool 431 Offset, insertion 47 Offsetting 7, 17, 38, 327, 330, 431 arcs in Model View 330 lines in Model View 327 members 38 objects in Worksheet View 431 walls 17 walls from baseline 7 Older projects, opening 27 Omitting locations/regions from area/perimeter calculations 437 Omitting records from a quote 486 Online Help 29 Opacity, material 617 Open 561 Open a Saved Project 561 Open Catalog 600 Open Current Link 612 Open Samples 27 Open Template 447, 457 Open View 300 Open with Associated Editor 448 Opening 27, 448, 515, 561, 600 Catalogs 600 drawings 561 older projects 27 quantity report 448 report templates 447, 457 sample projects 27 saved quotes 515 view windows 300 Opening dimension separator 313 **Opening dimensions** 313 Opening header, ceilings 124 Opening header, floors 123 Opening header, roofs 126 Opening header, surfaces 111, 130

Opening height, adding to dimensions 313 Opening span table 654 Opening symbols, window 56 Openings 10, 46, 48, 50, 52, 54-55, 57-60, 66, 72-73, 78, 84-85, 99, 112, 118, 206, 290, 311, 324-325, 662 2D appearance 60 adding height after width in dimensions 313 adding trim 20 creating a niche 58 curving in ceilings 78 curving in floors 73 cutting out bottom plate 663 dimension string 311 editing dynamic dimension settings 10 editing head/sill/jamb configuration 118 editing in surfaces 112 editing shape 59 editing size 59 editing span table selection for individual walls 118 filtering display in Framing Mode 290 flipping in walls 58 inserting 57 inserting in ceilings 78, 85 inserting in decks 206 inserting in floors 72, 84 inserting in roofs 99 inserting in structural floors 66 inserting in surfaces 112 inserting to center 46, 52, 57 inserting to edge 46, 52, 57 moving in walls 58 raising/lowering 59 removing from walls 60 removing from ceilings 78 removing from decks 207 removing from floors 73 removing from roofs 99 removing from surfaces 112 removing trim from doors 50 removing trim from wall openings 59 removing trim from windows 55 resizing/reshaping in ceilings 78 resizing/reshaping in floors 73 specifying mark method 324 specifying mark settings 325 stretching 48, 54, 59 turning marks on/off 325 OPT export 591 Optimize Cut List 456, 458 Optimized results, using in quantity report 460

Optimizing a cut list 454 Options, export (quote) 518 Orbiting 257, 269-270 Order Number (quote) 506 Order of wall panels, editing 140, 142 Order Summary 507 Orders, uploading to ERP 520 Orientation 103, 248, 608 Orientation (paper) 513, 566, 568 Ortho 554 Outlets 170 inserting automatically 170 inserting manually 170 Outline, terrain 219 Outside arc direction 242 Outside Line 243 Ovens 163 Overall Dimension 319, 391 Overall dimension string 311 **Overall Height 82** Overhang 98, 204, 209 Overhang Drop 98 Override dimension text (Model View) 321 Override dimension text (Worksheet View) 393 Override snap 366 Override tile size 252, 611 Overriding layer settings 363 Overview, 3D 260

## P

Pad footings 27-28 Pads 232-234, 253-254 applying materials 234 curving 233 deleting 234 disabling Hug Terrain option 233 editing solid fill colors 253 editing thickness 234 enabling/disabling solid fill 254 inserting 232 moving 233 reshaping 233 resizina 233 rotating 233 solid filling 253 stretching 233 Page Margin Line display 360 Page Orientation in printing 568 Page Orientation in QG reports 513 Page size 566, 568

Paint 19 Paintbrush, materials 254-255 Pan tool 257, 262, 272, 276, 280 Panel 673-674 hiding 673 moving 674 resizing 673 Paneled shutters 61 Paneling, wood 19 Panels 18, 131-133, 135, 137-140, 142-147, 149-152.436 about 131 applying name changes to panels 143 assigning a layer to 436 breaking walls into specific lengths 18 customizing 133 defining dimension settings 136, 145 defining schedule settings 136 displaying tags 133 displaying tags in diagrams 136, 144 editing inserted panel diagrams 150 editing insertion scale 135, 148 editing insertion settings 135, 147 editing names 138, 142 editing numbering order 140 editing panel length 18 editing schedule settings 146 editing sort order 140, 142 editing spacing 135, 148 editing tags 134 editing worksheet scale 135, 148 exporting to CSV 152 flipping view side 139 including elevation view 136, 144 including plan view 136, 144 including very top plates 136, 144 inserting onto worksheets 149 moving breaks 18 moving tags in 2D plan 140 number across in multi-insertion 135, 148 previewing 137-138 purging unreferenced panels 151 regenerating 137, 150 re-ordering manually 142 selecting dimension style 135, 145-146 selecting text styles 135, 147 setting default view side 133-134 setting up tagging 132 specifying default print settings 149 viewing 137 viewing properties of individual panels 138 Panning the view 257, 272-274

Panoramic View, rendering 533 Paper Shadow 359 Paper Size 566, 568 Part Number 39-40, 440, 443, 451 exporting for all elements to text file 443 searching by 39 Partially Reflective 537 Parts 444, 606, 641 as assemblies 444, 641 tracing and replacing 606 Paste (Model View) 249 Paste (Worksheet) 429 Path lights 214 Path Order, animation 542 Paths 231-232, 253-254, 539, 542, 548 applying materials 232 changing order in animation 542 choosing for animations 542 curving 232 deleting 232 deleting for animations 548 drawing for animations 539 editing size 232 editing solid fill colors 253 enabling/disabling solid fill 254 inserting 231 moving 231 solid filling 253 stretching 231 Patio chairs 212 Patio tables 212 Patio umbrellas 213 Patios 232 Patterned display mode 253, 283, 285, 611 Patterns 253, 337, 339, 410, 412, 611, 623 applying with Boundary Hatch 412 customizing library 623 defining for revision clouds in Model View 435 editing 623 editing for polygons in Model View 337 editing for polygons in Worksheet View 410 editing for revision clouds in Model View 339 editing for revision clouds in Worksheet View 412 importing 623 resetting 623 selecting for elements 253, 611 PDF 351, 353-355, 377, 379, 507, 509, 570, 572, 574-576 converting to image for faster import 353, 574 creating in Quote Generator 507, 509

deleting 355, 379, 576 importing in Model View 351, 572 importing in Worksheet View 377 moving 354, 379, 575 printing to 570 resizing 354, 575 rotating 354, 379, 575 Peg style 243 Peg text style 243 Percentage of simplification 609 Perimeter, building 437 Perpendicular snap 366 Perspective view 260 Phase Library, customizing 647 Phases 40, 66, 111, 123, 125, 127, 130, 440, 443, 451, 494, 507, 647, 656, 662, 668 assigning to ceiling framing members 125 assigning to elements 440 assigning to floor framing members 66, 123 assigning to purchased items 40, 451 assigning to roof framing members 127 changing phases in quote 494 customizing phases library 647 defining in end condition configurations 668 defining in head/sill/jamb tables 656 defining in wall infill configurations 662 exporting for all elements to text file 443 filtering in QG reports 507 setting up phases in Quote Generator 494 specifying for surface framing members 111, 130 Phone Numbers 594 Phong model, material properties 617 Photo Board 581, 583-584 changing to rotating 583 changing to stationary 583 deleting 584 editina size 584 importing 581 inserting from catalog 583 making portions transparent 584 moving 583 raising/lowering 583 rotating 583 saving to catalog 583 Photo copiers 164 Pick and drag 48 Pick Items to Hide 296 Pick Items to Make Non-Selectable 296 Pick Points 48 Pickbox 359

Picnic tables 212 Picture import 579, 581 Pictures 165 Pier footings 27-28 Piers 29 Pivot door 48 Pixel Search Distance 552 Place New Camera 261 Placement on Paper 567 Plan import 348, 351, 371, 374, 377, 572, 576, 579 Plan trace 581 Plan View 136, 144, 257, 259 including in wall panel diagrams 136, 144 viewing 2D Designer's View 259 viewing 2D Plan 257, 259 Plant Care Calendar 183 Plant Encyclopedia 179-186, 188 about 180 accessing 180 adding plants to catalog from 180, 188 care calendar 183 diseases page 186 inserting plants from 179, 188 main page 181 notebook page 185 picture page 185 plant filter 186 searching for a plant 182 selecting a plant to view 182 viewing plant information 182 world map page 184 Plant Filter (encyclopedia) 186 Plant Growth Over Time 178 Plant Season 531 Plant Seasonal Change 179 Planters 213 Planting Age 178 Plants 177-180, 182-186, 188 adding to catalog from Encyclopedia 180, 188 care calendar 183 changing age 178 deleting 178 diseases 186 editing 2D appearance 178 editing elevation 177 Encyclopedia 180 forcing custom size 178 growth over time 178 height and spread 183 inserting 177 inserting from Encyclopedia 179, 188
life expectancy 182 lighting preference 182 moving 177 pictures 185 places of origin 184 season change 179 season color diagram 183 soil preference 182 temperature preference 182 type and needs 182 usages 182 viewing information about 182 views in Encyclopedia 182 water requirements 182 zone requirements 182 Plaster 12 Plateaus 221-222 deleting 222 editing the height 222 editing the peak shape 222 inserting 221 moving 222 reshaping 222 stretching 222 Plates 165 Plates, top and bottom 662 Play gyms 210 Play Sound 549 Plot control, layer 365 Plotter selection 566-567 Plotting 567 Plumb fascia 110, 128 Plumb member ends 40 Plumb soffit 110, 128 Plumbing 157, 173-174, 652 applying colors/materials 174 deleting 174 editing size 174 in Bathroom Wizard configuration 157, 652 inserting 173 moving 173 raising/lowering 173 rotating 173 Pocket door 48 Point light 633 Pointer Tool 50 Polar Array 429 Polar Coordinate System 556 Polygon Consolidation, enabling/disabling 367 Polygon Hatch 336-337, 410, 435-436 assigning a layer to 436

drawing in Model View 336 drawing in Worksheet View 410 editing hatch pattern in Model View 337 editing hatch pattern in Worksheet View 410 editing hatch pattern line properties 410 specifying default settings 435 Polygons 336-339, 407-411, 435-436 assigning a layer to 436 converting to 3D building elements 339 deleting in Model View 338 deleting in Worksheet View 409, 411 drawing equal-sided polygons in Worksheet View 408 drawing hatched polygons in Worksheet View 410 drawing in Model View 336 editing hatch pattern in Model View 337 editing hatch pattern in Worksheet View 410 editing hatch pattern line properties in Worksheet View 410 editing style of boundary line in Model View 337 moving in Model View 337 moving in Worksheet View 409-410 rotating in Model View 337 rotating in Worksheet View 409-410 specifying default settings 435 stretching in Model View 337 stretching in Worksheet View 409-410 Polylines 397-400, 636 breaking in Worksheet View 400 closing 399 curving 399 decurving 399 deleting 400 drawing 397 editing line style 400 exporting to profile library 636 extending to other objects 398 joining objects to 399 moving 397 rotating 398 stretching 398 trimming 398 Ponds 189 Pools, swimming 210 Portable catalog content 601-602 Portal Frames 34-35, 440 editing properties 35 inserting 34 quantifying each member 440 Portrait orientation 566, 568 POS integration 472, 515

Position Offset 82.86 Post Depth 89 Post edging 191 Post Extension 194 Post Height 89 Post Offset 90 Post Position 89 Post Rotation 89, 194 Post Spacing 89 Post Style 89 Post Width 89, 194 Posts 29.204 Postscript file, printing to 566 Power mills 213 Power, sky settings 266, 268 Precision field 466 Precision in estimate 465 Precision of angles 46, 324, 628 Precision of measure 45 Pre-defined labels 305 Predefined texture mapping 252, 611 Prefix, wall panel tag 133-134, 138, 142-143 Presentation Mode 265 Preventing editing on layers 364 Preventing record editing 487 Preview cut list 449 Preview, element 607 Preview, print 567 Preview, turning off in Print dialog 567, 569 Previewing 449, 541 animations 541 Price Levels 488, 499 adjusting in quote 488 assigning names to 499 Price quote 472 Price summary (quote) 519 Prices 40, 440, 443, 451, 477, 487, 489-492, 500-501.619 accessing price controls in Quote Generator 487 adjusting Grand Total in quote 492 adjusting Margin/Margin rates 490 allowing or preventing cost price editing in QG 500 applying current prices to quote 490 applying discounts in Quote Generator 492 applying tax to items in a quote 491 applying to finish materials 619 defining for use in Quote Generator 477 editing in quote 489

setting for elements 440, 443 setting for purchased items 40, 451 setting Grand Total Adjustment rate in QG 500 setting update options in Quote Generator 501 viewing in Quote Generator 487 Print All 567 Print all colors as black 567-568 Print Area 567 Print Display 567 Print Line Weights 569 Print margins 359 Print Preview 567 Print Scale 567-568 Print scale 569 Print Setup, wall panels 149 Print Tiling 569 Print to File 566, 570 Print to Scale 567-569 Print Window 567 Printer selection 566-567 Printing 149, 365, 448, 450, 507, 509, 566-567, 569-572 across multiple sheets 569 batch printing 571 controlling plotting of layers 365 cut list 450 defining a view's print properties 566 drawings 567 line weights 567 quantity report 448 reports in Quote Generator 507, 509 schedules 525 to a file 570 to a PDF file 570 vector printing 572 vector vs. raster 571 Priority, layer 361, 365 Priority, snap 553 PrioSoft Template 447 Produce Cut List 456 Product information 477, 483-485, 503 editing in quote 485 importing into Quote Generator 477 replacing in quote 483-484 specifying for import into Quote Generator 477 verifying in quote 503 Product quote 472, 507 Product Records 477-479, 482, 485-486, 493, 495-496.512 adding to quote 482 assigning manufacturers to 496

editing cells 485 exporting to CSV file 479 exporting to XML file 479 importing from XML file 478 importing into Quote Generator 477 including in QG reports 512 preparing for import into Quote Generator 477 unmapping 486 Product records 481, 486-487 changing categories 493, 495 customizing in quote 481 disabling 486 enabling 486 locking 487 unlocking 487 Product status in QG 493, 495 ProEst Quantity Template 447 Profile Rotation, member 37 Profiles 23, 29, 39, 634-637 applying to trim 23 available profiles for members and columns 29, 39 creating custom 635 creating from polylines 636 customizing library 634 deleting from library 634 editing 637 selecting for columns 29 selecting for members 39 Program activation 24 Program Log (Quote Generator) 504 Project Estimate 440, 443, 446-450, 456-458, 460-463,465 closina 449 creating new report template 456 disabling cut list generation 456 editing element entries 465 editing headers/footers 463 editing quantitative properties of elements 440 editing report template 457 excluding elements from 449 filtering elements from 462 filtering locations from 447 ignoring assemblies attached to materials 448 opening quantity report 448 pricing 443 printing 448 printing cut list 450 replacing elements with assemblies 446 report template properties 458 saving quantity report 448 selecting report templates 447

sort order of materials 461 specifying how information is reported 462 using optimized results for members 460 viewing quantity report 446 Project Information 594 Project Manager 594 accessing 594 keeping track of revisions 594 specifying project information 594 Project Trace Image 291, 295, 381, 579-581 deleting 581 displaying/hiding 291, 581 importing 579 making selectable/non-selectable 295 moving 381 resizing 580 rotating 381 tracing 581 Projecting studs into plates 662 Projection Plane Distance From Camera 283 Projections dimension string 311 Projects 25-27, 561-562, 565, 589, 593 closina 565 exporting content to BIM file 593 importing content from BIM file 589 opening 561 opening older 27 repairing 562 saving 562 sharing 562 starting new 25 starting new from specific template 26 starting new from templates 26 starting without using templates 26 viewing samples 27 Projects Directory 563 Prompt for Template 26 Properties 11, 20, 23, 26, 28-30, 39, 48-50, 53-54, 59, 61, 66, 71, 82-84, 86, 89, 92-94, 98, 102, 128, 138, 142, 159, 162-163, 165, 167-169, 171, 174-175, 178, 192, 194, 196, 204-205, 207-208, 210, 212-215, 232, 234, 237, 241, 251, 262, 276, 278, 280, 282, 307, 310, 327, 330, 332, 336, 408, 458, 583-584, 600, 603-605, 607-609, 611-612 adding notes 611 appliances 163 arc 330 cabinets 159 camera 262 catalogs 600 circles 332

columns 29-30 corner details 23 countertops 162 deck stairs 207-208 decks 204-205 doors 48-50 edging 192 electrical elements 171 elements 251, 603-605, 608-609 elevation 276, 278 equipment 167 exterior structures 212 fences 194 floors 71 furnishings 165, 213 gates 196 HVAC elements 175 insertion point 609 irrigation 210 lights 168-169, 214-215 line 327 members 39 mono footings 28 pads 234 paths 232 photo board 583-584 plants 178 plumbing 174 railings 89 ramps 86 rectangle 336, 408 report templates 458 roofs 92-94, 98, 128 section 280. 282 shutters 61 site boundary 241 skylights 102 slabs 234 snap edge 609 stairs 82-84 strip footings 26 structural floor 66 text 307 text with leader 310 wall openings 59 wall panel 138 walls 11, 20, 237 windows 53-54 working with Property pages 607 Property lines 239-240 Pull list 507 Purchase Order number 506

Purchased member lengths 40, 451, 460 optimizing in quantity report 460 Purging 151, 370, 425 unreferenced blocks 425 unreferenced SmartViews 370 unreferenced wall panels 151 PVC lawn edging 191

# Q

Quadrant snap 366 Quality (print) 567 Quality Level, render 535 Quantify each Member (timber frame) 440 Quantitative data, for elements 440 Quantitative data, for purchased member lengths 40, 451 Quantity 443 Quantity report 440, 443, 446-449, 460-463, 465 editing element entries 465 editing headers/footers 463 editing pricing 443 editing the quantitative properties of elements 440 excluding elements from 449 filtering elements 462 filtering locations 447 ignoring assemblies attached to materials 448 opening in associated editor 448 printing 448 replacing elements with assemblies 446 saving 448 selecting template 447 sort order of materials 461 specifying how information is reported 462 using optimized results for members 460 viewing 446 Query Element/Location 256, 558 Quick keys 41 Quick Start Guide 28 Quoins 23 Quote 472-473, 475, 481-496, 500, 502-503, 506, 509, 514-515, 518-519 adding comment records 484 adding product records 482 adding stock items 482 adjusting Grand Total 492 adjusting Margin/Markup rates 490 adjusting price levels 488 applying current prices from database 490 applying tax to items 491 assigning manufacturers to products 496

changing categories 493, 495 changing construction phases 494 creating PDFs from reports 509 customizing records 481 deleting records from 486 disabling records 486 editing cells 485 editing prices 489 enabling records 486 entering discounts 492 exporting 515 generating 472 locking records 487 omitting records 486 opening 515 overview of a quote 475 overview of Quote Generator 473 preventing record editing 487 saving 514 saving automatically 515 setting export options 518 setting Grand Total Adjustment rate 500 specifying customer information 506 specifying default save location 515 specifying expiry date 506 substituting custom items 484 substituting stock items 483 switching to Admin Mode 487 unlocking records 487 unmapping product records 486 verifying customer information 502 verifying product information 503 viewing log of transactions 518 viewing summary 519 Quote Generator 473, 477-481, 487, 493-495, 499-501, 504, 506-507, 510, 515, 519-520 about 473 allowing or preventing cost price editing 500 backing up the database 480 creating a default external text file for reports 499 customizing reports 510 exporting product records to CSV file 479 exporting product records to XML file 479 importing customers 481 importing product database 477 importing product records from XML file 478 loading a saved database 480 preparing a product database for 477 setting Grand Total Adjustment rate 500 setting price update options 501 setting up categories 493

setting up construction phases 494 setting up manufacturers 495 setting up usages 495 specfiying default save location for quotes 515 specfiying estimator information 506 specifying customer information 506 specifying default margin/markup rates 500 specifying price level names 499 specifying selection method for stock items 499 specifying which version to use 519 using a custom template 520 using a different version 519 viewing customer database 481 viewing program log 504 viewing reports 507 working in Admin Mode 487 Quote Generator Pro, using 519 Quote Generator template (for estimates) 447 Quote ID 506 Quote Log, viewing 518 Quote name 506 Quote status 506

### R

Radios 164 Radius 557 Radius, arc 329, 402 Radius, editing 332, 407 Rafters 126, 128 Rafters, portal frame 34 Rail Depth 194, 196 Rail edging 191 Railing on both sides 208 Railing on left side 208 Railing on right side 208 Railing on Stair Center 88 Railing on Stair Left 87 Railing on Stair Right 88 Railings 48, 87-90, 205, 208 controlling on deck stairs 208 deck 205 deleting 90 displaying on decks 205 editing properties 89 horizontal 88 lengthening 90 on both sides of stairs 87 on stair center 88 on stair left 87 on stair right 88 on stairs automatically 87

parts 89 removing from deck stairs 208 repeating 48 rotating 90 shortening 90 stretching 90 Railings by Picking Points 88 Railings on Stairs Automatically 87 Raise Exterior Face Top 14 Raising elements 246 Raising the terrain 218 Raked fascia 110, 128 Raked soffit 110, 128 Ramps 81, 85-86 editing general properties 86 editing layout 86 inserting 81,85 moving 81, 85 rotating 81, 85 Ranges 163 Raster printing 571-572 Rate of adjustment, Grand Total 500 Rates, default in Quote Generator 500 Rates, margin and markup 490 Raytracing 532 3D RealView 532 animation 547 Realistic display mode 286 Realistic Representation mode 283 Realtime zoom 257, 271 Rear Elevation 275 Recently used file list 562 Recently used materials list 255 Recess, wall 58 Recessed lighting 167 Recording animation 544 Records 462, 466, 468, 471, 477-479, 481-487, 493, 495, 512, 642 accessing 462 adding comment record to quote 484 adding fields 471 adding stock items 482 adding to quote 482 changing categories 493, 495 customizing in quote 481 defining formulas 468, 642 deleting fields from 471 deleting in a quote 486 disabling 486 editing cells 485 editing fields 466

enabling 486 exporting to XML file 479 importing from XML file 478 importing into Quote Generator 477 including comment records in QG reports 512 including product records in QG reports 512 locking 487 preparing for import into Quote Generator 477 substituting custom items 484 substituting stock items 483 unlocking 487 unmapping 486 Rectangles 291, 295, 335-336, 339, 407-408, 436 assigning a layer to 436 controlling selectability 295 converting to 3D building elements 339 deleting in Model View 336 deleting in Worksheet View 408 drawing in Model View 335 drawing in Worksheet View 407 editing line style in Model View 336 editing line style in Worksheet View 408 filtering from view 291 moving in Model View 336 moving in Worksheet View 407 rotating in Model View 336 rotating in Worksheet View 408 stretching in Model View 336 stretching in Worksheet View 408 Rectangular Array 250, 429 Recycling boxes 166 Redefine SmartView 369 Redo 245 Reference angle method 239, 243 Reference Point 556 Reference Point, member insertion 36 Reflection settings, material 617 Reflections, enabling 266, 268 **Refrigerators** 163 Regenerating wall panels 137, 150 Regions, room 439 Registering the program 24 Remote save location for exported QG files 518 Remove Control Point 543 Remove Member from Structural Floor 66 Remove Node 70, 77, 203 ceiling 77 deck 70.203 Remove Opening 73, 78, 99, 112, 207 ceiling 78 deck 207

floor 73 roof 99 surface 112 Remove Sound 549 Remove Sound Node 544 Removing 65-66, 256, 446 assemblies from elements 446 bearing line 65 elements 256 members from structural floor 66 Rename layer 361, 631 Renaming 48, 54, 59, 298, 300, 598 groups in catalogs and libraries 598 groups in View Manager 298 openings automatically after stretching 48, 54, 59 view windows 300 Render in 2D as line (member) 43 Render Panoramic View 533 Render Quality 535 Rendered display mode 283, 285 Rendered Outline display mode 283, 285 Rendering 267-268, 529-533, 535-538, 677 3D RealView 532 about 529 adjusting brightness 533-534 adjusting burn 533-534 adjusting intensity of trees and billboards 536 adjusting lighting 538 adjusting lights 537 adjusting noise reduction level 536 allowing background brightness adjustment 536 checking system graphics 677 creating grayscale output 533 editing sky settings 268 editing surface properties of materials 537 enabling reflections/shadows 268 Panoramic View 533 saving 533 selecting quality level 535 setting global location 530 setting plant season 531 setting the lighting 530 setting viewpoint 530 specifying lighting exposure 268 troubleshooting 538 using antialiasing 535 using background texture as light source 537 using physically accurate lighting 267 Re-ordering views 301 Re-ordering wall panels manually 142

Repair Project 562 Repeat 48 Repeat Animation During Preview 542 Repeat Insertion 48 Replace element with assemblies in quantities 446 Replace tool 250 Replace with Assemblies 440 Replacing 250, 308, 383, 446, 483-484, 606 elements 250 elements in assemblies 606 elements with assemblies 446 products in quote with custom items 484 products in quote with stock items 483 text in Model View 308 text in Worksheet View 383 Report Designer 510 Report only total linear length 451, 454 Report Templates 447, 456-458, 460-462 controlling display of currency symbol 460 copying 457 creating 456 deleting 457 disabling cut list generation 456 editing 457 editing file extension 460 editing name 460 opening 447, 457 properties 458 selecting 447 sort order of materials 461 specifying how information is reported 462 Reports 446, 449, 462, 472, 497, 499, 506-507, 509-511, 520 changing order in Quote Generator 511 creating a default external text file 499 creating new reports in Quote Generator 511 creating PDFs from in Quote Generator 509 customizing in Quote Generator 510 cut list 449 defining group sorting options 513 defining sort order in QG reports 513 deleting in Quote Generator 511 disabling selected reports in Quote Generator 511 filtering elements from 462 including comment records 512 including individual product records 512 making active in Quote Generator 511 printing in Quote Generator 509 quantity report 446 quote 472 specifying company information in QG 497

specifying customer information in QG 506 specifying estimator information 506 uploading to ERP 520 viewing in Quote Generator 507 **REScheck Export 527** Reset Camera 270 Reset pattern 623 Reset Terrain 230 Reset text position 392 Reshaping 70, 73, 76-78, 97, 172, 190, 203, 206, 222, 233, 336-337, 398, 408-410 ceiling openings 78 ceilings 76-77 deck openings 206 decks 203 fills 190 floor openings 73 floors 70 Floors 70 plateaus 222 polygons in Model View 337 polygons in Worksheet View 409-410 polylines in Worksheet View 398 rectangles in Model View 336 rectangles in Worksheet View 408 roofs 97 slabs 233 wiring 172 Resize Image 580 Resizing 10, 70, 73, 76, 78, 189, 206, 233, 336-337, 348, 350, 354, 398, 408-410, 575, 578, 580,673 CAD image in Model View 350, 578 catalog panel 673 ceiling openings 78 ceilings 76 deck openings 206 fills 189 floor openings 73 floors 70 information panel 673 model view images 348 PDF image 354, 575 polygons in Model View 337 polygons in Worksheet View 409-410 polylines in Worksheet View 398 project trace images 580 rectangles in Model View 336 rectangles in Worksheet View 408 slabs 233 wall layout 10 Resolution, animation 547

Restarting line-drawn elements 48 Restore Down 303 Retail sales quote 472 Retaining Walls 11, 14, 19, 234, 237-238 applying materials 19, 238 converting drafting objects to 339 drawing 234 editing width 11, 237 extending below terrain 14 making invisible in 2D 14 Returns, air 174 Reverse Starter Course 23 Revision Clouds 338-339, 411-412, 435-436 assigning a layer to 436 defining settings 435 deleting in Model View 339 deleting in Worksheet View 412 drawing in Model View 338 drawing in Worksheet View 411 editing line style in Worksheet View 412 editing pattern in Worksheet View 412 editing properties in Model View 339 moving in Model View 338 moving in Worksheet View 411 stretching in Model View 338 stretching in Worksheet View 412 **Revision Control** 594 Ridge board 126 Ridge surface edge definition 108 Right angles 554 **Right Elevation 275** Right Interior Side 20 Right Interior Side (wall) 22 Right-click menus 51, 245 Right-hand vs left-hand door definition 47 Rigid Insulation 340-341, 416-417, 436 assigning a layer to 436 deleting in Model View 341 deleting in Worksheet View 417 drawing in Model View 340 drawing in Worksheet View 416 editing line style in Model View 341 editing line style in Worksheet View 416 moving in Model View 341 moving in Worksheet View 416 stretching in Model View 341 stretching in Worksheet View 416 Rim Joist 111, 123-124, 130 Riser Angle 84 Riser Height 82, 207 Riser Maximum 82

Risers 208 Roller door 48 Roof Accessories 102-103 deleting 103 inserting 102 moving 103 rotating 103 Roof by Perimeter 91 Roof by Picking Points 91 Roof Symbol 421 deleting 421 editing 421 inserting 421 moving 421 Roof vents 102 Roofs 15, 43, 91-99, 101-102, 105, 108, 124, 126, 128-129, 131, 524 applying materials 99 breaking 97 changing way lower-story roof is created 92 converting framing to members 43, 124, 131, 524 converting hip to gable 93 converting to surfaces 99, 108 creating gables mid-fascia 97 creating manually 105 defining material at gable ends 94 deleting 99 displaying walls beneath gable ends 94 editing frame details 128 editing height 98 editing shape 98 editing size properties 98 editing truss run properties 129 extending walls beneath gable ends 15, 93 framing 126 inserting accessories 102 inserting by picking points 91 inserting openings in 99 inserting over perimeter walls 91 inserting truss profiles 128 matching planes 96 moving 95 removing dormer holes 101 removing openings from 99 reshaping 97 rotating 95 selecting for editing 92 stretching 95, 97 surface edge properties 108 Room dimensions 320

Room Division 69, 436 assigning a layer to 436 Room Region Schedule 524 Room Regions 436, 439, 524 assigning a layer to 436 defining extents of room regions to be inserted in rooms 439 deleting 439 editing properties 439 generating schedule 524 moving text 439 reshaping 439 resizing 439 Rotating 17, 28, 37, 81, 85, 90, 95, 102-103, 108, 158, 163, 165-166, 168, 173, 175, 189, 192, 199, 202, 210-211, 213, 221, 233, 236, 247-248, 307, 326, 329, 332, 336-337, 342-343, 345, 351, 354, 371, 373, 376, 379, 381, 383, 395, 398, 401, 406, 408-410, 414, 417, 419-420, 424, 428, 525, 557, 575, 579, 583, 608 accessories 165, 213 appliances 163 arcs in Model View 329 arcs in Worksheet View 401 berms/trenches 221 blocks 424 cabinets 158 CAD files in Model View 351, 579 CAD images in Worksheet View 373, 376 circles in Model View 332 circles in Worksheet View 406 cut line in Model View 345 cut line in Worksheet View 420 decks 202 edging 192 electronics 165, 213 elements 247-248.608 equipment 166 exterior structures 211 fills 189 furniture 165.213 hatching 414 HVAC elements 175 images 381 lights 168 lines in Model View 326 lines in Worksheet View 395 masonry section in Model View 343 masonry section in Worksheet View 419 member profiles 37 members 37 mono footings 28

objects in Worksheet View 428 pads 233 PDF image 354, 379, 575 photo board 583 plumbing 173 polygons in Model View 337 polygons in Worksheet View 409-410 polylines 398 railings 90 ramps 81, 85 rectangles in Model View 336 rectangles in Worksheet View 408 roof accessories 103 roofs 95 schedules 525 sheds 199 skylights 102 slabs 233 SmartViews 371 sprinklers 210 stairs 81.85 surface arrow 108 text in Model View 307 text in Worksheet View 383 using the Commander 557 walls 17, 236 wood section in Model View 342 wood section in Worksheet View 417 Rules for cut list 459 Rules for editing cells in a quote 485 Run External Program on Export 518

#### S

Saddle situations 92 Sales quote 472 Sample projects 27 Sampling materials with eyedropper 255 Sand 190 Sandboxes 210 SAPPHIRE Structure export 592 Sash, door 50 Sash, skylight 102 Sash, window 55 Satellite dishes 166 Saturation, sky settings 266, 268 Save as grayscale 533 Save Catalog 601 Save Catalog As 601 Save Element to Catalog 583, 605 Save indivdual frames to disc 545 Save location, exported QG files 518

Save location, projects 563 Save location, QG quotes 515 Save Theme 672 Save time (min) 563 Saving 448, 468, 509, 514-515, 544-545, 562-563, 583, 590-591, 593, 601-602, 605, 642, 672 3D RealView renderings 533 animation frames individually 545 animations 544-545 automatically 563 backups 563 catalog content to a BIM file 602 catalog content to a TXT file 601 catalogs 601 current quote 514 default save location for projects 563 default save location for quotes 515 elements in drawing to catalog 605 formulas 470, 645 photo board to catalog 583 project content to BIM file 593 project estimate 448 projects 562 projects as templates 563 quantity report 448 quotes automatically 515 renderings 533 reports in Quote Generator 509 to 3DS (3D Studio) file 591 to BMP file 590 to DWG file 591 to DXF file 591 to JPG file 590 to LP (Lightscape) file 591 to OPT (Art*lantis) file 591 to TGA file 590 to WRL (VRML) file 591 toolbar color themes 672 Saw Cut Allowance 455, 459 Scale, CAD image 349, 372, 375, 577 Scale, imported image 380 Scale, pattern 623 Scale, PDF 352, 377, 573 Scale, print 567-569 Scale, project trace image 579 Scale, view 299, 567, 569 Scale, wall panel 135, 148 Scale, worksheets with wall panels 135, 148 Scaling 350, 354, 381, 387, 394, 424, 431, 575, 578.580 blocks 424

CAD image in Model View 350, 578 dimension geometry 394 dimension values 394 images 381 leader arrows 387 objects in Worksheet View 431 PDF image 354, 575 project trace image 580 Scanned plan import 579 Scene Properties 266-267 setting time of day 267 Schedule Marks 291, 296, 526 controlling selectability 296 definina 526 hiding 291 removing 527 Schedule Text Style (wall panels) 135, 147 Schedules 135-136, 146, 291, 295, 436, 524-527 assigning a layer to 436 controlling selectability 295 defining line styles 526 defining marks 526 defining text styles 526 deleting 527 editing settings in wall panel diagrams 146 hiding 291 in wall panel diagrams 135-136, 147 member 524 moving 525 printing 525 removing schedule marks 527 room region 524 rotating 525 Scrap length, maximum 455, 459 Scrapped items, showing in cut list 455, 459 Screen tip display 50 Scroll bars 31, 40, 675 Scroll wheel mouse, zooming with 271 Scroll wheel, assigning action to 273 Scrolling in drawing area 40, 49 Search catalog 35 Search up (Find and Replace) 308, 383 Searching 39, 251, 603 in catalog panel 39 in Replace dialog 251 in the Element Manager 603 Season Change 179 Season Color Diagram 183 Season, setting 531 Seasonal Change, plants 179 Seat (roof) 128

Section Marks 281, 290, 294 controlling selectability 294 displaying/hiding 290 moving 281 turning on and off 281 Section Properties 282 Section Properties panel 280-281 closing 281 displaying 280 zooming and panning in 280 Section View 279-283, 367 changing depth 282 changing viewpoint 281 creating 279 deleting 283 detailing 282 displaying 280 displaying properties 280 editing properties 282 missing or extra lines in inserted SmartViews 367 Section, masonry 343, 418 Section, wood 341, 417 Select All 50, 292-294, 427 Select All Similar 50 Select elements on current location only while in plan view 51 Select None 292-294 Select Previous 50, 427 Select Profile 29, 39 column 29 member 39 Select/Edit 50 Selecting 50-51, 92, 296, 427 deselecting elements 50 elements 50 elements on all locations in 2D 51 floors 50 Make All Non-Selectable Except 296 objects in Worksheet View 427 Pick Items to Make Non-Selectable 296 roofs 92 Selection control on layers 364 Selection Filter 292-296 about 292 building locations 293 dimensions 295 electrical wiring 295 elements on locations 292 elements on terrain 293 filtering drafting objects 295

filtering Framing Mode components 294 Make All Non-Selectable Except 296 notation objects 294 Pick Items to Make Non-Selectable 296 project trace images 295 schedule marks 296 schedules 295 text 294 viewing aids 294 Selection method for stock items 499 Selection mode 50 Selection preview 50 Semi Gloss finish 537 Sensors 170 Separator, opening dimensions 313 Set All Active 301 Set All Inactive 301 Set Color 361, 631 Set Current (layer) 360-361 Set Current (view window) 302 Set Decking Direction 203 Set Line Type 361, 631 Set Line Weight 361, 631 Set Price Update Pricing to \$0.00 501 Setbacks 242 Settings 435, 519-520 polygon hatch 435 Quote Generator 519-520 revision cloud 435 Shadows, enabling 268 Shape, column 29, 39 Shape, door 48 Shape, member 29, 39 Shape, sidelite/highlite 49 Sharing 562, 593, 602 catalog content 601-602 project content 593 projects 562 Shed Builder Wizard 197, 199, 652 custom configuration 199, 652 launching at startup 199 using 197 Shed Configuration 199, 652 Shed dormer 100 Sheds 197-199, 210 building 197 editing 199 inserting pre-made 210 moving 198 rotating 199

Sheet size 566, 568 Shelves, book 164 Shift key to disable Ortho 554 Shingles 99 Shiny finish 537 Ship To information 506 Shortcut keys 41,676 Shortcut menus 51, 245 Shortcuts for commands 32, 36, 41, 676 Shortening 11, 26, 37, 90, 236, 326 lines in Model View 326 members 37 members to cutting edge 37 railings 90 strip footings 26 walls 11, 236 Show Backsplash 160 Show Boundary (terrain) 219 Show Contours (terrain) 218 Show Coordinate Icon 555 Show Counter 159 Show Cut Lines 84 Show Handle 160 Show Labels (terrain contours) 230 Show Line Weights 631 Show Nosing 160 Show Riser 82 Show Scrapped Items, in cut list 455, 459 Show Shelves 160 Show Skipped Items, in cut list 455, 459 Show Trunk in Plan 178 Show View Contents 567, 569 Shower curtains 165 Showers 173 Shrubs 177, 179, 188 Shutters 60-61 deleting 61 editina 61 inserting 60 Side Offset 90 Sidelites 48-49, 54 doors 48-49 window 54 windows 54 Sidewalks 231 Signature Line 512 customer 512 estimator 512 Sill definition 656

Sills 20.50 controlling display on garage doors 50 Simplify 609 Simpson Component Solutions export 592 Single Insertion Only 48 Sinks 160, 173 inserting 173 inserting into cabinets 160 Site Boundary 239-244, 436 assigning a layer to 436 bearing method 243 clipping terrain to 242 creating with Angle Bearing Method 240 creating with Reference Angle Method 239 curving edges 242 defining setback distances 242 deleting 244 editing angles 241 editing edge lengths 241 editing line styles 243 editing peg style 243 editing text styles 243 moving 241 stretching 241 units of measure 243 Site data, importing 224 Size from encyclopedia 178 Size of animation 547 Size of elements 251, 608 Size of terrain 217 Size. door 48 Sketchfab Export 592 SketchUp export 591 SketchUp import 585-586, 638 Skipped items, showing in cut list 455, 459 Skirting 205 changing material 205 controlling display 205 SKP export 591 SKP import 585-586, 638 Sku file, preparing 477 SKU import 477 Sky settings 266, 268 Skylight noise reduction 536 Skylights 101-102 deleting 102 editing properties 102 inserting 101 moving 102 rotating 102 Slab on Grade 7

Slabs 232-234 applying materials 234 curving 233 deleting 234 editing thickness 234 inserting 232 moving 233 reshaping 233 resizing 233 rotating 233 stretching 233 Sliding door 48 Slope direction 108 Slope symbol 421 Slope Type 98 Slope Value 98 Slope, ramp 86 Slope, surface 107 Slopes 223-224 creating 223 deleting 224 editing angle 224 editing height 223 moving 223 stretching 223 Sloping members 32, 38 Sloping walls 15, 238 SmartViews 367, 369-371 deleting 371 deleting unreferenced SmartViews 370 editing 369 enabling/disabling polygon consolidation when inserting 367 handling missing or extra lines or faces 367 inserting saved 367 moving 371 redefining settings 369 rotating 371 updating globally with changes to your model 370 updating with changes to the model 370 Smoke detectors 170 Smoothing, TIN mesh 229 Snap Angle 553 Snap Edge 609 Snap grid 552 Snap light to 168 Snap Overrides 366 Snap Priority 553 Snap tracking 553 Snapping to objects 366, 552-553

Snaps, object 366-367, 552-553 Sofas 164 Soffit 110 Software activation 24 Soil 190 Soil beds 189 Soil preference 182 Solar panels 102 Solar tubes 102 Solid Fill 253-254 disabling for individual elements 254 editing colors 253 turning on 253 Solid view 285 Solution Type 93 Sort order, in project estimate 458, 461 Sort order, in QG reports 513 Sort order, in quote 508, 515 Sort order, in Quote Generator reports 507 Sort order, wall panels 140, 142 Sounds 544, 548-549 adding to animation 544 attaching to catalog elements 548 attaching to elements in drawing 548 playing 549 removing from animation 544 removing from catalog elements 549 removing from elements 549 selecting default directory 549 Sounds Directory 549 Spacebar as Enter key 49 Spacer for filler cabinets 159 Spacing along Beam 204 Spacing note, member 422 Spacing, wall panel diagrams 135, 148 Span tables 115, 118, 653-654 customizing span table library 653 defining a table 654 defining in building locations 115 selecting for individual openings 118 selecting for individual walls 118 Special order items 493, 495 Specify Framing 111, 123-124, 126, 128, 130 ceilings 124 floors 123 roofs 126, 128 Specify Target 540 Specular 538 Specular settings, material 617 Speed improvement 50

Speed, animation 546 Speed, navigation 274-275 Speed, zoom 274-275 Sphere mapping, material 617 Spinning 257, 270, 273 Spline 399 Spline leader 384-385 Split Dimension 321, 393 Splitting floors 69 Spot level points 224, 228-229 adding to TIN mesh 228 editing elevation 229 importing 224 Spot light 633 Spot light cone angle 634 Spray, sprinkler 210 Sprinklers 209-210 deleting 210 editing height 210 editing spray range 210 inserting 209 moving 210 rotating 210 Square Footage, building 437 Square member ends 40 Stairs 81-85, 87, 207 adding to deck 207 deleting 84, 87 editing cut line 84 editing details 83 editing layout 82 editing size 82 inserting 81,85 landing segments 82 moving 81, 85 parts 82 rotating 81,85 segments 82 Standard mapping, texture 619 Standard Report Form 447 Start a New Project 25-26 Start Number, wall panels 133-134, 140 Starting elevation, contours 218 Startup screen 675 disabling 675 enabling 675 viewing 675 Stationary photo board 581, 583 Status Bar 674 Status of products in QG 493, 495

Step Back 7, 92, 255 Materials Paintbrush 255 roof by picking points 92 walls by baseline 7 Stepped footings 25 Stepping walls 15, 238 Stereo Effect 283 Stereo Vision 283 about 283 adjusting settings 283 turning on/off 283 Stereos 164 Stereoscopic VR viewing 266, 677 Stock Items 482-483, 493, 495, 499 adding to quote 482 identifying in quote 493, 495 specifying selection method when adding to quote 499 substituting for products 483 Store information 497 Stories 54,7 adding 7 creating locations for 54 Stoves 163 Stretch Openings option 48, 54, 59 Stretching 10-11, 26, 37, 48, 54, 59, 65, 70, 73, 76-78, 90, 95, 97, 101, 106, 161, 172, 189-190, 192-193, 203, 221-223, 231, 233, 236, 241, 310, 320, 326, 329, 332, 336-338, 340-343, 345, 348, 386, 392, 395, 398, 402, 407-410, 412, 414-417, 419-420, 431, 439 arcs in Model View 329 arcs in Worksheet View 402 batt insulation in Model View 340 batt insulation in Worksheet View 415 bearing line 65 berms/trenches 221 ceiling openings 78 ceilinas 76-77 circles in Model View 332 circles in Worksheet View 407 countertops 161 cut line in Model View 345 cut line in Worksheet View 420 decks 203 dimensions in Model View 320 dimensions in Worksheet View 392 doors 48, 54, 59 dormer roof 101 edaina 192 fences 193 fills 189-190

floor edges 70 floor openings 73 floors 70 Floors 70 hatching 414 leader 310. 386 lines in Model View 326 lines in Worksheet View 395 masonry section in Model View 343 masonry section in Worksheet View 419 members 37 model view images 348 objects in Worksheet View 431 openings 48, 54, 59 path elements 231 plateaus 222 polygons in Model View 337 polygons in Worksheet View 409-410 polylines in Worksheet View 398 railings 90 rectangles in Model View 336 rectangles in Worksheet View 408 revision clouds in Model View 338 revision clouds in Worksheet View 412 rigid insulation in Model View 341 rigid insulation in Worksheet View 416 roofs 95, 97 room regions 439 site boundary 241 slabs 233 slopes 223 strip footings 26 surfaces 106 walls 10-11, 236 windows 48, 54, 59 wiring 172 wood section in Model View 342 wood section in Worksheet View 417 String 463 String field 466 Stringer Side Offset 83 Stringer Thickness 83 Stringer Width 84 Stringers 208 Strip Footings 48, 25-27 breaking 27 converting drafting objects to 339 curving 27 deleting 27 editing size 26 editing type 26 inserting 25

lengthening/shortening 26 moving/stretching 26 repeating 48 Strip Footings Attached to Walls 25 Strip Footings by Picking Points 25 Structural Floor 63-66, 71 adding members 65 converting finish floor to 71 cutting opening in 66 editing properties 66 inserting a bearing line 64 inserting by perimeter 63-64 inserting by room 64 moving framing base point 65 moving/stretching a bearing line 65 removing a bearing line 65 removing members 66 Structures, exterior 210 Stud interference 662 Stud spacing 116, 662 Studs 114, 116, 311, 662, 668 defining in end condition configuration 668 defining in infill configuration 662 defining in wall framing 116 dimensioning to 313 projecting into plates 662 selecting member type 114 Subgroups 597 adding to catalogs and libraries 597 moving to root 597 Substitute Item (quote) 483-484 Subtracting locations/regions from area/perimeter calculations 437 Suffix, wall panel tag 133-134, 138, 142-143 Summary, quote 519 Sun light, enabling/disabling 266 Sun Power 266, 268 Sun Shadows, enabling 266, 268 Supplier 40, 440, 451 Suppliers 495-496 assigning to products in a quote 496 setting up in Quote Generator 495 Support height above main roof 100 Support Height, roof surface 98 Support, technical 30 Suppress display of metric units 46-47 Suppress trailing zeros 46 Surface Properties 537, 617 Surfaces 12, 43, 99, 105-108, 110-112, 124, 130-131.524 adding nodes to 106

applying materials to 111 converting framing to members 43, 124, 131, 524 converting roofs to 99, 108 creating 105 curving 107 cutting openings in 112 defining for walls 12 deleting 112 dropping a wall's exterior surface 14 editing arrow length 107 editing openings 112 editing roof edge details 110 editing slope 107 editing solid fill colors 253 editing thickness 111 editing up-slope direction 108 framing 111, 130 Intersect Planes 108 joining together 108 moving 106 removing openings from 112 reshaping 106 resizing 106 roof surface edge properties 108 stretching 106 Survey 239-240 Survey data, importing 224 Suspended ceilings 77 Swing 46-47, 56 editing door swing properties 47 flipping door swing 46 flipping gate swing 196 window symbols 56 Swing Direction 47 Swing Type 47, 196 Swings 210 Switches 170 Symbols, window opening 56 System graphics, checking 677

## Т

TAB file 477 importing products from into Quote Generator 477 Tabbed toolbars 671-672 Tab-delimited fields 466 Tables 164 Tables, span 654 Tabs, view 302 Tag Elements with Schedule Mark 524, 527 Tag Text Style (wall panels) 135, 147 Tags 136, 140, 143-144 applying new settings to panels 143 displaying in wall panel diagrams 136, 144 Tags, schedule 296, 526-527 Tags, wall panel 132-134, 138, 140, 142, 146 TakeOff Plus template 447 Tangent snap 366 Tape Measure 434, 558 Tapered member 39 Target 257, 264, 270 changing height 264 moving 264 spinning around camera 257, 270 Target paths 540 Tax 491, 501, 507 applying to items in a quote 491 applying to reports in Quote Generator 507 setting up tax rates in Quote Generator 501 Technical support 30 Telephone service boxes 166 Telephones 164 Televisions 164 Temperature, color 634 Template element filter 458 Template houses 211 Templates 25-26, 520, 563, 565 creating 563 creating thumbnails for 564 disabling use of on project startup 26 prompting for at project startup 26 setting directory 565 specifying descriptions for 564 starting new projects from a specific template 26 starting new projects from templates 25-26 using custom templates in Quote Generator 520 Templates (report) 447, 456-458, 460-462 controlling display of currency symbol 460 copying 457 creating 456 deleting 457 disabling cut list generation 456 editing 457 editing file extension 460 editing name 460 filtering elements from 462 opening 447, 457 properties 458 selecting for estimate 447

sort order of materials 461 specifying how information is reported 462 Templates (view filter) 297 applying 297 creating 297 deleting 297 editing 297 Temporary Files Directory 565 Tennis Courts 210 Terrain 217-219, 224, 228-230, 242, 289, 436 adding spot points to TIN mesh 228 adjusting smoothness of TIN mesh contours 229 assigning a layer to 436 clipping to site boundary 242 controlling display of contour labels 230 converting to TIN mesh 228 cutting around the building 217 defining base level 218 defining mesh spacing 218 defining size 217 displaying/hiding 289 displaying/hiding boundary 219 editing elevation of spot points 229 importing site data 224 resetting 230 selecting a line style 219 selecting a material 218 turning on/off 219 Terrain Base Level 227 Testing a formula 470, 644 Text 230, 290, 294, 305-310, 371, 381-386, 392, 436, 439, 626 adding description with a leader in Worksheet View 385 adding in Model View 305 adding in Worksheet View 381-382 adding text with a leader in Model View 309 adding text with a leader in Worksheet View 384 assigning a layer to 436 changing the style in Model View 307 controlling display of contour labels 230 controlling quality through antialiasing 384 customizing labels library 306 customizing text style library 308, 626 deleting in Model View 309 deleting in Worksheet View 384 displaying/hiding 290 editing content 307 editing in default title block 371 editing in Worksheet View 383 editing justification 308

editing leader text 310 editing leader text in Worksheet View 386 finding and replacing in Model View 308 finding and replacing in Worksheet View 383 globally updating styles 307 moving dimension text 392 moving in Model View 307 moving in room region 439 moving in Worksheet View 383 moving leader text in Model View 310 moving leader text in Worksheet View 386 resetting position in dimensions 392 rotating in Model View 307 rotating in Worksheet View 383 selection filtering 294 Text Color 307, 672 Text file 443, 499, 510, 601 creating a default file for QG reports 499 exporting catalog to 601 exporting quantitative properties of elements 443 including in QG reports 512 Text Height 307 Text Position, resetting 392 Text Styles 135, 147, 230, 243, 278, 282, 307-308, 310, 526, 626 adding 308, 626 defining in schedules 526 deleting 308, 626 editing 308, 626 editing in drawing 307 editing in site boundary 243 elevation marks 278 section marks 282 selecting for contour labels 230 selecting for wall panel diagrams 135, 147 specifying for text with leader 310 updating globally 307 Text with Leader 309-310, 323, 384-387, 627 adding in Model View 309 adding in Worksheet View 384-385 deleting 310 deleting in Worksheet View 387 editing leader style in Worksheet View 387 editing text in Model View 310 editing text in Worksheet View 386 editing text style in Model View 310 moving text in Model View 310 moving text in Worksheet View 386 moving/stretching leader 310, 386 scaling arrows 387 updating style globally 310

Texture intensity 619 Texture Mapping 252, 610 Textured display mode 285 Textures 218, 252, 254, 610, 617, 619-620 applying to elements 254 applying to material 617 appropriate sizing for 620 cropped/cut-off 620 custom 620 editing mapping properties 619 from outside sources 620 selecting for terrain 218 **Textures Directory 620** TGA export 590 TGA import 379, 579 Themes 672-673 loading toolbar color themes 673 saving toolbar color themes 672 Thermostats 170 Thickness 49, 71, 98, 111, 160, 232, 234, 631 backsplash 160 counter 159 door leaf 49 floor 71 line 631 pads 234 paths 232 roof 98 surface 111 Three-dimensional viewing 257, 259-260 Thumbnail, creating for template 564 Tile Height 620 Tile Height/Width 252, 611, 619 Tile Horizontally 619-620 Tile Open Views 302 Tile Vertically 619-620 Tile Width 620 Tile, floor 71 Tiled printing 569 Tilt door 48 Tilt, light source 169, 215 Tilting camera in animation 543 Timber Frames 34-35, 440 editing properties 35 inserting 34 quantifying each member 440 Time of day, setting for a scene 266-267 TIN Mesh 228-230 adding spot level points to 228 adjusting smoothness of contours 229 controlling display of contour labels 230

converting terrain to 228 creating by importing spot level points 224 editing elevation of spot points 229 removing 230 **TIN Smoothing 229** Title blocks 348, 371, 374, 576 customizing default title block 371 deleting default title block 371 inserting in Model View 348, 576 inserting in Worksheet View 371, 374 Title blocks, wall panel diagrams 135, 148 Titles, project estimate 463 Toasters 163 Toe Depth 160 Toe Height 160 Toe Space 160 Toilets 173 Tolerance, in cut list 455, 459 Tool help 29 Toolbar Areas 672 Toolbars 31, 671-673 color of toolbar areas 672 customizing colors and effects 672 described 31 displaying 671 displaying in non-tabbed format 672 displaying in tabbed format 671 free-floating 672 hiding 671 loading a color theme 673 moving 673 saving color settings to a theme 672 Tooltip display 50 Top Hat member 39 Top Plate 116, 662 Top Rail Height 194, 196 Total Cost 487 Total linear length calculation 40, 451, 454, 458 Total price summary (quote) 519 Total Profit 487 Total Steps 82 Total, grand 492 Totals 487 Totals, including in QG reports 512 Touchscreen computing 675 Towel racks 165 Trace Element 606 Trace image 579 Tracing a plan 581 Trailing zeros, suppressing 46

Trampolines 210 Transaction logbook (QG) 504, 518 Transferring content between catalogs 589, 600, 602 Transferring objects to other layers 363 Transformer Box 166 Translate X 556 Translate Y 556 Transom 50.55 door 50 window 55 Transparency, in photo board 584 Transparency, in texures 619 Transparency, of material 537, 617 Trash cans 166 Trash Compactors 163 Tray ceilings 75 Tread Run 82, 208 Treads 208 Tree and billboard intensity 536 Trees 177, 179, 188 Trellises 213 Trenches, creating 220 Triangulated Irregulated Network survey mesh 224, 228-229 Trim 20, 23, 50, 55, 59 adding to walls 20 adding to windows and doors 20 applying profiles to 23 removing from doors 50 removing from wall openings 59 removing from window openings 55 Trimming 37, 326, 330, 395, 398, 402, 432 arcs 330 arcs in Worksheet View 402 lines 326.395 members to cutting edge 37 objects to other objects 432 polylines 398 True North, calculating 531 Trunk Diameter 178 Truss Run 128-129 editina 129 inserting 128 Trusses 34-35, 128, 440 editing properties 35 inserting members 34 inserting profiles under existing roof 128 quantifying each member separately 440 T-Shape member 39 Tubs 173

Turbines 213 Turned studs 668 Tutor 29 Tutorial 28 Tutorials 27-28 TXT export 443, 601 catalogs 601 TXT import, Quote Generator 477 TXT report template 447 Type Ahead feature 482-483, 485-486, 501

#### U

UDA Construction Office template 447 U-Factor 49 editing for a door 49 Underlining in menus 41 Undo 245 Undo material application 255 Uniform Scale 212 Unit field (report template) 465-466 Units of Measure 45-47, 40, 322, 440, 443, 451, 465, 627, 649 changing 45 customizing library 649 exporting for all elements to text file 443 in dimensions 322, 324, 627-628 in report template 465-466 in site boundary 243 specifying for purchased items 40, 451 specifying in element's Quantity properties 440 suppressing metric units 47 suppressing trailing zeros 46 Unlock Item (in quote) 487 Unlocking a catalog 599 Unmap Record 486 Unreferenced blocks, deleting 425 Unreferenced SmartViews, deleting 370 Unreferenced wall panels, deleting 151 Update Prices Only 501 Update Roof 101 Update SmartView 370 Update Smartviews (Global) 370 Update Style 307, 310, 322 dimension 322 text 307 text with leader 310 Updating wall panels 150 Upload to ERP 520 Upper Offset 86 Upper Point location 107

Upper Width 86 Usage (plants) 182 Usages 40, 66, 111, 123, 125, 127, 130, 440, 443, 451, 455, 495, 507, 621, 646, 656, 662, 668 assigning to ceiling framing members 125 assigning to elements 440 assigning to floor framing members 66, 123 assigning to purchased items 40, 451 assigning to roof framing members 127 customizing material usages library 621 customizing usages library 646 defining in end condition configurations 668 defining in head/sill/jamb tables 656 defining in wall infill configurations 662 exporting for all elements to text file 443 filtering from QG reports 507 grouping by in cut list 455 setting up in Quote Generator 495 specifying for surface framing members 111, 130 Usages library, customizing 646 Use Cut List Results in Report 460 Use encyclopedia object 180, 188 Use No Template 26 Use Optimized Results 458 Use physically accurate lighting 266-267 Use Space as Enter 49 Use Specific Template 26 Use texture as light source 537 U-Section member 39 User Guide 30 Utility meters 166

## v

Valid until date (quote) 506 Valley board 126 Valley surface edge definition 108 Valleys 219 Value field (report template) 465 Value Scale 394 Value, field 464 Vanities 157-158, 652 in Bathroom configuration 157, 652 inserting 158 Varnished 537 Vaulted ceilings 76 **VCRs** 164 Vector Printing 571-572 about 571 disabling 572

Veneer Air Space 12 Veneer top/bottom extension 14 Veneer Width 12 Vents 174 Vents, roof 102 Verifying 502-503 customer information in Quote Generator 502 product information in QG 503 Vert. Distance 98 Vertical Separation 50, 55 Very Top Plate 116, 136, 144, 662 defining in wall infill configuration 116, 662 including in wall panel diagrams 136, 144 Video Compression, animation 546 Videos 27-28, 538 View Angle, 3D camera view 263-264 View Angle, animation 539 View Elevation 275. 277-278 View Filter 133, 288-297, 581 controlling selectability of building locations 293 controlling selectability of dimensions 295 controlling selectability of drafting objects 295 controlling selectability of electrical wiring 295 controlling selectability of notation objects 294 controlling selectability of project trace images 295 controlling selectability of schedules 295 controlling selectability of text 294 controlling selectability of viewing aids 294 controlling selection of elements on locations 292 controlling selection of landscape elements 293 creating a template 297 filtering building elements from view 288 filtering building locations from view 289 filtering dimensions from view 290 filtering drafting objects 291 filtering electrical wiring from view 291 filtering elevation/section marks 290 filtering Framing Mode components 290 filtering Framing Mode components for selection 294 filtering landscape elements from view 289 filtering notation objects 290 filtering project trace images from view 291, 581 filtering schedule marks for selection 296 filtering schedule marks from view 291 filtering schedules from view 291 filtering the display 288 filtering wall panel tags from view 133 selection filtering 292

View Filter Templates 297 applying 297 creating 297 deleting 297 editing 297 View import 345 View Manager 298-302, 566 accessing 298 adding groups 298 collapsing groups 299 defining a view's print properties 566 deleting groups 299 expanding groups 299 renaming groups 298 renaming views 300 re-ordering views 301 setting current view window 302 View Project Estimate 448 View Properties 604 View Scale 299, 567, 569 View Section 280 View side, wall panel 133-134, 139 View Tabs 31, 302 View Windows 56, 298-303, 357, 566, 569 allowing a different current location per window 56, 302 cascading 303 closing 301 copying 300 creating 299 defining print properties 566 deleting 301 editing print scale 569 managing 298 opening 300 printing multiple 571 renaming 300 re-ordering in View Manager 301 restoring 303 returning to maximized view 303 setting current 302 switching between 302 switching to Worksheet View 357 tiling 302 turning tabs on 302 Viewing 56, 257, 259-261, 265, 283, 302, 448, 675 2D Designer's Plan 259 2D Plan 257, 259 3D Camera Views 257, 260 3D QuickView 259 changing the display mode 283 cut list 449

different locations per view window 56, 302 dynamic cutaway views 261 in 2D 259 in 3D 259, 261 presentation mode 265 quantity report 448 startup screen 675 virtual reality 265 with the Navigator 257 Viewing Aids 290, 294 controlling selectability 294 filtering from view 290 Viewing field angle 264 Viewpoint 263 Views 345, 347-348, 371 deleting model view images in Model View 348 deleting model view images in Worksheet View 371 inserting in Model View 345 moving model view images in Model View 347 moving model view images in Worksheet View 371 resizing model view images 348 stretching model view images 348 Virtual Keyboard 675 Virtual Reality 265-266, 677 specifying view type 266, 677 viewing in 265 Visibility, layer 364 Volleyball courts 210 Volume unit of measure 45 VR app, generating panoramic views 533 VRML export 591

### W

Wainscoting 20 Walk Around 257, 269, 273-274 Walkthroughs 538 Walkways 231 Wall end conditions 667-668 customizing library 667 defining a configuration 668 Wall Framing 114-119 about 114 creating custom intersection configurations 119 editing framing rule for individual walls 117 editing head/sill/jamb configurations for individual openings 118 editing infill for individual walls 116 editing intersection framing 119 editing span table selection for individual

walls 118 going into Framing Mode 116 making walls load-bearing or non-loadbearing 115 selecting framing member 114 Wall Height 53, 12, 238 Wall infill 115-116, 290, 660, 662 customizing for individual walls 116 customizing infill library 660 defining 662 filtering display in Framing Mode 290 selecting in building locations 115 Wall Infill Tool filter 290, 294 Wall Opening Span Table 654 Wall Panels 18, 131-133, 135, 137-140, 142-147, 149-152.436 about 131 applying name changes to panels 143 assigning a layer to 436 breaking walls into specific lengths 18 customizing 133 defining dimension settings 136, 145 defining schedule settings 136 displaying tags 133 displaying tags in diagrams 136, 144 editing content display 144 editing inserted panel diagrams 150 editing insertion scale 135, 148 editing insertion settings 135, 147 editing names 138, 142 editing numbering order 140 editing panel length 18 editing schedule settings 146 editing sort order 140, 142 editing spacing 135, 148 editing tags 134 editing worksheet scale 135, 148 exporting to CSV 152 flipping view side 139 including elevation view 136, 144 including plan view 136, 144 including very top plates 136, 144 inserting drawing borders 135, 148 inserting onto worksheets 149 moving breaks 18 moving tags in 2D plan 140 number across in multi-insertion 135, 148 previewing 137-138 purging unreferenced panels 151 regenerating 137, 150 re-ordering manually 142 selecting dimension style 135, 145-146

selecting text styles 135, 147 setting default view side 133-134 setting up tagging 132 specifying default print settings 149 viewing 137 viewing properties of individual panels 138 Wallpaper 19 Wallpaper borders 20 Walls 48, 1, 5, 7, 10-12, 14-20, 23, 25, 38, 50, 55, 57-60, 69, 93-94, 114-115, 234, 236-239, 253-254, 339, 555-556 adding corner details 23 adding trim 20 applying materials to 19, 238 applying paint 19 applying paneling 19 applying profiles to trim 23 applying wallpaper 19 arraying 17 attaching strip footings 25 breaking 18, 237 breaking into specific lengths 18 breaking members at 38 composite 5, 12 converting drafting objects to 339 copying by offset 17 creating a niche 58 creating with Floor and Foundation Builder 7 creating with House Builder Wizard 1 curving 17, 236 defining surfaces 12 deleting 19, 239 disabling solid fill per wall 254 displaying at gable ends 94 dividing rooms without using walls 69 drawing 5 editing dynamic dimension settings 10 editing height 12, 238 editing opening shape 59 editing opening size 59 editing solid fill colors 253 editing width 11, 237 entering precise lengths 555-556 extending beneath gable ends 15, 93 extending exterior face 14 flipping a niche 58 inserting 7 inserting openings in 57 lengthening 11, 236 lowering 14 making invisible in 2D 14 making level 16

making load-bearing or non-load-bearing 115 moving 16, 234 moving breaks 18 moving openings 58 offsetting 17 offsetting from baseline 7 raising 14 raising/lowering openings 59 removing openings from 60 removing trim from door openings 50 removing trim from wall openings 59 removing trim from window openings 55 repeating 48 resizing wall layout 10 retaining 234 rotating 17, 236 selecting framing member 114 shortening 11, 236 sloping 15, 238 solid filling 253 stepping 15, 238 stretching 10-11, 236 Walls by Baseline 7 Washers 163 Washrooms, designing 156 Waste, stringer 83 Water 189-190 Water Heaters 174 Weather vanes 213 Weight, line 631 Weyerhaeuser Javelin export 591 Wheelchair access 81.85 Width field (report template) 465-466 Width, field 463 Width. wall 11-12. 237 Wind chimes 213 Window (Print) 566 Window Heads 20 Window Height 53 Window menu 302 Window Opening Symbols 56 Window Schedule 291, 295, 525-527 controlling selectability 295 defining line styles 526 defining marks 526 defining text styles 526 deletina 527 hiding 291 moving 525 printing 525 removing schedule marks 527

rotating 525 Window Sill 656 Window Trim 20 Window Width 53 Windowing selection method 50, 427 Windows 10, 20, 46, 48, 51-57, 59-60, 324-325 adding height after width in dimensions 313 adding trim 20 attaching shutters 60 controlling opening symbols 56 deleting 56 displaying lites 54 editing details 55 editing dynamic dimension settings 10 editing lites 54 editing size properties 53 editing type 53 flipping 52 inserting 51 inserting to center 46, 52, 57 inserting to edge 46, 52, 57 moving 52 raising/lowering 53 removing trim from openings 55 specifying mark method 324 specifying mark settings 325 stretching 48, 54, 59 turning marks on/off 325 Wireframe 284 Wireframe display mode 283 Wiring 172-173, 291, 295, 436 assigning a layer to 436 deleting 173 displaying/hiding 291 editing line style 172 inserting 172 making selectable/non-selectable 295 reshaping 172 selecting default line style 172 stretching 172 Wizards 1, 7, 153, 156, 197, 200, 581, 585, 638 Bathroom Builder 156 Deck Builder 200 Door Leaf Import 638 Floor and Foundation Builder 7 House Builder 1 Kitchen Builder 153 **Object Import 585** Photo Board 581 Shed Builder 197 Wood edging 191 Wood flooring 71

Wood paneling 19 Wood Section 341-342, 417-418, 436 assigning a layer to 436 deleting in Model View 342 deleting in Worksheet View 418 drawing in Model View 341 drawing in Worksheet View 417 editing line style in Model View 342 editing line style in Worksheet View 418 moving in Model View 342 moving in Worksheet View 417 rotating in Model View 342 rotating in Worksheet View 417 stretching in Model View 342 stretching in Worksheet View 417 Wood stoves 174 Work History 594 Worksheet Scale, wall panel 135, 148 Worksheet View 357-360, 371, 374 background color 674 controlling display of page margin lines 360 controlling display of paper shadow 359 creating new window 299 inserting CAD files 371, 374 interface 358 switching to 357 Workspace colors 674 World Map page (plants) 184 Wrapping text in QG reports 513 WRL export 591 W-Shape member 39

## x

X Limit 552 X Origin 624 X Spacing 552 X, Y and Z coordinates 556 XLS template 447 XML export 479, 591-592 from Quote Generator 479 to 20-20 Design 592 to CSD iStruct 591 to Weyerhaeuser Javelin 591 XML import, 20-20 Design 588

## Y

Y Limit 551 Y Origin 624 Y Spacing 552

## Ζ

Zenith 219 Zeros, suppressing in measurements 46 Zones of plants 182 Zoom In 262, 271 Zoom Out 262, 271, 276, 280 Zoom Previous 272 Zoom Realtime 257, 271, 273 Zoom Speed, adjusting 274-275 Zoom to Fit 272 Zoom Window 271 Zooming with mouse buttons 273 Zooming with scroll wheel mouse 271